DAIKIN

OH13-02

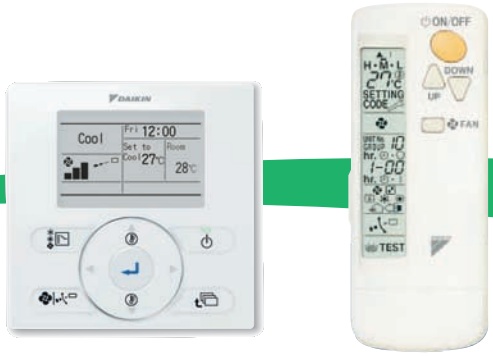
R-410A

R-22

Option Handbook

SkyAir





Part 1 Introduction 1

1. Introduction 2
   - 1.1 Control Systems 2
   - 1.2 Indoor Units 10
   - 1.3 Outdoor Unit 19

Part 2 Control Systems 23

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type) 25
   - 1.1 BRC7F632F / BRC7F633F (for FCQ(N)) 25
   - 1.2 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FFQ) 80
   - 1.3 BRC7E(A)63W / BRC7E(A)66 (for FHQ) 104
   - 1.4 BRC7C611W / BRC7C610W (for FAQ / FAY) 122
   - 1.5 BRC4C62 / BRC4C64 (for FBQ, FDBT, FDMG) 143
   - 1.6 BRC7C612W / BRC7C613W (for FH(Y)C) 180
   - 1.7 BRC7C613WS (for FHC-PUV2S / NUV2S) 203
   - 1.8 BRC7NU66 (for FH-NUV1) 225
   - 1.9 BRC7NU66S (for FH-PUV2S / NUV2S) 241
   - 1.10 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FUY) 246
   - 1.11 BRC7C64W / BRC7C69W (for FA(Y)) 273
   - 1.12 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 / BRC7E619 (for FAQ, FAY) 294
2. Remote Controller (Wired Type) 317
   - 2.1 BRC1C61 317
   - 2.2 BRC1NU61 326
   - 2.3 BRC1NU61S 337
   - 2.4 KRC47-1A 341
   - 2.5 KRC47-2A / KRC47-4A 343
3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller) 349
   - 3.1 BRC1E62 349
4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer 365
   - 4.1 BRC1D61 365
5. Adaptor for Wiring 372
   - 5.1 KRP1BA54 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1B51 372
   - 5.2 KRP1C63 374
   - 5.3 KRP1C64 376
6. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2) 379
   - 6.1 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 379
7. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature) 390
   - 7.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B 390
8. Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board 392
   - 8.1 KRP1H98 392
   - 8.2 KRP1BA101 396
   - 8.3 KRP1B98 401
   - 8.4 KRP4A96 403
   - 8.5 KRP4AA93 405
   - 8.6 KRP1CA93 407
   - 8.7 KRP1BA97 409
   - 8.8 KRP4AA95 411
9. Central Remote Controller 414
   - 9.1 DCS302CA61 414
10. Electrical Box with Earth Terminal 445

10.1 KJB212AA / KJB311AA....445
11. Unified ON/OFF Controller....447
11.1 DCS301BA61....447
12. Schedule Timer....455
12.1 DST301BA61....455
13. Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series....472
13.1 DTA102A52....472
13.2 DTA112BA51....475
14. intelligent Touch Controller....477
14.1 DCS601C51....477
15. Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only)....516
15.1 KEK26-1A....516

Part 3 Indoor Units....519

1. FCQ(N) — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Round Flow)....521
1.1 BYCP125K-W1 — Decoration Panel....521
1.2 BYCP125K-WS — Decoration Panel....525
1.3 KDBH55K160F — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet....529
1.4 KDBP55H160FA / WA — Panel Spacer....533
1.5 KDDP55B160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)....536
1.6 KDDP55X160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)....541
1.7 KKSJ55KA160 — Chamber Connection Kit....544
1.8 KDTP55K80 / 160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity....545
1.9 KAFP556B80 / 160, KAFP557B80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Unit....547
1.10 KAFP552B80 / 160, KAFP553B80 / 160 — Replacement High Efficiency Filter....550
1.11 KDDFP55B160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....551
1.12 KAFP551K160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....554
1.13 KAFP55B160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)....555
1.14 KAFP55H160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter....558
1.15 KDJP55B80 / 160 — Branch Duct Chamber....559
2. FFQ — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi Flow)....562
2.1 BYFQ60B8W1 — Decoration Panel....562
2.2 KDBH44BA60 — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet....565
2.3 KDBQ44BA60A — Panel Spacer....568
2.4 KDDQ44XA60 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)....571
2.5 KAFQ441BA60 — Replacement Long-life Filter....573
3. FHQ — Ceiling Suspended Type....574
3.1 KAF501DA56 / 80 / 112 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....574
3.2 KDU50N60VE / KDU50N125VE — Drain-up Kit....575
3.3 KHFP5MA35 / 63 / 160 — L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)....580
4. FAQ — Wall Mounted Type....581
4.1 K-KDU572EVE (Supplying goods to order) — Drain Pump Kit....581
5. FBQ — Ceiling Mounted Built-in / Duct Type....591
5.1 KAF372AA80 / 160, KAF373AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter....591
5.2 KAF371AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter....592
5.3 KDDF37AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....593
5.4 KAF375AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter Chamber Kit....596

5.5 KTB25KA56 / 80 / 160W, KTBJ25K80 / 160T, KTBJ25K80 / 160F — Service Access Panel....599
5.6 KDAJ25K56 / 71 / 140A — Air Discharge Adaptor....602
6. FH(Y)C — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Multi Flow)....604
6.1 BYC125K-W1 / BYC125K-W2 — Decoration Panel....604
6.2 BYC125K-W1S — Decoration Panel....607
6.3 KDBH55D160W — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet....610
6.4 KDD55DA160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)....613
6.5 KDDJ55XA160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)....617
6.6 KAF556DA80 / 160, KAF557DA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)....620
6.7 KDDF55DA160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....623
6.8 KAF551KA160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....626
6.9 KAF55DA160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)....627
6.10 KAF55KA160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter....630
6.11 KDJ55K80 / KDJ55K160— Branch Duct Chamber....631
7. FH(Y) — Ceiling Suspended Type....633
7.1 KDU50B50 / 71 / 125VE — Drain Pump Kit....633
7.2 KHFJ5F50 / 60 / 80 / 160 — L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)....634
8. FUY — Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type....635
8.1 KDBT49FA80 / 140 — Decoration Panel for Air Discharge....635
8.2 KDBH49FA80 / 140 — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet....636
8.3 KDGJ49FA80 / 140 — Vertical Flap Kit....638
8.4 KAF495FA140 — Replacement Long-life Filter....640
8.5 KHFJ49F80 / 140 — L Connection Piping Kit....641
9. FH(Y)K — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type....642
9.1 BYK45 / 71FJW1 — Decoration Panel....642
9.2 KPBJ52F56 / 80W — Panel Spacer....646
9.3 KDBJ52F56 / 80W — Air Discharge Blind Panel....651
9.4 KAFJ521F56 / 80 — Replacement Long-life Filter....658
9.5 K-HV7 / 9AW — Discharge Grille....659
9.6 KFDJ52FA56 / 80 — Flexible Duct with Shutter....660
10. FV(Y) — Floor Standing Type....668
10.1 KAFJ95L160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....668
11. FH(Y)B — Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type....669
11.1 BYBS45 / 71 / 125DJW1 — Decoration Panel....669
11.2 KAF252LA56 / 80 / 160, KAF253LA56 / 80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter....673
11.3 KAFJ251K56 / 80 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....674
11.4 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160D — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction....675
11.5 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160B — Filter Chamber for Rear Suction....676
11.6 KSA-25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)....680
11.7 K-DGC4 / 5 / 7 / 9D — Discharge Chamber....681
11.8 K-DG4 / 5 / 7 / 9DW — Discharge Grille....686
11.9 K-FDS151 / 152 / 153 / 154 / 155 / 156D, K-FDS201 / 202 / 203 / 204 / 205 / 206D — Flexible Duct....689
11.10KBBJ25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Screening Door....690
11.11K-DDV20B15 — Branch Chamber....691
11.12KDJ2507K56 / 80 / 160 — Air Suction Flange....693
12. FDBG — Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type....694
12.1 KDGF19A45 / 71 — Decoration Panel....694

12.2 KKD19A1 — Drain Pan Cover 694

Part 4 Outdoor Units 695

1. Drain Plug 696
   1.1 KKP937A4 696
   1.2 KKP945A4 697
2. Drain Cap, Drain Socket 698
   2.1 KKP014A4 698
3. Air Direction Adjustment Grille 699
   3.1 KPW937A4 699
   3.2 KPW945A4 700
4. Demand Adaptor 701
   4.1 KRP58M51 701
5. Central Drain Plug 705
   5.1 KKPJ5F180 705
   5.2 KKPJ5G280 706
6. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning 707
   6.1 K-KYZP15C 707
7. Fixture for Preventing Overturning 709
   7.1 KPT-60B160 709
   7.2 KKTP5B112 710
8. Refrigerant Branch Piping 712
   8.1 KHR58C21, KHD58C21A / 23A / 24A, KHD58D33, KHR58P322H, KHRJ5F224F / 280F 712
9. Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit 719
   9.1 KRK5F80V1 / 140V1 / 160V1 719
10. Drain Piping Kit 721
   10.1 KIS95 721
11. Over Voltage Protection 723
   11.1 BRV2AK / 4AK 723

Part 5 Index 729

Part 1
Introduction

1. Introduction 2
1.1 Control Systems 2
1.2 Indoor Units 10
1.3 Outdoor Unit 19

1. Introduction

1.1 Control Systems

1.1.1 R-410A

■ **Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type <Round flow>**

			Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type <Round flow>									Page
			FCQ50KVEA FCQ60KVEA FCQ71KVEA FCQN71KVEA	FCQ100KVEA FCQ125KVEA FCQ140KVEA	FCQN100KVEA FCQN125KVEA FCQN140KVEA	FCQ50LUV1 FCQ60LUV1 FCQ71LUV1	FCQ100LUV1 FCQ125LUV1 FCQ140LUV1	FCQ30LUV2S FCQ36LUV2S FCQ42LUV2S FCQ48LUV2S	FCQ50KVLT FCQ60KVLT FCQ71KVLT	FCQ100KVLT	FCQ125KAVLT FCQ140KAVLT	
Remote controller	Wired type	BRC1C61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer BRC1D61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	365
		Navigation remote controller BRC1E62	√	√	√	√	√	√				349
	Wireless type	For heat pump BRC7F632F	√	√	√	√	√		√	√	√	25
		For cooling only BRC7F633F				√	√	√				25
Central remote controller		DCS302CA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller		DCS301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer		DST301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller		DCS601C51	√	√	√	√	√	√				477
Adaptor for wiring		KRP1C63	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	374
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)		KRP4AA53	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	379
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor		KRP1H98	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	392
Remote sensor		KRCS01-4B	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	390

■ **Ceiling Mounted Duct Type (Middle and High Static Pressure) / Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type**

				Ceiling Mounted Duct Type (Middle and High Static Pressure)							Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type		Page
				FBQ30DV2S FBQ36DV2S FBQ42DV2S FBQ48DV2S	FBQ71DAVET	FBQ100DAVET FBQ125DAVET FBQ140DAVET	FBQ50DV1 FBQ60DV1 FBQ71DV1	FBQ100DV1 FBQ125DV1 FBQ140DV1	FBQ50DV1A FBQ60DV1A FBQ71DV1A	FBQ100DV1A FBQ125DV1A FBQ140DV1A	FBQ50BV1A	FBQ60BV1A FBQ71BV1A	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	365
		Navigation remote controller	BRC1E62	√			√	√	√	√	√	√	349
	Wireless type	For cooling only	BRC4C64	√			√	√					143
		For heat pump	BRC4C62		√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	143
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51	√			√	√	√	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA54								√	√	372
			KRP1C64	√	√	√	√	√	√	√			376
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA51	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	379
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA112BA51								√	√	475
Remote sensor			KRCS01-4B	√	√	√	√	√	√	√			390
Mounting plate for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP4A96	√	√	√	√	√	√	√			403

■ Wall Mounted Type / Ceiling Suspended Type / Compact Multi Flow Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

				Wall Mounted Type		Ceiling Suspended Type							Compact Multi Flow Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type	Page
				FAQ71BVV1B	FAQ100BVV1B	FHQ35BVV1B	FHQ50BVV1B	FHQ60BVV1B	FHQ71BVV1B	FHQ100BVV1B	FHQ125BVV1B	FHQ50BVV1G FHQ60BVV1G	FFQ25BV1B FFQ35BV1B FFQ50BV1B FFQ60BV1B	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	365
		Navigation remote controller	BRC1E62	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	349
	Wireless type	For cooling only	BRC7C611W		√									122
			BRC7E531W										√	80
			BRC7EA619	√										294
			BRC7EA66			√	√	√	√	√	√	√		104
		For heat pump	BRC7C610W		√									122
			BRC7E530W										√	80
			BRC7EA618	√										294
			BRC7EA63W			√	√	√	√	√	√	√		104
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA54			√	√	√	√	√	√	√		372
			KRP1BA57										√	372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA51	√	√									379
			KRP4AA52			√	√	√	√	√	√	√		379
			KRP4AA53										√	379
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA112BA51		√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	475
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP1BA101										√	396
			KRP1CA93			√	√	√	√	√	√	√		407
			KRP4AA93	√										405
Remote sensor			KRCS01-1B	√					√	√	√	√	√	390
Electrical box with earth terminal (3 blocks)			KJB311AA	√	√				√	√	√	√		445
Electrical box with earth terminal (2 blocks)			KJB212AA	√	√				√	√	√	√		445
Noise filter (for electromagnetic interface use only)			KEK26-1A	√										516

1.1.2 R-22

■ **Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type**

				Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type											Page
				FHC18NUV1 FHC21NUV1 FHC26NUV1	FHC30NUV1 FHC36NUV1 FHC42NUV1 FHC48NUV1	FHC18NUV2S	FHC24NUV2S FHC30PUV2S	FHC36PUV2S FHC42PUV2S FHC48NUV2S	FHC18PUV2V	FHC24PUV2V FHC30PUV2V FHC36PUV2V FHC42PUV2V FHC48PUV2V	FHC35KVE FHC50KVE FHC60KVE FHYC35KVE FHYC50KVE FHYC60KVE	FHYC71KVE	FHYC100KVE FHYC125KVE FHYC140KVE	FHC71DV2S	FHC21KV2S	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61	√	√						√	√	√			365
	Wireless type	For cooling only	BRC7C613W	√	√				√	√	√	√	√			180
			BRC7C613WS			√	√	√						√	√	203
		For heat pump	BRC7C612W								√	√	√			180
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA57	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA53	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	379
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA102A52	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	472
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP1B98	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	401

■ **Duct Connection Middle Static Pressure Type / Duct Connection Low Static Pressure Type**

		Duct Connection Middle Static Pressure Type						Duct Connection Low Static Pressure Type							page
		FDMG26PUV1 FDMG30PUV1 FDMG36PUV1 FDMG42PUV1 FDMG48PUV1 FDMG51PUV1 FDMG56PUV1	FDMG30PUV2S FDMG36PUV2S FDMG42PUV2S FDMG48PUV2S FDMG51PUV2S FDMG56PUV2S	FDMG30PUV2V FDMG36PUV2V FDMG42PUV2V FDMG48PUV2V FDMG51PUV2V FDMG56PUV2V	FDMG26NUV1 FDMG30NUV1 FDMG36NUV1 FDMG42NUV1 FDMG48NUV1 FDMG51NUV1 FDMG56NUV1	FDMG30NVV2S FDMG36NVV2S FDMG42NVV2S FDMG48NVV2S FDMG51NVV2S FDMG56NVV2S	FDBG18PUV1 FDBG21PUV1 FDBG26PUV1	FDBG18PUV2V FDBG24PUV2V FDBG30PUV2V	FDBG18NUV1	FDBG21NUV1 FDBG26NUV1	FDBG25AVE FDBG35AVE FDBG50AVE	FDBG60AVE	FDBT13PUV2S FDBT18PUV2S FDBT24PUV2S FDBT30PUV2S FDBT33PUV2S FDBT36PUV2S FDBT42PUV2S FDBT48PUV2S	FDBT13NUV2S FDBT18NUV2S FDBT24NUV2S	
Remote controller	Wired type	BRC1C61	√	√	√				√	√					√		317
	Wireless type	BRC4C64	√	√	√				√	√					√		143
Remote controller with 3 minutes timer		KRC47-1A				√	√				√	√	√	√		√	341
Digital remote controller with 3 minutes timer		KRC47-2A				√	√				√	√	√	√		√	343
	With switch for duct heater	KRC47-4A					√						√	√			343

■ **Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type**

			Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type			Page
			FHB35FV1 FHB45FV1 FHYB35FV1 FHYB45FV1	FHB60FV1 FHYB60FV1 FHYB71FV1 FHYB71FVAL	FHYB100FV1 FHYB100FVAL	FHYB125FV1 FHYB125FVAL	
Remote controller	Wired Type		BRC1C61	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61	√	√	√	365
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA54	√	√	√	372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA51	√	√	√	379
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA102A52	√	√	√	472

■ **Floor Standing Type / Wall Mounted Type / Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type / Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type**

				Floor Standing Type	Wall Mounted Type		Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type		Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type		Page
				FV71LAVE FV100LAVE FV125LAVE FVY71LAVE FVY100LAVE FVY125LAVE	FAY71LVE	FAY100FAVE	FAY71FVE FAY100FVE	FHK35FV1 FHK45FV1 FHYK35FJV1 FHYK45FJV1	FHK60FV1 FHYK60FJV1 FHYK71FJV1	FUY71FJV1	FUY100FJV1 FUY125FJV1	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	317
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	365
	Wireless Type	For cooling only	BRC7C611W			√						122
			BRC7C69W				√					273
			BRC7CA529W							√	√	246
			BRC7EA619		√							294
		For heat pump	BRC7C610W			√						122
			BRC7C64W				√					273
			BRC7CA528W							√	√	246
			BRC7EA618		√							294
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA57	√								372
			KRP1B51					√	√			372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA51		√	√	√	√	√			379
			KRP4AA52	√								379
			KRP4AA53							√	√	379
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA102A52	√		√	√	√	√	√	√	472
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP4AA93		√							405
			KRP1BA97							√	√	409
			KRP4AA95	√								411
Electrical box with earth terminal (3 blocks)			KJB311AA		√							445
Electrical box with earth terminal (2 blocks)			KJB212AA		√							445
Noise filter (for electromagnetic interface use only)			KEK26-1A		√							516
Remote sensor			KRCS01-1B					√	√	√	√	390

■ Ceiling Suspended Type

				Ceiling Suspended Type										Page
				FH21NUV1 FH26NUV1	FH30NUV1	FH36NUV1 FH42NUV1 FH48NUV1	FH13PUV2S	FH18PUV2S	FH30PUV2S FH36PUV2S FH42PUV2S	FH24NUV2S	FH48NUV2S	FH18PUV2V	FH24PUV2V	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61											317
			BRC1NU61	√	√	√						√	√	326
			BRC1NU61S				√	√	√	√	√			337
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61											365
	Wireless type	For cooling only	BRC7EA66											104
			BRC7NU66	√	√	√						√	√	225
			BRC7NU66S				√	√	√	√	√			241
		For heat pump	BRC7EA63W											104
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61											414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61											447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61											455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51											477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA54											372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA52											379
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP1CA93											407
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA102A52											472

				Ceiling Suspended Type							Page
				FH30PUV2V FH36PUV2V FH42PUV2V FH48PUV2V	FH35BVE FHY35BVE	FH50BVE FHY50BVE	FH60BVE FHY60BVE	FH71BVE FHY71BVE	FH100BVE FHY100BVE	FH125BVE FHY125BVE	
Remote controller	Wired type		BRC1C61		√	√	√	√	√	√	317
			BRC1NU61	√							326
			BRC1NU61S								337
		With weekly schedule timer	BRC1D61		√	√	√	√	√	√	365
	Wireless type	For cooling only	BRC7EA66		√	√	√	√	√	√	104
			BRC7NU66	√							225
			BRC7NU66S								241
		For heat pump	BRC7EA63W		√	√	√	√	√	√	104
Central remote controller			DCS302CA61		√	√	√	√	√	√	414
Unified ON/OFF controller			DCS301BA61		√	√	√	√	√	√	447
Schedule timer			DST301BA61		√	√	√	√	√	√	455
intelligent Touch Controller			DCS601C51		√	√	√	√	√	√	477
Adaptor for wiring			KRP1BA54		√	√	√	√	√	√	372
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)			KRP4AA52		√	√	√	√	√	√	379
Installation box for printed circuit board adaptor			KRP1CA93		√	√	√	√	√	√	407
Interface adaptor for SkyAir series			DTA102A52		√	√	√	√	√	√	472

1.2 Indoor Units

1.2.1 R-410A

■ **Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type <Round flow>**

			Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type <Round flow>									Page
			FCQ50KVEA FCQ60KVEA FCQ71KVEA FCQN71KVEA	FCQ100KVEA FCQ125KVEA FCQ140KVEA	FCQN100KVEA FCQN125KVEA FCQN140KVEA	FCQ50LUV1 FCQ60LUV1 FCQ71LUV1	FCQ100LUV1 FCQ125LUV1 FCQ140LUV1	FCQ30LUV2S FCQ36LUV2S FCQ42LUV2S FCQ48LUV2S	FCQ50KVLT FCQ60KVLT FCQ71KVLT	FCQ100KVLT	FCQ125KAVLT FCQ140KAVLT	
Decoration panel		BYCP125K-W1	√	√	√	√	√		√	√	√	521
		BYCP125K-WS						√				525
Sealing member of air discharge outlet		KDBH55K160F	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	529
Panel spacer		KDBP55H160FA	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	533
Fresh air intake kit	Chamber type Without T duct joint	KDDP55B160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	536
	Chamber type With T duct joint	KDDP55B160K	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	536
	Direct installation type	KDDP55X160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	541
Chamber connection kit		KKSJ55KA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	544
Insulation kit for high humidity		KDTP55K80	√			√			√			545
		KDTP55K160		√	√		√	√		√	√	545
High efficiency filter unit	Colorimetric method 65%	KAFP556B80	√			√			√			547
		KAFP556B160		√	√		√	√		√	√	547
	Colorimetric method 90%	KAFP557B80	√			√			√			547
		KAFP557B160		√	√		√	√		√	√	547
Replacement high efficiency filter	Colorimetric method 65%	KAFP552B80	√			√			√			550
		KAFP552B160		√	√		√	√		√	√	550
	Colorimetric method 90%	KAFP553B80	√			√			√			550
		KAFP553B160		√	√		√	√		√	√	550
Filter chamber		KDDFP55B160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	551
Replacement long life filter		KAFP551K160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	554
Ultra long life filter unit		KAFP55B160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	555
Replacement ultra long life filter		KAFP55H160H	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	558
Branch duct chamber		KDJP55B80	√			√			√			559
		KDJP55B160		√	√		√	√		√	√	559

■ **Ceiling Mounted Duct Type (Middle and High Static Pressure) / Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type**

		Ceiling Mounted Duct Type (Middle and High Static Pressure)							Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type		Page
		FBQ30DV2S FBQ36DV2S FBQ42DV2S FBQ48DV2S	FBQ71DAVET	FBQ100DAVET FBQ125DAVET FBQ140DAVET	FBQ50DV1 FBQ60DV1 FBQ71DV1	FBQ100DV1 FBQ125DV1 FBQ140DV1	FBQ50DV1A FBQ60DV1A FBQ71DV1A	FBQ100DV1A FBQ125DV1A FBQ140DV1A	FBQ50BV1A	FBQ60BV1A FBQ71BV1A	
Service access panel	KTB25KA56W								√		599
	KTB25KA80W		√		√		√			√	599
	KTB25KA160W	√		√		√		√			599
	KTBJ25K80F		√		√		√				599
	KTBJ25K160F	√		√		√		√			599
	KTBJ25K80T		√		√		√				599
	KTBJ25K160T	√		√		√		√			599
Air discharge adaptor	KDAJ25K56A								√		602
	KDAJ25K71A		√		√		√			√	602
	KDAJ25K140A	√		√		√		√			602
High efficiency filter unit (Colorimetric method 65%)	KAF372AA80		√		√		√				591
	KAF372AA160	√		√		√		√			591
High efficiency filter unit (Colorimetric method 90%)	KAF373AA80		√		√		√				591
	KAF373AA160	√		√		√		√			591
Filter chamber	KDDF37AA80		√		√		√				593
	KDDF37AA160	√		√		√		√			593
Replacement long life filter	KAF371AA80		√		√		√				592
	KAF371AA160	√		√		√		√			592
Long life filter chamber kit	KAF375AA80		√		√		√				596
	KAF375AA160	√		√		√		√			596

■ **Wall Mounted Type / Ceiling Suspended Type / Compact Multi Flow Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type**

		Wall Mounted Type		Ceiling Suspended Type						Compact Multi Flow Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type	Page
		FAQ71BVV1B	FAQ100BVV1B	FHQ35BVV1B	FHQ50BVV1B	FHQ60BVV1B	FHQ71BVV1B	FHQ100BVV1B	FHQ125BVV1B	FHQ50BVV1G FHQ60BVV1G	FFQ25BV1B FFQ35BV1B FFQ50BV1B FFQ60BV1B	
Decoration panel		BYFQ60B8W1									√	562
Fresh air intake kit	Direct installation type	KDDQ44XA60									√	571
Sealing member of air discharge outlet		KDBH44BA60									√	565
Panel spacer		KDBQ44BA60A									√	568
Drain pump kit		KDU50N60VE		√	√	√						575
		KDU50N125VE					√	√	√	√		575
		K-KDU572EVE	√									581
L type piping kit (for upward direction)		KHFP5MA35		√								580
		KHFP5MA63			√	√						580
		KHFP5MA160					√	√	√	√		580
Replacement long life filter		KAF501DA56		√	√							574
		KAF501DA80				√	√			√		574
		KAF501DA112						√				574
		KAF501DA160							√			574
		KAFQ441BA60									√	573

1.2.2 R-22

■ Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

				Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type												Page
				FHC18NUV1 FHC21NUV1 FHC26NUV1	FHC30NUV1 FHC36NUV1 FHC42NUV1 FHC48NUV1	FHC18NUV2S	FHC24NUV2S FHC30PUV2S	FHC36PUV2S FHC42PUV2S FHC48NUV2S	FHC18PUV2V	FHC24PUV2V FHC30PUV2V FHC36PUV2V FHC42PUV2V FHC48PUV2V	FHC35KVE FHC50KVE FHC60KVE FHYC35KVE FHYC50KVE FHYC60KVE	FHYC71KVE	FHYC100KVE FHYC125KVE FHYC140KVE	FHC71DV2S	FHC21KV2S	
Decoration panel			BYC125K-W1	√	√				√	√	√	√	√			604
			BYC125K-W1S			√	√	√						√	√	607
			BYC125K-W2	√	√				√	√						604
Sealing material of air discharge outlet			KDBH55D160W	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	610
Panel spacer			KDBP55H160WA	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	533
Fresh air intake kit	Chamber type	Without T duct joint	KDD55DA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	613
		With T duct joint	KDD55DA160K	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	613
	Direct installation type		KDDJ55XA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	617
Chamber connection kit			KKSJ55KA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	544
High efficiency filter unit	Colourimetric method 65%		KAF556DA80	√		√			√		√	√			√	620
			KAF556DA160		√		√	√		√			√	√		620
	Colourimetric method 90%		KAF557DA80	√		√			√		√	√			√	620
			KAF557DA160		√		√	√		√			√	√		620
Replacement high efficiency filter	Colourimetric method 65%		KAFP552B80	√		√			√		√	√			√	550
			KAFP552B160		√		√	√		√			√	√		550
	Colourimetric method 90%		KAFP553B80	√		√			√		√	√			√	550
			KAFP553B160		√		√	√		√			√	√		550
Filter chamber			KDDF55DA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	623
Replacement long life filter			KAF551KA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	626
Ultra long life filter unit			KAF55DA160	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	627
Replacement ultra long life filter			KAF55KA160H	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	630
Branch duct chamber			KDJ55K80	√		√			√		√	√			√	631
			KDJ55K160		√		√	√		√			√	√		631

■ **Duct Connection Middle Static Pressure Type / Duct Connection Low Static Pressure Type**

		Duct Connection Middle Static Pressure Type							Duct Connection Low Static Pressure Type						Page
		FDMG26PUV1 FDMG30PUV1 FDMG36PUV1 FDMG42PUV1 FDMG48PUV1 FDMG51PUV1 FDMG56PUV1	FDMG30PUV2S FDMG36PUV2S FDMG42PUV2S FDMG48PUV2S FDMG51PUV2S FDMG56PUV2S	FDMG30PUV2V FDMG36PUV2V FDMG42PUV2V FDMG48PUV2V FDMG51PUV2V FDMG56PUV2V	FDMG26NUV1 FDMG30NUV1 FDMG36NUV1 FDMG42NUV1 FDMG48NUV1 FDMG51NUV1 FDMG56NUV1	FDMG30NVV2S FDMG36NVV2S FDMG42NVV2S FDMG48NVV2S FDMG51NVV2S FDMG56NVV2S	FDBG18PUV1 FDBG21PUV1 FDBG26PUV1	FDBG18PUV2V FDBG24PUV2V FDBG30PUV2V	FDBG18NUV1	FDBG21NUV1 FDBG26NUV1	FDBG25AVE FDBG35AVE FDBG50AVE	FDBG60AVE	FDBT13PUV2S FDBT18PUV2S FDBT24PUV2S FDBT30PUV2S FDBT33PUV2S FDBT36PUV2S FDBT42PUV2S FDBT48PUV2S	FDBT13NUV2S FDBT18NUV2S FDBT24NUV2S	
Suction grille	KDGF19A45								√		√				694
	KDGF19A71									√		√			694
Drain pan cover	KKD19A1								√	√	√	√			694

■ Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type

			Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type				Page
			FHB35FV1 FHB45FV1 FHYB35FV1 FHYB45FV1	FHB60FV1 FHYB60FV1 FHYB71FV1 FHYB71FVAL	FHYB100FV1 FHYB100FVAL	FHYB125FV1 FHYB125FVAL	
Decoration panel		BYBS45DJW1	√				669
		BYBS71DJW1		√			669
		BYBS125DJW1			√	√	669
Service access panel		KTB25KA56W	√				599
		KTB25KA80W		√			599
		KTB25KA160W			√	√	599
High efficiency filter	Colourimetric method 65%	KAF252LA56	√				673
		KAF252LA80		√			673
		KAF252LA160			√	√	673
	Colourimetric method 90%	KAF253LA56	√				673
		KAF253LA80		√			673
		KAF253LA160			√	√	673
Replacement long life filter		KAFJ251K56	√				674
		KAFJ251K80		√			674
		KAFJ251K160			√	√	674
Filter chamber for bottom suction		KAJ25LA56D	√				675
		KAJ25LA80D		√			675
		KAJ25LA160D			√	√	675
Filter chamber for rear suction		KAJ25LA56B	√				676
		KAJ25LA80B		√			676
		KAJ25LA160B			√	√	676
Canvas duct		KSA-25KA56	√				680
		KSA-25KA80		√			680
		KSA-25KA160			√	√	680
Discharge grill	(ϕ150)	K-DG4DW	√		√		686
		K-DG5DW		√		√	686
	(ϕ200)	K-DG7DW	√		√		686
		K-DG9DW		√		√	686
Discharge chamber	(ϕ150)	K-DGC4D	√		√		681
		K-DGC5D		√		√	681
	(ϕ200)	K-DGC7D	√		√		681
		K-DGC9D		√		√	681

				Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type				Page
				FHB35FV1 FHB45FV1 FHYB35FV1 FHYB45FV1	FHB60FV1 FHYB60FV1 FHYB71FV1 FHYB71FVAL	FHYB100FV1 FHYB100FVAL	FHYB125FV1 FHYB125FVAL	
Branch duct	ϕ 200 → ϕ 150		K-DDV20B15	√	√	√	√	691
Flexible duct	(ϕ150)	1m	K-FDS151D	√	√	√	√	689
		2m	K-FDS152D	√	√	√	√	689
		3m	K-FDS153D	√	√	√	√	689
		4m	K-FDS154D	√	√	√	√	689
		5m	K-FDS155D	√	√	√	√	689
		6m	K-FDS156D	√	√	√	√	689
	(ϕ200)	1m	K-FDS201D	√	√	√	√	689
		2m	K-FDS202D	√	√	√	√	689
		3m	K-FDS203D	√	√	√	√	689
		4m	K-FDS204D	√	√	√	√	689
		5m	K-FDS205D	√	√	√	√	689
		6m	K-FDS206D	√	√	√	√	689
Blind board			KBBJ25KA56	√				690
			KBBJ25KA80		√			690
			KBBJ25KA160			√	√	690
Air discharge adaptor			KDAJ25K56A	√				602
			KDAJ25K71A		√			602
			KDAJ25K140A			√	√	602
Flange for suction			KDJ2507K56	√				693
			KDJ2507K80		√			693
			KDJ2507K160			√	√	693

1

■ **Floor Standing Type / Wall Mounted Type / Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type / Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type**

		Floor Standing Type	Wall Mounted Type			Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type		Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type		Page
		FV71LAVE FV100LAVE FV125LAVE FVY71LAVE FVY100LAVE FVY125LAVE	FAY71LVE	FAY100FAVE	FAY71FVE FAY100FVE	FHK35FV1 FHK45FV1 FHYK35FJV1 FHYK45FJV1	FHK60FV1 FHYK60FJV1 FHYK71FJV1	FUY71FJV1	FUY100FJV1 FUY125FJV1	
Decoration panel	BYK45FJW1					√				642
	BYK71FJW1						√			642
Decoration panel for air discharge	KDBT49FA80							√		635
	KDBT49FA140								√	635
Sealing material of air discharge outlet	KDBH49FA80							√		636
	KDBH49FA140								√	636
Vertical flap kit	KDGJ49FA80							√		638
	KDGJ49FA140								√	638
Panel spacer	KPBJ52F56W					√				646
	KPBJ52F80W						√			646
Air discharge blind panel	KDBJ52F56W					√				651
	KDBJ52F80W						√			651
Replacement long life filter	KAF495FA140							√	√	640
	KAFJ521F56					√				658
	KAFJ521F80						√			658
Discharge grill	K-HV7AW					√				659
	K-HV9AW						√			659
Flexible duct with shutter	KFDJ52FA56					√				660
	KFDJ52FA80						√			660
Replacement long life filter	KAFJ95L160	√								668
Drain pump kit	K-KDU572EVE		√							581
L type piping kit	KHFJ49F80							√		641
	KHFJ49F140								√	641

■ Ceiling Suspended Type

		Ceiling Suspended Type										Page
		FH21NUV1 FH26NUV1	FH30NUV1	FH36NUV1 FH42NUV1 FH48NUV1	FH13PUV2S	FH18PUV2S	FH30PUV2S FH36PUV2S FH42PUV2S	FH24NUV2S	FH48NUV2S	FH18PUV2V	FH24PUV2V	
Replacement long life filter	KAF501DA56											574
	KAF501DA80	√			√	√				√		574
	KAF501DA112		√					√			√	574
	KAF501DA160			√			√		√			574
Drain pump kit	KDU50B50VE											633
	KDU50B71VE											633
	KDU50B125VE											633
L type piping kit (for upward direction)	KHFJ5F50											634
	KHFJ5F60				√							634
	KHFJ5F80	√				√				√		634
	KHFJ5F160		√	√			√	√	√		√	634

		Ceiling Suspended Type							Page
		FH30PUV2V FH36PUV2V FH42PUV2V FH48PUV2V	FH35BVE FHY35BVE	FH50BVE FHY50BVE	FH60BVE FHY60BVE	FH71BVE FHY71BVE	FH100BVE FHY100BVE	FH125BVE FHY125BVE	
Replacement long life filter	KAF501DA56		√	√					574
	KAF501DA80				√	√			574
	KAF501DA112						√		574
	KAF501DA160	√						√	574
Drain pump kit	KDU50B50VE		√	√					633
	KDU50B71VE				√	√			633
	KDU50B125VE						√	√	633
L type piping kit (for upward direction)	KHFJ5F50		√						634
	KHFJ5F60			√	√				634
	KHFJ5F80					√			634
	KHFJ5F160	√					√	√	634

1.3 Outdoor Unit

■ **R-410A**

		RKS25AVMG RKS35AVMG RKS25EBVMA RKS35EBVMA RXS25EBVMA RXS35EBVMA	RKS50AVMG RKS60AVMG RKS50FVMA RKS60FVMA RXS50FAVMA RXS50FVMA RXS60FVMA	RXS71FVMA	RZR50LUV1 RZR60LUV1 RZR71LUV1	RZR100LUV1 RZR30LUV2S RZR36LUV2S RZR30LUVL RZR36LUVL	RZR125LUV1 RZR140LUV1 RZR100LUY1 RZR125LUY1 RZR140LUY1 RZR42LUV2S RZR48LUV2S RZR30LUY2S RZR36LUY2S RZR42LUY2S RZR48LUY2S RZR42LUVL RZR48LUVL	RZQ71KCVLT RZQ100KCVLT RZQ125KCTLT RZQ140KCTLT	RZQ50KBV4A RZQ60KBV4A RZQ71KCV4A RZQ100KCV4A RZQ125KCV4A RZQ140KCV4A RZQ100HAY4A RZQ125HAY4A RZQ140HAY4A	RR71MV1 RR71MY1 RR100MY1 RR125MY1 RR140MY1 RR71MUV1 RR71MUY1 RR100MUV1 RR100MUY1 RR125MUY1 RR140MUY1 RR30MUV2S RR30MUY2S RR36MUV2S RR36MUY2S RR42MUY2S RR48MUY2S	RQ71LV1A RQ125LV1A RQ140LV1A RQ100LV1A	Page
Central drain plug	KKP014A4				√							698
	KKPJ5F180						√	√	√	√	√	705
	KKPJ5G280					√				√		706
Fixture for preventing overturning	KKTP5B112					√						710
	KPT-60B160						√	√	√	√	√	709
Wire fixture for preventing overturning	K-KYZP15C						√	√	√	√	√	707
Demand adaptor	KRP58M51					√	√	√	√	√	√	701
Air direction adjustment grille	KPW937A4	√										699
	KPW945A4		√	√								700
Drain plug	KKP937A4	√	√									696
	KKP945A4			√								697

■ R-22

			R25JV1 R35JV1	R35GV1 R50GV1 R60GV1 R50GVAL R60GVAL	RY35FV1A RY50GAV1A RY50GVAL RY60GVAL	R71LUV1 R71LUY1 R71LUVAL	R100LUV1 R100LUY1 R100LUVAL R125LUY1 R125LUYAL R125LUTAL	R140LUY1 R140LUYAL R140LUTAL	RY71LUV1 RY71LUY1	RY100LUV1 RY100LUY1 RY125LUY1	RY140LUY1 RY140LUYAL RY140LUTAL	R200KUY1 R200KUYAL R200KUTAL RY200KUY1 RY200KUYAL RY200KUTAL	R250KUY1 R250KUYAL R250KUTAL RY250KUY1 RY250KUYAL RY250KUTAL	R71FUV1 R100FUV1 R71FUVL R100FUVL	Page
Central drain plug		KIS95		√	√										721
		KKPJ5F180				√	√	√	√	√	√			√	705
Refrigerant branch piping	For twin multi	KHD58C21A					√	√		√	√				712
		KHD58C23A										√			712
		KHD58C24A											√		712
		KHR58C21				√			√						712
	For triple multi	KHD58D33						√			√				712
		KHR58P322H										√			712
	For double twin	KHRJ5F224F										√			712
		KHRJ5F280F											√		712
Year round cooling kit		KRK5F80V1				√									719
		KRK5F140V1					√								719
		KRK5F160V1						√							719
Air direction adjustment grille		KPW937A4	√												699
Over (low) voltage protection	Single phase	BRV2AK												√	723
	Three phase	BRV4AK													723
Drain plug		KKP937A4	√												696

			R71FUY1 R100FUY1 R125FUY1 R125FUTL	RY71FUVL RY100FUVL	RY125FUTL	R71MUV2S	R42LUY2S	R18NUV1	R21NUV1	R26NUV1 R30NUV1 R36NUV1 R26NUY1 R30NUY1 R36NUY1 R42NUY1 R48NUY1 R51NUY1 R56NUY1	R18PUV2V R24PUV2V	R30PUV2V R36PUV2V R30PUY2V R36PUY2V R42PUY2V R48PUY2V R51PUY2V R56PUY2V	R13PUV2S1 R18PUV2S1 R13NUV2S R18NUV2S R24NUV2S	R30PUV2S R33PUV2S R36PUV2S R30PUY2S R33PUY2S R36PUY2S R42PUY2S R48NUY2S R51NUY2S R56NUY2S	Page
Central drain plug		KIS95							√						721
		KKPJ5F180	√	√	√	√	√			√		√		√	705
Refrigerant branch piping	For twin multi	KHD58C21A					√								712
		KHD58C23A													712
		KHD58C24A													712
		KHR58C21													712
	For triple multi	KHD58D33													712
		KHR58P322H													712
	For double twin	KHRJ5F224F													712
		KHRJ5F280F													712
Year round cooling kit		KRK5F80V1													719
		KRK5F140V1					√								719
		KRK5F160V1													719
Air direction adjustment grille		KPW937A4													699
Over (low) voltage protection	Single phase	BRV2AK		√											723
	Three phase	BRV4AK	√		√										723
Drain plug		KKP937A4													696

Part 2
Control Systems

2

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type) 25
   - 1.1 BRC7F632F / BRC7F633F (for FCQ(N)) 25
   - 1.2 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FFQ) 80
   - 1.3 BRC7E(A)63W / BRC7E(A)66 (for FHQ) 104
   - 1.4 BRC7C611W / BRC7C610W (for FAQ / FAY) 122
   - 1.5 BRC4C62 / BRC4C64 (for FBQ, FDBT, FDMG) 143
   - 1.6 BRC7C612W / BRC7C613W (for FH(Y)C) 180
   - 1.7 BRC7C613WS (for FHC-PUV2S / NUV2S) 203
   - 1.8 BRC7NU66 (for FH-NUV1) 225
   - 1.9 BRC7NU66S (for FH-PUV2S / NUV2S) 241
   - 1.10 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FUY) 246
   - 1.11 BRC7C64W / BRC7C69W (for FA(Y)) 273
   - 1.12 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 / BRC7E619 (for FAQ, FAY) 294
2. Remote Controller (Wired Type) 317
   - 2.1 BRC1C61 317
   - 2.2 BRC1NU61 326
   - 2.3 BRC1NU61S 337
   - 2.4 KRC47-1A 341
   - 2.5 KRC47-2A / KRC47-4A 343
3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller) 349
   - 3.1 BRC1E62 349
4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer 365
   - 4.1 BRC1D61 365
5. Adaptor for Wiring 372
   - 5.1 KRP1BA54 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1B51 372
   - 5.2 KRP1C63 374
   - 5.3 KRP1C64 376
6. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2) 379
   - 6.1 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 379
7. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature) 390
   - 7.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B 390
8. Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board 392
   - 8.1 KRP1H98 392
   - 8.2 KRP1BA101 396
   - 8.3 KRP1B98 401
   - 8.4 KRP4A96 403
   - 8.5 KRP4AA93 405
   - 8.6 KRP1CA93 407
   - 8.7 KRP1BA97 409
   - 8.8 KRP4AA95 411
9. Central Remote Controller 414
   - 9.1 DCS302CA61 414
10. Electrical Box with Earth Terminal 445
   - 10.1 KJB212AA / KJB311AA 445
11. Unified ON/OFF Controller 447

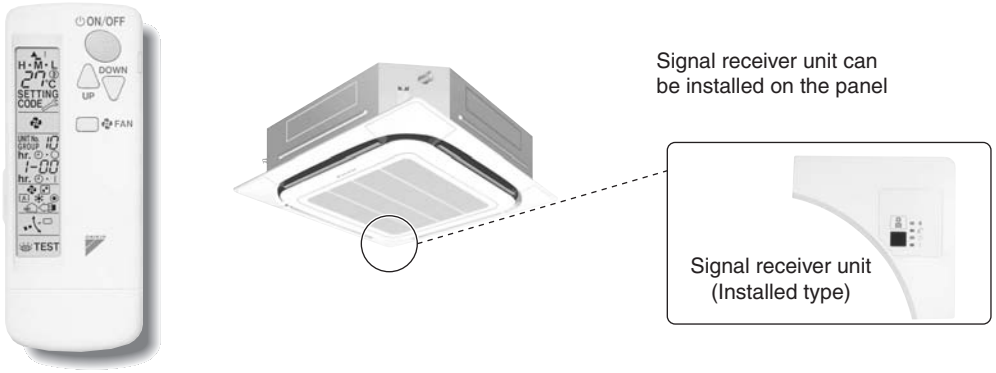
11.1 DCS301BA61 447
12. Schedule Timer 455
12.1 DST301BA61 455
13. Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series 472
13.1 DTA102A52 472
13.2 DTA112BA51 475
14. intelligent Touch Controller 477
14.1 DCS601C51 477
15. Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only) 516
15.1 KEK26-1A 516

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type)

1.1 BRC7F632F / BRC7F633F (for FCQ(N))

1.1.1 Features

BRC7F632F (for SkyAir Heat Pump)
BRC7F633F (for SkyAir Cooling Only)
BRC7F634F (for VRV Heat Pump)
BRC7F635F (for VRV Cooling Only)



- The same operation modes and settings as with wired remote controllers are possible.
- A light receiver unit for a Ceiling Mounted Cassette (Round Flow) type is mounted into the indoor unit.
- This unit supports the three-speed airflow rate control (HH / H / L).

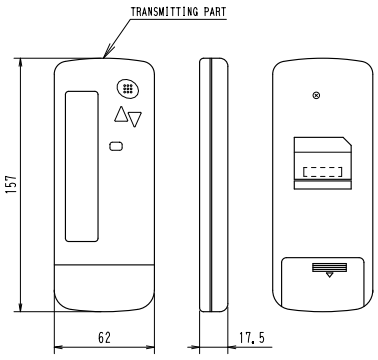
1.1.2 Function

Model	SkyAir Heat Pump	SkyAir Cooling Only	VRV Heat Pump	VRV Cooling Only
	BRC7F632F	BRC7F633F	BRC7F634F	BRC7F635F
ON/OFF	√			
Temp. setting	√			
Air flow rate setting	√			
Air flow direction setting	√			
Timer setting	√			
Mode setting	√			
Filter sign reset	√			
Inspection/Test operation	√			

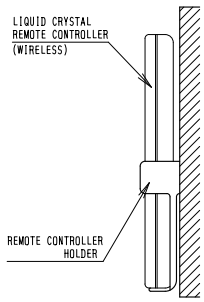
1.1.3 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

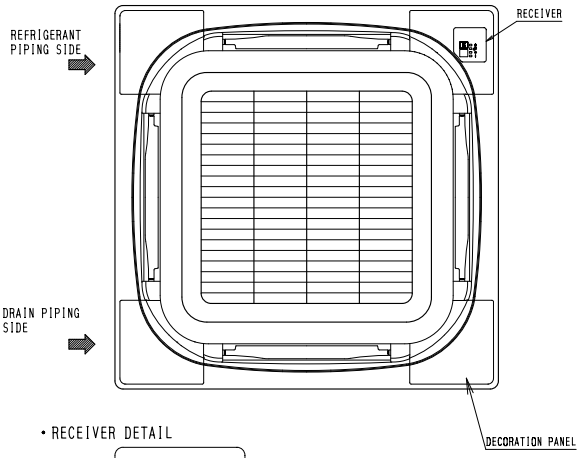
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



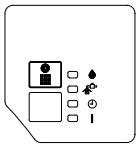
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
< INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE >



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL



• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH DECORATION PANEL

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	DECORATION PANEL
BRC7F632F BRC7F633F BRC7F634F BRC7F635F	BYCP125K-W1
BRC7F634F1	BYCP125KW1C(9)

3D052918D

1.1.4 Operation Manual

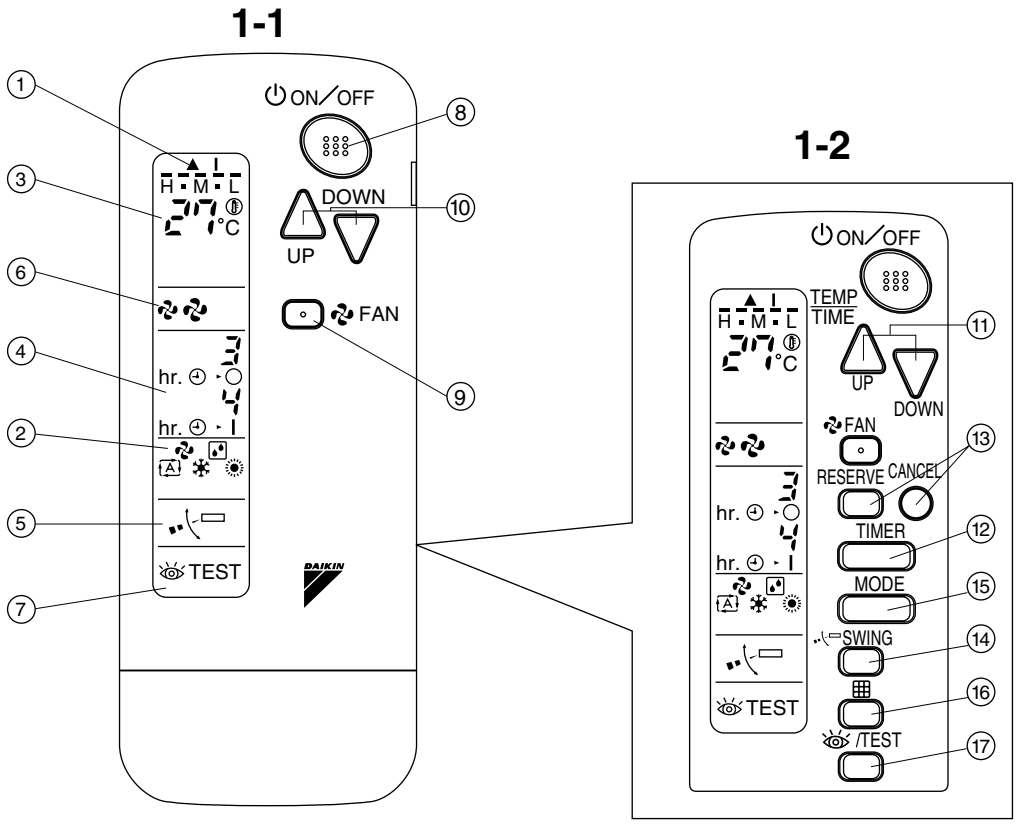


Fig. 1

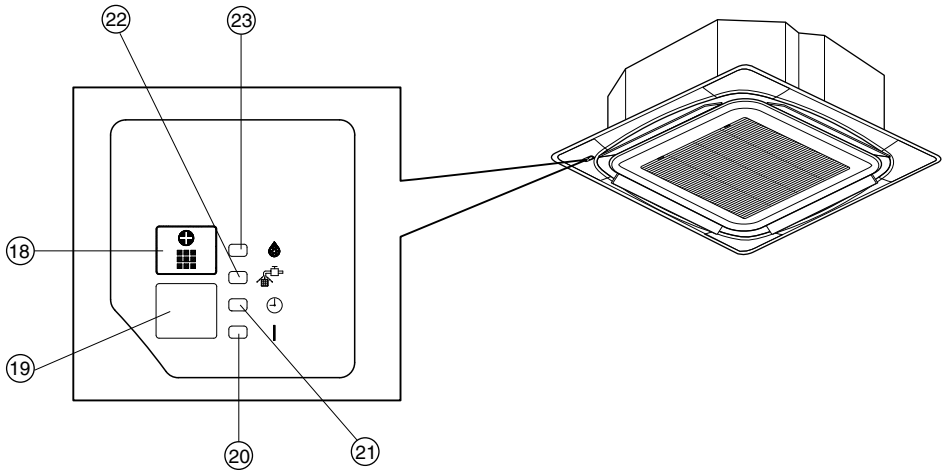


Fig. 2

3P107422-11J

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATION .....[1]
PRIOR TO USE .....[2]

1 SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 1
2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION 2
3 HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER.....3
4 OPERATION RANGE.....4
5 OPERATION PROCEDURE 5
6 NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER 8
7 HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS 9

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.
There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING**..... Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.
Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.
Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.

If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.
If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.

Ask your dealer to install your equipment.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.
Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.
The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.

Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.
Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.

When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.
Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.

Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.
They may be adversely affected.

Do not operate the air conditioner with a wet hand.
Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.

Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.

Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY "" "" " A " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " A " (Auto) and "" (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " 27 °C " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " hr. 3 hr. 4 " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 6.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 7.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 7.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 6.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.

20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)

NOTE

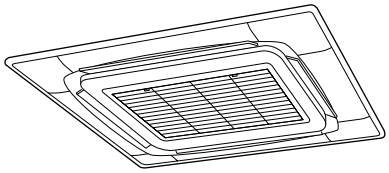
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

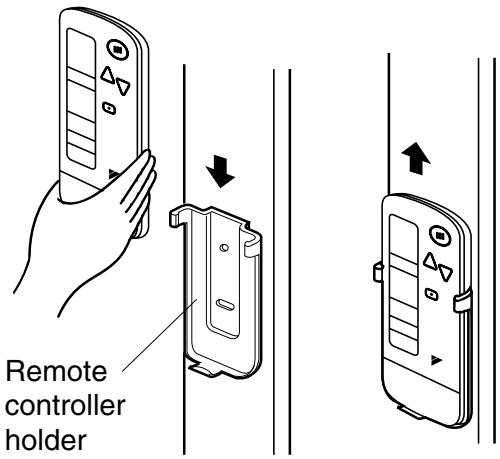
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

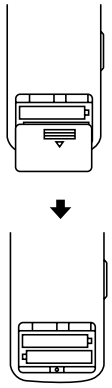


How to put the dry cell batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Put the dry cell batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover as before.



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR	
	TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY	TEMPERATURE	
• RZQ125 KTLT • RZQ140 KTLT	DB	21 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 50
	WB	14 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
• RZQ125 KTLT • RZQ140 KTLT	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 on page [1]

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

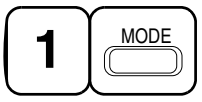
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

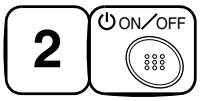
Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page [1]



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16˚C.



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.

- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator (a fan for indoor circulation). For details, contact the place of purchase.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

TEMPERATURE SETTING

Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16˚C to 32˚C.

FAN SPEED CONTROL

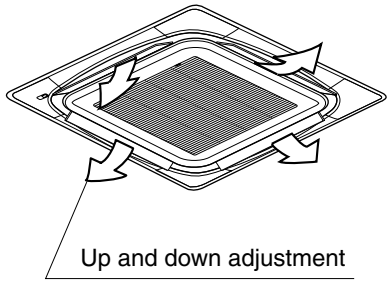
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected. The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.

AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.

DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 TIMER — TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

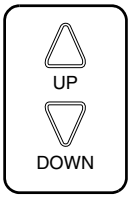
The display flashes.

For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"

For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

2 UP DOWN — PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 RESERVE — TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.

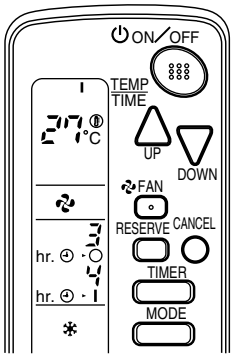
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL — TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming.

The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTE

- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

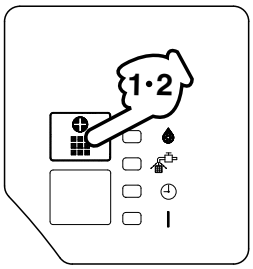
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

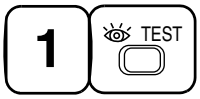
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.

- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.
- **The outdoor unit stops.**
  Because the room temperature reaches to the set temperature. The indoor unit becomes to fan operation.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.



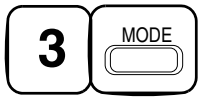
Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep .....Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep .....Normal state



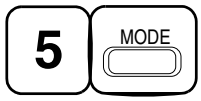
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.



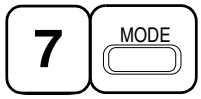
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



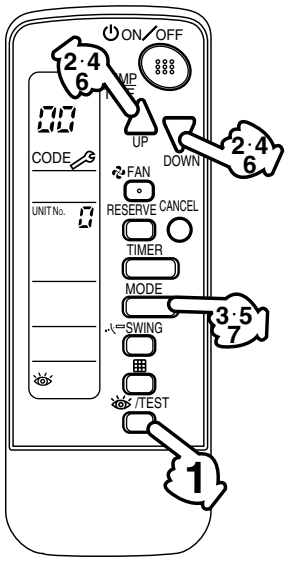
Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.



Reset of the display

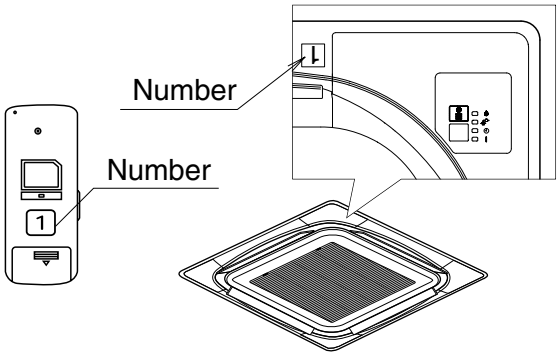
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted.
(If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

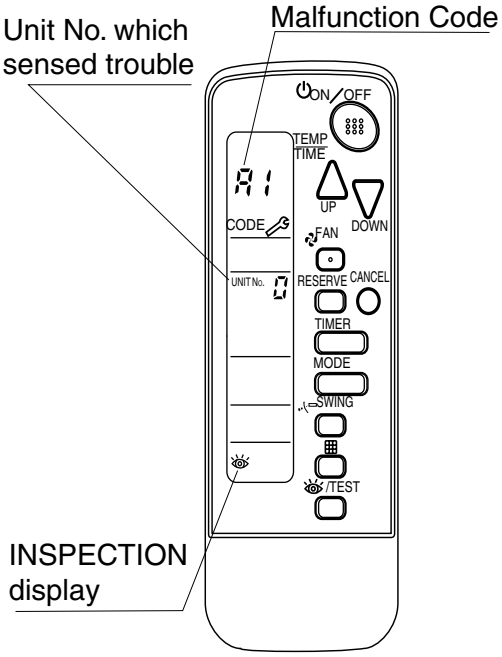
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 9.)

C: 3P107422-11J

1.1.5 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

BRC7F632F Wireless Remote Controller Kit Installation manual

CONTENTS

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 1
2. BEFORE INSTALLATION 2
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION 2
4. ADDRESS SET UP 3
5. INSTALLATION OF THE TRANSMISSION 4
6. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL 5
7. INSTALLATION OF THE RECEIVER 5
8. FIELD SETTING 6
9. TEST OPERATION 7

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

⚠ **CAUTION**

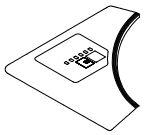
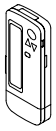
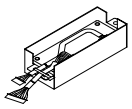
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.
- If both this kit and fresh air intake kit are installed, only one duct chamber shall be used. Refer to the installation manual of the fresh air intake kit (optional hand book).

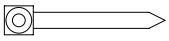
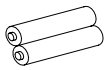
C: 3P091240-2C

2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmission	Remote controller holder	Screw for installing transmission	Screw for installing remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 set	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Clamp	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Field setting label	Operation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

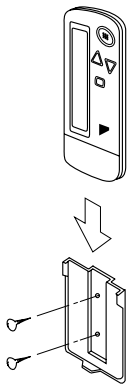
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

NOTES

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **When attaching in a wall or a pillar**
  1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

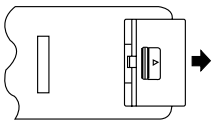


  2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

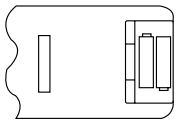
3P091240-2C

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



4. ADDRESS SET UP

Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.
If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

(1) Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

(2) Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

<Setting from the remote controller>

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)

2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

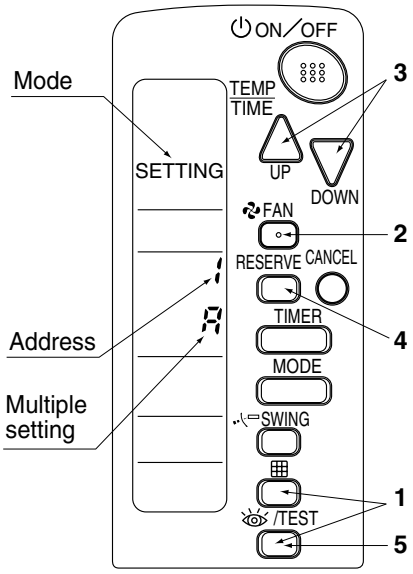
3. Press the " △ UP " button or " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



3P091240-2C

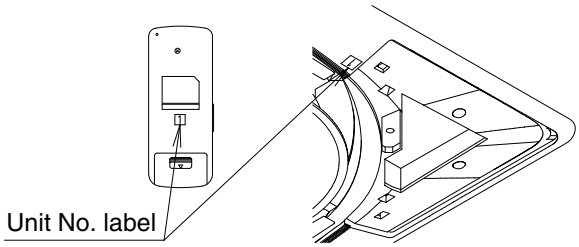
Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound “peeh” or “pick-pick-pick”) As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

(3) Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

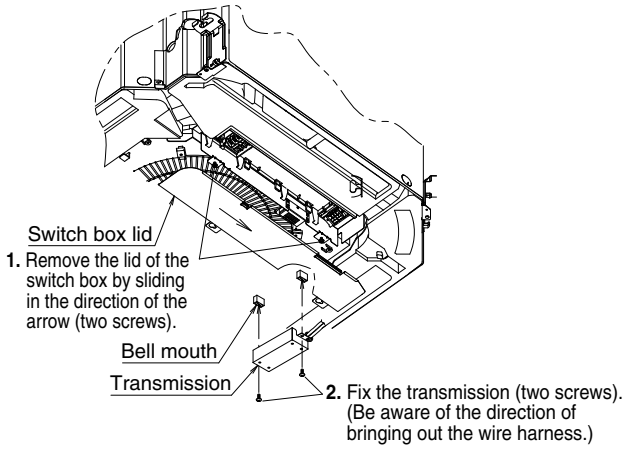
[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



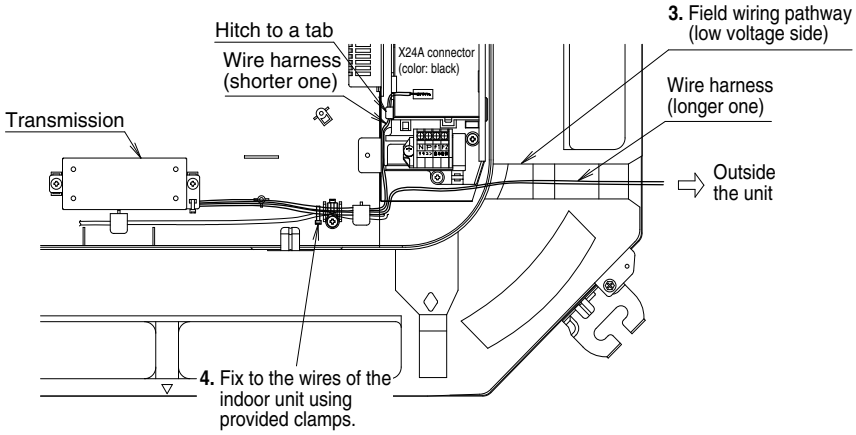
<Attachment of Unit No. label>

5. INSTALLATION OF THE TRANSMISSION

1. Remove the lid of the switch box as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the indoor unit.
2. Fix the transmission at the bottom of the bell mouths on the indoor unit body using provided transmission fixing screws as shown below.
3. Connect the wire harness (shorter one) from the transmission to X24A connector on the printed circuit board in the indoor unit. Bring out the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to outside of the unit through the field wiring pathway (low voltage side) of the indoor unit.
4. Fix two wire harnesses from the transmission using provided clamps.



3P091240-2C



6. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL

Install the decoration panel as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the decoration panel.

NOTE

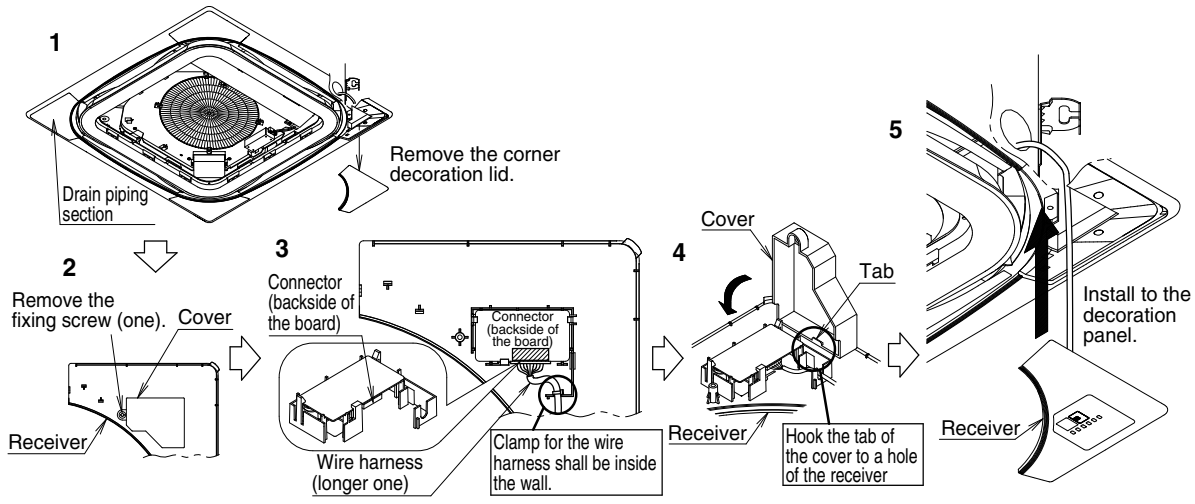
- Watch that the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel, and ceiling and the decoration panel.

7. INSTALLATION OF THE RECEIVER

1. Remove the corner decoration lid of the decoration panel, locating at the opposing corner of the drain piping section. The lid will be no longer in use.

Be sure to install the receiver to this corner.

2. Remove a backside cover of the receiver.
3. Connect the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to the connector of the printed circuit board of the receiver.
4. Attach the backside cover of the receiver in reverse procedure to **2**.
5. Install the receiver to the decoration panel.

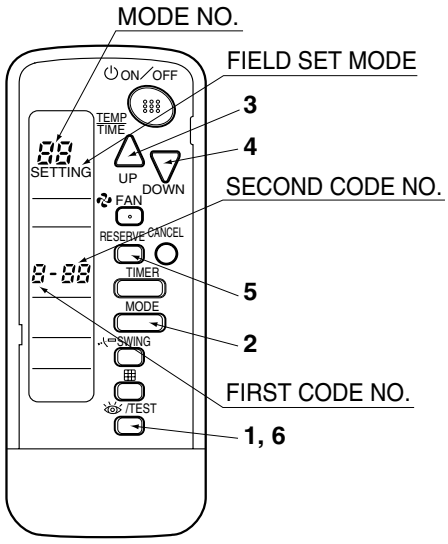


C: 3P091240-2C

2

8. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	light	approx. 10,000 hours	heavy	approx. 5,000 hours	-
			Long-life type		approx. 2,500 hours		approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		approx. 200 hours		approx. 100 hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter		-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		-

NOTE

- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01". However, for the following cases it is set to "02".
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3P091240-2C

9. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.

2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3P091240-2C

1.1.6 Operation Manual (Chinese Traditional)

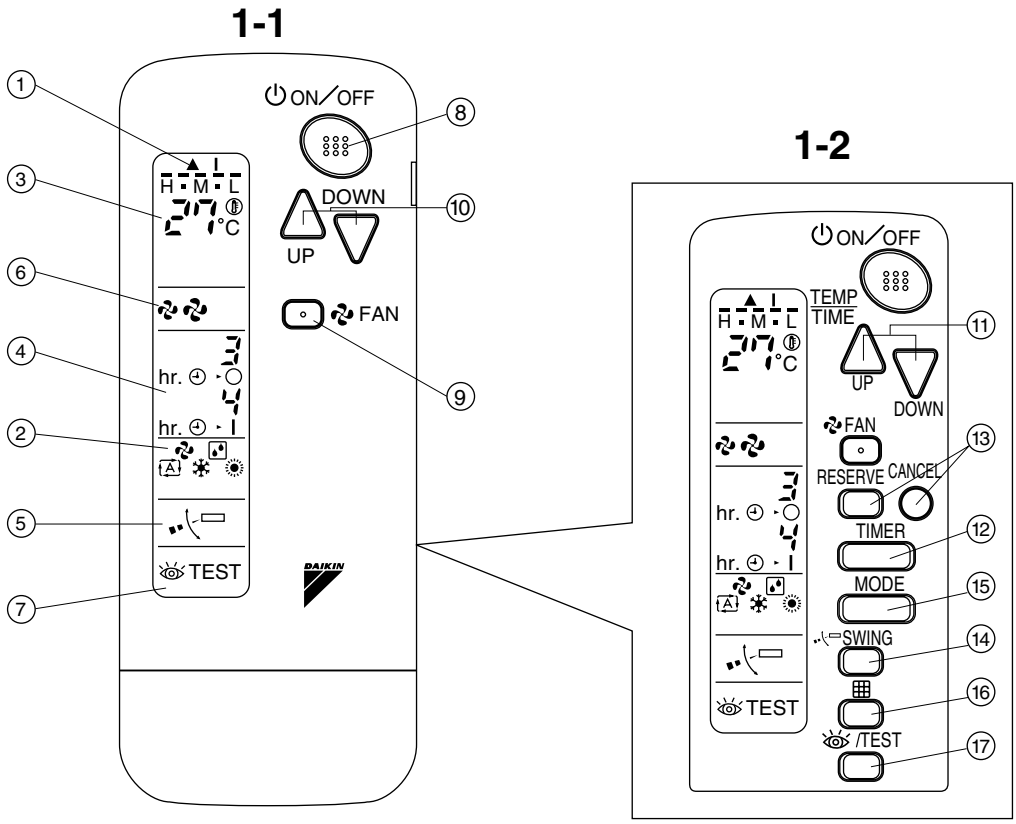


Fig. 1

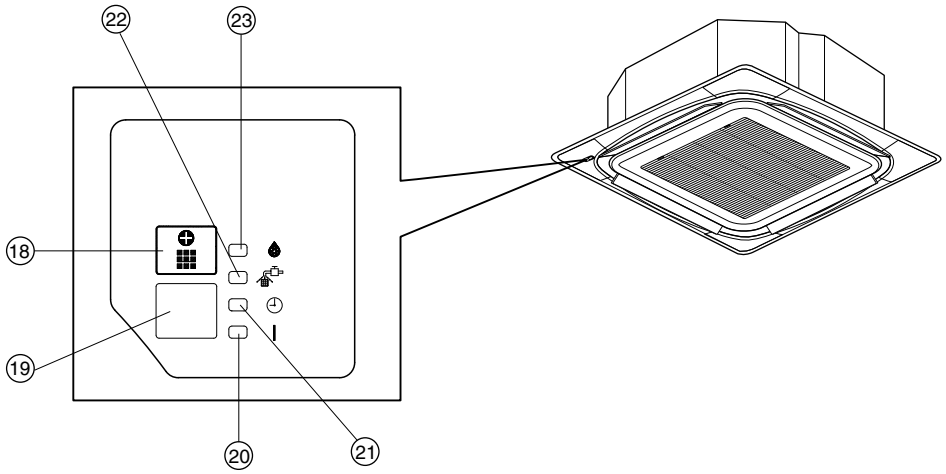


Fig. 2

3P107422-11J

目錄

示意圖 ..... [1]
使用之前 ..... [2]

1 安全注意事項 1
2 操作部分的名稱和功能 1
3 無綫式遙控器的使用 3
4 運轉範圍 4
5 操作步驟 4
6 並非空調機的異常現象 7
7 故障要點的診斷方法 7

1. 安全注意事項

仔細閱讀下列注意事項，正確使用空調機。
下面有三種安全注意和提示事項。

⚠ 警告 ..... 錯誤的操作將會引起人身傷亡等嚴重後果。

⚠ 注意 ..... 錯誤的操作會引起受傷或機器損壞。在某些條件下也會造成嚴重後果。

提示 ..... 本説明將保證正確的操作。

必須遵守這些重要的安全事項。
請將注意事項單保存在手邊，以備今後需要時查閱。
另外，如果將此空調機轉交給其它用户時，請務必將此説明書一起交付給新用户。

⚠ 警告

請勿使冷風長時間直接吹拂人身，也請勿使房間的溫度過冷。
否則將會使您感到不愉快，或者損害您的健康。

如果您發現異常現象（諸如燒焦的氣味或煙火），請立刻切斷電源，並與銷售代理店洽訊解決方法。
如果在發生異常的情況下繼續使用空調機，則最終將會自動停止，以致引起電擊或發生火災。

請委託銷售代理店安裝空調機。
不正確的安裝會引起漏水、電擊或火災。

請根據需要委託銷售代理店進行維修。
如果維修不當，則會造成漏水、電擊或火災。

請勿在運轉中，將手指或其它物體伸入空調機的空氣吸入口、空氣吹出口或空氣方向葉片中。
由於内部有高速轉動的風扇，會發生受傷的危險。

請根據需要委託銷售代理店移動或重新安裝空調機。
不正確的安裝會引起漏水、電擊或火災。

⚠ 注意

請勿將空調機用於空調以外的其它目的。
請勿將空調機用於食品保存、動物、植物、精密機械或藝術加工等特殊目的，因爲可能會影響某些項目的品質。

當與其它暖房設備一起使用空調機時，請經常對房間通風換氣。
如果通風不良將會引起缺氧。

請勿將動物或植物直接被風吹拂。
否則將會引起不良影響。

請勿用沾水的手操作空調機。
否則，將有觸電的危險。

請勿將燃燒設備放置在空調機吹出的風下，否則將會影響正常的燃燒。

請勿在空調機附近使用可燃燒性噴劑，否則將可能會引起火災。

2. 操作部分的名稱和功能（圖 1、2）

1	顯示“▲”（信號傳送）
	當信號被傳送以後，該顯示點亮。
2	顯示“ ”“ ”“ ”“ ”“ ”（運轉方式）
	該顯示表示現在的運轉方式。對於單冷式空調機，不具備“ ”（自動）和“ ”（暖房）。

3	顯示 “ H M L 27.0 °C ”（設定溫度）
	該顯示表示設定的溫度。
4	顯示 “ hr. 3 hr. 4 ”（程式編設時間）
	該顯示表示係統開始和停止的程式編設時間。
5	顯示 “ ”（空氣氣流擋板）
	參照第 5 頁。
6	顯示 “ ” “ ”（送風速度）
	此顯示表示風扇的設定速度。
7	顯示 “ TEST ”（檢驗／試運轉）
	當按下 “檢驗／試運轉” 按鈕，該顯示將顯示係統現在的方式。
8	開／關按鈕
	按該鈕，則係統開始運轉。再按一次該鈕，則係統停止運轉。
9	送風速度控制鈕
	按該鈕，可選擇風扇的速度，可根據您的需要選擇 “高” 或 “低”。
10	溫度設定鈕
	使用該鈕設定溫度（遙控器的前面蓋子關閉時，可以操作）。
11	程式定時器按鈕
	使用該鈕設定程式的 “開始和／或停止” 時間。（在遙控器前面的蓋子打開時，可以操作。）
12	定時器方式起動／停止按鈕
	參照第 6 頁。
13	定時器預約／取消按鈕
	參照第 6 頁。
14	空氣氣流方向調節鈕
	參照第 5 頁。
15	運轉方式選擇鈕
	按該鈕，選擇運轉方式。
16	濾塵器清掃指示復位鈕
	請參照室內機附帶的使用説明書中 “維修” 一節。
17	檢驗／試運轉鈕
	該鈕僅可供專業維修人員進行維修時使用。

18	應急運轉鈕
	該開關爲在遙控器不能工作時的備用開關。
19	接收器
	該部分接收遙控器發出的信號。
20	運轉指示燈（紅色）
	當空調機運轉時，該指示燈保持點亮狀態。當空調機發生故障時，該指示燈閃爍。
21	定時器指示燈（綠色）
	當定時器被設定後，該指示燈保持點亮。
22	空氣濾塵器清掃時間指示燈（紅色）
	當濾塵器到了該清掃的時間時，該指示燈點亮。
23	除霜指示燈（橙色）
	當開始除霜運轉時，該指示燈點亮。（單冷機這盞燈不點亮。）

提示

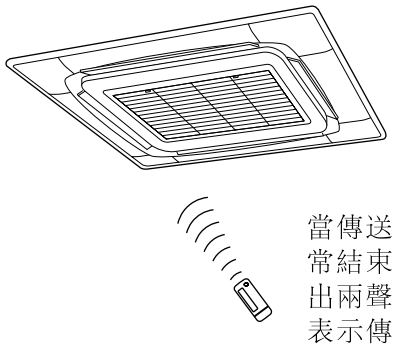
- 爲了説明的方便，所有的顯示都顯示於圖 1，這與實際運轉的情形不同。
- 圖 1-2 表示遙控器前面蓋打開。
- 如果空氣濾網清掃時間指示燈點亮，則請按照室內機附帶的使用説明書對空氣濾網進行清掃。
  清掃並且將空氣濾網裝回原處以後，請按遙控器上的濾網指示復位按鈕。接收器上的濾網時間指示燈將熄滅。
- 接通電源後除霜指示燈閃爍。這並非故障。

3P107422-11J

3. 無綫式遙控器的使用

遙控器的使用注意事項

將遙控器的傳送部分對準空調機的接收部分。
如果在室內機的接收部分和遙控器之間有窗簾等東西遮擋，則將無法正常操作。



當傳送的信號正常結束後，將發出兩聲電子音，表示傳送正常。

傳送距離大約爲 7m。

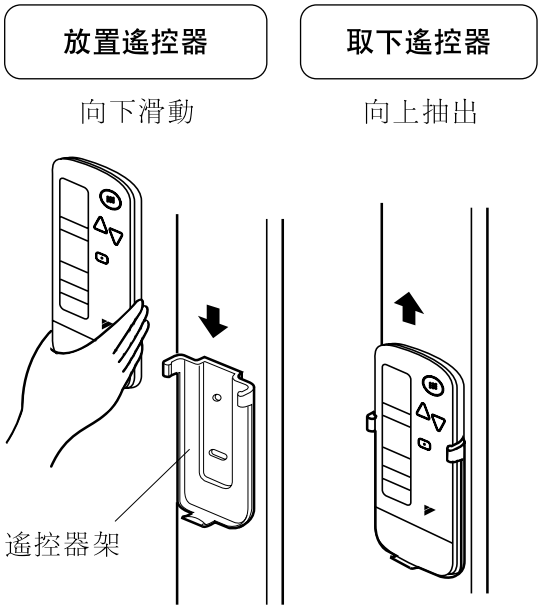
請勿使遙控器跌落或沾水。
否則將會損壞。

切勿使用堅硬、尖銳的物體按壓遙控器的按鈕。
遙控器可能會損壞。

安裝位置

- 當房間內使用熒光燈時，可能不能正常接收遙控器的信號。當購買新的熒光燈時，請與銷售人員洽詢。
- 如果遙控器的操作會引起其它電氣設備的動作，請將該設備移動到較遠的位置，或與銷售商店洽詢。

將遙控器放置於遙控器架上。
使用附帶的螺絲釘將遙控器架安裝於牆壁或柱子上。（應使遙控器能正常傳送。）

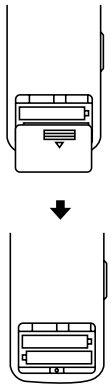


如何放乾電池

(1) 按照箭頭標出的方向，拆下遙控器的後蓋。

(2) 裝入乾電池
用兩節 LR03<IEC> 乾電池。放乾電池時（＋）和（－）不要放反。

(3) 按原樣按好後蓋。



— 更換電池時

在正常使用時，電池的壽命約爲 1 年左右。
但是，當室內機不能反應操作或對操作反應遲鈍時以及顯示變暗時，請隨時更換。

[注意]

- 請一起更換所有的電池，請勿將新舊電池混合使用。
- 在長期不使用遙控器的情況下，請將內部的電池取出，以防止電池漏液。

處於中央控制係統控制下
如果室內機處於中央控制下，必須改換遙控器的設定。此時，
請與大金銷售商聯係。

4. 運轉範圍

分體式係統

如果溫度或濕度超過了下列的條件，則保安器件可能會動作，以致空調機不能運轉，並且有時可能會發生從室內機向外漏水的情況。

冷房 [°C]

室外機	室內			室外溫度	
	溫度		濕度		
• RZQ125 KTLT • RZQ140 KTLT	DB	21 至 35	80% 以下	DB	－5 至 50
	WB	14 至 25			

暖房 [°C]

室外機	室內溫度		室外溫度	
• RZQ125 KTLT • RZQ140 KTLT	DB	15 至 27	DB	－14 至 21
			WB	－15 至 15.5

DB: 乾球溫度
WB: 濕球溫度

遙控器可設定溫度範圍爲 16 ～ 32 ℃。

5. 操作步驟

請參看第 [1] 頁圖 1

- 熱泵式空調機和單冷式空調機的操作步驟不同。請向您購買空調機的大金銷售店確認空調機的形式。
- 爲了保護空調機，請在運轉的 6 個小時之前接通空調機的電源。
- 如果電源在運轉中停電，當來電以後，空調機將自動起動。

冷房、暖房、自動、送風和程式除濕運轉

按下列所示的步驟進行操作。

- 僅VRV係列或分體式空調機可以選擇自動運轉。
- 單冷型可以選擇 “冷房”、“送風” 和 “除濕” 功能。

〈〈 對於不具備冷房／暖房轉換遙控開關的係統 〉〉

請參看第 [1] 頁圖 1-1, 2

1 MODE **運行模式選擇器**

按運轉方式選擇按鈕數次，在下列方式中選擇您需要的運轉方式。

■ 冷房運轉 ..... “❄”
■ 暖房運轉 ..... “☀”
■ 自動運轉 ..... “A”

- 選擇此功能時，機器自動在制冷 / 取暖間轉換。

■ 送風運轉 ..... “”
■ 除濕功能 ..... “”

- 此功能可以降低房間裡的濕度而儘量不影響溫度。
- 微型計算機自動控制溫度和風扇速度。
- 如果室內溫度低於 16 ℃，此功能不起作用。

2 ON/OFF **開／關**

按開／關按鈕
運轉指示燈點亮，空調機開始運轉。

提示

- 在空調機停止運轉之後，請勿立刻切斷空調機電源。請至少等 5 分鐘以上。
如果立刻切斷電源將會引起漏水或損壞空調機。

3P107422-11J

〈〈 對於具備冷房，暖房轉換遙控開關的係統 〉〉

[暖房運轉的説明]
除霜運轉

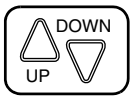
- 隨著室外機的熱交換器的冰霜的增加，熱效率將降低，然後係統開始除霜運轉。
- 風扇停止運轉，室内機的除霜指示燈點亮。在除霜運轉的 6 至 8 分鐘（最長爲 10 分鐘）以後，係統重新返回到暖房運轉。

暖房能力和室外機空氣溫度

- 當室外溫度過低時，暖房能力將會下降。如果您感到寒冷，請同時使用其它的暖氣設備。
- 熱空氣循環到整個房間。當空調機最初起動時，到整個房間溫暖起來，需要一定的時間。當空調機達到設定的溫度以後，内部的風扇將自動變爲慢速轉動。在達到設定溫度之前，所有的操作都將等待一定的時間。
- 如果因爲熱空氣聚積在天花板處而仍然感到腳冷，最好再用一個循環器（使室内空氣循環的風扇）。詳細説明，請與購買空調機的商店詢問。

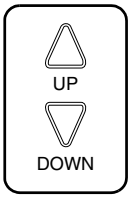
調節

請根據下列的步驟，設定程式中的溫度、送風速度和空氣氣流方向。



溫度設定

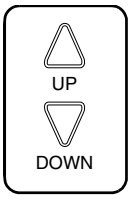
按溫度設定鈕，編設程式中的設定溫度。



每按一次該鈕，設定溫度將昇高 1 ℃。

每按一次該鈕，設定溫度將降低 1 ℃。

在自動運轉的情況下



每按一次該鈕，設定溫度將移動到 "H" 一側。

每按一次該鈕，設定溫度將移動到 "L" 一側。

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
設定溫度	25	23	22	21	19

- 不能設定送風運轉。

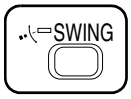
提示

- 遙控器可設定溫度範圍爲 16 ～ 32 ℃。



風扇速度調節

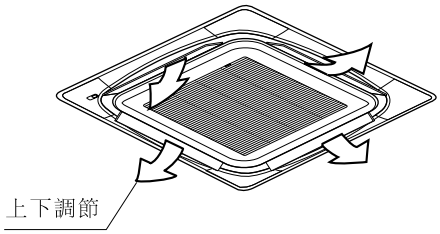
按風扇速度控制鈕
可以選擇高速或低速送風速度。
爲了保護空調機，有時微基片可以控制風扇速度。



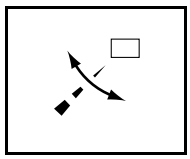
空氣氣流方向調節

上下方向

- 葉片的運動極限可以調節。詳細請向大金銷售商洽詢。



按空氣氣流方向調節鈕，選擇如下所示的空氣方向。



顯示空氣氣流方向將連續變化。(自動擺動設定)



按空氣氣流方向調節鈕，選擇您希望的空氣氣流方向。



顯示消失，希望的空氣氣流方向被固定。(固定的空氣氣流設定)

葉片的運動

對於下列的條件，電腦控制空氣氣流的方向，因此可能實際氣流方向與顯示的方向有所不同。

運轉方式	冷房	暖房
運轉條件	• 當以水平的空氣氣流方向進行連續運轉時	• 當室內溫度高於設定溫度時 • 在除霜運轉時 (葉片呈水平狀，以免冷風直接吹到房間裡的人身上。)

提示

- 當葉片向下時，您如果想進行冷房運轉或程式除濕，空氣氣流方向可能不能隨意改變。這並非是機器故障，而是爲了防止空氣吹出口處結露水滴落。
- 運轉方式包括自動運轉。

程式定時器運轉

請按下述指令操作。

- 定時器可以用下述兩種方法操作。
  編設停止時間（◷▸○）
  .... 當設定的時間經過以後，空調機停止運轉。
  編設開始時間（◷▸|）
  .... 當設定的時間經過以後，空調機開始運轉。
- 定時器最長可以編設 72 個小時的時間。
- 可以同時編設開始和停止的時間。

1 TIMER 定時模式起動／停止

按定時器方式起動／停止鈕數次，選擇顯示的方式。
顯示閃爍。
進行定時器停止的設定 .... "◷▸○"
進行定時器開始的設定 .... "◷▸|"

2 UP DOWN 設定時間

按編設時間鈕，設定空調機的停止或開始運轉的時間。

UP 每按該鈕一次，時間前進一個小時。

DOWN 每按該鈕一次，時間後退一個小時。

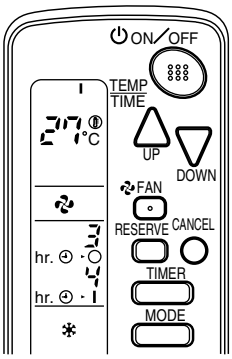
3 RESERVE 定時器預約

按定時器預約按鈕
定時器設定操作結束。
顯示將從閃爍變爲持續點亮。

4 CANCEL 定時器方式停止

按定時器停止按鈕取消程式。
這時顯示器熄滅。

例子。



當定時器設定爲在 3 個小時以後停止空調機的運轉，然後在 4 個小時以後開始空調機的運轉，則空調機將在 3 個小時以後停止，並在 1 個小時以後重新開始運轉。

提示

- 當定時器設定以後，顯示將指示剩餘的時間。

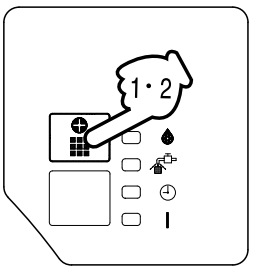
應急運轉

當遙控器的電池耗盡或找不到等情況下，使用處於室內機吹出格柵之間的開關，可以運轉空調機。當遙控器不能工作時，但是電池耗盡指示燈未顯示時，請向銷售商店洽詢。

［開始］

1 請按應急運轉鈕。

空調機將以上一次運轉的方式運轉。
空調機以上一次設定空氣氣流方向進行運轉。



［停止］

2 再按一次應急運轉開關。

成組控制或兩個遙控器控制係統時的注意事項

本係統可以進行除分別控制以外的兩種控制方式（一個遙控器控制一臺室內機）。確認您所使用的係統是否爲下列的控制方式。

■ 成組控制方式
一個遙控器控制最多 16 臺以內的室內機。所有的室內機均被設定。

■ 雙遙控器控制方式
兩個遙控器控制一臺室內機。（在成組控制方式時，可控制一組室內機。）
該室內機可進行分別控制。

提示
- 不能僅由無綫式遙控器組成兩個遙控器控制的係統。（可以組成由一個有綫和無綫的遙控器組成兩個遙控器的控制係統。）
- 在兩個遙控器的控制方式時，無綫式遙控器不能控制定時器運轉。
- 與其它 3 個指示燈不同，僅室內機運轉指示燈顯示功能。

提示
- 當改變成組控制和兩個遙控器控制係統的組合或設定時，請與大金銷售商店洽詢有關事項。

6. 並非空調機的異常現象

下述現象並不表示空調機發生異常。

I. 空調機不能運轉
- 當按下開／關以後，空調機不能立刻再開始運轉。
  如果運轉指示燈點亮，則表示空調機爲正常狀態。由於爲了防止空調機發生過負荷現象，保安器件動作，因此不能立刻再開始運轉。等待 3 分鐘以後，空調機將自動重新開始運轉。
- 當按下溫度設定鈕，又將其返回到原來的位置時，空調機將不立刻開始運轉。
  這是由於爲了防止空調機發生過負荷現象，保安器件動作，因此不能立刻再開始運轉。等待 3 分鐘以後，空調機將自動重新開始運轉。
- 如果接收電子音立刻重復 3 聲（當正常運轉時僅響 2 聲）。
  表示被設定爲中央控制用選配件控制器的控制。
- 當暖房運轉起動時，室內機顯示器上的除霜指示燈點亮。
  這表示警告將有冷空氣從空調機吹出。這並非空調機的故障。
- 室外機停止。
  因爲室溫達到設定溫度。室內機轉爲送風運轉。

7. 故障要點的診斷方法

I. 緊急停止

當空調機緊急停止時，室內機的運轉指示燈將開始閃爍。請採取下述操作步驟，讀取顯示器上出現的異常符號。請與銷售商店聯繫，並通知異常符號。異常符號將有助於發現故障的部位，加快修理的時間。

1 TEST

按檢驗／試運轉鈕，選擇檢驗方式“ 0 ”。

在顯示器上顯示“ 0 ”並閃爍。“室內機”點亮。

2 UP DOWN

按程式定時器時間設定鈕，改變室內機號碼。

按該鈕，改變室內機號碼，直到室內機發出電子音，並根據電子音的次數進行如下操作。

電子音的次數

3 聲短暫音 ..... 進行從 3 至 6 的所有步驟的操作。

1 聲短暫音 ..... 進行從 3 至 6 的步驟的操作。

1 聲長音 ..... 正常狀態。

3 MODE

按運轉方式選擇鈕

在異常符號左側的 "0" 閃爍顯示。

4 UP DOWN

按程式定時器的時間設定鈕，改變異常符號。

按該鈕，直到室內機發出兩聲電子音。

5 MODE

按運轉方式選擇鈕

在異常符號右側的 "0" 閃爍顯示。

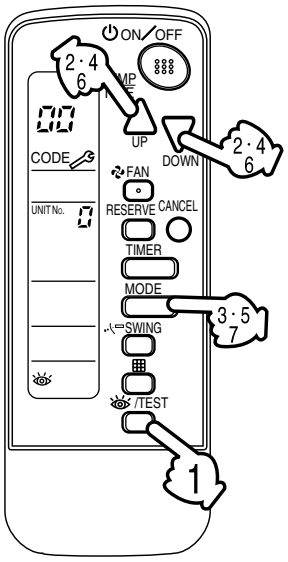
6 UP DOWN

按程式定時器的時間設定鈕，改變異常符號。

按該鈕，直到室內機發出一聲長音。
當室內機發出一聲長音時，異常符號將確定。

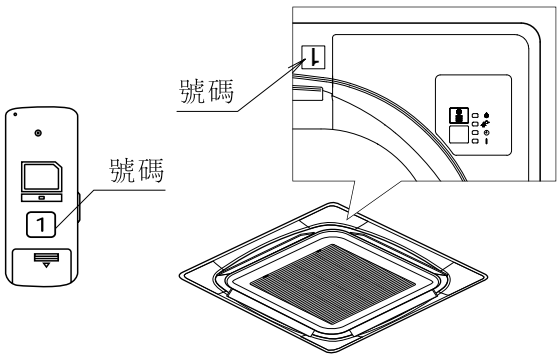
7 MODE **顯示的復位**

按運轉方式選擇鈕，可使顯示回到正常的狀態。



II. **在緊急停止的情況下**

1. **室內機完全不能運轉。**
   - 檢查室內機的接收器是否暴露於直射陽光或強烈光綫之下。使接收器避開光綫。
   - 檢查遙控器內的電池。更換電池。
   - 檢查室內機的號碼與遙控器的號碼是否相等。



使用與室內機相同號碼的遙控器進行操作。
室內機不能接收從不同號碼的遙控器發出的信號。(如果没有標明號碼，則可認爲其號碼爲 "1")

3P107422-11J

2. **空調機可以運轉，但是没有充足的冷房或暖房能力。**
   - 設定的溫度可能不當。
   - 送風速度被設定爲低速。
   - 空氣氣流的角度設定不當。

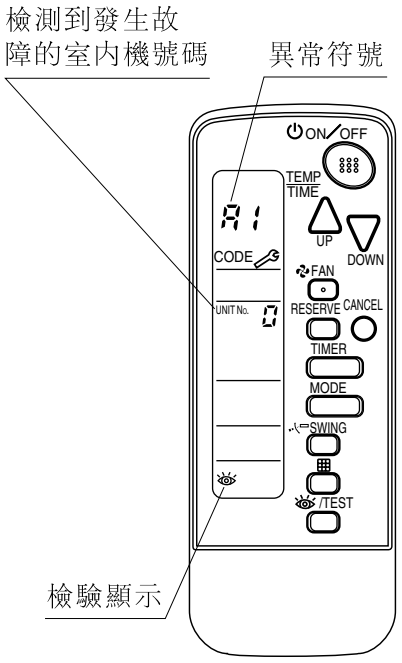
在下列情況下，請與銷售店聯

⚠ 警告

發生異常（焦糊氣味等）時，請立刻切斷電源、與購買的銷售店聯繫。如果在異常的狀況下繼續使用，則會發生故障、觸電或火災等。

[現象]

室内機的顯示部分的運轉指示燈閃爍，完全不能運轉。



[進行下列處置之後再運轉。]

使用遙控器進行故障診斷，並將顯示部分的異常符號（A1~UF）向銷售店聯繫。
(請參照第 7 頁。)

1.1.7 Installation Manual (Chinese Traditional)

DAIKIN

BRC7F632F 無綫遙控器組件 安裝説明書

目 錄

1. 安全注意事項 1
2. 安裝之前 2
3. 遙控器的安裝 2
4. 地址的設定 3
5. 傳送器的安裝 4
6. 裝飾面板的安裝 5
7. 接收器的安裝 5
8. 現場設定 6
9. 試運轉 7

1. 安全注意事項

在安裝空調機之前，請仔細閱讀此“安全注意事項”，必須正確進行安裝。在完全安裝結束以後，請注意在開始運轉時檢查空調機運轉是否正確。請向用户説明空調機的操作和維修方法。

注意符號的表示

⚠ 注意 ..... 如果忽視此注意事項，將可能引起人身受傷或機器損壞。

提示 ..... 這些説明將保證空調機的正確使用。

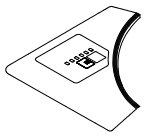
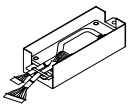
⚠ 注意

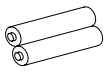
- 請同時參看室内機和裝飾面板附帶的安裝説明書。
- 請檢查下列安裝條件是否滿足。
  - 確認没有影響無綫遙控器操作的物體。(確認在接收器附近没有光源和熒光燈。同時，也應確認没有陽光直接照射到接收器。)
  - 確保運轉指示燈和其它指示清晰易見。
- 在裝飾面板上有一個安裝此組件的位置。因此，要確認如果安裝在此位置的話，無綫遙控器發出的訊號是否易於傳送，顯示是否易於看清。
- 如果同時安裝此組件和新鮮空氣吸入組件，可以合用一個管道。請參看新鮮空氣吸入組件的安裝説明書(選購件説明書)。

2. 安裝之前

2-1 附件

檢查組件中是否具備下述附件。

名稱	接收器	無綫遙控器	傳送器	遙控器安放架	傳送器安裝用螺絲	安裝遙控器安放架的螺絲釘
數量	1 組	1 件	1 組	1 件	2 件	2 件
形狀						

名稱	扣帶	乾電池 LR03(AM4)	室內機號碼標簽	現場設定標簽	使用説明書
數量	1 件	2 件	1 件	1 件	1 件
形狀					

2-2 安裝的提示

- 必須向用户説明本空調機的正確使用方法，並將附帶的使用説明書交給用户。

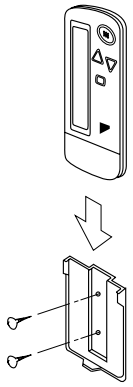
3. 遙控器的安裝

提示

- 請勿投扔遙控器或給予較大的沖擊。請勿將遙控器保存於多濕或直射陽光照射的地方。
- 當運轉時，請將遙控器的發射部分指向接收器的方向。
- 遙控器的訊號直接傳送距離大約爲 7m。
- 當有諸如窗簾等東西擋住接收器或遙控器時，則訊號無法傳送。

- 安裝在牆上或柱子上時

1. 使用遙控器安放架螺絲固定安放架。

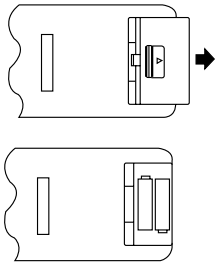


2. 將遙控器從上面滑動插入遙控器安放架。

2

• 插入電池的方法

1. 向箭頭所示方向推動遙控器後蓋，將其打開。



2. 插入附帶的乾電池。插入乾電池時，應注意使電池上標記的極性（＋）和（－）正確。然後蓋上電池盒蓋。

4. 地址的設定

決定遙控器的主／副選擇和地址設定。
如果在一個房間內使用幾個無綫遙控器同時運轉，請對接收器和無綫遙控器進行地址設定。
如果在一個房間內設定幾個有綫遙控器，則應改變接收器的主／副開關的設定。

設定步驟

(1)接收器的設定

請按下表設定 PC 板上的無綫地址開關 (SS2)。

室內機號碼	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
無綫地址開關 (SS2)			

當在一個房間內，同時使用有綫遙控器和無綫遙控器時，應將有綫遙控器設定爲 "主"。然後，將接收器上的主／副開關 (SS1) 設定爲 "副"。

	主	副
主／副開關 (SS1)		

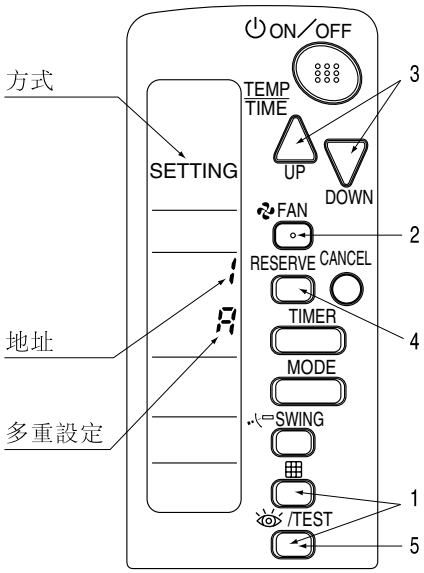
(2)無綫遙控器的地址設定（出廠時設定爲 "1"）

〈從遙控器設定〉

1. 持續同時按下 [⊞] 按鈕和 [/TEST] 按鈕 4 秒鐘以上，進入現場設定方式。(在右側數字顯示部分的顯示。)
2. 按 [FAN] 按鈕，選擇多重設定 (A／b)。
   每按一次該按鈕，顯示將重復切換於 "A" 和 "b"。
3. 按 "△" (UP) 按鈕和 "▽" (DOWN) 按鈕，設定地址。

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   可以將地址設定爲 1 至 6，但是，只能設定爲 1 至 3 與接收器的地址相同。(接收器在地址 4～6 時不能動作。)
4. 按 [RESERVE] 按鈕，進入設定方式。
5. 持續按住 [/TEST] 按鈕 1 秒鐘以上，退出現場設定方式，並回到標準的顯示。



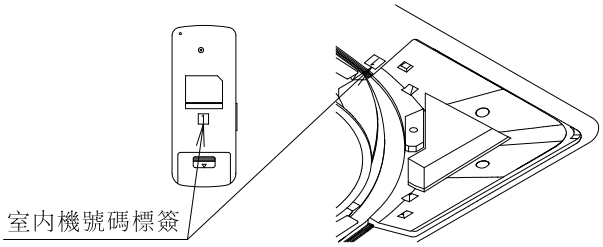
多重設定 A ／ b

當室內機由外部控制（中央控制器等）運轉時，則不接收從本遙控器操作的開／關和溫度設定。請檢查用户希望設定的內容，並進行下列的多重設定。

遙控器		當運行由其他空調機和設備控制時動作。
多重設定	遙控器顯示	
A：標準	所有的內容都顯示。	當由遙控器發令轉換運行內容，例如改變溫度設定或其他類似項目時，室內機拒絶接受指令。 (信號接收聲 "嚦一" 或 "嗶克一嗶克一嗶克") 結果，室內機的運行狀態和遙控器的顯示內容不一致。
b：多種控制系統	在執行之後，操作將短時間殘留顯示。	因爲遙控器的顯示已經消失，不會再出現上述的不一致現象。

(3) 將室內機號碼標簽貼在室內機上以及無綫遙控器的背面。

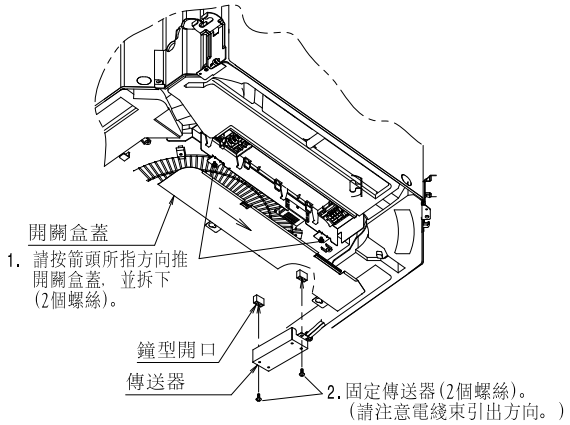
[注意事項]
設定接收器的室內機號碼，使其與無綫遙控器的號碼相對應。如果兩者的設定不同，則從遙控器發出的訊號將不能被接收。



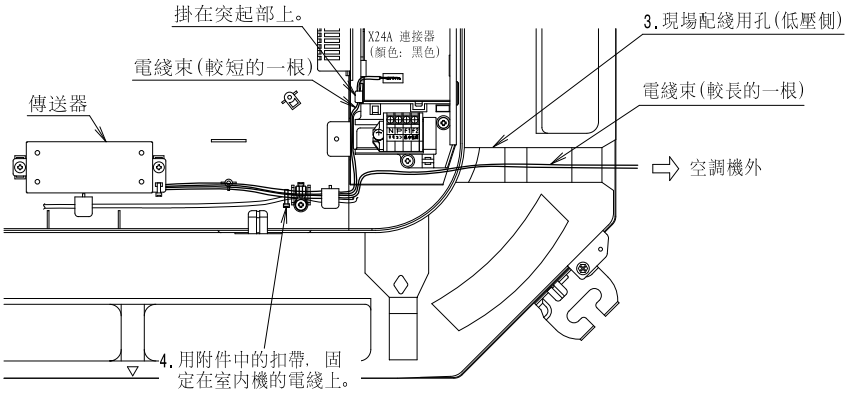
<貼室內機號碼標簽>

5. 傳送器的安裝

1. 請按室內機附帶的安裝説明書中所述，拆下開關盒蓋。
2. 請如下圖所示，用附件中的傳送器安裝用螺絲，將傳送器安裝在室內機機身的鐘型開口的底部。
3. 連接從傳送器至室內機 PC 板 X24A 連接器的電綫束（較短的一根）。將電綫束（較長的一根）從傳送器經室內機的現場配綫用孔（低壓側）引向機外。
4. 用附件中的扣帶將從傳送器引出的兩根電綫束扎緊。



2



6. 裝飾面板的安裝

請按裝飾面板附帶的安裝說明書安裝裝飾面板。

提示

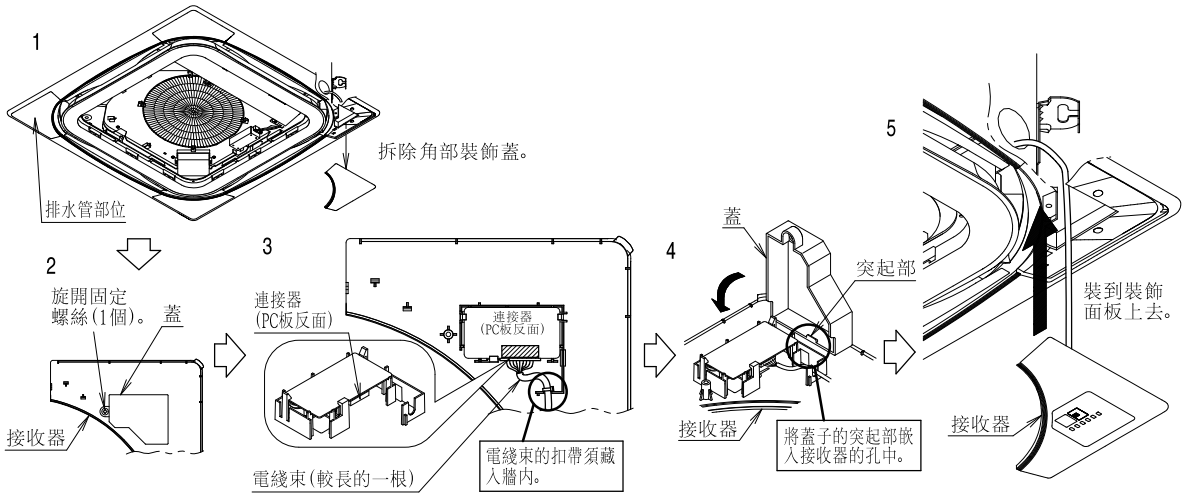
- **檢查從傳送器來的電綫束（較長的一根）是否夾在室內機和裝飾面板之間，或夾在天花板和裝飾面板之間。**

7. 接收器的安裝

1. **拆除排水管部位對角綫處的裝飾面板的角部裝飾蓋。此蓋不再使用。**

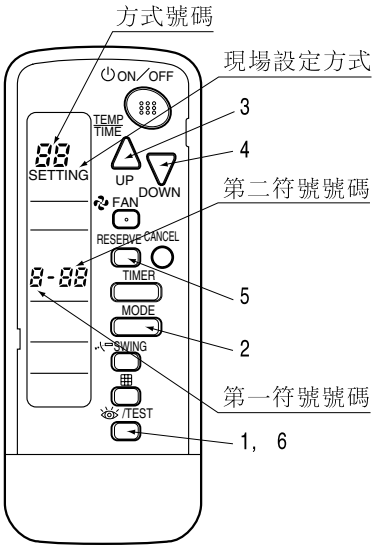
   接收器必須裝在這個角上。

2. **拆下接收器的後蓋。**
3. **連接從傳送器至接收器 PC 板連接器的電綫束（較長的一根）。**
4. **蓋好接收器後蓋，順序與 2 相反。**
5. **將接收器裝到裝飾面板上去。**



3P091240-2C

8. 現場設定



如果室內機上還安裝了選配附件，則可能需要改變室內機的設定。請參照各個附件的使用說明書（選購件說明書）。

步驟

1. 當處於正常的方式時，持續按住 [/TEST] 鈕 4 秒鐘以上，則將進入 "現場設定方式"。
2. 按 [MODE] 鈕，選擇希望的方式號碼。
3. 按 "△ UP" 鈕，選擇 "第一符號號碼"。
4. 按 "▽ DOWN" 鈕，選擇 "第二符號號碼"。
5. 按 [RESERVE] 鈕，確定設定的內容。
6. 按 [/TEST] 鈕，返回到 "正常方式"。

（例如）
如果欲將空氣濾塵網的清掃時間被設定爲 "濾塵網污垢嚴重" 時，則應設定：方式號碼＝ "10"，第一符號號碼＝ "0"，第二符號號碼＝ "02"。

方式號碼	第一符號號碼	設定的說明		第二符號號碼 註)				
				01		02		03
10	0	濾塵網污垢嚴重／輕微（設定濾塵網清掃指示顯示的時間）（當濾塵網污垢爲嚴重時，則設定的濾塵網清掃時間將減少爲一半。）	超長壽命濾塵網	輕微	約爲 10,000 小時	嚴重	約爲 5,000 小時	-
			長壽命濾塵網		約爲 2,500 小時		約爲 1,250 小時	
			標準濾塵網		約爲 200 小時		約爲 100 小時	
	1	長壽命濾塵網（設定濾塵網清掃指示顯示的時間）（當使用超長壽命濾塵網時，要重新設定）		長壽命濾塵網		超長壽命濾塵網		-
	3	設定爲累計總體濾塵網指示的顯示期間。（當濾塵網指示不顯示時設定）		顯示		不顯示		-
13	0	高天花板設定（對於安裝在高於 2.7m 的天花板上的設定）		標準		高天花板 1		高天花板 2
	1	空氣氣流方向的選擇（當安裝了封閉塊時的設定）		F		T		W
	4	空氣氣流方向的設定		向上		標準		-

提示

- 第二符號號碼出廠時設定爲 "01"。但在下列情況下，要設定爲 "02"。
  - 空氣氣流方向的設定

請勿設定表中未列出的設定內容。
對於使用無綫遙控器的成組控制，對控制組內所有的室內機的初始設定均相同。（對於成組控制，請參照室內機附帶的安裝說明書中關於成組控制的內容。）

9. 試運轉

- 根據室內機附帶的安裝說明書中的說明，進行試運轉。
- 在冷媒配管、排水管和電氣作業完畢以後，爲了保護空調機，請依照表中的內容進行運轉。

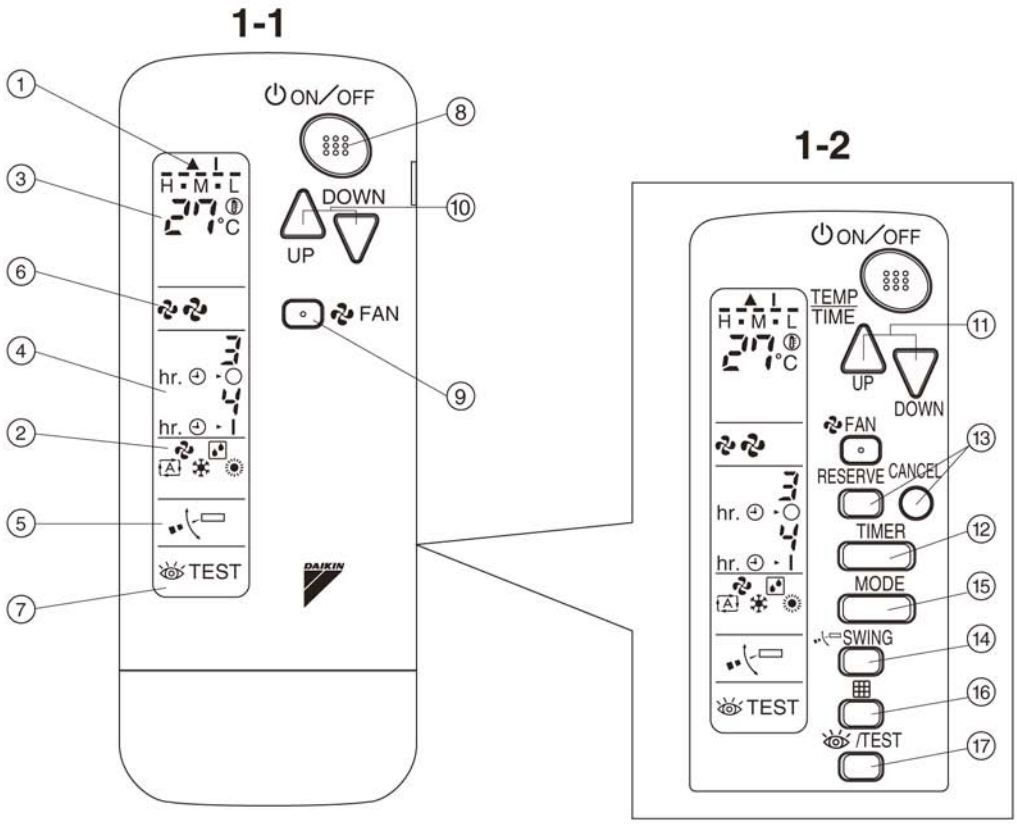
[注意事項]

1. 如果空調機不運轉，請參照空調機上附帶的異常診斷標簽進行判斷。
2. 對於分別運轉系統型空調機，請參照室外機附帶的安裝說明書。

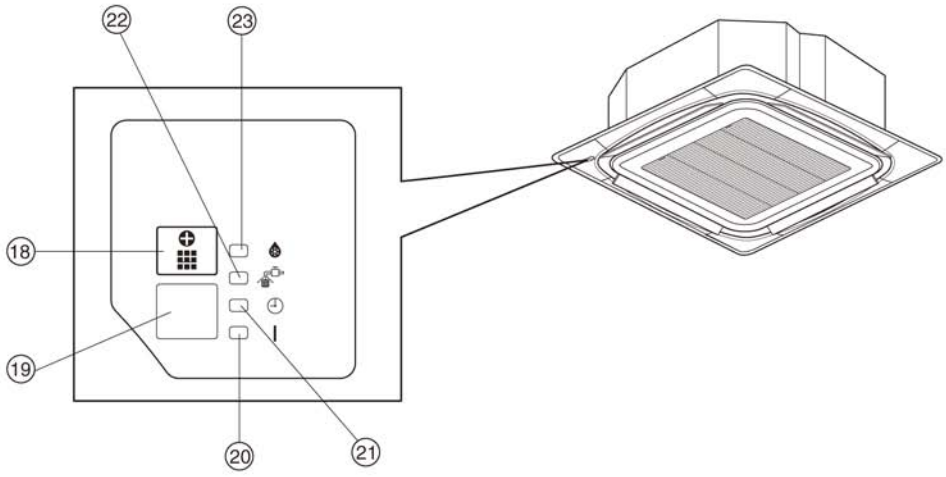
順序	運轉
(1)	打開氣體側的止流閥。
(2)	打開液體側的止流閥。
(3)	向曲軸箱通電 6 個小時。(單冷式空調機不需要。)
(4)	使用遙控器設定冷房，然後按 ON/OFF 鈕，開始運轉。
(5)	按 /TEST 鈕兩次，則進行 3 分鐘的試運轉。
(6)	按 SWING 鈕，檢查其動作狀態。
(7)	按 /TEST 鈕，進行正常運轉。
(8)	根據使用說明書，檢查、確認各項功能。

3P091240-2C

1.1.8 Operation Manual (Thai)



รูปที่ 1



รูปที่ 2

3PN12150-1

สารบัญ

รูปภาพ.....[1]
ก่อนใช้งาน .....[2]

1. ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย.....1
2. ชื่อและหน้าที่ในส่วนการใช้งาน 2
3. การใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย 3
4. ช่วงอุณหภูมิการทำงาน.....4
5. ขั้นตอนการใช้งาน.....5
6. อาการที่ไม่ใช่เกิดจากการที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ.....8
7. การวิเคราะห์จุดที่เกิดปัญหา 9

1. ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย

ศึกษาข้อควรระวังต่อไปนี้อย่างละเอียด และใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศของท่านอย่างถูกต้อง

ข้อควรระวังเพื่อความปลอดภัยในที่นี้แบ่งออกเป็น 3 ประเภทดังนี้:

⚠ **คำเตือน** .....หากใช้งานไม่เหมาะสม อาจก่อให้เกิดผลเสียหายร้ายแรง เช่นเสียชีวิตหรือได้รับบาดเจ็บสาหัสได้

⚠ **ข้อควรระวัง** .....หากใช้งานไม่เหมาะสม อาจทำให้อุปกรณ์เสียหาย หรือได้รับบาดเจ็บ และในบางกรณี อาจก่อให้เกิดผลเสียหายร้ายแรงได้เช่นกัน

หมายเหตุ .....คำแนะนำเพื่อการใช้งานเหล่านี้จะช่วยทำให้เกิดความมั่นใจในการใช้อุปกรณ์ได้อย่างถูกต้อง

โปรดปฏิบัติตามข้อควรระวังเหล่านี้อย่างเคร่งครัดเพื่อความปลอดภัย

เก็บเอกสารคำเตือนนี้ไว้ใกล้ตัว เพื่อสามารถใช้อ้างอิงได้เมื่อจำเป็น

ในกรณีที่เครื่องปรับอากาศเปลี่ยนมือผู้ใช้ โปรดมอบหนังสือคู่มือเล่มนี้ให้กับผู้ใช้ใหม่ด้วย

⚠ คำเตือน

- **อย่าอยู่ในตำแหน่งที่รับลมเย็นจากเครื่องปรับอากาศโดยตรงเป็นเวลานาน และอย่าให้อากาศภายในห้องเย็นจนเกินไป**
  เนื่องจากท่านอาจจะรู้สึกไม่สบายหรือทำให้สุขภาพเสื่อมโทรมได้
- **หากท่านพบสิ่งผิดสังเกต (เช่น ได้กลิ่นควันไฟ) ให้ปิดสวิตช์ แล้วติดต่อขอรับคำแนะนำจากตัวแทนจำหน่าย**
  การเดินเครื่องต่อไปในสภาวะผิดปกติ อาจทำให้เครื่องปรับอากาศเสียหาย ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ขอให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านทำการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์**
  การติดตั้งที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจจะทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ติดต่อขอรับบริการบำรุงรักษาและซ่อมแซมจากตัวแทนจำหน่าย เมื่อจำเป็น**
  การบำรุงรักษาและซ่อมแซมที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจก่อให้เกิดปัญหาน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **อย่าสอดนิ้วหรือวัตถุใดๆ ลงในช่องลมเข้า ช่องลมออก และอุปกรณ์ปรับทิศทางลมในขณะที่เครื่องกำลังทำงาน**
  ท่านอาจได้รับอันตรายจากพัดลมความเร็วสูงภายในตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศได้
- **ขอให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านรื้อถอนหรือติดตั้งอุปกรณ์ของท่านเมื่อจำเป็น**
  การติดตั้งที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจจะทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้

⚠ ข้อควรระวัง

- **อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศเพื่อวัตถุประสงค์อื่นนอกเหนือจากการปรับอากาศ**
  อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศเพื่อวัตถุประสงค์อื่นๆ เช่น การถนอมอาหาร การเก็บรักษา สัตว์ พืช เครื่องจักรความแม่นยำสูง หรืองานศิลปะต่างๆ เนื่องจากอาจมีผลกระทบต่อประสิทธิภาพ คุณภาพของวัตถุดังกล่าว
- **เมื่อใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศควบคู่กับอุปกรณ์ทำความร้อนอื่นๆ ให้ระบายอากาศในห้องเป็นครั้งคราว**
  หากไม่ระบายอากาศในห้องบ้างอาจทำให้ออกซิเจนในห้องไม่เพียงพอได้
- **อย่าวางพืชหรือสัตว์ไว้ในกระแสลมที่ออกจากเครื่องปรับอากาศ**
  สิ่งเหล่านี้อาจได้รับผลกระทบร้ายแรงได้
- **อย่าแตะต้องหรือใช้งานเครื่องปรับอากาศในขณะที่มือเปียก**
  มิฉะนั้นท่านอาจได้รับอันตรายจากไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรได้

- **อย่าวางอุปกรณ์ที่มีการเผาไหม้ใดๆ ไว้ในกระแสลมที่ออกจากเครื่องปรับอากาศ เนื่องจากอาจก่อให้เกิดการเผาไหม้ที่ไม่สมบูรณ์ภายในอุปกรณ์นั้นได้**
- **อย่าวางหรือใช้สเปรย์ไวไฟใดๆ ใกล้เครื่องปรับอากาศ เนื่องจากสเปรย์อาจติดไฟได้**

2. ชื่อและหน้าที่ในส่วนการใช้งาน (รูป 1, 2)

1	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ▲ ” (การส่งสัญญาณ)**
	ไฟนี้จะติดเมื่อมีการส่งสัญญาณ
2	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” (โหมดการทำงาน)**
	การแสดงผลนี้จะแสดงโหมดการทำงานปัจจุบันสำหรับชนิดที่ทำความเย็นโดยตรงจะไม่มี “ ” (อัตโนมัติ) และ “ ” (ทำความร้อน)
3	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้)**
	แสดงอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้
4	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (เวลาที่ตั้งไว้)**
	แสดงเวลาที่ตั้งไว้สำหรับการเปิดหรือปิด
5	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (ปรับทิศทางลม)**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 6
6	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” “ ” (ความเร็วพัดลม)**
	แสดงความเร็วพัดลมที่ตั้งไว้
7	**สัญลักษณ์ “ TEST ” (การตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ)**
	เมื่อกดปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ สัญลักษณ์นี้จะปรากฏเพื่อบอกว่าอยู่ในโหมดการทำงานนี้
8	**ปุ่มเปิด/ปิด**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเปิดเครื่อง กดปุ่มนี้อีกครั้งเพื่อปิดเครื่อง
9	**ปุ่มควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกความเร็วพัดลมให้เป็นความเร็วสูง หรือความเร็วต่ำ ตามความต้องการ
10	**ปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิ**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับปรับอุณหภูมิ (ใช้ในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรลปิดอยู่)
11	**ปุ่มตั้งเวลา**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับตั้งเวลาเปิดและ/หรือปิด (ใช้ในขณะที่เปิดฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรล)
12	**ปุ่มเปิด/ปิดโหมดการตั้งเวลา**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 7
13	**ปุ่มเลือก/ยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 7
14	**ปุ่มปรับทิศทางลม**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 6
15	**ปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงาน
16	**ปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรองอากาศ**
	กรุณาดูในหัวข้อการดูแลรักษาในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
17	**ปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ**
	ปุ่มนี้มีไว้สำหรับช่างผู้ชำนาญเพื่อใช้ในการดูแลรักษาเครื่อง
18	**สวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉิน**
	สวิตช์นี้มีไว้ใช้ในกรณีที่รีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน
19	**ตัวรับสัญญาณ**
	ช่องสำหรับรับสัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรล

20	**ไฟแสดงการทำงาน (แดง)**
	ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน และจะกระพริบ หากเครื่องมีปัญหา
21	**ไฟแสดงการตั้งเวลา (เขียว)**
	ไฟนี้จะสว่างเมื่อมีการตั้งเวลา
22	**ไฟแสดงเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ (แดง)**
	จะสว่างเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ
23	**ไฟละลายน้ำแข็ง (ส้ม)**
	จะสว่างเมื่อเริ่มต้นกระบวนการละลายน้ำแข็ง (สำหรับชนิดทำความเย็นโดยตรง ไฟละลายน้ำแข็งจะไม่ทำงาน)

หมายเหตุ

- เพื่อช่วยในการอธิบายสัญลักษณ์ทั้งหมดที่ถูกแสดงในรูป 1 จะไม่ตรงกับการทำงานจริง
- รูป 1-2 แสดงรีโมทคอนโทรลในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้าเปิดอยู่
- หากไฟแสดงเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศสว่าง โปรดทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศตามที่อธิบายไว้ในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
  หลังจากทำความสะอาดและติดตั้งตัวกรองอากาศกลับเข้าที่แล้ว ให้กดปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรองบนรีโมทคอนโทรล ไฟแสดงเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศบนตัวรับสัญญาณจะดับไป
- ไฟละลายน้ำแข็งจะกระพริบเมื่อเปิดเครื่อง ซึ่งไม่ใช่อาการผิดปกติแต่อย่างใด

3. การใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

ข้อควรระวังในการใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรล

เล็งตัวส่งสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลให้ตรงกับตัวรับสัญญาณที่เครื่องปรับอากาศ

ถ้ามีสิ่งกีดขวางระหว่างตัวรับสัญญาณของเครื่องปรับอากาศกับรีโมทคอนโทรล เช่น ผ้าม่าน เครื่องจะไม่ตอบสนองต่อสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไป



ถ้าเครื่องได้รับสัญญาณเรียบร้อยจะมีเสียงปี๊บดังขึ้น 2 ครั้ง

ระยะรับส่งสัญญาณสูงสุดประมาณ 7 เมตร

อย่าทำรีโมทคอนโทรลตกหรือเปียกน้ำ

มิฉะนั้น รีโมทคอนโทรลอาจเสียได้

อย่าใช้วัสดุแข็งปลายแหลมกดปุ่มรีโมทคอนโทรล

มิฉะนั้นรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจชำรุดได้

สถานที่ติดตั้ง

- สัญญาณที่ส่งออกจากรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจถูกรบกวน ถ้าในห้องใช้หลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์ โปรดปรึกษาผู้ขายก่อนซื้อหลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์
- ถ้าสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไปมีผลต่อเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าอื่น ให้เคลื่อนย้ายเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้านั้นออกไป หรือปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน

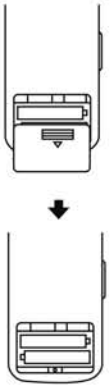
การวางรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ในที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรล
ติดตั้งที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ที่ผนังหรือเสาโดยใช้สกรูยึดที่จัดมาให้ (ตรวจดูให้แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งในที่ที่สัญญาณถูกส่งออกไปได้ดี)

การวางรีโมทคอนโทรล	การถอดรีโมทคอนโทรลออกจากที่เก็บ
สอดลงจากด้านบน	ดึงขึ้นด้านบน



การใส่แบตเตอรี่รีโมทคอนโทรล

1) เลื่อนฝาปิดด้านหลังรีโมทคอนโทรลออกตามทิศทางลูกศร
2) ใส่แบตเตอรี่
ใช้แบตเตอรี่ชนิด LR03<IEC> 2 ก้อน ใส่ลงในช่องให้ถูกขั้วตามสัญลักษณ์ (+) และ (-) ที่แสดงไว้
3) ปิดฝาครอบ



— เมื่อไรจึงต้องเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่

ภายใต้เงื่อนไขการใช้งานปกติ แบตเตอรี่จะใช้งานได้ประมาณหนึ่งปี อย่างไรก็ตาม ท่านควรเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารไม่ตอบสนองต่อคำสั่ง หรือตอบสนองช้า หรือเมื่อสัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏเริ่มไม่ชัดเจน

[ข้อควรระวัง]

- เมื่อเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ ต้องเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ทุกก้อนพร้อมกัน อย่าใช้แบตเตอรี่ใหม่ร่วมกับแบตเตอรี่เก่า
- ถ้าไม่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลเป็นเวลานานๆ ให้ถอดแบตเตอรี่ออกเพื่อป้องกันความเสียหายที่เกิดจากของเหลวในแบตเตอรี่ไหลเยิ้มออกมา

ในกรณีที่ใช้ระบบควบคุมจากส่วนกลาง

หากเครื่องภายในอาคารถูกควบคุมจากส่วนกลาง จำเป็นต้องเปลี่ยนการตั้งค่าของรีโมทคอนโทรลตามด้วย ในกรณีนี้ โปรดติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายไดกิ้นของท่าน

4. ช่วงอุณหภูมิการทำงาน

ระบบแยกส่วน

ในกรณีที่อุณหภูมิหรือความชื้นเกินเงื่อนไขดังต่อไปนี้ อุปกรณ์นิรภัยอาจจะทำงาน และทำให้เครื่องปรับอากาศหยุดการทำงาน หรือในบางกรณีอาจมีน้ำหยดออกมาจากเครื่องภายในอาคาร

การทำความเย็น [°C]

เครื่องภายนอกอาคาร	ภายในอาคาร			อุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร	
	อุณหภูมิ		ความชื้น		
ระบบทำความเย็น	DB	21 ถึง 35	80% หรือต่ำกว่า	DB	– 5 ถึง 46
	WB	14 ถึง 25			

การทำความร้อน [°C]

เครื่องภายนอกอาคาร	อุณหภูมิภายในอาคาร		อุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร	
ระบบทำความร้อน	DB	15 ถึง 27	DB	– 14 ถึง 21
			WB	– 15 ถึง 15.5

DB: อุณหภูมิกระเปาะแห้ง
WB: อุณหภูมิกระเปาะเปียก
ช่วงการปรับอุณหภูมิของรีโมทคอนโทรลอยู่ระหว่าง 16°C ถึง 32°C

5. ขั้นตอนการใช้งาน

ให้ดูรูปที่ 1 ในหน้า [1]

- ขั้นตอนการใช้งานจะแตกต่างกันระหว่างแบบชนิดทำความร้อนและชนิดทำความเย็นอย่างเดียว กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายไดกิ้น เพื่อสอบถามชนิดของระบบที่ใช้อยู่
- เพื่อเป็นการป้องกันเครื่อง กรุณาเปิดสวิตช์หลักไว้ 6 ชั่วโมงก่อนใช้งาน
- หากสวิตช์หลักถูกปิดระหว่างที่ใช้งานอยู่ การทำงานจะเริ่มต้นใหม่โดยอัตโนมัติเมื่อเปิดสวิตช์หลักอีกครั้งหนึ่ง

การทำความเย็น การทำความร้อน การทำงานอัตโนมัติ การใช้งานพัดลม และการใช้งานโปรแกรมลดความชื้น

ทำงานตามคำสั่งต่อไปนี้

- การทำงานอัตโนมัติสามารถเลือกได้เฉพาะระบบทำความร้อนแบบแยกส่วนหรือระบบ VRV แบบนำความร้อนกลับมาใช้ซ้ำ
- สำหรับชนิดทำความเย็นอย่างเดียว สามารถเลือกการทำงานแบบ “ทำความเย็น” และ “พัดลม” และ “ลดความชื้น” ได้

<<สำหรับระบบที่ไม่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน>>

ให้ดูรูปที่ 1-1, 2 ในหน้า [1]

1 MODE เลือกโหมดการทำงาน

กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน” หลายๆ ครั้ง เพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงานที่ต้องการจากรายการต่อไปนี้

- การทำความเย็น..... “ ❄ ”
- การทำความร้อน..... “ ☀ ”
- การทำงานอัตโนมัติ..... “ A ”
  - ในโหมดการทำงานนี้ การเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อนจะถูกเลือกโดยอัตโนมัติ
- การใช้งานพัดลม..... “ ”
- การใช้งานโปรแกรมลดความชื้น..... “ ”
  - ฟังก์ชั่นของโปรแกรมนี้มีไว้สำหรับลดความชื้นในห้องโดยให้อุณหภูมิลดลงน้อยที่สุด
  - ระบบไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะคำนวณอุณหภูมิและความเร็วพัดลมโดยอัตโนมัติ
  - ระบบนี้จะไม่ทำงานในกรณีที่อุณหภูมิห้องต่ำกว่า 16°C

2 ON/OFF เปิด/ปิด

กดปุ่ม “เปิด/ปิด”

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะสว่างหรือดับลง และระบบจะเริ่มหรือหยุดทำงาน

หมายเหตุ

- ห้ามปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีที่เครื่องหยุดทำงาน กรุณารออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่วหรือมีสิ่งผิดปกติหรือไม่

<<สำหรับระบบที่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน>>

[คำอธิบายเกี่ยวกับการทำความร้อน]

การละลายน้ำแข็ง

- เมื่อมีน้ำแข็งเกาะคอยล์ในเครื่องภายนอกอาคารเพิ่มขึ้น ระบบจะเข้าสู่ปฏิบัติการละลายน้ำแข็ง
- การใช้งานพัดลมจะหยุด และไฟละลายน้ำแข็งที่เครื่องภายในอาคารจะสว่างขึ้น หลังจากการละลายน้ำแข็งดำเนินไป 6 ถึง 8 นาที (สูงสุด 10 นาที) ระบบจะกลับคืนสู่การทำความร้อน

ความสามารถในการทำความร้อนและอุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร

- ความสามารถในการทำความร้อนจะลดลงเมื่ออุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคารลดลง ในกรณีที่ท่านยังรู้สึกหนาว โปรดใช้เครื่องทำความร้อนเครื่องอื่นพร้อมกันไปด้วย

3PN12150-1

- ลมร้อนจะไหลเวียนไปเพื่อทำให้ห้องอุ่นขึ้นหลังจากที่เครื่องเริ่มทำงาน ระบบต้องการเวลาสักครู่หนึ่งในการทำให้ห้องทั้งห้องอุ่น พัดลมของเครื่องภายในอาคารจะหมุนช้าลงโดยอัตโนมัติจนกระทั่งอากาศภายในห้องถึงอุณหภูมิหนึ่ง ในกรณีเช่นนี้ท่านจำเป็นต้องรอสักครู่
- ในกรณีที่อากาศร้อนไปรวมตัวอยู่บนเพดานและทำให้ยังรู้สึกหนาวที่เท้า ขอแนะนำให้ใช้พัดลมหมุนเวียนอากาศ สำหรับรายละเอียด กรุณาติดต่อร้านที่ท่านซื้อ

การปรับตั้ง

สำหรับการตั้งอุณหภูมิ ความเร็วพัดลม และทิศทางลม กรุณาทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้



ปรับอุณหภูมิ

กดปุ่ม “ปรับอุณหภูมิ” เพื่อตั้งอุณหภูมิ



เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเพิ่มขึ้น 1°C

เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะลดลง 1°C

ในกรณีที่ใช้การทำงานอัตโนมัติ



เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเพิ่มขึ้นไปทาง “ H ”

เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะลดลงไปทาง “ L ”

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้	25	23	22	21	19

- การปรับตั้งนี้ใช้ไม่ได้สำหรับการใช้งานพัดลม

หมายเหตุ

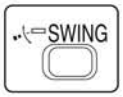
- ช่วงการปรับอุณหภูมิของรีโมทคอนโทรลอยู่ระหว่าง 16°C ถึง 32°C



ควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม

กดปุ่ม “ควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม”

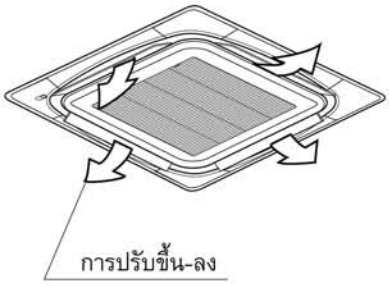
ท่านสามารถเลือกความเร็วพัดลมสูงหรือต่ำได้ ไมโครชิปอาจควบคุมความเร็วพัดลมเองในบางครั้งเพื่อปกป้องตัวเครื่อง



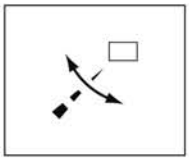
ปรับทิศทางลม

ทิศทางขึ้น-ลง

- ขอบเขตการเคลื่อนที่ของแผ่นปรับทิศทางนั้นเปลี่ยนแปลงได้ สำหรับรายละเอียด กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายไดกิ้น



กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางลมเพื่อเลือกปรับทิศทางลมตามที่แสดงไว้ด้านล่างนี้



เมื่อสัญลักษณ์ปรากฏ ทิศทางลมจะเปลี่ยนไปเรื่อยๆ (ตั้งให้ส่ายลมอัตโนมัติ)



กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางลมเพื่อเลือกปรับให้ได้ทิศทางลมตามที่ท่านต้องการ



เมื่อสัญลักษณ์หายไป ทิศทางลมจะอยู่กับที่ (ตั้งทิศทางลมให้อยู่กับที่)

การเคลื่อนที่ของแผ่นปรับทิศทางลม

ภายใต้สภาพต่อไปนี้ ไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะควบคุมทิศทางลมเอง และทำให้ทิศทางลมต่างไปจากที่แสดงไว้

โหมดการทำงาน	ทำความเย็น	ทำความร้อน
สภาพการทำงาน	• เมื่อการกระจายลมในแนวระดับเป็นไปอย่างต่อเนื่อง	• เมื่ออุณหภูมิห้องสูงกว่าอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ • ระหว่างการละลายน้ำแข็ง (แผ่นปรับทิศทางลมจะทำงานในแนวระดับ เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการเป่าลมเย็นสู่ผู้อาศัยโดยตรง)

หมายเหตุ

- หากใช้การทำความเย็นหรือโปรแกรมลดความชื้น ในขณะที่แผ่นปรับทิศทางลมหันลงด้านล่าง ทิศทางลมอาจเปลี่ยนไปโดยไม่คาดคิด ซึ่งไม่ใช่ความผิดปกติของอุปกรณ์แต่อย่างใด ฟังก์ชั่นนี้มีไว้เพื่อป้องกันการรวมตัวของหยดน้ำที่ชิ้นส่วนด้านในช่องระบายอากาศไม่ให้มีน้ำหยดออกมา
- โหมดการทำงานรวมถึงการทำงานอัตโนมัติด้วย

การใช้งานตัวตั้งเวลา

ทำงานตามคำสั่งต่อไปนี้

- ตัวตั้งเวลาทำงานได้ใน 2 ลักษณะคือ
  ตั้งเวลาหยุดการทำงาน (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
  ตั้งเวลาเริ่มการทำงาน (◷ ▸ \|)
  .... เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
- ตัวตั้งเวลาสามารถตั้งได้นานที่สุด 72 ชั่วโมง
- การตั้งเวลาเริ่มและหยุดการทำงานสามารถตั้งพร้อมกันได้

1 TIMER โหมดการตั้งเวลาเปิด/ปิด

กดปุ่ม “โหมดการตั้งเวลาเปิด/ปิด” หลายๆ ครั้ง เพื่อเลือกสถานะที่ต้องการ

สัญลักษณ์จะกระพริบ

ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาปิด ให้เลือก .... “ ◷ ▸ ○ ”
ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาเปิด ให้เลือก ..... “ ◷ ▸ \| ”

2 UP DOWN ตั้งเวลา

กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” เพื่อตั้งเวลาหยุดหรือเวลาเริ่มการทำงาน

UP — เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะเพิ่มขึ้น 1 ชั่วโมง
DOWN — เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะลดลง 1 ชั่วโมง

3 RESERVE เลือกการตั้งเวลา

กดปุ่ม “เลือกการตั้งเวลา”

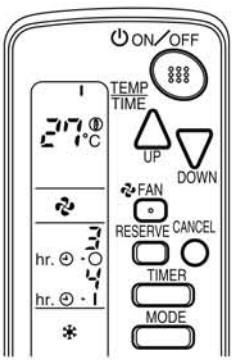
สิ้นสุดขั้นตอนการตั้งเวลา
จอแสดงผลเปลี่ยนจากไฟกระพริบเป็นไฟสว่างค้าง

4 CANCEL ยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา

กดปุ่ม “ยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา” เพื่อยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา

จอแสดงผลดับไป

ตัวอย่าง



เมื่อตั้งเวลาให้เครื่องหยุดทำงาน หลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 ชม. และเริ่มทำงานหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 4 ชม. เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานหลังเวลาผ่านไป 3 ชม. และหลังจากนั้น 1 ชม. เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงาน

หมายเหตุ

- หลังจากตั้งเวลาแล้ว สัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏขึ้นจะแสดงเวลาที่เหลือ

3PN12150-1

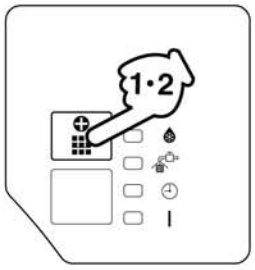
การทำงานฉุกเฉิน

เมื่อรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงานเนื่องจากแบตเตอรี่หมดหรือรีโมทคอนโทรลหาย ให้ใช้สวิตช์ฉุกเฉินที่อยู่ด้านข้างตะแกรงลมออกของเครื่องภายในอาคาร หากรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน แต่ไม่มีสัญลักษณ์แบตเตอรี่หมดสว่างขึ้น กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่าย

[เปิดเครื่อง]

1 **กดสวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉิน**

เครื่องจะทำงานตามสถานะที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้ ระบบจะทำงานโดยลมจะถูกเป่าไปในทิศทางที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้



[ปิดเครื่อง]

2 **กดสวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉินอีกครั้ง**

ข้อพึงระวังสำหรับระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มหรือระบบที่ควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

ระบบนี้มีระบบควบคุมอีกสองแบบนอกเหนือจากระบบควบคุมเดี่ยว (รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องต่อเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งเครื่อง) โปรดตรวจสอบสิ่งต่อไปนี้ หากระบบของท่านใช้ระบบควบคุมแบบนี้

- **ระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม**
  รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องสามารถควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารได้ถึง 16 เครื่อง
  เครื่องภายในอาคารทุกเครื่องจะถูกปรับค่าเหมือนกันหมด
- **ระบบที่ควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง**
  รีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารเครื่องเดียว (กรณีที่เป็นระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มจะเป็นเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งกลุ่ม)
  เครื่องจะทำงานตามการใช้งานจากรีโมทคอนโทรลแต่ละเครื่อง

หมายเหตุ

- ไม่สามารถใช้ระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายอย่างเดียว (ระบบนี้จะเป็นระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องที่มีเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบมีสายและอีกเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบไร้สาย)
- ภายใต้ระบบควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายจะไม่สามารถควบคุมการตั้งเวลาได้
- มีเฉพาะไฟแสดงการทำงานจากไฟแสดงที่เหลืออีก 3 ดวงบนเครื่องภายในอาคารเท่านั้นที่แสดงการทำงาน

หมายเหตุ

- ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายไดกิ้น ในกรณีที่จะเปลี่ยนการจับคู่หรือการปรับตั้งของระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มและระบบควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

6. อาการที่ไม่ได้เกิดจากการที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ

อาการดังต่อไปนี้ไม่ได้แสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานผิดปกติ

I. เครื่องไม่ทำงาน

- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากเพิ่งปิดและเปิดเครื่องใหม่อีกครั้ง**
  ถ้าหลอดไฟแสดงสถานะทำงานติดแสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานปกติ เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที
- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากที่ปล่อยมือจากปุ่มกดตั้งอุณหภูมิ**
  เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที
- **ในกรณีที่เสียงปี๊ปตอบรับดังซ้ำกัน 3 ครั้งอย่างรวดเร็ว (หากเครื่องทำงานปกติจะส่งเสียงเพียงสองครั้ง)**
  การควบคุมถูกตั้งโดยเครื่องควบคุมเพิ่มเติมสำหรับระบบควบคุมส่วนกลาง

- **หากไฟละลายน้ำแข็งบนหน่วยแสดงผลของเครื่องภายในอาคารสว่างขึ้น เมื่อการทำความร้อนเริ่มทำงาน**
  การแสดงผลนี้เป็นการเตือนว่ากำลังมีลมเย็นเป่าออกมาจากเครื่อง ซึ่งไม่ใช่ความผิดปกติของเครื่องแต่อย่างใด
- **เครื่องภายนอกอาคารหยุดทำงาน**
  เนื่องจากอุณหภูมิห้องเท่ากับอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ เครื่องภายในอาคารจะเปลี่ยนเป็นการทำงานแบบพัดลม

7. การวิเคราะห์จุดที่เกิดปัญหา

I. การหยุดฉุกเฉิน

เมื่อเครื่องหยุดทำงานเองโดยฉุกเฉิน ไฟแสดงการทำงานที่เครื่องภายในอาคารจะเริ่มกระพริบ ให้ทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้ เพื่อดูรหัสความผิดปกติที่จะต้องแจ้งให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายทราบ เมื่อทำการติดต่อรหัสนี้จะช่วยระบุปัญหาและทำให้สามารถทำการซ่อมแซมได้เร็วขึ้น

1 TEST

กดปุ่ม “ตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ” เพื่อเลือกสถานะตรวจสอบ “ 0 ”

“ 0 ” ปรากฏขึ้นบนจอแสดงผลและกระพริบ “UNIT” จะสว่างขึ้น

2 UP DOWN

กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” และเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่อง

กดเพื่อเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่องจนกระทั่งเครื่องภายในอาคารส่งเสียงปี๊ป แล้วทำสิ่งต่อไปนี้ตามจำนวนเสียงปี๊ป

จำนวนครั้งของเสียงปี๊ป

3 ครั้งสั้นๆ.....ทำตามทุกขั้นตอนตั้งแต่ 3 ถึง 6
1 ครั้งสั้นๆ .....ทำตามขั้นตอนที่ 3 และ 6
1 ครั้งยาวๆ.....สภาพปกติ

3 MODE

กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน”

“ 0 ” ทางด้านซ้ายมือของรหัสความผิดปกติกระพริบ

4 UP DOWN

กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” เพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสความผิดปกติ

กดจนกว่าเครื่องภายในอาคารจะส่งเสียงปี๊ป 2 ครั้ง

5 MODE

กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน”

“ 0 ” ทางด้านขวามือของรหัสความผิดปกติกระพริบ

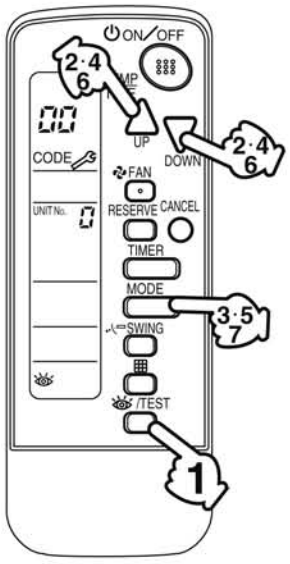
6 UP DOWN

กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” เพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสความผิดปกติ

กดจนกว่าเครื่องภายในอาคารจะส่งเสียงปี๊ปยาว ซึ่งแสดงว่าได้รหัสความผิดปกตินั้นแล้ว

7 MODE **เริ่มการแสดงผลใหม่**

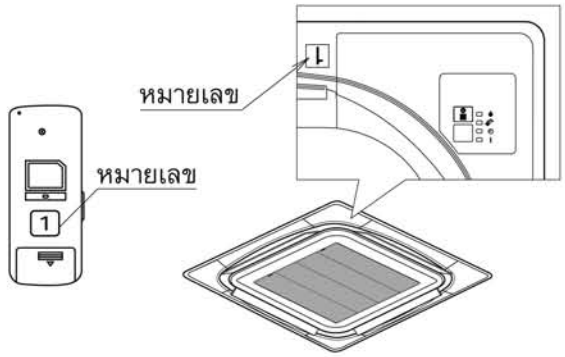
กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน” เพื่อให้หน้าจอเปลี่ยนเข้าสู่สภาพปกติ



II. ในกรณีอื่นนอกเหนือจากการหยุดฉุกเฉิน

1. เครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย

- ตรวจดูว่าตัวรับสัญญาณโดนแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้าหรือไม่ ตัวรับสัญญาณไม่ควรอยู่ในที่ที่มีแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้าส่องถึง
- ตรวจดูว่ารีโมทคอนโทรลมีแบตเตอรี่หรือไม่ ให้ใส่แบตเตอรี่ในรีโมทคอนโทรล
- ตรวจดูว่าตัวเลขที่เครื่องภายในอาคารตรงกับที่รีโมทคอนโทรลหรือไม่



ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารที่มีหมายเลขตรงกัน
สัญญาณที่ถูกส่งจากรีโมทคอนโทรลที่มีหมายเลขต่างกับเครื่องภายในอาคารจะไม่มีผล
(ถ้าไม่มีหมายเลขแสดงไว้ ถือว่าเป็นหมายเลข “1”)

2. เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานแต่ทำความเย็นหรือทำความร้อนไม่เพียงพอ

- อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ไม่เหมาะสมหรือไม่
- ความเร็วพัดลมตั้งไว้ต่ำหรือไม่
- มุมของทิศทางลมไม่เหมาะสมหรือไม่

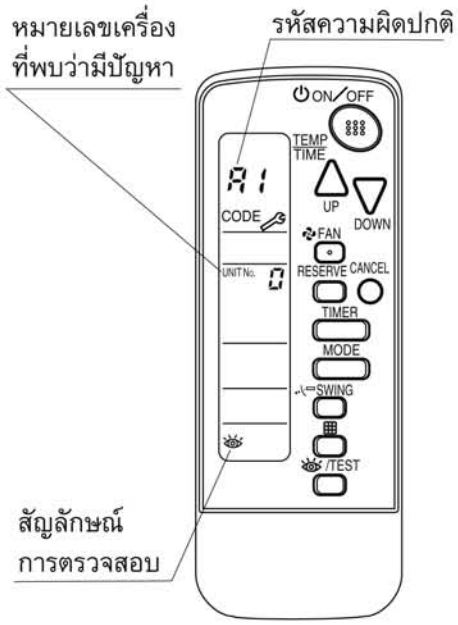
ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายที่ท่านซื้อในกรณีดังต่อไปนี้

⚠ คำเตือน

เมื่อท่านพบว่ามีกลิ่นไหม้ โปรดปิดสวิตช์แหล่งจ่ายไฟทันที แล้วติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายที่ท่านซื้อ การใช้อุปกรณ์ผิดวิธีอาจจะทำให้ตัวเครื่องเสียหาย ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร และ/หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้

[ปัญหา]

ไฟแสดงการทำงานของเครื่องภายในอาคารกระพริบและเครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย



[การแก้ไข]

ตรวจรหัสความผิดปกติ (A1-UF) ที่รีโมทคอนโทรล แล้วติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายที่ท่านซื้อ (ดูหน้า 9)

1.1.9 Installation Manual (Thai)

DAIKIN

BRC7F632F ชุดรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย คู่มือการติดตั้ง

สารบัญ

1. ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย.....1
2. ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง.....2
3. การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรล.....2
4. การปรับตั้งแอดเดรส.....3
5. การติดตั้งตัวส่งสัญญาณ.....4
6. การติดตั้งหน้ากากแอร์.....5
7. การติดตั้งตัวรับสัญญาณ.....5
8. การตั้งระบบ.....6
9. การทดสอบการทำงาน.....7

1. ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย

โปรดอ่าน “ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย” นี้อย่างละเอียดก่อนทำการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์ต่างๆ และตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าท่านได้ติดตั้งอย่างถูกต้อง หลังจากที่ท่านทำการติดตั้งเสร็จเรียบร้อย ตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าเครื่องทำงานอย่างถูกต้องเหมาะสม และโปรดสอนวิธีการใช้งานและการดูแลรักษาให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

ความหมายของสัญลักษณ์ข้อควรระวัง

⚠ **ข้อควรระวัง** .....ถ้าไม่ปฏิบัติตาม อาจทำให้บาดเจ็บ หรือทำให้อุปกรณ์ของเครื่องปรับอากาศเสียหายได้
หมายเหตุ .....ข้อแนะนำนี้ทำให้แน่ใจถึงการใช้งานอุปกรณ์ของเครื่องปรับอากาศที่เหมาะสมถูกต้อง

⚠ ข้อควรระวัง

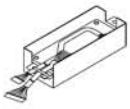
- กรุณาศึกษาอ้างอิงกับคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคารและคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับหน้ากากแอร์
- ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง โปรดตรวจสอบเงื่อนไขต่างๆ ต่อไปนี้
  - โปรดตรวจสอบว่าไม่มีสิ่งต่างๆ ที่รบกวนการทำงานของรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย (โปรดตรวจสอบว่าไม่มีแหล่งกำเนิดแสงใดๆ หรือหลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์ใกล้ตัวรับสัญญาณ และตรวจสอบด้วยว่าตัวรับสัญญาณไม่ถูกแสงแดดส่องโดยตรง)
  - โปรดตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าไฟแสดงการทำงาน และเครื่องหมายสัญญาณต่างๆ ง่ายต่อการมองเห็น
- ตำแหน่งการติดตั้งของชุดอุปกรณ์นี้อยู่ในตำแหน่งที่ 1 ของหน้ากากแอร์ ดังนั้นกรุณาตรวจดูให้มั่นใจว่าได้ติดตั้งในตำแหน่งที่สัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายสามารถถูกส่งได้ง่าย และสามารถมองเห็นจอแสดงผลการทำงานได้โดยง่าย
- ในกรณีที่ติดตั้งชุดอุปกรณ์รีโมทคอนโทรลพร้อมกับชุดอุปกรณ์ดูดอากาศจากภายนอก ให้ต่อท่อสำหรับดูดอากาศจากภายนอกเพียงด้านเดียว กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งชุดอุปกรณ์ดูดอากาศจากภายนอก (คู่มืออุปกรณ์เสริม)

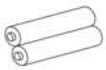
3PN12149-1

2. ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง

2-1 อุปกรณ์เสริม

ตรวจเช็คอุปกรณ์ต่างๆ ว่ามีครบถ้วนหรือไม่

ชื่ออุปกรณ์	ตัวรับสัญญาณ	รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย	ตัวส่งสัญญาณ	ที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรล	สกรูสำหรับติดตั้งตัวส่งสัญญาณ	สกรูสำหรับติดตั้งที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรล
จำนวน	1 ชุด	1 ชิ้น	1 ชุด	1 ชิ้น	2 ชิ้น	2 ชิ้น
รูปร่าง						

ชื่ออุปกรณ์	แถบยึด	แบตเตอรี่ชนิด Dry cell (AM4)	แผ่นป้ายแสดงหมายเลขเครื่อง	แผ่นป้ายแสดงการตั้งระบบ	คู่มือการใช้งาน
จำนวน	1 ชิ้น	2 ชิ้น	1 ชิ้น	1 ชิ้น	1 ชิ้น
รูปร่าง					

2-2 หมายเหตุสำหรับผู้ติดตั้ง

- โปรดมั่นใจว่าท่านได้สอนวิธีการใช้งานที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสม และแสดงคู่มือการใช้งานที่ติดมากับเครื่องให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

3. การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรล

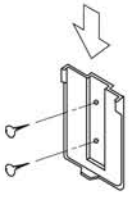
หมายเหตุ

- ห้ามขว้างหรือทำการกระทบกระแทกต่อรีโมทคอนโทรล และห้ามเก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลในสถานที่ซึ่งชื้นหรือถูกแสงแดดส่องถึงโดยตรง
- เมื่อใช้งาน เล็งที่ตัวส่งสัญญาณของรีโมทคอนโทรลไปที่ตัวรับสัญญาณโดยตรง
- ระยะทางตรงที่รีโมทคอนโทรลสามารถส่งสัญญาณได้คือประมาณ 7 เมตร
- ในกรณีที่มีสิ่งของบางอย่าง เช่น ผ้าม่าน กีดขวางการส่งสัญญาณระหว่างรีโมทคอนโทรลกับตัวรับสัญญาณ อาจทำให้ไม่สามารถส่งสัญญาณได้
- **การติดตั้งที่ฝาผนังหรือที่เสา**

1. ยึดที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลด้วยสกรู



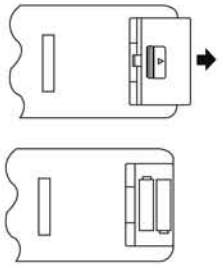
2. ใส่รีโมทคอนโทรลลงในที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลจากทางด้านบน



2

• **วิธีการใส่แบตเตอรี่**

1. เปิดฝาครอบที่ใส่แบตเตอรี่ของรีโมทคอนโทรล โดยการเลื่อนไปในทิศทางที่แสดงตามลูกศร



2. ใส่แบตเตอรี่ชนิด Dry cell โดยการใส่ให้ถูกต้องตามขั้ว (+) และขั้ว (-) ที่แสดงไว้ หลังจากนั้นให้ปิดฝาครอบที่ใส่แบตเตอรี่เข้าที่เดิม

4. การปรับตั้งแอดเดรส

กำหนดแอดเดรส และกำหนด MAIN/SUB ของรีโมทคอนโทรล

ในกรณีที่ท่านติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายหลายตัวเพื่อใช้งานในห้องเดียวกัน โปรดทำการปรับตั้งแอดเดรสให้กับตัวรับสัญญาณและรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายด้วย

ในกรณีที่ทำการติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายหลายตัวในห้องเดียวกัน กรุณาปรับที่สวิตช์ MAIN/SUB ของตัวรับสัญญาณ

ขั้นตอนการปรับตั้ง

1) การปรับตั้งตัวรับสัญญาณ

โปรดปรับสวิตช์แอดเดรสไร้สาย (SS2) บนแผงวงจรตามตารางด้านล่างนี้

หมายเลขเครื่อง	หมายเลข 1	หมายเลข 2	หมายเลข 3
สวิตช์แอดเดรส ไร้สาย (SS2)			

ในกรณีที่ใช้ทั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายและไร้สายสำหรับเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งเครื่อง รีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายควรจะถูกปรับให้เป็น MAIN ดังนั้นกรุณาปรับสวิตช์ MAIN/SUB (SS1) ของตัวรับสัญญาณให้เป็น SUB

	หลัก (MAIN)	รอง (SUB)
สวิตช์หลัก/รอง (SS1) (MAIN/SUB)		

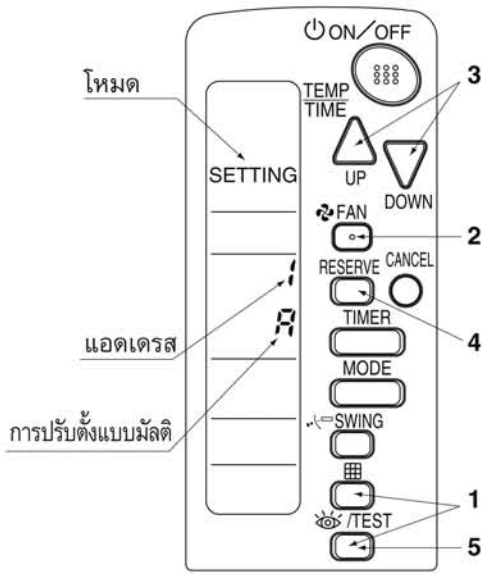
2) การปรับตั้งแอดเดรสให้กับรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย (ซึ่งถูกปรับเป็น “1” จากโรงงาน)

<ปรับจากรีโมทคอนโทรล>

1. กดปุ่ม [▦] และปุ่ม [/TEST] ค้างไว้อย่างน้อย 4 วินาที เพื่อเข้าสู่โหมดการตั้งค่า (แสดงอยู่ในส่วนแสดงผลดังรูปด้านขวา)
2. กดปุ่ม [FAN] เพื่อเลือกการปรับตั้งแบบมัลติ (A/b) การกดปุ่มแต่ละครั้งจะเปลี่ยนการแสดงผลระหว่าง “A” กับ “b”
3. กดปุ่ม △ UP หรือปุ่ม ▽ DOWN เพื่อปรับตั้งแอดเดรส

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   แอดเดรสสามารถปรับเป็น 1 ถึง 6 แต่ต้องปรับให้อยู่ในช่วง 1 ถึง 3 และให้ตรงกับแอดเดรสของตัวรับสัญญาณ (ตัวรับสัญญาณไม่ทำงานที่แอดเดรส 4 ถึง 6)
4. กดปุ่ม [RESERVE] เพื่อป้อนค่าการปรับตั้ง
5. กดปุ่ม [/TEST] ค้างไว้อย่างน้อย 1 วินาทีเพื่อออกจากโหมดการตั้งค่าแล้วกลับไปยังการแสดงผลตามปกติ



3

3PN12149-1

การปรับตั้งแบบมัลติ A/b

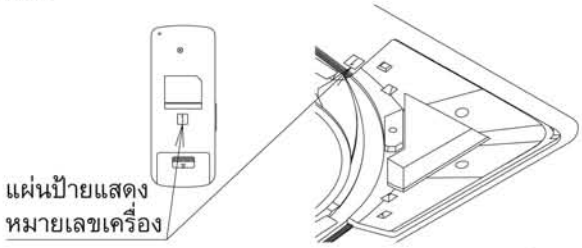
ในขณะที่เครื่องภายในอาคารถูกสั่งงานจากการควบคุมภายนอก (เช่น รีโมทคอนโทรลส่วนกลาง) บางครั้งเครื่องจะไม่ตอบสนองต่อคำสั่ง ON/OFF หรือคำสั่งการควบคุมอุณหภูมิจากรีโมทคอนโทรลนี้ กรุณาตรวจสอบว่าลูกค้าต้องการปรับตั้งค่าแบบใด แล้วทำการปรับตั้งแบบมัลติดังแสดงไว้ด้านล่างนี้

รีโมทคอนโทรล		การเปลี่ยนแปลงเมื่อการทำงานถูกควบคุมด้วยเครื่องปรับอากาศและอุปกรณ์อื่น
การปรับตั้งแบบมัลติ	จอแสดงผลของรีโมทคอนโทรล	
A: มาตรฐาน	แสดงทุกรายการ	เมื่อมีการเปลี่ยนการทำงาน การตั้งค่าอุณหภูมิ หรืออื่นๆ ในทำนองเดียวกันจากรีโมทคอนโทรล เครื่องภายในอาคารจะไม่ทำงานตามคำสั่งดังกล่าว (เสียงรับสัญญาณดัง "ปี๊ป" หรือ "ปี๊ป-ปี๊ป-ปี๊ป") ทำให้สถานะการทำงานของเครื่องภายในอาคารกับการแสดงผลในหน้าจอรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ตรงกัน
b: ระบบมัลติ	การทำงานจะยังคงถูกแสดงสักครู่ หลังจากเริ่มทำงาน	เนื่องจากการแสดงผลในหน้าจอรีโมทคอนโทรลถูกปิด จึงไม่มีความแตกต่างดังกล่าวข้างต้นเกิดขึ้น

3) ติดแผ่นป้ายแสดงหมายเลขเครื่องที่ช่องลมออกของหน้ากากแอร์และด้านหลังของรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

[ข้อควรระวัง]

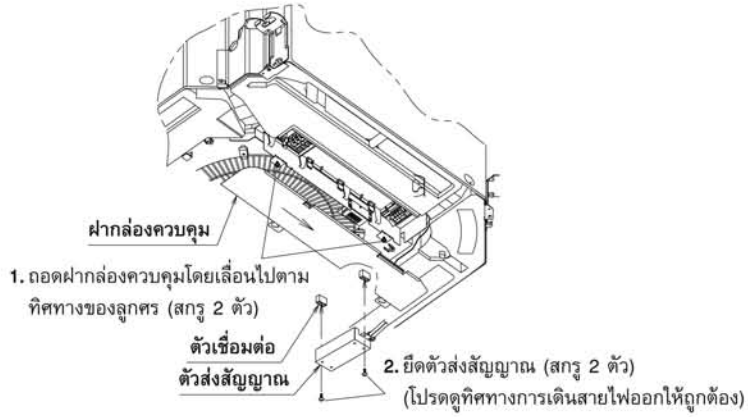
กรุณาปรับหมายเลขเครื่องของตัวรับสัญญาณและรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายให้ตรงกัน หากปรับไม่ตรงกันจะทำให้ไม่สามารถส่งสัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรลได้

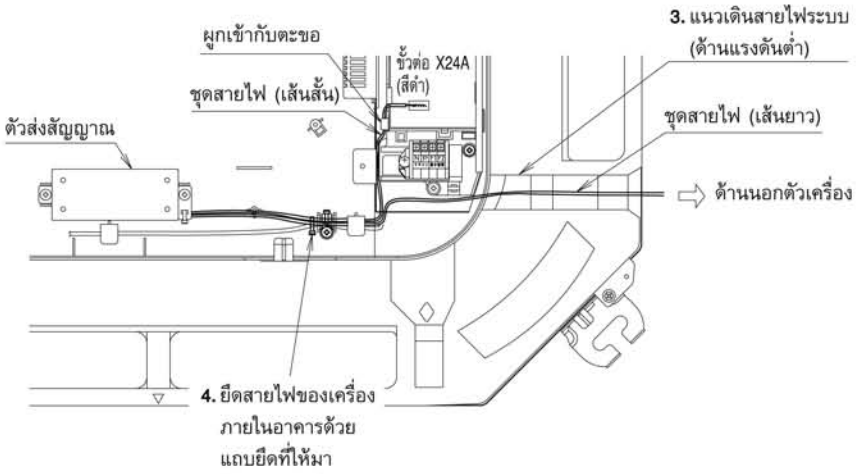


<การติดแผ่นป้ายแสดงหมายเลขเครื่อง>

5. การติดตั้งตัวส่งสัญญาณ

1. ถอดฝากล่องควบคุมตามที่อธิบายไว้ในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
2. ยึดตัวส่งสัญญาณเข้าที่ด้านล่างของตัวเชื่อมต่อที่ตัวเครื่องภายในอาคาร โดยใช้สกรูยึดตัวส่งสัญญาณดังแสดงในรูปด้านล่าง
3. เชื่อมต่อชุดสายไฟ (เส้นสั้น) จากตัวส่งสัญญาณเข้ากับขั้วต่อ X24A บนแผงวงจรด้านในเครื่องภายในอาคาร เดินชุดสายไฟ (เส้นยาว) จากตัวส่งสัญญาณไปยังด้านนอกของเครื่องผ่านแนวเดินสายไฟ (ด้านแรงดันต่ำ) ของเครื่องภายในอาคาร
4. ยึดชุดสายไฟทั้งสองจากตัวส่งสัญญาณโดยใช้แถบยึดที่ให้มา





6. การติดตั้งหน้ากากแอร์

ติดตั้งหน้ากากแอร์ตามที่อธิบายไว้ในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับหน้ากากแอร์

หมายเหตุ

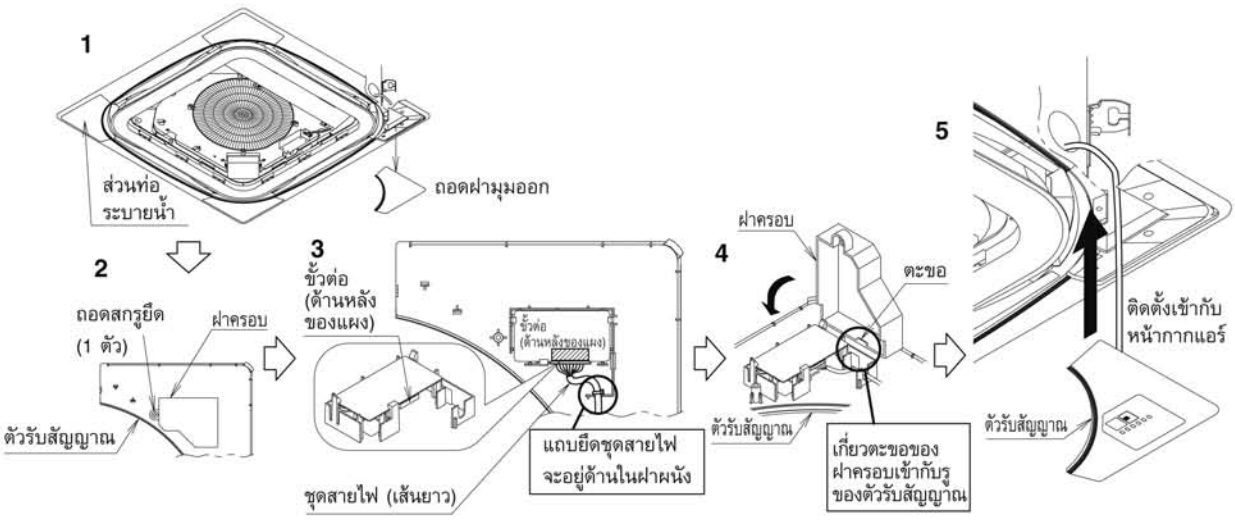
- ตรวจดูว่าชุดสายไฟ (เส้นยาว) จากตัวส่งสัญญาณไม่ถูกเกี่ยวไว้ระหว่างเครื่องภายในอาคารกับหน้ากากแอร์ และระหว่างเพดานกับหน้ากากแอร์

7. การติดตั้งตัวรับสัญญาณ

1. ถอดฝามุมของหน้ากากแอร์ซึ่งอยู่ที่มุมตรงข้ามของส่วนท่อระบายน้ำออก ซึ่งไม่จำเป็นต้องใช้ฝานี้อีกต่อไป

   ดูให้แน่ใจว่าได้ติดตั้งตัวรับสัญญาณที่มุมนี้แล้ว

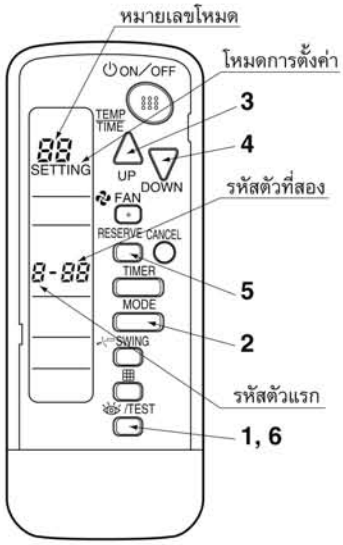
2. ถอดฝาครอบด้านหลังของตัวรับสัญญาณ
3. เชื่อมต่อชุดสายไฟ (เส้นยาว) จากตัวส่งสัญญาณเข้ากับขั้วต่อของแผงวงจรของตัวรับสัญญาณ
4. ติดฝาครอบด้านหลังของตัวรับสัญญาณโดยทำย้อนขั้นตอนที่ 2
5. ติดตั้งตัวรับสัญญาณเข้ากับหน้ากากแอร์



5

3PN12149-1

8. การตั้งระบบ



หากติดตั้งอุปกรณ์เสริมเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร การตั้งค่าเครื่องภายในอาคาร อาจต้องมีการเปลี่ยนแปลงตาม กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มืออุปกรณ์เสริม) สำหรับอุปกรณ์เสริมแต่ละชิ้น

ขั้นตอนวิธีทำ

1. ในขณะที่อยู่ในโหมดปกติ ให้กดปุ่ม [/TEST] ค้างไว้อย่างน้อย 4 วินาที จะเป็นการเข้าสู่โหมดการตั้งค่า
2. เลือกหมายเลขโหมดที่ต้องการด้วยปุ่ม [MODE]
3. กดปุ่ม △ UP แล้วเลือกรหัสตัวแรก
4. กดปุ่ม ▽ DOWN แล้วเลือกรหัสตัวที่สอง
5. กดปุ่ม [RESERVE] แล้วค่าที่ตั้งไว้ในขณะนั้นจะถูกบันทึกไว้
6. กดปุ่ม [/TEST] เพื่อกลับไปยังโหมดปกติ

(ตัวอย่าง)

หากเวลาในการล้างตัวกรองอากาศถูกปรับเป็น “ความสกปรกของตัวกรอง-มาก” ให้ปรับหมายเลขโหมดเป็น “10” รหัสตัวแรกเป็น “0” และรหัสตัวที่สองเป็น “02”

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">หมายเลขโหมด</th><th rowspan="2">รหัสตัวแรก</th><th rowspan="2" colspan="2">คำอธิบายการตั้งค่า</th><th colspan="5">รหัสตัวที่สอง หมายเหตุ)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">01</th><th colspan="2">02</th><th>03</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">10</td><td rowspan="3">0</td><td rowspan="3">ความสกปรกตัวกรอง-มาก/น้อย (การตั้งค่าสำหรับระยะเวลาในการแสดงให้ทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ) (การปรับให้เป็นแบบตัวกรองสกปรกมากจะทำให้การเว้นช่วงเวลาในการทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศเหลือเพียงครึ่งหนึ่ง)</td><td>ประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก</td><td rowspan="3">น้อย</td><td>ประมาณ 10,000 ชั่วโมง</td><td rowspan="3">มาก</td><td>ประมาณ 5,000 ชั่วโมง</td><td rowspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>ประเภทใช้งานได้นาน</td><td>ประมาณ 2,500 ชั่วโมง</td><td>ประมาณ 1,250 ชั่วโมง</td></tr>
<tr><td>ประเภทใช้งานธรรมดา</td><td>ประมาณ 200 ชั่วโมง</td><td>ประมาณ 100 ชั่วโมง</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">แผ่นกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นาน (ปรับตั้งเวลาแสดงสัญลักษณ์เตือนตัวกรองอากาศ) (เปลี่ยนการปรับตั้งเมื่อติดตั้งตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก)</td><td colspan="2">ตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นาน</td><td colspan="2">ตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">การเว้นช่วงเวลาในการแสดงให้ทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศเริ่มนับ (เป็นการปรับตั้งสำหรับกรณีที่เครื่องหมายตัวกรองอากาศไม่แสดงขึ้น)</td><td colspan="2">แสดง</td><td colspan="2">ไม่แสดง</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">13</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">การปรับตามความสูงของเพดาน</td><td colspan="2">น้อยกว่า 3.2 เมตร</td><td colspan="2">3.2 ถึง 3.6 เมตร</td><td>3.6 ถึง 4.2 เมตร</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">การเลือกทิศทางลม (ปรับตั้งเมื่อชุดแผ่นปรับทิศทางได้รับการติดตั้งแล้ว)</td><td colspan="2">F (4 ทิศทาง)</td><td colspan="2">T (3 ทิศทาง)</td><td>W (2 ทิศทาง)</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">การปรับตั้งทิศทางลม</td><td colspan="2">บน</td><td colspan="2">ปกติ</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

หมายเหตุ

- รหัสตัวที่สองจะถูกตั้งเป็น “01” มาจากโรงงาน อย่างไรก็ตาม ในกรณีต่อไปนี้จะถูกตั้งให้เป็น “02”
  - การปรับตั้งทิศทางการไหลของอากาศ

กรุณาอย่าใช้การปรับตั้งซึ่งไม่ได้ระบุไว้ในตาราง

สำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย ค่าเริ่มต้นของเครื่องภายในอาคารในกลุ่มจะต้องเหมือนกัน

(สำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม กรุณาดูในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคารสำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม)

9. การทดสอบการทำงาน

- ดำเนินการทดสอบการทำงานตามวิธีทำในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
- หลังจากที่เดินท่อสารทำความเย็น เดินท่อระบายน้ำทิ้ง และเดินสายไฟแล้ว ให้ทำตามในตารางเพื่อเป็นการปกป้องตัวเครื่อง

[ข้อควรระวัง]

1. หากเครื่องไม่ทำงาน กรุณาอ้างอิงแผ่นป้ายช่วยวิเคราะห์การทำงานที่ผิดพลาดซึ่งติดอยู่ที่ตัวเครื่อง
2. กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายนอกอาคารสำหรับประเภทของระบบการทำงานแต่ละแบบ

ลำดับ	การทำงาน
(1)	เปิดสต๊อปวาล์วทางเดินก๊าซ
(2)	เปิดสต๊อปวาล์วทางเดินของเหลว
(3)	ให้กระแสไฟฟ้าแก่ตัวอุ่นคอมเพรสเซอร์เป็นเวลา 6 ชั่วโมง (ไม่จำเป็นสำหรับเครื่องชนิดทำความเย็น)
(4)	ปรับเป็นการทำความเย็นด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรล แล้วกดปุ่ม [ON/OFF] เพื่อเริ่มการทำงาน
(5)	กดปุ่ม [/TEST] สองครั้ง แล้วใช้งานในโหมดทดสอบการทำงานเป็นเวลา 3 นาที
(6)	กดปุ่ม [SWING] แล้วตรวจสอบการทำงาน
(7)	กดปุ่ม [/TEST] แล้วใช้งานตามปกติ
(8)	ตรวจสอบการทำงานตามคู่มือการใช้งาน

1.2 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FFQ)

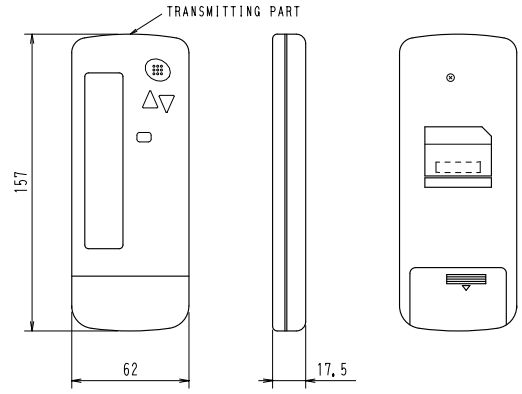
1.2.1 Features



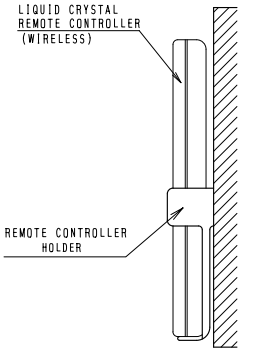
1.2.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

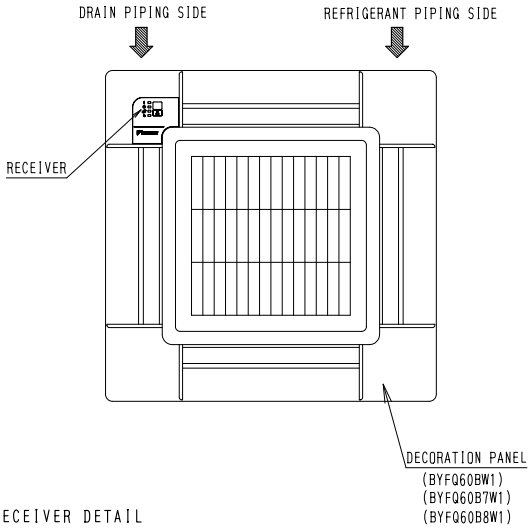
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

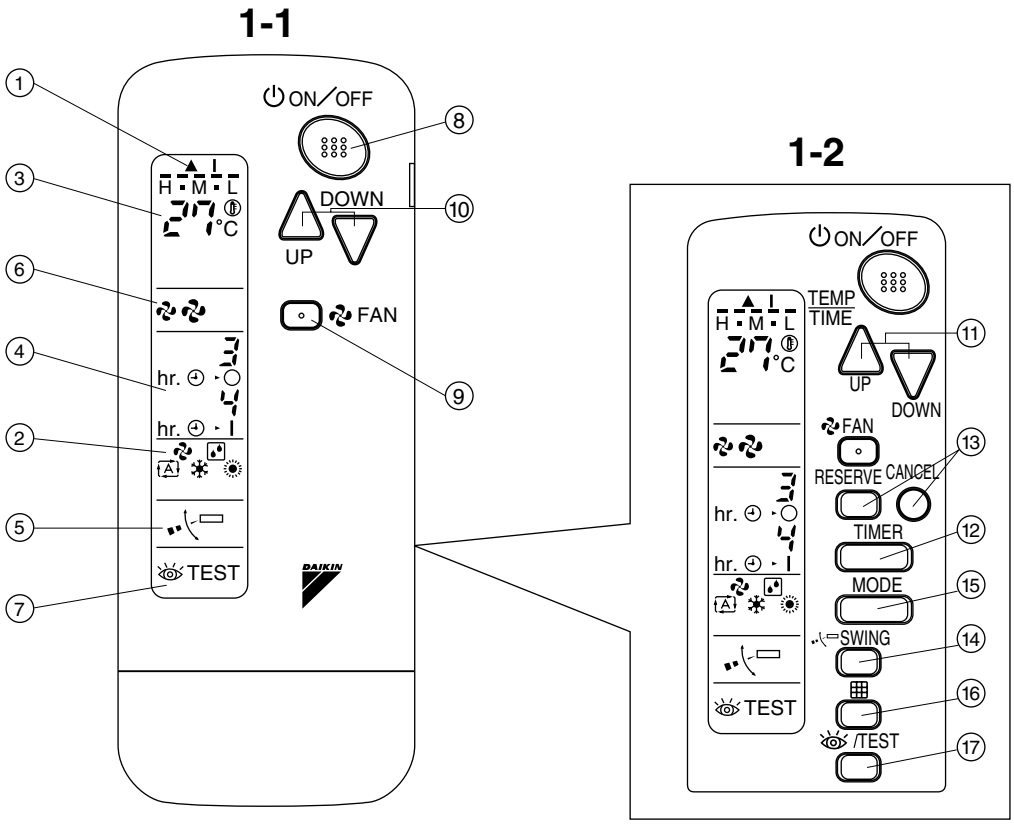


• RECEIVER DETAIL

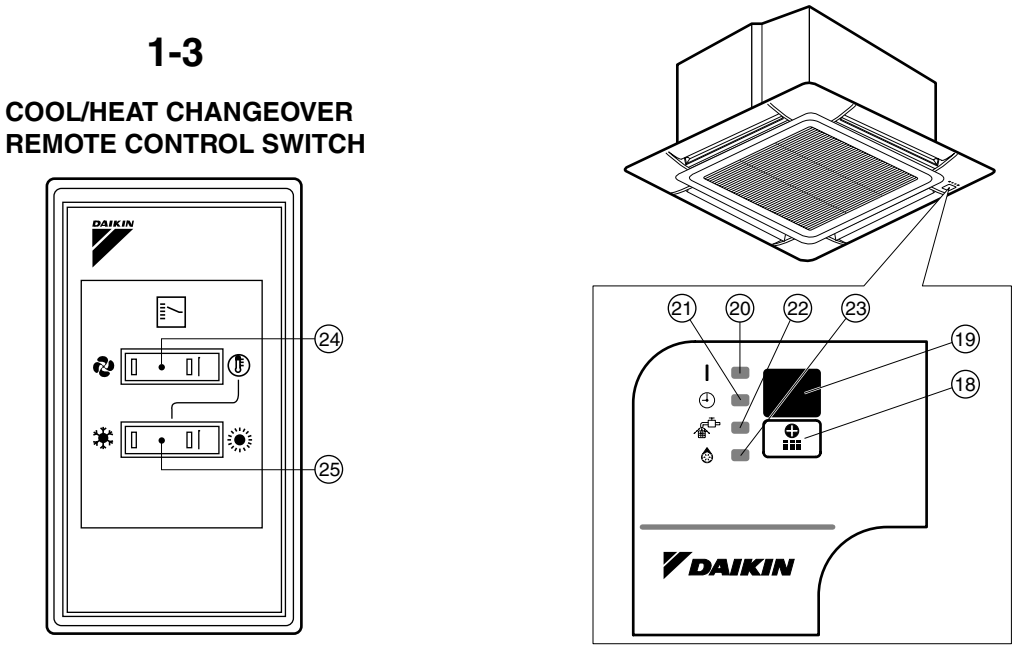


3D038937A

1.2.3 Operation Manual



1



1 2

3P107422-1S

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATION..... [1]
PRIOR TO USE ..... [2]

1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS..... 1
2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION..... 4
3 HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER..... 5
4 OPERATION RANGE..... 6
5 OPERATION PROCEDURE..... 7
6 NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER..... 12
7 HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS..... 12

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 9.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-1S

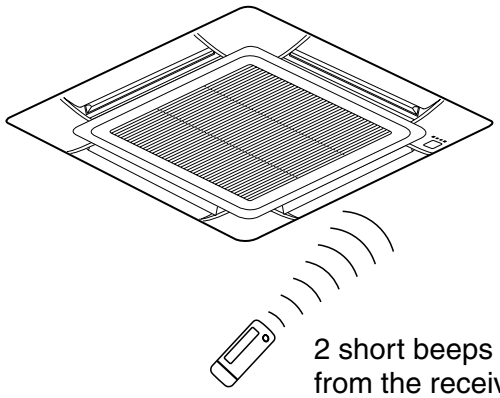
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller
Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.
If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

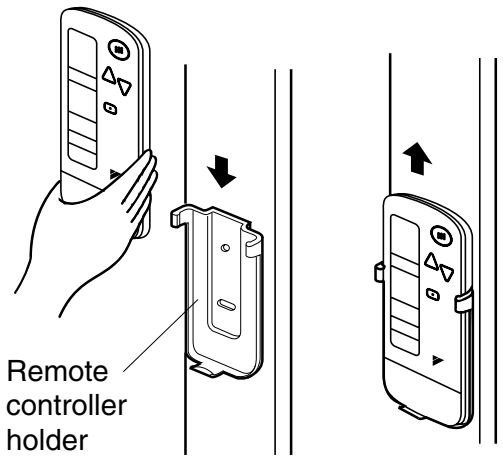
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-1S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

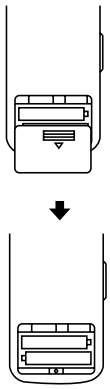


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

SKYAIR System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		INDOOR HUMIDITY	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RS50 · 60 RKS25 · 35 · 50 · 60 RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			
3MKS50 4MKS58 · 75 · 90 3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 24
			WB	– 15 to 18
3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

3P107422-1S

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System
See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 on page [1]

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

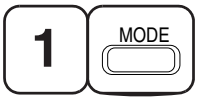
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page [1]



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16˚C.



ON/OFF

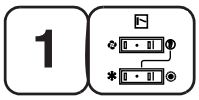
Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

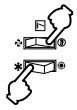
Refer to figure 1-1,3 on page [1]



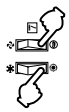
OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”

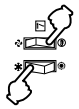


- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”



3P107422-1S

■ FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”

■ DRY OPERATION ..... “  ”

- See “FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

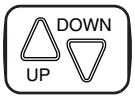
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

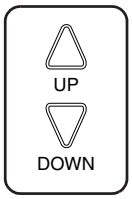
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

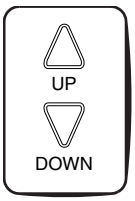
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

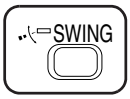
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16˚C to 32˚C.

3P107422-1S



FAN SPEED CONTROL

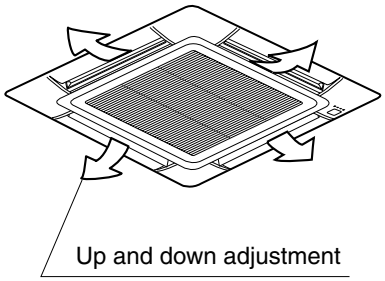
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The micro computer may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



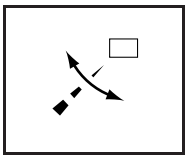
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Heating
Operation conditions	• When starting operation • When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTES

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

3P107422-1S

1 TIMER MODE START/ STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.

For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"

For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

2 PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP — When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN — When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 TIMER RESERVE

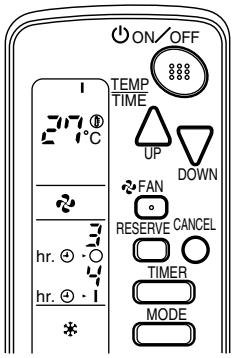
Press the TIMER RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTES

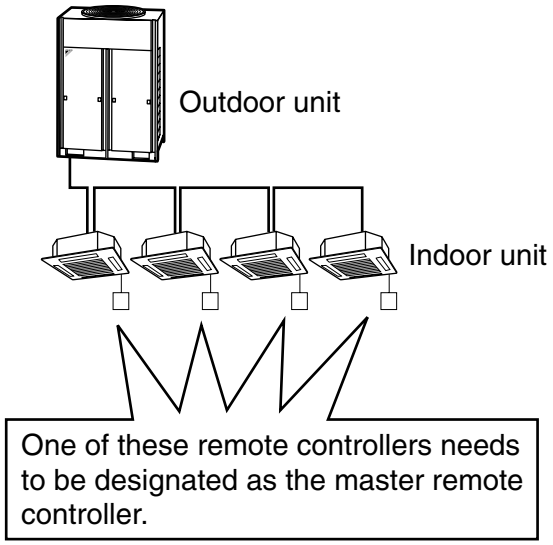
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system

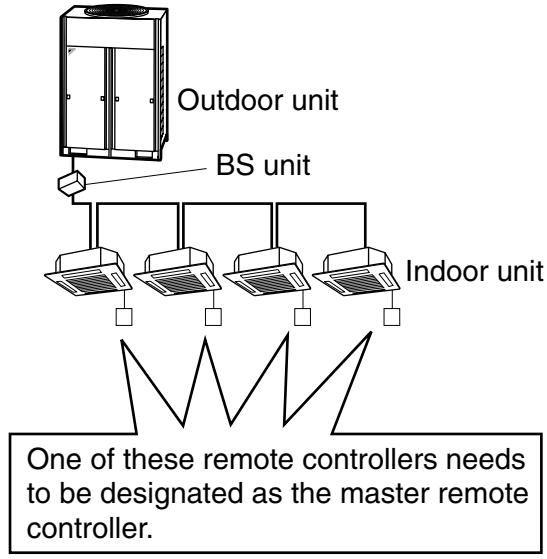
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



3P107422-1S

■ **For Heat recovery system**

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.

Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

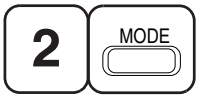
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ◴ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ◴ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

EMERGENCY OPERATION

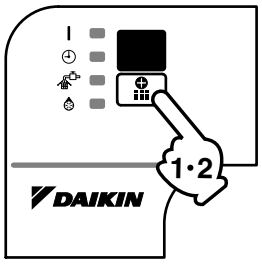
When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]



To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



3P107422-1S

[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

3P107422-1S

1 TEST

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from 3 to 6.

1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps.

1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

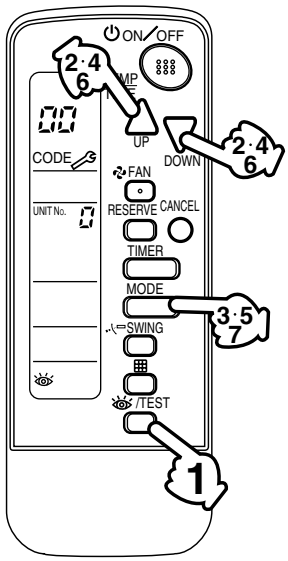
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

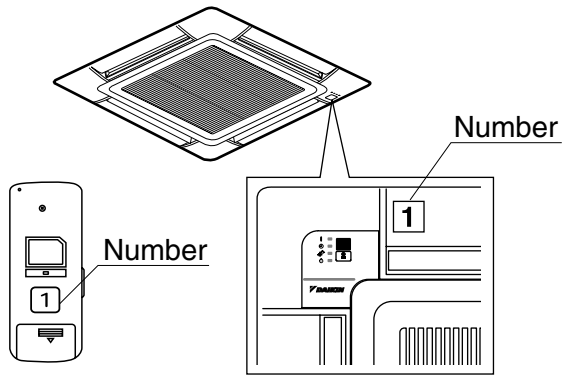
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



3P107422-1S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. **The unit does not operate at all.**
   - Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
   - Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
   - Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

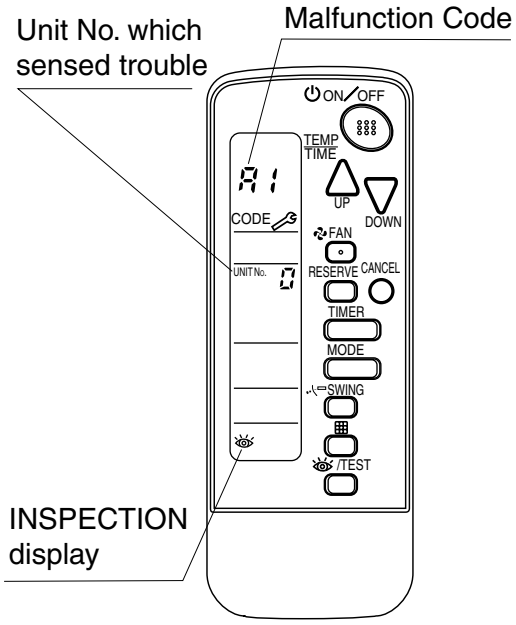
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller.
Notify and inform the model name and what the malfunction code indicates to your Daikin dealer.

3P107422-1S

1.2.4 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

BRC7E530W BRC7EA530W BRC7E531W BRC7EA531W	Wireless Remote Controller Kit	Installation manual

CONTENTS

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 1
2. BEFORE INSTALLATION 2
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION 2
4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION 3
5. FIELD SETTING 6
6. TEST OPERATION 8

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

⚠ **CAUTION**

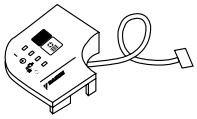
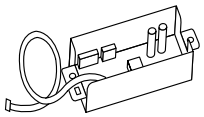
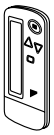
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sunlight.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.

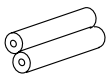
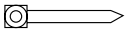
3P107423-1B

2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Transmitter board	Tapping screw for transmitter board	Wireless remote controller	Remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Screw for installing remote controller holder	Operation manual	Clamp
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

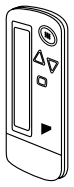
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈**Installing wireless remote controller**〉

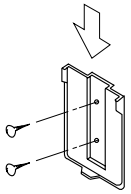
- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**
  (1) Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



(2)

(2) Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

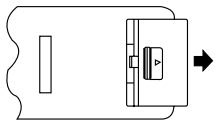


(1)

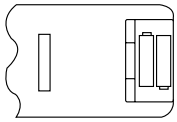
3P107423-1B

• **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



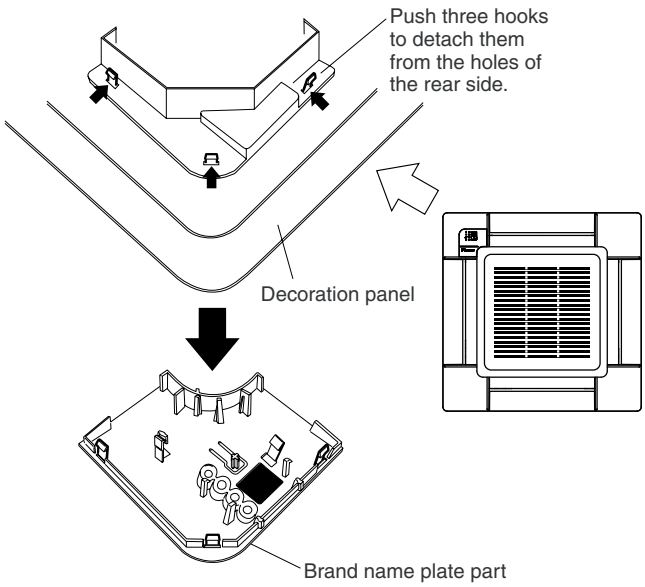
4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

1. Detach the brand name plate part of the decoration corner panel piece, before attaching the decoration panel. This part is not needed hereafter.

2. Next, remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

3. Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit. (Be sure to turn off power, before removing the control box lid.)



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

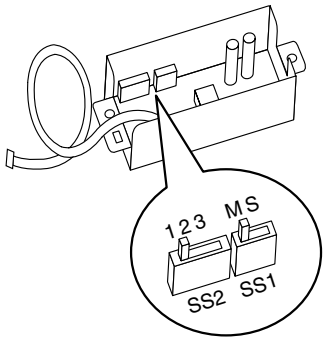
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmitter board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the transmitter board to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

3P107423-1B

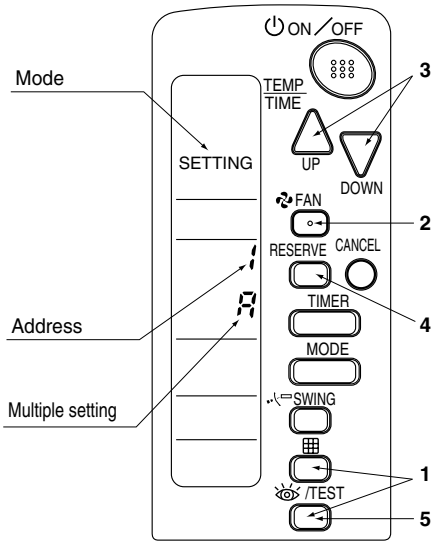
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

′Setting from the remote controller″

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

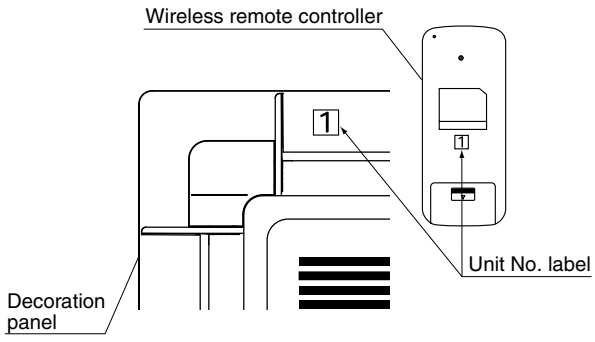
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

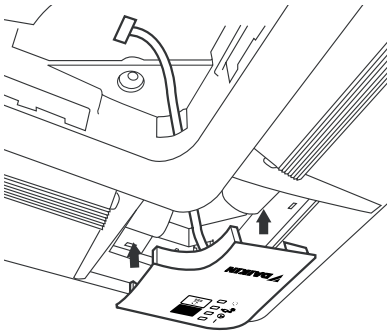
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



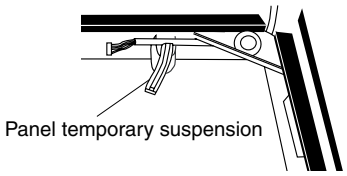
3P107423-1B

(3) Receiver installation

1. As shown at right, pass the harness from the receiver through the wiring hole of the decoration panel. Then, attach the receiver to the decoration panel.

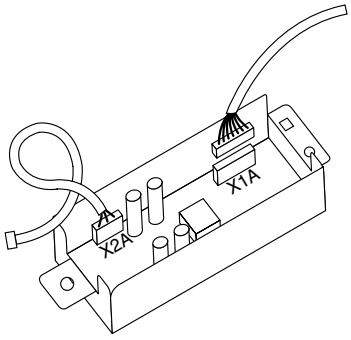


2. Hook the harness from the receiver on the upper part of the panel temporary suspension of the decoration panel.
Be sure to push the harness to the groove.

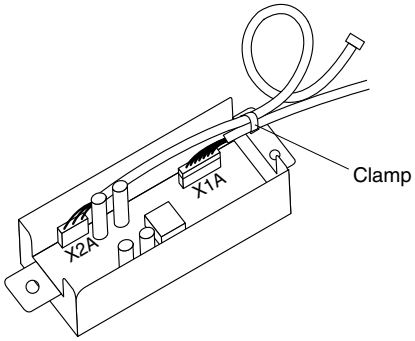


3. Attach the decoration panel to the indoor unit.
(Refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

4. Connect the harness from the receiver to the connector X1A on the transmitter board.

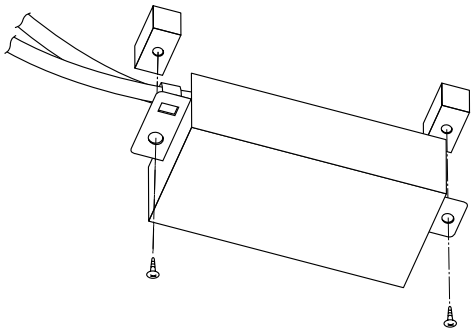


After connecting, use the attached clamp to fix the two harnesses to the transmitter board box.

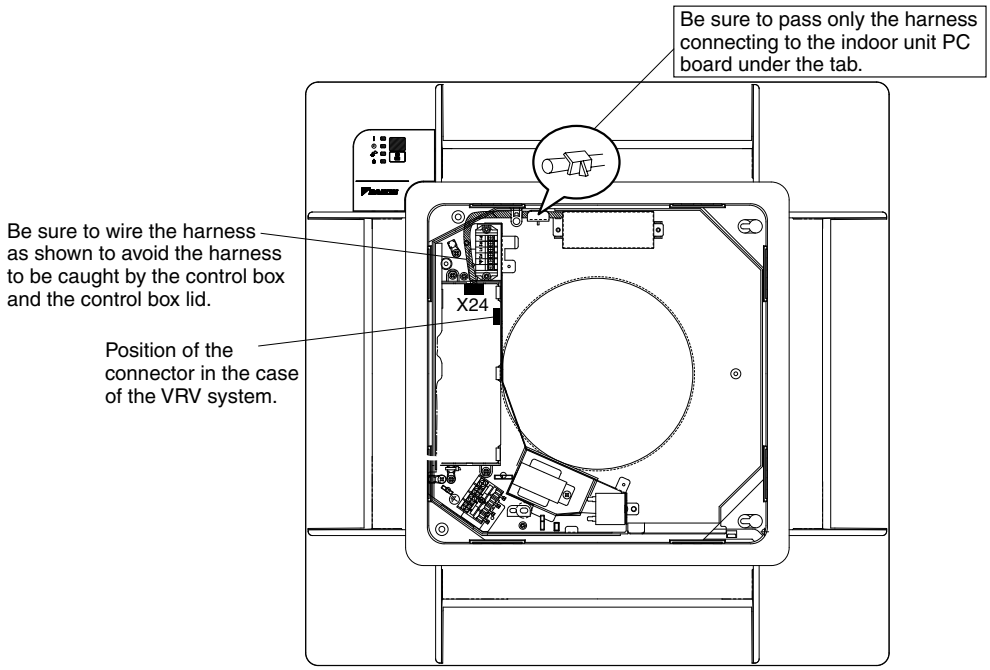


3P107423-1B

5. Use two tapping screws to attach the transmitter board to the indoor unit, as shown in the figure.



6. Connect the harness from the transmitter board to the connector X24 on the indoor unit PC board.

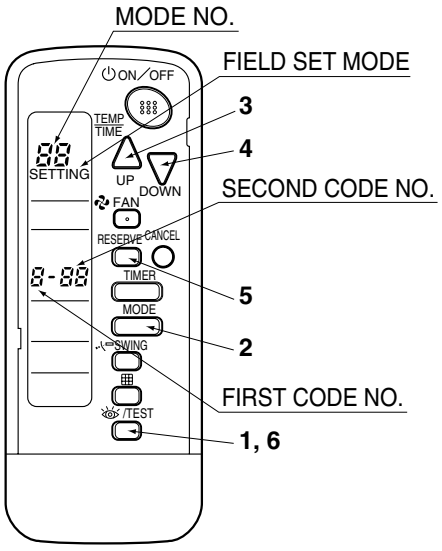


5. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▼ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long-life type	light	approx. 2,500 hours	heavy	approx. 1,250 hours	-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)		Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		-
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)		1˚C		0.5˚C		-
13	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a sealing member of air discharge outlet kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		Lower

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

6. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction code of installation manual attached to the indoor unit, if it does not operate.

2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify for 6 hours.
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3P107423-1B

1.3 BRC7E(A)63W / BRC7E(A)66 (for FHQ)

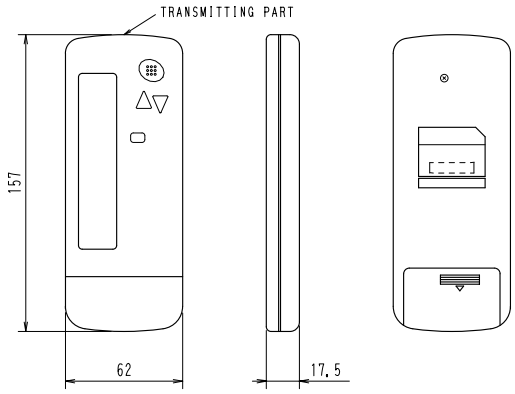
1.3.1 Features



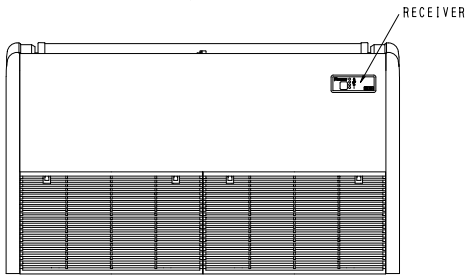
1.3.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

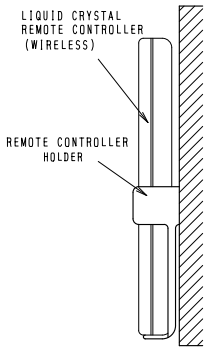
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



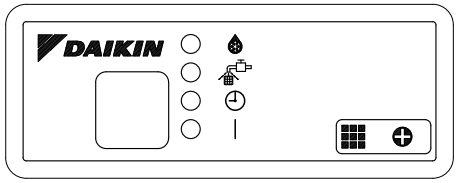
• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>

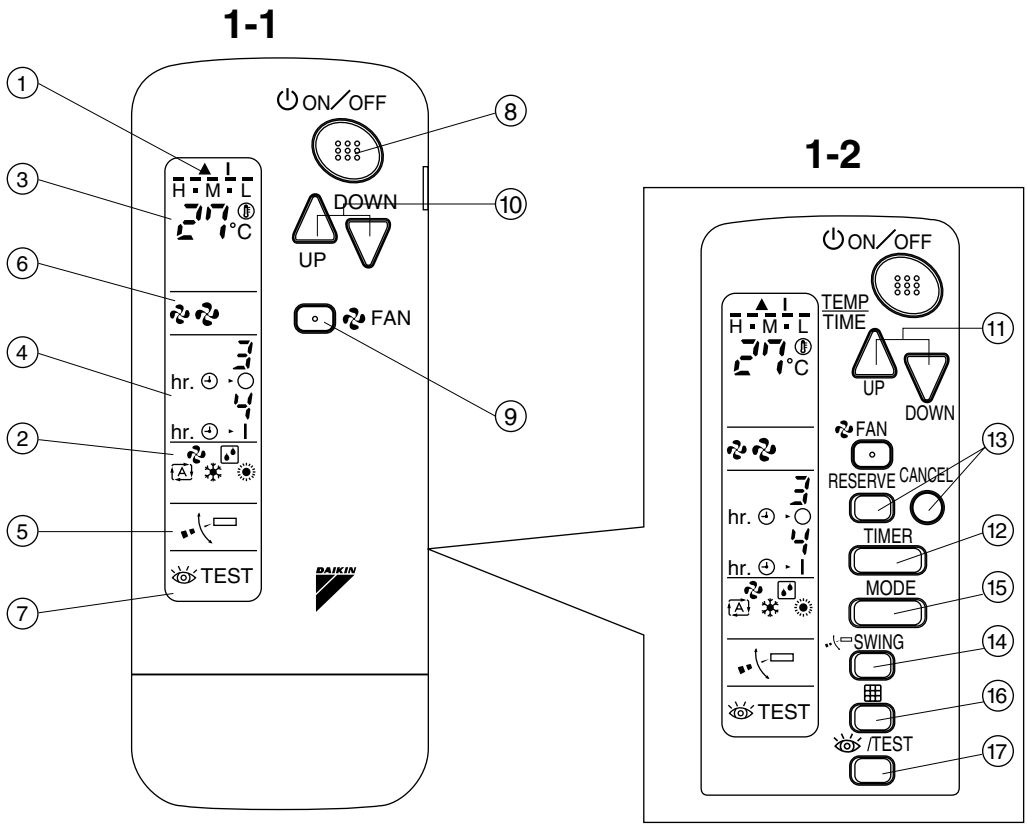


• RECEIVER DETAIL



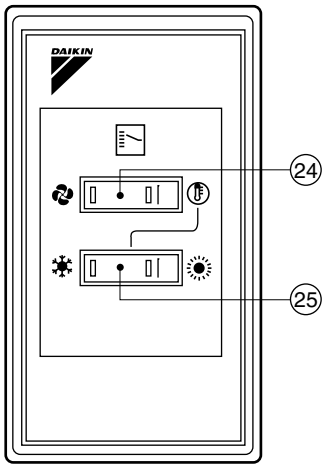
3D028963B

1.3.3 Operation Manual

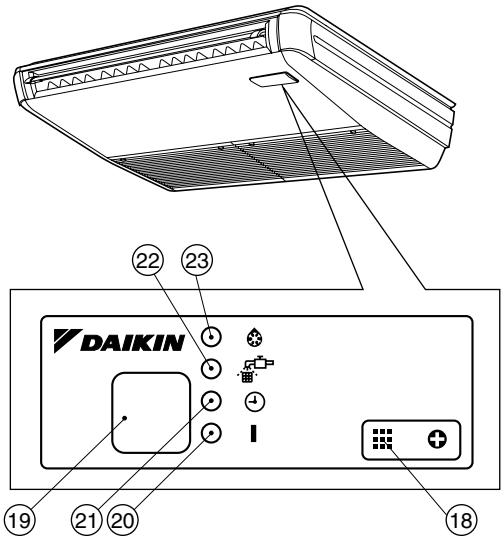


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-8S

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".
The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING** .. Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION** ... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ WARNING

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 9.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 8.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.

3P107422-8S

22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

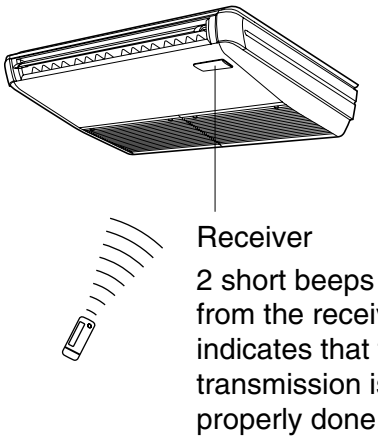
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

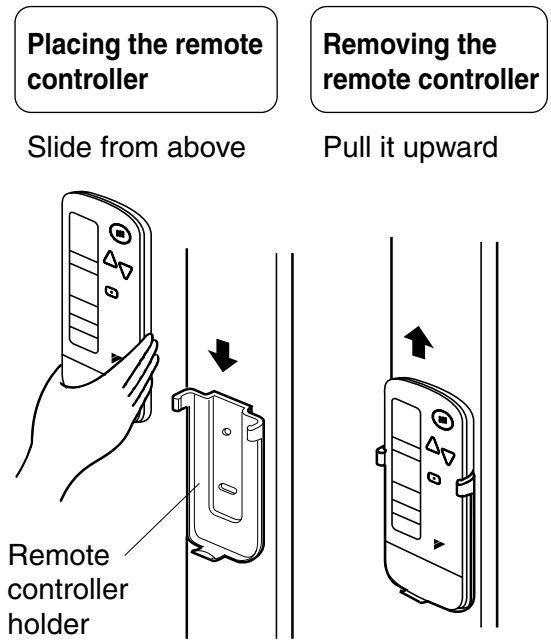
Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

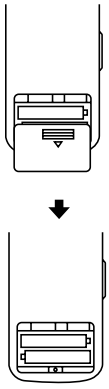


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 on page [2]

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- For cooling only type, "COOLING", and "FAN" and "DRY"operation are able to select.

3P107422-8S

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page [2]

1 OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... " ❄ "
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
  - • In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... " "
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... " "
  - • The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - • Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - • This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16˚C.

2 ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- • Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 on page [2]

1 OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... " "
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... " "
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... " "
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... " "

- • See "FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH" for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " "
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- • Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

3P107422-8S

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

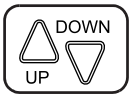
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

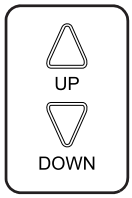
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

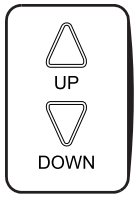
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

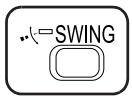
NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16 C to 32 C.



FAN SPEED CONTROL

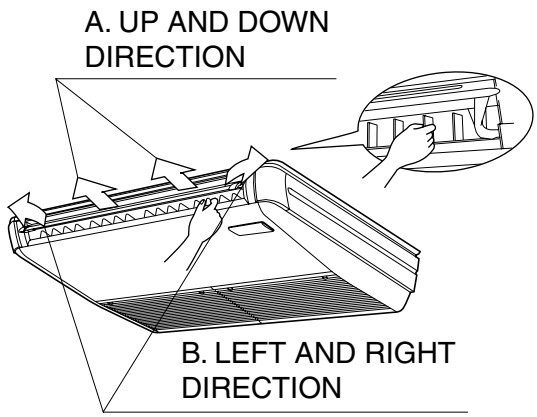
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

- There are 2 ways of adjusting the air discharge angle.
  1. A. Up and down adjustment
  2. B. Left and right direction

Fig. 1

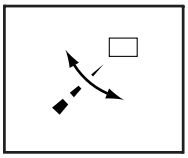


3P107422-8S

A. UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation condition	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.

- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

B. LEFT AND RIGHT DIRECTION

- Adjusting air flow direction in the left and right direction. **(Refer to Fig. 1)**

NOTE

- Only make adjustments after you have stopped the air flow direction swing in a position.
- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.



TIMER MODE START/ STOP

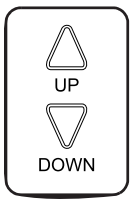
Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

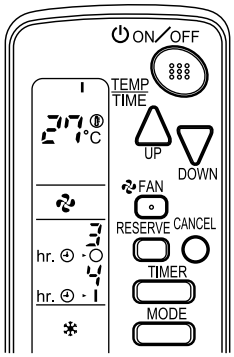
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

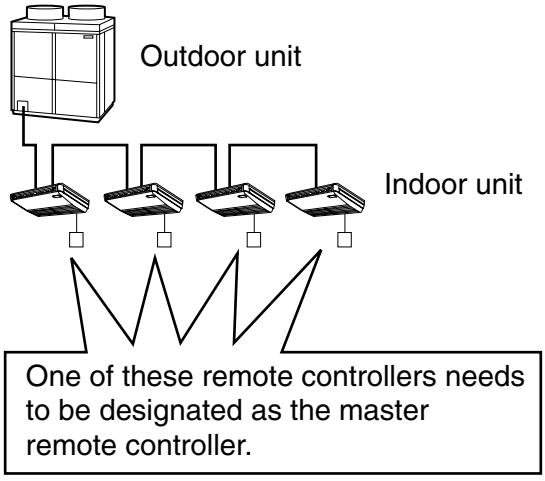
NOTE

- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

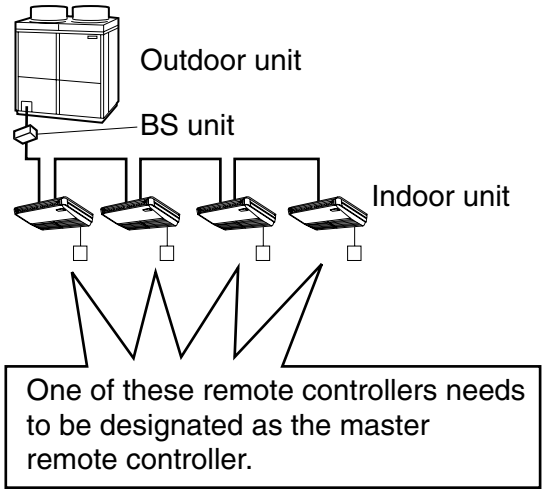
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

3P107422-8S

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

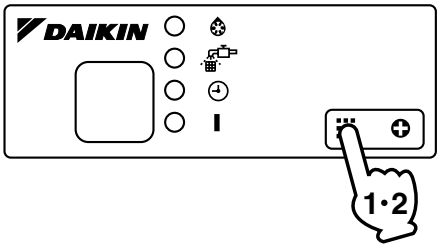
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

3P107422-8S

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES
- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP
When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from 3 to 6.

1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

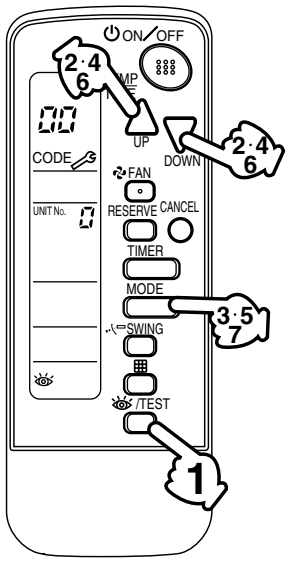
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

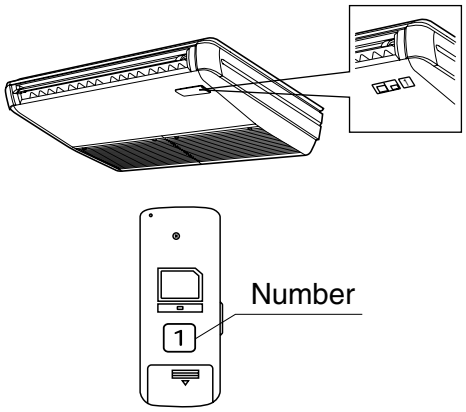


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

C: 3P107422-8S



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

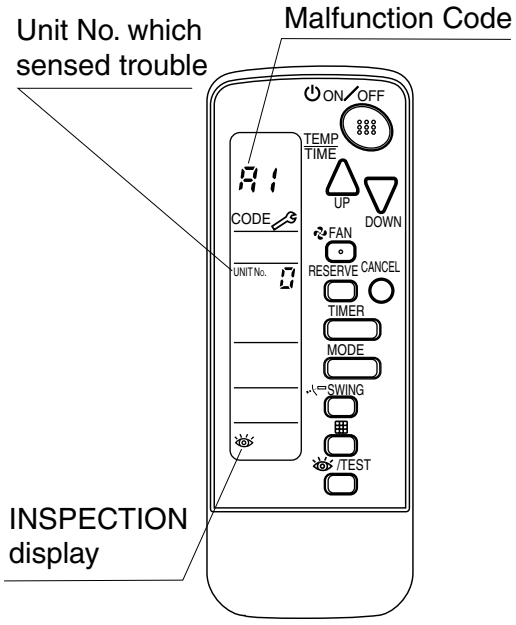
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 12.)



Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

3P107422-8S

1.3.4 Installation Manual

To the installer of the unit:

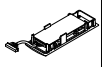
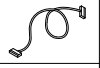
Instruct the user how to operate the unit following the operation manual.

Caution

- Carefully read the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that the place where the unit will be installed satisfies the following conditions:
  - Where the wireless remote controller is operable.
    (No strong light source or inverter fluorescent lamp must be near the signal receiver.
    The signal receiver must not be directly exposed to the sun light.)
  - Where the operation display lamp is easily visible.

ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver assembly		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Dry cell battery LR 03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Wire harness		1 pc.
									Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
Transmission PC board assembly		1 set	Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label	1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3	1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.
									Clamp		2 pcs.

❶ INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

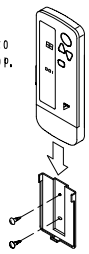
<Installation of wireless remote controller>

- Do not throw the wireless remote controller or give strong shock.
  Do not store it where it may get wet or directly exposed to the sun light.
- Direct the wireless remote controller transmitting part toward the receiving part of the unit.
- The distance operable by the wireless remote controller from the unit is approximately 7 meters.
- If an obstacle such as curtains blocks the signal between the receiver and the wireless remote controller, the system does not operate.

- Installing to a wall or a pillar

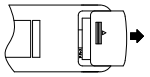
  Slide the wireless remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

  Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

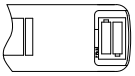


- How to set the batteries

  ① Slide and open the back cover in the direction shown by the arrow.



  ② Set the attached dry cell batteries to the place.
  Make sure to match the polarity (+) (-) of the batteries to the marks indicated where the batteries are to be placed when setting the batteries.



❷ INSTALLATION OF RECEIVER ASSEMBLY

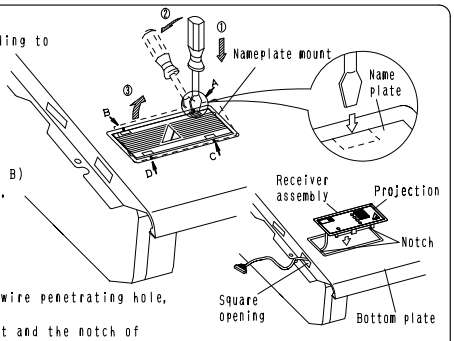
(1) Preparation before installation

Remove the suction grille and the piping side decorative panel according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Installation of receiver assembly

- Remove the decorative name plate mount of the indoor unit.

① Insert the tip of the flat blade (-) screwdriver into the place shown by black circle ● (both A and B) of the name plate.
② Tilt the screwdriver in the direction shown by the arrow. (both A and B)
③ Pull the entire name plate mount toward yourself and remove one side.
④ Do the same to the remaining two places. (C and D)
⑤ Remove the entire name plate.
(the name plate mount is no longer required.)



- Installation of receiver assembly

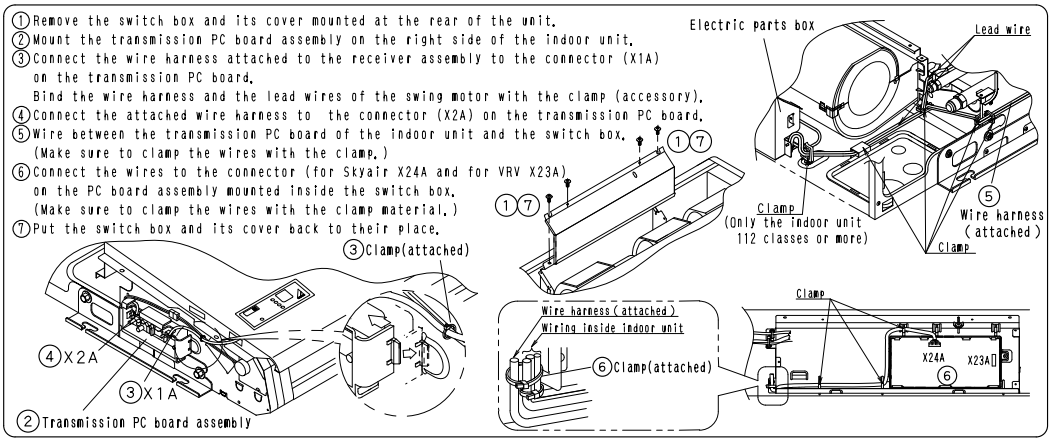
  After passing the wire harness of the receiver through the electric wire penetrating hole, set the receiving part in the direction shown by the arrow.
  (Fix the receiver after matching the projection of the receiving part and the notch of the bottom frame.)

1P067740B

2

❸ INSTALLATION OF TRANSMISSION PC BOARD ASSEMBLY

①Remove the switch box and its cover mounted at the rear of the unit.
②Mount the transmission PC board assembly on the right side of the indoor unit.
③Connect the wire harness attached to the receiver assembly to the connector (X1A) on the transmission PC board.
Bind the wire harness and the lead wires of the swing motor with the clamp (accessory).
④Connect the attached wire harness to the connector (X2A) on the transmission PC board.
⑤Wire between the transmission PC board of the indoor unit and the switch box. (Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp.)
⑥Connect the wires to the connector (for Skyair X24A and for VRV X23A) on the PC board assembly mounted inside the switch box. (Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp material.)
⑦Put the switch box and its cover back to their place.

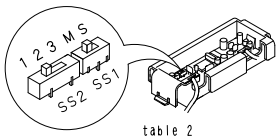


❹ SETTING OF ADDRESS

<Setting the address and the MAIN/SUB stations>

When multiple units are installed in a room and controlled by one wireless remote controller, (including individual remote control in group control) make sure to set the address to both the receiving part and the wireless remote controller.

SETTING PROCEDURE (For setting the remote controllers for other units, see the installation manual attached to the air conditioners.)



(1)Setting the receiver
Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board according to the table 1.
When using both wired and wireless remote controllers together, change the MAIN/SUB setting switch on the receiving part (SS1) to the SUB side since the wired remote controller will be used as MAIN. (Refer to table 2)

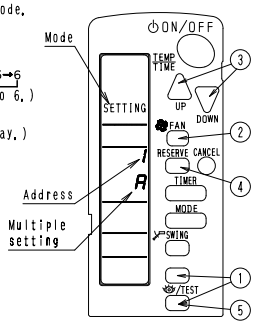
table 1

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3

table 2

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)	M S	M S

(2)Setting the address of wireless remote controller
①Press the [▦] and [TEST] buttons at the same time for 4 seconds or more to go into the FIELD SETTING mode. (The liquid crystal display on the remote controller is shown in the above drawing.)
②Press the [FAN] button and select the multiple setting. (A/b setting) (Each time the button is pressed, the display changes from "A" to "b".)
③Press the "▲" and "▼" buttons for set the address. The address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it from 1 to 3 to correspond with the receiving part. (It does not work when it is set to 4 to 6.) →1→2→3→4→5→6
④Press the [RESERVE] button and "define" the setting.
⑤Press the [TEST] button for 1 second or more and the setting is completed. (It returns to normal display.)

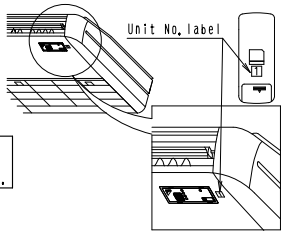


Miltiple setting (A/b setting)

When the indoor unit operated by this remote controller is controlled from the outside such as centralized control, sometimes the command of operation changeover and temperature setting is not accepted.
After confirming the customer's request, set the remote controller according to the following table.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	When the operation of the indoor unit is controlled by other air conditioners and equipment	For cases other than those shown left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than operation changeover and temperature setting are accepted. Receiving sound is: 1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEP	
b: Multi System	Only the items operated remain displayed for a short time	All commands are accepted. Receiving sound is: 2 SHORT BEEPS	

PRECAUTIONS
Set the unit No. of the receiving part and the wireless remote controller the same.
If the numbers are not set the same, the signal from the remote controller cannot be received.



(3)Stick the Unit No. label at the indoor unit as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.

❺ MOUNTING SUCTION GRILLE AND DECORATIVE PANEL

●Put the piping side decorative panel and the suction grille back to the place in the reverse order according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

❻ TEST RUN

●Perform test run according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

1P067740B

1.4 BRC7C611W / BRC7C610W (for FAQ / FAY)

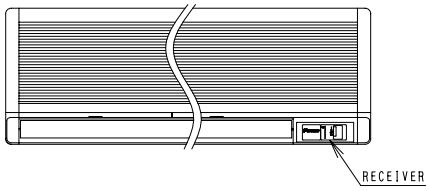
1.4.1 Features



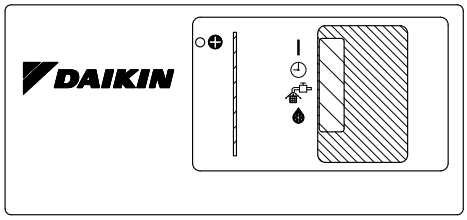
1.4.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

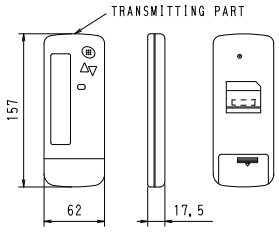


• RECEIVER DETAIL

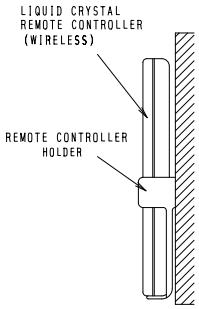


INDOOR UNIT		WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	
		HEAT PUMP SYSTEM	COOLING ONLY SYSTEM
Split System	FAY71・100FAVE	BRC7C610W	BRC7C611W

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

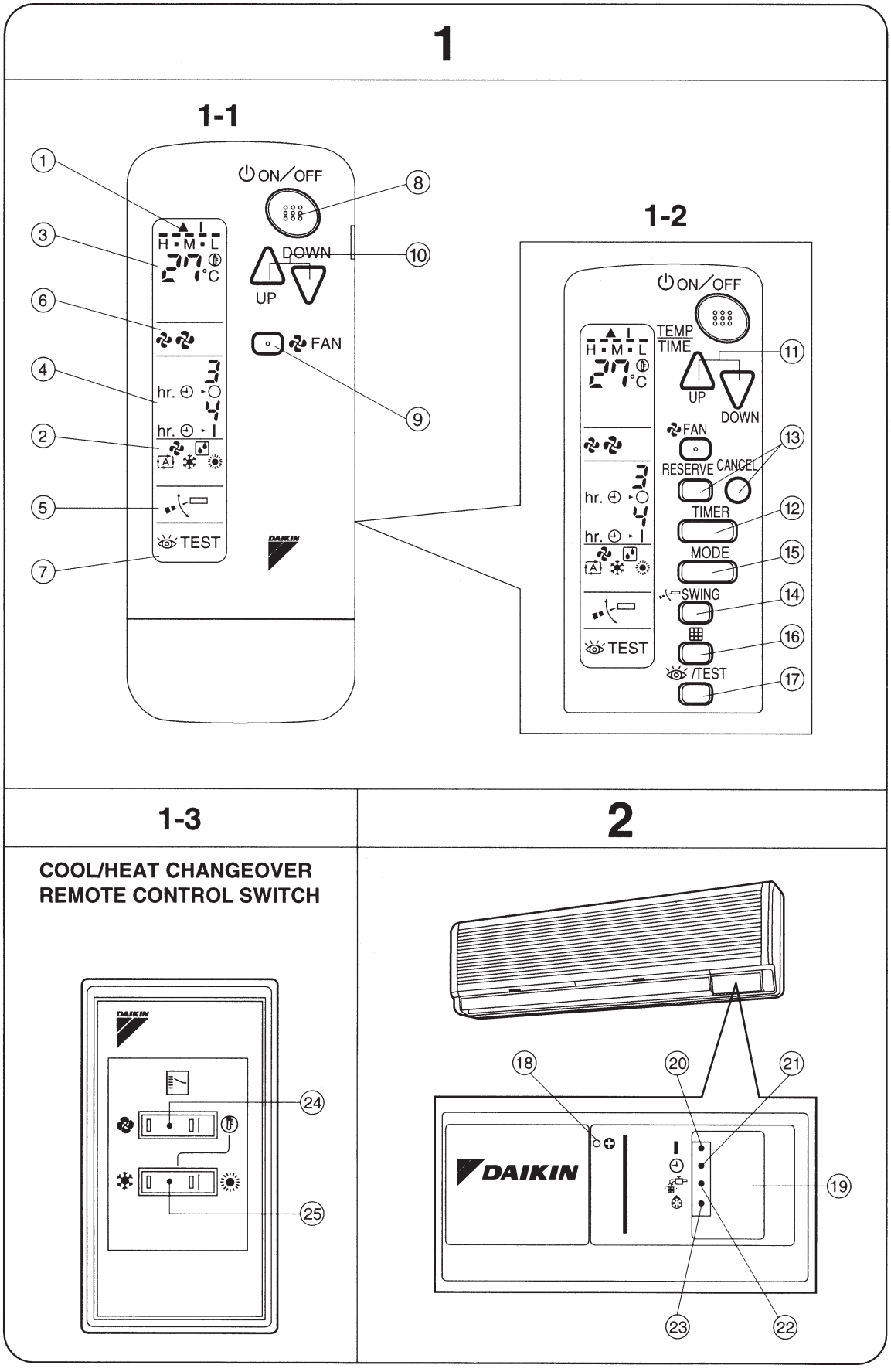


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



C: 3D010766B

1.4.3 Operation Manual



1

3P107422-17M

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.

There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING** : Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE : These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

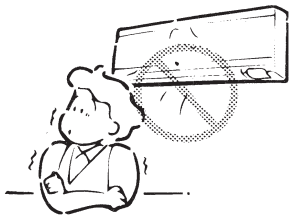
Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.

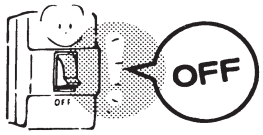
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.**
  Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.



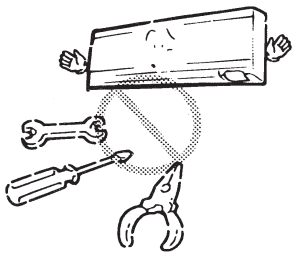
- **If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.**
  If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.



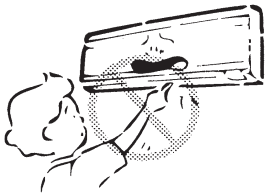
- **Ask your dealer to install your equipment.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



- **Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.**
  Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



- **Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.**
  The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.



- **Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



4

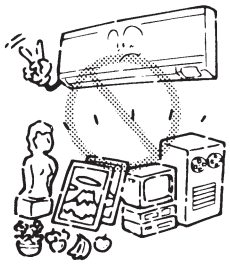
3P107422-17M

2

⚠ CAUTION

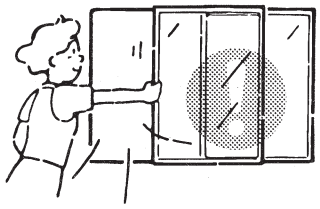
- **Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.**

  Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.



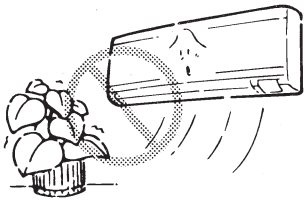
- **When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.**

  Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.



- **Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.**

  They may be adversely affected.

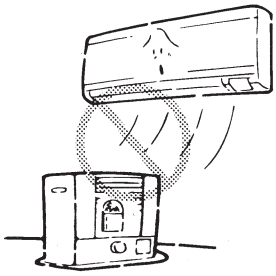


- **Do not operate the air conditioner with wet hands.**

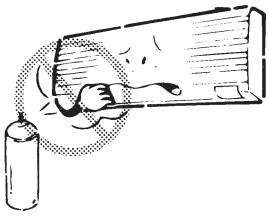
  Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.



- **Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.**



- **Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.**



5

3P107422-17M

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

①	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)** This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
②	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
③	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature.
④	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)** This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
⑤	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)** Refer to page 10.
⑥	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)** The display shows the set fan speed.
⑦	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)** When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
⑧	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
⑨	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
⑩	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
⑪	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON** Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
⑫	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON** Refer to page 11.
⑬	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON** Refer to page 11.
⑭	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON** Refer to page 10.
⑮	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON** Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
⑯	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON** Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
⑰	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON** This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
⑱	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH** This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
⑲	**RECEIVER** This receives the signals from the remote controller.
⑳	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
㉑	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)** This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
㉒	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
㉓	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)** Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
㉔	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
㉕	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

(NOTE)
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit. After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

6

3P107422-17M

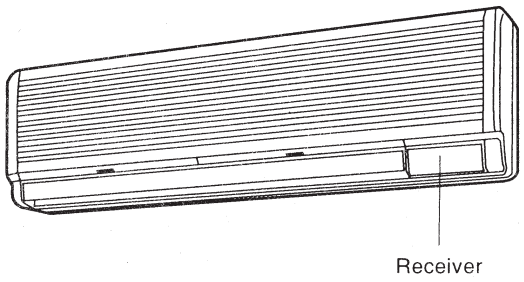
2

HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Receiver



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 12 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

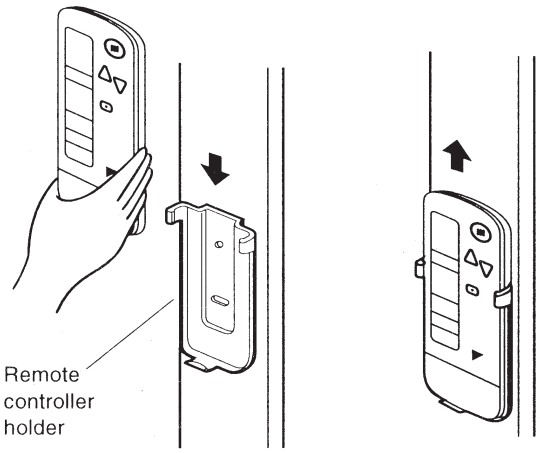
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward



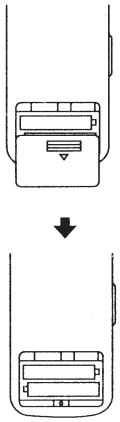
How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries

Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

CAUTIONS

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

7

3P107422-17M

OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUT-DOOR TEM-PERA-TURE	
		TEM-PERA-TURE		HUMI-DITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R71 • 100	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	21 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	−5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERA-TURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERA-TURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100	DB	15 to 27	DB	−9 to 21
				WB	−10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)*

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
FAN OPERATION ..... " ✿ ".

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

(2) Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

3P107422-17M

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)*

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

COOLING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

HEATING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

FAN OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

2 Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

Note:

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

3P107422-17M

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)*

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " " (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION)

2 Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

3 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

4 Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)*

1 Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

2 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY " ".

3 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

4 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

5 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.

3P107422-17M

(1) Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.

" " DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

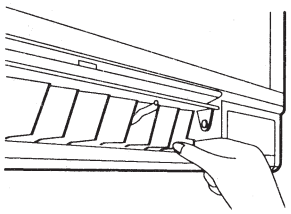
Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

" " DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.

Adjusting left/right air flow direction

Angle the flaps to the left/right from the knob, as wanted or as needed to air condition the room.



NOTE:

- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated by the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (⏲ ▸ ◯). . . . The system stops operating after the time setting has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (⏲ ▸ |) . . . . The system starts operating after the setting has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can simultaneously be programmed.

(1) Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop . . . . . (⏲ ▸ ◯)
For setting the timer start . . . . . (⏲ ▸ |)

(2) Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP	When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.
DOWN	When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

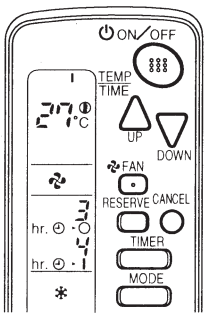
(3) Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from (1) to (3) once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ((4))

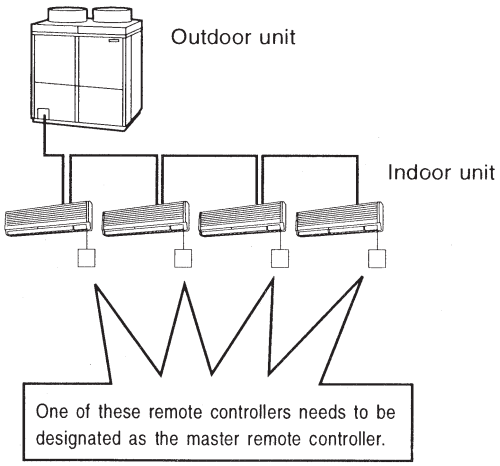
3P107422-17M

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

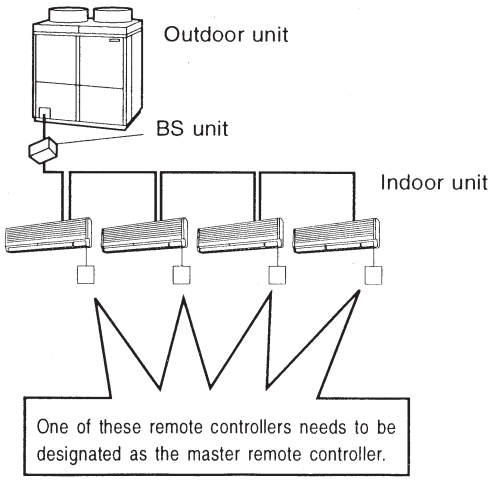
■ *For RSXY series*

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ *For RSEY series*

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "COOL", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN", "DRY" and "COOL".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "HEAT", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN" and "HEAT".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "FAN", you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a "peep" is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a "peep" will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "⏲" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏲" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

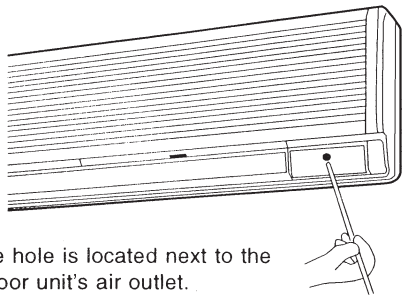
3P107422-17M

START

① To press the emergency operation switch, insert a match stick or other object narrow enough to fit inside the hole.

The machine runs in the previous mode.

The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



The hole is located next to the indoor unit's air outlet.

STOP

② Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**

One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.

All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**

Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)

The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE:

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE:

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. **THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE**

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

3P107422-17M

HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

1 Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode "0".

"0" appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2 Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps . . . . . Perform all steps from 3 to 6 .

1 short beep . . . . . Perform 3 and 6 steps

1 long beep . . . . . Normal state

3 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"0" on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"0" on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

6 Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

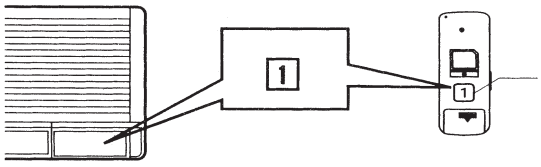
Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep. The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 Reset of the display

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. **The unit does not operate at all.**
   - Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
   - Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
   - Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

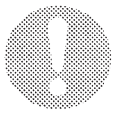
2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

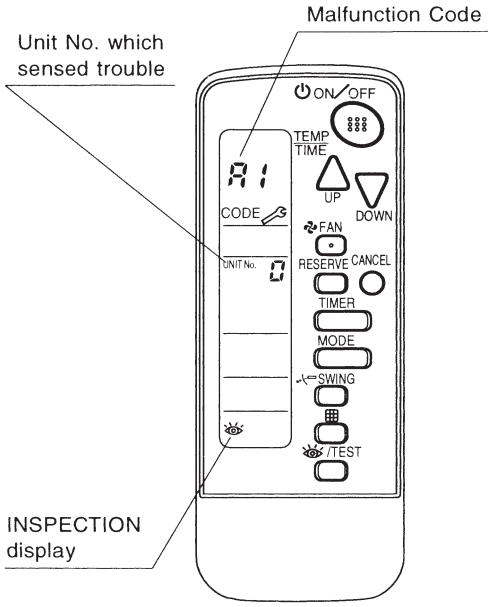
3P107422-17M

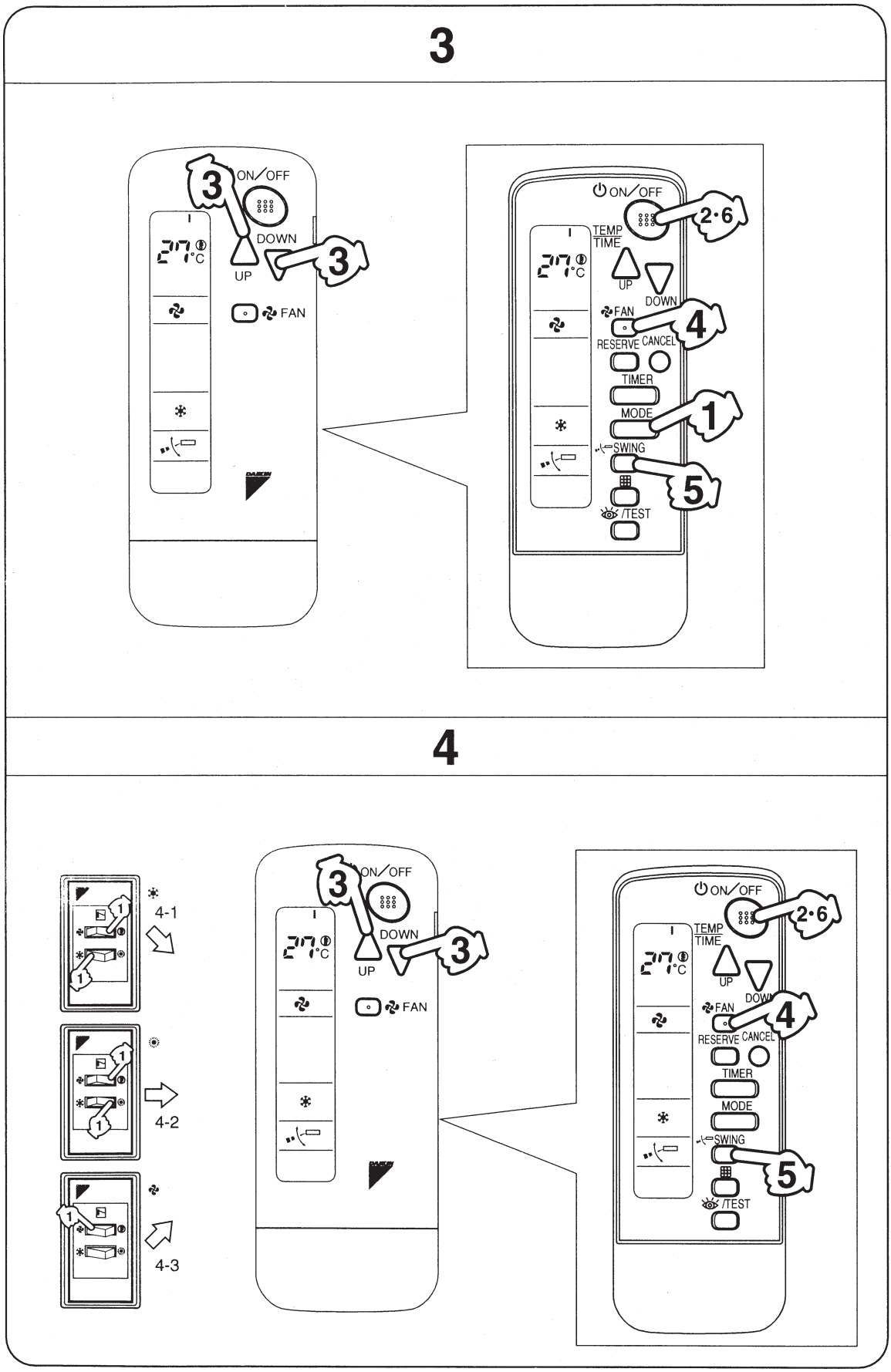
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

- When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

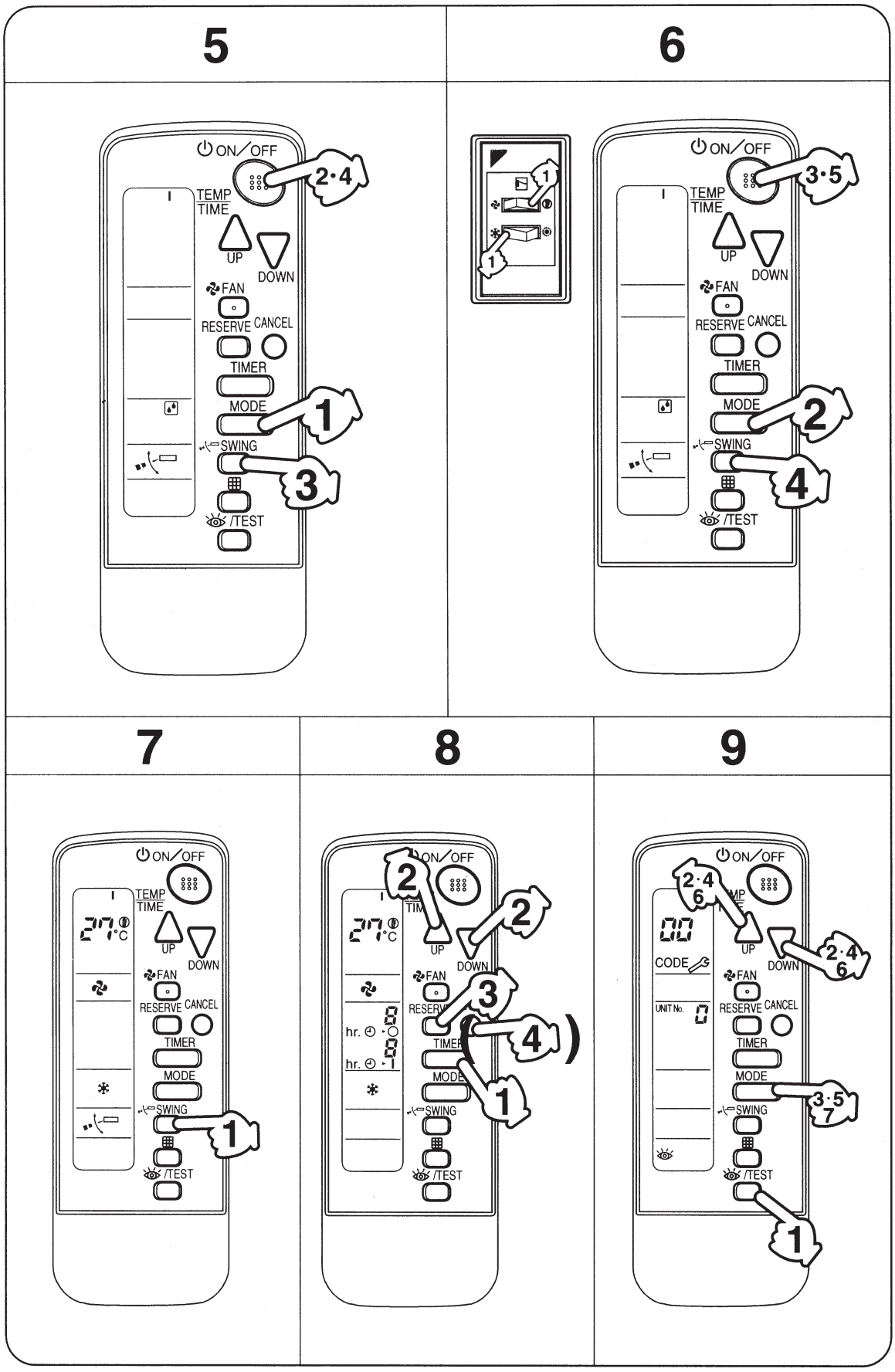


Trouble	Remedial action
The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.  	Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 14.)



43

3P107422-17M



44

3P107422-17M

1.4.4 Installation Manual

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

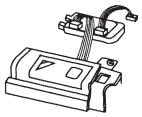
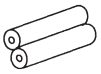
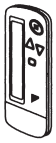
⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.
NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  * Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  * Ensure that the operaiton display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

ACCESSORIES Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Wireless display cover		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
			Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)		2 pcs.			
Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label	1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3	1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2

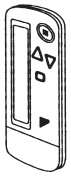
REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈 Installing wireless remote controller 〉

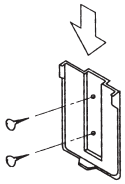
- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 12 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**

  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

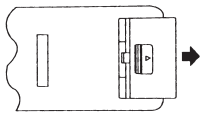


  Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

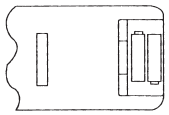


- **How to insert the batteries**

  ① Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



  ② Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



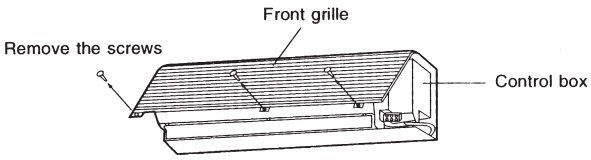
RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after electric wiring the indoor unit.

① Do not attach back in position the right side panel and the control display cover, both of which have been removed for electric wiring. Remove the left side panel too.

② Draw out the air filter, and remove the front grille as shown at below.



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller. If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

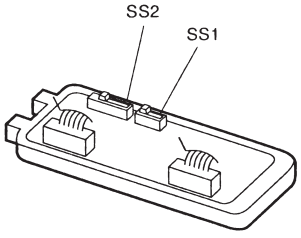
① Setting the receiver

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board that is connected with the wireless display cover.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1)	S M	S M



3

3PA59585-11W

② **Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")**

〈 Setting from the remote controller 〉

① Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

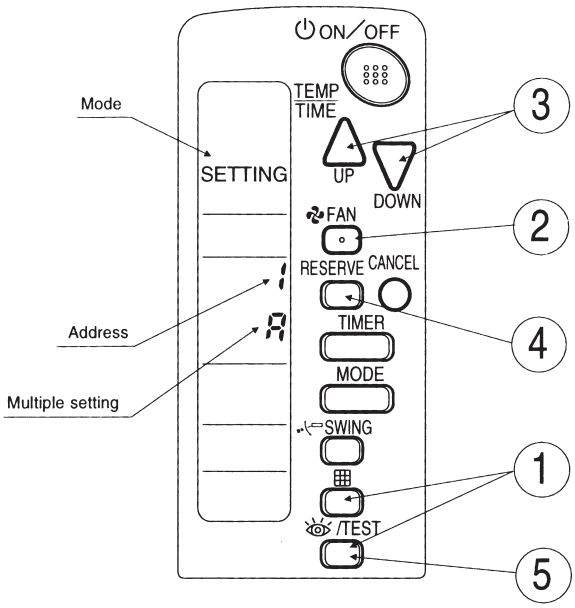
③ Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

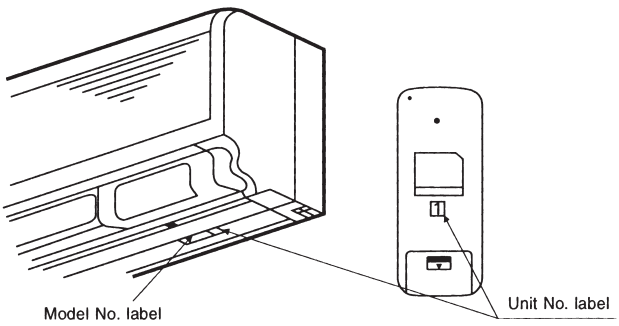


〈 Multiple settings A/b 〉

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

③ Stick the Unit No. labels next to the Model No. label at the bottom of the indoor unit as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.



PRECAUTIONS

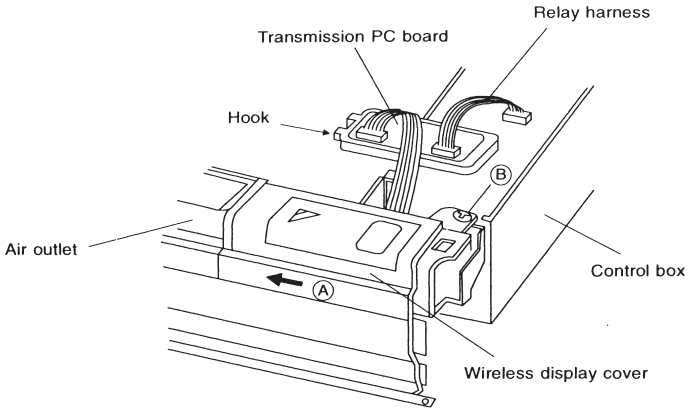
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

4

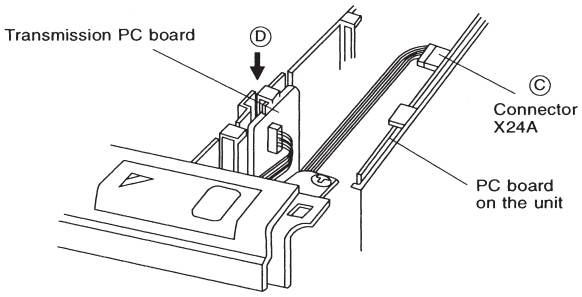
3PA59585-11W

(3) Setting up the wireless display cover and the transmission PC board

① To attach the wireless display cover as shown at right, take the reverse steps or detaching the display cover.
   Ⓐ Insert the cover with the arrow facing toward the right hand of the air outlet.
   Ⓑ Fix the cover to the control box with the screws.



② To attach the transmission PC board, take the following steps.
First connect the relay harness of the transmission PC board to the X24A connector (Ⓒ) on the PC board of the unit.
Then put the transmission PC board, with its hooks upward, on the facing face of the PC board on the unit.
Make sure that the PC board comes on the center of the 3 cataches (in the arrow (Ⓓ)).



③ Place the front grille first and then the right and left side panels into position.
④ Finally attach the air filter in place.

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.

③ Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.

④ Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑤ Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.

⑥ Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

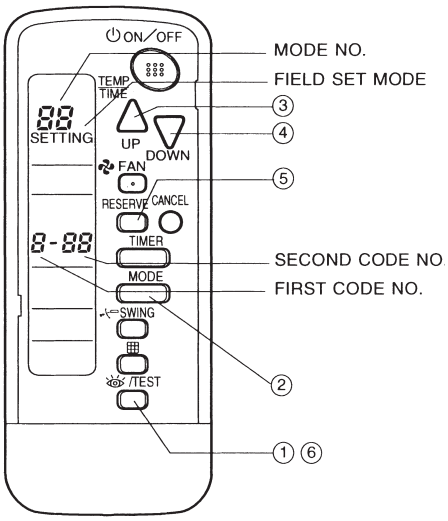
(Example) If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

5

3PA59585-11W

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Light	Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 100 hrs.	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.	Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1°C		0.5°C		—
13	0	Air flowrate increase mode (to be set upon user's request)	Standard		A little increase		Increase

NOTE) The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".
Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)



TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

〈 **PRECAUTIONS** 〉

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

6

3PA59585-11W

1.5 BRC4C62 / BRC4C64 (for FBQ, FDBT, FDMG)

1.5.1 Features

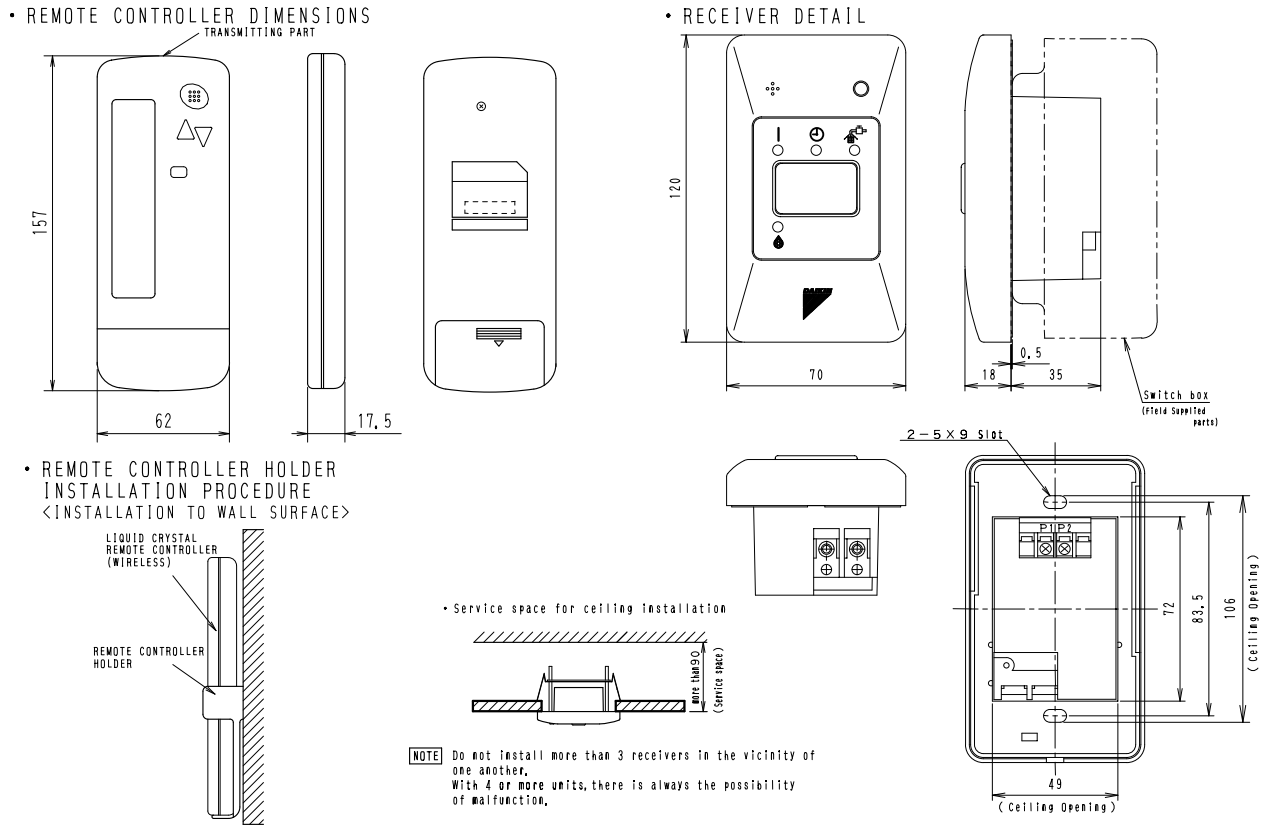




Signal receiver unit

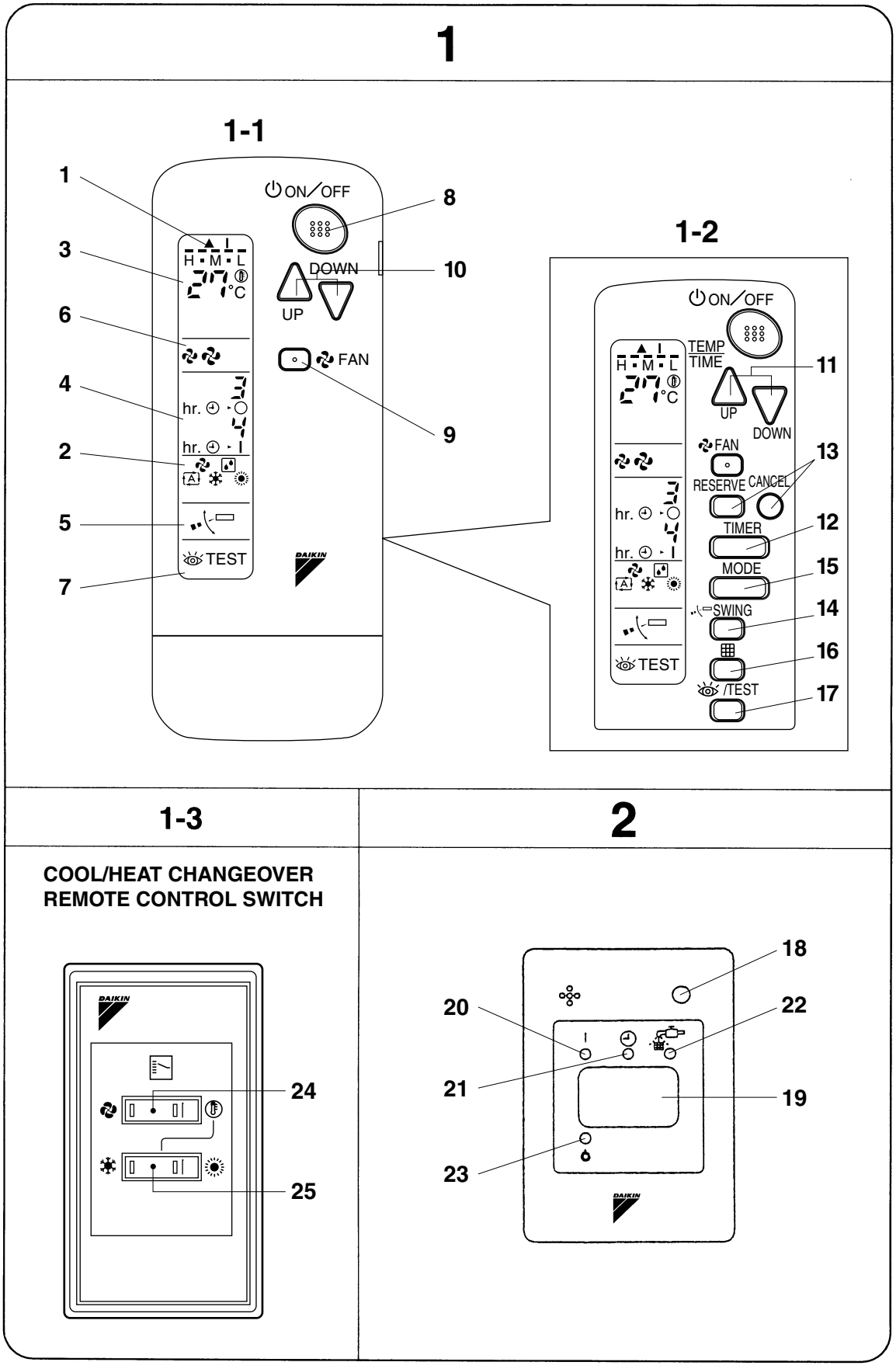
1.5.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

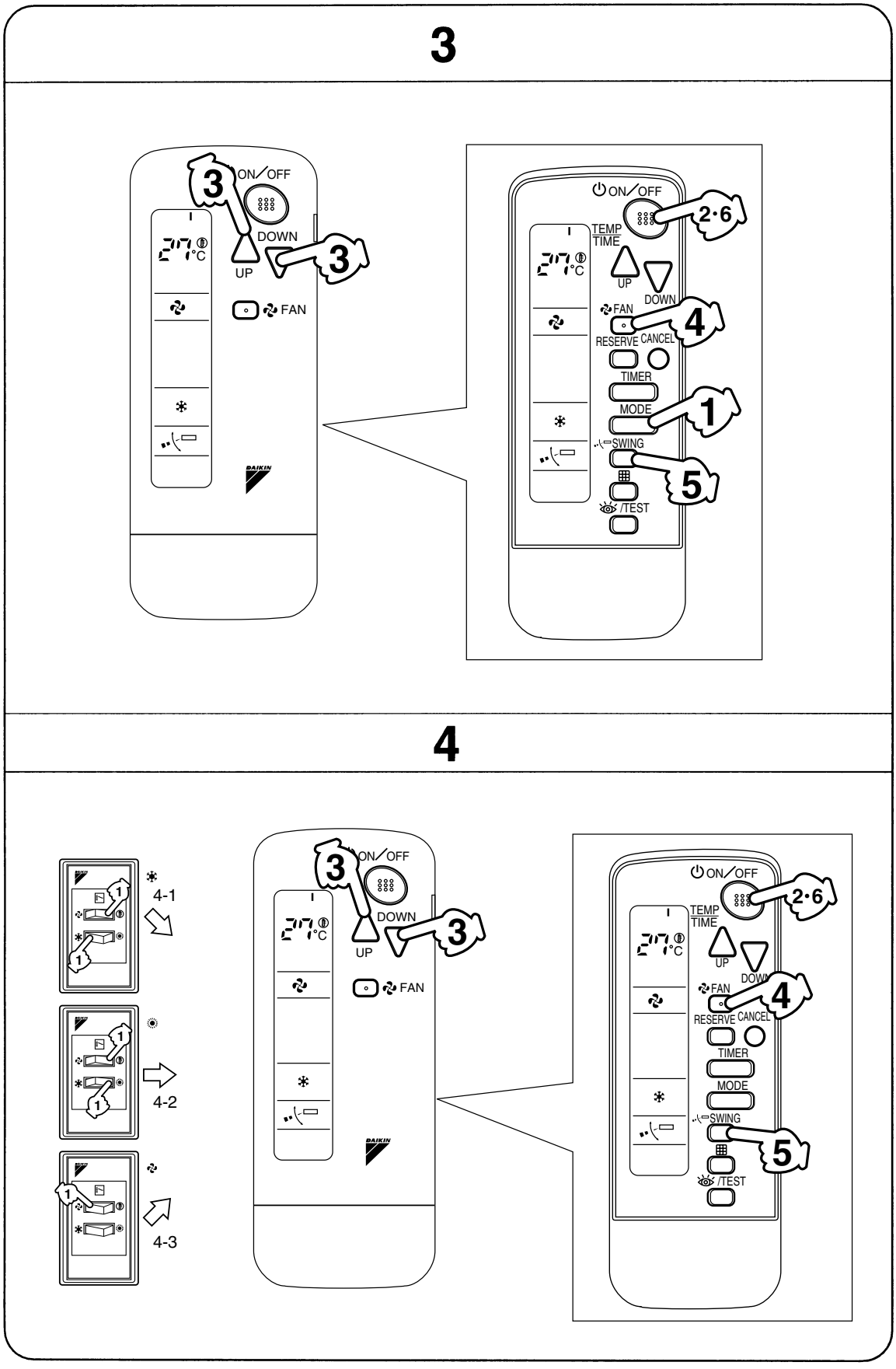


3D007898B

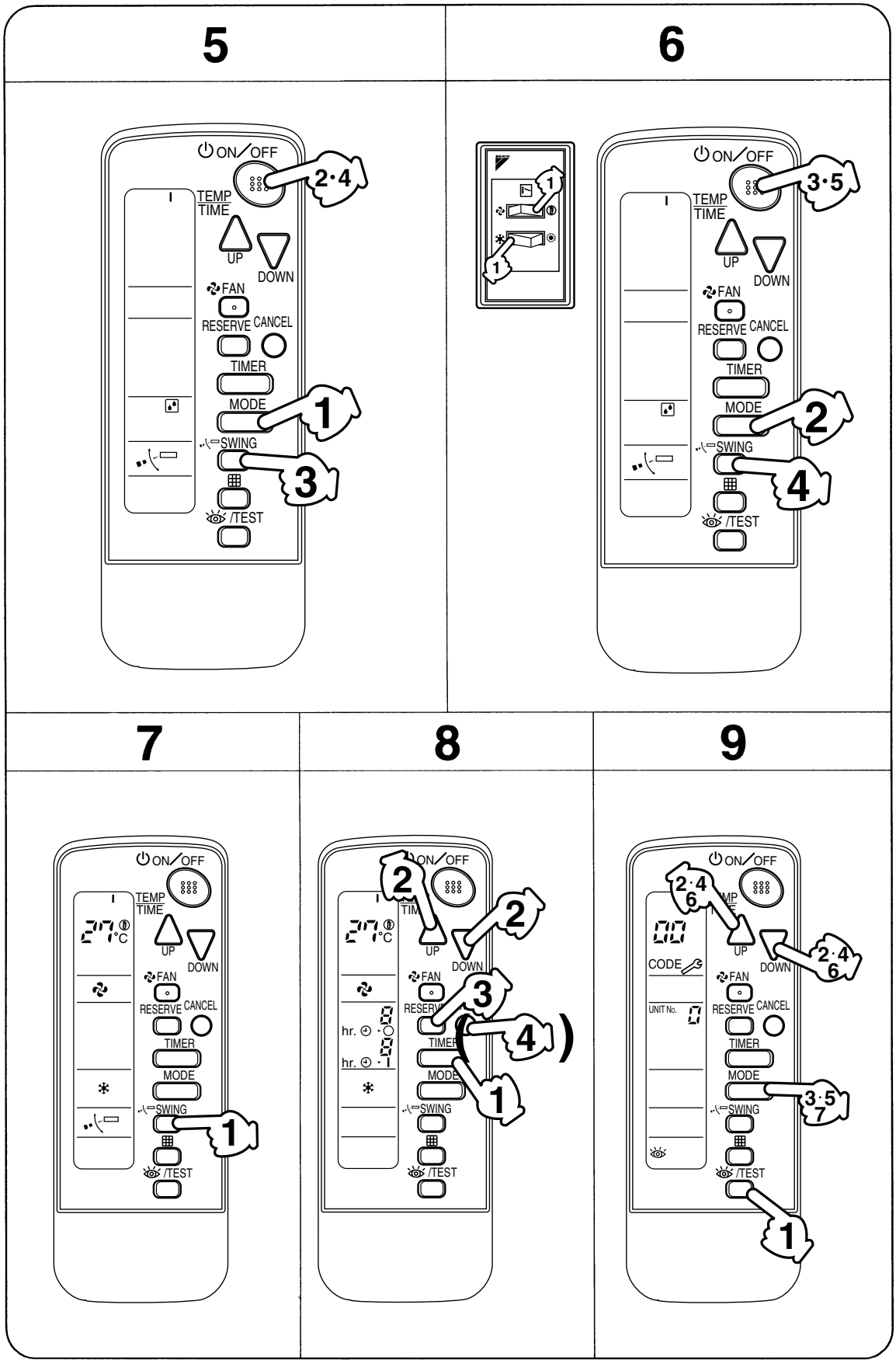
1.5.3 Operation Manual



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S

CONTENTS

PRIOR TO USE ..... [1]
ILLUSTRATION..... [2]

1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS..... 1
2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION..... 4
3 HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER..... 5
4 OPERATION PROCEDURE..... 6
5 NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER..... 12
6 HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS..... 12

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

3P107422-21S

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

3P107422-21S

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

3P107422-21S

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP) (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to page 9.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to page 9.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.

3P107422-21S

18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

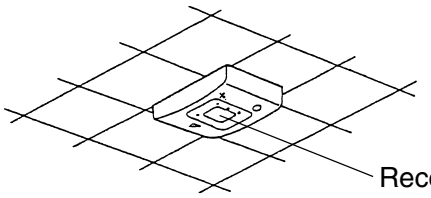
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

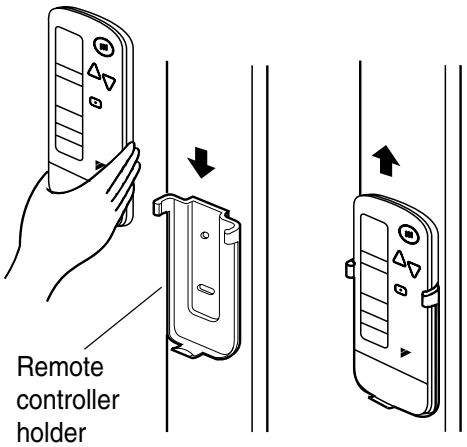
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-21S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

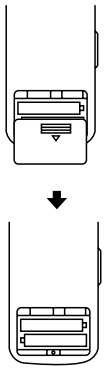


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

- If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
  In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system gives selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... "Ⓐ"
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

3P107422-21S

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

■ HEATING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

■ FAN OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

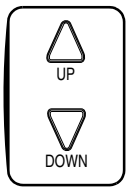
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

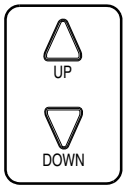
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

NOTE

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

3P107422-21S

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

(3) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(4) Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

(1) Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".

(3) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

(4) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(5) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

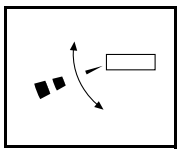
NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust up/down air flow angle.

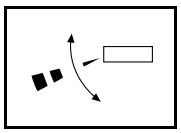
1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

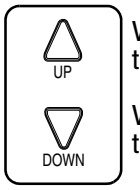
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“🕘 ▸◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 Press RESERVE button.

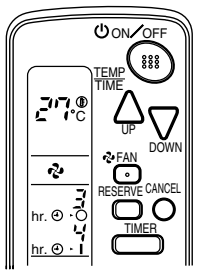
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

3P107422-21S

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

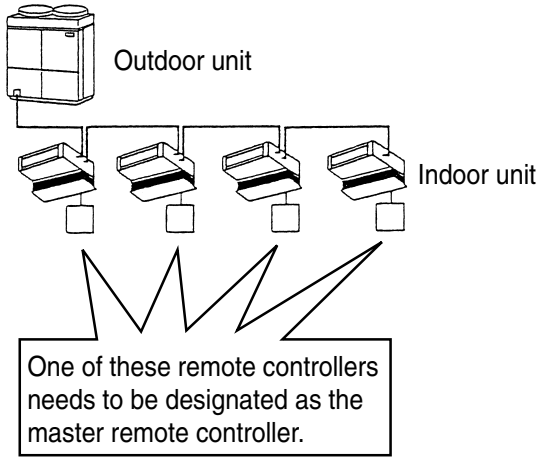
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (4)

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

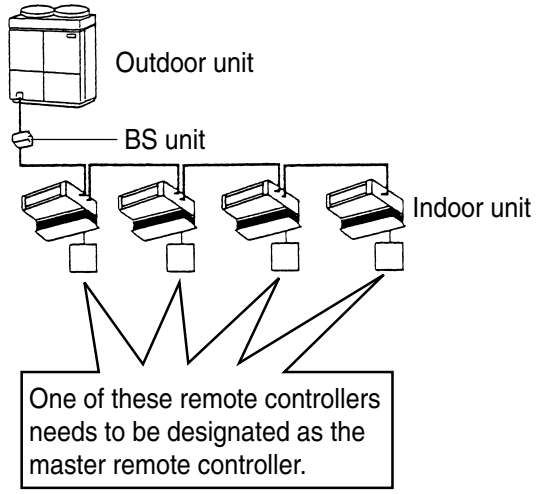
⟨⟨For Heat pump system⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For Heat recovery system⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

3P107422-21S

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "(clock)" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "(clock)" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

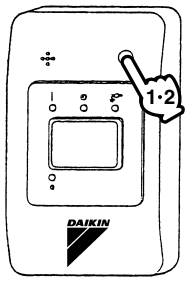
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction, and air flow rate.



[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-21S

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from (3) to (6)
1 short beep .....Perform (3) and (6) steps
1 long beep .....Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

(7) Reset of the display.

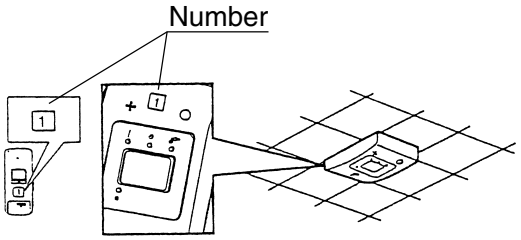
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

3P107422-21S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

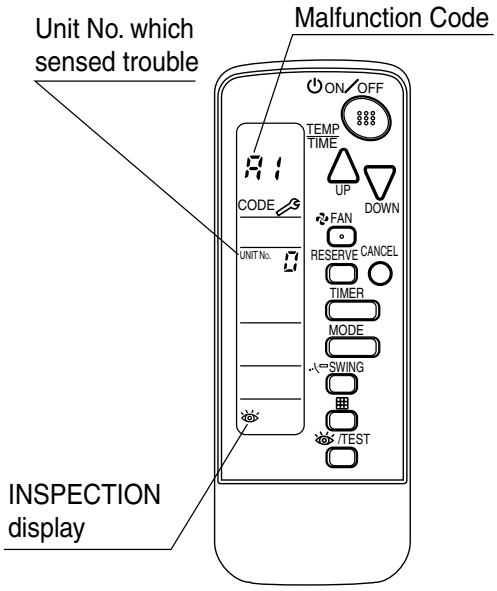
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 12.)



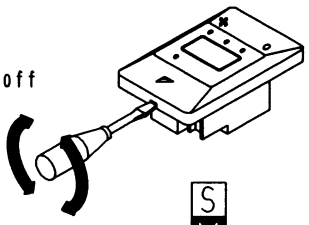
Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

3P107422-21S

1.5.4 Installation Manual

〈 Caution 〉
- Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
- With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

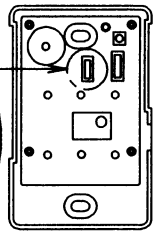
1. Remove the upper part of receiver.
   - Insert the screwdriver here and gently work off the upper part of the receiver.



2. Initial setting

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch

(When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. And the wireless remote controller should be set to SUB.)





Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)



Sub Remote Controller

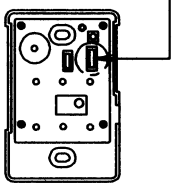
NOTES)
- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "MAIN"
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

3. Address setting
   - If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

Setting the receiver (It is fuctory set to "1")

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the PC board.

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3



Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting(A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

③ Press the "△UP" button and "▽DOWN" button to set the [1→2→3→4→5→6]
Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1~3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4~6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

2P018568

2

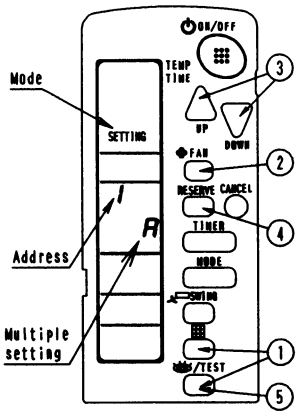
PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit NO. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal.
If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

(Multiple setting A/b)

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A : Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b : Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	



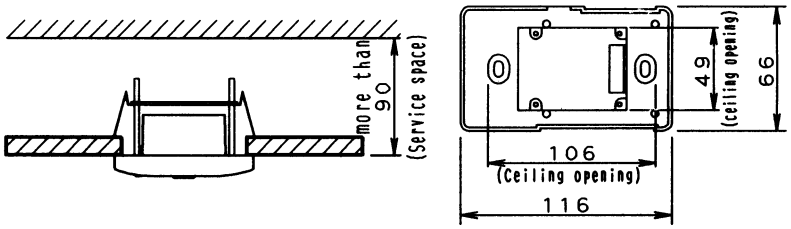
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

For ceiling installation

1. Prepare the ceiling for the receiver.

Open a hole in the ceiling for the receiver. (Use the provided ceiling installation pattern.)

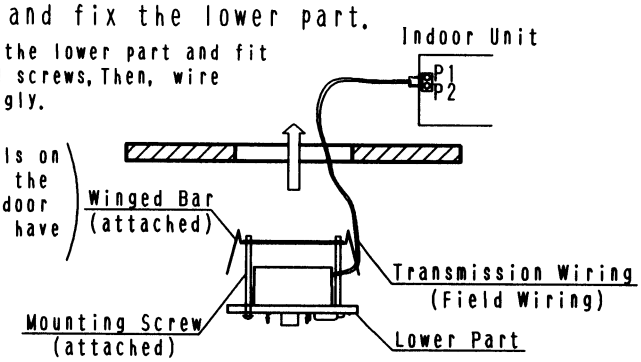


2P018568

2. Wire the indoor unit and fix the lower part.

- Install the winged bar to the lower part and fit the part with the attached screws. Then, wire (field supplied) accordingly.

(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. The P1 and P2 terminals have no polarity.)



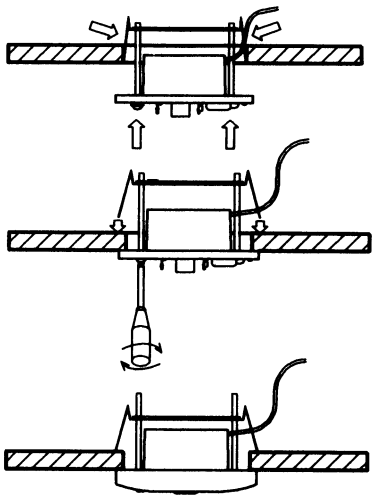
- Insert the lower part into the opening in the ceiling, first by pressing the wings inward to fit the hole and then by pushing from the screws until it sits flat on the ceiling.

- Tighten the screws until the lower part is fixed in place.

(Tighten both screws evenly. Overtightening may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)

- Rettach the upper part of receiver.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



《Precautions on transmission wiring》

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise)

② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Sheathed wire (2 wire)
Size	0.75~1.25mm²
Wiring length	max 200m (See Note 1)

NOTE)
1. Keep wires to less than 200m total when using 2 remote controller (wired or wireless) and when not.

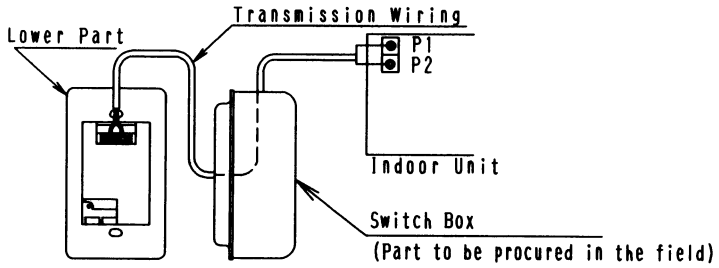
2P018568

⚠ CAUTION

- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
- Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

For wall mounting

1. Wire the indoor unit

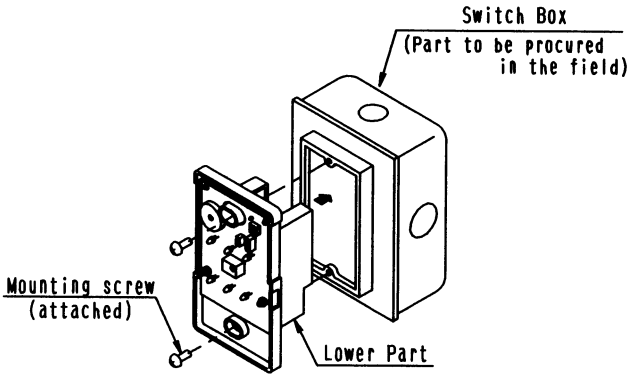


(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. Neither of the terminals is polarized, so it is not important if connections are crossed.)

2. Fix the lower part.

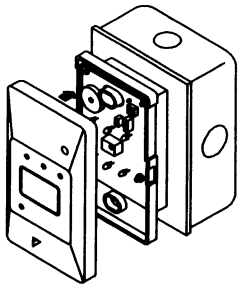
- Install the lower part on theh switch box(field supplied part)

(Select as flat a place ash possible to install the lower part. Also, be aware of the fact that overtightening the screws (attached) may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)



3. Rettach the upper part of remote controller.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)

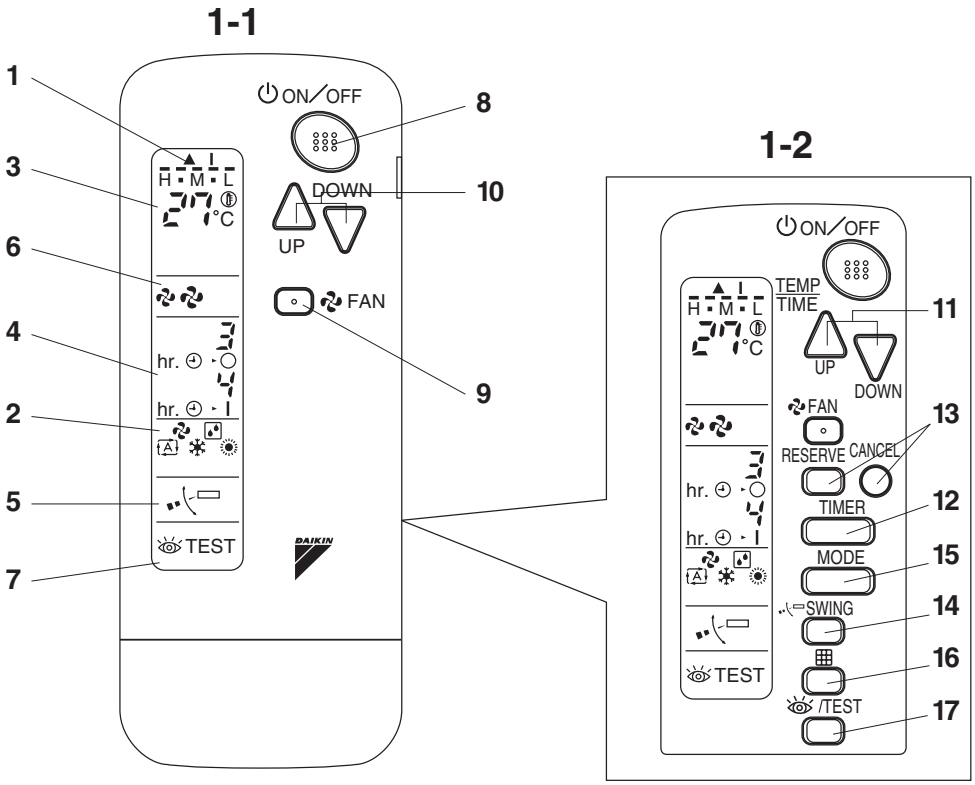


NOTES)

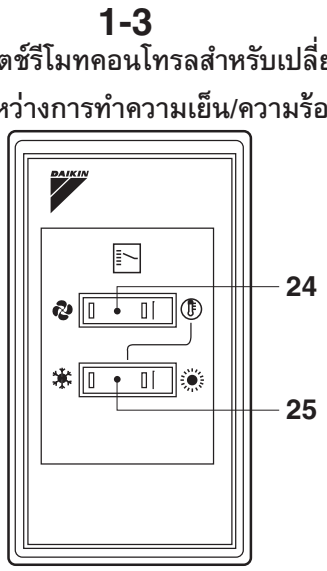
1. The switch box and wiring are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

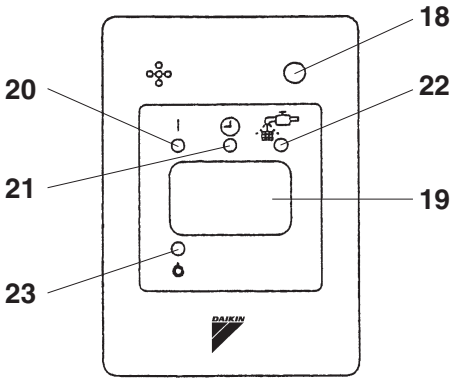
2P018568

1.5.5 Operation Manual (Thai)



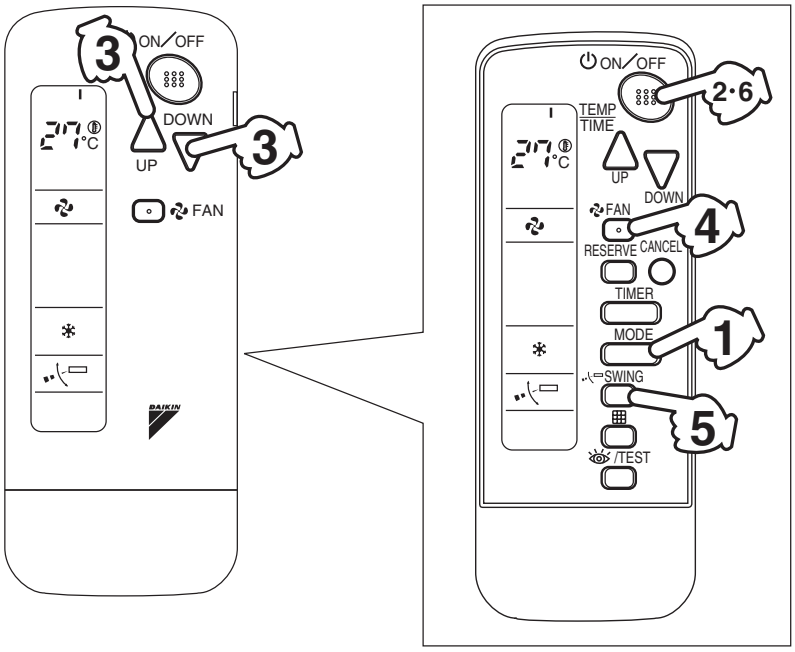
1



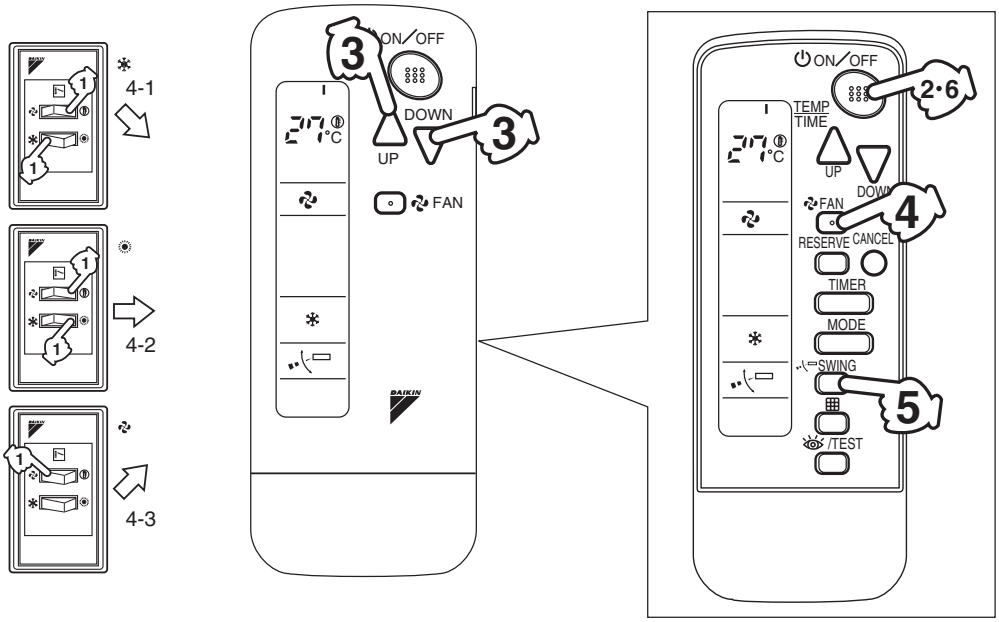


1 2

3PN12150-2

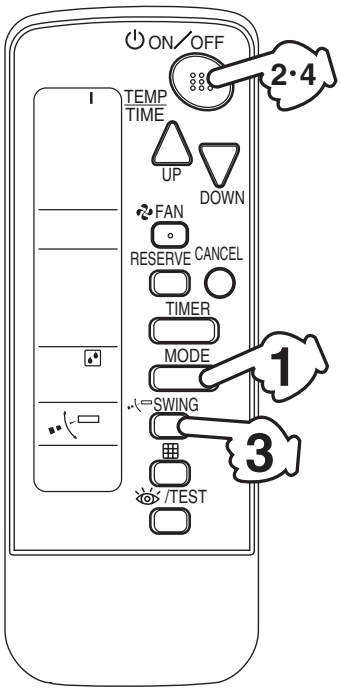


3

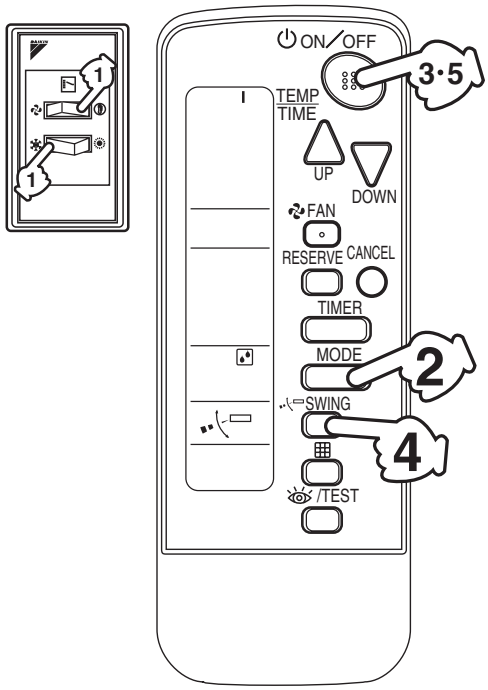


4

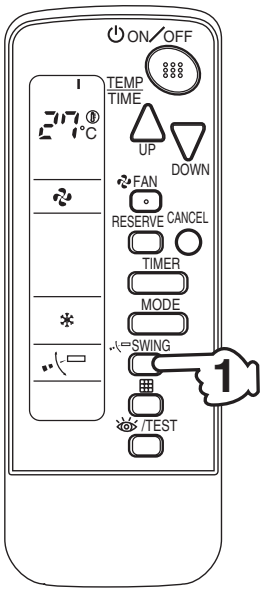
3PN12150-2



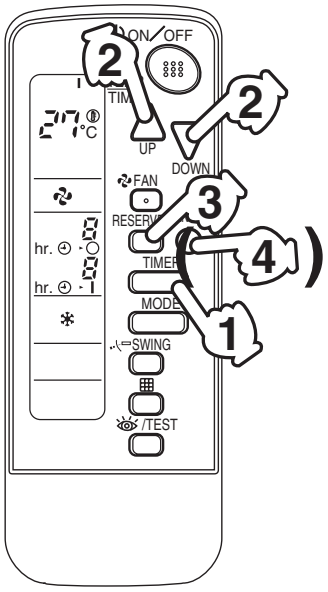
5



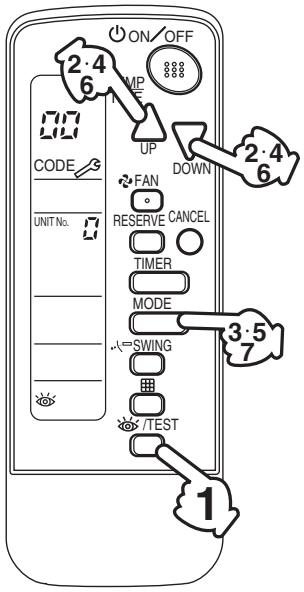
6



7



8



9

3PN12150-2

สารบัญ

ก่อนใช้งาน..... [1]
รูปภาพ..... [2]

1. ข้อควรระวังเพื่อความปลอดภัย 1
2. ชื่อและหน้าที่ในส่วนการใช้งาน..... 4
3. การใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย 5
4. ขั้นตอนการใช้งาน..... 6
5. อาการที่ไม่ใช่เกิดจากการที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ 12
6. การวิเคราะห์จุดที่เกิดปัญหา..... 12

1. ข้อควรระวังเพื่อความปลอดภัย

เพื่อให้ใช้งานเครื่องปรับอากาศได้อย่างเต็มประสิทธิภาพ และเพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงอาการผิดปกติอันเนื่องจากการใช้งานที่ไม่ถูกต้อง เราแนะนำให้ท่านอ่านคู่มือแนะนำการใช้งานอย่างละเอียดก่อนใช้งาน เครื่องปรับอากาศนี้จัดอยู่ในประเภท “เครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าที่บุคคลทั่วไปไม่สามารถเข้าถึงได้”

ข้อควรระวังที่อธิบายในที่นี้อยู่ในประเภท คำเตือน และ ข้อควรระวัง ซึ่งทั้งสองประเภทจะมีข้อมูลที่สำคัญเกี่ยวกับความปลอดภัย ควรแน่ใจว่าได้อ่านข้อควรระวังทั้งหมดโดยครบถ้วน

⚠ **คำเตือน**..... การไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำเหล่านี้อาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บ หรือเสียชีวิต

⚠ **ข้อควรระวัง** ..... การไม่อ่านคำแนะนำอาจทำให้ทรัพย์สินเกิดความเสียหาย หรือเกิดการบาดเจ็บ ซึ่งอาจถึงขั้นร้ายแรงขึ้นกับสภาพแวดล้อม

หลังจากอ่านเรียบร้อยแล้ว เก็บคู่มือนี้ในที่ที่หยิบใช้ได้สะดวกเพื่อให้ท่านสามารถอ้างอิงได้เมื่อจำเป็น หากเครื่องนี้ถูกส่งต่อไปยังผู้ใช้รายใหม่ ควรแน่ใจว่าได้ส่งต่อคู่มือฉบับนี้ให้ด้วย

⚠ คำเตือน

- **ควรหลีกเลี่ยงการสัมผัสอากาศเย็น หรืออุ่นจากเครื่องปรับอากาศโดยตรงเป็นเวลานาน หรือการสัมผัสอากาศที่เย็น หรืออุ่นเกินไปอาจเป็นอันตรายต่อสภาพร่างกายและสุขภาพของท่าน**
- **หากเครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ (มีกลิ่นไหม้ ฯลฯ) ให้ปิดเครื่อง และติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายในท้องถิ่นของท่าน**
  การใช้งานในสภาวะดังกล่าวต่อไปอาจทำให้เครื่องชำรุด, ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเกิดอัคคีภัย
- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายในท้องถิ่นของท่านเพื่อติดตั้งเครื่องปรับอากาศ**
  การทำงานด้วยตนเองอาจทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายในท้องถิ่นของท่านเกี่ยวกับการดัดแปลง ซ่อมแซม และบำรุงรักษาเครื่องปรับอากาศ หรือรีโมทคอนโทรล**
  การทำงานที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **อย่าสอดสิ่งของ เช่น แท่งไม้ นิ้ว ฯลฯ เข้าไปในช่องรับอากาศเข้า หรือช่องปล่อยอากาศออก**
  การบาดเจ็บอาจเกิดขึ้นได้จากการสัมผัสใบพัดลมความเร็วสูงของเครื่องปรับอากาศ
- **โปรดระวังเพลิงไหม้ ในกรณีที่เกิดการรั่วของสารทำความเย็น**
  หากเครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ เช่น ไม่สามารถทำให้อากาศเย็น หรืออุ่น สาเหตุอาจเกิดจากน้ำยารั่ว โปรดปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านเพื่อรับการช่วยเหลือ สารทำความเย็นภายในเครื่องปรับอากาศมีความปลอดภัย และโดยปกติจะไม่รั่ว อย่างไรก็ตาม ในกรณีที่เกิดการรั่ว เมื่อสัมผัสกับตะเกียงที่ไม่มีฝาครอบ เครื่องทำความร้อน หรือเตา อาจทำให้เกิดก๊าซพิษ อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศอีก จนกว่าช่างซ่อมที่มีความชำนาญได้ตรวจสอบแล้วว่าการรั่วไหลได้รับการซ่อมแซมแล้ว

- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายในท้องถิ่นของท่านเกี่ยวกับข้อปฏิบัติในกรณีที่เกิดสารทำความเย็นรั่ว**
  เมื่อติดตั้งเครื่องปรับอากาศในห้องที่มีขนาดเล็ก จำเป็นต้องมีมาตรการป้องกันไม่ให้สารทำความเย็นที่รั่วออกมามีความเข้มข้นสูงเกินกว่าขีดจำกัด หากสารทำความเย็นที่รั่วออกมามีความเข้มข้นสูงเกินกว่าขีดจำกัดแล้ว อาจเกิดการขาดออกซิเจนได้
- **ติดต่อช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเกี่ยวกับการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์เสริม และควรแน่ใจว่าใช้อุปกรณ์เสริมที่กำหนดไว้โดยผู้ผลิตเครื่องปรับอากาศเท่านั้น**
  หากเกิดความผิดปกติอันเนื่องจากการกระทำของท่านเอง อาจทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายในท้องถิ่นของท่านเกี่ยวกับการเคลื่อนย้าย และติดตั้งเครื่องปรับอากาศใหม่**
  การติดตั้งที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้เกิดการรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ต้องแน่ใจว่าใช้ฟิวส์ที่เหมาะกับกระแสไฟ**
  อย่าใช้ฟิวส์ที่ไม่เหมาะสม ทองแดง หรือสายไฟอื่นๆ เป็นการทดแทน เนื่องจากอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร เพลิงไหม้ การบาดเจ็บ หรือเครื่องอาจเกิดการชำรุด
- **ต้องแน่ใจว่าได้ติดตั้งเบรคเกอร์ป้องกันไฟฟ้ารั่ว**
  การไม่ติดตั้งเบรกเกอร์ป้องกันไฟฟ้ารั่วอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ต้องแน่ใจว่าต่อสายดินเข้ากับตัวเครื่อง**
  อย่าต่อสายดินเข้ากับท่อสาธารณูปโภค สายล่อฟ้า หรือสายดินโทรศัพท์ การต่อสายดินที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้ กระแสไฟฟ้ากระชากอันเนื่องมาจากฟ้าผ่า หรือแหล่งกำเนิดอื่น อาจทำให้เครื่องปรับอากาศเกิดการชำรุด
- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่าย หากเครื่องปรับอากาศแช่น้ำ เนื่องจากประสบภัยธรรมชาติ เช่นน้ำท่วม หรือไต้ฝุ่น**
  อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศในกรณีต่อไปนี้ มิฉะนั้นอาจเกิดความผิดปกติ ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **อย่าเปิด หรือปิดการทำงานของเครื่องปรับอากาศโดยใช้การสับเบรกเกอร์ของแหล่งจ่ายไฟเป็น ON หรือ OFF**
  มิฉะนั้น อาจเกิดเพลิงไหม้ หรือน้ำรั่ว ยิ่งไปกว่านั้นพัดลมจะหมุนกระทันหัน หากมีการใช้การชดเชยกระแสไฟเมื่อเกิดไฟดับ ซึ่งอาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บได้
- **อย่าใช้เครื่องในสภาพอากาศที่ปนเปื้อนละอองน้ำมัน เช่น น้ำมันจากการทำอาหาร หรือน้ำมันเครื่อง**
  ละอองน้ำมันอาจทำให้เกิดการแตกร้าว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **อย่าใช้เครื่องในที่ที่มีควันจากน้ำมันมาก เช่น ห้องครัว หรือในที่ที่มีก๊าซไวไฟ ก๊าซที่ทำให้ผุกร่อน หรือผงฝุ่นโลหะ**
  การใช้เครื่องในสถานที่ดังกล่าวอาจทำให้เกิดเพลิงไหม้ หรือเครื่องอาจทำงานขัดข้อง
- **อย่าใช้วัตถุไวไฟ (เช่น สเปรย์ฉีดผม หรือยาฆ่าแมลง) ใกล้กับตัวเครื่อง**
- **อย่าทำความสะอาดเครื่องด้วยสารละลายอินทรีย์ เช่น สีทาผนังชนิดทินเนอร์**
  การใช้สารละลายอินทรีย์อาจทำให้เครื่องเกิดรอยแตกร้าว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **ต้องแน่ใจว่าใช้แหล่งจ่ายไฟสำหรับเครื่องปรับอากาศโดยเฉพาะ**
  การใช้แหล่งจ่ายไฟอื่นๆ อาจทำให้เกิดความร้อน เพลิงไหม้ หรือเครื่องทำงานขัดข้อง

⚠ ข้อควรระวัง

- **อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศผิดวัตถุประสงค์**
  อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศทำความเย็นในห้องที่มีเครื่องวัดที่มีความแม่นยำสูง อาหาร ต้นไม้ สัตว์ หรืองานศิลปะ เนื่องจากอาจทำให้ประสิทธิภาพ คุณภาพ และ/หรืออายุการใช้งานเสื่อมลง
- **อย่าถอดตะแกรงกันพัดลมของเครื่องภายนอกอาคาร**
  ตะแกรงกันทำหน้าที่ป้องกันพัดลมความเร็วสูงของเครื่อง จึงอาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บ
- **อย่าวางวัตถุที่ไม่ทนความชื้น ไว้ข้างใต้เครื่องภายในอาคาร หรือเครื่องภายนอกอาคาร**
  ในบางสภาวะ การควบแน่นในตัวเครื่อง หรือท่อสารทำความเย็น การอุดตันในแผ่นกรองอากาศ หรือท่อระบายน้ำ อาจทำให้เกิดหยดน้ำ ทำให้ชิ้นส่วนที่เกี่ยวข้องเกิดคราบสกปรก หรือทำงานขัดข้องได้
- **เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการขาดออกซิเจน ควรตรวจสอบว่าภายในห้องมีการระบายอากาศเพียงพอ หากมีการใช้อุปกรณ์ เช่น ตะเกียง อยู่ภายในห้องเดียวกับเครื่องปรับอากาศ**

- **หลังการใช้งานเป็นเวลานาน ควรตรวจสอบการชำรุดของขาตั้งเครื่อง และที่แขวนเครื่อง**
  หากถูกปล่อยไว้ในสภาพที่ชำรุด เครื่องอาจตกลงมาทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บได้
- **อย่าวางสเปรย์ที่ติดไฟได้ หรือใช้กระป๋องสเปรย์ใกล้เครื่องปรับอากาศ เนื่องจากอาจทำให้เกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้**
  ก่อนทำความสะอาด ต้องแน่ใจว่าได้หยุดการทำงานของเครื่อง ปิดเบรกเกอร์ หรือถอดปลั๊กไฟแล้ว
  มิฉะนั้น อาจเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเกิดการบาดเจ็บได้
- **เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร อย่าใช้เครื่องขณะมือเปียก**
- **อย่าวางอุปกรณ์ที่กำเนิดเปลวไฟที่ปราศจากการป้องกันในที่ที่ได้รับกระแสลมจากเครื่องโดยตรง เนื่องจากอาจทำให้การเผาไหม้ของตะเกียงด้อยประสิทธิภาพลง**
- **อย่าวางเครื่องทำความร้อนไว้ข้างใต้เครื่องปรับอากาศ เนื่องจากความร้อนอาจทำให้เครื่องปรับอากาศเสียรูปได้**
- **อย่าปล่อยให้เด็กนั่งบนเครื่องภายนอกอาคาร หรือหลีกเลี่ยงการวางสิ่งของบนตัวเครื่อง**
  การหกล้ม หรือสะดุดอาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บ
- **อย่ากีดขวางช่องรับอากาศเข้า หรือช่องระบายอากาศออก**
  การระบายอากาศที่ไม่ดีอาจทำให้ประสิทธิภาพการทำงานเสื่อมลง หรือการทำงานขัดข้อง
- **ควรระวังไม่ให้เด็ก ต้นไม้ หรือสัตว์อยู่ในตำแหน่งที่ได้รับกระแสลมจากเครื่องโดยตรง เนื่องจากอาจทำให้เกิดผลเสียตามมา**
- **อย่าล้างเครื่องปรับอากาศ หรือรีโมทคอนโทรลด้วยน้ำ เนื่องจากอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้**
- **อย่าวางภาชนะบรรจุน้ำ (แจกันดอกไม้ ฯลฯ) บนตัวเครื่อง เนื่องจากอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้**
- **อย่าติดตั้งเครื่องปรับอากาศในที่ที่เสี่ยงอันตรายต่อการรั่วของก๊าซไวไฟ**
  ในกรณีที่เกิดก๊าซรั่ว การก่อตัวของก๊าซใกล้เครื่องปรับอากาศอาจก่อให้เกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้
- **อย่าวางภาชนะบรรจุสารไวไฟ เช่น กระป๋องสเปรย์ ภายในระยะ 1 เมตรจากปากทางระบายอากาศออก**
  ภาชนะอาจเกิดการระเบิด เนื่องจากลมร้อนที่ออกจากเครื่องภายใน หรือภายนอกอาคาร
- **ต้องถอดแบตเตอรี่ออกจากเครื่อง ก่อนเลิกใช้งาน และต้องถูกนำไปทิ้งอย่างปลอดภัย**
- **จัดท่อระบายน้ำเพื่อให้การระบายน้ำทำงานได้เต็มที่**
  หากท่อระบายน้ำภายนอกอาคารระบายน้ำได้ไม่เต็มที่ในระหว่างที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน จะทำให้เกิดท่ออุดตันเนื่องจากสิ่งสกปรก และคราบสะสมภายในท่อ ซึ่งอาจทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่วจากเครื่องภายในอาคาร หากเกิดกรณีนี้ ควรหยุดการทำงานของเครื่อง และปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านเพื่อทำการแก้ไข
- **เครื่องนี้ไม่ได้ถูกออกแบบมาสำหรับให้เด็กเล็กที่ไม่มีผู้ปกครองเฝ้า หรือบุคคลทุพพลภาพ ใช้งานได้**
  อาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บต่อร่างกาย และเป็นอันตรายต่อสุขภาพ
- **เด็กเล็กควรได้รับการดูแล เพื่อให้แน่ใจว่าจะไม่เล่นตัวเครื่อง หรือรีโมทคอนโทรล**
  การสั่งงานโดยไม่ตั้งใจ อาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บต่อร่างกาย และเป็นอันตรายต่อสุขภาพ
- **อย่าปล่อยให้เด็กเล่นบน หรือบริเวณตัวเครื่องภายนอกอาคาร**
  หากเด็กจับต้องเครื่องอย่างไม่ระมัดระวัง อาจทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บได้
- **ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน เกี่ยวกับวิธีทำความสะอาดภายในเครื่องปรับอากาศ**
  การทำความสะอาดอย่างไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้ชิ้นส่วนที่เป็นพลาสติกแตกหัก น้ำรั่ว และการชำรุดอื่นๆ รวมถึงการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร
- **เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการบาดเจ็บ อย่าสัมผัสช่องรับอากาศเข้าหรือครีบอลูมิเนียมของตัวเครื่อง**
- **อย่าวางสิ่งของใกล้กับเครื่องภายนอกอาคาร และอย่าปล่อยให้ใบไม้ และดินทรายสะสมอยู่รอบตัวเครื่อง**
  ใบไม้เป็นที่พักอาศัยสำหรับสัตว์ขนาดเล็กที่สามารถเข้าไปในตัวเครื่องได้ เมื่อเข้าไปแล้ว สัตว์เหล่านี้อาจทำให้เครื่องทำงานผิดปกติ เกิดควัน หรือประกายไฟเมื่อสัมผัสกับชิ้นส่วนที่ใช้กระแสไฟ
- **อย่าสัมผัสชิ้นส่วนภายในของเครื่องปรับอากาศ**
  อย่าถอดแผงด้านหน้า การสัมผัสชิ้นส่วนภายในบางอย่างอาจทำให้เกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรและทำให้เครื่องชำรุด โปรดปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเกี่ยวกับการตรวจสอบ และการปรับแต่งชิ้นส่วนภายใน

- **อย่าวางรีโมทคอนโทรลในที่ที่มีโอกาสเปียกน้ำ**
  หากน้ำเข้าไปในรีโมทคอนโทรล จะเสี่ยงต่อการเกิดไฟรั่ว และทำให้ชิ้นส่วนอิเล็กทรอนิกส์ชำรุดได้
- **หากใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย อย่าติดตั้งหลอดไฟที่มีแสงสว่างมาก หรือติดตั้งหลอดฟลูออเรสเซนต์ใกล้กับส่วนรับสัญญาณบนตัวเครื่อง**
  อาจทำให้การทำงานผิดปกติ
- **ระวังหกล้มขณะทำความสะอาด หรือตรวจสอบแผ่นกรองอากาศ**
  เมื่อต้องทำงานบนที่สูง จึงต้องใช้ความระมัดระวังเป็นพิเศษ หากนั่งร้านไม่มั่นคง ท่านอาจตกลงมาหรือล้ม ทำให้เกิดการบาดเจ็บได้

2. ชื่อและหน้าที่ในส่วนการใช้งาน (รูป 1, 2)

1	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ▲ ” (การส่งสัญญาณ)**
	ไฟนี้จะติดเมื่อมีการส่งสัญญาณ
2	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” (โหมดการทำงาน)**
	การแสดงผลนี้จะแสดงโหมดการทำงานปัจจุบัน สำหรับชนิดที่ทำความเย็นโดยตรงจะไม่มี “ ” (อัตโนมัติ) และ “ ” (ทำความร้อน)
3	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้)**
	แสดงอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้
4	**สัญลักษณ์ “ hr. hr. ” (เวลาที่ตั้งไว้)**
	แสดงเวลาที่ตั้งไว้สำหรับการเปิดหรือปิด
5	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (แผ่นปรับทิศทางลม) (เฉพาะ BRC4C61, 63 เท่านั้น)**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 9
6	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” “ ” (ความเร็วพัดลม)**
	แสดงความเร็วพัดลมที่ตั้งไว้
7	**สัญลักษณ์ “ TEST ” (การตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ)**
	เมื่อกดปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ สัญลักษณ์นี้จะปรากฏเพื่อบอกว่าอยู่ในโหมดการทำงานนี้
8	**ปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเปิดเครื่อง กดปุ่มนี้อีกครั้งเพื่อปิดเครื่อง
9	**ปุ่มควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกความเร็วพัดลมให้เป็นความเร็วสูงหรือความเร็วต่ำ ตามความต้องการ
10	**ปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิ**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับปรับอุณหภูมิ (ใช้ในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรลปิดอยู่)
11	**ปุ่มตั้งเวลา**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับตั้งเวลาเปิดและ/หรือปิด (ใช้ในขณะที่เปิดฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรล)
12	**ปุ่มเปิด/ปิดโหมดการตั้งเวลา**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 9
13	**ปุ่มเลือก/ยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 9
14	**ปุ่มปรับทิศทางลม (เฉพาะ BRC4C61, 63 เท่านั้น)**
	กรุณาดูหน้า 9
15	**ปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงาน
16	**ปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรองอากาศ**
	กรุณาดูในหัวข้อการดูแลรักษาในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
17	**ปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ**
	ปุ่มนี้มีไว้สำหรับช่างผู้ชำนาญเพื่อใช้ในการดูแลรักษาเครื่องเท่านั้น

18	**สวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉิน**
	สวิตช์นี้มีไว้ใช้ในกรณีที่รีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน
19	**ตัวรับสัญญาณ**
	ช่องสำหรับรับสัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรล
20	**ไฟแสดงการทำงาน (แดง)**
	ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน และจะกระพริบ หากเครื่องมีปัญหา
21	**ไฟแสดงการตั้งเวลา (เขียว)**
	ไฟนี้จะสว่างเมื่อมีการตั้งเวลา
22	**ไฟแสดงเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ (แดง)**
	จะสว่างเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ
23	**ไฟละลายน้ำแข็ง (ส้ม)**
	จะสว่างเมื่อเริ่มต้นกระบวนการละลายน้ำแข็ง (สำหรับชนิดทำความเย็นโดยตรง ไฟจะไม่เปิดขึ้น)
24	**สวิตช์พัดลม/การปรับอากาศ**
	ตั้งค่าสวิตช์เป็น " " (FAN) สำหรับพัดลม และ " " (A/C) สำหรับความร้อน หรือความเย็น
25	**สวิตช์เปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน**
	ตั้งค่าสวิตช์เป็น " " (COOL) สำหรับทำความเย็น และ " " (HEAT) สำหรับทำความร้อน

หมายเหตุ

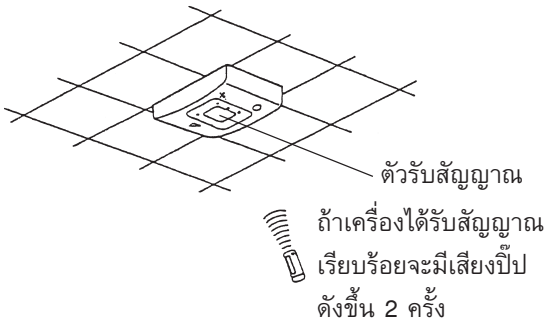
- เพื่อช่วยการอธิบาย สัญลักษณ์ทั้งหมดถูกแสดงในรูป 1 จะไม่ตรงกับการทำงานจริง
- รูป 1-2 แสดงรีโมทคอนโทรลในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้าเปิดอยู่
- รูป 1-3 แสดงรีโมทคอนโทรลที่สามารถใช้ร่วมกับระบบ VRV ที่จัดเตรียมไว้ได้
- หากไฟแสดงเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศสว่าง โปรดทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศตามที่อธิบายไว้ในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
  หลังจากทำความสะอาดและติดตั้งตัวกรองอากาศกลับเข้าที่แล้ว ให้กดปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรองอากาศบนรีโมทคอนโทรล ไฟแสดงการถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศบนตัวรับสัญญาณจะดับไป

3. การใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

ข้อควรระวังในการใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรล

เล็งตัวส่งสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลให้ตรงกับตัวรับสัญญาณที่เครื่องปรับอากาศ

ถ้ามีสิ่งกีดขวางระหว่างตัวส่งสัญญาณและตัวรับสัญญาณของเครื่องปรับอากาศภายในกับรีโมทคอนโทรล เช่น ผ้าม่าน เครื่องจะไม่ตอบสนองต่อสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไป



ระยะส่งสัญญาณสูงสุดประมาณ 7 เมตร

อย่าทำรีโมทคอนโทรลตกหรือเปียกน้ำ

มิฉะนั้น รีโมทคอนโทรลอาจเสียได้

อย่าใช้วัสดุแข็งปลายแหลมกดปุ่มรีโมทคอนโทรล

มิฉะนั้นรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจชำรุดได้

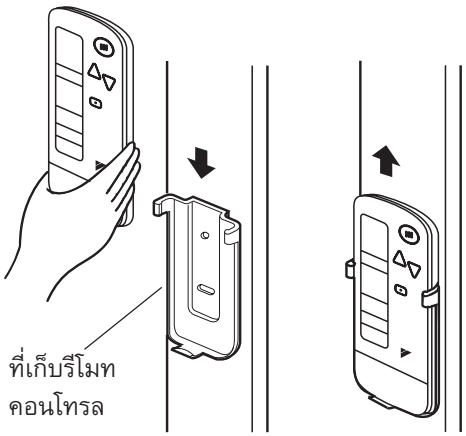
สถานที่ติดตั้ง

- สัญญาณที่ส่งออกจากรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจถูกรบกวนถ้าในห้องใช้หลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์ โปรดปรึกษาผู้ขายก่อนซื้อหลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์อันใหม่
- ถ้าสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไปมีผลต่อเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าอื่น ให้เคลื่อนย้ายเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้านั้นออกไป หรือปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน

3PN12150-2

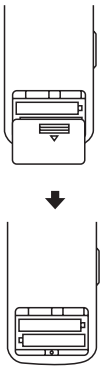
การวางรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ในที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรล
ติดตั้งที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ที่ผนังหรือเสาโดยใช้สกรูยึดที่แนบมาให้ (ตรวจดูให้แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งในที่ที่สัญญาณถูกส่งออกไปได้ดี)

การวางรีโมทคอนโทรล	การถอดรีโมทคอนโทรลออกจากที่เก็บ
เลื่อนลงจากด้านบน	ดึงขึ้นด้านบน



การใส่แบตเตอรี่รีโมทคอนโทรล

1) เลื่อนฝาปิดด้านหลังรีโมทคอนโทรลออกตามทิศทางลูกศร
2) ใส่แบตเตอรี่ ใช้แบตเตอรี่ (AAA LR03 (อัลคาไลน์)) 2 ก้อน ใส่แบตเตอรี่ลงในช่องให้ถูกขั้วตามสัญลักษณ์ (+) และ (-) ที่แสดงไว้
3) ปิดฝาครอบ



— เมื่อไรจึงต้องเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ —

ภายใต้เงื่อนไขการใช้งานปกติ แบตเตอรี่จะใช้งานได้ประมาณหนึ่งปี อย่างไรก็ตาม ท่านควรเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารไม่ตอบสนองต่อคำสั่งหรือตอบสนองช้า หรือเมื่อสัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏเริ่มไม่ชัดเจน

[ข้อควรระวัง]

- เมื่อเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ ต้องเปลี่ยนแบตเตอรี่ทุกก้อนพร้อมกัน อย่าใช้แบตเตอรี่ใหม่ร่วมกับแบตเตอรี่เก่า
- ถ้าไม่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลเป็นเวลานานๆ ให้ถอดแบตเตอรี่ออกเพื่อป้องกันความเสียหายที่เกิดจากของเหลวในแบตเตอรี่ไหลเยิ้มออกมา

ในกรณีที่ใช้ระบบควบคุมจากส่วนกลาง

- หากเครื่องภายในอาคารถูกควบคุมจากส่วนกลาง จำเป็นต้องเปลี่ยนการตั้งค่าของรีโมทคอนโทรลตามด้วย ในกรณีนี้ โปรดติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายใกล้บ้านของท่าน

4. ขั้นตอนการใช้งาน

- ขั้นตอนการใช้งานอาจแตกต่างกันระหว่างแบบปั๊มความร้อน กับแบบทำความเย็นโดยตรง ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านเพื่อตรวจสอบว่าเป็นระบบแบบใด
- เพื่อเป็นการปกป้องเครื่อง กรุณาเปิดสวิตช์หลักไว้ 6 ชั่วโมงก่อนใช้งาน
- หากสวิตช์หลักถูกปิดระหว่างที่ใช้งานอยู่ การทำงานจะเริ่มต้นใหม่โดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเปิดสวิตช์หลักอีกครั้งหนึ่ง

การทำความเย็น การทำความร้อน การทำงานอัตโนมัติ และการใช้งานพัดลม (รูป 3, 4)

- การทำงานอัตโนมัติ สามารถเลือกได้จากระบบนำความร้อนกลับมาใช้ซ้ำเท่านั้น
- ระบบทำความเย็น สามารถเลือกการทำงานเป็นพัดลม หรือทำความเย็นได้เท่านั้น

<<สำหรับระบบที่ไม่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรล สำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 3)>>

1 **กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน” หลายๆ ครั้ง เพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงานที่ต้องการจากรายการต่อไปนี้**

- การทำความเย็น..... “ ☼ ”
- การทำความร้อน..... “ ☼ ”
- การทำงานอัตโนมัติ..... “ A ”
- การใช้งานพัดลม..... “ ”

3PN12150-2

เปิดการทำงานอัตโนมัติ

ในโหมดการทำงานนี้ การสับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ร้อน จะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติขึ้นกับอุณหภูมิภายในอาคาร ณ ขณะนั้น

2 กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะสว่างและระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

<<สำหรับระบบที่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 4)>>

1 เลือกโหมดการทำงาน สวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน ตามข้อต่อไปนี้

■ การทำความเย็น.....
ให้ดูรูป 4-1 (Ⓕ, ☀)

■ การทำความร้อน .....
ให้ดูรูป 4-2 (Ⓕ, ☀)

■ การใช้งานพัดลม .....
ให้ดูรูป 4-3 (✣)

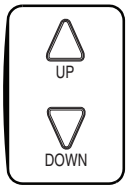
2 กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานสว่าง และระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

การปรับตั้ง

สำหรับการตั้งอุณหภูมิ ความเร็วพัดลม และทิศทางลม กรุณาทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้

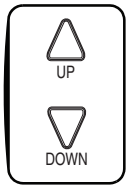
3 กดปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิและตั้งอุณหภูมิ



เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเพิ่มขึ้น 1°C

เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะลดลง 1°C

ในกรณีที่ใช้การทำงานอัตโนมัติ



เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเลื่อนไปทาง “H”

เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเลื่อนไปทาง “L”

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้	25	23	22	21	19

หมายเหตุ

- การปรับตั้งนี้ใช้ไม่ได้สำหรับการใช้งานพัดลม

4 กดปุ่ม “ควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม”

ท่านสามารถเลือกความเร็วพัดลมสูงหรือต่ำได้

5 กดปุ่ม “ปรับทิศทางลม” (เฉพาะ BRC4C61, 63 เท่านั้น)

สำหรับรายละเอียด ให้ดู “การปรับทิศทางลม” (หน้า 9)

การหยุดการทำงานของระบบ

6 กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด อีกครั้ง

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลง และระบบหยุดการทำงาน

หมายเหตุ

- อย่าปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีหลังจากเครื่องหยุดทำงาน และควรรออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่ว หรือมีบางอย่างผิดปกติกับตัวเครื่องหรือไม่

[คำอธิบายเกี่ยวกับการทำความร้อน]

การละลายน้ำแข็ง

- เมื่อมีน้ำแข็งเกาะคอยล์ในเครื่องภายนอกอาคารเพิ่มขึ้น ระบบจะเข้าสู่ปฏิบัติการละลายน้ำแข็ง
- การใช้งานพัดลมจะหยุด และไฟละลายน้ำแข็งที่เครื่องภายในอาคารจะสว่าง
  หลังจากการละลายน้ำแข็งดำเนินไป 6 ถึง 8 นาที (สูงสุด 10 นาที) ระบบจะกลับคืนสู่การทำความร้อน

3PN12150-2

ความสามารถในการทำความร้อนและอุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร

- ความสามารถในการทำความร้อนจะลดลงเมื่ออุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคารลดลง ในกรณีที่ท่านยังรู้สึกหนาว โปรดใช้เครื่องทำความร้อนเครื่องอื่นพร้อมกันไปด้วย
- ลมร้อนจะไหลเวียนไปเพื่อทำให้ห้องอุ่นขึ้นหลังจากที่เครื่องเริ่มทำงาน ระบบต้องการเวลาสักครู่หนึ่งในการทำให้ห้องทั้งห้องอุ่น พัดลมของเครื่องภายในอาคารจะหมุนช้าลงโดยอัตโนมัติจนกระทั่งภายในเครื่องปรับอากาศมาถึง อุณหภูมิหนึ่ง ในกรณีเช่นนี้ท่านจำเป็นต้องรอ
- ในกรณีที่อากาศร้อนไปรวมตัวอยู่บนเพดานและทำให้ยังรู้สึกหนาวที่เท้า ขอแนะนำให้ใช้พัดลมหมุนเวียนอากาศ สำหรับรายละเอียด กรุณาติดต่อร้านที่ท่านซื้อ

การทำงานโปรแกรมลดความชื้น (รูป 5, 6)

- การทำงานของโปรแกรมนี้ใช้เพื่อลดความชื้นภายในห้อง โดยให้อุณหภูมิลดลงต่ำที่สุด
- ไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะทำหน้าที่กำหนดอุณหภูมิและความเร็วลม โดยอัตโนมัติ
- เครื่องจะไม่ทำงาน หากอุณหภูมิห้องต่ำกว่า 16°C

<<สำหรับระบบที่ไม่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 5)>>

(1) กดปุ่ม ตัวเลือกโหมดการทำงาน หลายๆ ครั้ง และเลือก “ ” (การทำงานโปรแกรมลดความชื้น)

(2) กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานสว่างขึ้น และระบบเริ่มทำงาน

การปรับตั้ง

(3) กดปุ่ม ปรับทิศทางลม (เฉพาะ BRC4C61, 63 เท่านั้น)

สำหรับรายละเอียด ให้ดู “การปรับทิศทางลม” (หน้า 9)

การหยุดการทำงานของระบบ

(4) กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลง และระบบหยุดการทำงาน

หมายเหตุ

- อย่าปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีหลังจากเครื่องหยุดทำงาน และควรรออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่ว หรือมีบางอย่างผิดปกติกับตัวเครื่องหรือไม่

<<สำหรับระบบที่มีสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 6)>>

(1) เลือกโหมดการทำความเย็น ด้วยสวิตช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างทำความเย็น/ความร้อน

(2) กดปุ่ม ตัวเลือกโหมดการทำงาน หลายๆ ครั้ง และเลือกโปรแกรมลดความชื้น “ ”

(3) กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะสว่าง และระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

(4) กดปุ่ม ปรับทิศทางลม (เฉพาะ BRC4C61, 63 เท่านั้น)

สำหรับรายละเอียด ให้ดู “การปรับทิศทางลม” (หน้า 9)

การหยุดการทำงานของระบบ

(5) กดปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลง และระบบหยุดการทำงาน

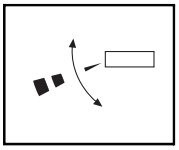
หมายเหตุ

- อย่าปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีหลังจากเครื่องหยุดทำงาน และควรรออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่ว หรือมีบางอย่างผิดปกติกับตัวเครื่องหรือไม่

การปรับทิศทางลม (รูป 7)

กดปุ่ม ปรับทิศทางลม เพื่อปรับมุมทิศทางลมขึ้น/ลง

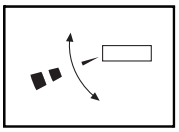
(1) กดปุ่ม ปรับทิศทางลม เพื่อเลือกทิศทางลมดังแสดงด้านล่าง



รูปนี้ปรากฏขึ้น และทิศทางลมแกว่งไปมาอย่างต่อเนื่อง (ตั้งค่าเป็นแกว่งอัตโนมัติ)



กดปุ่ม ปรับทิศทางลม เพื่อเลือกทิศทางลมที่ท่านต้องการ



รูปหายไป และทิศทางลมที่ต้องการหยุดนิ่ง (ตั้งค่าเป็นทิศทางลมหยุดนิ่ง)

- ขีดจำกัดของแผ่นปรับทิศทางลมสามารถปรับเปลี่ยนได้ โปรดติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายสำหรับรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติม

การเคลื่อนที่ของแผ่นปรับทิศทางลม

ภายใต้สภาพข้างล่างนี้ ไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะควบคุมทิศทางลมเอง และทำให้ทิศทางลมต่างไปจากที่แสดงไว้

สถานะการทำงาน	ทำความเย็น	ทำความร้อน
สภาพการทำงาน	• เมื่ออุณหภูมิห้องต่ำกว่าอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้	• เมื่ออุณหภูมิห้องสูงกว่าอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ • ระหว่างการละลายน้ำแข็ง
	• เมื่อทิศทางลมทำงานในแนวระดับอย่างต่อเนื่อง	

โหมดการทำงานรวมถึงการทำงานอัตโนมัติด้วย

การใช้งานตัวตั้งเวลา (รูป 8)

- ตัวตั้งเวลาทำงานได้ใน 2 ลักษณะคือ
  ตั้งเวลาหยุดการทำงาน (⏲ ▸ ◯)
  .... เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
  ตั้งเวลาเริ่มการทำงาน (⏲ ▸ |)
  .... เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
- ตัวตั้งเวลาสามารถตั้งได้นานที่สุด 72 ชั่วโมง
- การตั้งเวลาเริ่มและหยุดการทำงานสามารถตั้งพร้อมกันได้

(1) กดปุ่ม "เปิด/ปิดโหมดการตั้งเวลา"

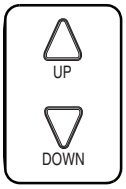
หลายๆ ครั้งเพื่อเลือกสถานะที่ต้องการ

สัญลักษณ์จะกระพริบ

ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาปิด ให้เลือก..... " ⏲ ▸ ◯ "

ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาเปิด ให้เลือก..... " ⏲ ▸ | "

(2) กดปุ่ม ตั้งเวลา เพื่อตั้งเวลาหยุดหรือเริ่มการทำงาน



เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะเพิ่มขึ้น 1 ชั่วโมง

เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะลดลง 1 ชั่วโมง

(3) กดปุ่ม เลือกการตั้งเวลา

สิ้นสุดขั้นตอนการตั้งเวลา

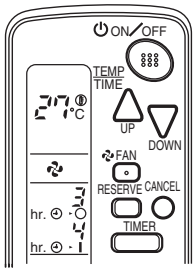
จอแสดงผลเปลี่ยนจากไฟกระพริบเป็นไฟสว่างค้าง

หมายเหตุ

- เมื่อตั้งเวลาปิด และเปิดเป็นเวลาเดียวกัน ทำซ้ำขั้นตอนข้างบนตั้งแต่ขั้นตอนที่ (1) ถึง (3) อีกครั้ง

3PN12150-2

ตัวอย่าง



เมื่อตั้งเวลาให้เครื่องหยุดทำงาน หลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 ชม. และเริ่มทำงานหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 4 ชม. เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานหลังเวลาผ่านไป 3 ชม. และหลังจากนั้น 1 ชม. เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงาน

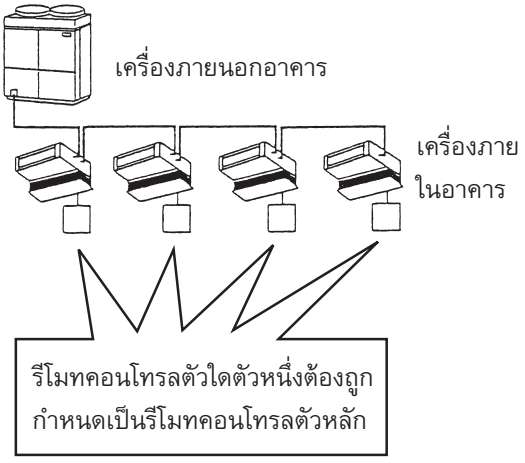
- หลังจากตั้งเวลาแล้ว สัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏขึ้นจะแสดงเวลาที่เหลือ
- กดปุ่ม ตั้งเวลาปิด เพื่อยกเลิกการตั้งโปรแกรม เครื่องหมายบนหน้าจอจะหายไป (☞)

วิธีตั้งค่ารีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลัก (สำหรับตระกูล VRV)

- เมื่อติดตั้งเครื่องตามที่แสดงข้างล่างนี้ จำเป็นต้องมีการกำหนดรีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลัก

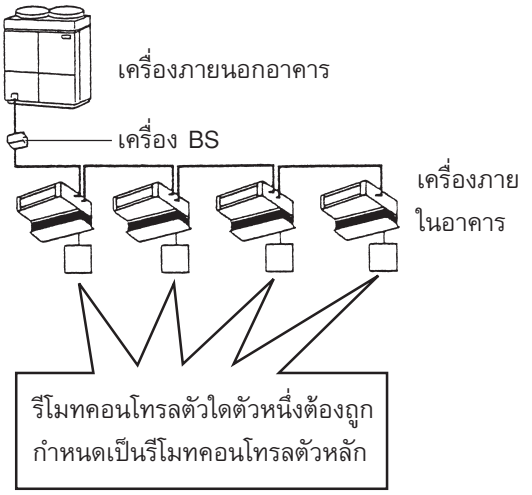
<<สำหรับระบบทำความร้อน>>

เมื่อเครื่องภายนอกอาคารหนึ่งเครื่องเชื่อมต่อกับเครื่องภายในอาคารหลายเครื่อง



<<สำหรับระบบ VRV แบบนำความร้อนกลับมาใช้ซ้ำ>>

เมื่อเครื่อง BS หนึ่งตัวเชื่อมต่อกับเครื่องภายในอาคารหลายตัว



- รีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลักเท่านั้นที่สามารถเลือกการทำงานเป็น การทำความร้อน, การทำความเย็นหรือการทำงานอัตโนมัติ (เฉพาะระบบนำความร้อนกลับมาใช้ซ้ำเท่านั้น)

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลักถูกตั้งเป็น “ทำความเย็น” ท่านสามารถสับเปลี่ยนการทำงานระหว่าง “พัดลม”, “ลดความชื้น” และ “ทำความเย็น” ได้

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลักถูกตั้งเป็น “ทำความร้อน” ท่านสามารถสับเปลี่ยนการทำงานระหว่าง “พัดลม” และ “ทำความร้อน” ได้

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลักถูกตั้งเป็น “พัดลม” ท่านไม่สามารถสับเปลี่ยนการทำงานได้

หากพยายามตั้งค่าอื่นใดนอกเหนือจากที่กล่าวไว้ข้างต้น จะมีเสียง “ปี๊ป” ดังขึ้นเพื่อเป็นการเตือน เฉพาะระบบนำความร้อนกลับมาใช้ซ้ำ ที่ท่านสามารถตั้งให้เครื่องภายในอาคารทำงานแบบอัตโนมัติ เมื่อมีการกระทำดังกล่าว จะมีเสียง “ปี๊ป” ดังขึ้นเพื่อเป็นการเตือน

3PN12150-2

วิธีกำหนดรีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลัก

(1) กดปุ่ม เลือกโหมดการทำงาน ค้างไว้อย่างต่อเนื่อง 4 วินาที

หน้าจอแสดงเครื่องหมาย " ⏲ " ที่เครื่องภายในอาคารตัวรองทุกตัวที่เชื่อมต่ออยู่กับเครื่องภายนอกอาคารตัวเดียวกัน หรือเครื่อง BS มีไฟกระพริบ

(2) กดปุ่ม เลือกโหมดการทำงาน ที่เครื่องภายในอาคารที่ท่านต้องการกำหนดให้เป็นรีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลัก การกำหนดเป็นอันเสร็จสิ้น เครื่องภายในอาคารเครื่องนี้จะถูกกำหนดให้เป็นรีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหลัก และเครื่องหมาย " ⏲ " บนหน้าจอจะหายไป

- สำหรับการเปลี่ยนแปลงการตั้งค่า ทำซ้ำขั้นตอนที่ (1) และ (2)

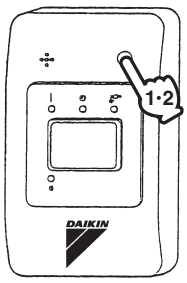
การทำงานฉุกเฉิน

เมื่อรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงานเนื่องจากแบตเตอรี่หมดหรือรีโมทคอนโทรลหาย ให้ใช้สวิตช์ฉุกเฉินที่อยู่ด้านข้างตะแกรงลมออกของเครื่องภายในอาคาร หากรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน แต่ไม่มีสัญลักษณ์แบตเตอรี่หมดสว่างขึ้น กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่าย

[เปิดเครื่อง]

(1) กดสวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉิน

เครื่องจะทำงานตามสถานะที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้ ระบบจะทำงานโดยลมจะถูกเป่าไปในทิศทางที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้



[ปิดเครื่อง]

(2) กดสวิตช์การทำงานฉุกเฉินอีกครั้ง

ข้อพึงระวังสำหรับระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มหรือควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

ระบบนี้มีระบบควบคุมอีกสองแบบนอกเหนือจากระบบควบคุมเดี่ยว (รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องต่อเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งเครื่อง) โปรดตรวจสอบสิ่งต่อไปนี้ หากระบบของท่านใช้ระบบควบคุมแบบนี้

- **ระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม**
  รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องสามารถควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารได้ถึง 16 เครื่อง
  เครื่องภายในอาคารทุกเครื่องจะถูกปรับค่าเหมือนกันหมด
- **ระบบที่ควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง**
  รีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารเครื่องเดียว (กรณีที่เป็นระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มจะเป็นเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งกลุ่ม)
  เครื่องจะทำงานตามการใช้งานจากรีโมทคอนโทรลแต่ละเครื่อง

หมายเหตุ

- ไม่สามารถมีระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายอย่างเดียว (ระบบนี้จะเป็นระบบที่ควบคุมด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องโดยมีเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบมีสายและอีกเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบไร้สาย)
- ภายใต้ระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายจะไม่สามารถควบคุมการตั้งเวลาได้
- มีเฉพาะไฟแสดงการทำงานเท่านั้นที่จะสว่างขณะทำงาน ที่เหลืออีก 3 ดวงบนเครื่องภายในอาคารจะไม่สว่าง
- ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายไดกิ้น ในกรณีที่จะเปลี่ยนการจับคู่หรือการปรับตั้งของระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มและระบบควบคุมแบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

3PN12150-2

5. อาการที่ไม่ใช่เกิดจากการที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ

อาการดังต่อไปนี้ไม่ได้แสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานผิดปกติ

I. เครื่องไม่ทำงาน

- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากเพิ่งปิดและเปิดเครื่องใหม่อีกครั้ง**
  ถ้าหลอดไฟแสดงสถานะการทำงานติดแสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานปกติ เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที
- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากที่ปล่อยมือจากปุ่มกดตั้งอุณหภูมิ**
  เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที
- **ในกรณีที่เสียงปี๊ปตอบรับดังซ้ำกัน 3 ครั้งอย่างรวดเร็ว (หากเครื่องทำงานปกติจะส่งเสียงเพียงสองครั้ง)**
  การควบคุมถูกตั้งโดยเครื่องควบคุมเพิ่มเติมสำหรับระบบควบคุมส่วนกลาง
- **หากไฟละลายน้ำแข็งบนหน่วยแสดงผลของเครื่องภายในอาคารสว่างขึ้นเมื่อการทำความร้อนเริ่มทำงาน**
  การแสดงผลนี้เป็นการเตือนว่ากำลังมีลมเย็นเป่าออกมาจากเครื่อง ซึ่งไม่ใช่ความผิดปกติของเครื่องแต่อย่างใด

6. การวิเคราะห์จุดที่เกิดปัญหา (รูป 9)

I. การหยุดฉุกเฉิน

เมื่อเครื่องหยุดทำงานเองโดยฉุกเฉิน ไฟแสดงการทำงานที่เครื่องภายในอาคารจะเริ่มกระพริบ ให้ทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้ เพื่อดูรหัสความผิดปกติที่จะต้องแจ้งให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายทราบ เมื่อทำการติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายและแจ้งรหัสนี้ จะช่วยระบุปัญหาและทำให้สามารถทำการซ่อมแซมได้เร็วขึ้น

(1) กดปุ่ม “ตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ” เพื่อเลือกสถานะตรวจสอบ “ 0 ”

“ 0 ” ปรากฏขึ้นบนจอแสดงผลและกระพริบ “UNIT” จะสว่าง

(2) กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” แล้วเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่อง

กดเพื่อเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่องจนกระทั่งเครื่องภายในอาคารส่งเสียงปี๊ป แล้วทำสิ่งต่อไปนี้ตามจำนวนเสียงปี๊ป

จำนวนครั้งของเสียงปี๊ป

3 ครั้งสั้นๆ .....ทำตามทุกขั้นตอนตั้งแต่ (3) ถึง (6)

1 ครั้งสั้นๆ .....ทำตามขั้นตอนที่ (3) และ (6)

1 ครั้งยาวๆ.....สภาพปกติ

(3) กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน”

“ 0 ” ทางด้านซ้ายมือของรหัสความผิดปกติกระพริบ

(4) กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” เพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสความผิดปกติ

กดจนกว่าเครื่องภายในอาคารจะส่งเสียงปี๊ป 2 ครั้ง

(5) กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน”

“ 0 ” ทางด้านขวามือของรหัสความผิดปกติกระพริบ

(6) กดปุ่ม “ตั้งเวลา” เพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสความผิดปกติ

กดจนกว่าเครื่องภายในอาคารจะส่งเสียงปี๊ปยาว ซึ่งแสดงว่าได้รหัสความผิดปกตินั้นแล้ว

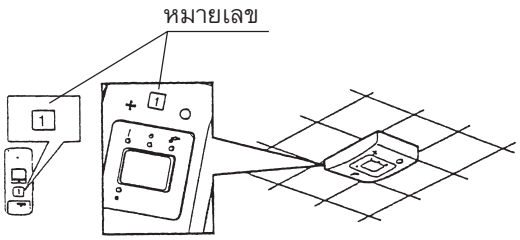
(7) รีเซ็ทหน้าจอ

กดปุ่ม “เลือกโหมดการทำงาน” เพื่อให้หน้าจอเปลี่ยนเข้าสู่สภาพปกติ

II. ในกรณีอื่นนอกเหนือจากการหยุดฉุกเฉิน

1. เครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย

- ตรวจดูว่าตัวรับสัญญาณโดนแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้าหรือไม่ ตัวรับสัญญาณไม่ควรอยู่ในที่ที่มีแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้าส่องถึง
- ตรวจดูว่ารีโมทคอนโทรลมีแบตเตอรี่หรือไม่ ให้ใส่แบตเตอรี่ในรีโมทคอนโทรล
- ตรวจดูว่าตัวเลขที่เครื่องภายในอาคารตรงกับที่รีโมทคอนโทรลแบบไร้สายหรือไม่



ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารที่มีหมายเลขตรงกัน
สัญญาณที่ถูกส่งจากรีโมทคอนโทรลที่มีหมายเลขต่างกับเครื่องภายในอาคารจะไม่มีผล (ถ้าไม่มีหมายเลขแสดงไว้ ถือว่าเป็นหมายเลข “1”)

2. เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานแต่ทำความเย็นหรือทำความร้อนไม่เพียงพอ

- อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ไม่เหมาะสมหรือไม่
- ความเร็วพัดลมตั้งไว้ต่ำหรือไม่
- มุมของทิศทางลมไม่เหมาะสมหรือไม่

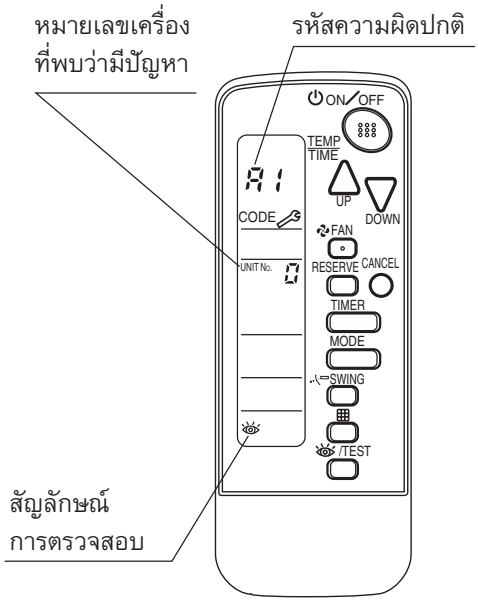
ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านในกรณีดังต่อไปนี้

⚠ คำเตือน

เมื่อท่านพบว่ามีกลิ่นไหม้ โปรดปิดสวิตช์แหล่งจ่ายไฟทันที แล้วติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน การใช้อุปกรณ์ผิดวิธีอาจจะทำให้ตัวเครื่องเสียหาย ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจร และ/หรือเพลิงไหม้ได้

[ปัญหา]

ไฟแสดงการทำงานของเครื่องภายในอาคารกระพริบและเครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย



[การแก้ไข]

ตรวจรหัสความผิดปกติ (A1~UF) ที่รีโมทคอนโทรลแล้วติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน (ดูหน้า 12)



ข้อกำหนดเกี่ยวกับการกำจัดทิ้ง

แบตเตอรี่ที่มาพร้อมกับรีโมทคอนโทรลจะมีสัญลักษณ์นี้ ซึ่งหมายความว่า แบตเตอรี่ไม่ควรทิ้งรวมกับขยะภายในบ้านที่ไม่ได้แยกประเภท
หากมีการพิมพ์สัญลักษณ์ทางเคมีใต้สัญลักษณ์ดังกล่าว หมายความว่าแบตเตอรี่มีส่วนประกอบของโลหะหนักเกินค่าความเข้มข้นมาตรฐาน
สัญลักษณ์ทางเคมีที่อาจพบ ได้แก่:

■ Pb: ตะกั่ว (>0.004%)

แบตเตอรี่ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วต้องผ่านกระบวนการเฉพาะเพื่อนำกลับมาใช้ใหม่
การตรวจสอบว่าแบตเตอรี่ถูกกำจัดทิ้งอย่างเหมาะสมเท่ากับเป็นการช่วยป้องกันผลกระทบต่อเนื่องต่อสุขภาพและสิ่งแวดล้อม

3PN12150-2

1.6 BRC7C612W / BRC7C613W (for FH(Y)C)

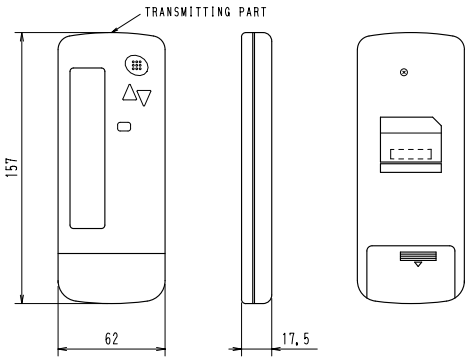
1.6.1 Features



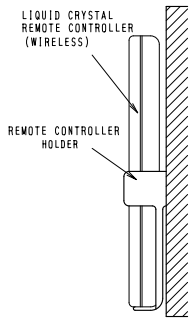
1.6.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

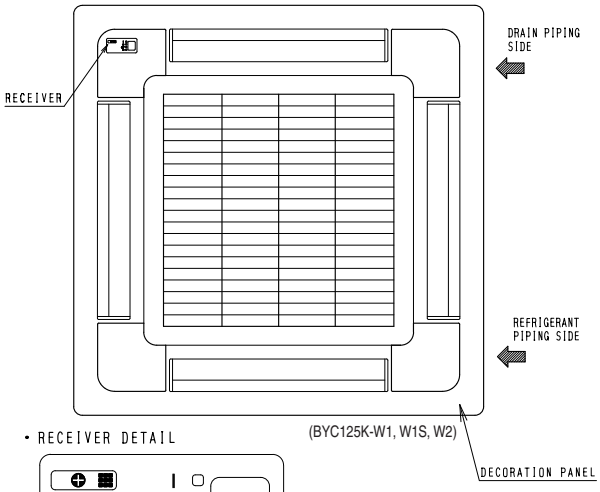
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



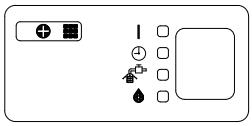
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL

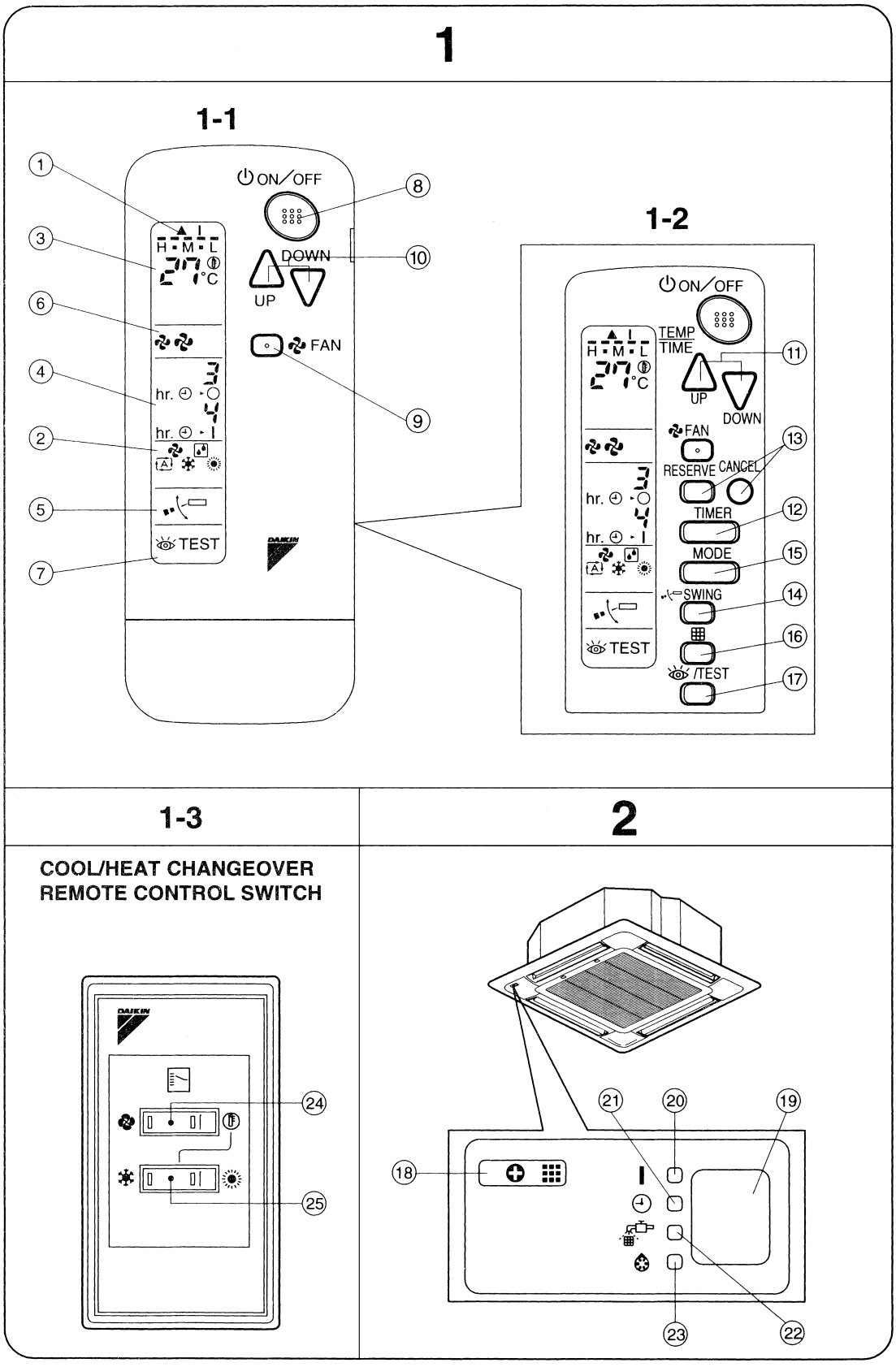


• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH DECORATION PANEL

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	DECORATION PANEL
BRC7C612W BRC7C613W	BYC125K-W1・W2
BRC7C613WS	BYC125K-W1S

C: 3D005912D

1.6.3 Operation Manual



3

3P107422-15M

CONTENTS

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 5
NAMES AND FUNCTIONS IN THE OPERATING SECTION 7
HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER . . . 8
OPERATION RANGE 9
OPERATION PROCEDURE 9
NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER 14
HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS 15
Fig. 1, 2 3
Fig. 3, 4 59
Fig. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 60
Fig. 10 61

3P107422-15M

2

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.

There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING** : Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE : These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

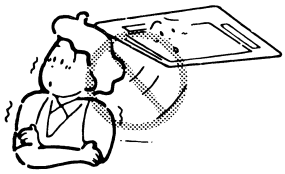
Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.

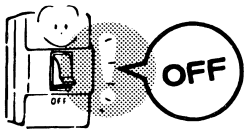
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

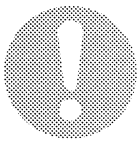
- **Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.**
  Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.



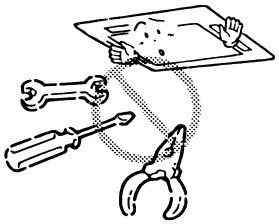
- **If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.**
  If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.



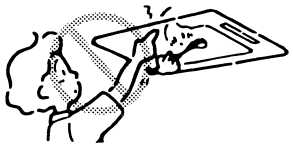
- **Ask your dealer to install your equipment.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



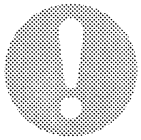
- **Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.**
  Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



- **Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.**
  The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.



- **Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



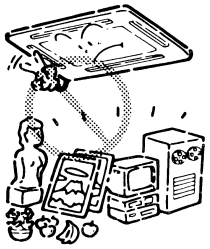
5

3P107422-15M

⚠ CAUTION

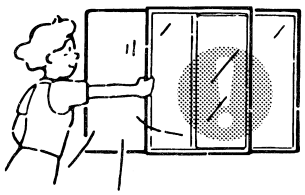
- **Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.**

  Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.



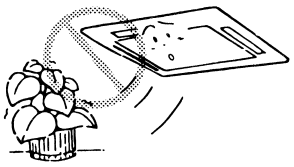
- **When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.**

  Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.



- **Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.**

  They may be adversely affected.

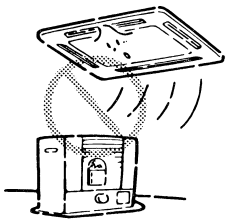


- **Do not operate the air conditioner with wet hands.**

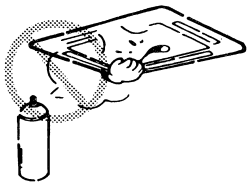
  Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.



- **Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.**



- **Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.**



6

3P107422-15M

2

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

①	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)** This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
②	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
③	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature.
④	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)** This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
⑤	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)** Refer to page 11.
⑥	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)** The display shows the set fan speed.
⑦	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)** When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
⑧	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
⑨	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
⑩	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
⑪	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON** Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
⑫	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON** Refer to page 12.
⑬	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON** Refer to page 12.
⑭	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON** Refer to page 11.
⑮	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON** Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
⑯	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON** Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
⑰	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON** This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
⑱	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH** This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
⑲	**RECEIVER** This receives the signals from the remote controller.
⑳	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
㉑	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)** This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
㉒	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
㉓	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)** Lights up when the defrosting operation has started.
㉔	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
㉕	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

(NOTE)
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit. After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

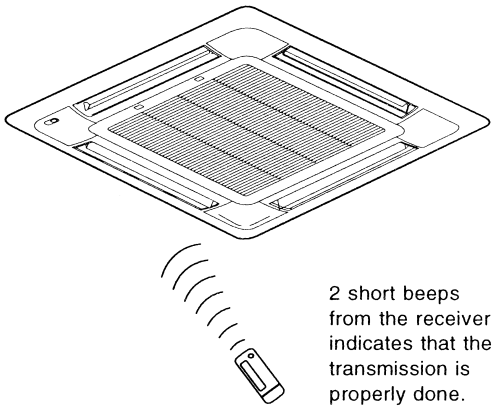
3P107422-15M

HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

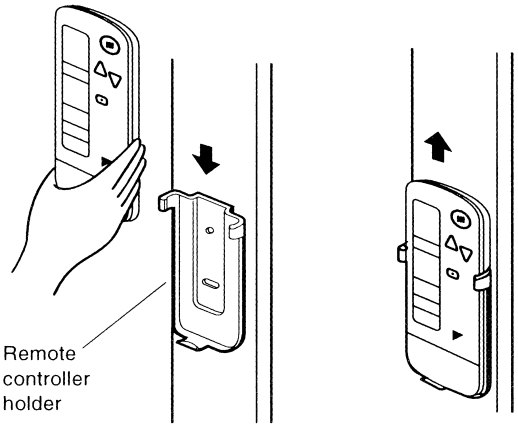
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller — Slide from above

Removing the remote controller — Pull it upward



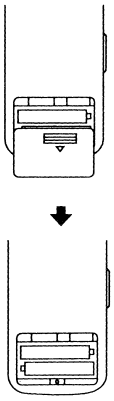
How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries

Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Pull dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

CAUTIONS

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

8

3P107422-15M

OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R35 • 50 • 60	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	19.4 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
	R71 • 100 • 125 • 140	DB	18 to 35		DB	21 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY35 • 50 • 60	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	19.4 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
	RY71 • 100 • 125 • 140	DB	18 to 35		DB	−5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY35 • 50 • 60	DB	15 to 27	DB	−9 to 21
				WB	−10 to 15.5
	RY71 • 100 • 125 • 140	DB	15 to 27	DB	−9 to 21
				WB	−10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C ~ 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)*

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ ".

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

3P107422-15M

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)*

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

COOLING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

HEATING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

FAN OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

2 Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

Note:

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 11) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

3P107422-15M

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)*

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " " (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION)

(2) Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

(3) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 11) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(4) Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)*

(1) Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY " ".

(3) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

(4) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 11) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(5) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

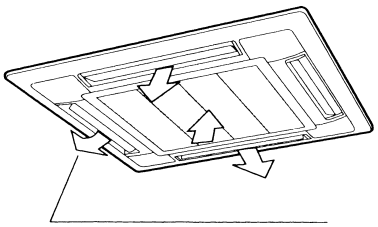
Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.

3P107422-15M



Up and down adjustment

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.

" " DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

" " DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time ( ). . . . The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time ( ) . . . . The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop . . . . . ( )
For setting the timer start . . . . . ( )

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP	When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.
DOWN	When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 Press RESERVE button.

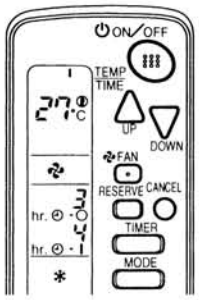
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

3P107422-15M

For example



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

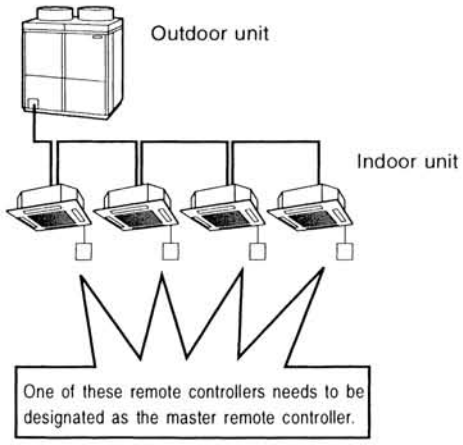
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (☞4)

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

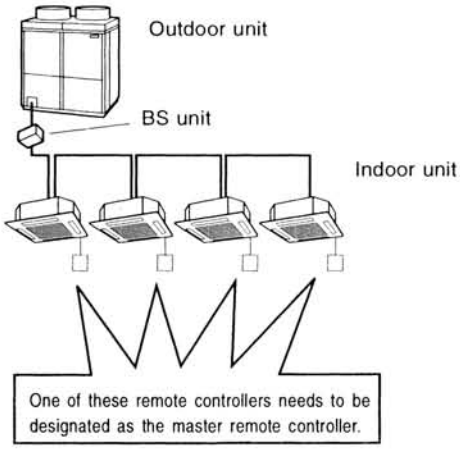
■ *For RSXY series*

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ *For RSEY series*

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "COOL", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN", "DRY" and "COOL".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "HEAT", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN" and "HEAT".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "FAN", you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a "peep" is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a "peep" will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

☞1 Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "◴" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

13

C: 3P107422-15M

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏎" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2)

EMERGENCY OPERATION (Fig. 10)

When the remote controller does not work due to dead batteries or it is missing, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

START

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.

STOP

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**

One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**

Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE:

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE:

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

1. **THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE**
   - **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
     If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.

3P107422-15M

- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode "⊡".

"⊡" appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps . . . . . Perform all steps from (3) to (6)

1 short beep . . . . . Perform (3) and (6) steps

1 long beep . . . . . Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"⊡" on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"⊡" on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep. The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

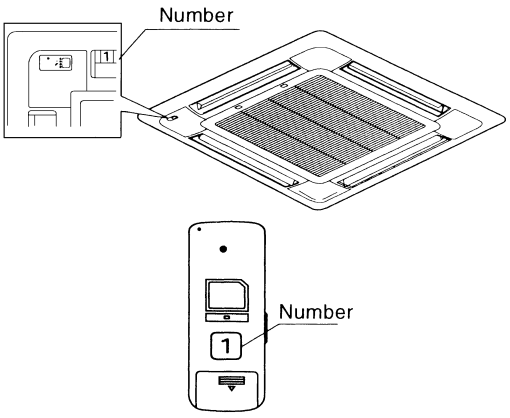
(7) Reset of the display

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. **The unit does not operate at all.**
   - Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
   - Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
   - Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

3P107422-15M



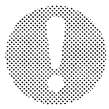
Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

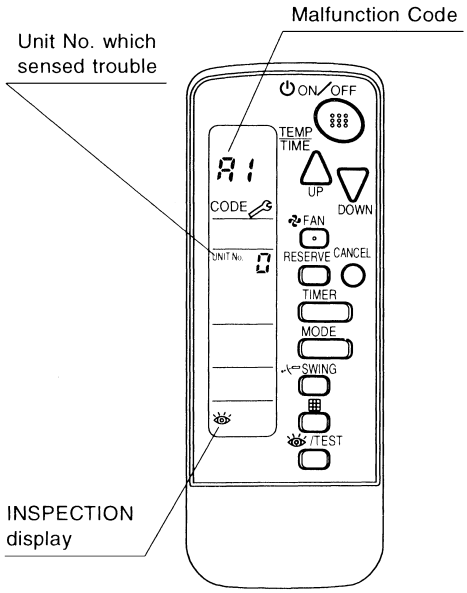
2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

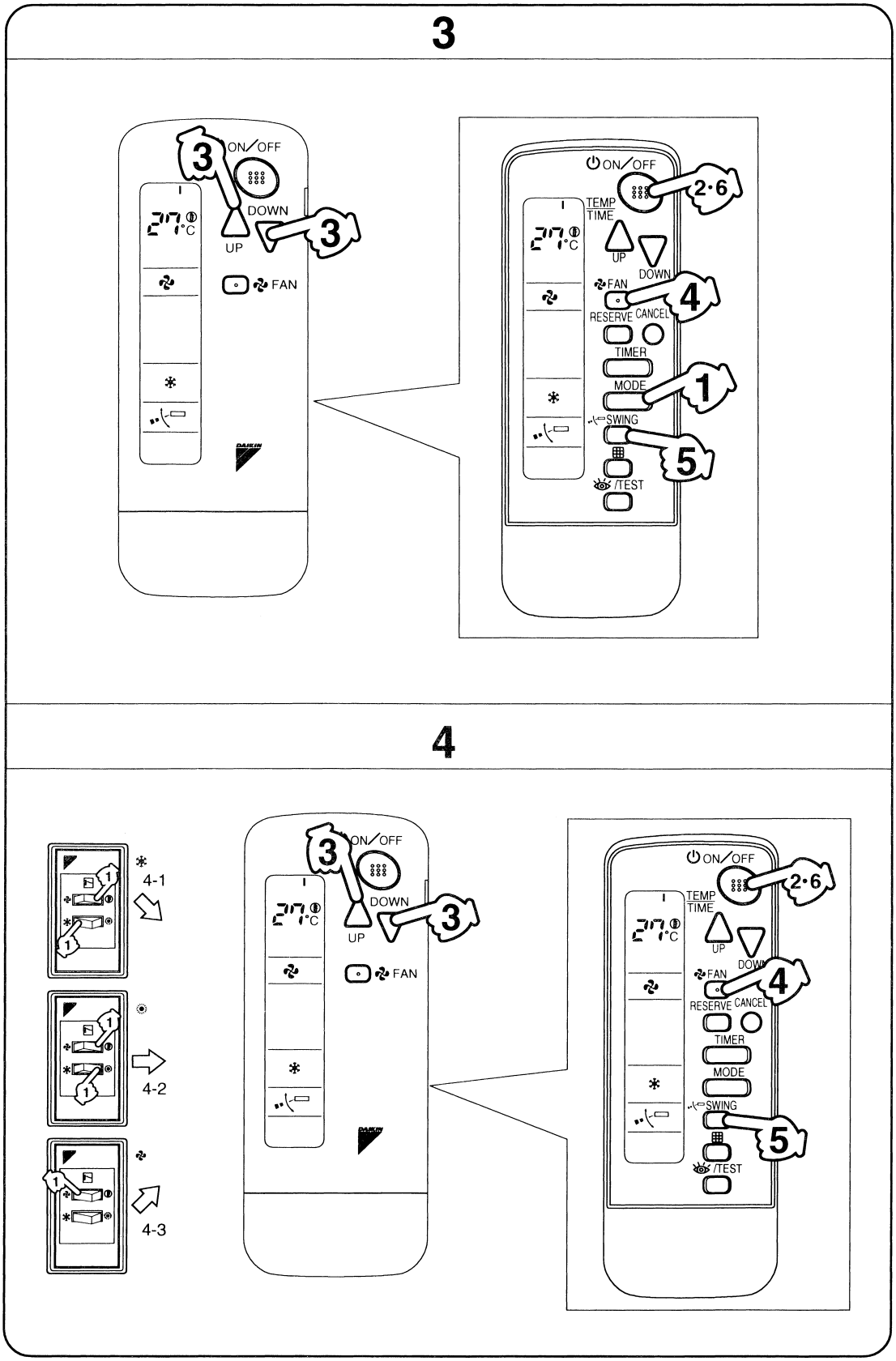
- When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.



Trouble	Remedial action
The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all. 	Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 15.)

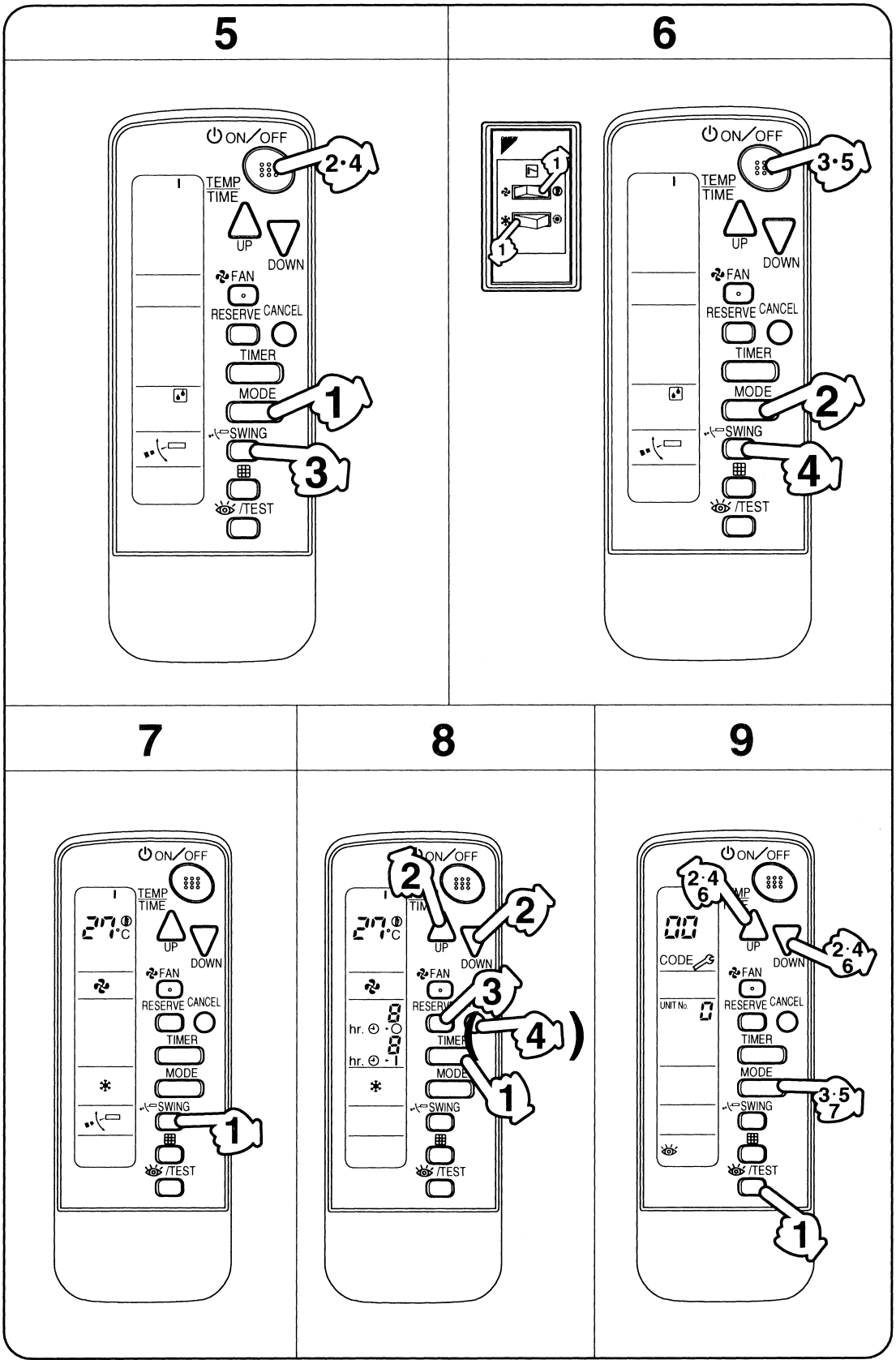
16

3P107422-15M



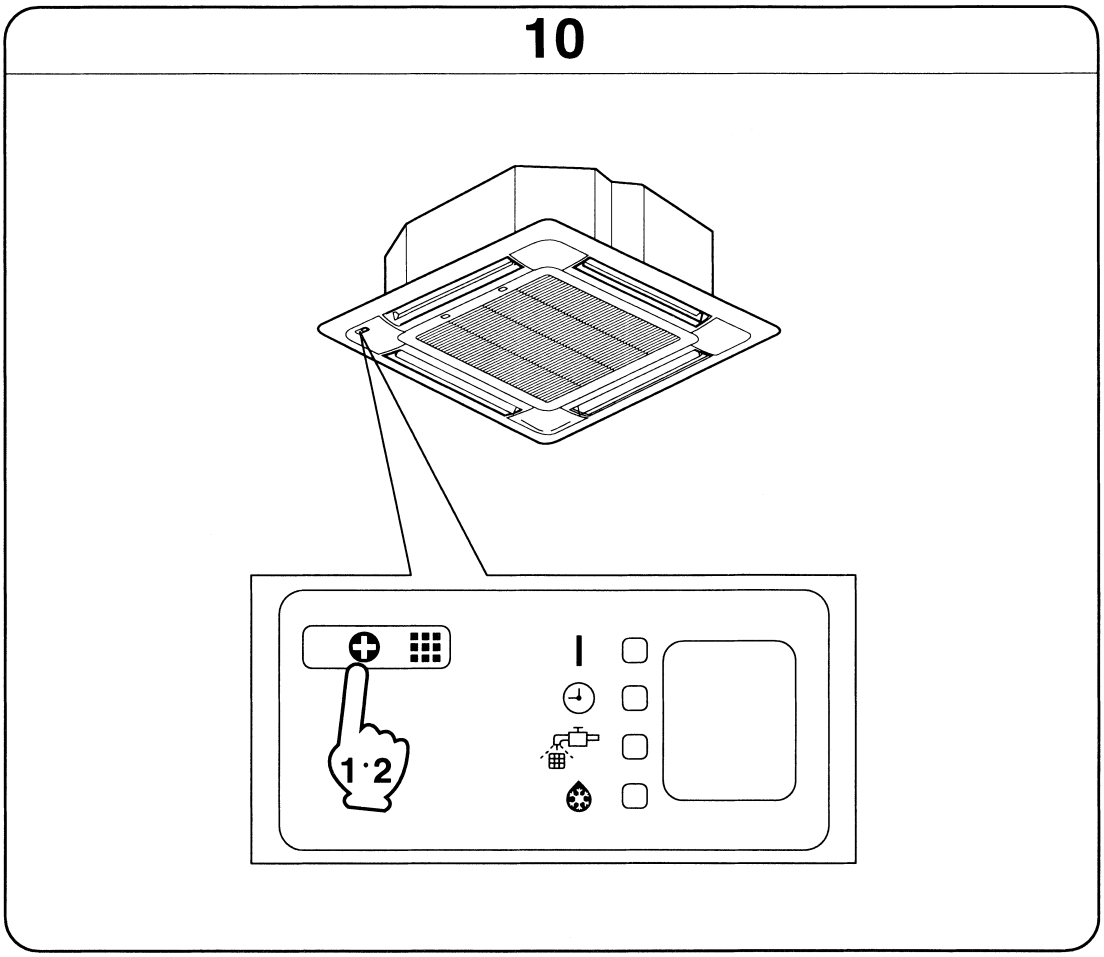
59

3P107422-15M



60

3P107422-15M



61

3P107422-15M

1.6.4 Installation Manual

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION**..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

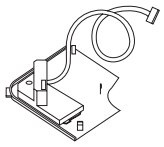
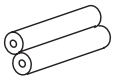
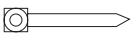
⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - * Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - * Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.
- If both this kit and fresh air intake kit are installed, only one duct chamber shall be used. Refer to the installation manual of the fresh air intake kit (optional hand book).

BEFORE INSTALLATION

ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
			Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Operation manual		1 pc.
Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label		1 pc.	Sealing pad	 20 × 35	1 pc.
						Binding band		1 pc.

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

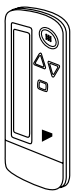
REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈 Installing wireless remote controller 〉

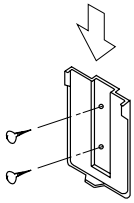
- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**

  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

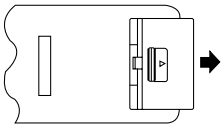


  Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

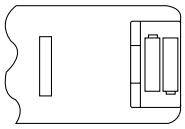


- **How to insert the batteries**

  ① Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



  ② Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after installing the decoration panel.

① Remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

② Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

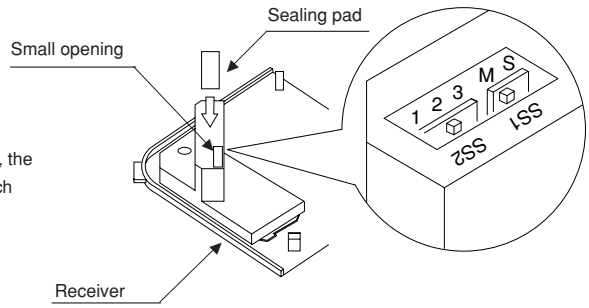
① **Setting the receiver**

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1)		



After completing setting, seal off the opening of the address switch and the MAIN/SUB switch with the attached sealing pad.

② **Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")**

〈 Setting from the remote controller 〉

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

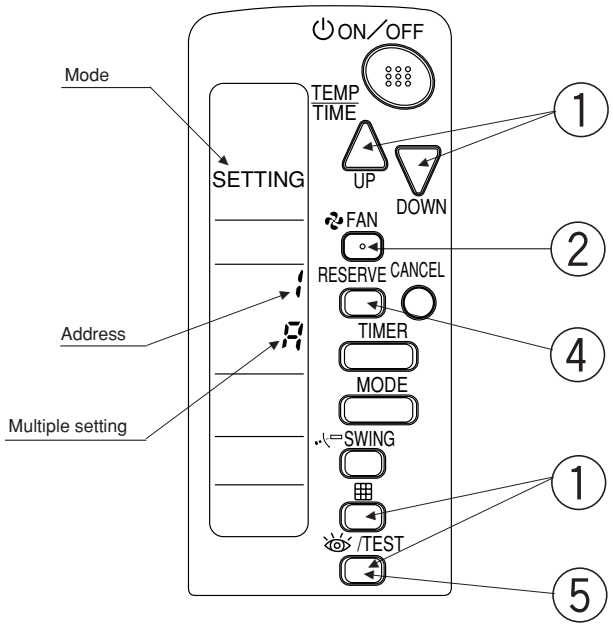
③ Press the "△ UP" button and "▽ DOWN" button to set the address.

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 ↩

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

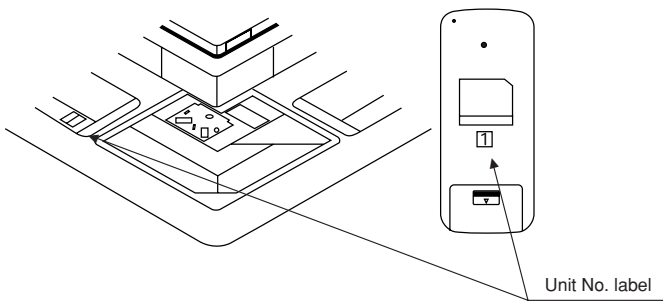


〈 Multiple settings A/b 〉

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

③ Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.



PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

2

(3) Receiver installation

① Detach the swing motor and the diagonally opposite decorative corner panel. This corner panel piece is not needed hereafter.
(For instructions on attaching/ detaching decorative panels, see the installation instructions provided with the original panel.)

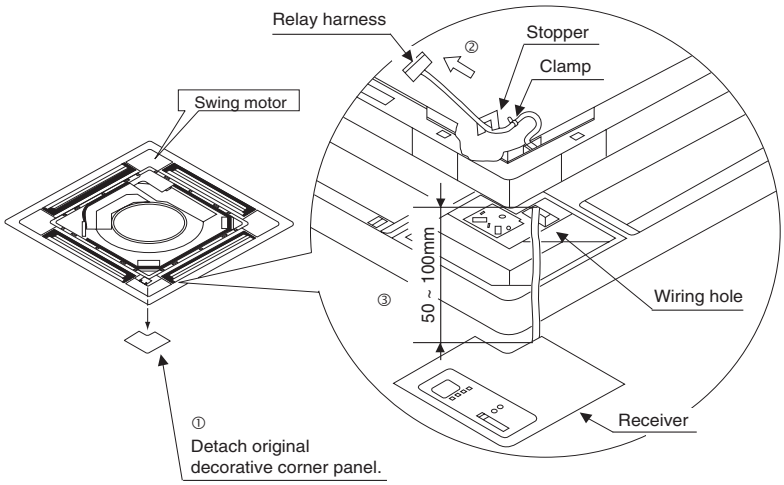
The receiver cannot be installed anywhere but in this corner.

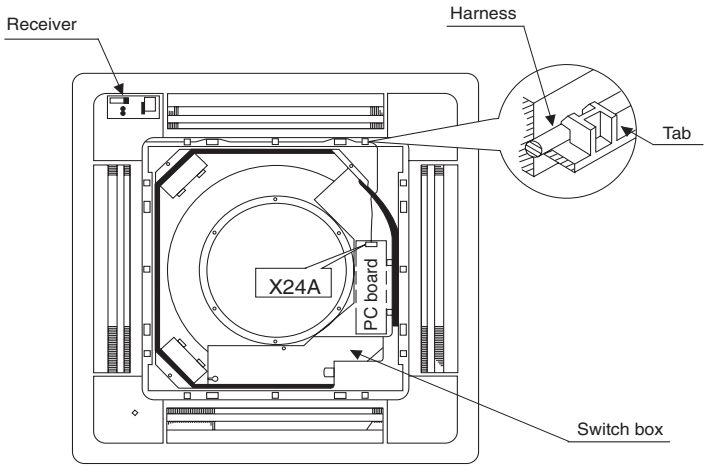
② Pull the relay harness from the receiver up to where the clamp meets the stopper, as shown at right.

③ Install the receiver where the decorative corner panel before. Proceed in the opposite order in which you removed the corner panel.

④ Fit the relay harness under the tab on the decorative panel and connect it to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC board. Bundle the remaining harness with the included tie band so that it does not droop or get pinched in the suction grille.

⑤ Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box and the suction grille to the decorative panel.





FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.

③ Push the "△ UP" button and select the FIRST CODE NO.

④ Push the "▽ DOWN" button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑤ Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.

⑥ Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

C: 3PA59585-9V

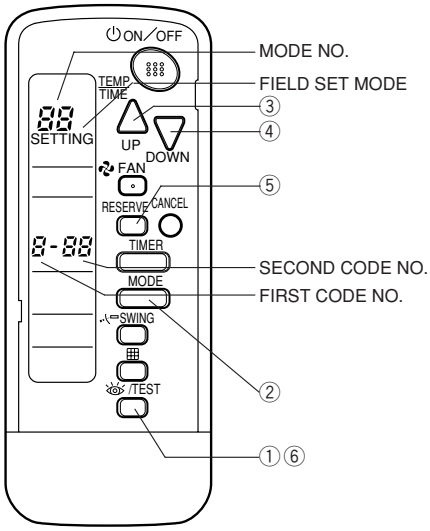
MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)		
				01	02	03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	Light: Approx.10,000 hours	Heavy: Approx. 5,000 hours	—
			Long-life type	Light: Approx. 2,500 hours	Heavy: Approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type	Light: Approx. 200 hours	Heavy: Approx. 100 hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long-life filter (1)	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.		Pair	Twin	Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)		Forced OFF input	ON/OFF	—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)		1°C	0.5°C	—
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal	High Ceiling 1	High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F	T	W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper	Normal	Lower

NOTE) The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.

- Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.

For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)



TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

〈 **PRECAUTIONS** 〉

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

1.7 BRC7C613WS (for FHC-PUV2S / NUV2S)

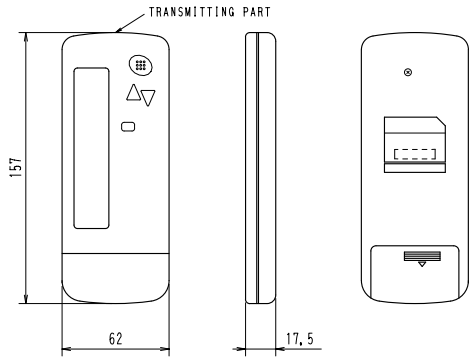
1.7.1 Features



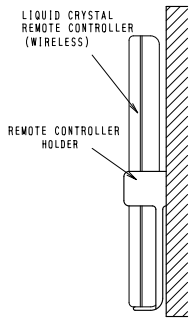
1.7.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

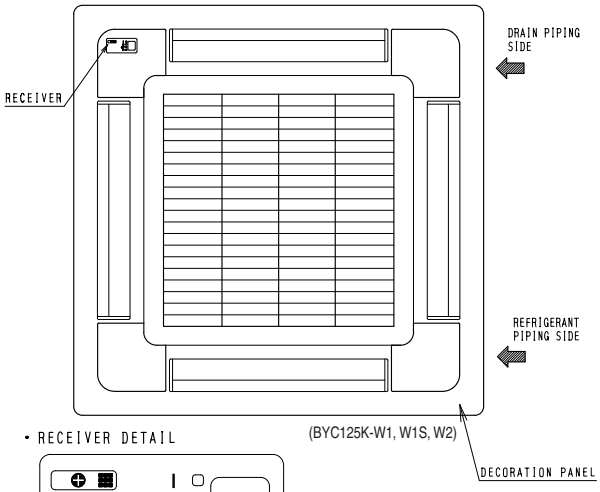
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



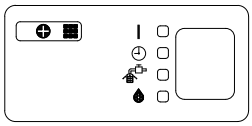
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL



• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH DECORATION PANEL

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	DECORATION PANEL
BRC7C612W BRC7C613W	BYC125K-W1 • W2
BRC7C613WS	BYC125K-W1S

C: 3D005912D

1.7.3 Operation Manual (Thai)

ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย

ศึกษาข้อควรระวังต่อไปนี้อย่างละเอียด ใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศของท่านอย่างถูกต้อง

ข้อควรระวังเพื่อความปลอดภัยในที่นี้แบ่งออกเป็น 3 ประเภทดังนี้

⚠ **คำเตือน** : หากใช้งานไม่เหมาะสมอาจก่อให้เกิดผลเสียหายร้ายแรง เช่นเสียชีวิตหรือได้รับบาดเจ็บสาหัสได้

⚠ **ข้อควรระวัง** : หากใช้งานไม่เหมาะสมอาจทำให้เครื่องมือเสียหายหรือได้รับบาดเจ็บ และในบางกรณีอาจก่อให้เกิดผลเสียหาย ร้ายแรงได้เช่นกัน

หมายเหตุ : คำแนะนำเพื่อการใช้งานเหล่านี้จะช่วยทำให้เกิดความมั่นใจในการใช้อุปกรณ์ได้อย่างถูกต้อง

โปรดปฏิบัติตามข้อควรระวังเหล่านี้เพื่อความปลอดภัยอย่างเคร่งครัด

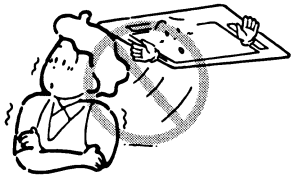
เก็บแผ่นกระดาษคำเตือนนี้ไว้ใกล้ตัว เพื่อสามารถใช้อ้างอิงได้เมื่อจำเป็น

ในกรณีที่เครื่องปรับอากาศเปลี่ยนมือผู้ใช้ โปรดมอบหนังสือคู่มือเล่มนี้ให้กับผู้ใช้ใหม่ด้วย

⚠ คำเตือน

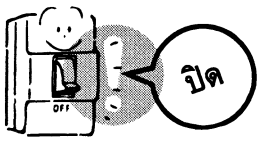
- **อย่าอยู่ในตำแหน่งที่รับลมเย็นจากเครื่องปรับอากาศโดยตรงเป็นเวลานานและอย่าให้อากาศภายในห้องเย็นจนเกินไป**

  เนื่องจากท่านอาจจะรู้สึกไม่สบายหรือทำให้สุขภาพเสื่อมโทรมได้



- **หากท่านพบสิ่งผิดสังเกต (เช่น ได้กลิ่นควันไฟ) ให้ปิดสวิทช์แล้วติดต่อขอรับคำแนะนำจากตัวแทนจำหน่าย**

  หากท่านยังฝืนใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศต่อไปทั้งๆ ที่พบสิ่งผิดสังเกตเหล่านี้ เครื่องปรับอากาศจะเสียหายในที่สุด และอาจได้รับอันตรายจากไฟฟ้าดูดหรือไฟไหม้ได้



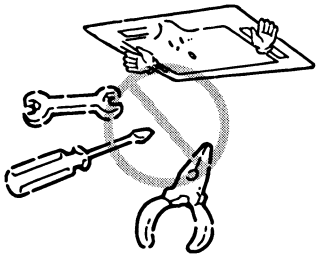
- **ขอให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านทำการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์**

  การติดตั้งที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจจะทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือเกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้



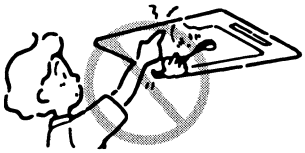
- **ติดต่อขอรับบริการบำรุงรักษาและซ่อมแซมจากตัวแทนจำหน่ายเมื่อจำเป็น**

  การบำรุงรักษาและซ่อมแซมที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจก่อให้เกิดปัญหาน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าดูดหรือไฟไหม้ได้



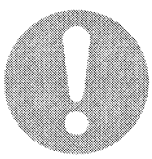
- **อย่าสอดนิ้วมือหรือวัตถุใดๆ ลงในช่องลมเข้าช่องลมออก และแผ่นส่ายปรับทิศทางลมในขณะที่เครื่องกำลังทำงาน**

  ท่านอาจได้รับอันตรายจากพัดลมความเร็วสูงภายในตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศได้



- **ขอให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่านรื้อถอนหรือติดตั้งอุปกรณ์ของท่านเมื่อจำเป็น**

  การติดตั้งที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจจะทำให้เกิดน้ำรั่ว ไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือเกิดเพลิงไหม้ได้



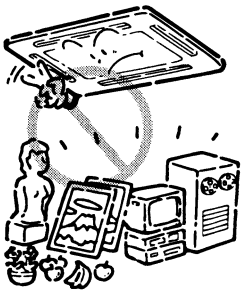
3P107422-25M

2

⚠ ข้อควรระวัง

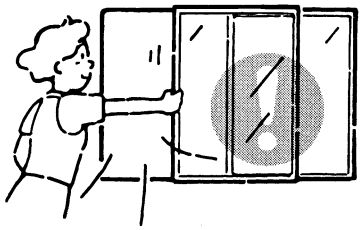
- **อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศเพื่อจุดประสงค์อื่นนอกเหนือจากการปรับอากาศ**

  อย่าใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศเพื่อจุดประสงค์พิเศษอื่น ๆ เช่น การถนอมอาหาร การเก็บรักษา สัตว์ พืช เครื่องจักร ความแม่นยำสูงหรืองานศิลปะต่าง ๆ เนื่องจากสิ่งเหล่านี้อาจได้รับอิทธิพลร้ายแรงได้



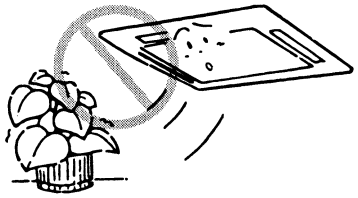
- **เมื่อใช้เครื่องปรับอากาศควบคู่กับอุปกรณ์ทำความร้อนอื่นๆ ให้ระบายอากาศในห้องเป็นครั้งคราว**

  หากไม่ระบายอากาศในห้องบ้างอาจทำให้ออกซิเจนในห้องไม่เพียงพอได้



- **อย่าวางพืช หรือสัตว์ไว้ในกระแสลมที่ออกจากเครื่องปรับอากาศ**

  สิ่งเหล่านี้อาจได้รับอิทธิพลร้ายแรงได้

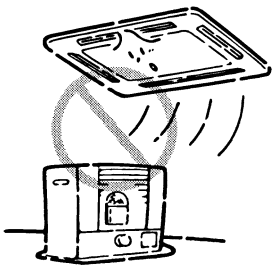


- **อย่าแตะต้องหรือใช้งานเครื่องปรับอากาศในขณะที่มือเปียก**

  มิฉะนั้นท่านอาจได้รับอันตรายจากไฟฟ้าดูดได้

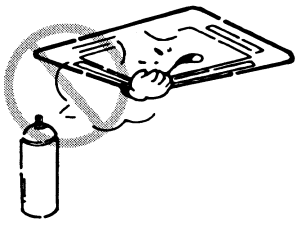


- **อย่าวางอุปกรณ์ที่มีการเผาไหม้ใดๆ ไว้ในกระแสลมที่ออกจากเครื่องปรับอากาศ เนื่องจากอาจก่อให้เกิดการเผาไหม้ที่ไม่สมบูรณ์ภายในอุปกรณ์นั้นได้**



- **อย่าวางหรือใช้สเปรย์ไวไฟใดๆ ใกล้เครื่องปรับอากาศ**

  เนื่องจากสเปรย์อาจติดไฟได้



3P107422-25M

ชื่อและฟังก์ชันในส่วนการใช้งาน

①	**สัญลักษณ์ "▲" (การส่งสัญญาณ)** ไฟนี้จะติดเมื่อมีการส่งสัญญาณ	⑭	**ปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล** กรุณาดูหน้า 24
②	**สัญลักษณ์ "" "" "A" "" "" (โหมดการทำงาน)** การแสดงผลนี้จะแสดงโหมดการทำงานปัจจุบัน สำหรับชนิดที่ทำความเย็นโดยตรงจะไม่มี "A" (อัตโนมัติ) และ "" (ทำความร้อน)	⑮	**ปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน** ปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงาน
		⑯	**ปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรอง** กรุณาดูในหัวข้อการดูแลรักษาในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
③	**สัญลักษณ์ "" (อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้)** แสดงอุณหภูมิที่ตั้ง	⑰	**ปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ** ปุ่มนี้ไว้สำหรับช่างผู้ชำนาญเพื่อใช้ในการดูแลรักษาเครื่อง
④	**สัญลักษณ์ "" (เวลาที่ตั้งไว้)** แสดงเวลาที่ตั้งไว้สำหรับการเปิดหรือปิด	⑱	**สวิทช์การทำงานฉุกเฉิน** สวิทช์นี้มีไว้ใช้ในกรณีที่รีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน
⑤	**สัญลักษณ์ "" (แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศไหล)** กรุณาดูหน้า 24	⑲	**ตัวรับคลื่น** ช่องสำหรับรับคลื่นสัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรล
⑥	**สัญลักษณ์ "" "" (ความเร็วพัดลม)** แสดงความเร็วพัดลมที่ตั้งไว้	⑳	**ไฟแสดงการทำงาน (แดง)** ไฟนี้จะติดสว่างในขณะที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน และจะกะพริบหากเครื่องมีปัญหา
⑦	**สัญลักษณ์ "TEST" (การตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ)** เมื่อกดปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ สัญลักษณ์นี้จะปรากฏเพื่อบอกว่าอยู่ในโหมดการทำงานนี้	㉑	**ไฟแสดงการตั้งเวลา (เขียว)** ไฟนี้จะติดสว่างเมื่อมีการตั้งเวลา
⑧	**ปุ่ม ON/OFF** กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเปิดเครื่อง กดปุ่มนี้อีกครั้งเพื่อปิดเครื่อง	㉒	**ไฟแสดงการถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ (แดง)** จะติดสว่างเมื่อถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ
⑨	**ปุ่มควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม** กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกความเร็วพัดลมให้เป็นแรงหรือเบา ตามความต้องการ	㉓	**ไฟละลายน้ำแข็ง (ส้ม)** จะติดสว่างเมื่อเริ่มต้นกระบวนการละลายน้ำแข็ง
⑩	**ปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิ** ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับปรับอุณหภูมิ (ใช้ในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรลปิดอยู่)	㉔	**สวิทช์เลือกพัดลม/ปรับอากาศ** ตั้งสวิทช์ไปที่ "" (พัดลม) สำหรับใช้งานพัดลมและตั้งไปที่ "" (A/C) สำหรับการทำความร้อนหรือความเย็น
⑪	**ปุ่มตั้งเวลา** ใช้ปุ่มนี้สำหรับตั้งเวลาเปิดและ/หรือปิด (ใช้ในขณะที่เปิดฝาครอบด้านหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรล)	㉕	**สวิทช์เปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน** ตั้งสวิทช์ไปที่ "" (ความเย็น) สำหรับการทำความเย็นและตั้งไปที่ "" (ความร้อน) สำหรับการทำความร้อน
⑫	**ปุ่มเริ่ม/หยุดโหมดการตั้งเวลา** กรุณาดูหน้า 25		
⑬	**ปุ่มจอง/ยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา** กรุณาดูหน้า 25		

(หมายเหตุ)
- เพื่อช่วยการอธิบาย สัญลักษณ์ทั้งหมดถูกแสดงในรูป 1 ซึ่งไม่ตรงกับขณะทำงานจริง
- รูป 1-2 แสดงรีโมทคอนโทรลในขณะที่ฝาครอบด้านหน้าเปิดอยู่
- รูป 1-3 แสดงให้ทราบว่ารีโมทคอนโทรลนี้ใช้ร่วมกันได้กับเครื่องที่มีระบบ VRV
- หากไฟแสดงการถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศติดสว่าง โปรดทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศตามที่อธิบายไว้ในคู่มือการใช้งานที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องภายในอาคาร หลังจากที่ทำความสะอาดและติดตัวกรองอากาศกลับเข้าที่แล้ว ให้กดปุ่มรีเซ็ทสัญลักษณ์ตัวกรองบนรีโมทคอนโทรล ไฟแสดงการถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศบนตัวรับคลื่นจะดับไป

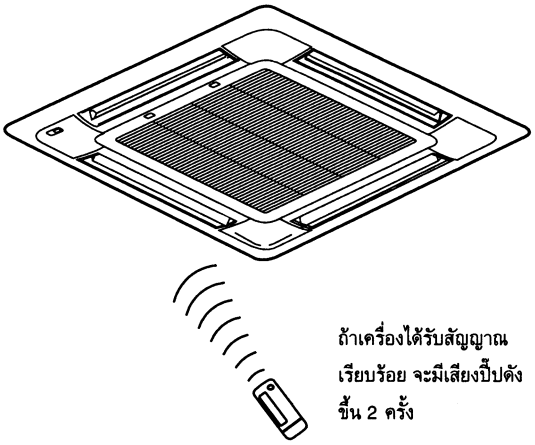
3P107422-25M

การปฏิบัติต่อรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

ข้อควรระวังในการใช้งานรีโมทคอนโทรล

เล็งตัวส่งสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลให้ตรงกับตัวรับสัญญาณที่เครื่องปรับอากาศ

ถ้ามีสิ่งกีดขวางระหว่างตัวรับสัญญาณของเครื่องปรับอากาศกับรีโมทคอนโทรล เช่น ผ้าม่าน เครื่องจะไม่ตอบสนองต่อสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไป



ถ้าเครื่องได้รับสัญญาณเรียบร้อย จะมีเสียงปี๊ปดังขึ้น 2 ครั้ง

ระยะรับส่งสัญญาณสูงสุดประมาณ 7 เมตร

อย่าทำรีโมทคอนโทรลตกหรือเปียกน้ำ

มิฉะนั้นรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจเสียได้

อย่าใช้วัสดุแข็งปลายแหลมกดปุ่มรีโมทคอนโทรล

มิฉะนั้นรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจชำรุดได้

สถานที่ติดตั้ง

- สัญญาณที่ส่งออกจากรีโมทคอนโทรลอาจถูกรบกวน ถ้าในห้องใช้หลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์อิเลคทรอนิค โปรดปรึกษาผู้ขายก่อนซื้อหลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์
- ถ้าสัญญาณที่รีโมทคอนโทรลส่งออกไปมีผลต่อเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าอื่น ให้เคลื่อนย้ายเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้านั้นออกไปหรือปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายของท่าน

วางรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ที่ฐานยึดรีโมทคอนโทรล

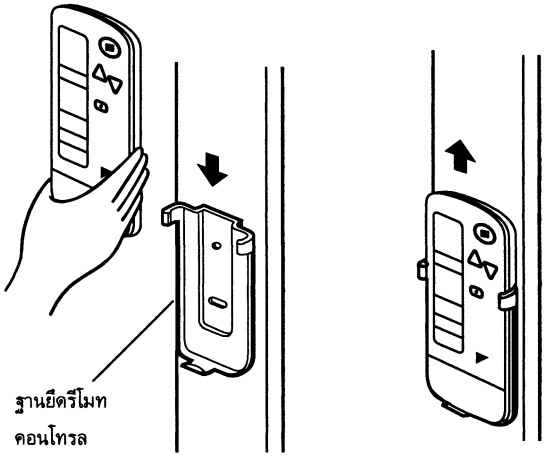
ติดตั้งฐานยึดรีโมทคอนโทรลไว้ที่ผนังหรือเสาโดยใช้สกรูยึดที่แนบมาให้ (ตรวจดูให้แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งในที่ที่สัญญาณถูกส่งออกไปได้ดี)

การวางรีโมทคอนโทรล

สอดลงจากทางด้านบน

การถอดรีโมทคอนโทรลออกจากฐานยึด

เลื่อนขึ้นไปทางด้านบน

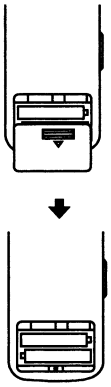


การใส่ถ่านรีโมทคอนโทรล

① เลื่อนฝาปิดด้านหลังรีโมทคอนโทรลออกตามทิศทางลูกศร

② ใส่ถ่าน
ใช้ถ่านไฟฉายชนิด LRO3<IEC> 2 ก้อน ใส่ถ่านไฟฉายลงในช่องให้ถูกขั้วตามสัญลักษณ์ (+) และ (-) ที่แสดงไว้

③ ปิดฝาครอบ



เมื่อไหร่จึงต้องเปลี่ยนถ่าน

ภายใต้เงื่อนไขการใช้งานปกติ ถ่านจะใช้งานได้ประมาณหนึ่งปี อย่างไรก็ตามท่านควรเปลี่ยนถ่านเมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารไม่ตอบสนองต่อคำสั่งหรือตอบสนองแต่ช้าหรือเมื่อสัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏเริ่มไม่ชัดเจน

ข้อควรระวัง

- เวลาเปลี่ยนถ่าน ต้องเปลี่ยนถ่านทุกก้อนพร้อมกัน อย่าใช้ถ่านใหม่ร่วมกับถ่านเก่า
- ถ้าไม่ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลเป็นเวลานานๆ ให้ถอดถ่านออกเพื่อป้องกันความเสียหายที่เกิดจากของเหลวในถ่านไหลเยิ้มออกมา

3P107422-25M

พิสัยการทำงาน

ระบบแยก

ในกรณีที่อุณหภูมิหรือความชื้นเกินเงื่อนไขดังต่อไปนี้ อุปกรณ์นิรภัยอาจจะทำงานและทำให้เครื่องปรับอากาศหยุดทำงานหรือในบางกรณีอาจจะมีน้ำหยดออกมาจากเครื่องภายในอาคาร

การทำความเย็น [°C]

	เครื่องภายนอกอาคาร	ภายในอาคาร			อุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร	
		อุณหภูมิ		ความชื้น		
ชนิดทำความเย็นโดยตรง	R35 . 50 . 60	DB	18 ถึง 35	80% หรือต่ำกว่า	DB	19.4 ถึง 46
		WB	12 ถึง 25			
	R71 . 100 . 125 . 140	DB	18 ถึง 35		DB	21 ถึง 46
		WB	12 ถึง 35			
ชนิดปั๊มความร้อน	RY35 . 50 . 60	DB	18 ถึง 35	80% หรือต่ำกว่า	DB	19.4 ถึง 46
		WB	12 ถึง 25			
	RY71 . 100 125 . 140	DB	18 ถึง 35		DB	-5 ถึง 46
		WB	12 ถึง 25			

การทำความร้อน [°C]

	เครื่องภายนอกอาคาร	อุณหภูมิภายในอาคาร		อุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร	
ชนิดปั๊มความร้อน	RY35 . 50 . 60	DB	15 ถึง 27	DB	-9 ถึง 21
				WB	-10 ถึง 15.5
	RY71 . 100 . 125 . 140	DB	15 ถึง 27	DB	-9 ถึง 21
				WB	-10 ถึง 15.5

DB: อุณหภูมิกระเปาะแห้ง

WB: อุณหภูมิกระเปาะเปียก

พิสัยการปรับอุณหภูมิของรีโมทคอนโทรลอยู่ระหว่าง 16°C ~ 32°C

สำหรับระบบ VRV โปรดดูคู่มือวิธีใช้ที่มาพร้อมกับเครื่องปรับอากาศ

ขั้นตอนการใช้งาน

- ขั้นตอนการใช้งานแตกต่างกันระหว่างชนิดปั๊มความร้อนและชนิดทำความเย็นโดยตรง กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่ายของ Daikin เพื่อสอบถามชนิดของระบบที่ใช้อยู่
- เพื่อเป็นการป้องกันเครื่อง กรุณาเปิดสวิทช์หลักไว้ 6 ชั่วโมงก่อนใช้งาน
- หากสวิทช์หลักถูกปิดระหว่างที่ใช้งานอยู่ การทำงานจะเริ่มต้นใหม่โดยอัตโนมัติเมื่อเปิดสวิทช์หลักอีกครั้งหนึ่ง

การทำความเย็น การทำความร้อน อัตโนมัติและพัดลม (รูป 3, 4)

- การทำงานอัตโนมัติสามารถเลือกได้เฉพาะซีรีส์ RSEY หรือระบบแยกเท่านั้น
- ซีรีส์ RSX หรือระบบแยกชนิดทำความเย็นอย่างเดียวจะเลือกได้เฉพาะพัดลมหรือการทำความเย็นเท่านั้น

■ *สำหรับระบบที่ไม่มีสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 3)*

1 กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงานหลายๆครั้งเพื่อเลือกโหมดการทำงานที่ต้องการจากรายการต่อไปนี้

การทำความเย็น ..... "☼"
การทำความร้อน ..... "☀"
การทำงานอัตโนมัติ ..... "A"
การใช้งานพัดลม ..... "≈"

สำหรับการทำงานอัตโนมัติ

ในโหมดการทำงานนี้ การสับระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อนจะถูกเลือกโดยอัตโนมัติขึ้นอยู่กับอุณหภูมิภายในอาคารในขณะนั้น

2 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะติดสว่างและระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

3P107422-25M

■ *สำหรับระบบที่มีสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 4)*

1 เลือกโหมดการทำงานด้วยสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสับเปลี่ยนการทำความเย็น/ความร้อนดังนี้

การทำความเย็น .... ดูรูป 4-1 ประกอบ

(,)

การทำความร้อน .... ดูรูป 4-2 ประกอบ

(,)

การใช้งานพัดลม .... ดูรูป 4-3 ประกอบ ()

2 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะติดสว่างและระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

การปรับตั้ง

สำหรับการตั้งอุณหภูมิและความเร็วพัดลมและทิศทางอากาศไหล กรุณาทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้

3 กดปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิเพื่อตั้งอุณหภูมิ

UP	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเพิ่มขึ้น 1°C
DOWN	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะลดลง 1°C

ในกรณีที่ใช้การทำงานอัตโนมัติ

UP	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะเพิ่มขึ้นไปทาง "H"
DOWN	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้ง อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้จะลดลงไปทาง "L"

[°C]

	H	●	M	●	L
อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้	25	23	22	21	19

หมายเหตุ:

- การปรับตั้งนี้ใช้ไม่ได้สำหรับการใช้งานพัดลม

4 กดปุ่มควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม

ท่านสามารถเลือกความเร็วพัดลมสูงหรือต่ำ

5 กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล

กรุณาดูรายละเอียดใน "การปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล" (หน้า 24)

การปิดระบบ

6 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF อีกครั้ง

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลงและระบบจะหยุดทำงาน

หมายเหตุ:

- อย่าเพิ่งปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีที่เครื่องหยุดทำงาน กรุณารออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่วหรือมีสิ่งผิดปกติหรือไม่

คำอธิบายการทำความร้อน

การละลายน้ำแข็ง

- เมื่อมีน้ำแข็งเกาะคอยล์ในเครื่องภายนอกอาคารเพิ่มขึ้น ระบบจะเข้าสู่ปฏิบัติการละลายน้ำแข็ง
- การใช้งานพัดลมจะหยุดและไฟละลายน้ำแข็งบนเครื่องภายในอาคารจะติดสว่าง
  หลังจากการละลายน้ำแข็งดำเนินไป 6 ถึง 8 นาที (สูงสุด 10 นาที) ระบบจะกลับคืนสู่การทำความร้อน

ปริมาณการทำความร้อนและอุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคาร

- ปริมาณการทำความร้อนจะลดลงเมื่ออุณหภูมิภายนอกอาคารลดลง ในกรณีที่ท่านยังรู้สึกหนาว โปรดใช้เครื่องทำความร้อนเครื่องอื่นพร้อมกันไปด้วย
- ลมร้อนจะไหลเวียนไปเพื่อทำให้ห้องอุ่นขึ้นหลังจากที่เครื่องเริ่มทำงาน ระบบต้องการเวลาสักครู่หนึ่งในการทำให้ห้องทั้งห้องอุ่น พัดลมภายในตัวจะหมุนช้าลงโดยอัตโนมัติจนกระทั่งภายในเครื่องปรับอากาศมาถึงอุณหภูมิหนึ่ง ในกรณีเช่นนี้ท่านจำเป็นต้องรอ
- ในกรณีที่อากาศร้อนไปรวมตัวอยู่บนเพดานและทำให้ยังรู้สึกหนาวที่เท้า ขอแนะนำให้ใช้พัดลมหมุนเวียนอากาศ สำหรับรายละเอียด กรุณาติดต่อห้างร้านที่ท่านซื้อ

การตั้งการอบแห้ง (รูป 5, 6)

- ฟังก์ชันนี้มีไว้สำหรับลดความชื้นในห้องโดยให้อุณหภูมิลดลงน้อยที่สุด
- ระบบไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะคำนวณอุณหภูมิและความเร็วพัดลมโดยอัตโนมัติ
- ระบบนี้จะไม่ทำงานในกรณีที่อุณหภูมิห้องต่ำกว่า 16°C

■ *สำหรับระบบที่ไม่มีสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 5)*

1 กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงานหลายๆครั้งเพื่อเลือก "💧" (การอบแห้ง)

2 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะติดสว่างและระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

การปรับตั้ง

3 กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล

กรุณาดูรายละเอียดใน "การปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล" (หน้า 24)

การปิดระบบ

4 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF อีกครั้ง

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลงและระบบจะหยุดทำงาน

■ *สำหรับระบบที่มีสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน (รูป 6)*

1 เลือกโหมดการทำความเย็นด้วยสวิทช์รีโมทคอนโทรลสำหรับเปลี่ยนระหว่างการทำความเย็น/ความร้อน

2 กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงานหลายๆครั้งเพื่อเลือกการอบแห้ง "💧"

3 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF

ไฟแสดงการทำงานจะติดสว่างและระบบจะเริ่มทำงาน

4 กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล

กรุณาดูรายละเอียดใน "การปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล" (หน้า 24)

การปิดระบบ

5 กดปุ่ม ON/OFF อีกครั้ง

ไฟแสดงการทำงานดับลงและระบบจะหยุดทำงาน

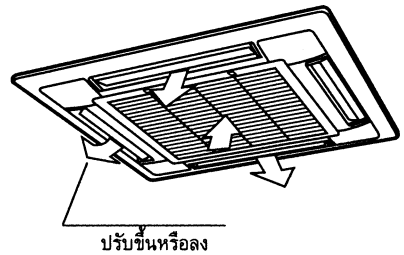
หมายเหตุ:

- อย่าเพิ่งปิดแหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีที่เครื่องหยุดทำงาน กรุณารออย่างน้อย 5 นาที ตรวจดูว่ามีน้ำรั่วหรือมีสิ่งผิดปกติหรือไม่

การปรับทิศทางอากาศไหล

กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหลเพื่อปรับมุมของทิศทางลม

3P107422-25M



ปรับขึ้นหรือลง

- ขอบเขตการเคลื่อนที่ของแผ่นบังคับทิศทางนั้นเปลี่ยนแปลงได้ กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่าย Daikin สำหรับรายละเอียด

(1) กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหลเพื่อเลือกปรับทิศทางลมตามที่แสดงไว้ข้างล่างนี้

เมื่อสัญลักษณ์ "..." ปรากฏ ทิศทางลมจะเปลี่ยนไปเรื่อยๆ (ตั้งให้ส่ายลมโดยอัตโนมัติ)

กดปุ่มปรับทิศทางอากาศไหลเพื่อเลือกปรับให้ได้ทิศทางลมตามที่ท่านต้องการ

เมื่อสัญลักษณ์ "..." หายไป ทิศทางลมจะคงที่ (ตั้งทิศทางลมไว้คงที่)

การเคลื่อนที่ของแผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศไหล

ภายใต้สภาพข้างล่างนี้ ไมโครคอมพิวเตอร์จะควบคุมทิศทางลมเองและทำให้ทิศทางลมต่างไปจากที่แสดงไว้

สถานะการทำงาน	ทำความเย็น	การทำความร้อน
สภาพการทำงาน	• เมื่ออุณหภูมิห้องต่ำกว่าอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้	• เมื่ออุณหภูมิห้องสูงกว่าอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ • ระหว่างการละลายน้ำแข็ง
	• ในขณะที่ทำงานอย่างต่อเนื่องโดยให้อากาศไหลในแนวนอน	

โหมดการทำงานดังกล่าวรวมถึงการทำงานอัตโนมัติด้วย

การใช้งานตัวจับเวลา (รูป 8)

- ตัวจับเวลาทำงานได้ใน 2 ลักษณะ คือ
  ตั้งเวลาหยุดการทำงาน (◷ ▸◯)..... เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
  ตั้งเวลาเริ่มการทำงาน (◷ ▸ |)..... เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงานเมื่อเวลาผ่านไปเท่ากับจำนวนชั่วโมงที่ตั้งไว้
- ตัวจับเวลาสามารถตั้งได้นานที่สุด 72 ช.ม.
- การตั้งเวลาเริ่มและหยุดการทำงานสามารถตั้งได้พร้อมๆ กัน

(1) กดปุ่ม เริ่ม/หยุด โหมดการตั้งเวลาหลายๆ ครั้งเพื่อเลือกสถานะที่ต้องการ

สัญลักษณ์จะกระพริบ
ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาหยุดให้เลือก.....(◷ ▸◯)
ถ้าจะตั้งเวลาเปิดให้เลือก.....(◷ ▸ |)

(2) กดปุ่มตั้งเวลาเพื่อตั้งเวลาหยุดหรือเวลาเริ่มการทำงาน

UP	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะเพิ่มขึ้น 1 ชั่วโมง
DOWN	เมื่อกดปุ่มนี้ เวลาจะลดลง 1 ชั่วโมง

(3) กดปุ่ม RESERVE

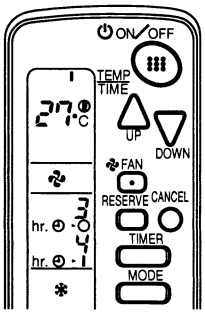
สิ้นสุดขั้นตอนการตั้งเวลา
จอแสดงผลเปลี่ยนจากการไฟกะพริบเป็นไฟที่ติดคงที่

หมายเหตุ

- เมื่อตั้งเวลาปิดและตั้งเวลาเปิดในเวลาเดียวกัน กรุณาทำตามขั้นตอนข้างบนจาก (1) ถึง (3) อีกครั้ง

3P107422-25M

ตัวอย่าง



เมื่อตั้งเวลาให้เครื่องหยุดทำงานหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 ช.ม. และเริ่มทำงานหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 4 ช.ม. เครื่องจะหยุดทำงานหลังเวลาผ่านไป 3 ช.ม. และหลังจากนั้น 1 ช.ม. เครื่องจะเริ่มทำงาน

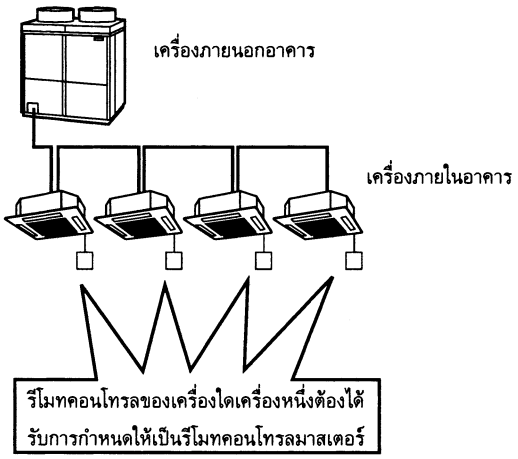
- หลังจากตั้งเวลาแล้ว สัญลักษณ์ที่ปรากฏขึ้นจะแสดงเวลาที่เหลือ
- เมื่อจะยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา ให้กดปุ่มปิดตัวจับเวลาแล้วสัญลักษณ์จะหายไป (4)

การตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์ (สำหรับซีรีส์ RSXY และ RSEY)

- ในกรณีที่ระบบถูกติดตั้งดังแสดงข้างล่าง ท่านจำเป็นต้องตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์

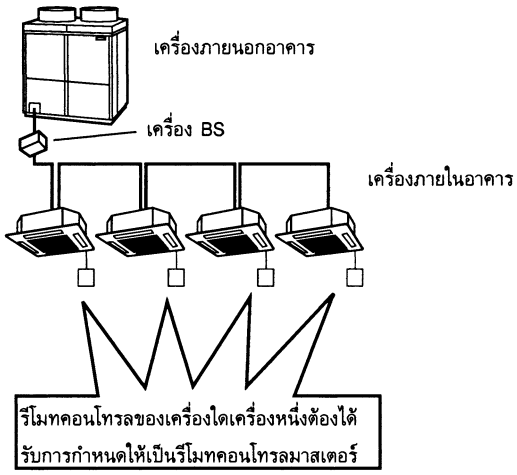
■ สำหรับซีรีส์ RSXY

เมื่อเครื่องภายนอกอาคารถูกเชื่อมต่อกับเครื่องภายในอาคารหลายเครื่อง



■ สำหรับซีรีส์ RSEY

ในกรณีที่เครื่อง BS ถูกเชื่อมต่อกับเครื่องภายในอาคารหลายเครื่อง



- เฉพาะรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์เท่านั้นที่สามารถเลือกการทำความร้อน การทำความเย็นหรือการทำงานอัตโนมัติ (สำหรับซีรีส์ RSEY)

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่รีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์ถูกตั้งให้เป็น “การทำความเย็น” ท่านสามารถเปลี่ยนโหมดการทำงานเป็น “การใช้งานพัดลม”, “การอบแห้ง” และ “การทำความเย็น”

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่รีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์ถูกตั้งให้เป็น “การทำความร้อน” ท่านสามารถเลือกระหว่าง “การใช้งานพัดลม” และ “การทำความร้อน”

เมื่อเครื่องภายในอาคารที่รีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์ถูกตั้งให้เป็น “การใช้งานพัดลม” ท่านไม่สามารถเลือกโหมดการทำงาน

เมื่อท่านพยายามเลือกโหมดการทำงานนอกเหนือจากที่กำหนดไว้ท่านจะได้ยินเสียงเตือนดัง “บี๊บ”

เฉพาะซีรีส์ RSEY เท่านั้น ท่านสามารถตั้งเครื่องภายในอาคารให้เป็นการทำงานอัตโนมัติ เมื่อท่านพยายามที่จะเลือกการทำงานนี้ ท่านจะได้ยินเสียงเตือนดัง “บี๊บ”

การกำหนดรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์

(1) กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงานแช่ไว้ 4 วินาที

สัญลักษณ์ “🕘” จะกะพริบบนเครื่องภายในอาคารทุกเครื่องที่เป็นเครื่องสเลฟซึ่งถูกเชื่อมต่อเข้ากับเครื่องภายนอกอาคารหรือเครื่อง BS เดียวกัน

(2) กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงานของเครื่องภายในอาคารที่ท่านต้องการกำหนดให้เป็นรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์จึงเป็นการสิ้นสุดขั้นตอนการกำหนดเครื่องภายในอาคารนี้จะถูกกำหนดให้เป็นรีโมทคอนโทรลมาสเตอร์และสัญลักษณ์ "🕘" จะหายไป

- ในการเปลี่ยนการปรับตั้ง ให้ทำขั้นตอน (1) และ (2) ซ้ำ

การทำงานฉุกเฉิน (รูป 10)

เมื่อรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงานเนื่องจากถ่านหมดหรือรีโมทคอนโทรลหาย ให้ใช้สวิตช์ฉุกเฉินที่อยู่ด้านหลังข้างตะแกรงลมออกของส่วนในอาคาร หากรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงานและไม่มีสัญลักษณ์ถ่านหมดปรากฏขึ้น กรุณาติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่าย

เปิดเครื่อง

(1) กดสวิทช์ฉุกเฉิน

เครื่องจะทำงานตามสถานะที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้
ระบบจะทำงานโดยลมจะถูกเป่าไปในทิศทางที่ตั้งไว้ก่อนหน้านี้

ปิดเครื่อง

(2) กดสวิทช์ฉุกเฉินอีกครั้ง

ข้อพึงระวังสำหรับระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มหรือระบบที่มีรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

ระบบนี้มีระบบควบคุมอีกสองแบบนอกเหนือจากระบบควบคุมเดี่ยว (รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องต่อเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งเครื่อง) โปรดตรวจสอบสิ่งต่อไปนี้หากระบบของท่านใช้ระบบควบคุมแบบนี้

■ **ระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม**

รีโมทคอนโทรลหนึ่งเครื่องสามารถควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารได้ถึง 16 เครื่อง
เครื่องภายในอาคารทุกเครื่องจะถูกปรับเหมือนกันหมด

■ **ระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง**

รีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องควบคุมเครื่องภายในอาคารเครื่องเดียว (กรณีที่เป็นระบบควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มจะเป็นเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งกลุ่ม)
เครื่องจะทำงานตามการใช้งานจากรีโมทคอนโทรลแต่ละเครื่อง

หมายเหตุ:

- ไม่สามารถมีระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายอย่างเดียว (ระบบนี้จะเป็นระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่องที่มีเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบมีสายและอีกเครื่องหนึ่งเป็นแบบไร้สาย)
- ภายใต้ระบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายจะไม่สามารถควบคุมการตั้งเวลา
- มีเฉพาะไฟแสดงการทำงานจากไฟแสดงที่เหลืออีก 3 ดวงบนเครื่องภายในอาคารเท่านั้นที่แสดงการทำงาน

หมายเหตุ:

ติดต่อตัวแทนจำหน่าย Daikin ในกรณีที่จะเปลี่ยนการจับคู่หรือการปรับตั้งของการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มและระบบควบคุมแบบรีโมทคอนโทรลสองเครื่อง

อาการที่ไม่ได้เกิดจากการที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานผิดปกติ

อาการดังต่อไปนี้ไม่ได้แสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานผิดปกติ

I เครื่องไม่ทำงาน

- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากเพิ่งปิดและเปิดเครื่องใหม่อีกครั้ง**

  ถ้าหลอดไฟแสดงสถานะทำงานติดแสดงว่าเครื่องทำงานปกติ เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที

- **เครื่องจะไม่เริ่มทำงานทันทีหลังจากที่ปล่อยมือจากปุ่มกดตั้งอุณหภูมิ**
  เครื่องจะไม่ทำงานทันทีเนื่องจากอุปกรณ์ป้องกันความปลอดภัยจะป้องกันไม่ให้เครื่องทำงานหนักเกินไป เครื่องจะทำงานโดยอัตโนมัติหลังจากเวลาผ่านไป 3 นาที
- **ในกรณีที่เสียงบี๊บตอบรับดังซ้ำกัน 3 ครั้งอย่างรวดเร็ว (หากเครื่องทำงานปกติจะส่งเสียงเพียงสองครั้ง)**
  การควบคุมถูกตั้งโดยเครื่องควบคุมเพิ่มเติมสำหรับระบบควบคุมส่วนกลาง
- **ในกรณีที่ไฟละลายน้ำแข็งบนหน่วยแสดงผลของเครื่องภายในอาคารติดเมื่อการทำความร้อนเริ่มทำงาน**
  การแสดงผลนี้เป็นการให้ความร้อนเพื่อต้านลมเย็นที่ถูกเป่าออกมาจากเครื่อง ไม่มีสิ่งใดผิดปกติภายในเครื่อง

การวินิจฉัยจุดที่เกิดปัญหา (รูป 9)

I การหยุดฉุกเฉิน

เมื่อเครื่องหยุดทำงานเองโดยฉุกเฉิน หลอดแสดงการทำงานที่ส่วนในอาคารจะกระพริบ ให้ทำตามขั้นตอนต่อไปนี้ เพื่อดูรหัสข้อผิดพลาดที่จะต้องแจ้งให้ตัวแทนจำหน่ายทราบเมื่อทำการติดต่อ รหัสนี้จะช่วยระบุปัญหาและทำให้สามารถทำการซ่อมแซมได้เร็วขึ้น

(1) กดปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบ เพื่อเลือกสถานะตรวจสอบ "0"

"0" ปรากฏขึ้นบนจอแสดงผลและกะพริบ "UNIT" จะติดสว่าง

(2) กดปุ่มตั้งเวลาแล้วเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่อง

กดเพื่อเปลี่ยนหมายเลขเครื่องจนกระทั่งเครื่องภายในอาคารส่งเสียงบี๊บแล้วทำสิ่งต่อไปนี้ตามจำนวนเสียงบี๊บ

จำนวนครั้งของเสียงบี๊บ

3 ครั้งสั้นๆ ..... ทำตามทุกขั้นตอนตั้งแต่ (3) ถึง (6)

1 ครั้งสั้นๆ ..... ทำตามขั้นตอนที่ (3) และ (6)

1 ครั้งยาว ..... สภาพปกติ

(3) กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน

"0" ทางด้านซ้ายมือของรหัสข้อผิดพลาดกระพริบ

(4) กดปุ่มตั้งเวลาเพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสข้อผิดพลาด

กดจนกว่าส่วนในอาคารจะส่งเสียงบี๊บ 2 ครั้ง

(5) กดปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน

"0" ทางด้านขวามือของรหัสข้อผิดพลาดกระพริบ

(6) กดปุ่มตั้งเวลาเพื่อเปลี่ยนรหัสข้อผิดพลาด

กดจนกว่าส่วนในอาคารจะส่งเสียงปี๊ปยาว ซึ่งแสดงว่าได้แก้ไขข้อผิดพลาดนั้นแล้ว

(7) ลบสัญลักษณ์ผิดพลาด

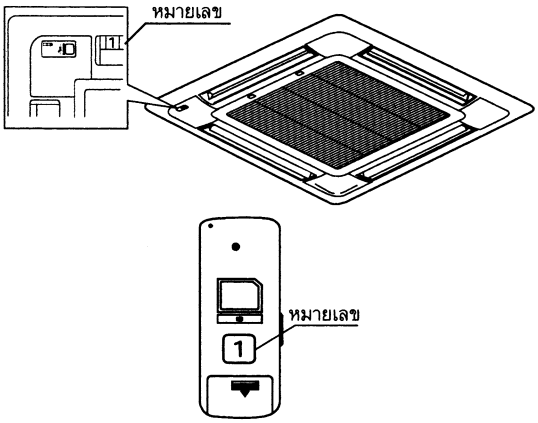
กดปุ่มเลือกสถานะการทำงานเพื่อให้หน้าจอเปลี่ยนเข้าสู่สภาพปกติ

II ในกรณีอื่นนอกเหนือจากการหยุดฉุกเฉิน

1. เครื่องไม่ทำงานเลย

- ตรวจดูว่าตัวรับสัญญาณโดนแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้าหรือไม่ ตัวรับสัญญาณไม่ควรอยู่ในที่มีแสงแดดหรือแสงจ้า
- ตรวจดูว่ารีโมทคอนโทรลมีถ่านหรือไม่ ใส่ถ่านรีโมทคอนโทรล
- ตรวจดูว่าตัวเลขที่ส่วนในอาคารตรงกับรีโมทคอนโทรลหรือไม่

3P107422-25M



ใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลควบคุมเครื่องปรับอากาศส่วนในอาคารที่มีหมายเลขตรงกัน สัญญาณที่ถูกส่งจากรีโมทคอนโทรลที่มีหมายเลขต่างกับส่วนในอาคารจะไม่มีผล (ถ้าไม่มีหมายเลขแสดงไมเว็นวรรภแสดงว่าเป็นหมายเลข "1")

2. เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงานแต่ทำความเย็นไม่เพียงพอ

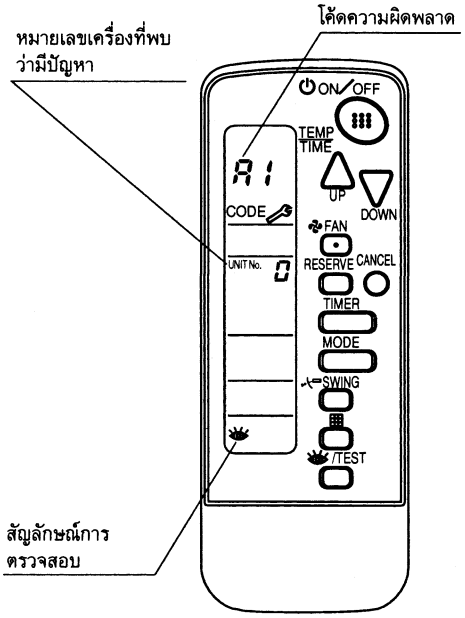
- อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้ไม่เหมาะสม
- ความเร็วพัดลมตั้งไว้ต่ำ
- มุมของทิศทางลมไม่เหมาะสม

ติดต่อที่ที่ท่านซื้อในกรณีดังต่อไปนี้

⚠ คำเตือน

- เมื่อท่านพบว่ามีกลิ่นไหม้ โปรดปิดสวิทช์แหล่งจ่ายไฟทันทีแล้วติดต่อที่ที่ท่านซื้อ การใช้อุปกรณ์ผิดวิธีอาจจะทำให้ตัวเครื่องเสียหาย ไฟฟ้าช้อตและ/หรือไฟไหม้ได้

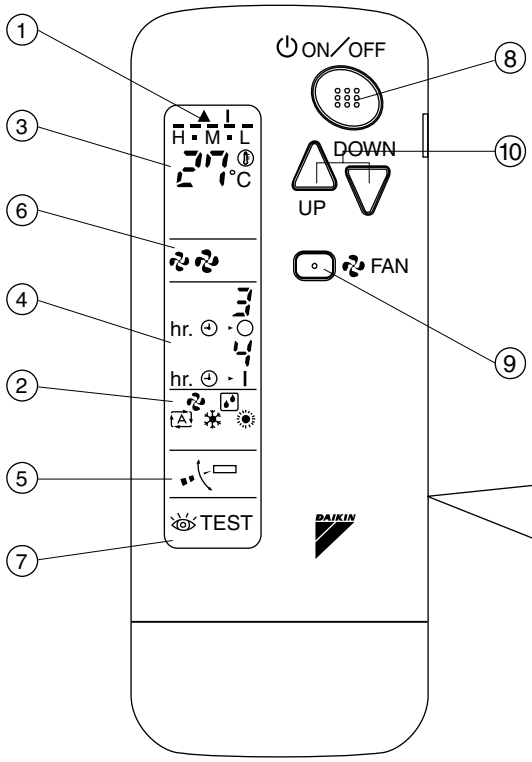


ปัญหา	การแก้ไข
ไฟแสดงการทำงานของเครื่องภายในอาคารกะพริบและเครื่องไม่ทำงาน  	ตรวจโค้ดความผิดพลาด (A1-UF) บนรีโมทคอนโทรลแล้วติดต่อที่ที่ท่านซื้อ (ดู หน้า 28)

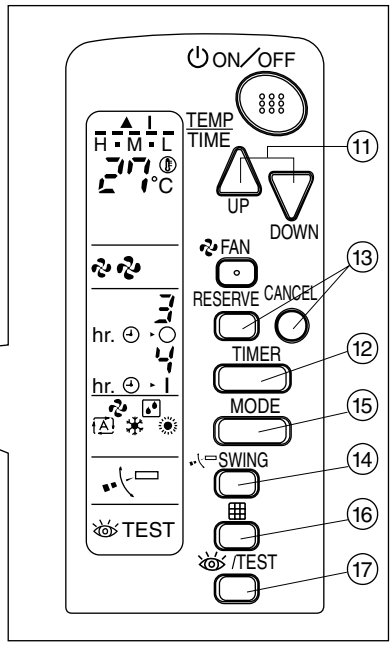
3P107422-25M

1

1-1

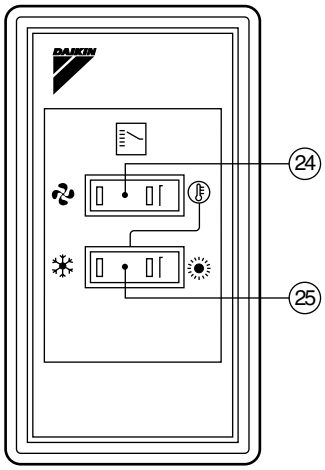


1-2

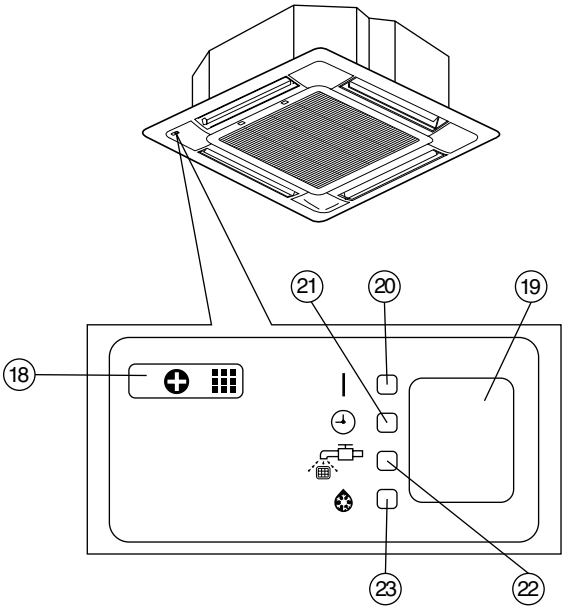


1-3

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH

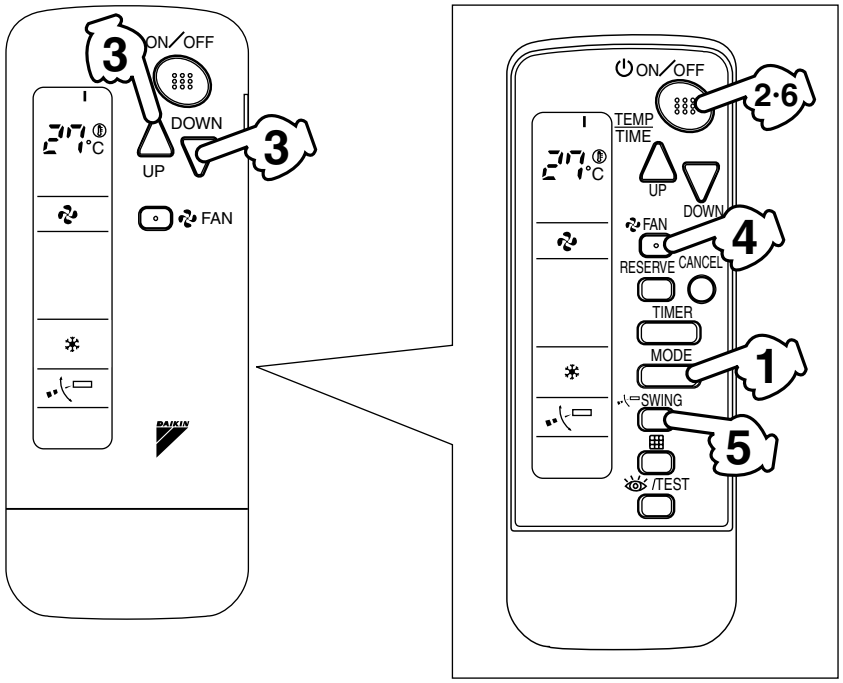


2

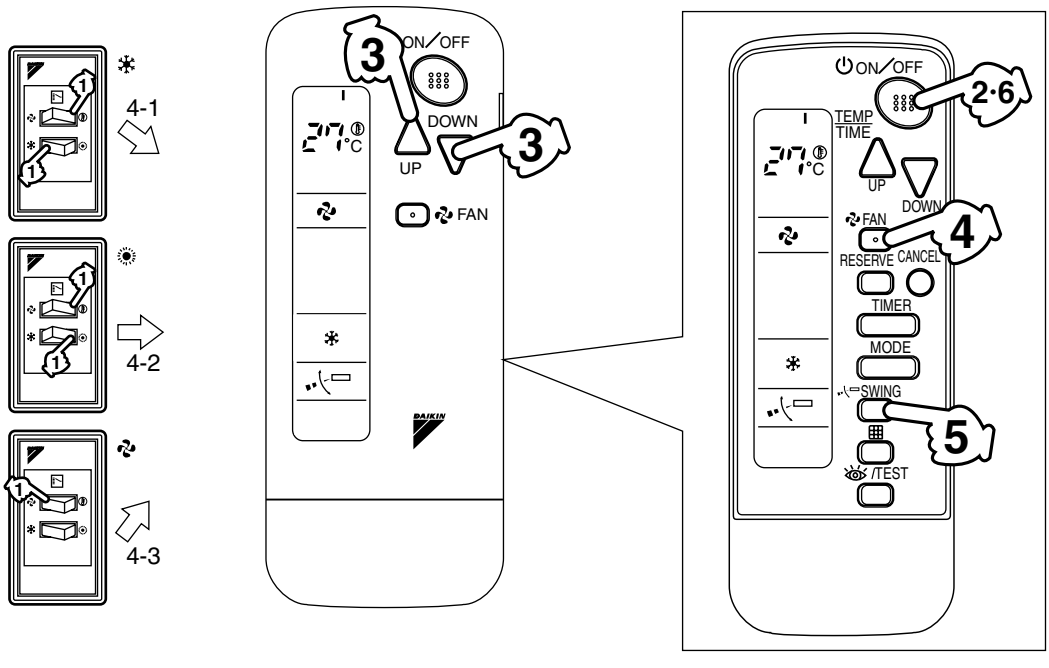


3P107422-25M

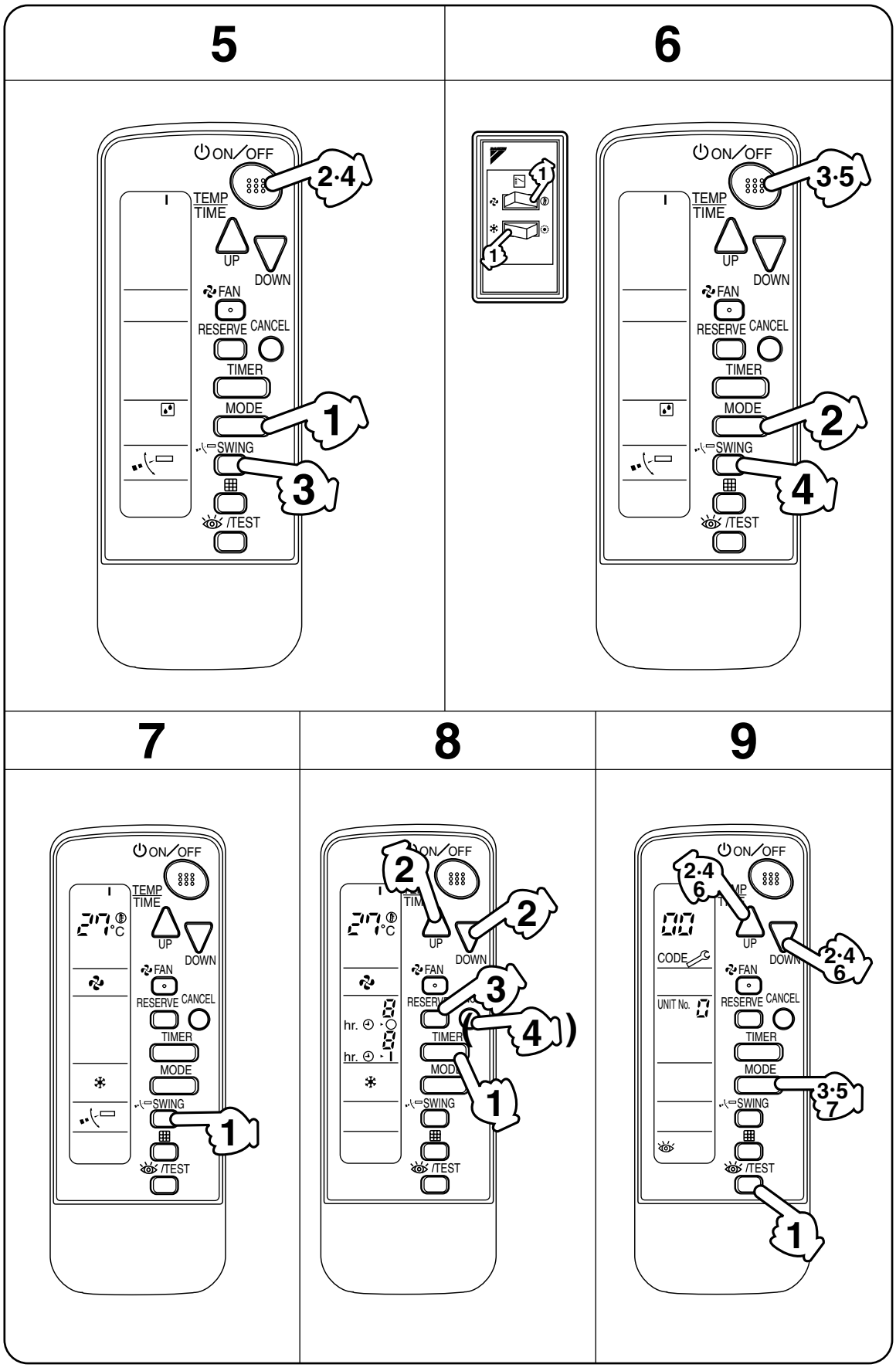
3



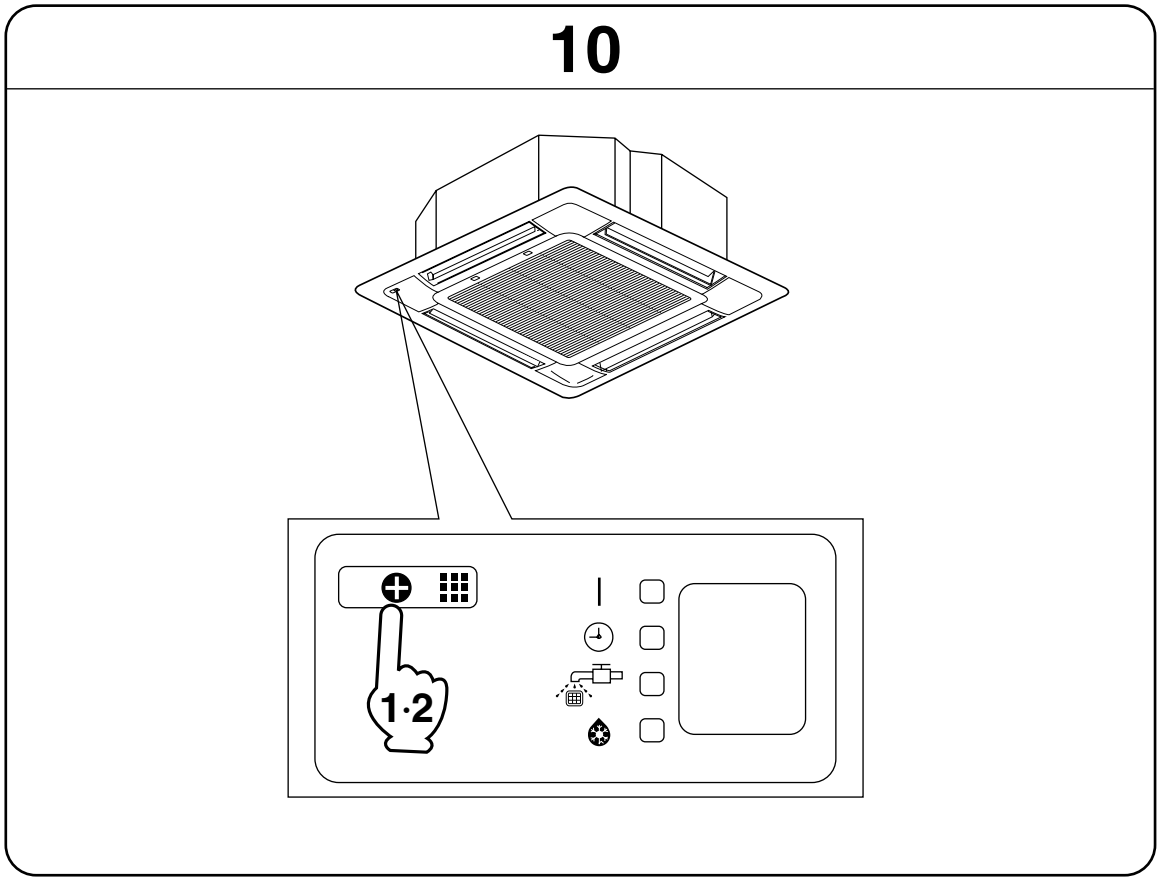
4



3P107422-25M



3P107422-25M



3P107422-25M

1.7.4 Installation Manual (Thai)

ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย

โปรดอ่าน "ข้อควรคำนึงเพื่อความปลอดภัย" นี้อย่างละเอียดก่อนทำการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์ต่างๆ และตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าท่านได้ติดตั้งอย่างถูกต้อง หลังจากที่ท่านทำการติดตั้งเสร็จเรียบร้อย ตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าเครื่องทำงานอย่างถูกต้องเหมาะสม และโปรดสอนวิธีการใช้งานและการดูแลรักษาให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

ความหมายของสัญลักษณ์ข้อควรระวัง

⚠ **ข้อควรระวัง .....** ถ้าไม่ปฏิบัติตาม อาจทำให้บาดเจ็บ หรือทำให้อุปกรณ์ของเครื่องปรับอากาศเสียหายได้

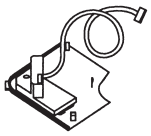
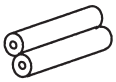
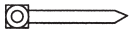
หมายเหตุ ..... ข้อแนะนำนี้ทำให้แน่ใจถึงการใช้งานอุปกรณ์ของเครื่องปรับอากาศที่เหมาะสมถูกต้อง

⚠ ข้อควรระวัง

- กรุณาศึกษาอ้างอิงกับคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับส่วนในตัวอาคารและคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับแผงตกแต่ง (Decoration Panel)
- ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง โปรดตรวจสอบเงื่อนไขต่างๆ ต่อไปนี้
  - * โปรดตรวจสอบว่าไม่มีสิ่งต่างๆ ที่รบกวนการทำงานของรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย (โปรดตรวจสอบว่าไม่มีแหล่งกำเนิดแสงใดๆ หรือหลอดไฟฟลูออเรสเซนท์ใกล้ตัวรับคลื่น และตรวจสอบด้วยว่าตัวรับคลื่นไม่ถูกส่องโดยตรงจากแสงแดด)
  - * โปรดตรวจสอบให้มั่นใจว่าไฟแสดงการทำงาน และเครื่องหมายสัญญาณต่างๆ ง่ายต่อการมองเห็น
- ตำแหน่งการติดตั้งของชุดอุปกรณ์นี้อยู่ที่ตำแหน่งที่ 1 ของแผงตกแต่ง ดังนั้นกรุณาตรวจดูให้มั่นใจว่าตำแหน่งของมันถูกตั้งโดยที่คลื่นจากรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายสามารถถูกส่งได้อย่างง่ายดาย และจอแสดงผลการทำงานสามารถเห็นได้โดยง่าย
- ในกรณีนี้ทั้งชุดอุปกรณ์นี้ และชุดอุปกรณ์สำหรับอากาศดีเข้าถูกติดตั้ง จะใช้ที่เก็บฝุ่นเพียงที่เดียว กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งชุดอุปกรณ์สำหรับอากาศดีเข้า (หนังสือคู่มือเพิ่มเติม)

ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง

อุปกรณ์ต่างๆ ตรวจดูว่าอุปกรณ์ต่างๆ ดังต่อไปนี้ มีครบถ้วนหรือไม่

ชื่ออุปกรณ์	รูปร่าง	จำนวน	ชื่ออุปกรณ์	รูปร่าง	จำนวน	ชื่ออุปกรณ์	รูปร่าง	จำนวน
ตัวรับคลื่น		1 ชุด	ที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย		1 ชิ้น	สกรูสำหรับติดตั้งที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรล		2 ชิ้น
			ถ่านไฟฉาย ชนิด dry cell LR03 (AM4)		2 ชิ้น	คู่มือการใช้งาน		1 ชิ้น
รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย		1 ชิ้น				แผ่นปิด	 20 X 35	1 ชิ้น
			แผ่นป้ายแสดงหมายเลขเครื่อง		1 ชิ้น	แถบยึด		1 ชิ้น

หมายเหตุสำหรับผู้ติดตั้ง

โปรดมั่นใจว่าท่านได้สอนวิธีการใช้งานที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสม และแสดงคู่มือการใช้งานที่ติดมากับเครื่องให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

2

การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรล

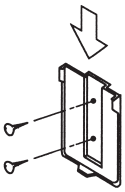
(การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย)

- ห้ามขว้างหรือทำการกระทบกระแทกต่อรีโมทคอนโทรล ห้ามเก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลในสถานที่ซึ่งชื้นหรือได้รับแสงแดดที่ส่องถึงโดยตรง
- เมื่อใช้งาน เล็งส่องส่วนส่งคลื่นของรีโมทคอนโทรลไปที่ตัวรับคลื่นโดยตรง
- ระยะทางตรงที่สามารถส่งคลื่นของรีโมทคอนโทรลคือ 7 เมตร
- ในกรณีที่มีสิ่งของบางอย่าง ตัวอย่างเช่น ผ้าม่าน มาขวางการส่งคลื่นสัญญาณระหว่างรีโมทคอนโทรลและตัวรับคลื่น อาจทำให้ไม่สามารถส่งคลื่นสัญญาณได้

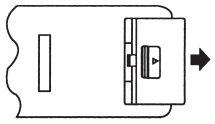
- **การติดตั้งที่ฝาผนังหรือที่เสา**
  ใส่รีโมทคอนโทรลลงในที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลจากทางด้านบน



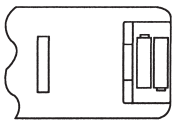
ติดที่เก็บรีโมทคอนโทรลด้วยสกรู



- วิธีการใส่ถ่านไฟฉาย
  ① เปิดฝาครอบที่ใส่ถ่านไฟฉายของรีโมทคอนโทรล โดยการเลื่อนไปในทิศทางที่แสดงตามลูกศร



② ใส่ถ่านไฟฉายชนิด dry cell โดยการใส่ให้ถูกต้องตามขั้ว (+) และขั้ว (-) ที่แสดงไว้ หลังจากนั้นให้ท่านเปิดฝาครอบที่ใส่ถ่านไฟฉาย



การติดตั้งตัวรับคลื่น

(1) การเตรียมตัวก่อนการติดตั้ง

โปรดติดตั้งชุดอุปกรณ์นี้ ภายหลังจากที่ติดตั้งแผงตกแต่ง

① ทำการถอดตะแกรงดูดอากาศและแผ่นกรองอากาศ ตามคำแนะนำที่เขียนไว้ในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับแผงตกแต่ง

② ทำการถอดฝากล่องควบคุม (Control Box Lid) ตามคำแนะนำที่เขียนไว้ในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร

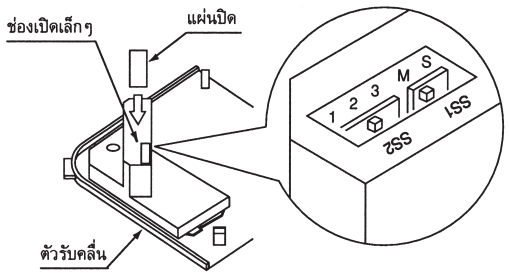
(2) กำหนดแอดเดรส และ กำหนด MAIN/SUB ของรีโมทคอนโทรล

ในกรณีที่ท่านติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายหลายตัวเพื่อใช้งานในห้องเดียวกัน โปรดทำการปรับตั้งตัวแอดเดรสให้กับตัวรับคลื่นและรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย ในกรณีที่ทำการติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบโยงสายหลายตัวในห้องเดียวกัน กรุณาปรับที่สวิทช์ MAIN/SUB ของตัวรับคลื่น

ขั้นตอนการปรับตั้ง

① **การปรับตั้งตัวรับคลื่น**
โปรดปรับแอดเดรสสวิทช์ไร้สาย (SS2) บนแผ่นพิมพ์ลายวงจรทางช่องเปิดเล็กๆ ด้านหลังตัวรับคลื่นตามตารางข้างล่างนี้

หมายเลขเครื่อง	หมายเลข 1	หมายเลข 2	หมายเลข 3
แอดเดรสสวิทช์ไร้สาย (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3



ในกรณีที่ใช้ทั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายและไร้สายสำหรับเครื่องภายในอาคารหนึ่งเครื่อง รีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายควรจะถูกปรับให้เป็น MAIN ดังนั้นกรุณาปรับสวิทช์ MAIN/SUB (SS1) ของตัวรับคลื่นให้เป็น SUB

	MAIN	SUB
สวิทช์ MAIN/SUB (SS1)	S M	S M

หลังจากที่ปรับตั้งเสร็จเรียบร้อยแล้ว กรุณาปิดช่องเปิดของแอดเดรสสวิทช์และสวิทช์ MAIN/SUB ด้วยแผ่นปิดที่ให้มา

② **การปรับตั้งแอดเดรสให้กับรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย (ซึ่งถูกปรับเป็น “1” จากโรงงาน)**
(ปรับจากรีโมทคอนโทรล)

① กดปุ่ม [▦] และปุ่ม [/TEST] ค้างไว้อย่างน้อย 4 วินาทีเพื่อเข้าสู่โหมดปรับตั้งสนาม (แสดงอยู่ในส่วนแสดงผลด้านขวาดังรูป)

② กดปุ่ม [FAN] เพื่อเลือกการปรับตั้งมัลติ (A/b) การกดปุ่มแต่ละครั้งจะเปลี่ยนการแสดงผลระหว่าง “A” กับ “b”

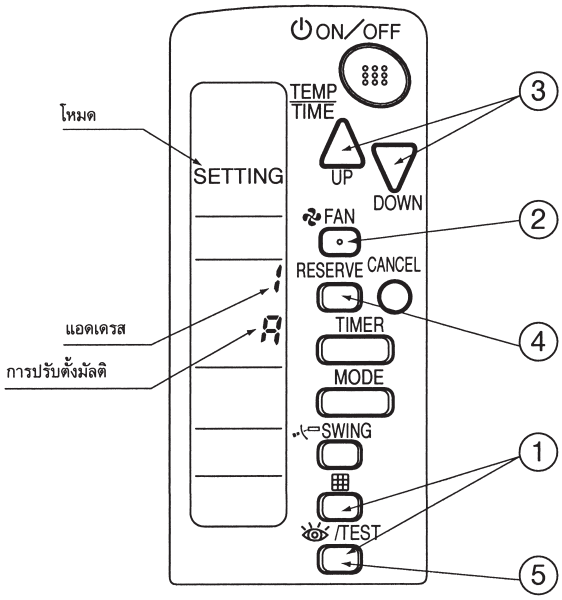
③ กดปุ่ม ▲UP และปุ่ม ▽DOWN เพื่อปรับแอดเดรส

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 →

แอดเดรสสามารถถูกปรับเป็น 1 ถึง 6 แต่ต้องปรับให้อยู่ในช่วง 1 ถึง 3 และให้ตรงกับแอดเดรสของตัวรับคลื่น (ตัวรับคลื่นไม่ทำงานที่แอดเดรส 4 ถึง 6)

④ กดปุ่ม [RESERVE] เพื่อป้อนการปรับตั้ง

⑤ กดปุ่ม [/TEST] ค้างไว้อย่างน้อย 1 วินาทีเพื่อออกจากโหมดปรับตั้งสนามแล้วกลับไปยังการแสดงผลตามปรกติ

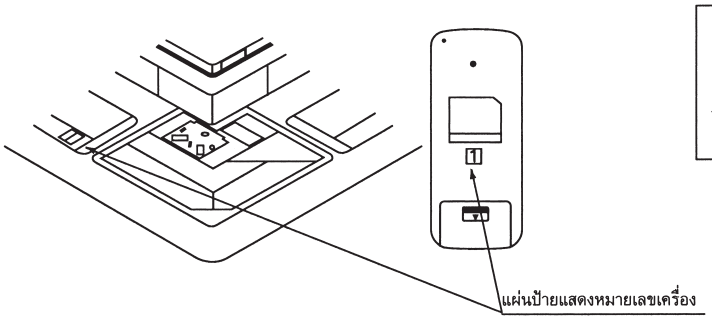


< การปรับตั้งมัลติ A/b >

ในขณะที่เครื่องภายในอาคารถูกสั่งงานจากการควบคุมภายนอก (รีโมทคอนโทรลส่วนกลางเป็นต้น) เครื่องจะไม่ตอบสนองต่อคำสั่งการควบคุมอุณหภูมิหรือคำสั่ง ON/OFF จากรีโมทคอนโทรลนี้ กรุณาตรวจสอบว่าลูกค้าต้องการการปรับตั้งแบบใดแล้วปรับการปรับตั้งมัลติดังแสดงไว้ข้างล่างนี้

รีโมทคอนโทรล		เครื่องภายในอาคาร	
การปรับตั้งมัลติ	จอแสดงผลของรีโมทคอนโทรล	ใช้เพื่อควบคุมตัวเครื่องและเครื่องปรับอากาศอื่นๆ	นอกเหนือจากทางซ้ายมือ
A: มาตรฐาน	แสดงผลทุกรายการ	คำสั่งอื่นๆนอกเหนือจากคำสั่ง ON/OFF และคำสั่งควบคุมอุณหภูมิใช้งานได้ (ส่งเสียงบี๊บยาว 1 ครั้งหรือบี๊บสั้น 3 ครั้ง)	
b: ระบบมัลติ	การทำงานจะยังคงถูกแสดงสักครู่หลังจากเริ่มทำงาน	คำสั่งทั้งหมดใช้งานได้ (บี๊บสั้น 2 ครั้ง)	

③ **ติดแผ่นป้ายแสดงหมายเลขเครื่องที่ช่องลมออกของแผงตกแต่งและด้านหลังของรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย**



ข้อควรระวัง

กรุณาปรับหมายเลขเครื่องของตัวรับคลื่นและรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายให้ตรงกัน หากปรับไม่ตรงกันจะทำให้สัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ถูกส่งไป

8

3PA59585-20S

2

(3) การติดตั้งตัวรับคลื่น

① ปลดมอเตอร์เหวี่ยงและแผงตกแต่งมุมด้านตรงข้าม แผงกันมุมนี้ไม่จำเป็นอีกต่อไป
(กรุณาดูรายละเอียดวิธีการใส่/ปลดแผงตกแต่งนี้ในวิธีการติดตั้งซึ่งให้มาพร้อมกับแผงเดิม)

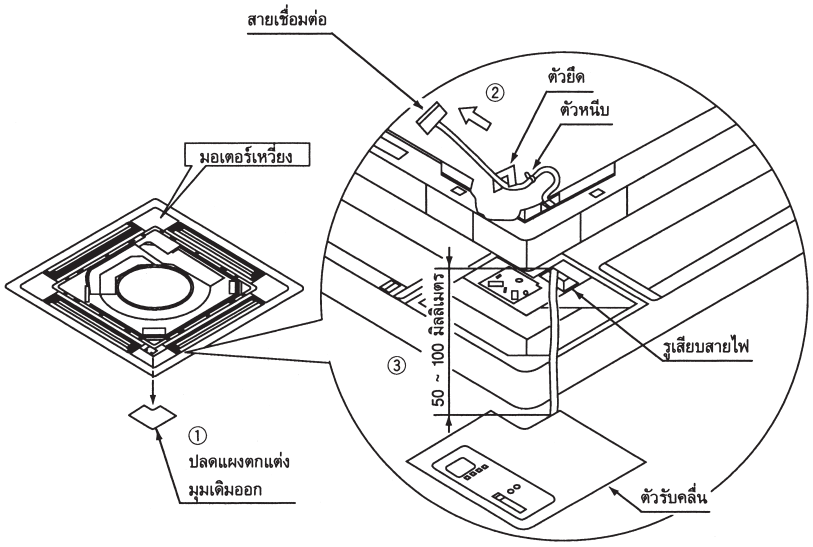
ตัวรับคลื่นไม่สามารถนำไปติดตั้งที่อื่นได้นอกเหนือจากมุมนี้

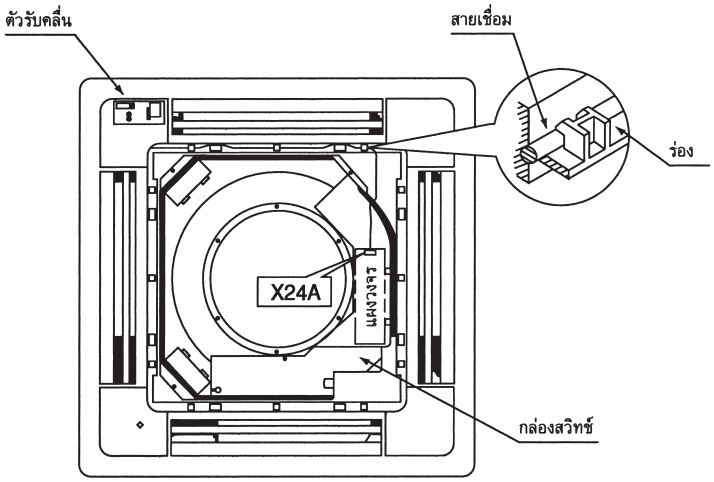
② ดึงสายเชื่อมต่อจากตัวรับคลื่นขึ้นไปถึงที่ที่ตัวหนีบชนกับตัวยึดดังแสดงในภาพทางขวา

③ ติดตั้งตัวรับคลื่นแทนส่วนที่เป็นแผงตกแต่งมุม ให้ทำตามขั้นตอนจากหลังมาหน้าของตอนที่ถอดแผงกันมุม

④ ยึดสายเชื่อมต่อไว้ใต้ร่องบนแผงตกแต่งแล้วเชื่อมต่อเข้ากับตัวเชื่อมต่อ X24A บนแผงวงจรของเครื่องภายในอาคาร รวบส่วนที่เหลือของสายเชื่อมต่อด้วยแถบรัดสายเพื่อให้ไม่สายเชื่อมต่อห้อยหรือโดนหนีบเข้าไปในตะแกรงดูดอากาศ

⑤ ติดไฟเข้ากับกล่องสวิทช์ของเครื่องภายในอาคาร แล้วติดตะแกรงดูดอากาศเข้ากับแผงตกแต่ง





การปรับตั้งสนาม

ในกรณีที่อุปกรณ์เพิ่มเติมถูกติดตั้งเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร การปรับตั้งเครื่องภายในอาคารอาจจะมีการเปลี่ยนแปลง กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้ง (ตัวเลือกเพิ่มเติม)

ขั้นตอนวิธีทำ

① ในขณะที่อยู่โหมดปรกติ กดปุ่ม /TEST ค้างไว้อย่างน้อยสี่วินาที จะเป็นการเข้าสู่โหมดปรับตั้งสนาม

② เลือกหมายเลขโหมดที่ต้องการด้วยปุ่ม MODE

③ กดปุ่ม UP แล้วเลือก หมายเลขแรก

④ กดปุ่ม DOWN แล้วเลือก หมายเลขที่สอง

⑤ กดปุ่ม RESERVE แล้วค่าปรับตั้งในขณะนั้นจะถูกปรับตั้ง

⑥ กดปุ่ม /TEST เพื่อกลับไปยังโหมดปรกติ

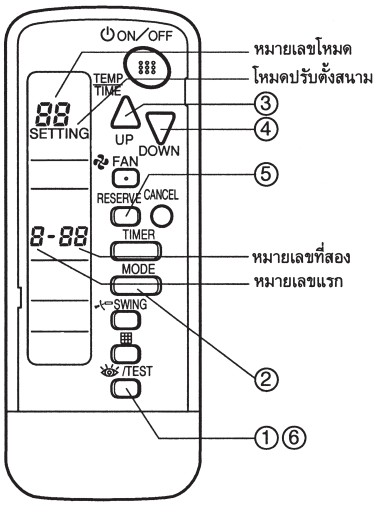
(ยกตัวอย่างเช่น) หากเวลาล้างตัวกรองอากาศถูกปรับเป็น "Filter Contamination-Heavy" ให้ปรับโหมดเป็น "10" หมายเลขแรกเป็น "0" และหมายเลขที่สองเป็น "02"

หมายเลขโหมด	หมายเลขแรก	คำอธิบายการปรับตั้ง		หมายเลขที่สอง หมายเหตุ)				
				01		02		03
10	0	ความสกปรกตัวกรอง-มาก/น้อย (การปรับตั้งสำหรับการเว้นช่วงเวลาในการแสดงให้ทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศ) (การปรับให้เป็นแบบตัวกรองสกปรกมากจะทำให้การเว้นช่วงเวลาในการแสดงให้ทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศเหลือเพียงครึ่งหนึ่ง)	ประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก	น้อย ประมาณ 10,000 ชั่วโมง	มาก	ประมาณ 5,000 ชั่วโมง	—
			ประเภทใช้งานได้นาน	น้อย ประมาณ 2,500 ชั่วโมง	มาก	ประมาณ 1,250 ชั่วโมง	
			ประเภทใช้งานธรรมดา	น้อย ประมาณ 200 ชั่วโมง	มาก	ประมาณ 100 ชั่วโมง	
	1	แผ่นกรองประเภทใช้งานได้นาน (ตั้งเวลาแสดงสัญลักษณ์เตือนตัวกรองอากาศ) (เปลี่ยนการตั้งเมื่อติดตั้งตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก)		ตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นาน		ตัวกรองอากาศประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก		—
	3	การเว้นช่วงเวลาในการแสดงให้ทำความสะอาดตัวกรองอากาศเริ่มนับ (เป็นการปรับตั้งสำหรับกรณีที่เครื่องหมายตัวกรองไม่ถูกแสดง)		แสดง		ไม่แสดง		—
11 (ระบบพ่วง)	0	ปรับตั้งจำนวนเครื่องภายในอาคารที่เชื่อมต่อกันอยู่และทำงานพร้อมกัน		คู่		แฝด		สาม
12 (ระบบ VRV)	1	คำสั่ง ON/OFF จากภายนอก (ตั้งเพื่อยอมให้รับคำสั่งเปิด/ปิดจากระยะไกล)		บังคับคำสั่ง OFF		ON/OFF		—
	2	การเปลี่ยนความต่างของเทอร์โมสตัท (ตั้งในกรณีที่ใช้เทอร์โมสตัทเซ็นเซอร์ของรีโมทคอนโทรล)		1°C		0.5°C		—
13	0	การปรับเพดานสูง (ปรับตั้งเมื่อทำการติดตั้งบนเพดานที่สูงกว่า 2.7 ม.)		ปกติ		เพดานสูง 1		เพดานสูง 2
	1	เลือกทิศทางการไหลของอากาศ (ปรับตั้งเมื่อชุดแผ่นบังคับทิศทางได้รับการติดตั้งแล้ว)		F		T		W
	4	การปรับตั้งพิสัยทิศทางการไหลของอากาศ		บน		ปกติ		ล่าง

หมายเหตุ) หมายเลขโค้ดตัวที่สองจะถูกตั้งเป็น “01” มาจากโรงงาน อย่างไรก็ตามในกรณีต่อไปนี้มันจะถูกตั้งให้เป็น “02”

- การปรับตั้งพิสัยทิศทางการไหลของอากาศ

กรุณาอย่าใช้การปรับตั้งซึ่งไม่ได้ระบุไว้ในตาราง
สำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่มด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย การตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นของเครื่องภายในอาคารในกลุ่มจะต้องเหมือนกัน (สำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม กรุณาดูในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคารสำหรับการควบคุมเป็นกลุ่ม)



การทดสอบการทำงาน

- ทำการทดสอบการทำงานตามวิธีทำในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร
- หลังจากที่เดินท่อน้ำยาแอร์ เดินท่อน้ำทิ้งและเดินสายไฟแล้วจึงทำตามในตารางเพื่อเป็นการปกป้องเครื่อง

(ข้อพึงระวัง)

1. หากเครื่องไม่ทำงาน กรุณาอ้างอิงแผ่นป้ายช่วยวิเคราะห์การทำงานที่ผิดพลาดซึ่งติดมากับเครื่อง
2. กรุณาอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ให้มากับเครื่องภายนอกอาคารสำหรับระบบการทำงานแต่ละชนิด

ลำดับ	การทำงาน
(1)	เปิดวาล์วปิดทางเดินแก๊ส
(2)	เปิดวาล์วปิดทางเดินของเหลว
(3)	ให้กระแสไฟฟ้าแก่ตัวทำความร้อนของอ่างข้อเหวี่ยงเป็นเวลา 6 ชั่วโมง (ไม่จำเป็นสำหรับเครื่องชนิดทำความเย็น)
(4)	ปรับการทำความเย็นด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรลแล้วกดปุ่ม ON/OFF เพื่อเริ่มการทำงาน
(5)	กดปุ่ม /TEST สองครั้งแล้วใช้งานในโหมดทดสอบการทำงานเป็นเวลา 3 นาที
(6)	กดปุ่ม SWING แล้วตรวจสอบการทำงาน
(7)	กดปุ่ม /TEST แล้วใช้งานตามปรกติ
(8)	ตรวจสอบการทำงานตามคู่มือการใช้งาน

3PA59585-20S

1.8 BRC7NU66 (for FH-NUV1)

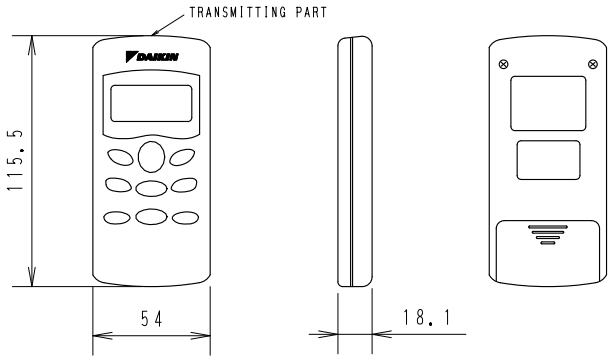
1.8.1 Features



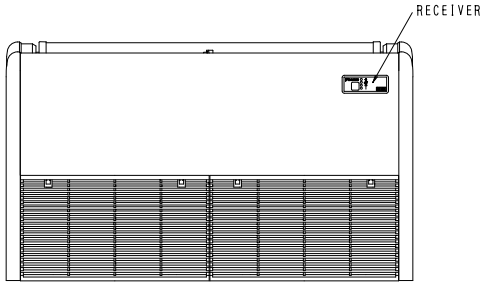
1.8.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

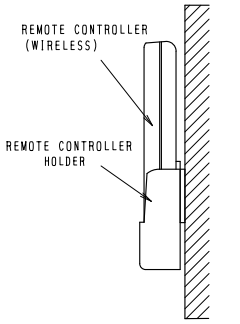
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



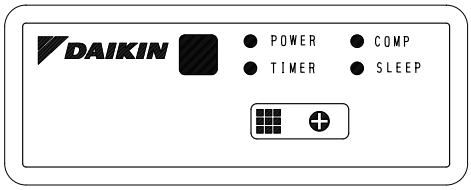
• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER DETAIL



3D052347

1.8.3 Operation Manual

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.

There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠**WARNING..** Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠**CAUTION…** Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.
Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.
Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.

If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.
If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.

Ask your dealer to install your equipment.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.
Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.
The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.

Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.
Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.

When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.
Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.

Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.
They may be adversely affected.

Do not operate the air conditioner with a wet hand.
Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.

Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.

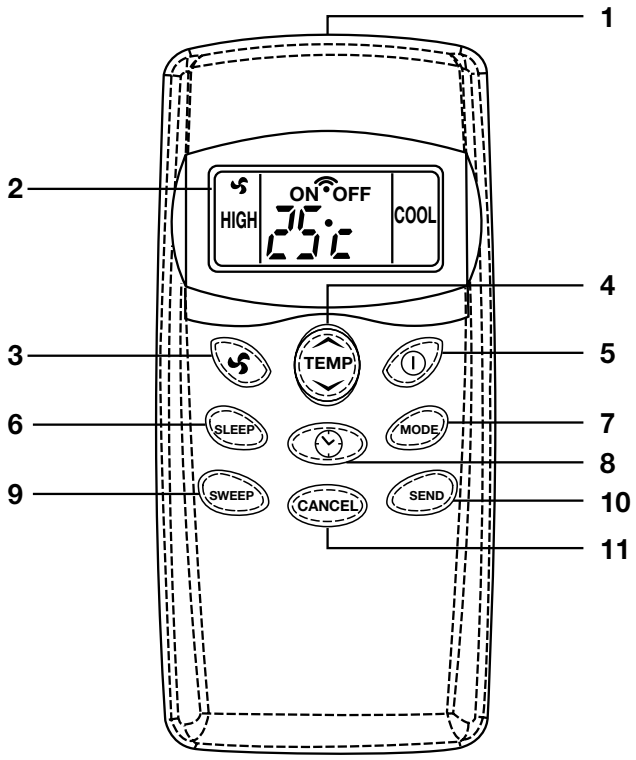
Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.

The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.

Young children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

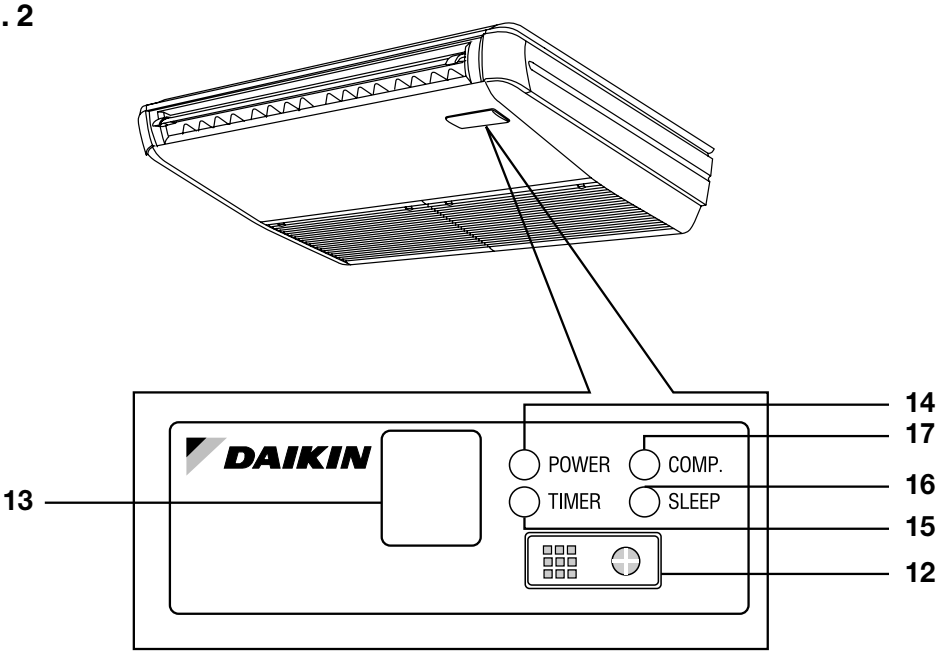
Fig. 1



1. **Signal transmitter :**
   - It sends signals to the indoor unit.
2. **Display :**
   - It displays the current settings.
3. **FAN speed button :**
   - It selects the air flow rate setting.
4. **TEMPERATURE setting buttons :**
   - It changes the temperature setting.
5. **ON/OFF button :**
   - Press this button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
6. **SLEEP button :**
   - Press this button once to start sleep function.
7. **MODE selector button :**
   - It selects the operation mode (FAN/COOL/DRY).
8. **TIMER button :**
9. **SWEEP button :**
   - Press this button to turn on/off sweep motor.
10. **SEND button :**
    - Press this button to confirm timer setting.
11. **CANCEL button :**
    - Press this button to cancel timer setting.

3PN07204-1A

Fig. 2



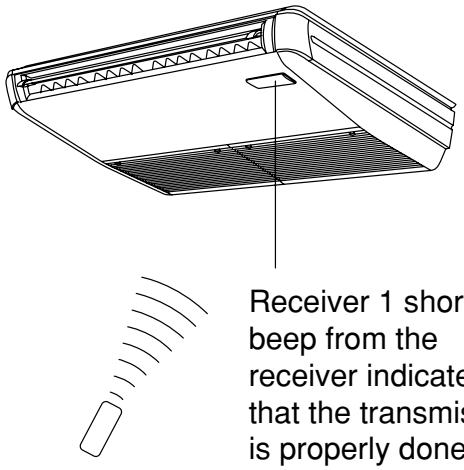
12. **Emergency operation switch :** This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
13. **Receiver :** This receives the signals from the remote controller.
14. **Operating indicator lamp (green) :** This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs.
15. **TIMER indicator lamp (green) :** This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
16. **SLEEP indicator lamp (green) :** This lamp stays lit while the sleep function is set.
17. **COMP. (green) :** This lamp shows the ON/OFF status of the compressor.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 6 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

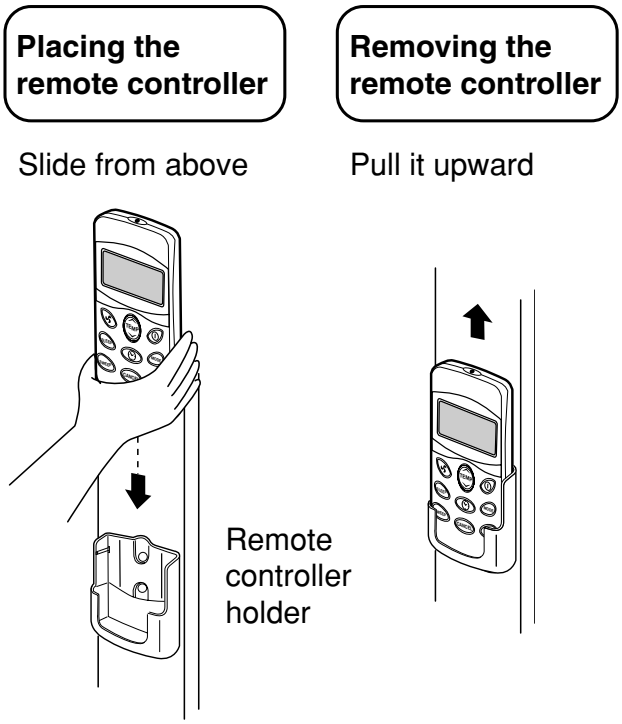
Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

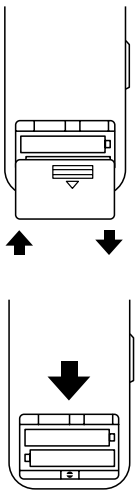
Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar.



7

3PN07204-1A

How to put the dry batteries



(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03 dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (−).

(3) Close the cover

— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time, take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

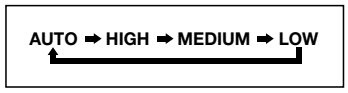
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

■ **ON/OFF button**
Press ⏻ to turn on/off air conditioner.

■ **MODE button**
Press MODE to change mode of operation from FAN, COOL, DRY. Operating mode will be displayed on the remote.

■ **TEMPERATURE setting button**
Press TEMP to change setting temperature.

■ **FAN speed button**
Press to change fan speed.



■ **SLEEP button**
Press SLEEP and the setting temperature will be automatically raised up 1ºC after one hour in COOL MODE for comfort and to save energy.

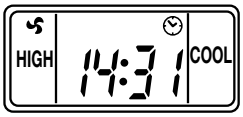
3PN07204-1A

2

■ Clock Setting

To set clock on the remote unit

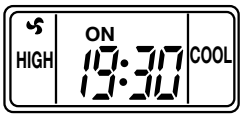
- ❑ Press ⏲ and ⏲ at LCD will blink.
- ❑ Press TEMP to set time.
- ❑ Press SEND to confirm setting.



■ Timer Setting

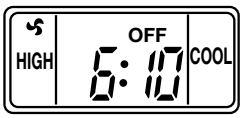
The air conditioner can be programmed to turn on/off in advance.

- ❑ Press ⏲ until the symbol ON or OFF blinks and the LCD displays last timer setting.
- ❑ Press TEMP to set timer.
- ❑ Press SEND to confirm the setting and the symbol ON or OFF will be shown.



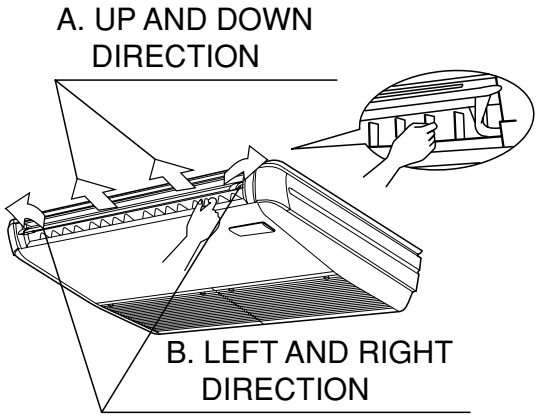
■ Cancel Timer

- ❑ Press ⏲ until symbol ON or OFF is blinking.
- ❑ Press CANCEL and the symbol ON or OFF or both will disappear.



■ AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

- There are 2 ways of adjusting the air discharge angle.
  A. Up and down adjustment
  B. Left and right direction



A. UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- Press SWEEP to turn on sweep motor
- Press again to turn off and stop horizontal blade at the required position.

B. LEFT AND RIGHT DIRECTION

- Adjusting air flow direction in the left and right direction.

NOTE

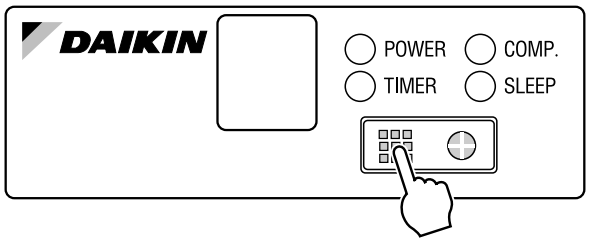
- Only make adjustments after you have stopped the air flow direction sweep in a position.
- Stop flaps from sweeping before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps moving may get your fingers pinched.

■ EMERGENCY OPERATION

[START]

To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

3PN07204-1A

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.

- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.

3PN07204-1A

1.8.4 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

AIR CONDITIONER Wireless Remote Controller Kit Installation manual

BRC7NU66

READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.
KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

2PN07169-1A

To the installer of the unit:

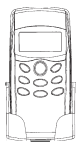
Instruct the user how to operate the unit following the operation manual.

Caution

- Carefully read the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that the place where the unit will be installed satisfies the following conditions:
  - Where the wireless remote controller is operable.
    (No strong light source or inverter fluorescent lamp must be near the signal receiver.
    The signal receiver must not be directly exposed to the sun light.)
  - Where the operation display lamp is easily visible.

ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver assembly		1 set	Wireless Remote controller & holder		1 set	Dry cell battery LR 03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Wire harness		1 pc.
						Wire clip		1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.

1 INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

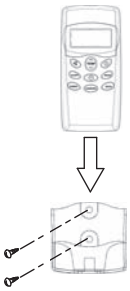
<Installation of wireless remote controller>

- Do not throw the wireless remote controller or give strong shock.
  Do not store it where it may get wet or directly exposed to the sun light.
- Direct the wireless remote controller transmitting part toward the receiving part of the unit.
- The distance operable by the wireless remote controller from the unit is approximately 6 metres.
- If an obstacle such as curtains blocks the signal between the receiver and the wireless remote controller, the system does not operate.

- Installing to a wall or a pillar

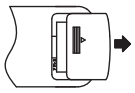
  Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

  Slide the wireless remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

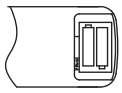


- How to set the batteries

  ① Slide and open the back cover in the direction shown by the arrow.



  ② Set the attached dry cell batteries to the place.
  Make sure to match the polarity (+) (-) of the batteries to the marks indicated where the batteries are to be placed when setting the batteries.



2 INSTALLATION OF RECEIVER ASSEMBLY

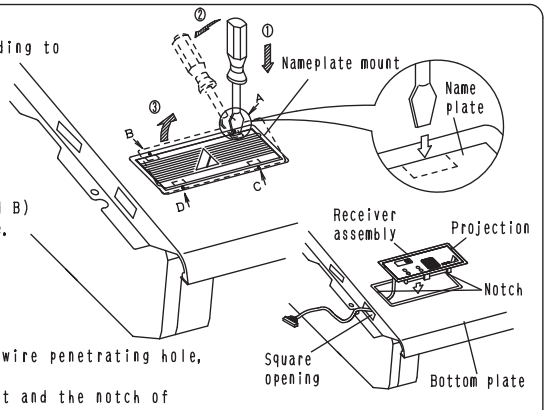
(1) Preparation before installation

Remove the suction grille and the piping side decorative panel according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Installation of receiver assembly

- Remove the decorative name plate mount of the indoor unit.

① Insert the tip of the flat blade (-) screwdriver into the place shown by black circle ● (both A and B) of the name plate.
② Tilt the screwdriver in the direction shown by the arrow. (both A and B)
③ Pull the entire name plate mount toward yourself and remove one side.
④ Do the same to the remaining two places. (C and D)
⑤ Remove the entire name plate.
(the name plate mount is no longer required.)

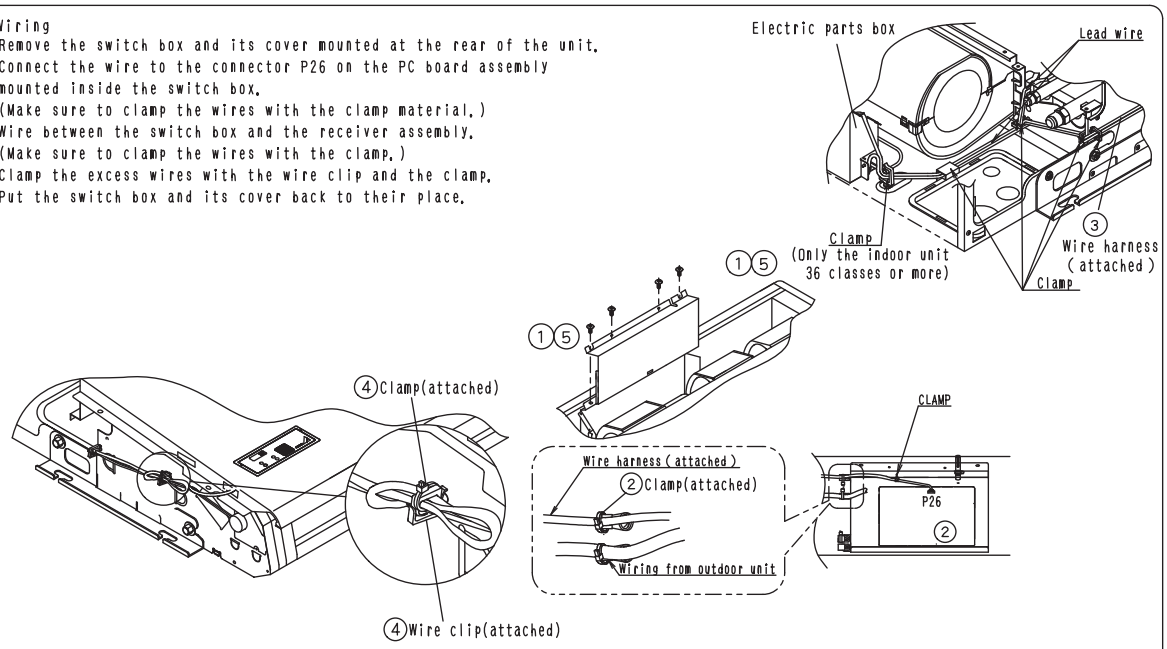


- Installation of receiver assembly

  After passing the wire harness of the receiver through the electric wire penetrating hole, set the receiving part in the direction shown by the arrow.
  (Fix the receiver after matching the projection of the receiving part and the notch of the bottom frame.)

2PN07169A

●Wiring
①Remove the switch box and its cover mounted at the rear of the unit.
②Connect the wire to the connector P26 on the PC board assembly mounted inside the switch box.
(Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp material.)
③Wire between the switch box and the receiver assembly.
(Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp.)
④Clamp the excess wires with the wire clip and the clamp.
⑤Put the switch box and its cover back to their place.



③MOUNTING SUCTION GRILLE AND DECORATIVE PANEL

●Put the piping side decorative panel and the suction grille back to the place in the reverse order according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

④TEST RUN

●Perform test run according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

2PN07219A

1.9 BRC7NU66S (for FH-PUV2S / NUV2S)

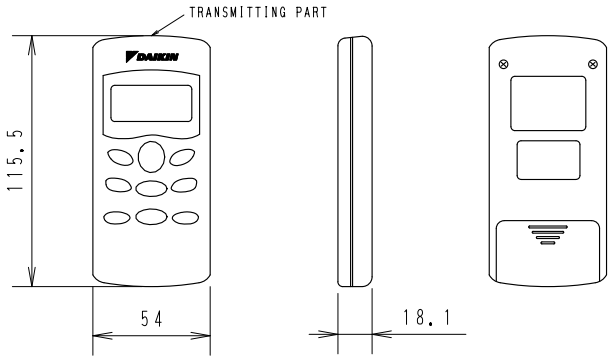
1.9.1 Features



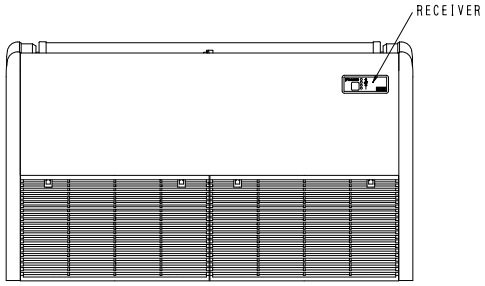
1.9.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

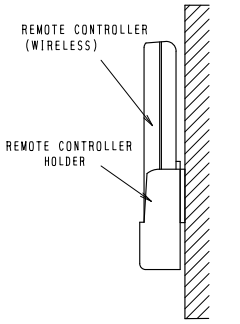
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



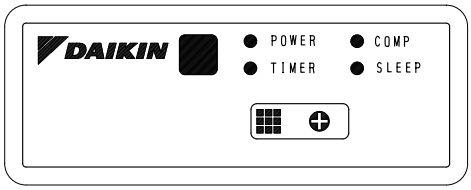
• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>

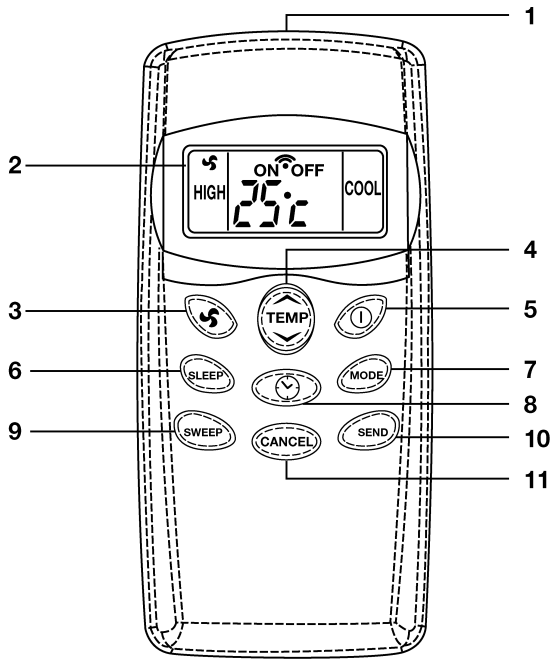


• RECEIVER DETAIL



3D052347

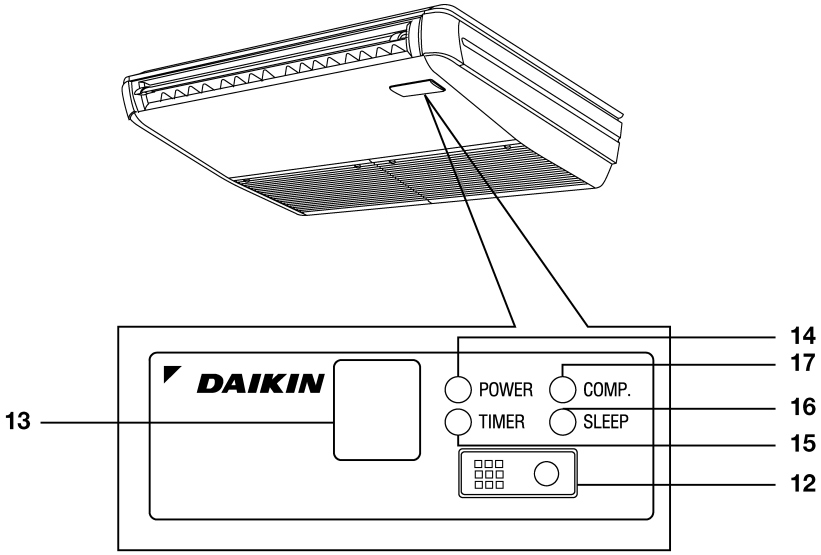
1.9.3 Names and Functions



1. **ตัวส่งสัญญาณ**
   - ส่งสัญญาณไปยังตัวเครื่องในอาคาร
2. **จอแสดงผล**
   - แสดงผลการตั้งค่าปัจจุบัน
3. **ปุ่มตั้งพัดลม (FAN)**
   - เลือกการตั้งค่าอัตราการไหลของอากาศ
4. **ปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิ (TEMPERATURE)**
   - เปลี่ยนการตั้งอุณหภูมิ
5. **ปุ่มเปิด/ปิด (ON/OFF)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้งเพื่อเริ่มการทำงานและกดอีกครั้งเพื่อหยุด
6. **ปุ่มหลับ (SLEEP)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้งเพื่อเปิดใช้ฟังก์ชัน SLEEP
7. **ปุ่มเลือกโหมด (MODE)**
   - เลือกโหมดการทำงาน (พัดลม/เย็น/แห้ง) (FAN/COOL/DRY)
8. **ปุ่มตั้งเวลา (TIMER)**
9. **ปุ่มส่าย (SWEEP)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อ เปิด/ปิด มอเตอร์ส่าย
10. **ปุ่มส่ง (SEND)**
    - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อยืนยันการตั้งเวลา
11. **ปุ่มยกเลิก (CANCEL)**
    - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อยกเลิกการตั้งเวลา

3PN07204-3A

Explanation of receiver



12. สวิตช์ทำงานฉุกเฉิน
- สวิตช์นี้พร้อมใช้งาน หากรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงาน

13. ตัวรับสัญญาณ
- รับสัญญาณจากรีโมทคอนโทรล

14. ไฟแสดงการทำงาน (เขียว)
- ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน

15. ไฟแสดงการตั้งเวลา (เขียว)
- ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่มีการตั้งเวลา

16. ไฟแสดงโหมด Sleep (เขียว)
- ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่มีการตั้งฟังก์ชัน Sleep

17. ไฟ Comp. (เขียว)
- ไฟนี้แสดงสถานะการ เปิด/ปิด ของคอมเพรสเซอร์

3PN07204-3A

1.9.4 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

เครื่องปรับอากาศ คู่มือติดตั้งชุดรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

BRC7NU66S

อ่านคำแนะนำเหล่านี้อย่างละเอียดก่อนการติดตั้ง
เก็บคู่มือนี้ไว้ในที่ที่หยิบใช้ได้สะดวก เพื่อใช้อ้างอิงในอนาคต

2PN07263-1A

สำหรับผู้ติดตั้งเครื่อง:

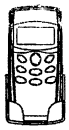
แนะนำผู้ใช้ให้ทราบถึงวิธีการใช้เครื่องตามคู่มือการใช้งาน

ข้อควรระวัง

- อ่านคู่มือการติดตั้งที่มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องในอาคารอย่างละเอียด
- ตรวจสอบว่าบริเวณที่จะทำการติดตั้งเครื่อง เป็นไปตามเงื่อนไขต่อไปนี้
  - อยู่ในที่ที่รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายสามารถทำงานได้
    (ไม่มีแหล่งกำเนิดแสง หรือหลอดฟลูออเรสเซนต์อินเวิร์ตเตอร์ อยู่ใกล้ตัวรับสัญญาณ
    ตัวรับสัญญาณจะต้องไม่ถูกแสงแดดโดยตรง)
  - อยู่ในที่ที่ไฟแสดงการทำงานสามารถมองเห็นได้โดยง่าย

อุปกรณ์เสริม

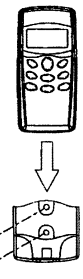
ตรวจดูว่าอุปกรณ์เสริมต่อไปนี้มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องหรือไม่

ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	ปริมาณ	ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	ปริมาณ	ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	ปริมาณ	ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	ปริมาณ
ชุดตัวรับสัญญาณ		1 ชุด	รีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายและที่ยึด		1 ชุด	แบตเตอรี่เซลล์แห้ง LR 03 (AM4)		2 ก้อน	ชุดสายไฟ		1 เส้น
						ตัวยึด		1 ชิ้น	คู่มือการใช้งาน		1 เล่ม

1 การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย

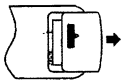
<การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย>

- อย่าโยนรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย หรือกระแทกอย่างแรง
  อย่าเก็บไว้ในที่ที่อาจทำให้เปียก หรือถูกแสงแดดโดยตรง
- จัดส่วนที่ใช้ส่งสัญญาณของรีโมทให้ตรงกับส่วนรับสัญญาณของตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศ
- ระยะห่างที่สามารถทำงานได้ระหว่างรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายกับตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศ ประมาณ 6 เมตร
- หากมีสิ่งกีดขวาง เช่น ผ้าม่านบดบังสัญญาณระหว่างตัวรับสัญญาณกับรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สาย ระบบจะไม่ทำงาน
- ติดตั้งบนกำแพง หรือเสา
  ตรึงที่ยึดรีโมทคอนโทรลด้วยสกรู

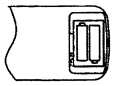


เลื่อนรีโมทคอนโทรลไร้สายลงในที่ยึดจากข้างบน

- วิธีใส่แบตเตอรี่
  ① เลื่อนและเปิดฝาหลังในทิศทางตามลูกศร



② ใส่แบตเตอรี่เซลล์แห้งที่ให้มาลงไป
ตรวจดูว่าขั้ว (+) (-) ของแบตเตอรี่ตรงกับสัญลักษณ์ที่ระบุไว้
ตรงบริเวณที่ใส่แบตเตอรี่

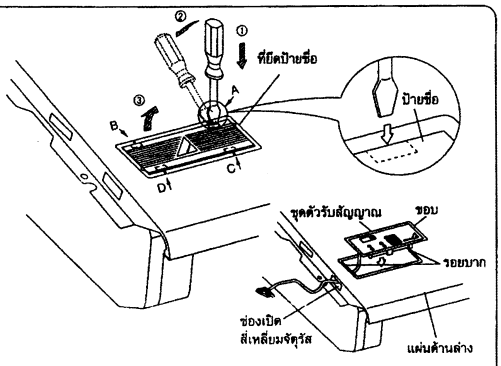


2 การติดตั้งชุดตัวรับสัญญาณ

(1) การเตรียมการก่อนการติดตั้ง
ถอดตะแกรงดูดอากาศ และแผงประดับด้านข้างท่อ โดยทำตามคู่มือการติดตั้งที่มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องในอาคาร

(2) การติดตั้งชุดตัวรับสัญญาณ

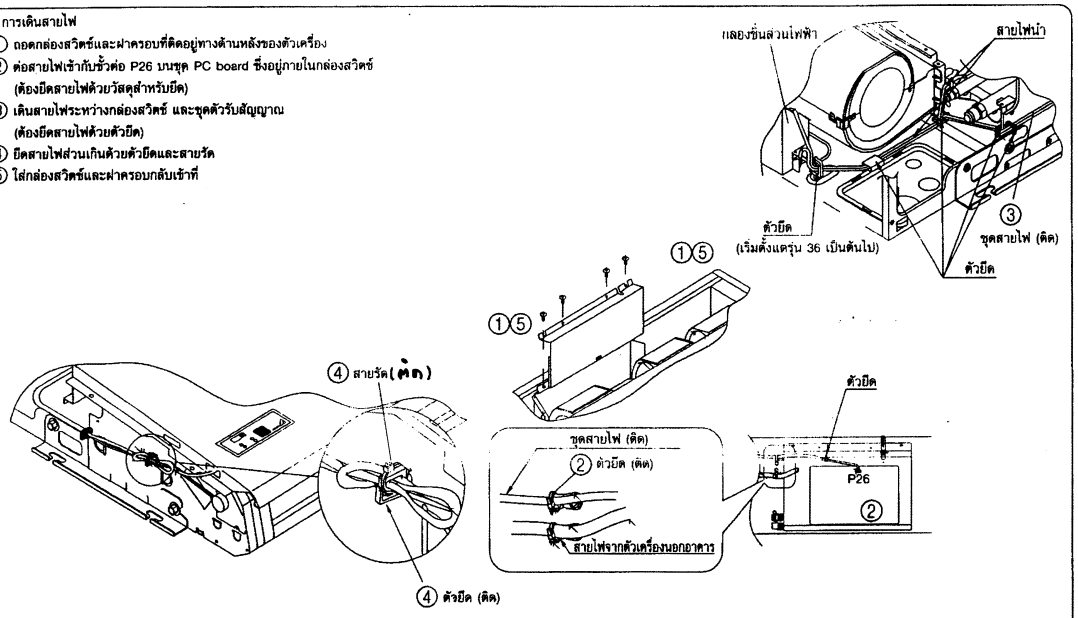
- ถอดที่ยึดป้ายชื่อของตัวเครื่องในอาคาร
  ① สอดไขควงปากแบน (-) ลงในตำแหน่งที่แสดงด้วยวงกลมสีดำ ● (ทั้ง A และ B) ของป้ายชื่อ
  ② เอียงไขควงในทิศทางตามลูกศร (ทั้ง A และ B)
  ③ ดึงที่ยึดป้ายชื่อเข้าหาตัว และถอดออกข้างหนึ่ง
  ④ ทำซ้ำกับอีกสองตำแหน่งที่เหลือ (C และ D)
  ⑤ ถอดป้ายชื่อทั้งอัน
  (ที่ยึดป้ายชื่อไม่จำเป็นอีกต่อไป)



- การติดตั้งชุดตัวรับสัญญาณ
  หลังจากสอดชุดสายไฟของตัวรับสัญญาณผ่านรูสอดสายไฟ จัดส่วนรับสัญญาณให้อยู่ในทิศทางตามลูกศร
  (ตรึงตัวรับสัญญาณให้อยู่กับที่ หลังจากวางขอบของส่วนรับสัญญาณ(ให้ห่างกับรอยบากของกรอบด้านล่าง)

2PN07263A

● การเดินสายไฟ
① ถอดกล่องสวิตช์และฝาครอบที่ติดอยู่ทางด้านหลังของตัวเครื่อง
② ต่อสายไฟเข้ากับขั้วต่อ P26 บนชุด PC board ซึ่งอยู่ภายในกล่องสวิตช์
(ต้องยึดสายไฟด้วยวัสดุสำหรับยึด)
③ เดินสายไฟระหว่างกล่องสวิตช์ และชุดตัวรับสัญญาณ
(ต้องยึดสายไฟด้วยตัวยึด)
④ ยึดสายไฟส่วนเกินด้วยตัวยึดและสายรัด
⑤ ใส่กล่องสวิตช์และฝาครอบกลับเข้าที่



❸ การใส่ตะแกรงดูดอากาศ และแผงประดับ

● ใส่แผงประดับด้านข้างท่อและตะแกรงดูดอากาศกลับเข้าที่ โดยเรียงลำดับย้อนกลับตามคู่มือการติดตั้งที่มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องในอาคาร

❹ ทดสอบการเดินเครื่อง

● ทำการทดสอบการเดินเครื่องตามคู่มือการติดตั้งที่มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องในอาคาร

2PN07264A

1.10 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FUY)

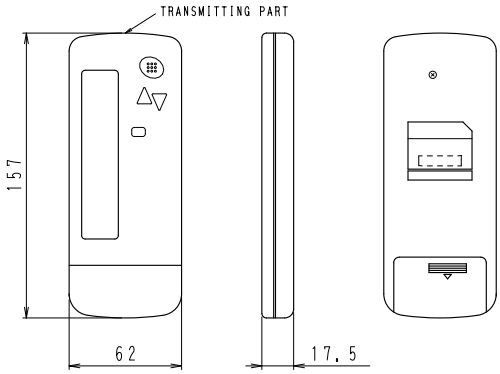
1.10.1 Features



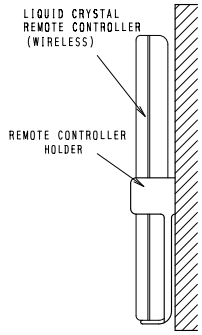
1.10.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

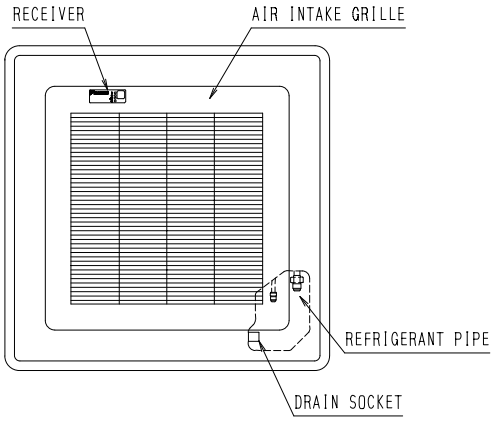
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



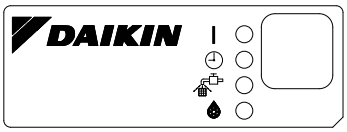
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL

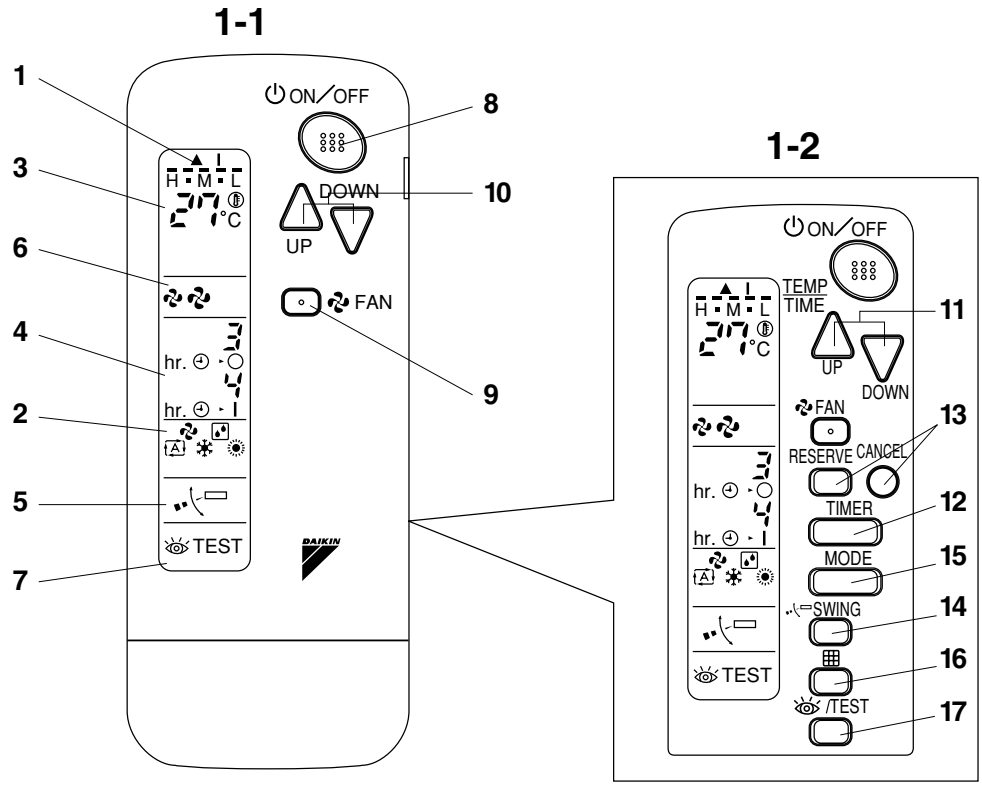


• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH INDOOR UNIT

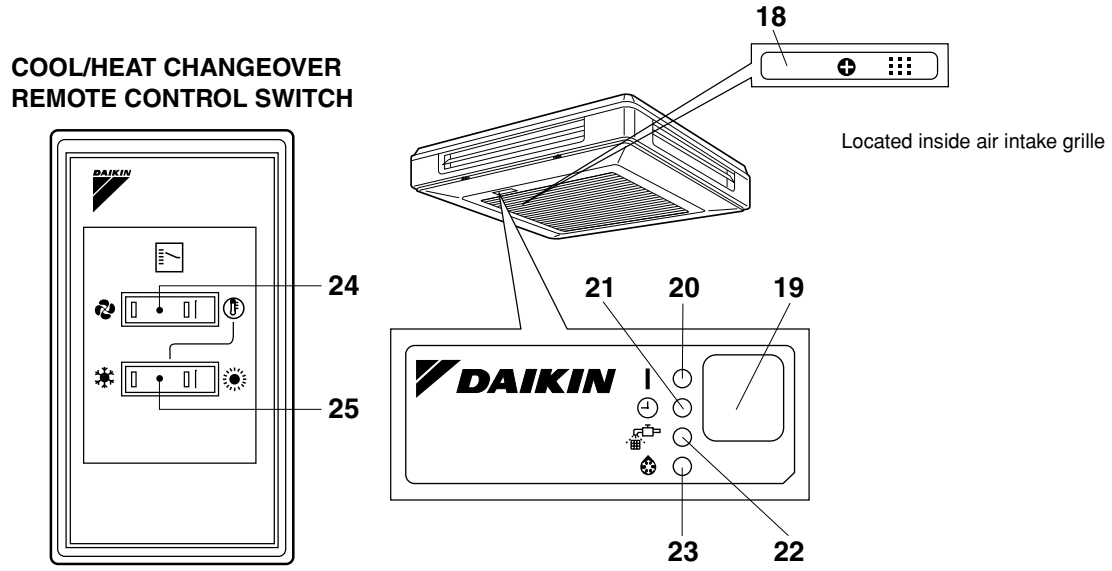
INDOOR UNIT	WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	
	HEAT PUMP SYSTEM	COOLING ONLY SYSTEM
FUY71 • 100 • 125FJV1	BRC7CA528W	BRC7CA529W

3D014035A

1.10.3 Operation Manual

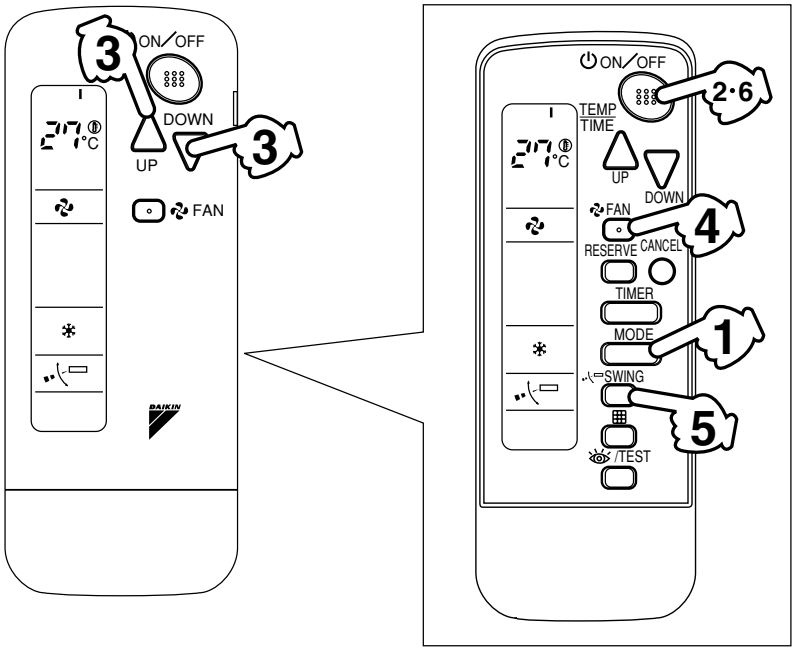


1

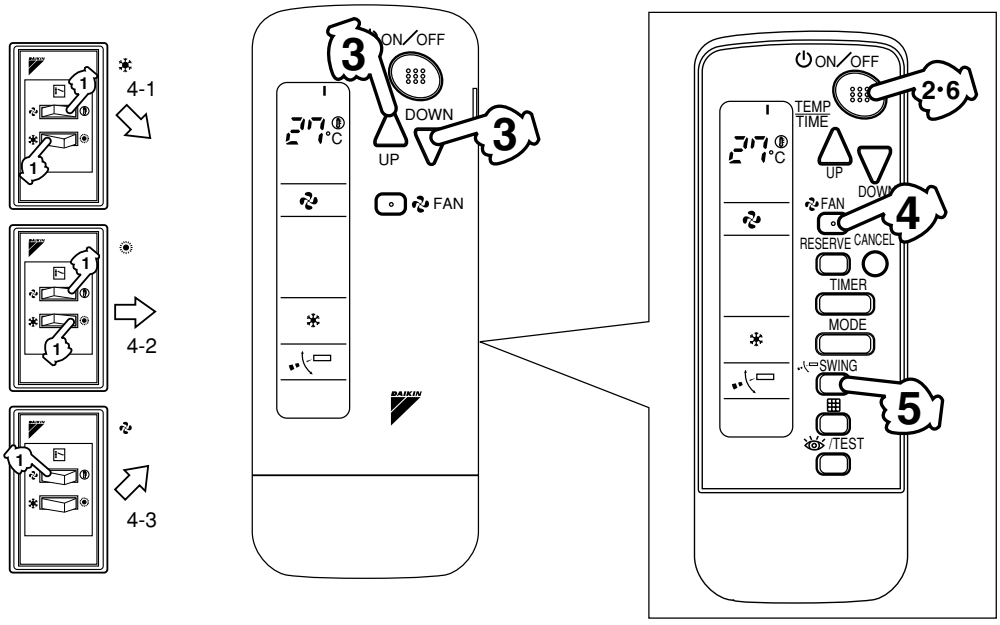


1-3 2

C: 3P107422-7S

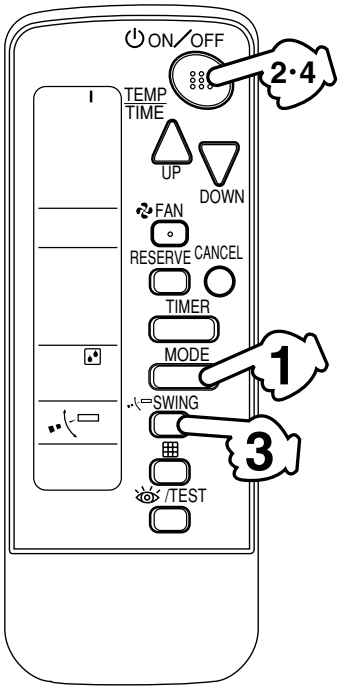


3

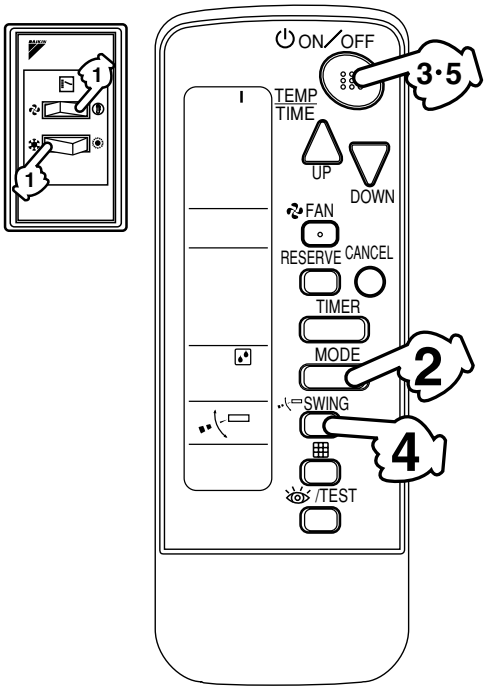


4

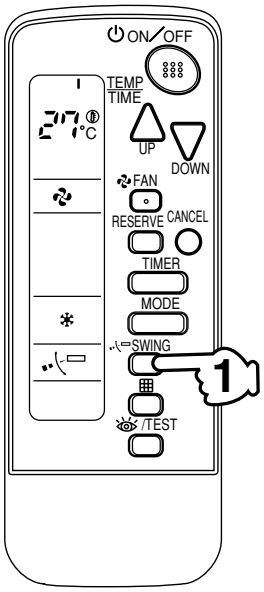
3P107422-7S



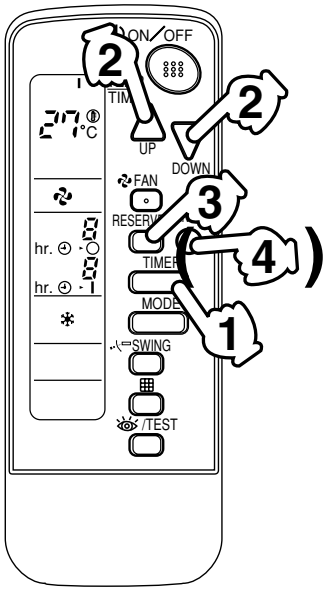
5



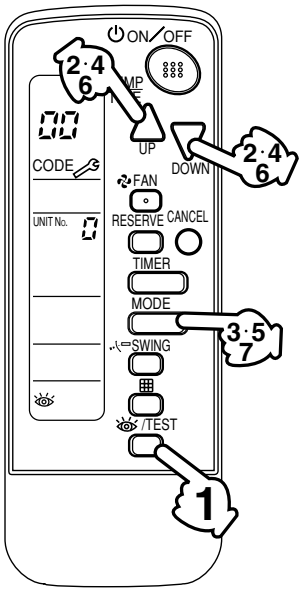
6



7

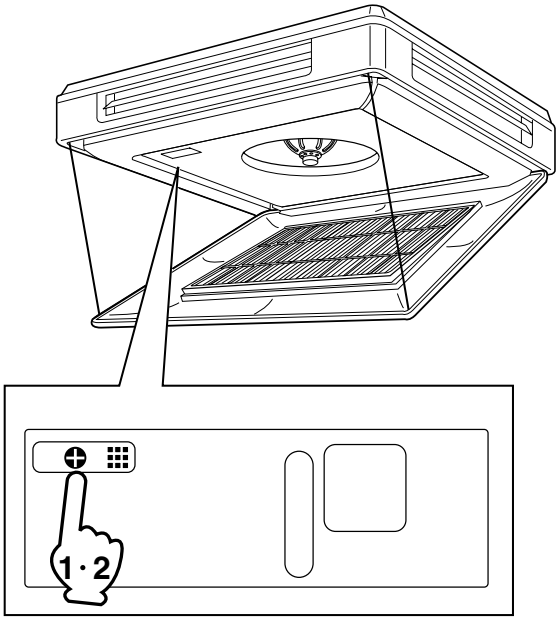


8



9

3P107422-7S



10

3P107422-7S

CONTENTS

PRIOR TO USE ..... [1]
ILLUSTRATION..... [2]

1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS..... 1
2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION..... 4
3 HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER..... 5
4 OPERATION RANGE..... 6
5 OPERATION PROCEDURE..... 7
6 NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER..... 12
7 HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS..... 13

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

3P107422-7S

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

3P107422-7S

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

3P107422-7S

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 9.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH (Located inside air intake grille)**
	This button can be used to start the unit when the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-7S

19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started.
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

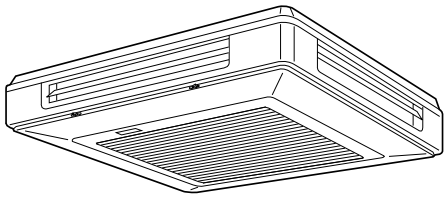
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

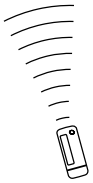
3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

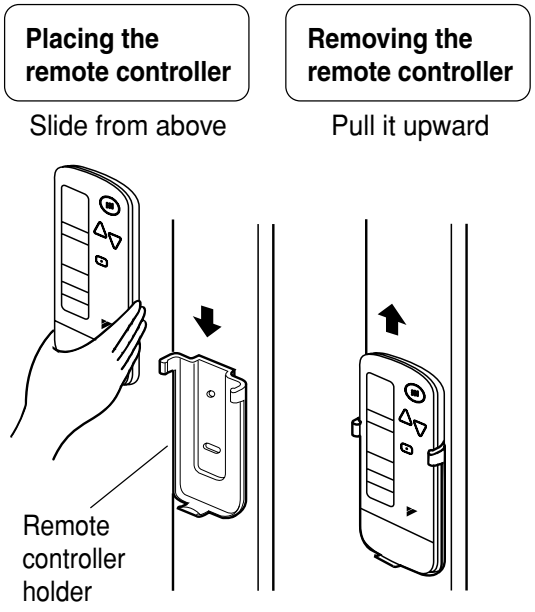
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-7S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

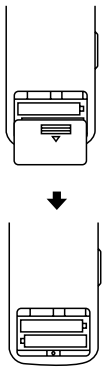


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]
- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–15 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 9 to 21
				WB	– 10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB:Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C ~ 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

3P107422-7S

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION
In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (⏻ , ☼)
- HEATING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (⏻ , ☼)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 (✣)

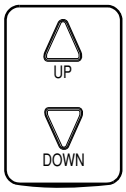
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

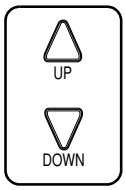
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

3P107422-7S

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button.

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ” (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

3P107422-7S

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "".

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

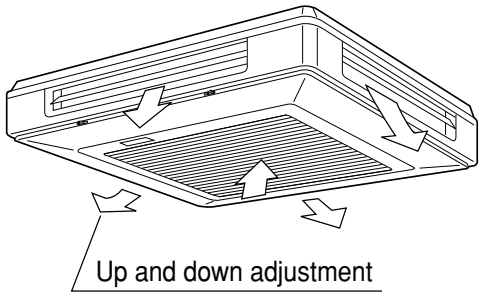
OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

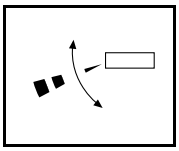
ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.



- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

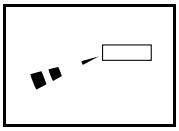
Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.

  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.

  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.

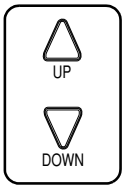
3P107422-7S

- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“◷ ▸◯”
For setting the timer start .....“◷ ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

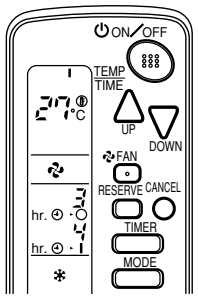
3 Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

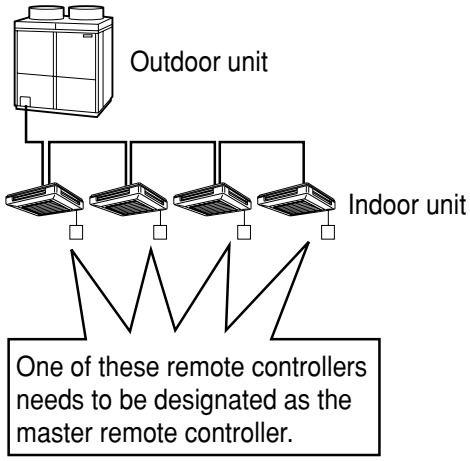
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (4)

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

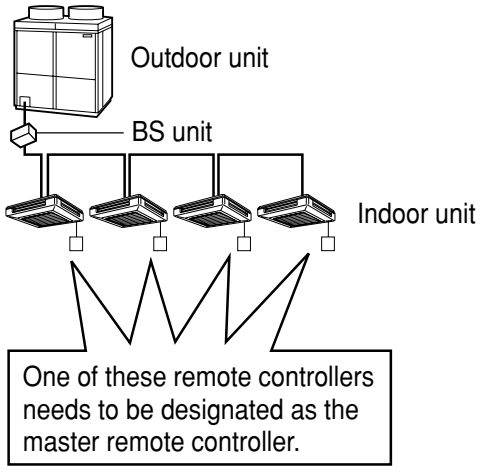
⟨⟨For RSXY series⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For RSEY series⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



3P107422-7S

- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “⏲” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

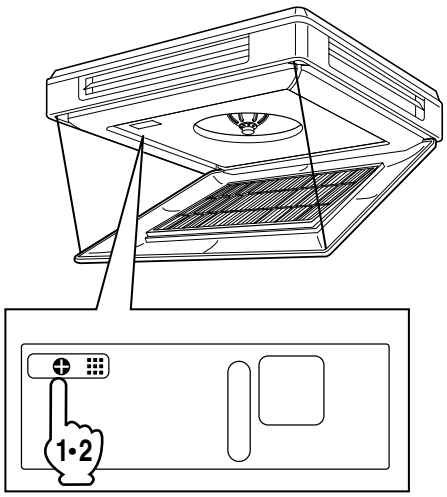
(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “⏲” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

EMERGENCY OPERATION (Fig. 10)

When the remote controller does not work due to dead batteries or it is missing, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

Local start button (Located inside air intake grille)



The local start button can be seen in the upper left-hand corner when the air intake grille is open.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.

[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

3P107422-7S

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

3P107422-7S

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from (3) to (6)
1 short beep ..... Perform (3) and (6) steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.

The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

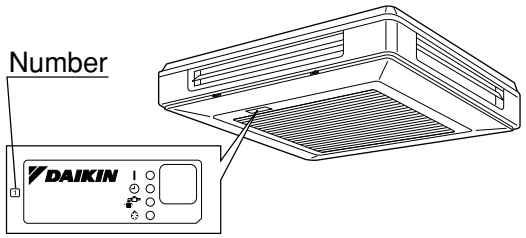
(7) Reset of the display.

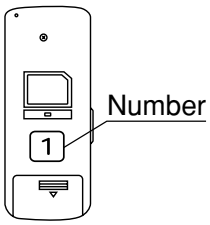
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

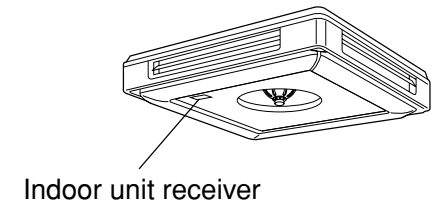


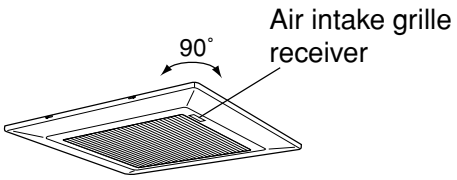


Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

3P107422-7S

The receiver on the air intake grille is not positioned under the receiver on the indoor unit itself.





Turn the air intake grille 90° and attach to the indoor unit.

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

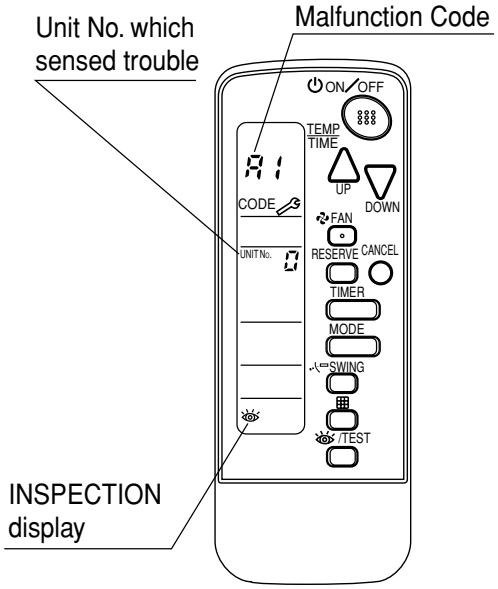
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 13.)

3P107422-7S

1.10.4 Installation Manual

BRC7C528W BRC7C529W BRC7CA528W BRC7CA529W	Wireless Remote Controller Kit	Installation manual

CONTENTS

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 1
2. BEFORE INSTALLATION 2
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION 2
4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION 3
5. FIELD SETTING 7
6. TEST OPERATION 8

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ CAUTION ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

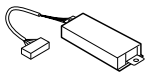
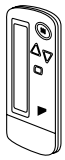
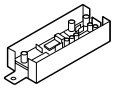
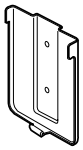
C: 3PA59585-21Z

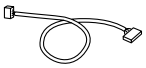
2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Install the wireless remote controller in the indoor unit before hanging the unit from the ceiling.
- When using the wireless remote controller, the air intake grille must be attached in a specific direction. Check which way the grille will open before selecting a location for the indoor unit.

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmitter board	Remote controller holder	Faceplate for receiver
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Relay harness	Unit No. label	Drycell battery LR03 (AM4)	Screw for installing remote control holder	Tapping screw	Cable clamp	Operation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	4 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape							

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

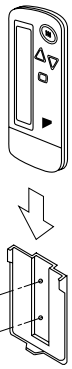
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

⟨Installing wireless remote controller⟩

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

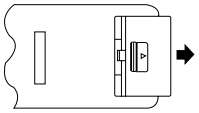
• Installing to a wall or a pillar
Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.



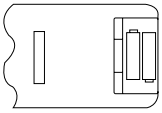
Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

• How to insert the batteries

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



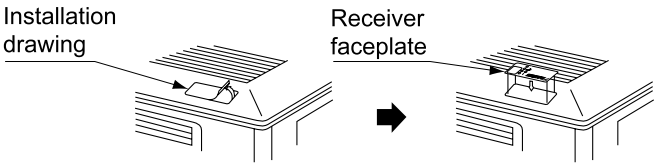
2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Attaching the receiver faceplate.

- Remove the installation drawing from the indoor unit. The drawing is glued down and can be peeled off.
- Attach the included receiver faceplate so that it fits the receiver frame.



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

3PA59585-21Z

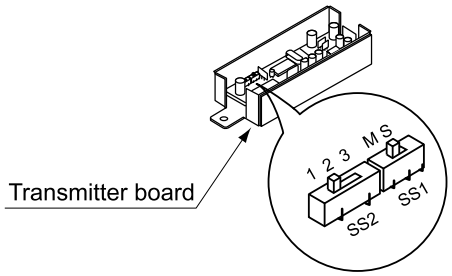
SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

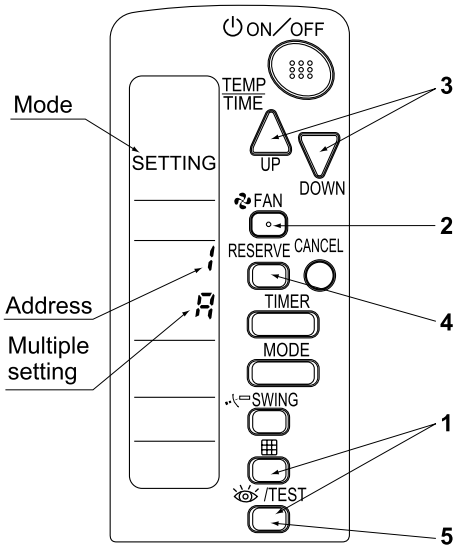
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



3PA59585-21Z

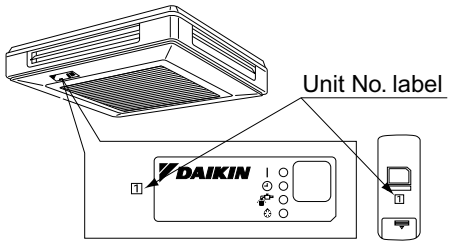
Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

3. Stick the Unit No. label to the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.

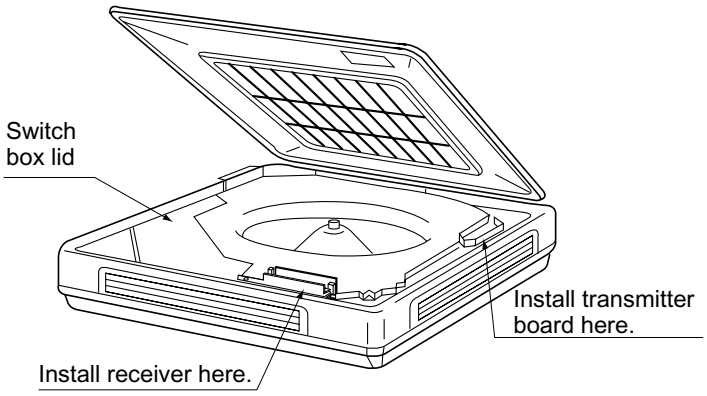
[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



(3) PC board installation.

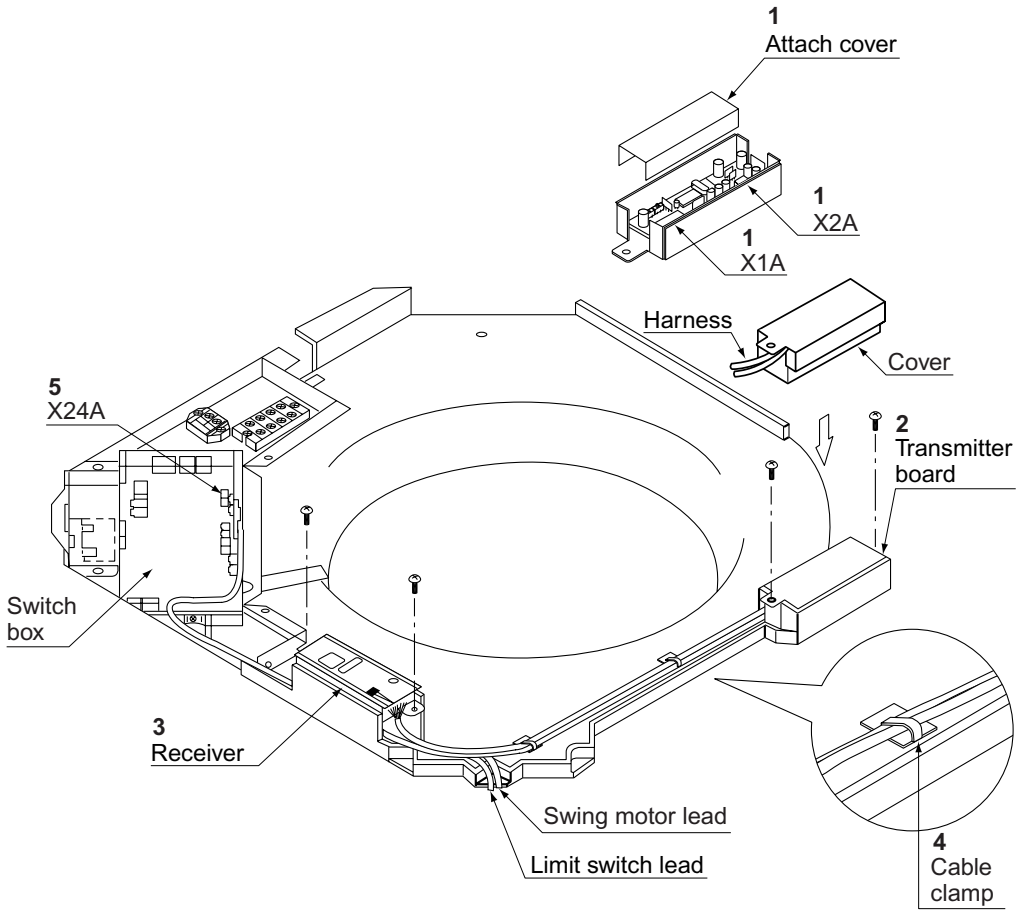
- Detach the air intake grille and switch box lid (screws × 2) as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit.
- Install the transmitter board and receiver in the locations indicated at right.

NOTE:
When using the wireless remote controller, the indoor unit must be opened/closed in the direction shown at right.



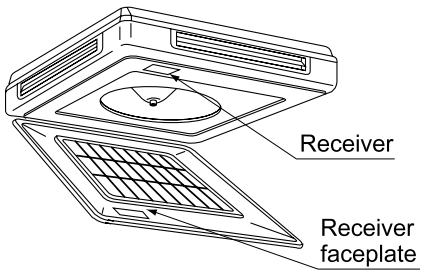
3PA59585-21Z

1. Connect the relay harness from the receiver to connector X1A on the transmitter board and the relay harness included in this kit to connector X2A on the transmitter board. After making the connections, attach the cover as before.
2. Install the transmitter board in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
3. Install the receiver in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
   When doing so, feed the swing motor lead, limit switch lead and relay harness under the receiver.
4. Bundle the two harnesses together with the included cable clamps in the two locations shown at right.
5. Connect the relay harness from the transmitter board to connector X24A on the PC board in the switch box.
6. Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box.



(4) Attaching the air intake grille.

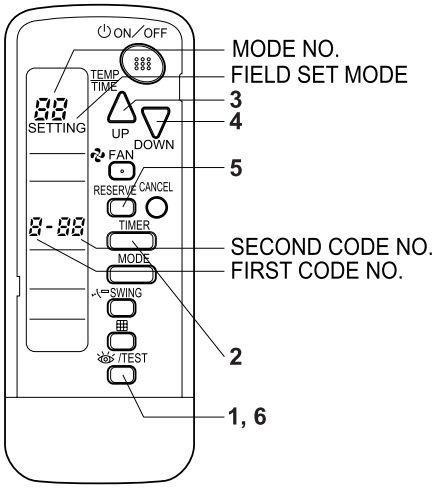
- Attach the air intake grille as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit. When doing so, make sure the receiver faceplate on the air intake grille lines up with the receiver on the indoor unit.



3PA59585-21Z

5. FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved) Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 hrs.	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.	Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1°C		0.5°C		—
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)	Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)	F		T		W

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3PA59585-21Z

6. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3PA59585-21Z

1.11 BRC7C64W / BRC7C69W (for FA(Y))

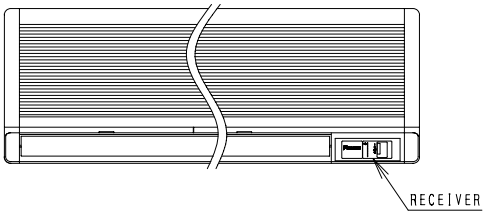
1.11.1 Features



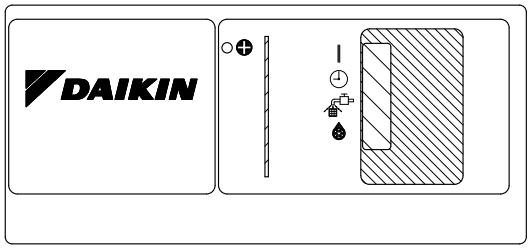
1.11.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

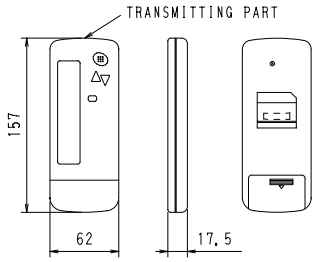
• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



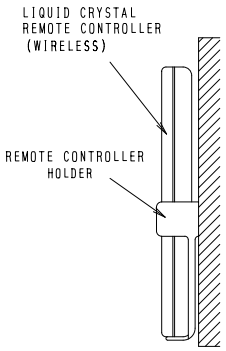
• RECEIVER DETAIL



• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



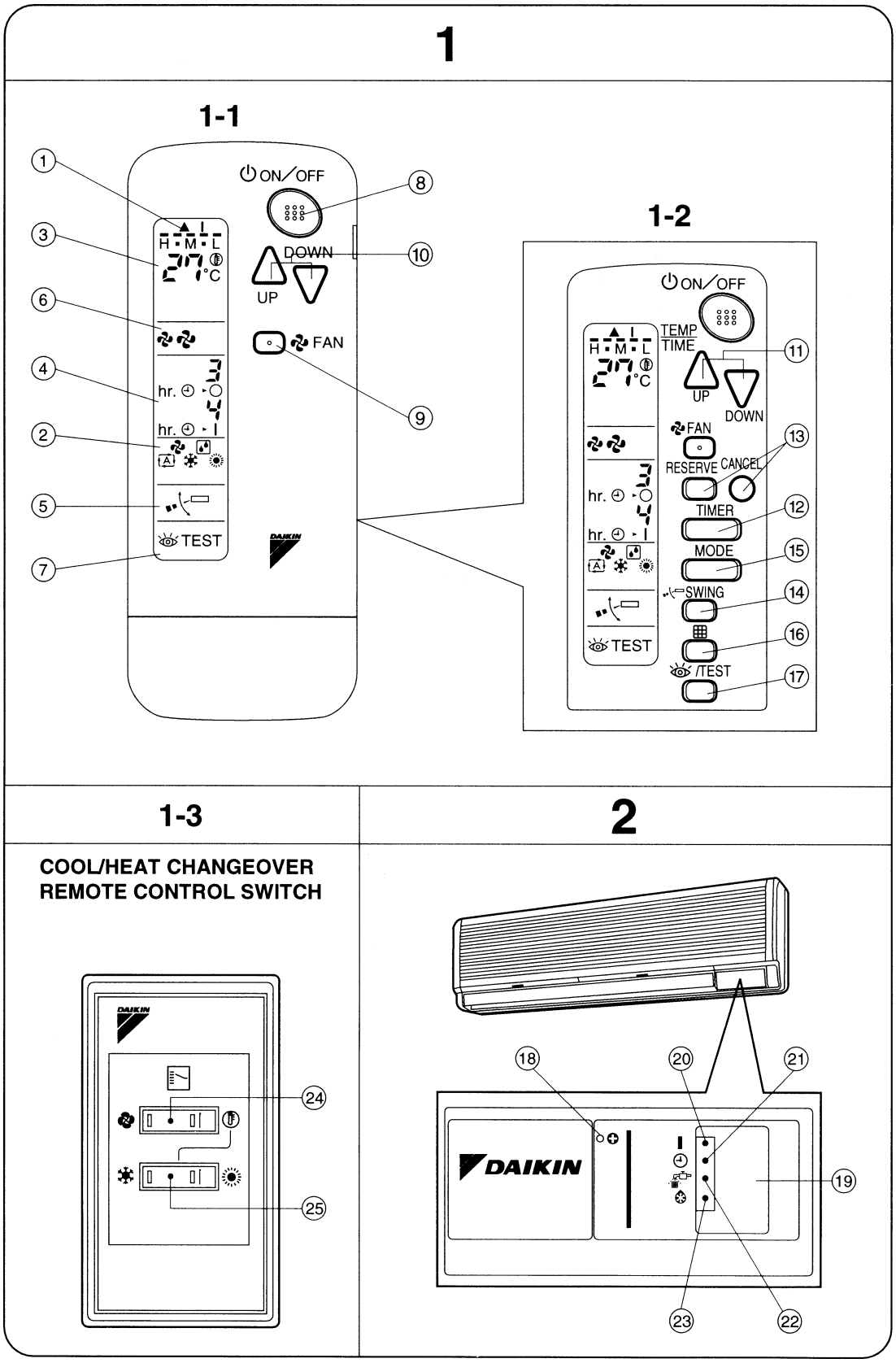
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
<INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE>



INDOOR UNIT		WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	
		HEAT PUMP SYSTEM	COOLING ONLY SYSTEM
Split System	FAY71・100FVE FA71・100FVEK	BRC7C64W	BRC7C69W
	FAY71・100FJV1	BRC7C54W	BRC7C59W
	FA(Y)71FV1C FA100FVC	BRC7C64WC	BRC7C69WC
VRV System	FXYA25・32・40・50・63KVE	BRC7C64W	BRC7C69W

C: 3D005913A

1.11.3 Operation Manual



3

3P107422-17M

2

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.

There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING** : Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE : These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

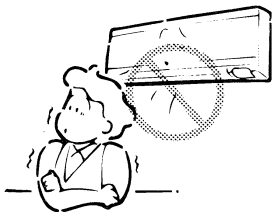
Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.

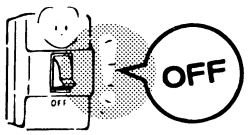
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.**
  Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.



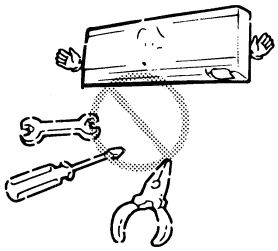
- **If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.**
  If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.



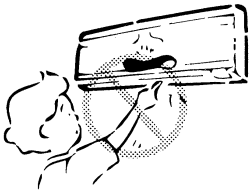
- **Ask your dealer to install your equipment.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



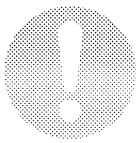
- **Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.**
  Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.



- **Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.**
  The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.



- **Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.**
  Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

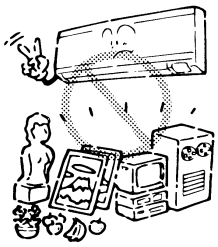


3P107422-17M

⚠ CAUTION

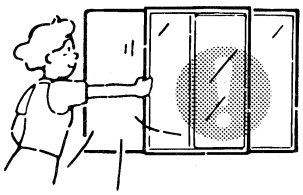
- **Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.**

  Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.



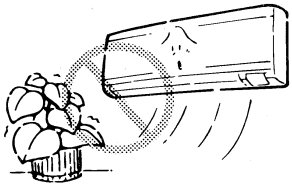
- **When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.**

  Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.



- **Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.**

  They may be adversely affected.

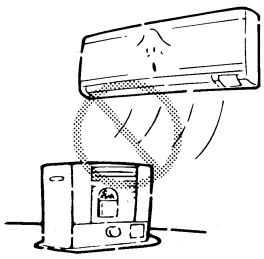


- **Do not operate the air conditioner with wet hands.**

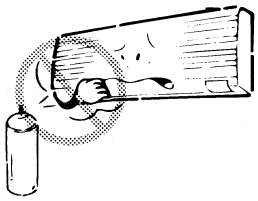
  Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.



- **Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.**



- **Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.**



5

3P107422-17M

2

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

①	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)** This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
②	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " A " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
③	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature.
④	**DISPLAY " " " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)** This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
⑤	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)** Refer to page 10.
⑥	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)** The display shows the set fan speed.
⑦	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)** When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
⑧	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
⑨	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
⑩	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
⑪	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON** Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
⑫	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON** Refer to page 11.
⑬	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON** Refer to page 11.
⑭	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON** Refer to page 10.
⑮	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON** Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
⑯	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON** Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
⑰	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON** This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
⑱	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH** This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
⑲	**RECEIVER** This receives the signals from the remote controller.
⑳	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
㉑	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)** This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
㉒	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
㉓	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)** Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
㉔	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
㉕	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

(NOTE)
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit. After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

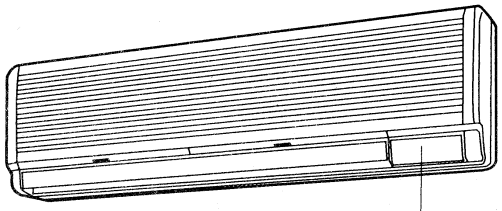
3P107422-17M

HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Receiver



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 12 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

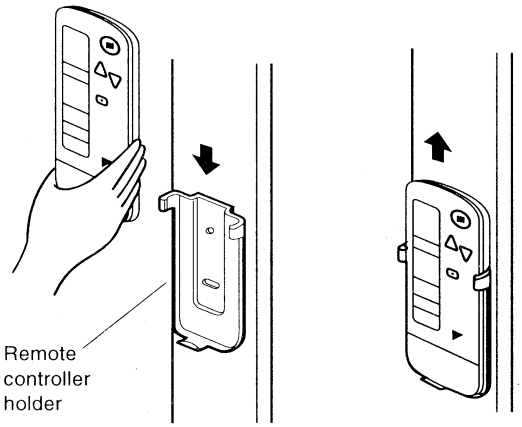
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller — Slide from above

Removing the remote controller — Pull it upward

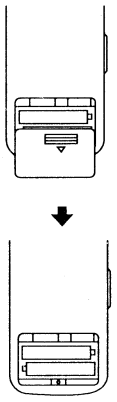


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

CAUTIONS

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

7

3P107422-17M

OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUT-DOOR TEM-PERA-TURE	
		TEM-PERA-TURE		HUMI-DITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R71 • 100	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	21 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	−5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERA-TURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERA-TURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100	DB	15 to 27	DB	−9 to 21
				WB	−10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)*

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ ".

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

(2) Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

3P107422-17M

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)*

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

COOLING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

HEATING OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

FAN OPERATION.....Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

2 Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.
DOWN	Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

Note:

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)*

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " " (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION)

(2) Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

Adjustment

(3) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(4) Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

■ *FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)*

(1) Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY " ".

(3) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

(4) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 10) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(5) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

Note:

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.

3P107422-17M

(1) Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.

" " DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)

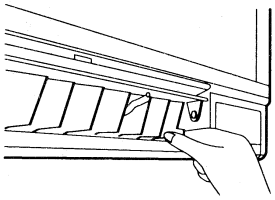
Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

" " DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.

Adjusting left/right air flow direction

Angle the flaps to the left/right from the knob, as wanted or as needed to air condition the room.



NOTE:

- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated by the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time ( ). . . . The system stops operating after the time setting has elapsed.
  Programming the start time ( ) . . . . The system starts operating after the setting has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can simultaneously be programmed.

(1) Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop . . . . . ( )
For setting the timer start . . . . . ( )

(2) Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP — When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN — When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

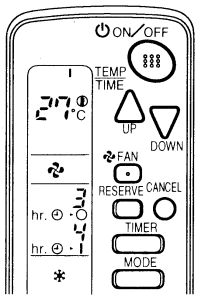
(3) Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from (1) to (3) once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

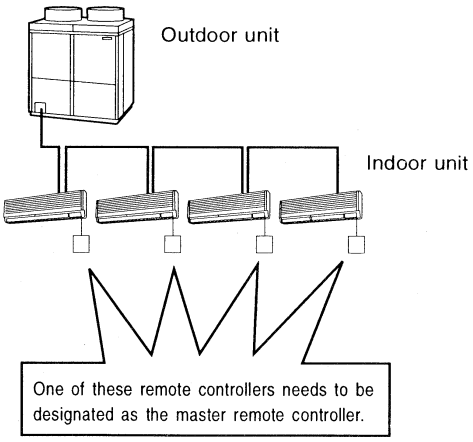
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ( )

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

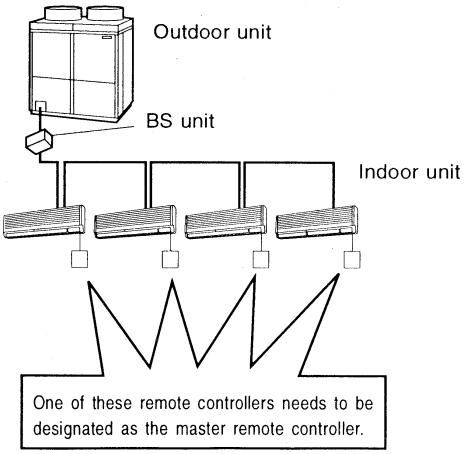
■ *For RSXY series*

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ *For RSEY series*

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "COOL", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN", "DRY" and "COOL".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "HEAT", you can switch over operation mode between "FAN" and "HEAT".
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to "FAN", you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a "peep" is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a "peep" will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "🕘" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "🕘" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

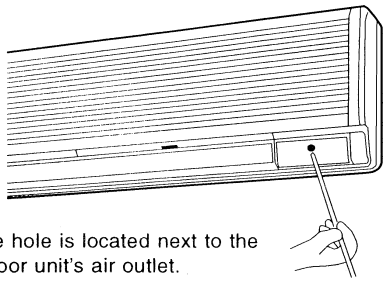
3P107422-17M

START

(1) To press the emergency operation switch, insert a match stick or other object narrow enough to fit inside the hole.

The machine runs in the previous mode.

The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



The hole is located next to the indoor unit's air outlet.

STOP

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**

One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.

All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**

Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)

The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE:

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE:

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. **THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE**

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode "⊡".

"⊡" appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps . . . . . Perform all steps from (3) to (6).

1 short beep . . . . . Perform (3) and (6) steps

1 long beep . . . . . Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"⊡" on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

"⊡" on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep. The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

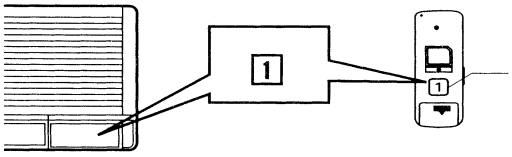
(7) Reset of the display

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.

Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

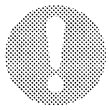
- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

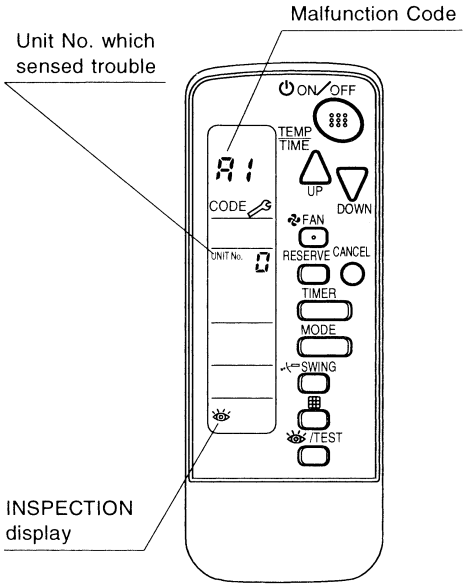
3P107422-17M

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

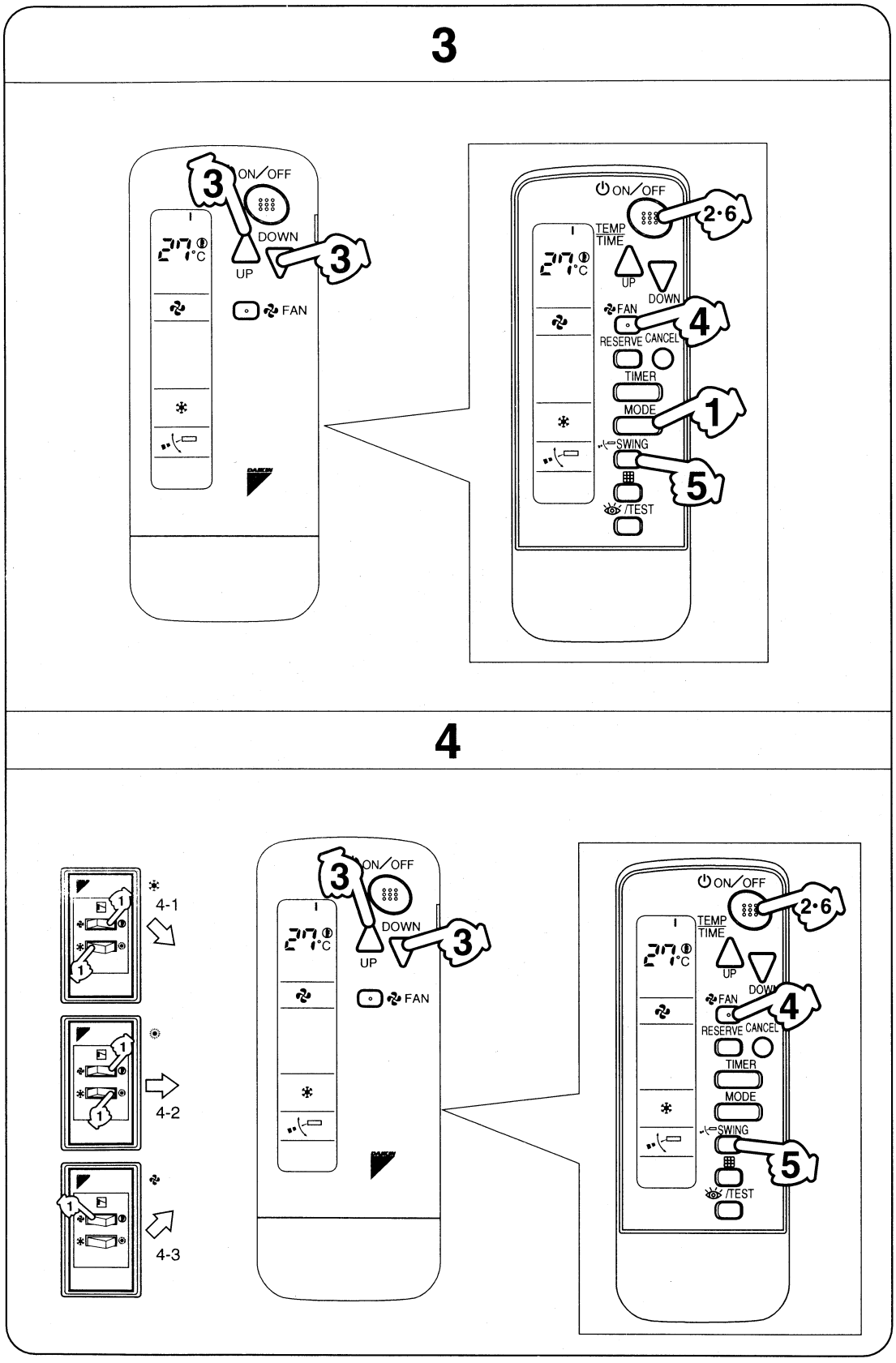
- When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.



Trouble	Remedial action
The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.  	Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 14.)

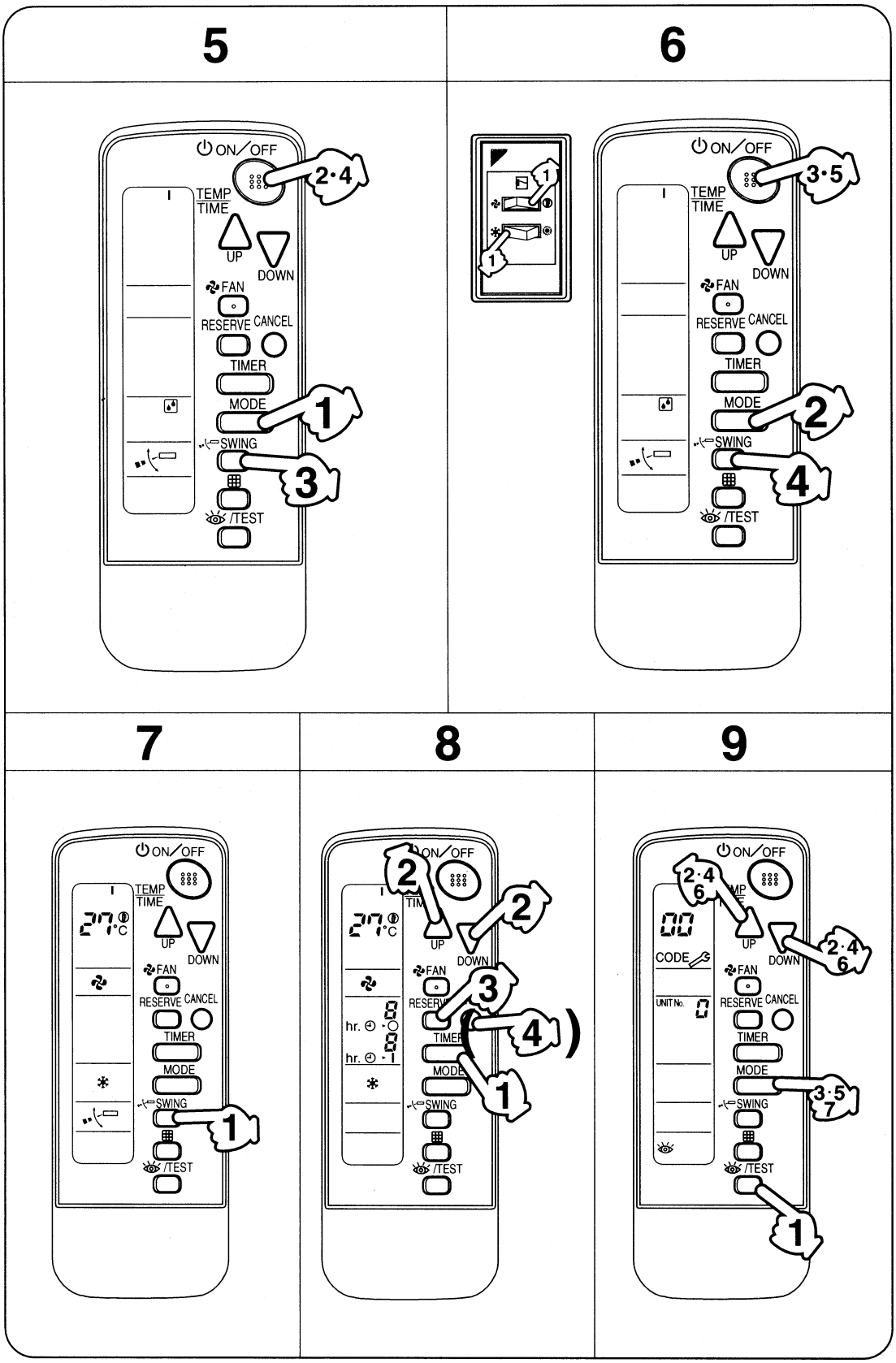
15

3P107422-17M



43

3P107422-17M



44

3P107422-17M

1.11.4 Installation Manual

2

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

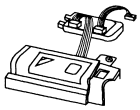
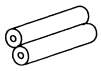
⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.
NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  * Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  * Ensure that the operaiton display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

ACCESSORIES Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Wireless display cover		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
			Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)		2 pcs.			
Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label	1 2 3 1 2 3 1 2 3	1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

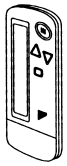
REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈 Installing wireless remote controller 〉

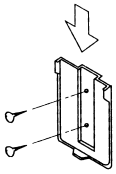
- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 12 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**

Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

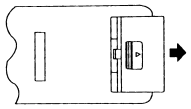


Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

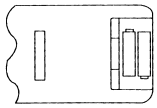


- **How to insert the batteries**

① Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



② Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



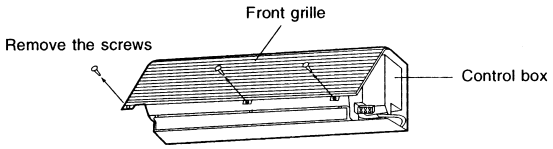
RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after electric wiring the indoor unit.

① Do not attach back in position the right side panel and the control display cover, both of which have been removed for electric wiring. Remove the left side panel too.

② Draw out the air filter, and remove the front grille as shown at below.



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller. If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

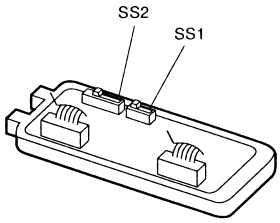
① Setting the receiver

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board that is connected with the wireless display cover.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1)		



3

3PA59585-11W

② **Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")**

〈 Setting from the remote controller 〉

① Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

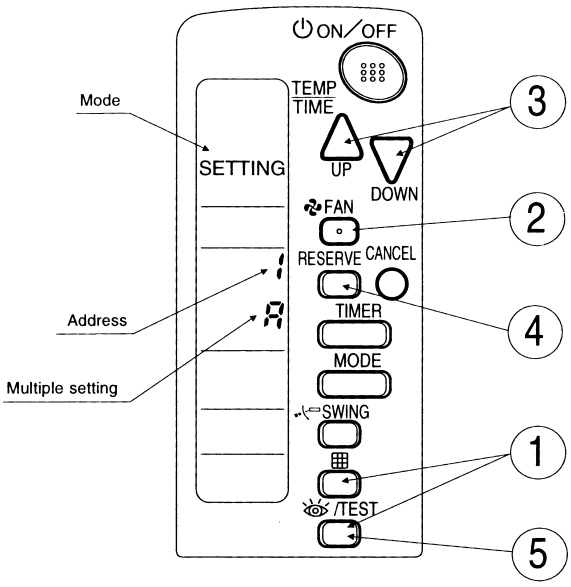
③ Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 →

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

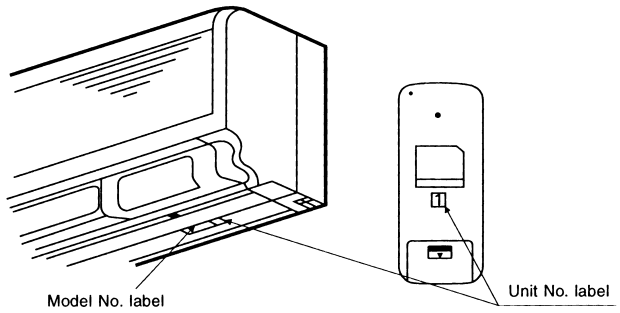


〈 Multiple settings A/b 〉

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

③ Stick the Unit No. labels next to the Model No. label at the bottom of the indoor unit as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.

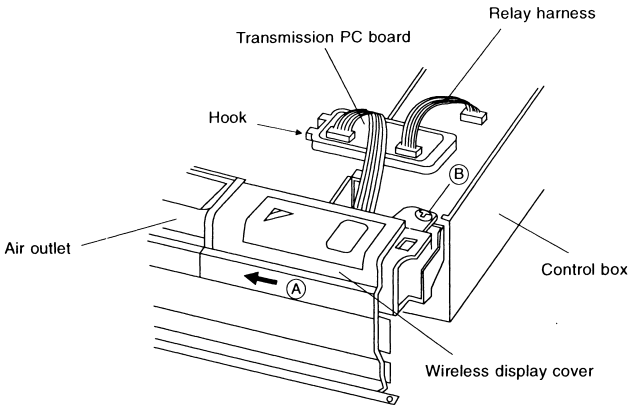


PRECAUTIONS

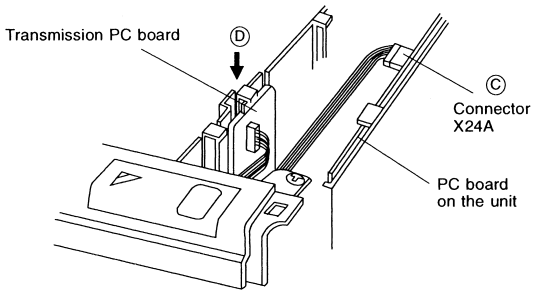
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

(3) Setting up the wireless display cover and the transmission PC board

① To attach the wireless display cover as shown at right, take the reverse steps or detaching the display cover.
   Ⓐ Insert the cover with the arrow facing toward the right hand of the air outlet.
   Ⓑ Fix the cover to the control box with the screws.



② To attach the transmission PC board, take the following steps.
First connect the relay harness of the transmission PC board to the X24A connector (Ⓒ) on the PC board of the unit.
Then put the transmission PC board, with its hooks upward, on the facing face of the PC board on the unit.
Make sure that the PC board comes on the center of the 3 cataches (in the arrow (Ⓓ)).



③ Place the front grille first and then the right and left side panels into position.
④ Finally attach the air filter in place.

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.

③ Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.

④ Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑤ Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.

⑥ Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

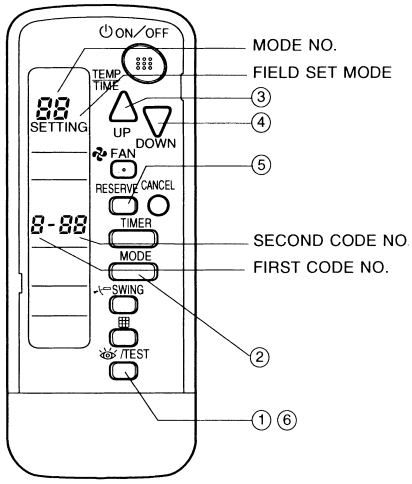
(Example) If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

5

3PA59585-11W

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Light	Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 100 hrs.	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.	Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1°C		0.5°C		—
13	0	Air flowrate increase mode (to be set upon user's request)	Standard		A little increase		Increase

NOTE) The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".
Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)



TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

〈 **PRECAUTIONS** 〉

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3PA59585-11W

1.12 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 / BRC7E619 (for FAQ, FAY)

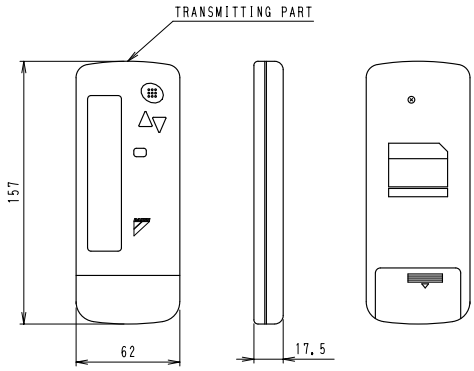
1.12.1 Features



1.12.2 Dimensions

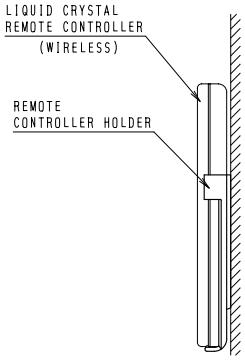
Unit (mm)

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS

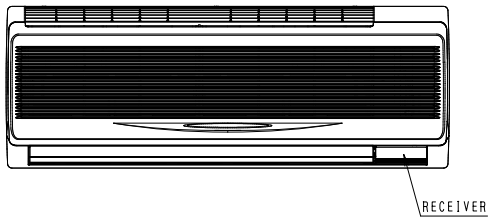


• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

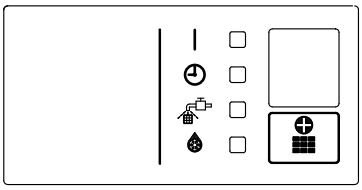
< INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE >



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL

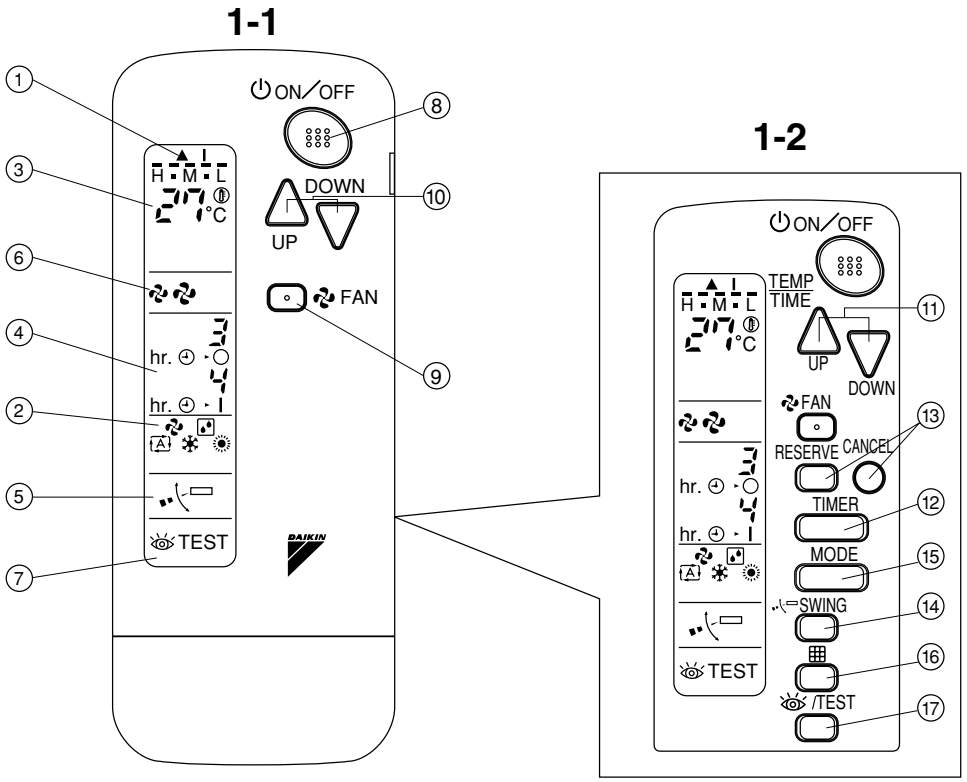


• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	INDOOR UNIT
BRC7E618 BRC7EA618(For H/P)	FXA(Q) FAQ FAY
BRC7E619 BRC7EA619(For C/O)	

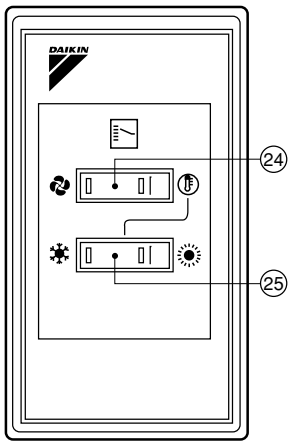
C: 3D034905B

1.12.3 Operation Manual

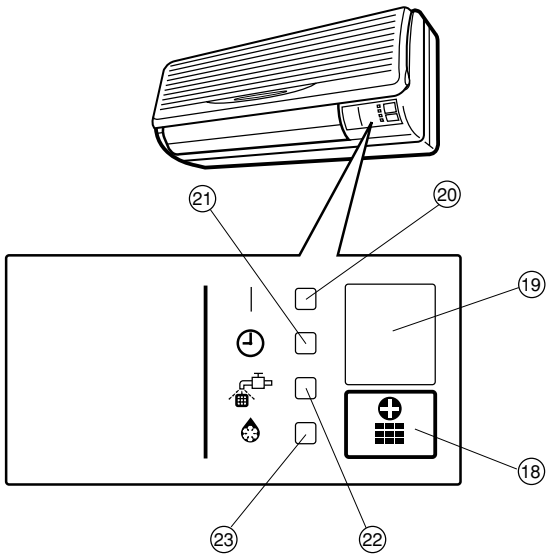


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-10S

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATION .....[1]
PRIOR TO USE.....[2]

1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.....1
2 NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION 4
3 HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER.....5
4 OPERATION RANGE.....6
5 OPERATION PROCEDURE 7
6 NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER 12
7 HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS 12

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

3P107422-10S

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

3P107422-10S

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

3P107422-10S

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 9.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 9.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 10.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 8.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-10S

19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

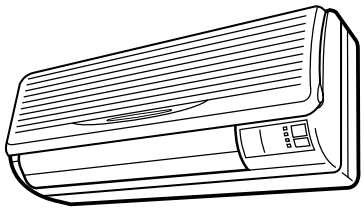
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

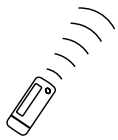
3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

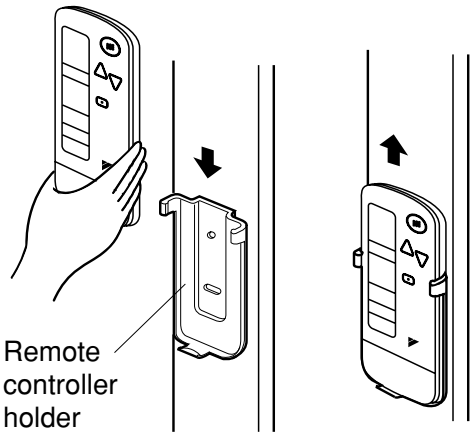
3P107422-10S

Placing the remote controller

Slide from above

Removing the remote controller

Pull it upward

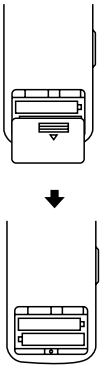


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

VRV System

See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
COOLING ONLY TYPE	R71 RP71	DB	20 to 35	80% or below	DB	21 to 46
		WB	14 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 9 to 21
				WB	– 10 to 15

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

3P107422-10S

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 on page [1]

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

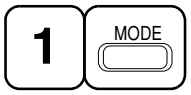
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page [1]



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... “ ✿ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ 💧 ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

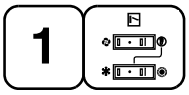
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

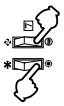
⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 on page [1]



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “  ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “  ”
- ■ FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “  ”
  - See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

3P107422-10S

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " " (This operation is only available during dry operation.)



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

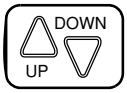
[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature
- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

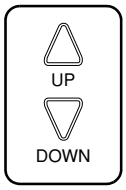
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

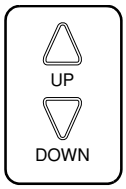
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

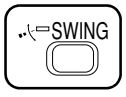
- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.



FAN SPEED CONTROL

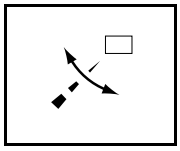
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.

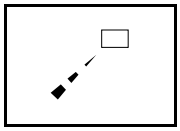
3P107422-10S



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



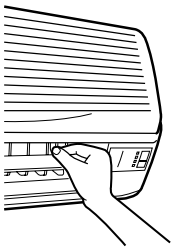
Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

Adjusting left/right air flow direction

Angle the flaps to the left/right from the knob, as wanted or as needed to air condition the room.



NOTE

- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at downward air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

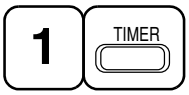
NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.



TIMER MODE START/STOP

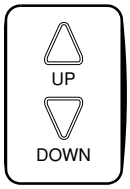
Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"



PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3P107422-10S

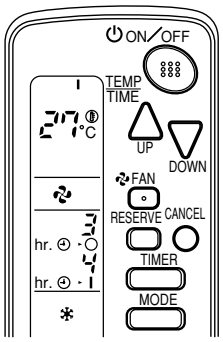
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



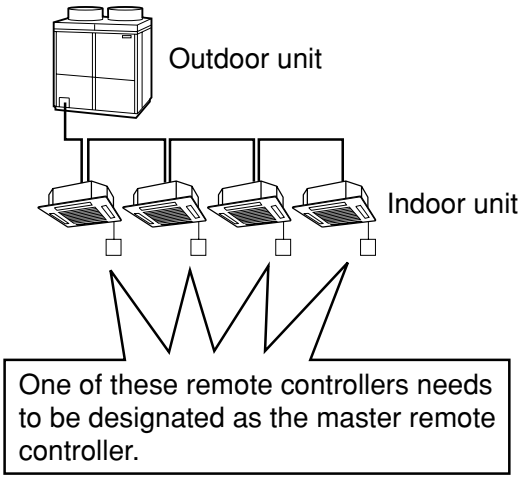
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTE
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

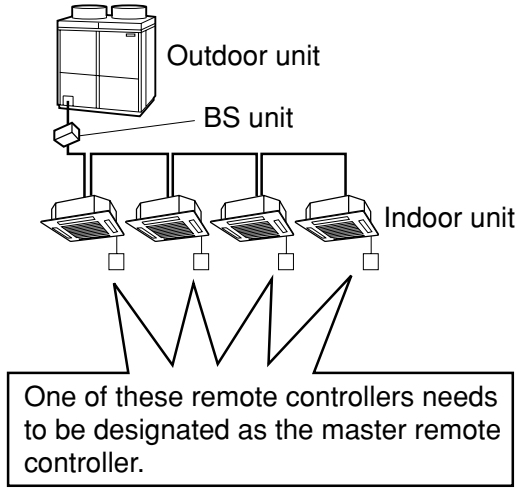
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

3P107422-10S

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.

1 MODE

Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

2 MODE

Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

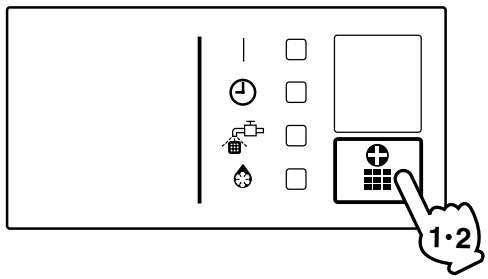
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-10S

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.



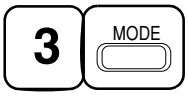
Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

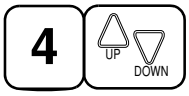
3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state



Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

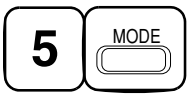
" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

3P107422-10S



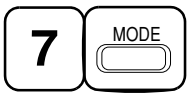
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



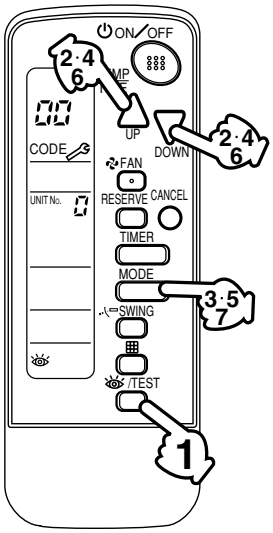
Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.



Reset of the display

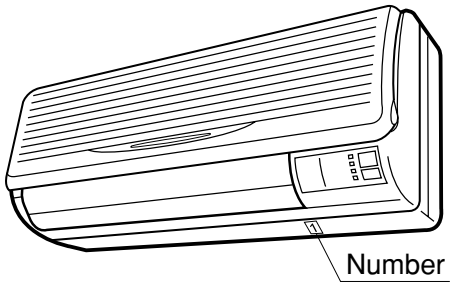
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

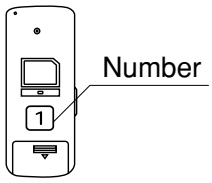


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.





Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

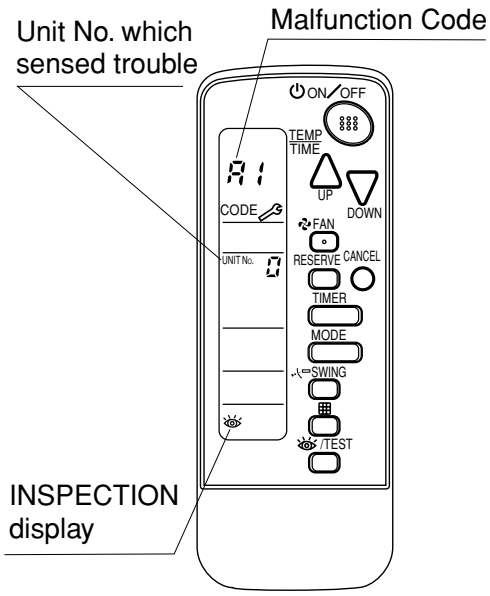
⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

3P107422-10S

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller and contact the place of purchase. (See page 12.)

3P107422-10S

1.12.4 Installation Manual

BRC7E618 BRC7E619	BRC7EA618 BRC7EA619	Wireless Remote Controller Kit	Installation manual

CONTENTS

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 1
2. BEFORE INSTALLATION 2
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION 2
4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION.....3
5. FIELD SETTING.....7
6. TEST OPERATION 7

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

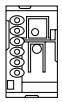
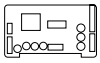
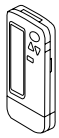
⚠ CAUTION

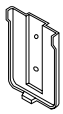
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver		(3) Relay harness - long	(4) Relay harness - short	Wireless remote controller	Screw
	(1) Light receiver assembly	(2) Transmission PC-board				
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Remote controller holder	(5) Unit No. nameplate	(6) Receiver label	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	(7) Clamp
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Operation manual	Installation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

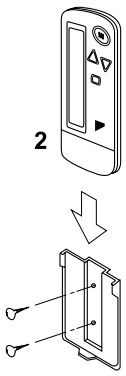
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈Installing wireless remote controller〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

• **Installing to a wall or a pillar**

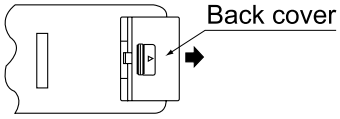
1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



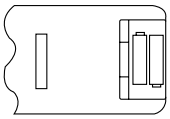
2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

• **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the back cover as before.



4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Remove the service lid and the front grill. See the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit for details on removal.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

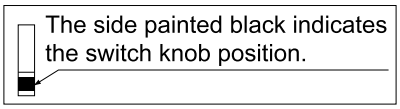
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

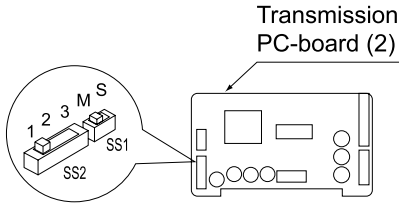
1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC-board (2) according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.
(The wired remote controller will be “MAIN”.)



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)	M S	M S

2

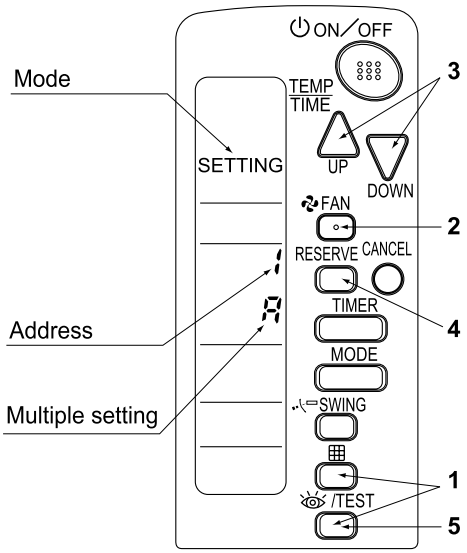
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

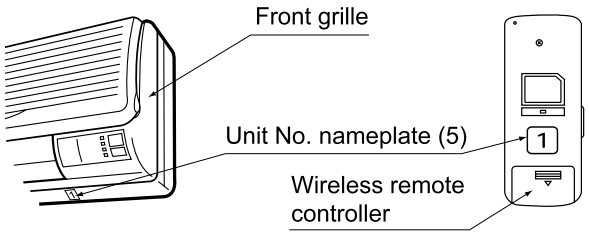
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted. (Signal receiving sound "pick-pick") Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Attach the included unit No. nameplate (5) to the front grill on the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.

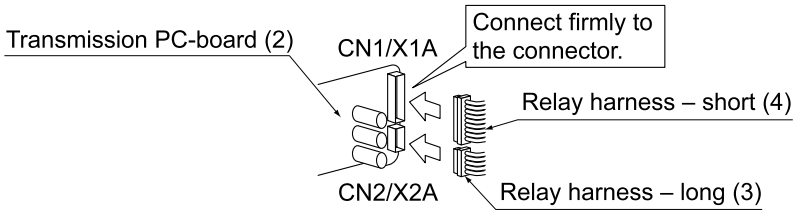
[PRECAUTIONS]

Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

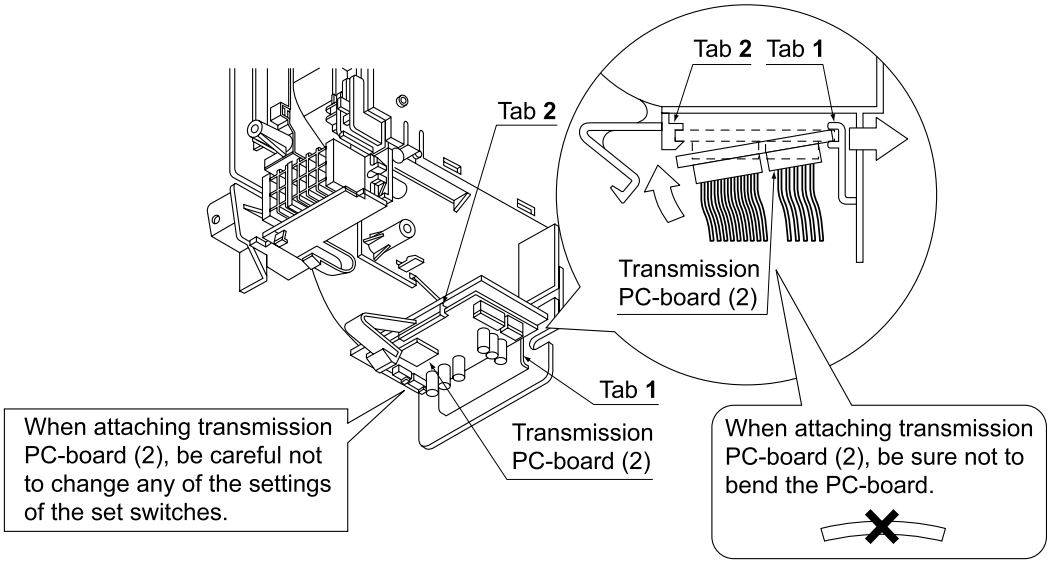


(3) Attaching the receiver

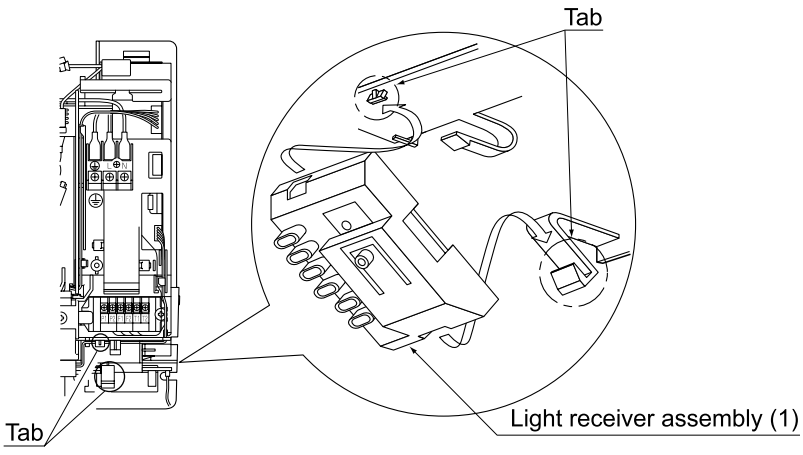
1. Connect the included relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses to the connector on the transmission PC-board (2).



2. Following the figure, insert transmission PC-board (2) into tab **1**, then insert into tab **2** while pushing tab **1** in the direction of the arrow.

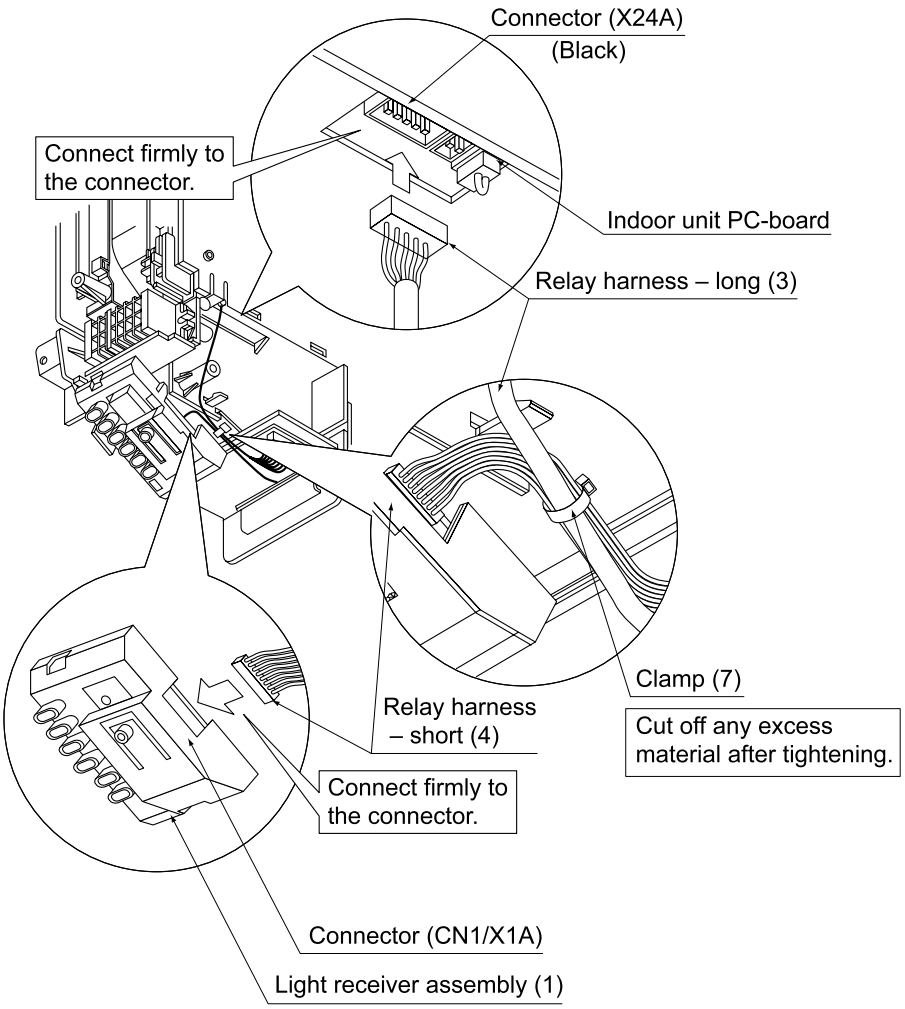


3. Attach the included light receiver assembly (1) to the 2 tabs on the indoor unit, as per the figure.

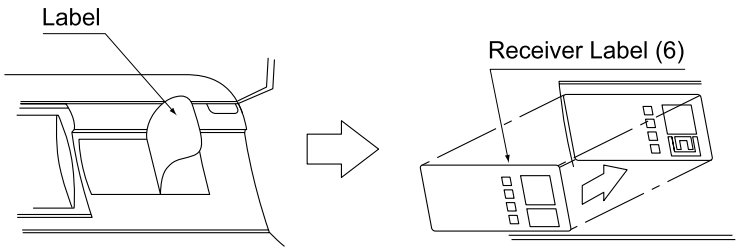


4. Connect the relay harnesses which were connected to the transmission PC-board (2) in step **1.** as follows.
- Relay harness – long (3) to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC-board
- Relay harness – short (4) to connector CN1/X1A on the light receiver assembly (1)

After making these connection, clamp down relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses using the included clamp (7).



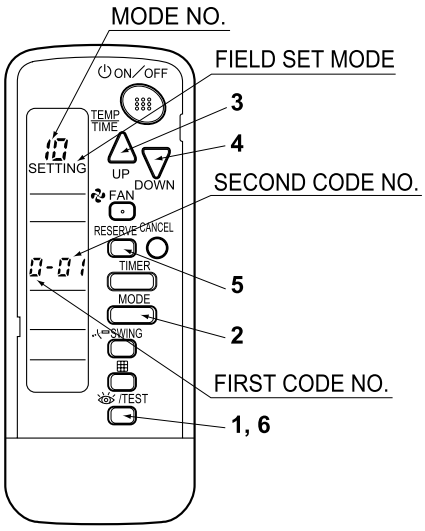
(4) Attaching the receiver label
- Remove label on the front grill. Detach the adhesive.
- Attach the receiver label (6) as the main indoor unit.



Following the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit, attach the front grill.

5. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Light	Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 100 hrs.	–
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		–
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		–
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1°C		0.5°C		–
13	0	Airflow rate increase mode (to be set upon user's request)	Standard		A little increase		Increase

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

6. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]
1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

2. Remote Controller (Wired Type)

2.1 BRC1C61

2.1.1 Features



- Easier to read because LCD screen is larger.
- Digital display lets you set temperature in 1°C units.
- Lets you individually program by timer the respective times for operation start and stop within a maximum of 72 hours.
- Equipped with a thermostat sensor in the remote controller that makes possible more comfortable room temperature control.
- Enables you to select cool/heat/fan operation mode with the indoor remote controller of your choice without using the cool/heat selector.
- Constantly monitors malfunctions in the system for 80 items, and is equipped with a "self-diagnosis function" that lets you know by message immediately when a malfunction occurs.
- Lets you carry out various field settings by remote controller.
- Enables you to select the ventilation mode and the volume of the Heat Reclaim Ventilator.
- The rubber switch and the oil-resisting resin casing have been adopted for durability.

*When the auto-swing function is not available, the message, THIS FUNCTION IS NOT AVAILABLE is displayed when the wired direction adjustment button is pressed.

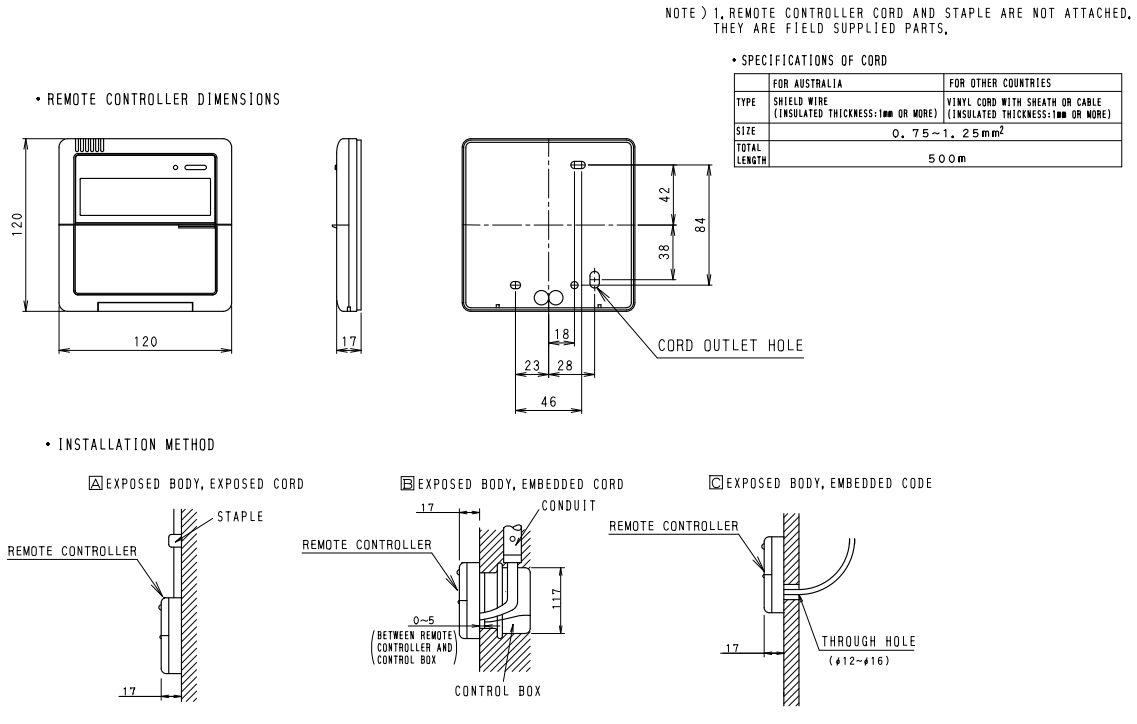
2.1.2 Function

Operation Functions with Heat Reclaim Ventilator	BRC1C61
ON / OFF Operation with Air Conditioner	○
Independent operation in intermediate season	○
Ventilation mode change over (Auto / Heat Reclaim Ventilator / Normal)	○
Air flow change over (Auto / High / Low)	○
Setting of precooling / preheating	□
Setting of fresh-up operation	□
Filter sign display	○

□: Initial Setting Only (Field setting by well known service person)

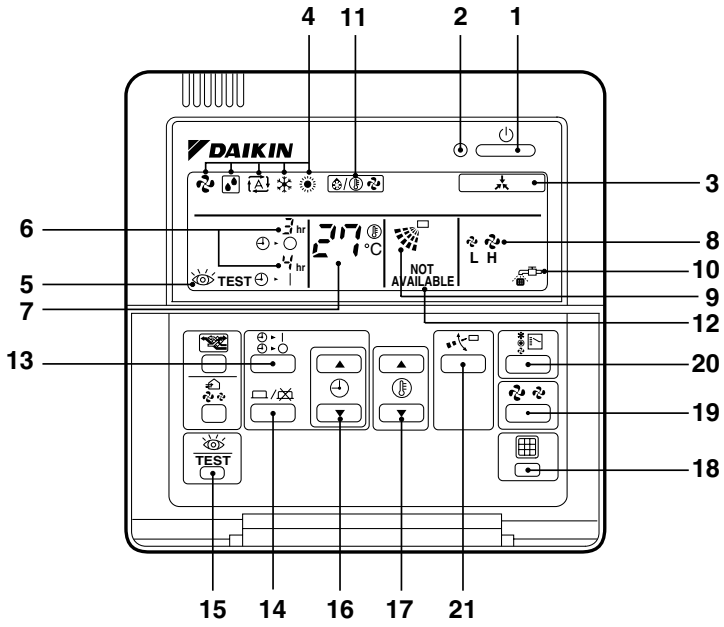
2.1.3 Dimensions

Unit (mm)



3D028952A

2.1.4 Names and Functions



1. **ON/OFF button**
   Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
2. **OPERATION lamp (RED)**
   The lamp lights up during operation.
3. **DISPLAY " " (UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL)**
   When this display shows, the system in UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL.
   (This is not a standard specification)
4. **Display " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
   This display shows the current OPERATION MODE.
   Only for cooling models on which " " is not displayed.
5. **DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION)**
   When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
6. **DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
   This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
7. **DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
   This display shows the set temperature.
8. **DISPLAY " L H " (FAN SPEED)**
   The display shows the fan speed: "LOW" or "HIGH".
9. **DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
10. **DISPLAY " " (TIME TO CLEAN AIR FILTER)**
11. **DISPLAY " " (DEFROST/HOT START)**
    " " is not displayed when the unit is in cooling only mode.
12. **NON-FUNCTIONING DISPLAY**
    If that particular function is not available, pressing the button may display the words "NOT AVAILABLE" for a few seconds.
13. **TIMER MODE START/STOP button**
14. **TIMER ON/OFF button**
15. **INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION button**
    This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
    Do not use it in normal operation.
16. **PROGRAMMING TIME button**
    Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time.
17. **TEMPERATURE SETTING button**
    Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE of the thermostat.
18. **FILTER SIGN RESET button**
19. **FAN SPEED CONTROL button**
    Press this button to select the fan speed, LOW or HIGH, of your choice.
20. **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button**
    Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
21. **AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button**

NOTE

- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display contrary to actual running situations.

C: 3P177429-9S

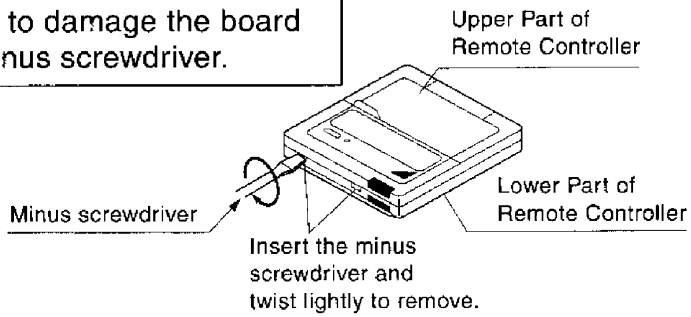
2.1.5 Installation Manual

■ **Remote Controller Mounting Instructions**

1. Remove the upper part of remote controller.

Insert minus screwdriver into the slots in the lower part of remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of remote controller.

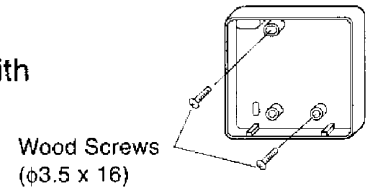
The P C board is mounted in the upper part of remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

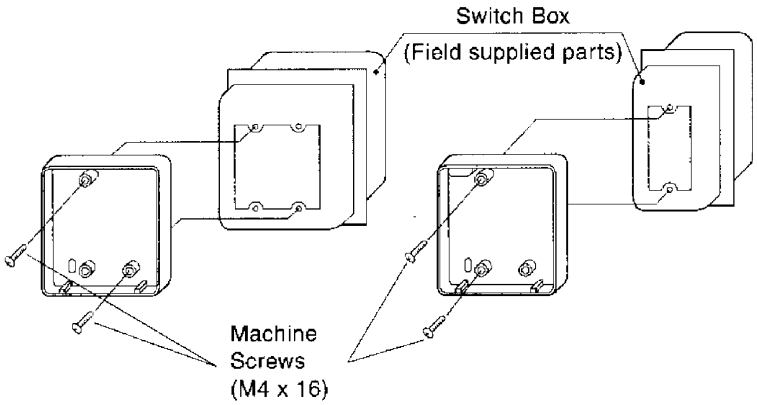


2. Fasten the remote controller.

①For exposed mounting, fasten with the included wood screws (2).

②For flush-mounting, fasten with the included machine screws (2).





For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessories KJB111A or KJB211A.

NOTE

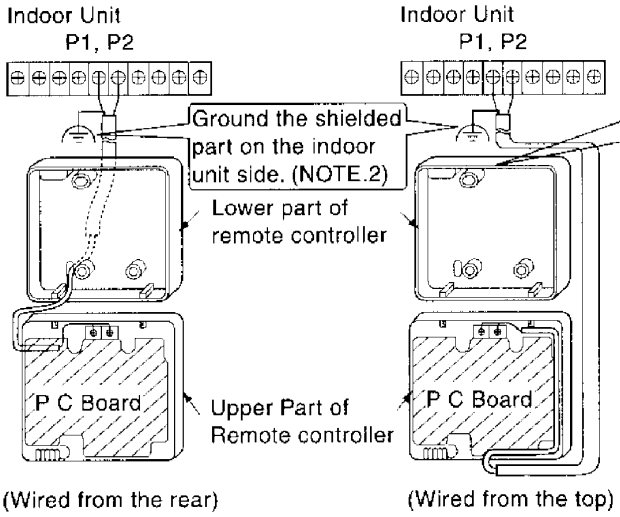
Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.

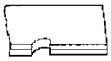
2P068938A

3. Wire the indoor unit.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE
When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

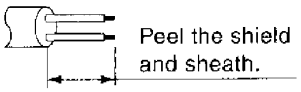



Notch the part for the wiring to pass through with nippers, etc.

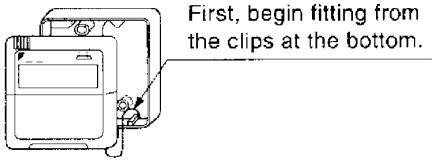
Wiring Specifications

Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl code or cable (2 wire) (NOTE.2)
Size	0.75 – 1.25 mm²

NOTE) 1. Peel the shield and sheath for the part that is to pass through the inside of the remote controller case, as shown in the figure below.



2. Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (Australian regulation).



4. Reattach the upper part of remote controller.

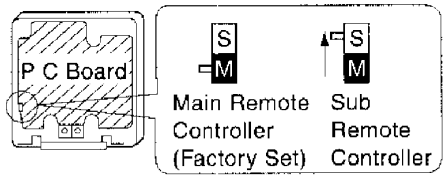
Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

NOTE

1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below.



Set one remote controller to "main," and the other to "sub."

NOTE

- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "main."
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

" 88 " is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

2P068938A

■ Field Setting

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

①When in the normal mode, press the "TEST" button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

②Select the desired MODE NO. with the "" button.

③During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21 and 23 have been selected), push the "" button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

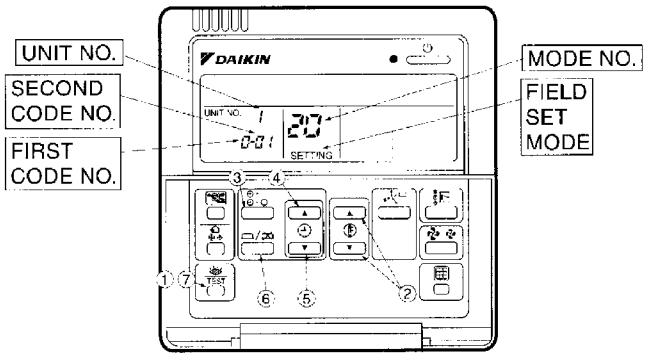
④Push the "" upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑤Push the "" lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑥Push the "" button once and the present settings are SET.

⑦Push the "TEST" button for about one second to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."

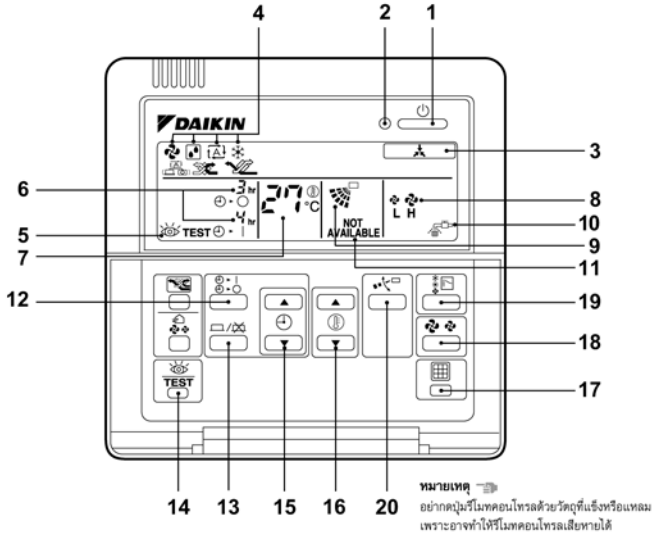


Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2		
				01	02	03
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	Light: Approx. 10,000 hours	Heavy: Approx. 5,000 hours	—
			Long-life type	Light: Approx. 2,500 hours	Heavy: Approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type	Light: Approx. 200 hours	Heavy: Approx. 100hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long-life filter (1)	—
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do Not Display	—
11(21)	0	Setting Number of Connected Skyair Simultaneous Operation System Indoor Units (Setting for Simultaneous Operation System)		Pair	Twin	—
13(23)	0	High Ceiling Setting (Setting for when installed in a Ceiling higher than 2.7m)		Normal	High Ceiling 1	High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F	T	W
	3	Air Flow Direction Adjust Function (To be set when decoration panel for air outlet is installed)		Equippeed	No Equippeed	—
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper	Normal	Lower
	6	Setting the External Static Pressure (Setting according to the connected duct resistance) (For FHYK, follow the High Ceiling Setting)		Normal (Normal)	High Static Pressure (High Ceiling)	Low Static Pressure —

NOTES) 1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, set the mode number inside the ( ) for individual setting of the each indoor unit or confirmation after setting.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory. However for the following cases it is set to "02".
●Air flow direction range setting.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.

2P068938A

2.1.6 Names and Functions of Parts (Thai)



1	**ปุ่มเปิด/ปิด**
	เมื่อกดปุ่มแล้วเครื่องจะทำงาน เมื่อกดปุ่มอีกครั้งเครื่องจะหยุด
2	**ไฟบอกสถานะการทำงาน (สีแดง)**
	ระหว่างเดินเครื่องไฟจะติด
3	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ▭ ” (อยู่ภายใต้การควบคุมจากศูนย์กลาง)**
	เมื่อสัญลักษณ์นี้ปรากฏ แสดงว่าเครื่องอยู่ภายใต้การควบคุมจากศูนย์กลาง (ไม่ใช่ข้อมูลจำเพาะมาตรฐาน)
4	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” (โหมดการทำงาน)**
5	**สัญลักษณ์ “ TEST ” (ตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบการทำงาน)**
	เมื่อกดปุ่ม “ตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบการทำงาน” สัญลักษณ์นี้จะแสดงว่าเครื่องกำลังทำงานในโหมดนี้อยู่
6	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (เวลาที่ตั้งไว้)**
	สัญลักษณ์นี้แสดง “เวลาที่ตั้งไว้” ให้เครื่องเปิดหรือปิด
7	**สัญลักษณ์ “ 27°C ” (อุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้)**
	สัญลักษณ์นี้แสดงอุณหภูมิที่ตั้งไว้
8	**สัญลักษณ์ “ L H ” (ความเร็วพัดลม)**
	สัญลักษณ์นี้แสดงความเร็วพัดลม: “ต่ำ” หรือ “สูง”
9	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (ครีบปรับทิศทางลม)**
10	**สัญลักษณ์ “ ” (ถึงเวลาทำความสะอาดแผ่นกรองอากาศ)**

11	**ข้อความแสดงว่าเครื่องไม่ทำงานตามคำสั่งที่เลือก**
	เมื่อกดปุ่มเลือกฟังก์ชันที่เครื่องไม่มี จะมีข้อความว่า “NOT AVAILABLE” แสดงขึ้น 2-3 วินาที
12	**ปุ่มเริ่ม/หยุดการทำงานแบบตั้งเวลา**
13	**ปุ่มตั้งเวลาเปิด/ปิด**
14	**ปุ่มตรวจสอบ/ทดสอบการทำงาน**
	ปุ่มนี้มีไว้สำหรับช่างที่ได้รับการแต่งตั้งทำการตรวจซ่อมเครื่องเท่านั้น อย่าใช้ในการทำงานปกติ
15	**ปุ่มเปิด/ปิดตัวตั้งเวลา**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้เพื่อตั้งเวลา “เปิด และ/หรือ ปิด”
16	**ปุ่มตั้งอุณหภูมิ**
	ใช้ปุ่มนี้เพื่อ “ตั้งอุณหภูมิ” ของเทอร์โมสตัท
17	**ปุ่มยกเลิกการแสดงไฟของแผ่นกรองอากาศ**
18	**ปุ่มควบคุมความเร็วพัดลม**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือกความเร็วพัดลม “ต่ำ” หรือ “สูง” ตามต้องการ
19	**ปุ่มเลือกโหมดการทำงาน**
	กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อเลือก “โหมดการทำงาน”
20	**ปุ่มปรับทิศทางลม**
หมายเหตุ	
• เพื่อให้สามารถอธิบายได้โดยง่าย จึงแสดงสัญลักษณ์ทั้งหมดไว้ในรูปที่ 1 ในหน้า [1] ซึ่งจะไม่เกิดขึ้นในการใช้งานจริง	

C: 3PN11966-1

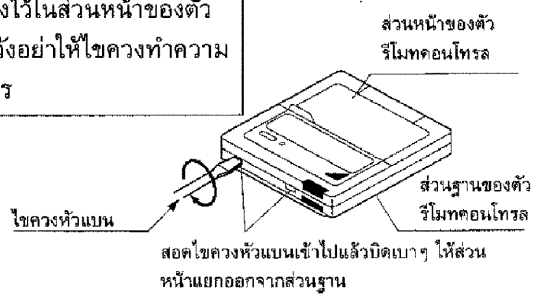
2.1.7 Installation Manual (Thai)

ขั้นตอนการติดตั้งแผงควบคุมจากระยะไกล (รีโมทคอนโทรล)

1. ถอดส่วนหน้าของตัวรีโมทคอนโทรลออก

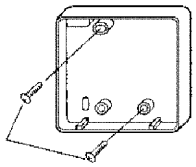
สอดไขควงหัวแบนเข้าที่ช่องที่ อยู่ตรงส่วนฐานของตัวรีโมทคอนโทรล (มีอยู่ 2 ช่อง) แล้วบิดไขควงเบาๆ

แผงวงจร PC ถูกฝังไว้ในส่วนหน้าของตัวรีโมทคอนโทรล ระวังอย่าให้ไขควงทำความเสียหายแก่แผ่นวงจร

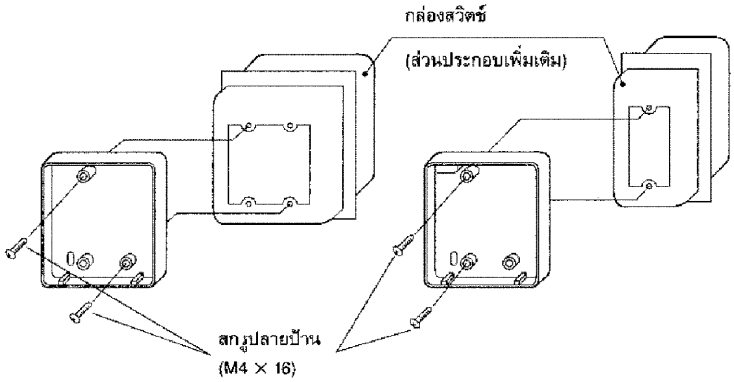


2. การติดตั้งตัวรีโมทคอนโทรล

① สำหรับการติดตั้งแบบลอย ให้ขันด้วยสกรูปลายแหลม (สกรูขันไม้) 2 ตัวที่แนบมาด้วย



② สำหรับการติดตั้งแบบฝังเรียบติดผนัง ให้ขันด้วยสกรูปลายป้าน 2 ตัวที่แนบมาด้วย



สำหรับกล่องสวิตช์ กรุณาใช้ส่วนประกอบหมายเลข KJB111A หรือ KJB211A

ข้อควรระวัง

ควรทำการติดตั้งบนพื้นผิวที่เรียบที่สุด และระวังอย่าขันสกรูแน่นเกินไป เพราะจะทำให้ส่วนฐานบิดเบี้ยวได้

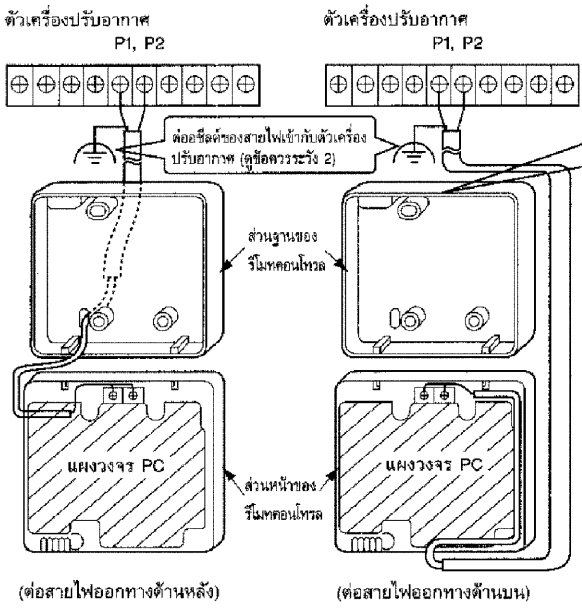
2P068941A

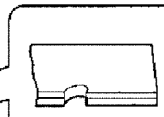
3. ต่อสายไฟเข้ากับตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศ

ต่อขั้วไฟฟ้าที่ด้านบนของส่วนหน้ารีโมทคอนโทรล (P1, P2) กับขั้วไฟฟ้าที่ตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศ (P1, P2) (P1, P2 ไม่มีขั้ว)

ข้อควรระวัง

ควรเดินสายให้ห่างจากแหล่งกำเนิดไฟฟ้า เพื่อป้องกันสัญญาณรบกวน





ใช้เครื่องเจาะหรือคีมทำรอยบากตรงส่วนที่จะสอดสายไฟผ่าน

สายไฟที่กำหนด

ชนิดของสายไฟ	สายไฟแบบปลอกวินิลโค้ด หรือเคเบิล (2 สาย) (ดูข้อควรระวัง 2)
ขนาด	0.75-1.25 ตารางมิลลิเมตร

ข้อควรระวัง) 1 ลอกซีลด์และปลอกของสายไฟส่วนที่จะสอดเข้าไปในตัวรีโมทคอนโทรล ดังรูปข้างล่าง



2 สายไฟแบบซิลด์ (2 สาย) สามารถใช้กับสายรีโมทคอนโทรล แต่ต้องได้รับการรับรองจาก EMC (Electromagnetic Compatability) (มาตรฐานออสเตรเลีย)

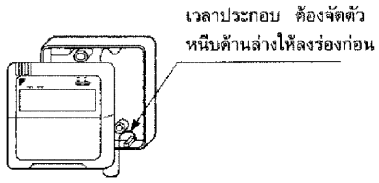
4. ประกอบส่วนหน้ากลับเข้าไปกับตัวฐาน

ขณะประกอบ ระวังอย่าให้หนีบสายไฟ

ข้อควรระวัง

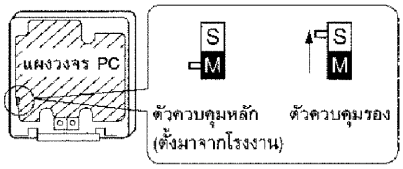
1 กล่องสวิตช์และสายไฟ ไม่มีให้ในชุดอุปกรณ์

2 อย่าสัมผัสถูกแผงวงจร PC ด้วยมือเปล่า



กรณีที่ควบคุมเครื่องปรับอากาศ 1 เครื่อง ด้วยรีโมทคอนโทรล 2 ตัว

ปรับตั้งสวิตช์ MAIN/SUB ดังนี้



ปรับรีโมทคอนโทรลตัวหนึ่งไปที่ MAIN และอีกตัวหนึ่งไปที่ SUB

ข้อควรระวัง

- ถ้าใช้รีโมทคอนโทรลตัวเดียว ต้องปรับไปที่ MAIN เสมอ
- ปรับตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรล ก่อนที่จะเดินเครื่องปรับอากาศ

"88" จะปรากฏขึ้นประมาณ 1 นาที หลังเปิดเครื่องปรับอากาศและจะปรากฏเมื่อรีโมทคอนโทรลไม่ทำงานในบางกรณี

2P068941A

2

การปรับตั้ง

ถ้าที่ตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศมีการติดอุปกรณ์เพิ่มเติมอาจต้องเปลี่ยนวิธีปรับบ้างให้ดูในคู่มือการติดตั้งสำหรับอุปกรณ์เพิ่มเติมแต่ละชิ้น

ขั้นตอนการปรับ

① เมื่ออยู่ในสถานะปกติ กดปุ่ม "TEST" ค้างไว้ 4 วินาที แล้วจะเข้าสู่สถานะที่พร้อมสำหรับการปรับ

② เลือกหมายเลขของสถานะที่ต้องการ โดยใช้ปุ่ม "▲/▼"

③ ในการควบคุมแบบกลุ่ม ถ้าต้องการปรับเครื่องปรับอากาศทีละตัว (สถานะหมายเลข 20, 21, 23) ให้กดปุ่ม "กลุ่ม/ตัว" แล้วเลือกตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศที่จะปรับ (ขั้นตอนนี้ไม่จำเป็นถ้าทำการปรับเครื่องปรับอากาศพร้อมกันทั้งกลุ่ม)

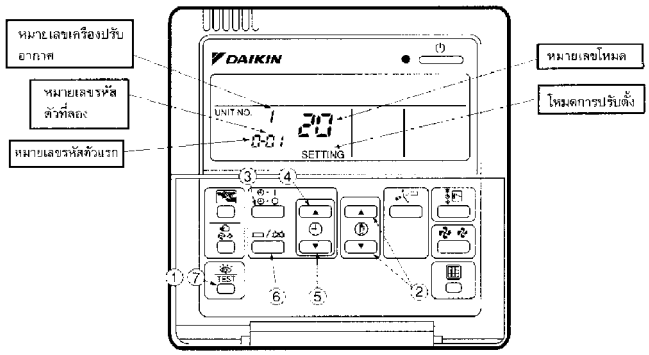
④ กดปุ่ม "▲" ด้านบน เลือกหมายเลขรหัสตัวแรก

⑤ กดปุ่ม "▼" ด้านล่าง เลือกหมายเลขรหัสตัวที่สอง

⑥ กดปุ่ม "SET" 1 ครั้ง สิ่งที่เลือกไว้จะถูกบันทึก

⑦ กดปุ่ม "TEST" ประมาณ 1 วินาที เพื่อกลับสู่โหมดปกติ

(ตัวอย่าง) ในการปรับแบบกลุ่ม ถ้าต้องการกำหนดเวลาทำความสะอาด แผ่นกรองอากาศไว้เป็น "เมื่อแผ่นกรองสกปรกมาก"ต้องเลือกสถานะหมายเลข "10" หมายเลขรหัสตัวแรก "0" และหมายเลขรหัสตัวที่สอง "02"



หมายเลขสถานะ ข้อควรระวัง 1	หมายเลขรหัสตัวแรก	คำอธิบาย		หมายเลขรหัสตัวที่สอง ข้อควรระวัง 2					
				01		02		03
10 (20)	0	ความสกปรกของแผ่นกรองอากาศ - มากน้อย (การกำหนดระยะเวลาที่จะให้เตือนเมื่อถึงเวลาที่ต้องการทำความสะอาดแผ่นกรอง) ถ้าตั้งที่แผ่นกรองอากาศสกปรกมาก ระยะห่างเวลาในการทำความสะอาดแผ่นกรองอากาศจะเหลือครึ่งหนึ่ง	ประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก	น้อย	ประมาณ 10,000 ชั่วโมง	มาก	ประมาณ 5,000 ชั่วโมง	
			ประเภทใช้งานได้นาน		ประมาณ 2,500 ชั่วโมง		ประมาณ 1,250 ชั่วโมง	
			ประเภทใช้งานธรรมดา		ประมาณ 200 ชั่วโมง		ประมาณ 100 ชั่วโมง	
	1	แผ่นกรองประเภทใช้งานได้นาน (ตั้งเวลาแสดงสัญลักษณ์เตือนแผ่นกรอง) (เปลี่ยนการตั้งเมื่อติดตั้งแผ่นกรองประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก)		แผ่นกรองประเภทใช้งานได้นาน		แผ่นกรองประเภทใช้งานได้นานมาก (*)		–
	3	การรับเวลาใช้งาน เพื่อเตือนให้ทำความสะอาดแผ่นกรอง (ปรับเลือกว่า จะให้แสดงสัญลักษณ์เตือนแผ่นกรองหรือไม่)		แสดง		ไม่แสดง		–
11 (21)	0	ตั้งจำนวนเครื่องปรับอากาศที่เป็นระบบควบคุมการเชื่อมต่อการไหลเวียนอากาศในเวลาเดียวกัน (ตั้งระบบควบคุมเวลาเดียวกัน)		ดู		ธรรมดา		
13 (23)	0	การตั้งเพดานสูง (ตั้งสำหรับเมื่อติดตั้งเพดานสูงกว่า 2.7 เมตร)		ปกติ		เพดานสูง 1		เพดานสูง 2
	1	เลือกทิศทางลม (ใช้สำหรับสำหรับเครื่องปรับอากาศที่ติดแผ่นปรับทิศทางลม)		F		T		W
	3	ความสามารถที่จะปรับทิศทางลม (ใช้สำหรับช่องพ่นลมในแนวนอนเท่านั้น)		ประกอบ		ไม่ประกอบ		–
	4	การตั้งทิศทางการไหลของลม		ส่วนบน		ปกติ		ส่วนล่าง
	6	การตั้งความดันลงที่ภายนอก (ตั้งค่าความแรงต้านทานของท่อที่ต่ออยู่) (สำหรับ FHYK, ทำตามการตั้งเพดานสูง)		ปกติ (ธรรมดา)		ความดันคงที่สูง (เพดานสูง)		ความดันคงที่ต่ำ –

ข้อควรระวัง) 1 การตั้งในโหมดกลุ่ม อย่างไรก็ตามตั้งหมายเลขโหมดข้างใน ( ) สำหรับการตั้งเฉพาะตัวของแต่ละเครื่องปรับอากาศหรือยืนยันหลังการติดตั้ง

2 หมายเลขรหัสตัวที่สองจะถูกตั้งให้เป็น "01" ตั้งแต่ออกจากโรงงาน อย่างไรก็ตาม สำหรับกรณีต่อไปนี้จะถูกตั้งให้เป็น "02"
- การตั้งทิศทางการไหลของลม

3 อย่าทำการปรับสิ่งที่ไม่ได้ระบุไว้ในตารางทางซ้าย

4 จะไม่มีอะไรปรากฏขึ้นบนหน้าจอหากเครื่องปรับอากาศไม่ได้ติดตั้งชิ้นส่วนที่ต้องการจะปรับ

5 เมื่อกลับคืนสู่สถานะปกติ "88" อาจปรากฏขึ้นบนหน้าจอ LCD แสดงว่ารีโมทคอนโทรลกำลังทำการปรับตัวเอง

2P068941A

2.2 BRC1NU61

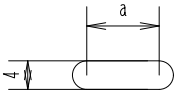
2.2.1 Features



2.2.2 Dimensions

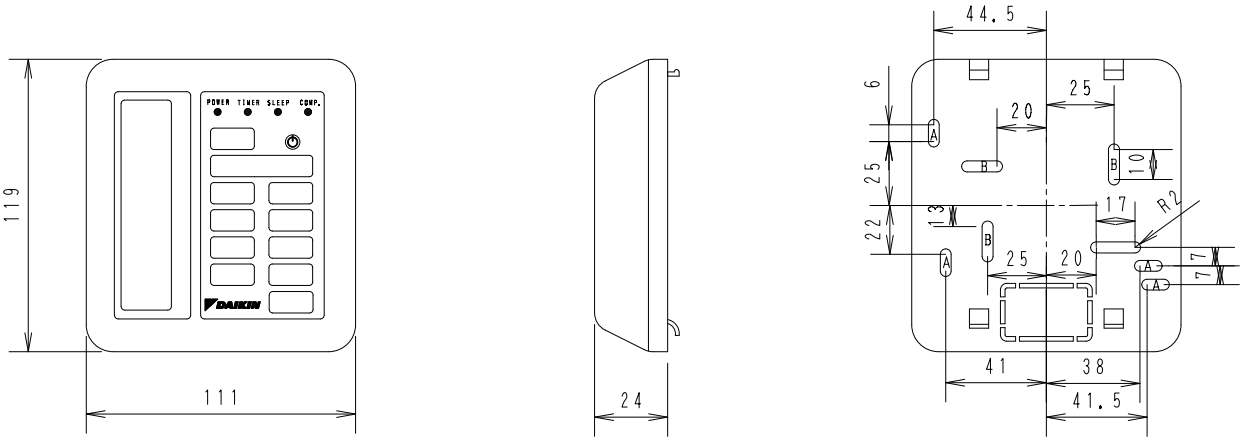
Unit (mm)

Note) The dimension of hole



Hole type	a (mm)
A	6
B	10

◦REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



3D052351

2.2.3 Operation Manual

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.

There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠**WARNING..** Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠**CAUTION…** Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.

Also, if this equipment is transferred to new user, maker sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.
Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.

If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of the fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.
If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.

Ask your dealer to install your equipment.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.
Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.
The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.

Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.
Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or work of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.

When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.
Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.

Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.
They may be adversely affected.

Do not operate the air conditioner with a wet hand.
Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.

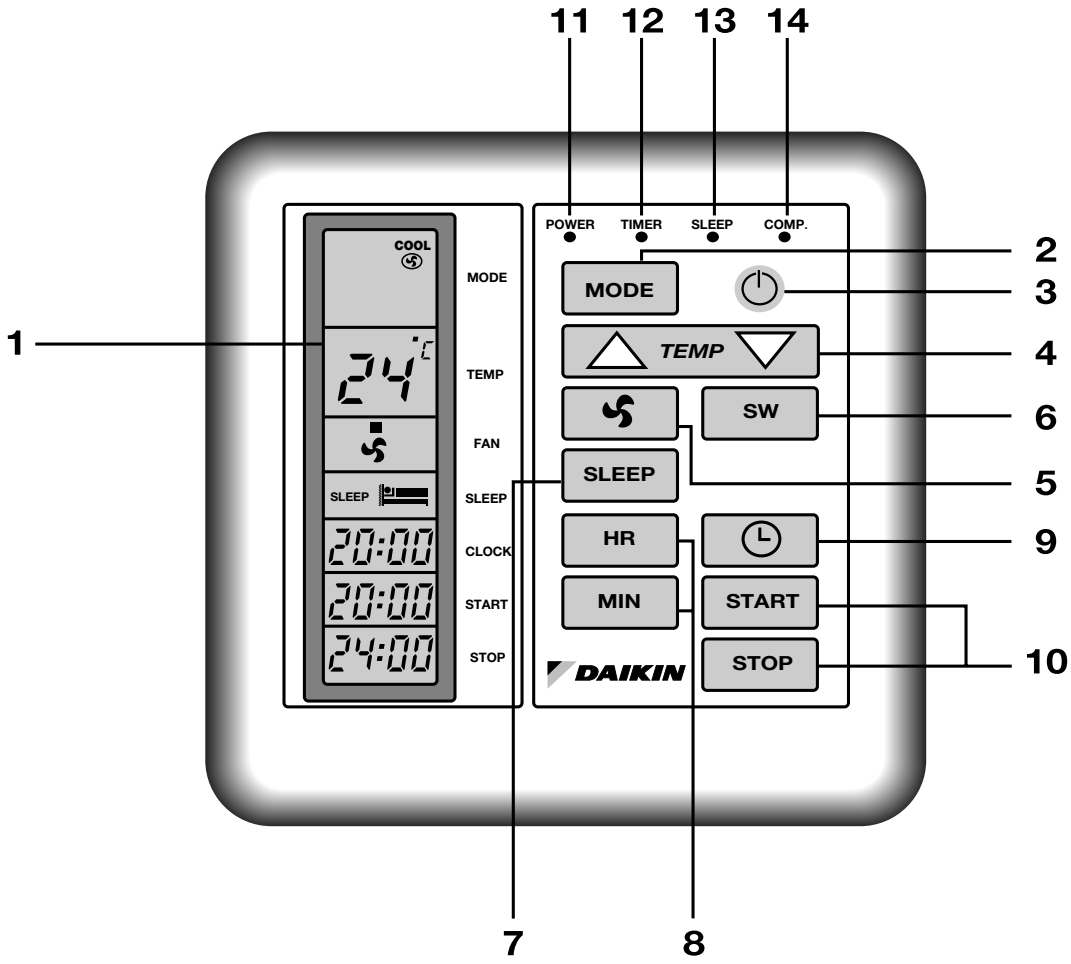
Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.

Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.

The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.

Young children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION



4

3PN07204-2

1. **Display :**
   - It displays the current settings.
2. **MODE selector button :**
   - It selects the operation mode. (FAN/COOL/DRY)
3. **ON/OFF button :**
   - Press this button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
4. **TEMPERATURE setting buttons :**
   - It changes the temperature setting.
5. **FAN speed button :**
   - It selects the air flow rate setting.
6. **SWEEP button :**
   - Press this button to turn on/off sweep motor.
7. **SLEEP button :**
   - Press this button once to start sleep function.
8. **HR-MIN buttons :**
   - Press these buttons to set the hour and the minute.
9. **CLOCK button :**
   - It sets the clock on the Remote unit.
10. **START-STOP button :**
    - Press these buttons to set timer.
11. **Operating indicator lamp (green) :**
    This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs.
12. **TIMER indicator lamp (green) :**
    This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
13. **SLEEP indicator lamp (green) :**
    This lamp stays lit while the sleep function is set.
14. **COMP. (green) :**
    This lamp shows the ON/OFF status of the compressor.

3PN07204-2

3. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

■ ON/OFF button

Press ⏻ to turn on/off air conditioner.

■ MODE button

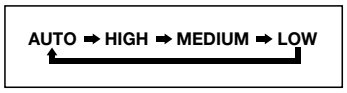
Press MODE to change mode of operation from FAN, COOL, DRY. Operating mode will be displayed on the remote.

■ TEMPERATURE setting button

Press △ TEMP ▽ to change setting temperature.

■ FAN speed button

Press ↺ to change fan speed.



■ SLEEP button

Press SLEEP and the setting temperature will be automatically raised up 1 ºC after one hour in COOL MODE for comfort and to save energy.

■ Clock Setting

To set the clock on the Remote unit is by

❑ Press 🕒 button, the time display will blink.
❑ Press HR button, to set the hour,
❑ Press MIN button, to set the minute,
❑ Press 🕒 again, the time display will stop blinking.



■ Timer Setting

Start

The air conditioner can be programmed to turn on in advance.

❑ Press START button, the start-time display will blink,
❑ Press HR button to set the hour,
❑ Press MIN button to set the minute,
❑ Press START button again, the start-time display will stop blinking.

To cancel this function, press START button again.



Stop

The air conditioner can be programmed to turn off in advance.

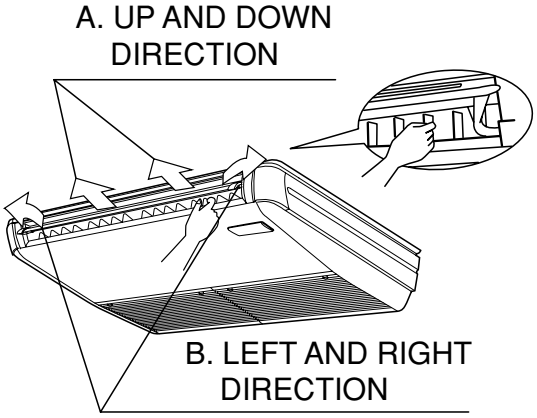
❑ Press STOP button, the stop-time display will blink,
❑ Press HR button to set the hour,
❑ Press MIN button to set the minute,
❑ Press STOP button again, the stop-time display will stop blinking.

To cancel this function, press STOP button again.



■ AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

- Three are 2 ways of adjusting the air discharge angle.
  A. Up and down adjustment
  B. Left and right direction



A. UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- Press SWEEP to turn on sweep motor.
- Press again to turn off and stop horizontal blade at the required position.

B. LEFT AND RIGHT DIRECTION

- Adjusting air flow direction in the left and right direction.

NOTE

- Only make adjustments after you have stopped the air flow direction sweep in a position.
- Stop flaps from sweeping before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps moving may get your finger pinched.

2.2.4 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

AIR CONDITIONER

Wired Remote Controller Kit

BRC1NU61

Installation manual

READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.
KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

3PN07266-1B

To the installer of the unit:

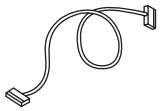
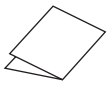
Instruct the user how to operate the unit following the operation manual.

Caution

Carefully read the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

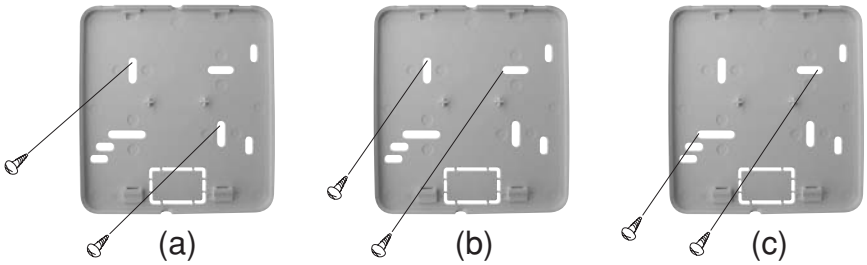
ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Wired remote controller		1 pc.	Wire harness		1 pc.
			Operation manual		1 pc.

1 INSTALLATION OF WIRED REMOTE CONTROLLER

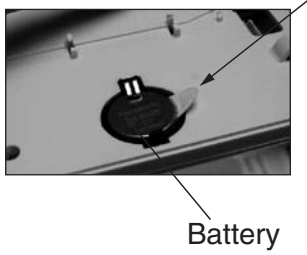
- Do not throw the wired remote controller or give strong shock. Do not store it where it may get wet or directly exposed to the sun light.
- The distance operable by the wired remote controller from the unit is approximately 4 metres.
- Fasten the remote controller with screws at any provided 2 positions. (see picture as below).



3PN07266B

NOTE

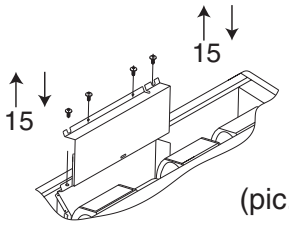
1. Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.
2. Remove the insulation sheet under the back-up battery out before wiring.



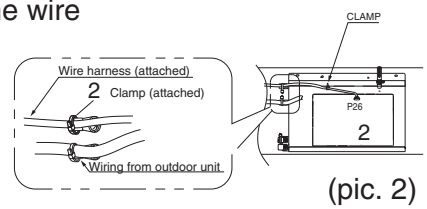
2 WIRING

1 Remove the switch box and its cover mounted at the rear of the unit. (see pic. 1)

2 Connect the wire to the connector P26 on the PC board assembly mounted inside the switch box. (Make sure to clamp the wire with the clamp material-see pic. 2)



(pic. 1)



(pic. 2)

NOTE

When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

3 Connect the wire on the bottom of the back cover of remote controller. (see pic. 3)



(pic. 3)

4 Reattach the upper part of remote controller. Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching. (see pic. 4)

NOTE

Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

5 Put the switch box and its cover back to their place. (see pic. 1)



(pic. 4)

3PN07281A

2.3 BRC1NU61S

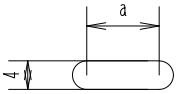
2.3.1 Features



2.3.2 Dimensions

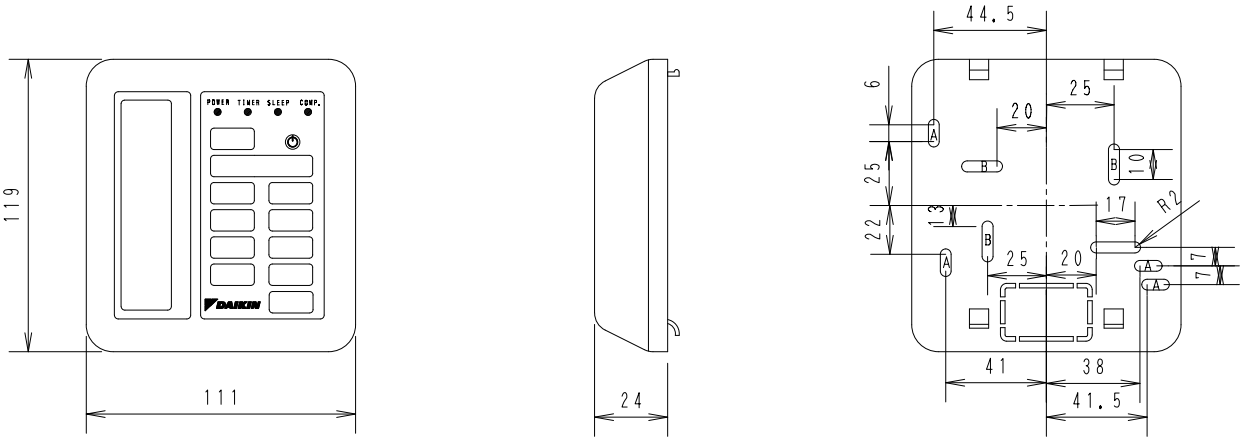
Unit (mm)

Note) The dimension of hole



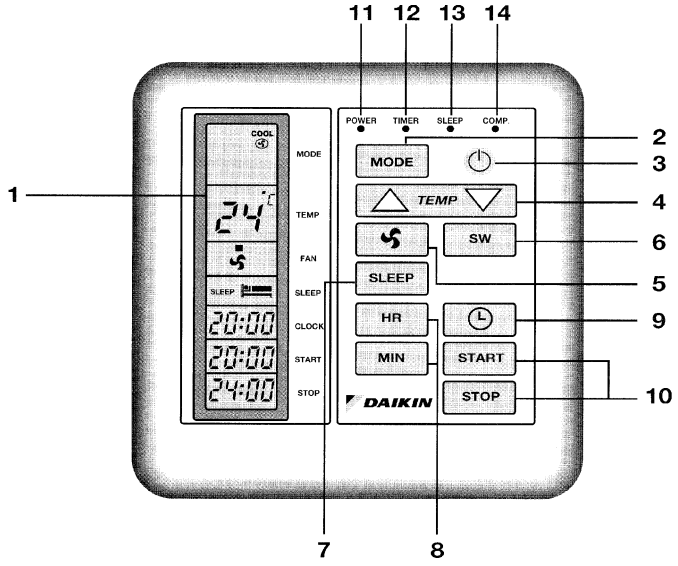
Hole type	a(mm)
A	6
B	10

○REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



3D052351

2.3.3 Names and Functions of Parts



1. **ตัวส่งสัญญาณ**
   - ส่งสัญญาณไปยังตัวเครื่องในอาคาร
2. **ปุ่มเลือกโหมด (MODE)**
   - เลือกโหมดการทำงาน (พัดลม/เย็น/แห้ง) (FAN/COOL/DRY)
3. **ปุ่ม เปิด/ปิด (ON/OFF)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้งเพื่อเริ่มการทำงาน และกดอีกครั้งเพื่อหยุด
4. **ปุ่มปรับอุณหภูมิ (TEMPERATURE)**
   - เปลี่ยนการตั้งอุณหภูมิ
5. **ปุ่มตั้งพัดลม (FAN)**
   - เลือกการตั้งค่าอัตราการไหลของอากาศ
6. **ปุ่มส่าย (SWEEP)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อ เปิด/ปิด มอเตอร์ส่าย
7. **ปุ่มหลับ (SLEEP)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้หนึ่งครั้งเพื่อเปิดใช้ฟังก์ชัน SLEEP
8. **ปุ่มตั้งชม.-นาที (HR-MIN)**
   - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อตั้งค่าชั่วโมงและนาที
9. **ปุ่มนาฬิกา (CLOCK)**
   - ตั้งนาฬิกาบนตัวรีโมท
10. **ปุ่ม เริ่ม-หยุด (START-STOP)**
    - กดปุ่มนี้เพื่อตั้งเวลา
11. **ไฟแสดงการทำงาน (เขียว)**
    - ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่เครื่องปรับอากาศทำงาน
12. **ไฟแสดงการตั้งเวลา (เขียว)**
    - ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่มีการตั้งเวลา
13. **ไฟแสดงโหมด Sleep (เขียว)**
    - ไฟนี้จะสว่างในขณะที่มีการตั้งฟังก์ชัน Sleep
14. **ไฟ Comp. (เขียว)**
    - ไฟนี้แสดงสถานะการ เปิด/ปิด ของคอมเพรสเซอร์

3PN07204-4

2.3.4 Installation Manual

DAIKIN

เครื่องปรับอากาศ

BRC1NU61S

คู่มือการติดตั้งชุดรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสาย

อ่านคำแนะนำเหล่านี้อย่างละเอียดก่อนการติดตั้ง
เก็บคู่มือไว้ในที่ที่หยิบใช้ได้สะดวก เพื่อใช้อ้างอิงในอนาคต

3PN07265-1B

สำหรับผู้ติดตั้งเครื่อง:

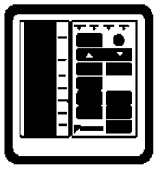
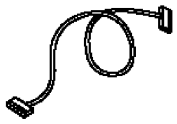
แนะนำผู้ใช้ให้ทราบถึงวิธีการใช้เครื่องตามคู่มือการใช้งาน

ข้อควรระวัง

อ่านคู่มือการติดตั้งที่มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารอย่างละเอียด

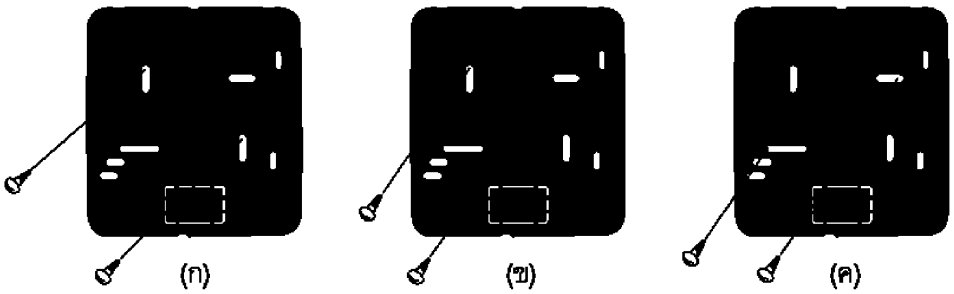
อุปกรณ์เสริม

ตรวจดูว่าอุปกรณ์เสริมต่อไปนี้มาพร้อมกับตัวเครื่องหรือไม่

ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	จำนวน	ชื่อ	รูปร่าง	จำนวน
รีโมท คอนโทรล แบบมีสาย		1 ชุด	ชุดสายไฟ		1 ชุด
			คู่มือ การใช้งาน		1 ชุด

1 การติดตั้งรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสาย

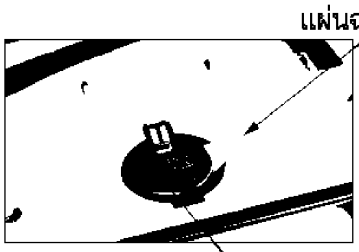
- อย่าโยนรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสาย หรือกระแทกอย่างแรง
  อย่าเก็บไว้ในที่ที่อาจทำให้รีโมทคอนโทรลเปียก หรือถูกแสงแดดโดยตรง
- ระยะห่างที่สามารถทำงานได้ระหว่างรีโมทคอนโทรลแบบมีสายกับตัวเครื่องปรับอากาศ ประมาณ 4 เมตร
- ตรึงรีโมทคอนโทรลด้วยสกรู โดยเลือกตำแหน่งที่กำหนดให้ 2 จุด (ดูรูปด้านล่าง)



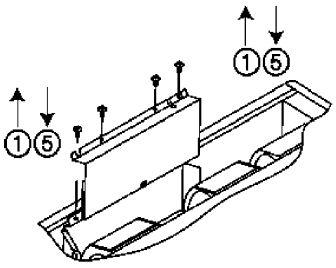
3PN07265B

หมายเหตุ

1. เลือกบริเวณที่แบนเรียบที่สุดเท่าที่จะเป็นไปได้ สำหรับพื้นผิวที่ใช้ในการติดตั้ง ระวังอย่าทำให้ส่วนล่างของรีโมทคอนโทรลบิดเบี้ยว เนื่องจากขันสกรูติดแน่นจนเกินไป



2. ถอดแผ่นฉนวนใต้แบตเตอรี่สำรองออกก่อนเดินสายไฟ



(รูปที่ 1)

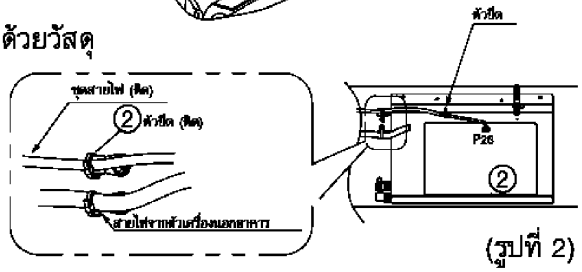
2 การเดินสายไฟ

① ถอดกล่องสวิตช์และฝาครอบที่ติดอยู่ทางด้านหลังของตัวเครื่อง (รูปที่ 1)

② ต่อสายไฟเข้ากับขั้วต่อ P26 บนชุด PC board ซึ่งอยู่ภายในกล่องสวิตช์ (ต้องยึดสายไฟด้วยวัสดุสำหรับยึด-รูปที่ 2)

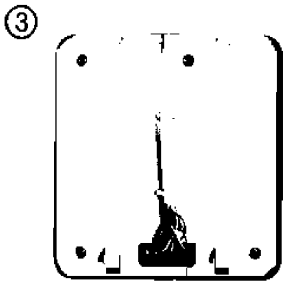
หมายเหตุ

ขณะเดินสายไฟ ลากสายไฟให้ห่างจากสายไฟของแหล่งจ่ายไฟ เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงการรบกวนจากสัญญาณไฟฟ้า (สัญญาณรบกวนภายนอก)



(รูปที่ 2)

③ ต่อสายไฟที่ด้านล่างของฝาครอบด้านหลังของรีโมทคอนโทรล (รูปที่ 3)

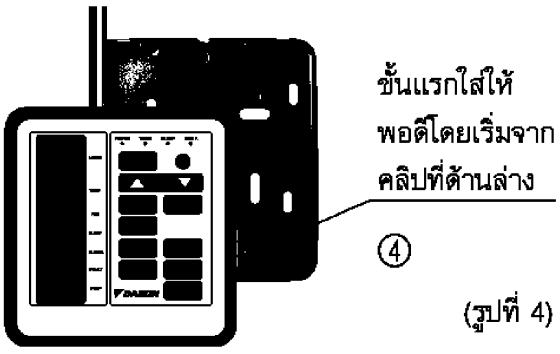


(รูปที่ 3)

④ ติดส่วนบนของรีโมทคอนโทรลกลับเข้าไป ระวังอย่าให้กดทับสายไฟ (รูปที่ 4)

หมายเหตุ

อย่าใช้มือสัมผัส PC board โดยตรง



(รูปที่ 4)

⑤ ใส่กล่องสวิตช์และฝาครอบกลับเข้าที่ (รูปที่ 1)

3PN07282A

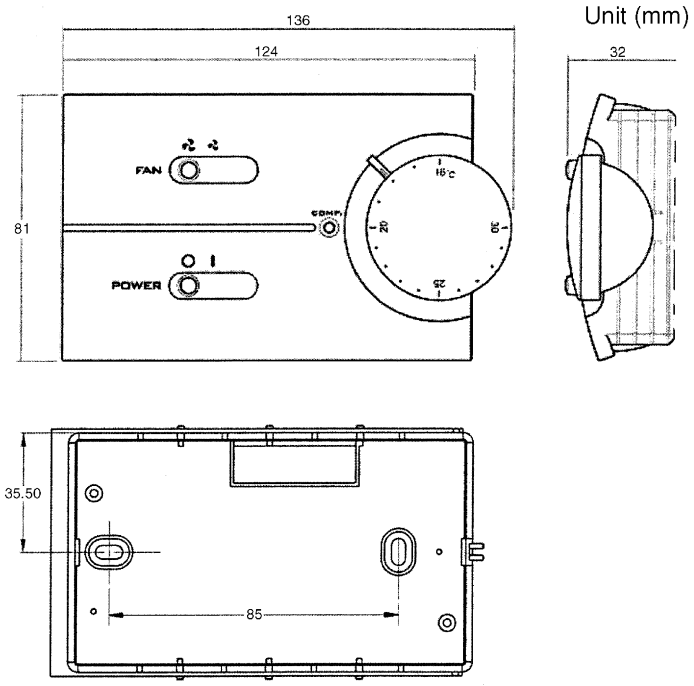
2.4 KRC47-1A

2.4.1 Features



2.4.2 Dimensions

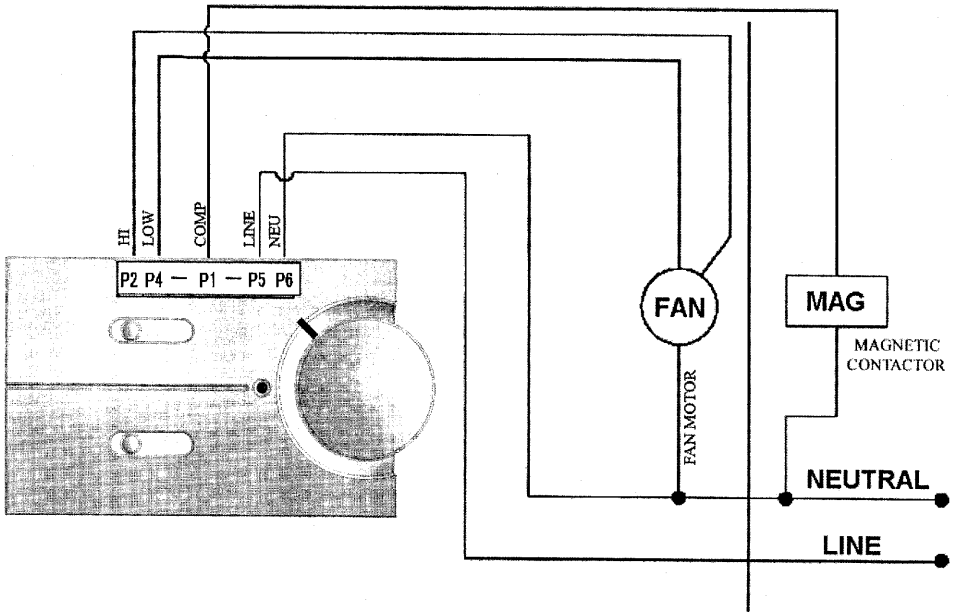
KRC47-1A (Mechanical remote controller)



AS1603348

2.4.3 Wiring Diagram

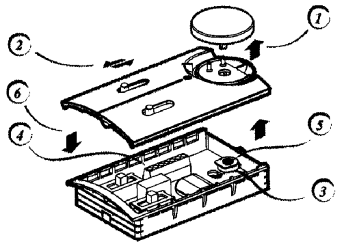
KRC47-1A



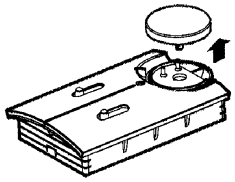
AS1603348

2.4.4 Installation and operation

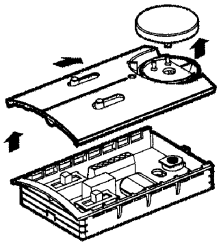
Electronic Remote Controller Installation



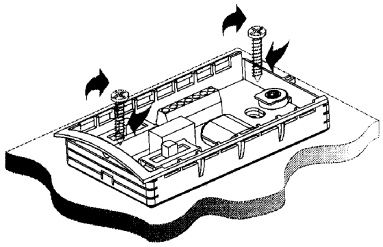
1. Pull the THERMOSTAT SETTING KNOB upward.



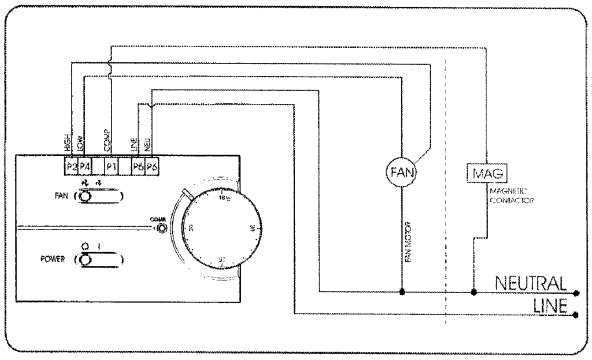
2. Slide the cover to the right and pull upward. Then the cover comes off.



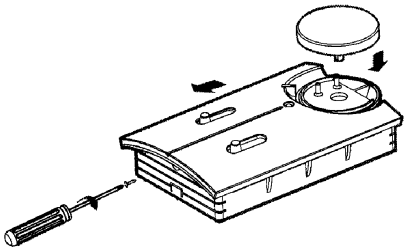
3. Tighten both screws to fix the remote controller to the wall.



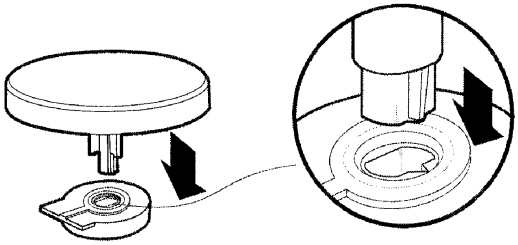
4. Connect wires to connectors following the wiring diagram.



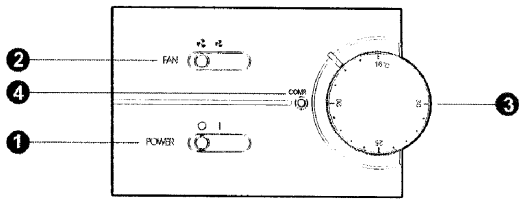
5. Fit the thermostat cover into the thermostat base. Make sure the thermostat slide knobs are on top of the slide switchs as shown.



6. Insert the TEMPERATURE SETTING KNOB to the thermostat slot as shown make sure.



Electronic Remote Controller



❶ POWER BUTTON

Slide the POWER BUTTON to | or ○ position to turn on or off the air conditioner.

❷ FAN BUTTON

Slide the FAN BUTTON to select the required fan speed: (HIGH). (LOW).

❸ TEMPERATURE SETTING KNOB

Turn the TEMPERATURE SETTING KNOB for adjusting the room temperature.The room temperature is adjustable between 16 to 30 °C . Set the required temperature to the position marked with ⬊ The figures show correct temperature because this is electronic thermostat.

❹ COMPRESSOR STATUS LAMP

When the compressor is in operation.the COMPRESSOR STATUS LAMP lights. For protection of the compressor, each time the compressor stops , there will always be a minimum of 3 minute delay before the compressor restarts.

3P184720A

2.5 KRC47-2A / KRC47-4A

2.5.1 Features



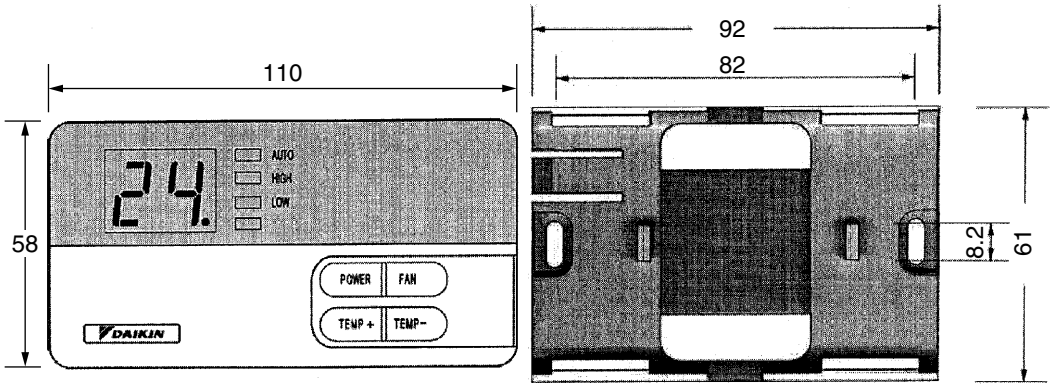
2.5.2 Dimensions

KRC47-2A (Digital remote controller)

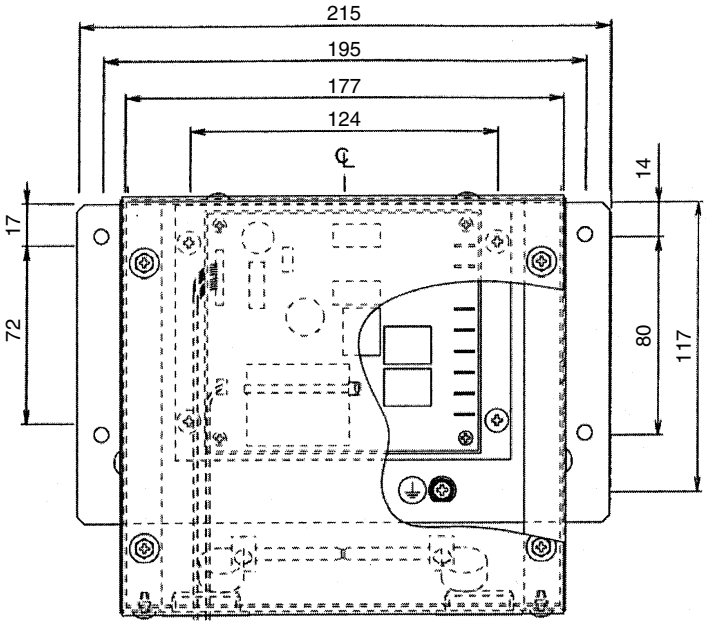
KRC47-2A contains the following parts, and they are packed in one carton.

Unit (mm)

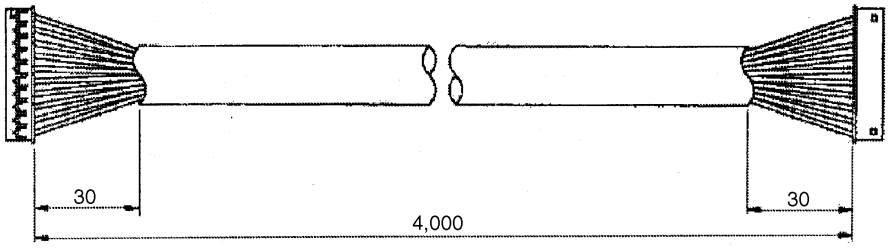
1. Display unit



2. Main control board



3. Cable



4. Manual

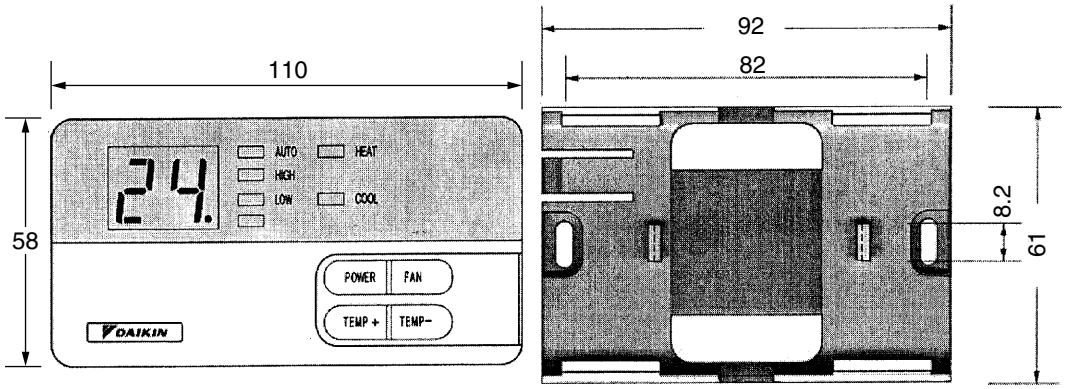
AS1603350B

KRC47-4A (Digital remote controller for duct heater use)

KRC47-4A contains the following parts, and they are packed in one carton.

Unit (mm)

1. Display unit



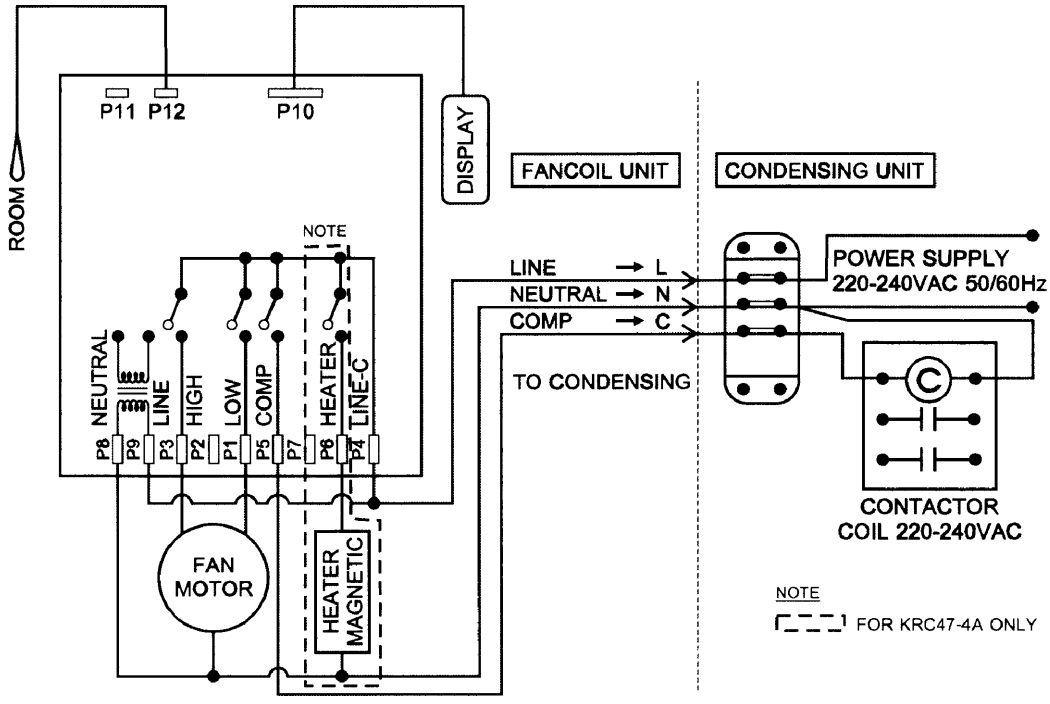
For other parts **2. Main control board** and **3. Cable** will be the same as KRC47-2A.

4. Manual

AS1603351B

2.5.3 Wiring Diagram

KRC47-2A / KRC47-4A



3D058155

2.5.4 Installation and operation

INSTALLATION and OPERATION MANUAL

⚠ WARNING

- Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work.
  Do not try to install this kit yourself.
  Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.
- Perform installation work in accordance with this installation manual.
  Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.
- All electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to local laws and regulations and this installation manual.
  An improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or fire.
- Make sure that all wiring is secured and no external forces act on the terminal connection or wires. When connecting the wiring between the units and remote controller, position the wires so that switch box cover can be securely fastened.
  Improper connections or positioning may result in electric shocks or fire.
- Before touching electrical parts, turn off the unit.

⚠ CAUTION

- Ground this kit.
  Do not connect the ground wire to gas or water pipes, a lightning conductor or a telephone ground wire.
  Incomplete grounding may result in electric shocks.
  - Gas pipe – Ignition or an explosion may occur if the gas leaks
  - Water pipe – Hard vinyl tubes are not effective grounds.
  - Lighting conductor or telephone ground wire
    – Electric potential may rise abnormally if struck by a lightning bolt.
- Install this kit, power cord and connecting wires at least 1 meter away from televisions or radios in order to prevent image interference or noise.
- Use the terminal cover when you connect the field wiring.
  Imcomplete setting may result in electric shocks.

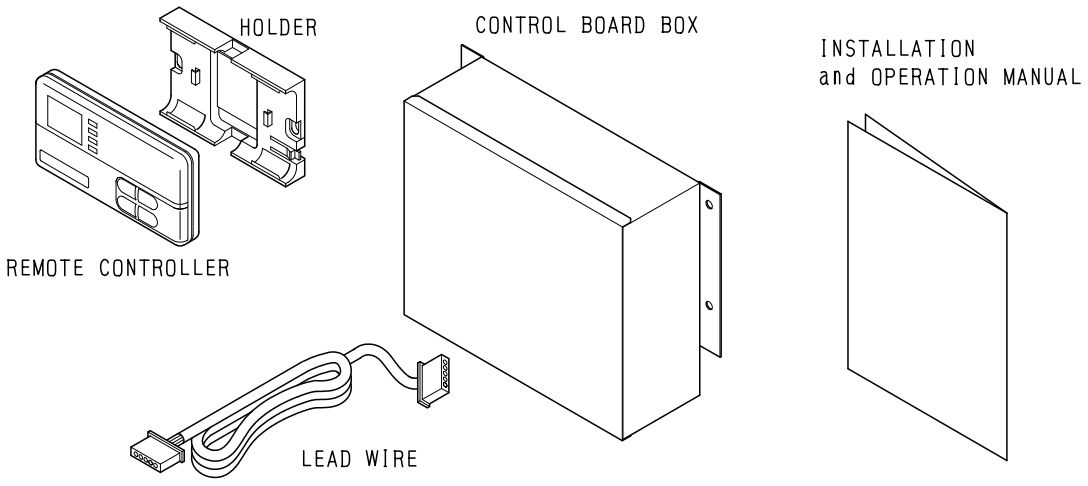
Meaning of warning and caution symbols

⚠ WARNING ·····Failure to observe a warning may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION ·····Failure to observe a caution may result injury or damage to the equipment.

COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

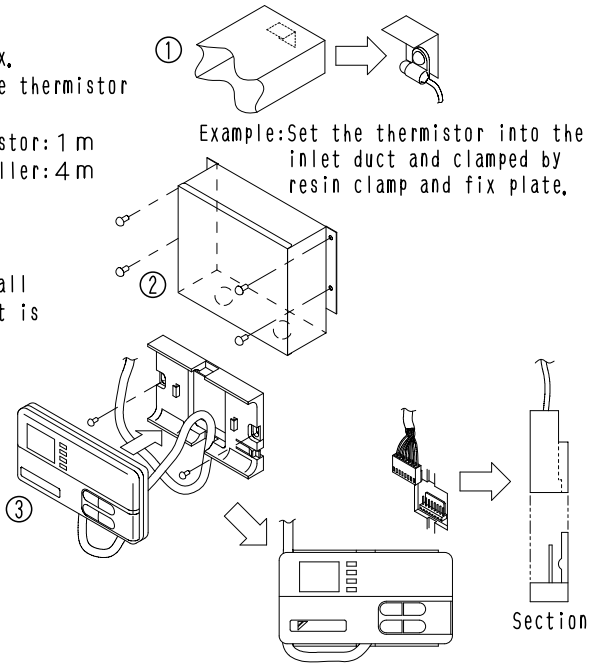


3P180225A

INSTALLATION

Decide the situation of Control Board Box.
It is affected the situations of both the thermistor and the remote controller.
The length of lead wire————Thermistor: 1 m
—Remote Controller: 4 m

① Install the thermistor (in the control board box) at the inlet duct or the suction grille.
② Install the control board box on the wall or the pillar. Make sure the wire inlet is at the bottom of the box.
③ Install the remote controller with the holder.
When install them, the lead wire connect from under side.
(Refer to right fig.)
Be careful the direction of conector, when connect the lead wire to the remote controller. (See right fig.)



ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

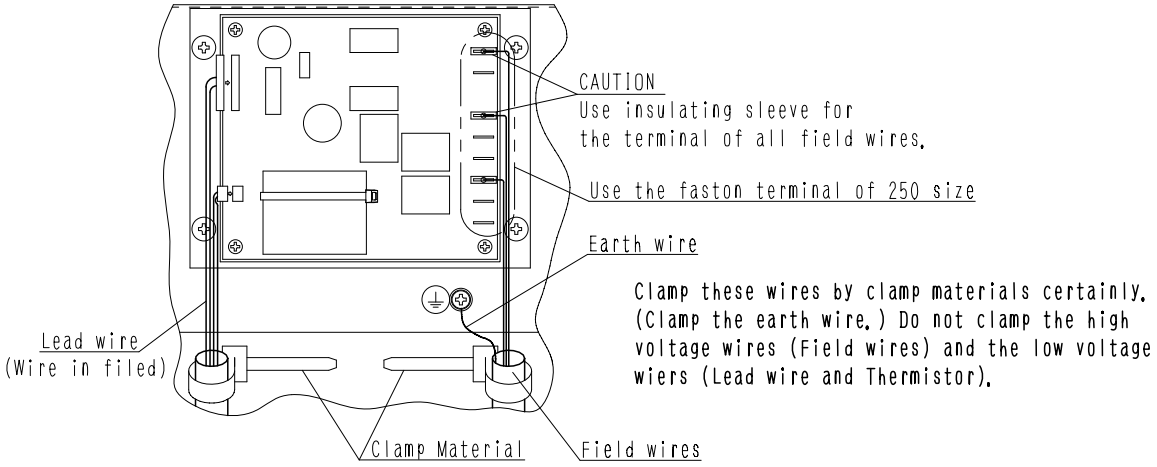
- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All field wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- After wiring work, check power to the equipment shuts OFF when swich is shut OFF.

Wiring specification

Use the wire shown below for between the unit and the control board box.

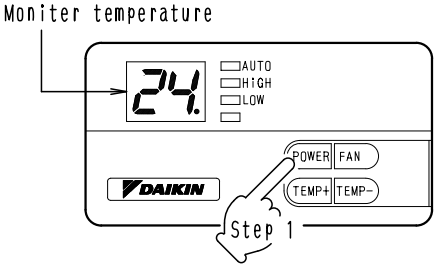
Type	Size
UL1015 AWG18 equivalent	0.75mm^2 each

Connect the wiring between indoor and outdoor units, indoor/outdoor units and power supply, and indoor units and remote controller.
For details, refer to the installation manuals of indoor and outdoor units.



3P180225A

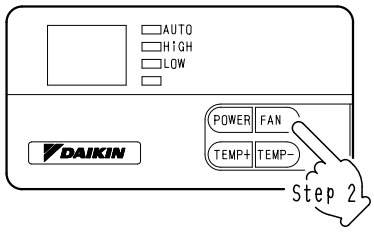
HOW TO OPERATE(KRC47-2A)



Step 1 Power on/off

Press (POWER) button to turn on/off the air conditioner or select mode of operation. When turn on, it will operate according to the last setting.
The "Power" button will operate as the figures below.

OFF ⟷ COOL

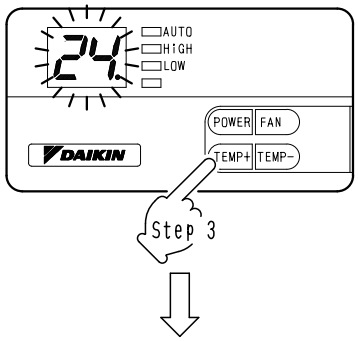


Step 2 Fan

Press (FAN) button to select the fan speeds (higt, low or auto). The LED on display unit will show the fan speed status.

AUTO ➡ HIGH ➡ LOW

Auto fan speed
When the fan speed is put in auto speed the AUTO LED on the Display unit will be lit, the speed will be adjusted automatically according to the difference between the room temperature and setting temperature.
- If the difference is 1℃ or more, the speed is high.
- If the difference is less than zero, the speed is low.

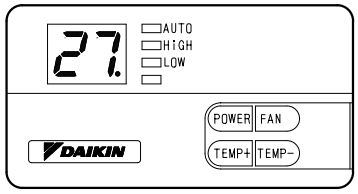


Step 3 Operating mode

COOL

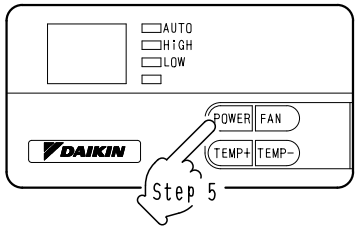
If the system is put in Cool mode, the COOL LED on the Display unit will be lit. The system will operate as the air conditioner. The compressor will
- operate if $T_{room} \geq T_{set} + 1$
- stop if $T_{room} \leq T_{set}$

However, the compressor is subjected to 3-minute delay protection each time it stops.



Step 4 Temperature setting

The setting temperature can be set in the range of 16-32℃ by pressing (TEMP+) or (TEMP-) button. The 7 segments LED on the Display unit will show the setting temperature in blinking for 5 seconds. After that it will go back to display the room temperature.

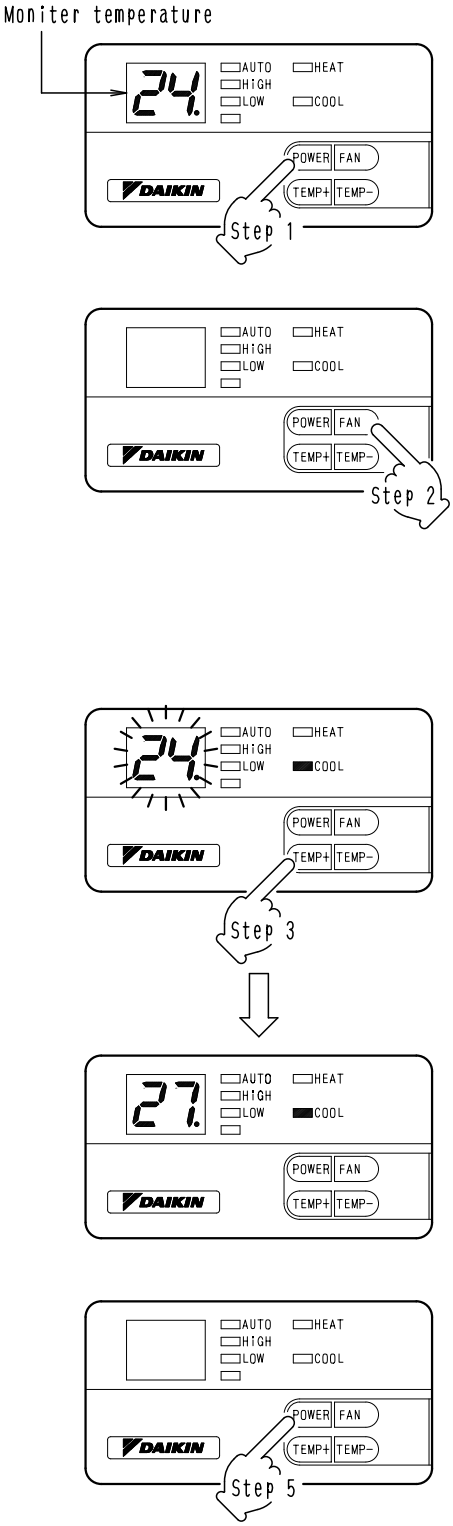


Step 5 Stop

Press (POWER) button.
The operation lamp and Moniter temperature go out.
The air conditioner stops operating.

3P180226

HOW TO OPERATE(KRC47-4A)



Step 1 Power on/off

Press (POWER) button to turn on/off the air conditioner or select mode of operation. When turn on, it will operate according to the last setting.
The "Power" button will operate as the figures below.

OFF ➡ COOL ➡ HEAT

Step 2 Fan

Press [FAN] button to select the fan speeds (higt, low or auto). The LED on display unit will show the fan speed status.

AUTO ➡ HIGH ➡ LOW

Auto fan speed
When the fan speed is put in auto speed the AUTO LED on the Display unit will be lit. the speed will be adjusted automatically according to the difference between the room temperature and setting temperature.
- If the difference is 1℃ or more, the speed is high.
- If the difference is less than zero, the speed is low.

Step 3 Operating mode

COOL

If the system is put in Cool mode, the COOL LED on the Display unit will be lit. The system will operate as the air conditioner. The compressor will
- operate if $T_{room} \geq T_{set} + 1$
- stop if $T_{room} \leq T_{set}$

However, the compressor is subjected to 3-minute delay protection each time it stops.

Heat

If the system is put in Head mode, the HEAT LED on the Display unit will be lit. The reversing valve relay that connected to heater will,
- operate if $T_{room} \leq T_{set} - 1$
- stop if $T_{room} \geq T_{set}$

When the system is turned off, the indoor fan will stop after the heater is OFF more than 30 seconds.

Step 4 Temperature setting

The setting temperature can be set in the range of 16-32℃ by pressing (TEMP+) or [TEMP-] button. The 7 segments LED on the Display unit will show the setting temperature in blinking for 5 seconds. After that it will go back to display the room temperature.

Step 5 Stop

Press (POWER) button.
The operation lamp and Moniter temperature go out.
The air conditioner stops operating.

3P180226

3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller)

3.1 BRC1E62

3.1.1 Features



BRC1E62

- Clear Display ..... Dot matrix display
  Backlight display
- Simple Operation ..... Large buttons and arrow keys
  Guide on display
- Energy Saving ..... Auto operation mode (2 setpoints)
  Setpoint range set
  Setpoint auto reset
  Off timer
- Convenient ..... 3 independent weekly schedules
  Setback
- Comfortable ..... Individual airflow direction (*1)
  Air direction range select (*1)
  Auto airflow rate (*1)

Note: *1. Available only for indoor models that have the corresponding function

3.1.2 Function

✓: Possible

Category	Function	BRC1E62
Basic Functions	Display	Dot matrix
	Operation method	Menu selection
	Backlight	✓
	Multilingual display	11 languages *1
Energy Saving Functions	Auto operation mode (Heat pump and Heat recovery)	2 setpoints Cooling/Heating
	Setpoint range set	✓
	Setpoint auto reset	✓
	Off timer	✓
Convenient Functions	Clock (time display)	✓
	Selectable display *3	✓
	Key lock	✓
	Weekly schedule	✓(3 patterns)
	Setback *4	✓
Comfortable Functions	Individual airflow direction *2	✓
	Air direction range select *2	✓
	Auto airflow rate *2	✓
	Sensing sensor *6	✓
Maintenance/After Sales Service	Model name display *2	✓
	Contact dealer display *5	✓

*1 English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Greek, Dutch, Russian, Turkish and Polish. Polish is newly added.
*2 Available only for indoor models that have the corresponding function.
*3 Selectable from “Standard” or “Detailed”.
*4 “Setback”: available in both heating and cooling mode. More flexible setting than “Home leave”.
*5 The contact address must be registered when installed.
*6 Only available for some indoor units with sensing sensor.

3.1.3 Restrictions

1. In the case of two remote control system.

Due to the limited power supply capacity, there are some restrictions on two-remote-controller connection.

<Common restrictions on VRV and SkyAir>

- If two remote controllers are used to control a single indoor unit, the backlight of the remote controller that is operated first will be lit.

- Combination table

✓: Possible

		Main				
		Navigation remote controller		Wired remote controller	Wireless remote controller	Simplified remote controller
		New	Current	BRC1D61 BRC1C61 BRC1C62	BRC4* BRC7*	BRC2C51 BRC3A61
		BRC1E62	BRC1E61			
Sub	BRC1E62	✓				
	BRC1E61		✓			
	BRC1D61 BRC1C61 BRC1C62		✓	✓		
	BRC4* BRC7*			✓		
	BRC2C51 BRC3A61			✓		✓

- The following functions cannot be set in the sub remote controller. Set them in the main remote controller.
  - Individual airflow direction
  - Auto operation mode (2 setpoints, Cooling/Heating)
  - Energy saving options (Setpoint range set, Setback, Setpoint auto reset)
  - Schedule

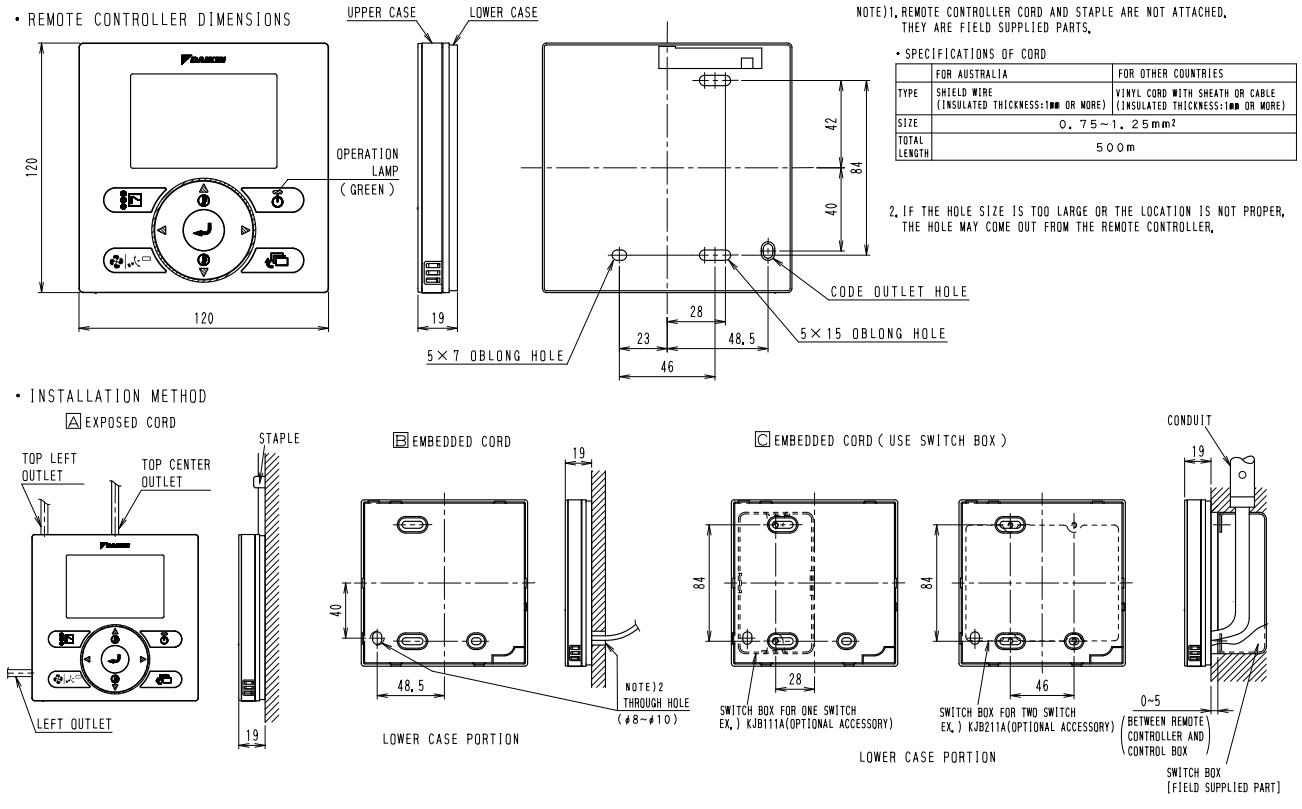
<Restrictions for VRV only>
Only one of the following two items can be used in a two-remote-control system.
- Adaptors for wiring(KRP1*)
- A power supply connector (X18A or X35A) on the indoor Printed Circuit Board

2. In the case of Centralised remote controller connection.
When the centralized remote controller (*1) is connected together with the BRC1E62, the functions mentioned below cannot be set in the BRC1E62.
- Auto operation mode (2 setpoints, Cooling/Heating)
- Energy saving options (Setpoint range set, Setback, Setpoint auto reset)
- Schedule

Note: *1. This means all Centralized remote controllers.
intelligent Touch Manager [DCM601A51] Central Remote Controller [DCS302CA61]
intelligent Touch Controller [DCS601C51] Unified ON/OFF Controller [DCS301BA61]
intelligent Manager [DAM602B51, 52] Schedule Timer [DST301BA61]
Interface for Use in LonWorks® [DMS504B51] Residential Central Remote Controller [DCS303A51]
Interface for Use in BACnet® [DMS502B51]Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices [KRP2A5* / KRP2A6*]

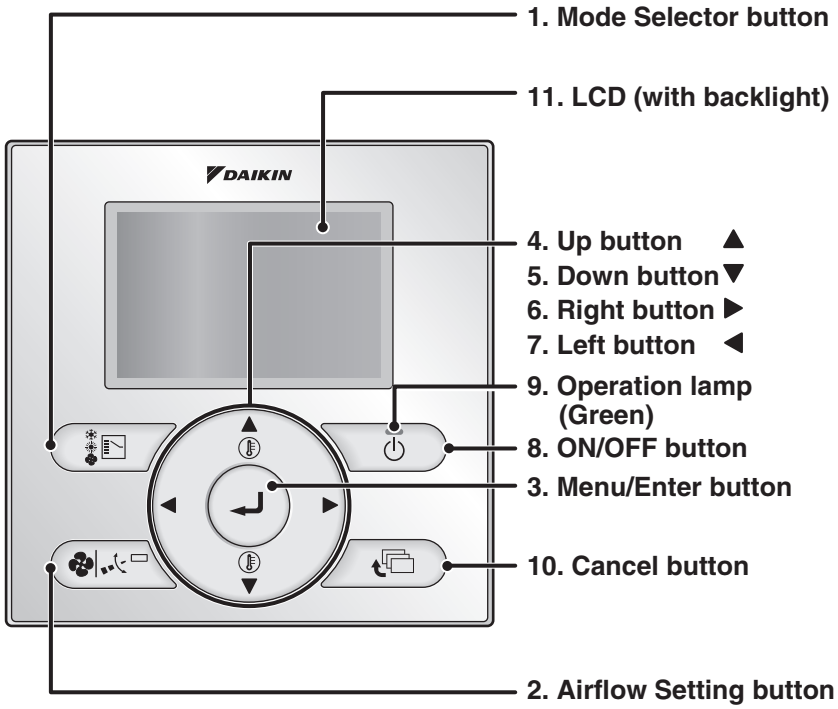
3.1.4 Dimensions

Unit (mm)



3D081567

3.1.5 Names and Functions



Basic operations (i.e., ON/OFF, Operation Mode, Airflow Rate (Air Volume/Fan Speed), Airflow Direction and Set Temperature) are manipulable directly by the above button. Advanced settings are manipulable from the Menu screen displayed by the Menu/Enter button.

NOTE

- **Do not press the buttons on the remote controller with a hard, pointed objects.**
  Otherwise, the remote controller may be damaged or malfunction.

1. Mode Selector button

- Use to select the operation mode of your preference.
  * Available modes vary with the connecting model.

2. Airflow Setting button

- Used to indicate the Airflow Rate (Air Volume/Fan Speed) / Airflow Direction screen.
  * Available fan speed and airflow direction vary with the connecting model.

3. Menu/Enter button

- Used to indicate the Main Menu.
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

4. Up button "▲"

- Used to raise the set temperature.
- Use to highlight the item above the current selection. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.
  * Be sure to press the part with the symbol "▲"

5. Down button "▼"

- Used to lower the set temperature.
- Use to highlight the item below the current selection. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.
  * Be sure to press the part with the symbol "▼"

6. Right button "▶"

- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to next screen per page.
  * Be sure to press the part with the symbol "▶"

7. Left button "◀"

- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to previous screen per page.
  * Be sure to press the part with the symbol "◀"

8. ON/OFF button

- Press this button and system will start.
- Press this button again and system will stop.

9. Operation lamp (Green)

- This lamp lights up during operation.
- This lamp blinks if a malfunction occurs.

10. Cancel button

- Used to return to the previous screen.

11. LCD (with backlight)

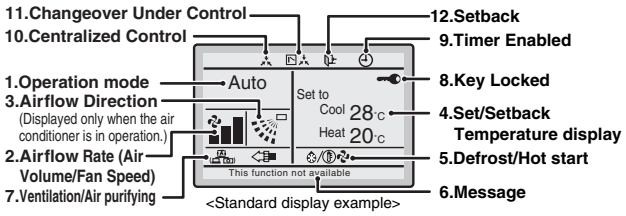
- The backlight will be lit for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button. Press the button while the backlight is lit. (Excluding the ON/OFF button)
- If 2 remote controllers are used to control a single indoor unit, the backlight of the remote controller accessed first will be lit

C: 3P243520-4H

Basic Screen

- Basic screen are two types of Standard display screen and Detailed display screen. The Standard display screen is set by default.
- To switch to the Detailed display, select the “Detailed” in the Main Menu.
- The contents on the screen vary with the operation mode of the connecting model. (The following display will appear when the air conditioner is in Automatic operation.)

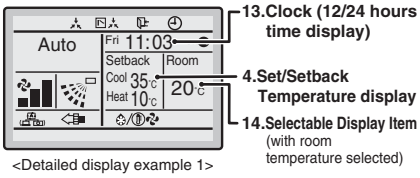
Standard display screen



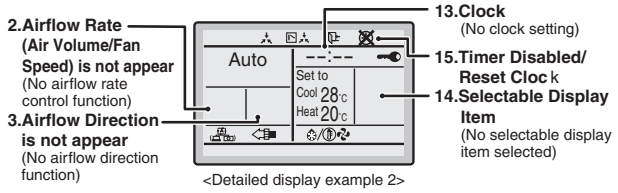
<Standard display example>

Detailed display screen

■ **The clock, and selectable display items appear on the detailed display screen in addition to the items appearing on the standard display screen.**



<Detailed display example 1>



<Detailed display example 2>

1. Operation Mode

- Displays the present operation mode, “Cool”, “Heat”, “Vent”, “Fan”, “Dry” or “Auto”.

2. Airflow Rate (Air Volume/Fan Speed)

- Displays the airflow rate that is set for the indoor unit.
- The airflow rate will not be displayed if the indoor unit does not have airflow rate control function.

3. Airflow Direction “ ”

- Displayed when the airflow direction and swing are set.
- This icon is not displayed if the indoor unit does not have a function to set airflow directions.

4. Set/Setback Temperature display

- When the air conditioner is turned on, “**Set to**” indicates the set temperatures that are set for the air conditioner.
- When the air conditioner is turned off, “**Setback**” indicates the setback temperatures that are set for the air conditioner.

5. Defrost/Hot start “ ”

Displays if the Defrost/Hot start operation is active.
If ventilating operation “ ” is displayed:

- Displayed when a Heat Reclaim Ventilator is connected. For details, refer to the Operation Manual of the Heat Reclaim Ventilator.

6. Message

The following messages are displayed.

“This function not available.”

- Displayed for a few seconds when an operation button is pressed and the indoor unit does not have the corresponding function.
- If a number of indoor units are in operation, the message will appear only if none of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function, i.e., the message will not appear if at least one of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function.

“Error: Push Menu button”
“Warning: Push Menu button”

- Displayed if an error or warning is detected

“Quick Start” (Split system only)

- Displayed if the quick cooling/heating function is turned on.

“Time to clean filter”
“Time to clean element”
“Time to clean filter and element”

- Displayed when the time to clean the filter or element has come.

7. Ventilation/Air Purifying

- Displayed when a Heat Reclaim Ventilator is connected.
- **Ventilation Mode icon.“ ”**
  These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (Heat Reclaim Ventilator only) (AUTOMATIC, ENERGY RECLAIM VENTILATION, BYPASS).
- **Air purifying icon “ ”**
  This icon indicates that the Air Purifying unit (optional accessory) is in operation.

8. Key Locked “ ”

- Displayed when the key lock is set.

9. Timer Enabled “ ”

- Displayed if the Schedule timer or OFF timer is enabled.

10. Centralized Control “ ”

- Displayed if the system is under the management of centralized control equipment (optional accessories) and the operation of the system through the remote controller is prohibited.

11. Changeover Under Control “ ”

(VRV only)

- Displayed if the remote controller has no cool/heat selection eligibility.

12. Setback “ ”

- The setback icon blinks when the air conditioner is turned on under the setback control.

13. Clock (12/24 hours time display)

- Displayed when the clock is set.
- If the clock is not set, “ -- : -- ” will be displayed.

14. Selectable Display Item

- Displayed when the detailed display is selected.
- No detailed items are selected by default.

15. Timer Disabled/Reset Clock “ ”

- Displayed when the clock needs to be reset.
- The schedule timer function will not work unless the clock is reset.

C: 3P243520-4H

1. Safety Precautions

■ Also refer to installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

Please read these "Safety Precautions" carefully before installing the remote controller.

- This manual classifies the precautions into WARNINGS and CAUTIONS.
  Be sure to follow all the precautions below: They are all important for ensuring safety.

⚠ **WARNING**	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

- After completing installation, conduct a test operation to check for faults and explain to the customer how to operate the remote controller and cleaning of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

⚠ WARNING
Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work. Do not attempt to install the remote controller yourself. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or a fire.
Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the remote controller. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or a fire.
Install the remote controller in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or a fire.
Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use the specified parts may result in the remote controller falling down, electric shocks or a fire.
Install the remote controller on a foundation that can withstand its mass. Insufficient strength may result in the remote controller falling down and causing injury.
Make certain that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to the applicable legislation (note 1) and this installation manual, using a separate circuit. In addition, even if the wiring is short, make sure to use a wiring that has sufficient length and never connect additional wiring to make the length sufficient. Insufficient capacity of the power supply circuit or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or a fire. (note 1) applicable legislation means “All international, national and local directives, laws, regulations and/or codes which are relevant and applicable for a certain product or domain”.
Turn off the power before performing installation work. Touch with live parts may cause electric shocks.
Do not disassembly, reconstruct or repair. Electric shock or a fire may cause.
Make sure that all wiring is secured, using the specified wirings and ensuring that external forces do not act on the terminal connections or wirings. Improper connections or fixing may cause an overheat or a fire.
The choice of materials and installations must comply with the applicable national and international standards.

⚠ CAUTION
To avoid electric shocks due to entry of water or insects, fill the wiring through hole with putty.
Do not operate with wet hands to avoid electric shocks.
Do not wash the remote controller with water. It may result in electric shocks or a fire.
Install the air conditioner, power supply wiring, remote controller wiring and transmission wiring at least 1 meter away from televisions or radios to prevent image interference or noise. (Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 1 meter may not be sufficient to eliminate the noise.)
Do not install the remote controller in the following locations: 1. Where there is oil mist, oil spray or vapour for example a kitchen. Resin parts may deteriorate and fall off. 2. Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced. 3. Where there is machinery which emits electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may disturb the control system, and cause a malfunction of the equipment. 4. Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fibre or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions may result in a fire. 5. High temperature area or directly flamed point. It may cause an overheat or a fire. 6. Moist area, or place where may be exposed to water. If water enters inside of the remote controller, electrical components may fail. It may result in electric shocks or a fire.
When remote controller’s thermostat sensor is used, select the installation location considering the followings. ● A place where average temperature in the room can be detected. ● A place where is not exposed to direct sunlight. ● A place where is far apart from heat source. ● A place where is not affected by outdoor air due to door opening/closing or the like.

2. Accessories

The following accessories are included.

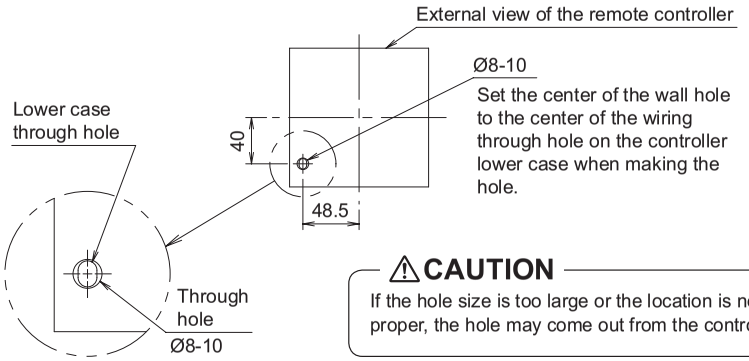
Wood screw	Small screw	Clamp	Operation manual	Installation manual	Wiring retainer
(M3.5×16)	(M4×16)				
					
(2 pcs.)	(2 pcs.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)

3. Remote controller installation procedure

3-1 Determine where to install the remote controller.

Make sure to follow "**1. Safety Precautions**" when determining the location.

3-2 Make a wiring through hole on the wall if the wires are taken out from the back side.



⚠CAUTION

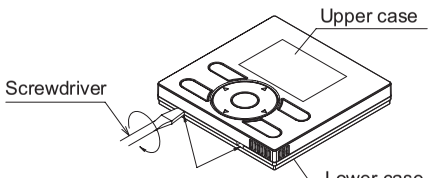
If the hole size is too large or the location is not proper, the hole may come out from the controller.

3-3 Remove upper case.

Insert a screwdriver in the recess of lower case to remove the upper case (2 points).

Remote controller Printed Circuit Board is installed on the upper case. Take care not to damage the Printed Circuit Board with the screwdriver.

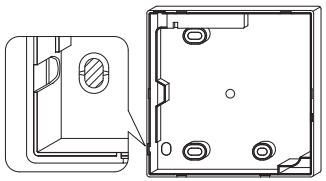
Take care that dust or moisture does not touch the Printed Circuit Board.



Insert and twist the screwdriver lightly for removal.

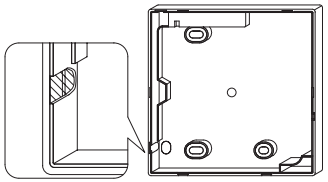
3-4 Determine the direction of controller wiring outlet (back outlet, left outlet, top left outlet, top center outlet).

3-4-1 Back outlet



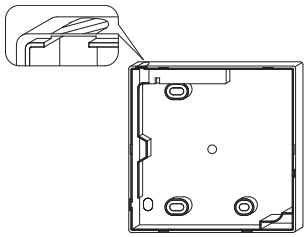
Cut off resin area (hatched area).

3-4-2 Left outlet



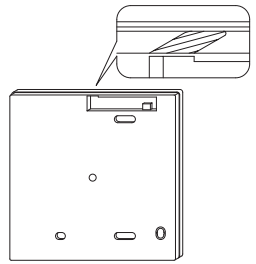
Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-3 Top left outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-4 Top center outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-5 Conduct wiring.

⚠CAUTION

1. Switch box and transmission wiring are not attached.
2. Do not directly touch the Printed Circuit Board.

Wiring Specifications

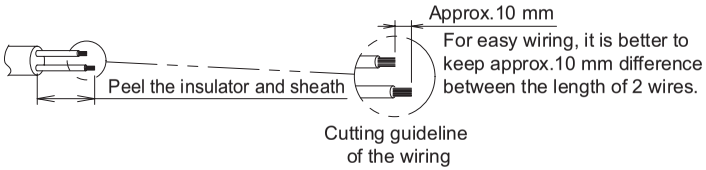
Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 cores) (∗1)
Wiring Size	0.75~1.25 mm^2
Wiring Length	Max. 500m (∗2)

∗1. Some countries may require a shielded wiring.
Refer to Installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

∗2. This will be the total extended length in the system when doing group control.

3P243521-4E

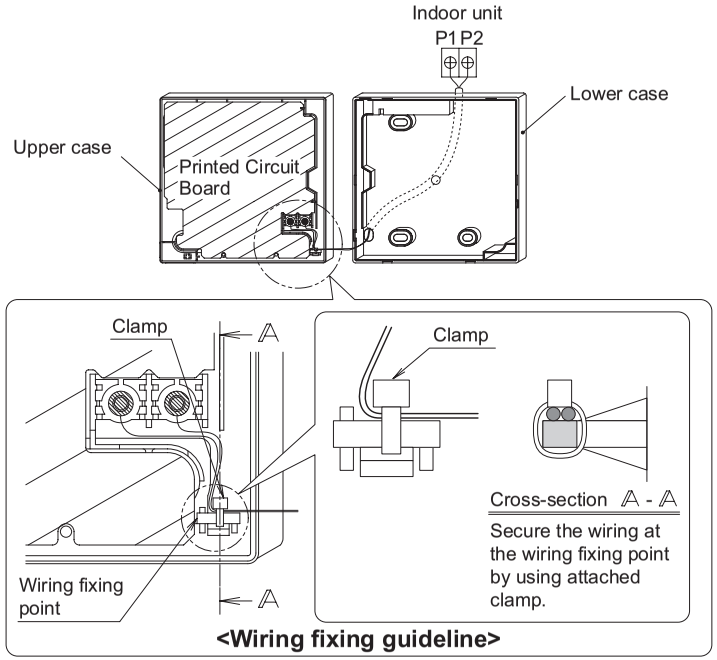
Prepare the wiring for connection to the remote controller following these instructions.



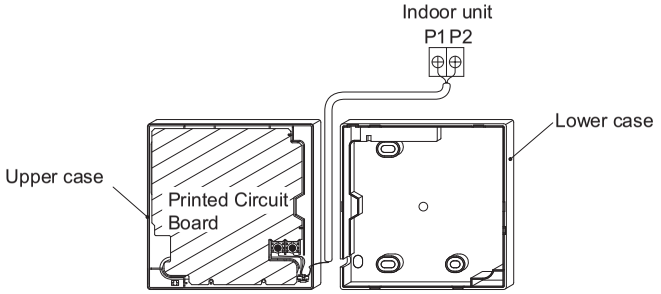
Sheath stripping length:
- Approx.150 mm for top left outlet
- Approx.200 mm for top center outlet

Connect the terminals (P/P1, N/P2) of the remote controller to the terminals (P1, P2) of the indoor unit. (P1 and P2 have no polarities.)

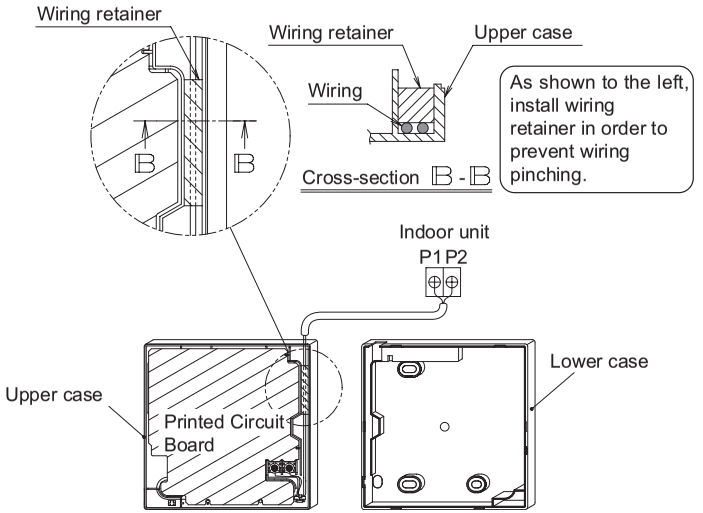
3-5-1 Back outlet



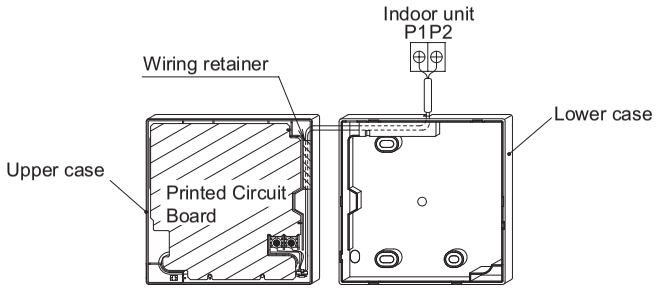
3-5-2 Left outlet



3-5-3 Top left outlet



3-5-4 Top center outlet



⚠CAUTION

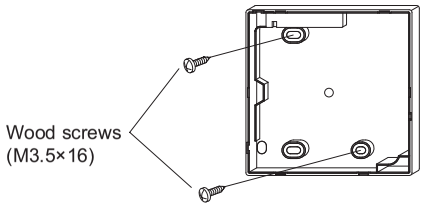
- Perform the wiring apart from a power line not to receive electrical noise (external noise).
- Seal the wiring outlet hole securely with putty (field supply) to prevent entry of insects or the like.

3-6 Fixing procedure of lower case.

In case of wiring a remote controller through top center outlet or back outlet, perform wiring through the outlet hole in the lower case before it is wall install.

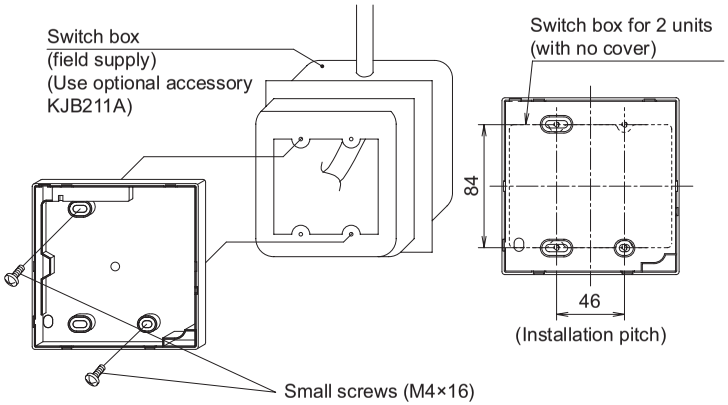
3-6-1 In the case of installation on the wall

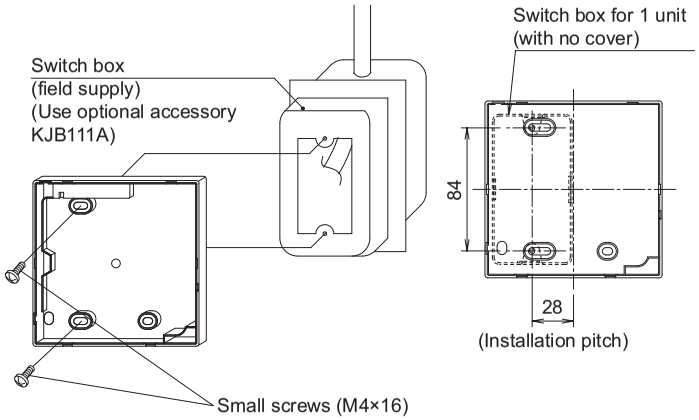
Secure by using attached wood screws (2 pcs.).



3-6-2 In the case of installation on the switch box

Secure by using attached small screws (2 pcs.).



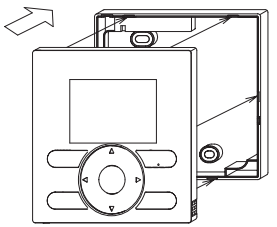


⚠CAUTION

- Select flat place for installation face as possible.
- And, do not tighten the installation screws too much not to deform the lower case.

3-7 Install the upper case as original condition.

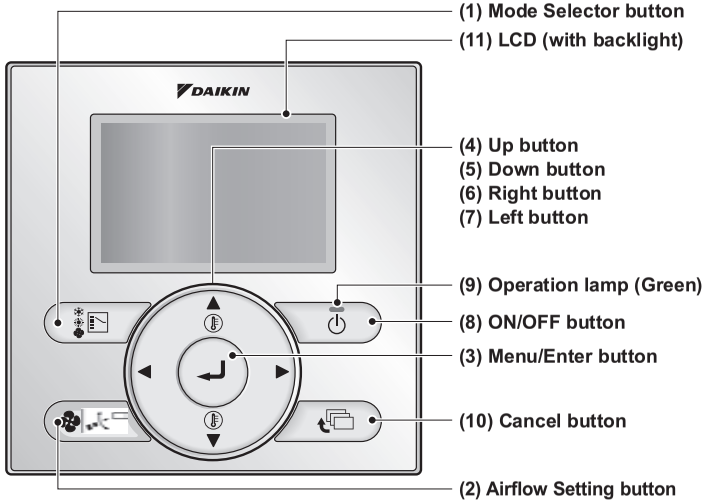
- Align the upper case with tabs of the lower case (6 points), inset and install the upper case.
- Install the wiring with care to prevent pinching.
- Peel off a protective seal which is attached on the upper case.



3P243521-4E

4. Functions and menu items of remote controller buttons

4-1 Functions and menu items



(1) Mode Selector button
Used to select the operation mode.

(2) Airflow Setting button
Used to indicate the Airflow Rate (Air Volume/Fan Speed)/Airflow Direction screen.

(3) Menu/Enter button
- Used to indicate the Main menu. (For details of Main menu, refer to the operation manual.)
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

Main menu

Air Flow Direction
Quick Start
Ventilation
Energy Saving Options
Schedule
Filter Auto Clean
Maintenance Information
Configuration
Current Settings
Clock & Calendar
Language

*Depending on connected model

(4) Up button "▲"
- Used to raise the set temperature.
- Use to highlight the item above the current selection. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(5) Down button "▼"
- Used to lower the set temperature.
- Use to highlight the item below the current selection. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(6) Right button "►"
- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to next screen per page.

(7) Left button "◄"
- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to previous screen per page.

(8) ON/OFF button
- Press this button and system will start.
- Press this button again and system will stop.

(9) Operation lamp (Green)
This lamp lights up during operation. The lamp blinks if a malfunction occurs.

(10) Cancel button
- Used to return to the previous screen.
- Press and hold this button for 4 seconds or longer to display Service Settings menu.

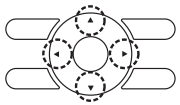
(11) LCD (with backlight)
The backlight will be lit for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.

Service Settings menu

Test Operation
Maintenance Contact
Field Settings
Min Setpoints Differential
Group Address
Indoor unit AirNet Address
Outdoor unit AirNet Address
Error History
Indoor Unit Status
Outdoor Unit Status
Forced Fan ON
Switch Main Sub Controller
Filter Indicator
Test Filter Auto Clean
Brush/Filter Ind.
Disable Filter Auto Clean

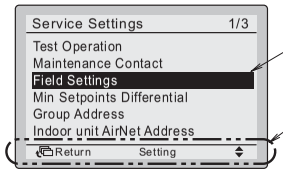
*Depending on connected model

⚠CAUTION
- Operate the button during backlight lit. However, ON/OFF may be operated concurrently with backlight lit.
- When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers, the backlight of remote controller which is operated first is lit.
- To operate Up/Down/Left/Right button, be sure to press the part with symbol "▲", "▼", "◄", or "►".



4-2 Displays for button operation descriptions

<Service Settings menu screen>



Highlighted display (selected items)

Instructions for manipulating the buttons will appear.

5. Power-on

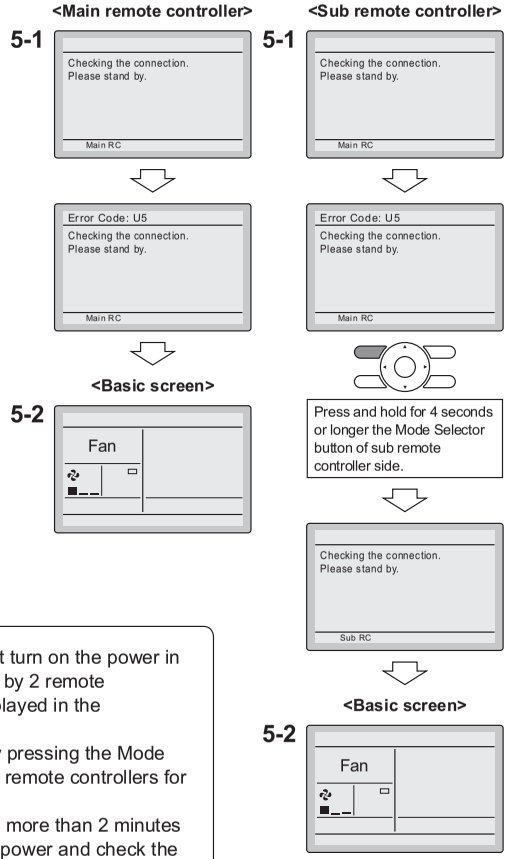
- Check for completion of indoor/outdoor units wiring.
- Check for closing of control box lid of indoor and outdoor units before turn on the power.

5-1 Followings is displayed after turn on the power.
"Checking the connection.
Please stand by."

During above display, backlight does not light by button operation.

When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers:

Be sure to set sub remote controller during above display. Press and hold for 4 seconds or longer the Mode Selector button of the remote controller to be set. When the display is changed from main remote controller to sub remote controller, the setting is completed.



5-2 Basic screen is displayed.

⚠CAUTION

If sub remote controller is not set at turn on the power in the case of 1 indoor unit controlled by 2 remote controllers, "Error code: U5" is displayed in the connection checking screen.
Select the sub remote controller by pressing the Mode Selector button of either one of the remote controllers for 4 seconds or longer.
If the Basic screen is not displayed more than 2 minutes after "Sub RC" display, turn off the power and check the wiring.

NOTE

When selecting a different language, refer to **"12. Language"** on page 23.

6. Field settings

6-1 Press and hold the Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer.
Service Settings menu is displayed.

6-2 Select **Field settings** in the Service Settings menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Field settings screen is displayed.

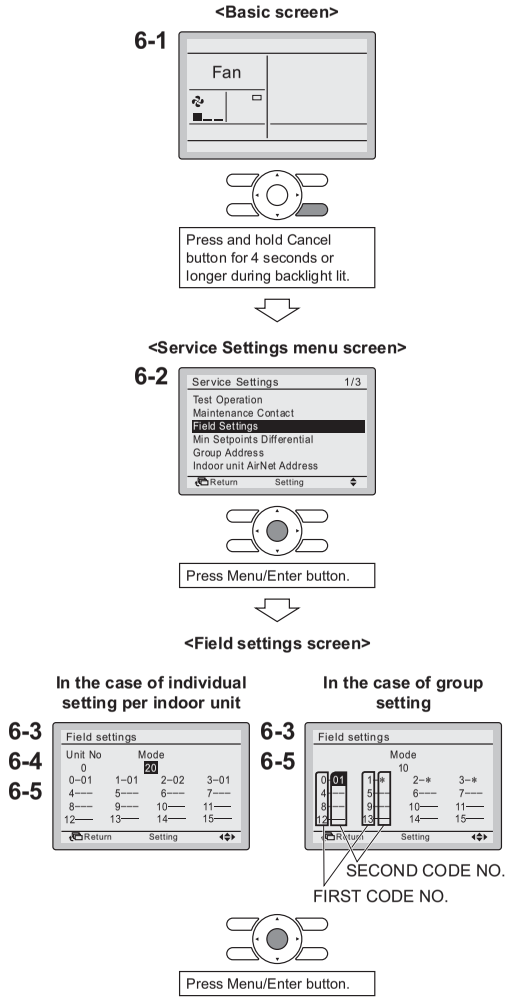
6-3 Highlight the Mode No., and select desired "Mode No." by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button.
For the commonly-used field setting item, refer to page 14 and 15.

6-4 In the case of setting per indoor unit during group control (When Mode No. such as **20** , **21** , **22** , **23** , **25** are selected), highlight the Unit No. and select "Indoor unit No." to be set by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button. (In the case of group setting, this operation is not needed.)

In the case of individual setting per indoor unit, current settings are displayed. And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.

6-5 Highlight SECOND CODE NO. of the FIRST CODE NO. to be changed, and select desired "SECOND CODE NO." by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button.
Multiple identical mode number settings are available.

In the case of group setting, all of SECOND CODE NO. which may be set are displayed as " ∗ ".
" ∗ " is changed to SECOND CODE NO. to be set.
And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.



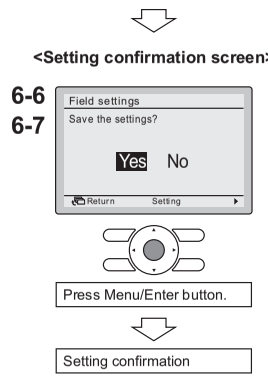
6-6 Press Menu/Enter button. Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

6-7 Select **Yes** and press Menu/Enter button. Setting details are saved and Field settings screen returns.

6-8 In the case of multiple setting changes, repeat "**6-3**" to "**6-7**".

6-9 After all setting changes are completed, press Cancel button twice.

6-10 Backlight goes out, and "Checking the connection. Please stand by." is displayed during initialization. After the initialization, the Basic screen returns.



⚠CAUTION

- When an optional accessory is installed on the indoor unit, settings of the indoor unit may be changed. Refer to the manual of the optional accessory.
- For field setting details of the outdoor unit, refer to Installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2							
				01		02		03	04		
10 (20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life filter	Light	Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 5.000 hrs.	—	—		
			Long-life filter		Approx. 2.500 hrs.		Approx. 1.250 hrs.				
			Standard filter		Approx. 200 hrs.		Approx. 100 hrs.				
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter		—	—		
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use		Not use		—	—		
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		—	—		
11 (21)	0	Setting number of connected SPLIT system simultaneous operation system indoor units (Setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair		Twin		Triple	Double twin		

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting	SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2			
			01	02	03	04
12 (22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).	Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	—	—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Setting for when using remote sensor).	1°C	0.5°C	—	—
13 (23)	0	High ceilling setting (Setting for when installed in ceilling higher than 2.7m). ∗Height depends on the connection model. Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit to be connected for details.	≤2.7m ∗	2.7m<, ≤3.0m ∗	3.0m<, ≤3.5m ∗	—
	1	Selection of airflow direction (Setting for when a sealing pad of air discharge outlet has been installed).	4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge	—
	3	Selection of airflow function (Setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).	Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
	4	Airflow direction range setting.	Upper	Normal	Lower	—
	6	Setting the external static pressure (Setting according to the connected duct resistance)	Normal	High static pressure	Low static pressure	—
		For FHYK	Normal	High ceiling	—	—
15 (25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.	Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
1c	1	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (For Auto mode and Setback function only)	Not use	Use	—	—
1e	2	Setback function	Not use	Heating only	Cooling only	Cooling and Heating

Notes)
1. Though setting is performed totally in the group, set Mode No. in the parenthesis when individual setting per indoor unit or checking after the setting should be performed.
2. SECOND CODE NO. at factory shipment is set to "01".
   However for the following cases it is not "01".
   - Airflow direction range setting (except Round flow cassette)···"02"
   - Thermostat sensor in remote controller (SPLIT system only)···"02"
   - Thermostat sensor in remote controller for auto mode and Setback function only···"02"
   - Setback function···"04"
3. Any function which the indoor unit does not have is not displayed.

7. Test operation method (in the case of SPLIT system)

∗ In the case of VRV system, refer to the manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Also refer to installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

- Check that wiring work of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is completed.
- Check that control box lid of the indoor unit and the outer panel and piping cover of the outdoor unit are closed.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping and electric wiring are completed, clean the inside of the indoor unit and decoration panel.
- Perform the test operation according to following procedure.

7-1 To protect the compressor, turn on the power to the outdoor unit at least 6 hours prior to test operation.

7-2 Confirm that stop valves of both liquid side and gas side are opened.
<Make sure that outer panel and piping cover are closed before operation (danger of electric shock). >
∗ After air purge by vacuum pump, refrigerant pressure may not rise even though the stop valve is opened. The reason is that refrigerant system of the outdoor unit is blocked by electric expansion valve or the like. Operation is no problem.

7-3 Press Mode Selector button to select Cool mode.

7-4 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer. Service Settings menu is displayed.

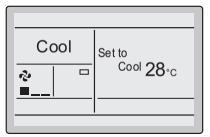
7-5 Select **Test Operation** in the Service Settings menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and "Test Operation" is displayed.

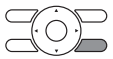
Notes for backlight

- The backlight will be lit for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.
- Operate the buttons during the backlight lit. However, ON/OFF can be operated concurrently with the backlight lit.

<Basic screen>

7-3
7-4

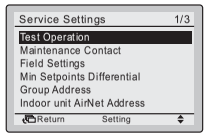


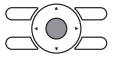


Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

<Service Setting menu screen>

7-5





Press Menu/Enter button.

7-6 Press ON/OFF button within about 10 seconds. The test operation starts. Check operation condition for 3 minutes.
∗ Note) In the case of above-mentioned procedures 7-5 and 7-6 in reverse order, test operation can start as well.

7-7 Press Airflow Setting button.

7-8 Select airflow direction setting by pressing the "▶" button on the setting screen.
Use the "▼▲" buttons to change the airflow direction.

7-9 After the operation of airflow direction is confirmed, press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns.

7-10 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the Basic screen.
Service Settings menu is displayed.

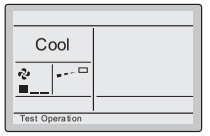
7-11 Select **Test Operation** in the Service Settings menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and normal operation is conducted.
∗Note) Test operation will automatically finish in 30 minutes.

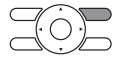
7-12 Check the functions according to the operation manual.

7-13 When the decoration panel is not installed, turn off the power after the test operation finishes.

- If the interior finish work is not completed when the test operation is finished, for protection of the air conditioner ask the customer not to operate the air conditioner until the interior finish work is completed. If the air conditioner is operated, the inside of the indoor units may be polluted by substances generated from the coating and adhensives used for the interior finish work and cause water splash and leakage.

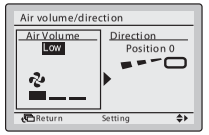
7-6

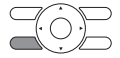




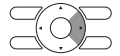
Press ON/OFF button (within 10 seconds).

7-7



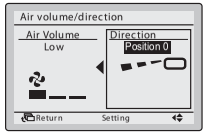


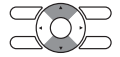
Press Airflow Setting button.



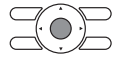
To select airflow direction setting, press "▶" (Right) button on the setting screen.

7-9



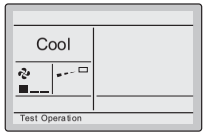


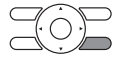
Change the airflow direction by using "▼▲" (Up/Down) button.



Press Menu/Enter button.

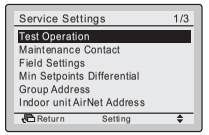
7-10

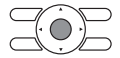




Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

7-11





Press Menu/Enter button.

<Basic screen>

⚠CAUTION

- If operation is not available due to any malfunction, refer to following **Malfunction diagnosis method** .
- After the test operation finishes, check that malfunction (error) code history is not displayed in the Maintenance Information screen of the Main menu according to the following procedure.

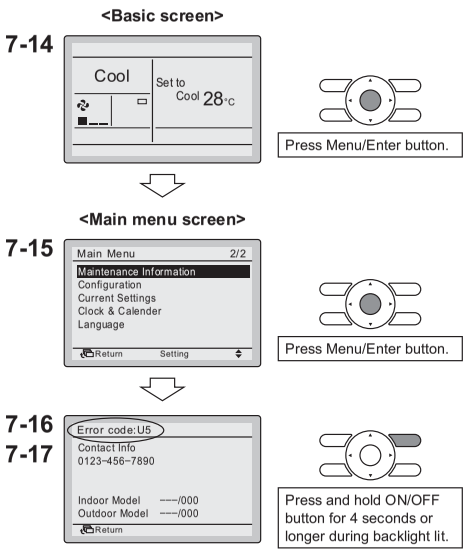
7-14 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen. Main menu screen is displayed.

7-15 Select **Maintenance Information** in the Main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

7-16 Maintenance Information screen is displayed. Check that malfunction (error) code history is not displayed in the screen.

∗ If no malfunction (error) code history is displayed following this procedure the system has normally completed the test operation.

7-17 If the malfunction (error) code history is displayed, conduct the failure diagnosis referring to <Malfunction code list> in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
After the failure diagnosis finishes, press and hold ON/OFF button for 4 seconds or longer in the "Maintenance Information" screen to erase the malfunction (error) code history.



Malfunction diagnosis method

- When the remote controller displays any item in following table, inspect the details in the table.
- If a malfunction (error) occurs, "code" is displayed.
  Conduct the failure analysis referring to "Malfunction code list" in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  And when the unit No. which detected the malfunction (error) during group control is confirmed, refer to "**8. Checking procedure of Malfunction (Error) History**".

Remote controller display	Description
No display	● Power outage, power voltage failure or open-phase ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units) ● Indoor Printed Circuit Board assembly failure ● Remote controller wiring disconnection ● Remote controller failure ● Fuse blown (outdoor unit)
Display of "Checking the connection. Please stand by." is turned on. ∗	● Indoor Printed Circuit Board assembly failure ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units)

∗ Though "Checking the connection. Please stand by." is displayed for 90 seconds at maximum after turn on the power supply, this does not mean a malfunction. (Determine after 90 seconds.)

8. Checking procedure of Malfunction (Error) History

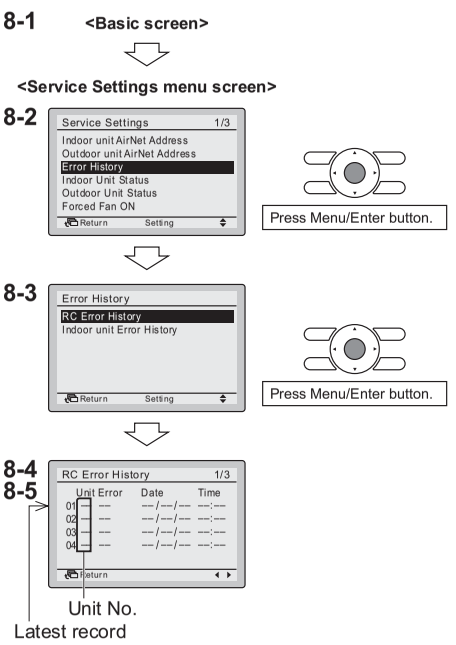
8-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the Basic screen. Service Settings menu is displayed.

8-2 Select **Error History** in the Service Settings menu, and press Menu/Enter button. The Error History menu screen is displayed.

8-3 Select **RC Error History** in the Error History menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Malfunction (Error) codes and Unit No. can be confirmed in the RC Error History screen.

8-4 In the Malfunction (Error) History, 10 items from the latest are displayed in order.

8-5 Press Cancel button in the RC Error History screen 3 times.
The Basic screen returns.



9. Registration method of the Maintenance Contact

● Registration of the service contact.

9-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the Basic screen.
Service Settings menu is displayed.

9-2 Select **Maintenance Contact** in the Service Settings menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Maintenance Contact menu screen is displayed.

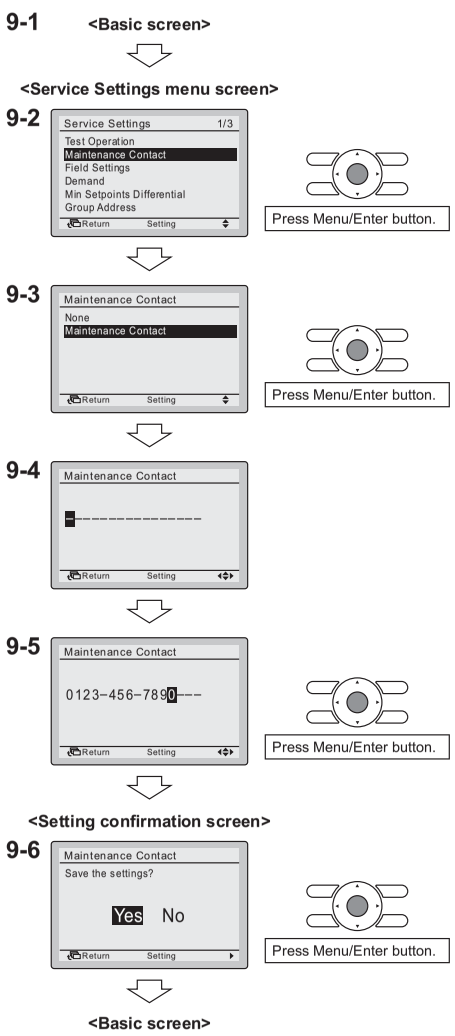
9-3 Select **Maintenance Contact**, and press Menu/Enter button.

9-4 Enter the telephone number.
Numeric varies by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button. Enter from the left end, and blank digit should be left as " - ".

9-5 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

9-6 Select **Yes** and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are determined and Service Settings menu screen returns.

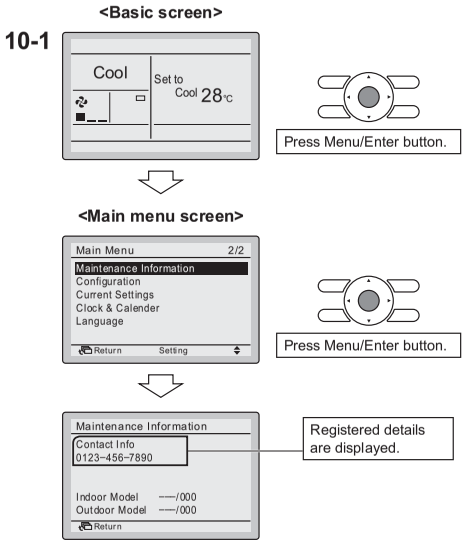
9-7 Press Cancel button once.
The Basic screen returns.



10. Confirmation of registered details

10-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select **Maintenance Information** in the Main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

10-2 Press Cancel button twice.
The Basic screen returns.



11. Clock & Calendar

11-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select **Clock & Calendar** in the Main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

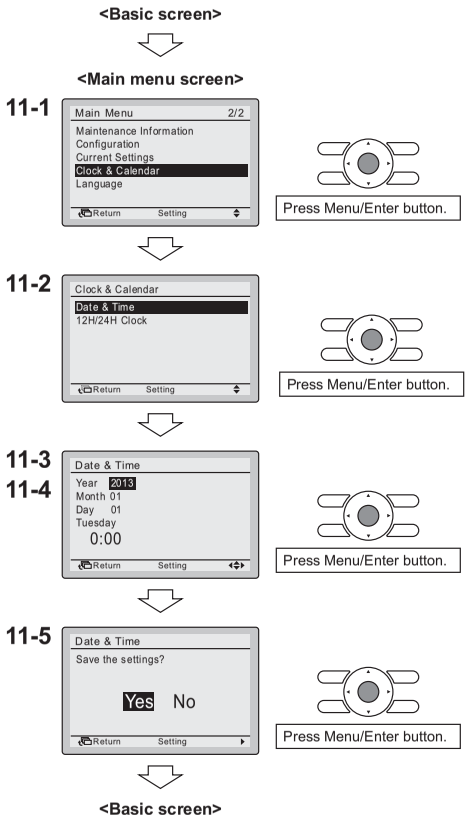
11-2 Press " ▼▲ " buttons to select **Date & Time** on the Clock & Calendar screen.
∗ The Date & Time screen will appear when the Menu/Enter button is pressed.

11-3 Select "Year", "Month", "Day" and time by using " ◀▶ " (Left/Right) button and set by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button in the Date & Time screen.
Press and hold the button for continuous change of the numeric value.
∗ Day of the week is set automatically.

11-4 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

11-5 Select **Yes** and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and Basic screen returns.

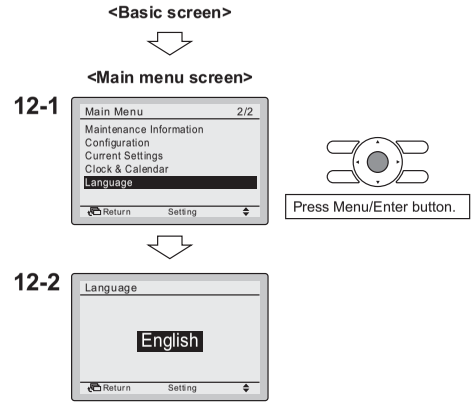
∗ If duration of power outage exceeds 48 hours, reset is needed.



12. Language

12-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select **Language** in the Main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

12-2 Press " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) buttons to select "Language" on the Language screen.
English/Deutsch/Français/Italiano/Español/Português/Nederlands/русский/Ελληνικά/Türkçe/Polski
Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and Basic screen returns.



13. Prohibit buttons

● Restriction of the number of operable buttons.

13-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Normally, "Lock function" is not shown in Main menu.
Press Menu/Enter button for 4 seconds to display the "Lock function".

13-2 Select **Lock function** in the Main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

13-3 Select **Prohibit Buttons** in the menu, press Menu/Enter button.

13-4 Select "Up/Down/L/R", "ON/OFF", "Mode", Fan Speed" by using " ◀▶ " (Left/Right) button and set by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button.

13-5 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

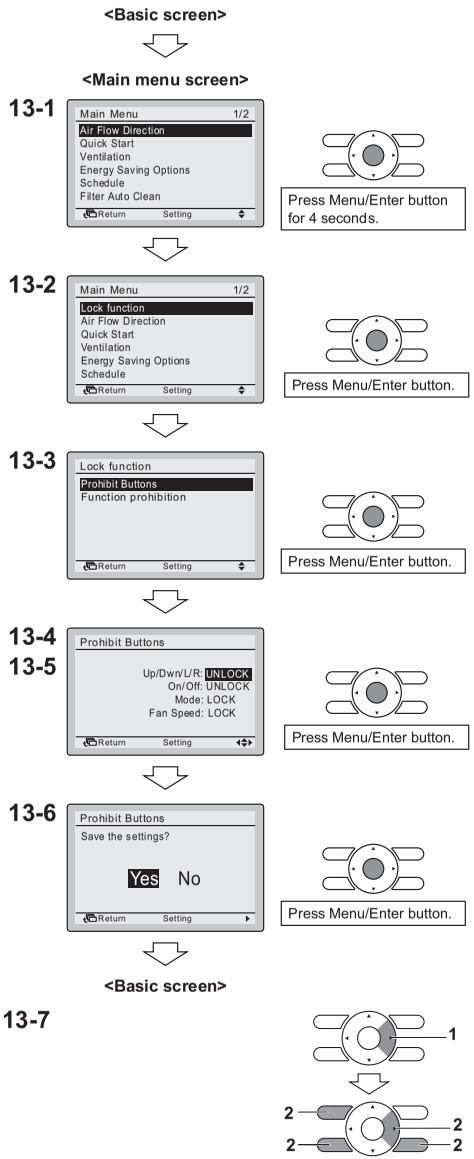
13-6 Select **Yes** and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and Basic screen returns.

If you want to restrict the number of operable buttons on the remote controller to be defined as "sub", start with only connecting this controller to the unit. Make sure that this controller is set to "main" (factory set) first, change the restrictions to the setting you prefer and only then set the remote controller to "sub".

13-7 To lock menu button in Basic screen, proceed as follows:
1. Keep the " ▶ " button pressed.
2. Press the 3 other indicated keys simultaneously while keeping the " ▶ " button pressed.

To unlock menu button in Basic screen, follow the same procedure.

NOTE: When pressing a prohibit buttons, the " 🔑 " will be displayed.



14. Prohibit Function

● Restriction of the number of operable functions.

14-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the Basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
As usual, "Lock function" is not shown in Main menu.
Press Menu/Enter button for 4 seconds to display the "Lock function".

14-2 Select **Lock function** in the Main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

14-3 Select **Function prohibition** in the menu, press Menu/Enter button.

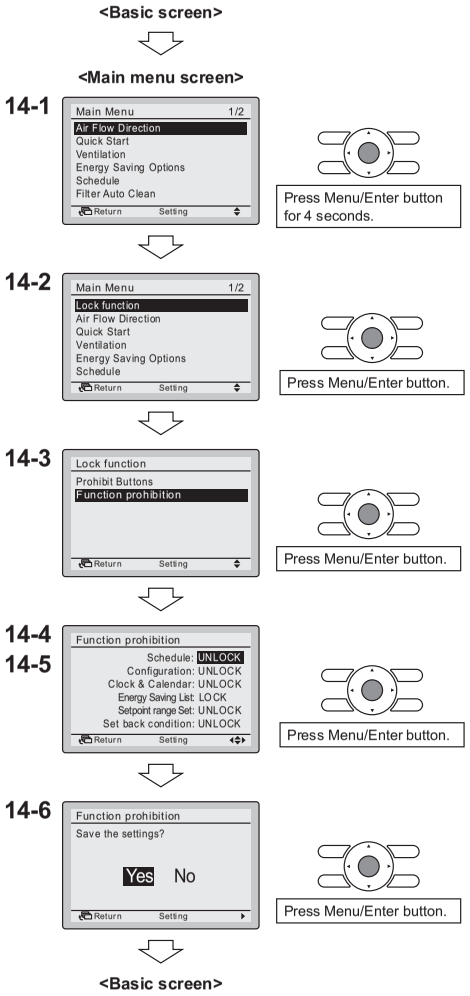
14-4 Select function by using " ◀▶ " (Left/Right) button and set by using " ▼▲ " (Down/Up) button.

14-5 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

14-6 Select **Yes** and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and Basic screen returns.

If you want to restrict the number of operable functions on the remote controller to be defined as "sub", start with only connecting this controller to the unit. Make sure that this controller is set to "main" (factory set) first, change the restrictions to the setting you prefer and only then set the remote controller to "sub".

NOTE: When a function is prohibited, the " 🔑 " will be displayed next to the function in the Main menu screen.



4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer

4.1 BRC1D61

4.1.1 Features



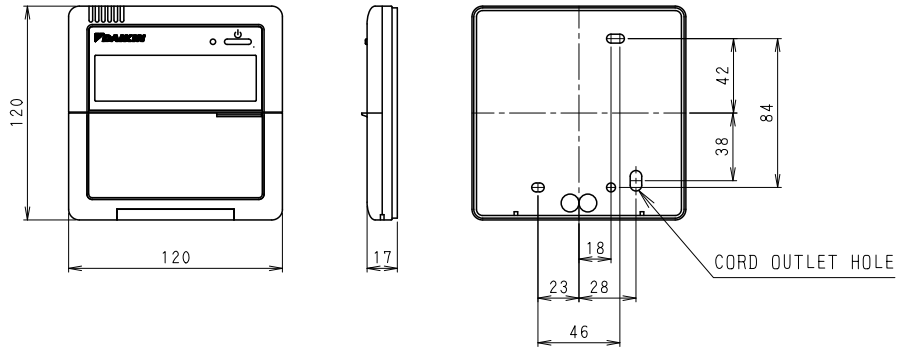
BRC1D61

- Includes ventilation mode and airflow rate switching, the main functions of Heat Reclaim Ventilator series.
- 24-hour clock function (1-hour backup for power failures).
- Programming function for each day of week.
- Scheduling possible of start/stop and temperature limit (5 settings/day).
- Programming can be enabled or disabled.
- Copy function for programmed schedules.

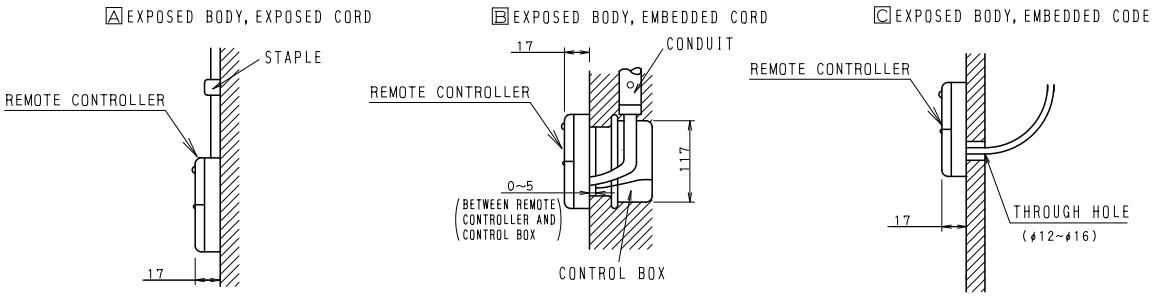
4.1.2 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



• INSTALLATION METHOD



NOTE) 1. REMOTE CONTROLLER CORD AND STAPLE ARE NOT ATTACHED. THEY ARE FIELD SUPPLIED PARTS.

• SPECIFICATIONS OF CORD

	FOR AUSTRALIA	FOR OTHER COUNTRIES
TYPE	SHIELD WIRE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)	VINYL CORD WITH SHEATH OR CABLE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)
SIZE	0.75~1.25mm²	
TOTAL LENGTH	500m	

3D048117

4.1.3 Features and Functions

The BRC1D61 is a state of the art remote controller that offers full control over your installation.

1 BASIC REMOTE CONTROLLER

The basic remote controller functions are:
- ON/OFF,
- operation mode change-over,
- temperature adjustment,
- air volume adjustment
- air flow direction adjustment.

2 CLOCK FUNCTION

The clock functions are:
- 24 hours real time clock,
- day of the week indicator.

3 SCHEDULE TIMER FUNCTION

The schedule timer functions are:
- a maximum of 5 actions can be programmed for each day of the week (totalling 35 actions),
- schedule timer can be enabled/disabled at any time,
- linked to a set temperature or a LIMIT operation or an OFF operation,
- "last command" overrules previous command until next scheduled command.

4 LIMIT OPERATION

Limit operation provides thermostat control within the range of the set minimum and maximum temperature. The minimum temperature setting will trigger heating, the maximum temperature setting will trigger cooling.

5 LEAVE HOME

The leave home function prevents the room temperature from dropping when the occupants are out for a longer period. If the room temperature drops below 10°C, heating is started automatically. As soon as 15°C is reached, the controller returns to its original status.

6 BUTTON PERMISSION LEVEL

Three hierarchical permission levels can be set to limit the user action.

4.1.4 Names and Functions

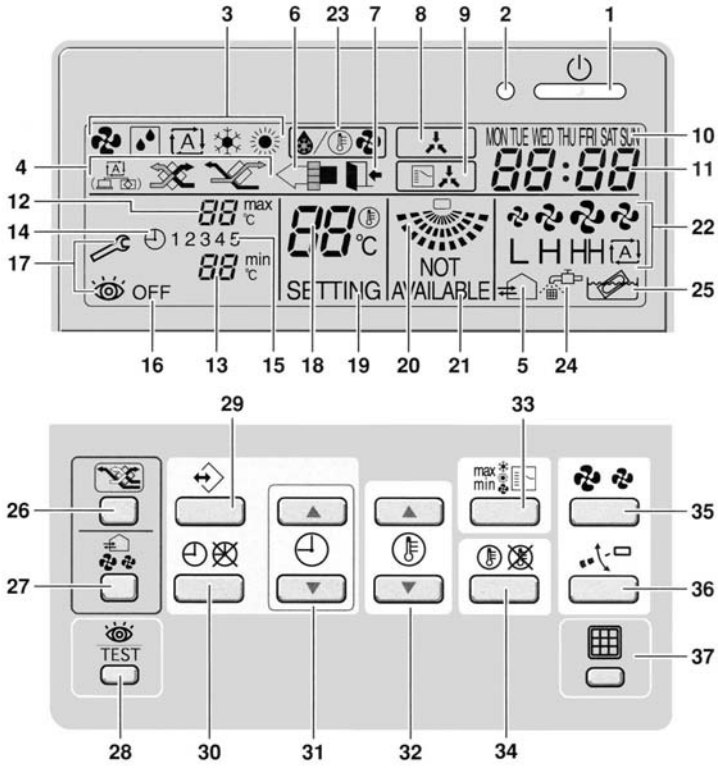


Figure 1

3P107422-3D

4.1.5 Name and Function of Switches and Icons (Refer to figure 1)

1 ON/OFF BUTTON

Press the ON/OFF button to start or stop the system.

2 OPERATION LAMP

The operation lamp lights up during operation or blinks if a malfunction occurs.

3 OPERATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current operation mode (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING).

4 VENTILATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (Heat reclaim ventilator only) (AUTOMATIC, HEAT EXCHANGE, BYPASS).

5 VENTILATION ICON

The ventilation icon appears when the ventilation is adjusted with the ventilation amount button (Heat Reclaim Ventilator only). Simultaneously, the ventilation amount is indicated by the fan speed icon (see 22).

6 AIR CLEANING ICON

This icon indicates that the air cleaning unit (option) is operational.

7 LEAVE HOME ICON

The leave home icon shows the status of the leave home function.

ON	Leave home is enabled
FLASHING	Leave home is active
OFF	Leave home is disabled

8 EXTERNAL CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that another controller with higher priority is controlling or disabling your installation.

9 CHANGE-OVER UNDER CENTRALISED CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that the change-over of the installation is under centralised control assigned to another indoor unit or optional cool/heat selector connected to the outdoor unit (= main remote controller).

10 DAY OF THE WEEK INDICATOR

MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN

The day of the week indicator shows the current week day (or the set day when reading or programming the schedule timer).

11 CLOCK DISPLAY 88:88

The clock display indicates the current time (or the action time when reading or programming the schedule timer).

12 MAXIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 max °C

The maximum set temperature indicates the maximum set temperature when in limit operation.

13 MINIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 min °C

The minimum set temperature indicates the minimum set temperature when in limit operation.

14 SCHEDULE TIMER ICON

This icon indicates that the schedule timer is enabled.

15 ACTION ICONS 1 2 3 4 5

These icons indicate the actions for each day of the schedule timer.

16 OFF ICON OFF

This icon indicates that the OFF action is selected when programming the schedule timer.

17 INSPECTION REQUIRED and

These icons indicate that inspection is required. Consult your installer.

18 SET TEMPERATURE DISPLAY 88 °C

This indicates the current set temperature of the installation (not shown in LIMIT operation or in FAN or DRY mode).

19 SETTING SETTING

Not used, for service purposes only.

20 AIRFLOW DIRECTION ICON

This icon indicates the air flow direction (only for installations with motorised air flow flaps).

21 NOT AVAILABLE NOT AVAILABLE

NOT AVAILABLE is displayed whenever a non-installed option is addressed or a function is not available.

22 FAN SPEED ICON L H H A

This icon indicates the set fan speed.

23 DEFROST/HOTSTART MODE ICON

This icon indicates that the defrost/hotstart mode is active.

24 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the air filter must be cleaned. Refer to the manual of the indoor unit.

25 ELEMENT CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the element must be cleaned (Heat reclaim ventilator only).

26 VENTILATION MODE BUTTON

The ventilation mode button operates the Heat reclaim ventilator; refer to the Heat reclaim ventilator manual for more details.

27 VENTILATION AMOUNT BUTTON

This button sets the ventilation amount; refer to the Heat reclaim ventilator manual for more details.

3P107422-3D

28 INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON

Not used, for service purposes only.

29 PROGRAMMING BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button.

Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, the programming button can have various functions.

30 SCHEDULE TIMER BUTTON

This button enables or disables the schedule timer.

31 TIME ADJUST BUTTON

These buttons are used to adjust the clock or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed action time. Both buttons have an auto-repeat function.

32 TEMPERATURE ADJUST BUTTONS

These buttons are used to adjust the current setpoint or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed setpoint temperature (step = 1°C). Both buttons are also used to adjust the day of the week.

33 OPERATION CHANGE/MIN-MAX BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button. Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, it can have following functions:

1 select the operation mode of the installation (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING)

2 toggle between minimum temperature and maximum temperature when in limit operation

34 SETPOINT/LIMIT BUTTON

This button toggles between setpoint, limit operation or OFF (programming mode only).

35 FAN SPEED BUTTON

This button toggles between L (Low), H (High), HH (very High), (Automatic).

36 AIRFLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON

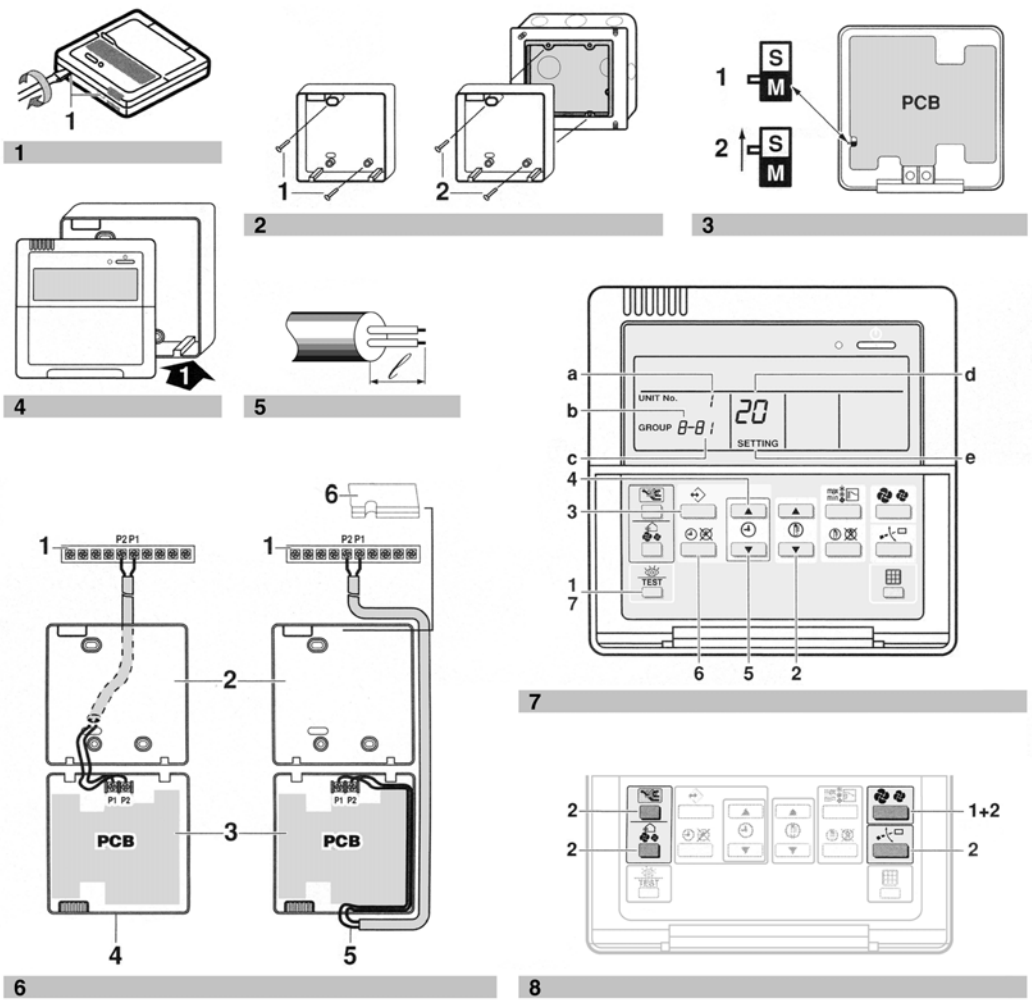
This button enables to adjust the air flow direction.

37 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON RESET BUTTON

This button is used to reset the air filter cleaning time icon.

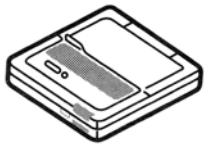
3P107422-3D

4.1.6 Installation Manual



3P107422-4D

The kit includes the following parts:

Remote controller	Wood screws
	

Wall plugs	Machine screws
	

1. Remove the upper part of remote controller (Refer to figure 1)

Insert a minus screwdriver into the slots (1) in the lower part of the remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of the remote controller.

The PC board is mounted in the upper part of the remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

2. Fasten the remote controller (Refer to figure 2)

1 for exposed mounting, fasten with the two included wood screws (Ø4x30) and plugs.

2 for flush-mounting, fasten with the two included machine screws (M4x16).

For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessory KJB111A or KJB211A.

NOTE Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of the remote controller by overtightening the mounting screws.

3. Wire the indoor unit (Refer to figure 6)

1 indoor unit

2 lower part of the remote controller

3 upper part of the remote controller

4 wired from the rear

5 wired from the top

6 notch the part for the wiring to pass through with nippers, etc.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of the remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE When wiring, run the wiring away from the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

Wiring specifications

Wiring type	Size
2 wire	0.75–1.25 mm^2

NOTE Peel the shield for the part that has to pass through the inside of the remote controller case (✓). Refer to figure 5.

4. Reattach the upper part of the remote controller

Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

Refer to figure 4:

First begin fitting from the clips at the bottom.

NOTE
1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit or one group of indoor units with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below (Refer to figure 3).

1 Main remote controller (factory set)

2 Sub remote controller

Set one remote controller to “main”, and the other to “sub”.

NOTE
1. If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to “main”.
2. Set the remote controller before turning the power supply on.

“88” is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on. During this time the remote controller can not be operated.

3P107422-4D

5. Permission level function

■ If required, you can limit the user action by restricting the number of operable buttons. Refer to the chapter "Field settings".

Level	Operable buttons
1	All
2	• on/off button • schedule timer button • temperature adjust button • operation change/MIN-MAX button • fan speed button • air flow direction adjust button
3	• on/off button • temperature adjust button • fan speed button

■ For switching between level 1 permission and the selected level in service, proceed as follows:

1 Keep the fan speed button " " pressed,

2 and press the 3 other indicated keys simultaneously while keeping the fan speed button " " pressed.

Refer to figure 8.

■ If you want to limit the user action on the remote controller to be defined as "sub", start with only connecting this controller to the unit. Make sure that this controller is set to "main" (factory set) first, change the permission level to the setting you prefer and only then set the remote controller to "sub".
You can now proceed with connecting the remote controller to be defined as "main".

6. Field settings

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Refer to figure 7.

a Unit NO
b First Code NO
c Second Code NO
d Mode NO
e Field set mode

Procedure (Refer to figure 7)

1 When in the normal mode, press the " TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

2 Select the desired MODE NO. with the " " button.

3 During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the " " button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

4 Push the " " upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

5 Push the " " lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

6 Push the " " button once and the present settings are SET.

7 Push the " TEST " button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

Example

If during group setting and the time to clean the air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

NOTE

1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. It is not possible to change field settings on the remote controller that is set to "sub".

3P107422-4D

Mode No. Note 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note 2			
				01	02	03	04
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra long life filter	Light: Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 5.000 hrs.	—	—
			Long life filter	Light: Approx. 2.500 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 1.250 hrs.		
			Standard filter	Light: Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 100 hrs.		
	1	Long-life filter type (setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when ultra-long filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long life filter	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use	Not use	—	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	—	—
11(21)	0	Setting number of connected Sky Air simultaneous operation system indoor units (setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair	Twin	Triple	Double twin
12(22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).		Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	—	—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor).		1°C	0.5°C	—	—
13(23)	0	High air outlet velocity (for high ceiling applications).		≤2.7 m	>2.7≤3.0 m	>3.0≤3.5 m	—
	1	Selection of air flow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed).		4-way flow	3-way flow	2-way flow	—
	3	Selection of air flow function (setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
	4	Air flow direction range setting.		Upper	Normal	Lower	—
	6	Setting the external static pressure (setting according to the connected duct resistance) (for FHYK, follow the high ceiling setting)		Normal (Normal)	High static pressure (High ceiling)	Low static pressure —	—
15(25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
1b	0	Permission level setting		Level 2	Level 3	—	—
	1	Leave home function		Not permitted	Permitted	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (for limit operation and leave home function only)		Use	Not use	—	—

3P107422-4D

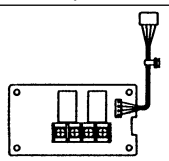
5. Adaptor for Wiring

5.1 KRP1BA54 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1B51



Item \ Model		KRP1BA54	KRP1B56	KRP1BA57	KRP1BA59	KRP1B51
Dimensions	mm	85×49				
Length of lead wire	mm	250	2,000	1,500	500	400
Component parts		Wiring adaptor Printed Circuit Board. Printed Circuit Board support. Clamp. Installation manual.				

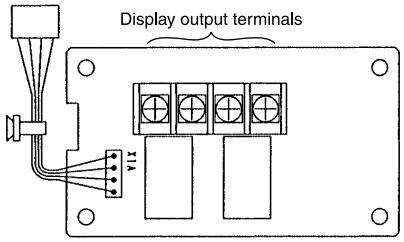
Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Adaptor	
× 1	

Printed circuit board support	× 4
Clamp	× 3
Installation manual	× 1

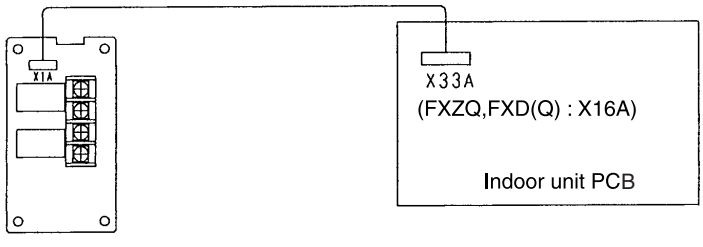
NOTE
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.
  FXZQ, FXD(Q), FFQ·····KRP1BA101
  FXF-L·····KRP1DA98
  FH(Y)C·····KRP1B98
  FXHQ, FHQ, FH(Y)·····KRP1CA93
  FV(Y), FVQ·····KRP4AA95

5.1.1 Names of Parts



5.1.2 Electric Wiring Work

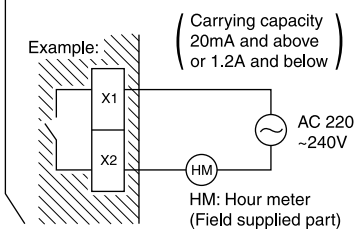
- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.
  [Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PCB when wiring]
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as described below.



○ Fetching the operation display signal

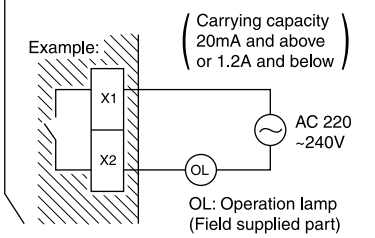
• Attaching an hour meter

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.



• Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



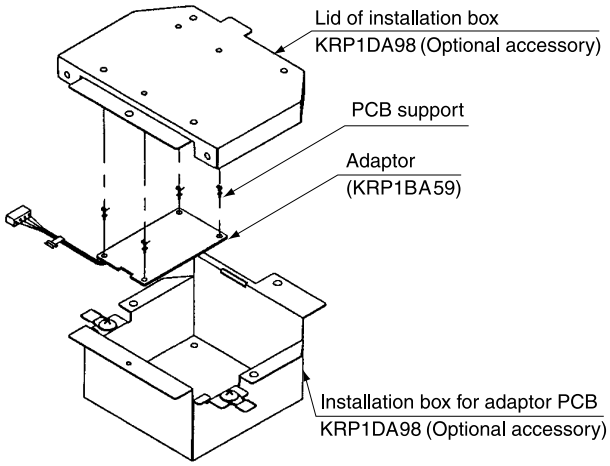
C: 1PA60037G

5.1.3 Installation

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
  Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any access wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit printed circuit board.

Ceiling mounted cassette type

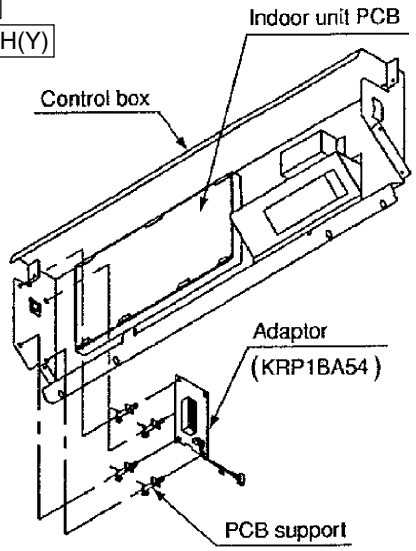
FXF
(Multi-flow type)



Note: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

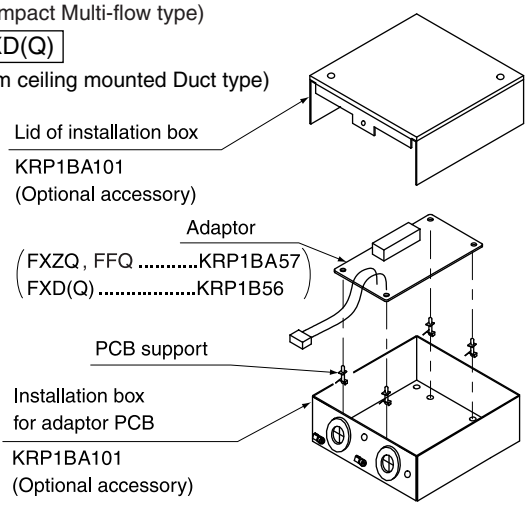
Ceiling suspended type

FXH(Q)
FHQ FH(Y)



Ceiling mounted cassette type (Compact multi flow)
Slim ceiling mounted Duct type

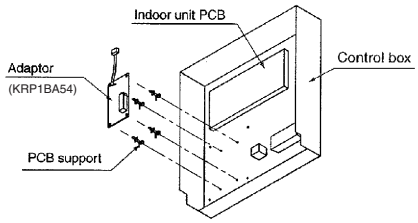
FXZQ FFQ
(Compact Multi-flow type)
FXD(Q)
(Slim ceiling mounted Duct type)



Note: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

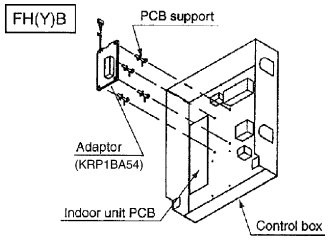
Ceiling mounted built-in type

FBQ-B



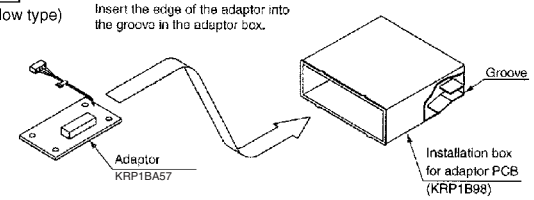
Ceiling mounted built-in type

FH(Y)B



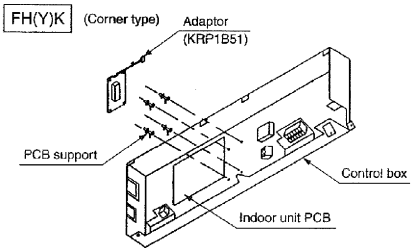
Ceiling mounted cassette type

FH(Y)C
(Multi flow type)



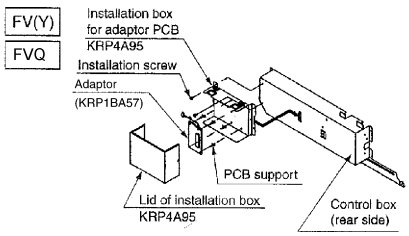
Ceiling mounted cassette type

FH(Y)K (Corner type)



Floor standing type

FV(Y)
FVQ

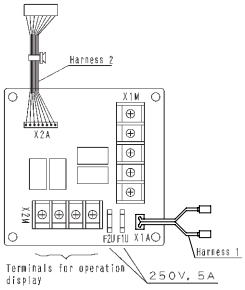


Note: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

C: 1PA60037G

5.2 KRP1C63





Item / Model	KRP1C63
Dimensions (mm)	100×100
Length of lead wire (mm)	Harness1: 1080, Harness2: 645
Component parts	Wiring adaptor Printed Circuit Board, Printed Circuit Board Support, Clamp × 3, Installation Manual

Accessories Check if the following accssories are included in the kit.

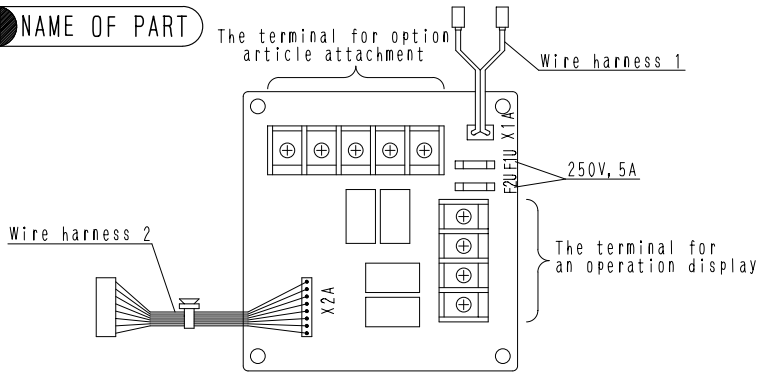
Adapter	Wire harness 1	Wire harness 2	PCB support	Clamp	Installation manual
					
×1	×1	×1	×4	×3	×1

Note

- Keep in mind that a kit changes with application models.
- An adapter attachment box is required for the following model separately.

FXFQ-P, FCQ-K(A), FCQ-LU, FCQN-K• • • • • • • • • KRP1H98

1 NAME OF PART

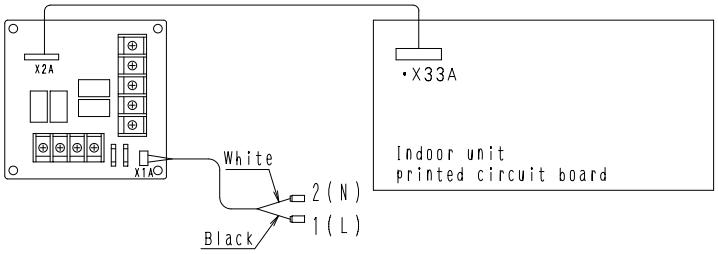


2 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Please be sure for electric wiring to do the upper work of reference of the electric wiring figure of pasting on an indoor unit.

[Be careful for wiring to apparatus not to pass along a substrate top at the time of wiring.]

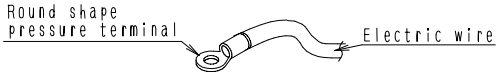
- Please wire an indoor unit main part in the following way.



The connection with the terminal base for wiring between units should use a round shape pressure connection terminal.
When you cannot use it unavoidably, Please be sure to keep the following matter.

C: 2P178844B

≪Attention at the time of power-source wiring≫

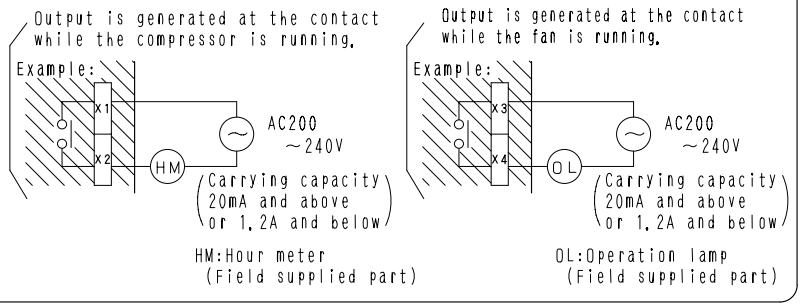


- Please do not connect two diameter electric wires of different to the terminal base for wiring between units.
  (There is fear of unusual generation of heat according to looseness of an electric wire etc.)
- It connects certainly using a predetermined electric wire, and external force wiring in a terminal part. Please fix not to be added.
- Please use a proper driver for bolting of a terminal screw thread. The driver of small size damages a screw-head part, and cannot perform proper bolting.
- A screw thread may be damaged if a terminal screw thread is bolted too much.
- Refer to the right table for the torque with a bunble of a terminal screw thread.

Torque with a bunble (N・m)	
The terminal base for wiring between units	1.18～1.44

○Fetching the operation display signal.

●Attaching the operation display signal ●Fan ON display

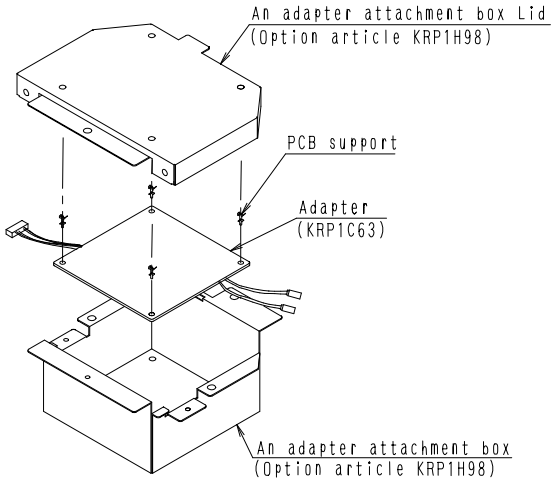


③INSTALLATION

- Means of attachment are shown below.
  However, a strong electric wire and a weak-electric-current line should not band together simultaneously.
- Please remain so that wiring does not wire on the indoor PCB, and bundle wiring of a part by attached Thailand Rapp.

FXFQ-P

FCQ-K(A)
FCQ-LU
FCQN-K

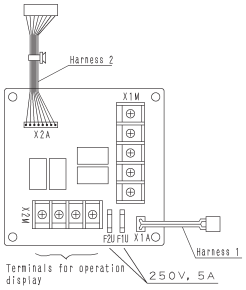


NOTE) An adapter attachment box is required for attachment separately.
- Please use substrate support of attachment by an adapter and attach in the adapter attachment box cover side.

C: 2P178844B

5.3 KRP1C64





Item \ Model	KRP1C64
Dimensions (mm)	100×100
Length of lead wire (mm)	400×2 (harness1: 400, harness2: 400)
Component parts	Wiring adaptor Printed Circuit Board, Printed Circuit Board Support × 4, Clamp × 4, Installation Manual

Caution

- This unit is wiring adaptor for indoor unit of ceiling-mounted duct type. Check the indoor unit model name. (As below mentioned table)
- This unit is needed to plate for adaptor PC separately.
- Refer to installation manual of plate for adaptor PC, while installing this unit.

Adaptor for wiring	Indoor unit	Plate for adaptor PC kit
KRP1C64	FBQ-D(A), FXMQ-P	KRP4A96

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

< Remarks >

Don't throw away all parts until finished installation, because these parts are necessary for installation work.

Name	Adaptor for wiring	Harness 1	Harness 2	PC board support	Clamp	Installation manual
Shape						
Quantity	1	1	1	4	4	1

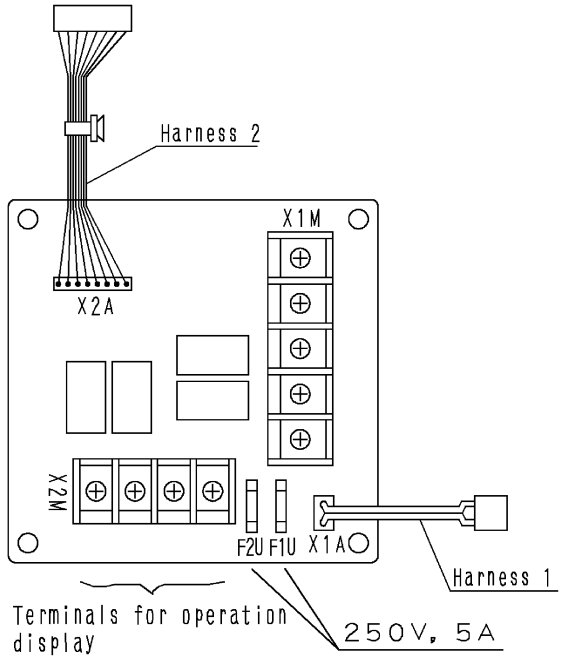
< Caution >

- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid and this manual.
- All wiring must be worked after shutting down power supply.
- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

C: 3P226298

2

1 NAMES OF PARTS

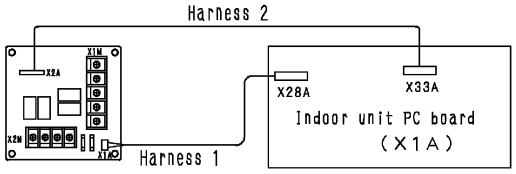


2 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.

[Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.]

- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.

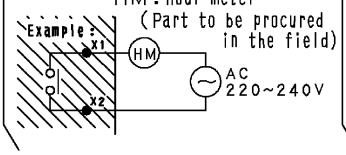


Fetching the operation display signal

- Attaching an hour meter
- Fan ON display

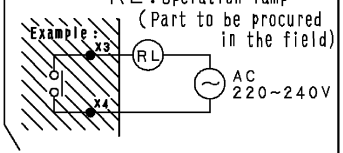
Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.

HM : Hour meter (Part to be procured in the field)



Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.

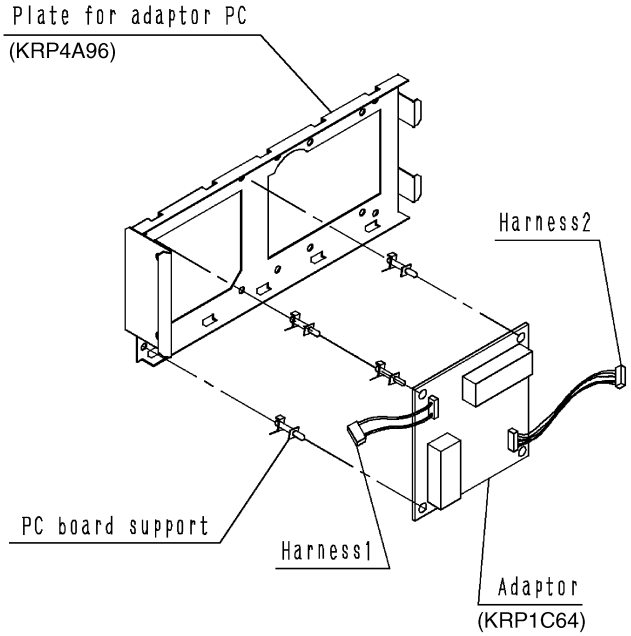
RL : Operation lamp (Part to be procured in the field)



3P226298

③INSTALLATION

- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any axcess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.
- Set up adaptor to the plate refer to below figure direction.



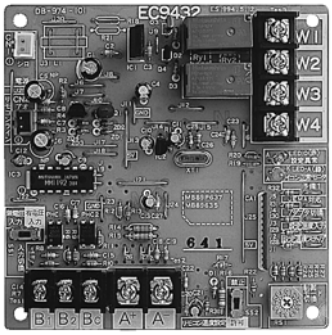
C: 3P226298

6. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)

6.1 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53

6.1.1 Function

This adaptor is an interface required to connect the indoor unit with the BAS. And by installing this adaptor in the indoor unit, it enables you to have various remote controls (ON/OFF, temperature setting, operation status display and malfunction display). One adaptor can control simultaneously the group of units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2).



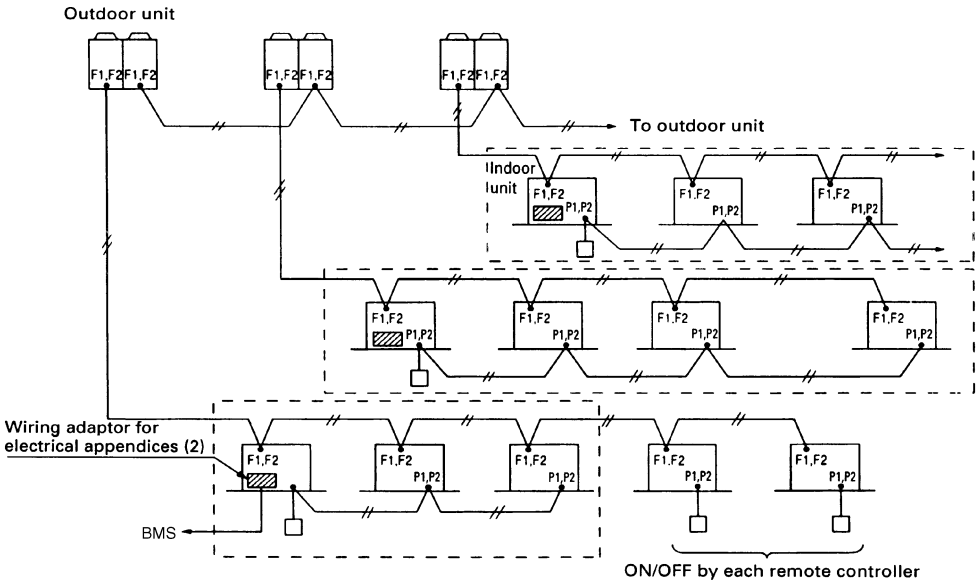
Type	BRC1C62	KRP4AA51/52/53 KRP4A54
Item \ Group/Zone	One Group	One Group
ON/OFF	√	√
Temp. setting	√	√
Airflow rate setting	√	
Airflow direction setting	√	
Timer setting twice a day	√	
Mode setting	√	
Filter sign reset	√	
Inspection/Test operation	√	Operation & Error display only by lamps

Note:

1. This adaptor cannot be used together with centralized control equipment.
2. The model of adaptor differs according to the type of indoor unit to be installed.

Note:

1. Marked ▨ shows wiring adaptor for electrical appendices.
2. Marked ⬚ indicates the same control range.
3. The wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) can control simultaneously the group of the units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2). In another words, all the units connected between P1 and P2 terminal have the same control.



Applied Model

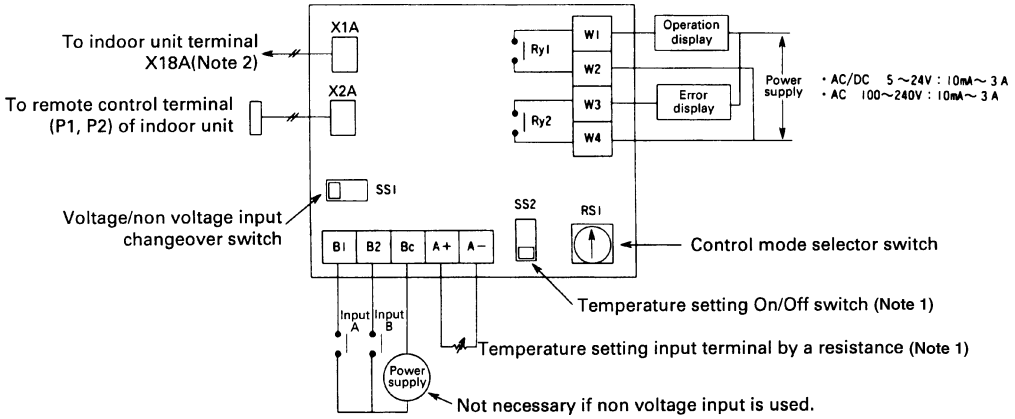
Series		Applicable
VRV Systems (VRV Inverter "K(A)" "K(U)" Series and later)		Yes
SkyAir Series ∗1		Yes
Room Air-Conditioner		No
Packaged Air-Conditioners	FDYB-KA, FDYM-FA, FDY-KA ∗2	Yes
	FDBG, FDMG, FD	No
	Other air-conditioners	No
Heat Reclaim Ventilator (Note: BRC1C61, 62 etc. are required.)		Yes

Note:

∗1 FH-NU, FDBG-NU, FDBT-NU and FDMG-PU are not connected.

∗2 Installation box for adaptor PCB is necessary.

6.1.2 Part Names and Functions



Note:

1. This is valid only for the indoor unit, which has a temperature setting function.
2. Terminal No. X18A is for the indoor unit of VRV system. For SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, connect to the relevant terminal for each units.

6.1.3 Installation

Daikin Air Conditioner

Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) (Group control adaptor)
installation manual KRP4A51 • 52 • 53 • 54 KRP4AA51 • 52 • 53

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Adaptor	Relay harness
× 1	× 1 each (1), (2)

PCB support	× 4
Clamp	× 3
Installation manual	× 8

FFQ, FXZQ, FXD(Q) KRP1BA101
FH(Y)C..... KRP1B98
FXF..... KRP1DA98
FCQ-K(A) • LU, FCQN-K, FXFQ-P KRP1H98
FHQ~B, FXH(Q), FH(Y)..... KRP1CA93
FXC(Q)..... KRP1B96
FV(Y), FVQ KRP4AA95
FBQ~D(A), FXMQ~P..... KRP4A96
FXA(Q), FAQ71BVV1B, FAY71LVE KRP4AA93
FUY, FXUQ..... KRP1BA97

NOTES
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.

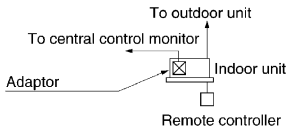
1 SYSTEM OUTLINE

This kit enables remote control (ON/OFF control, temperature setting, operation display, error display) and can be used with the following systems though it cannot be used in conjunction with other optional controllers for centralized control.

1. Individual control (Each indoor unit is controlled individually.)

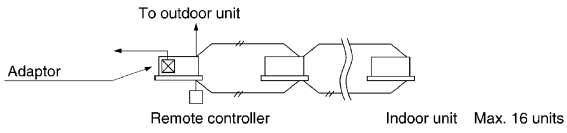
This system requires the following parts.
- Adaptor ..... KRP4A(A)51 • 52 • 53 • 54 — Any one kit
- Remote controller ..... BRC1B(A)51 • 52 • 61 • 62 or BRC1C517 • 61 or BRC2A51 or BRC3A61 — Any one kit
(For operation control)

(Ex.) When individually controlling 8 FHYC71F units
KRP4A51 × 8 kits
BRC1B61 × 8 kits

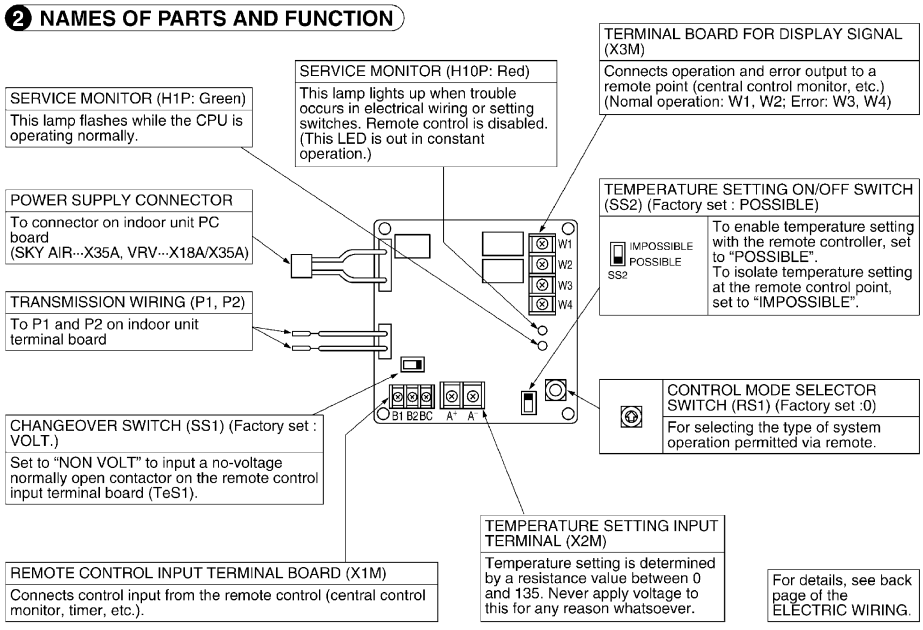


2. Group control (Multiple indoor units are controlled as a group.)

This system requires the following parts.
- Adaptor ..... KRP4A(A)51•52•53•54 — Any one kit
- Remote controller (For operation control) ..... BRC1B(A)51•52•61•62 or BRC1C517•61 or BRC2A51 or BRC3A61 — Any one kit

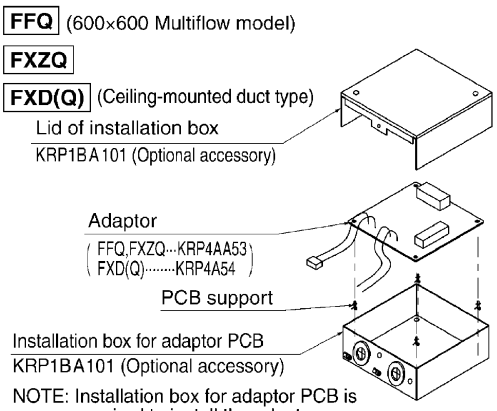


2 NAMES OF PARTS AND FUNCTION



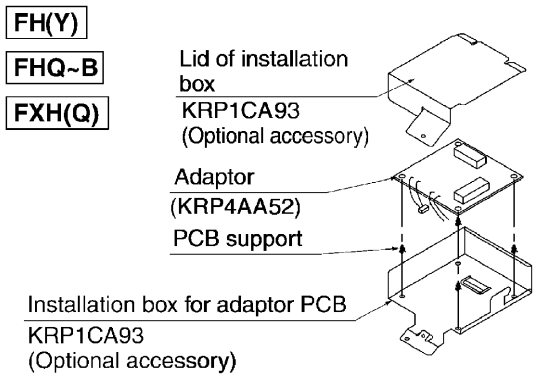
C: 1PA59889N

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi Flow)
Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type



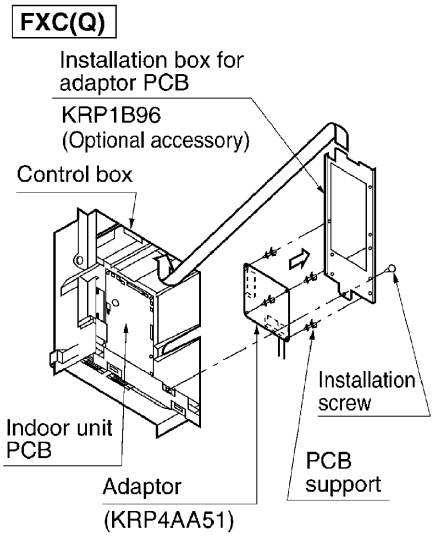
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Suspended Type



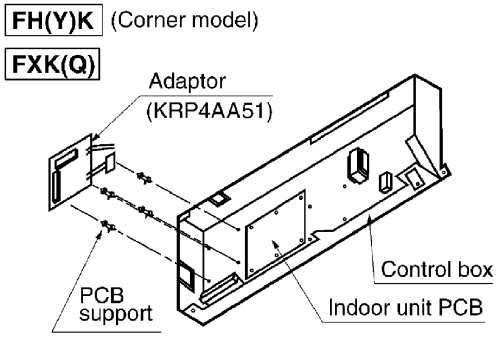
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double Flow)

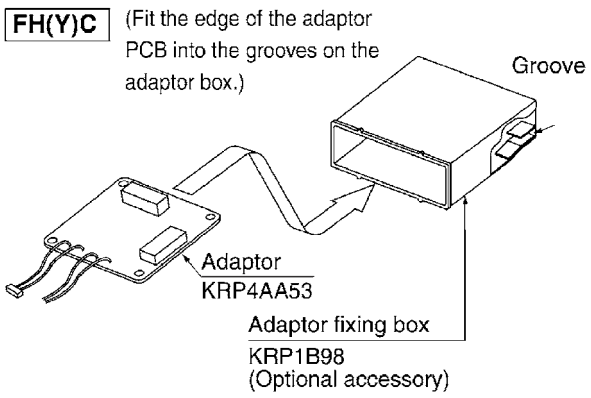


NOTE: A separate plate is needed to install the adaptor PCB.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type



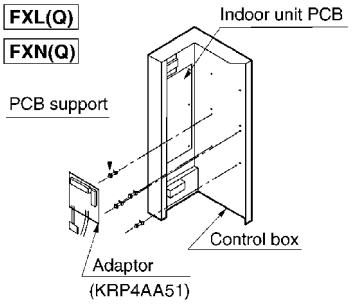
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type



C: 1PA59889N

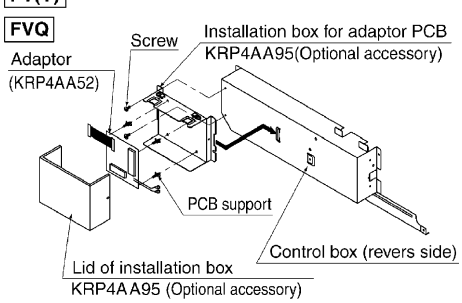
Floor Standing Type
Concealed Floor Standing Type

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



Floor Standing Type

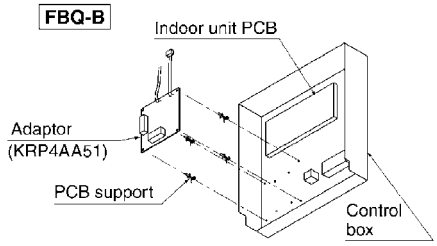
FV(Y)
FVQ



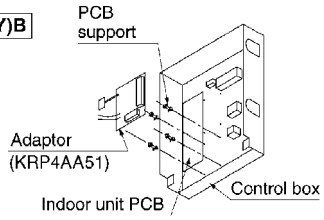
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type

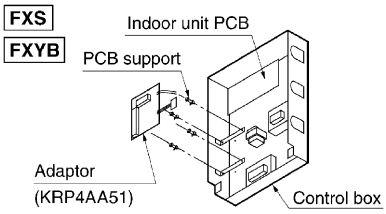
FBQ-B



FH(Y)B



FXS
FXYB



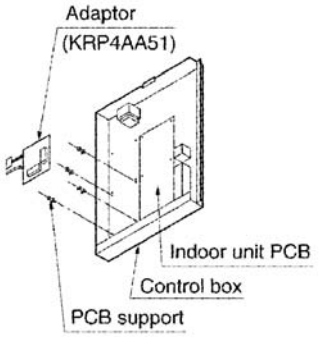
NOTE: Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS).

Ceiling Mounted Duct-Type

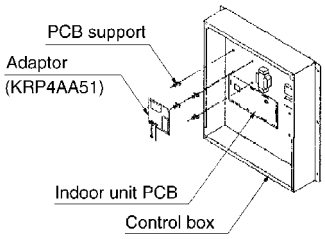
FXMQ20~140P
FBQ-D(A)

See installation manual of KRP4A96 (Optional accessory).

FXM-40~125



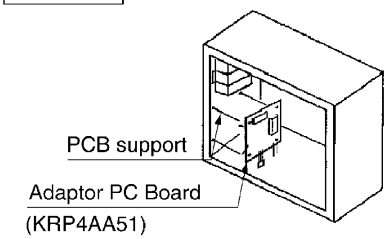
FXM(Q)200•250



C: 1PA59889N

Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

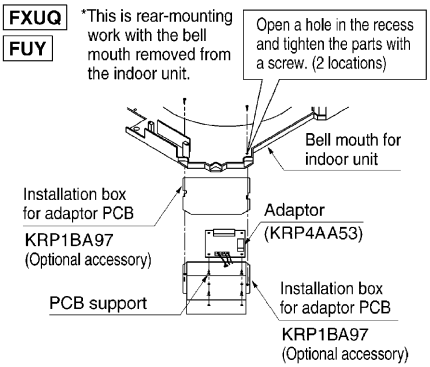
FXYD-KA



NOTE: Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type

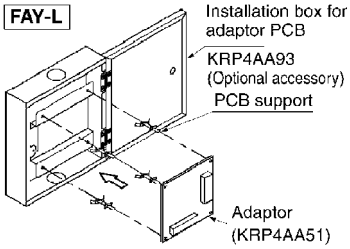
FXUQ
FUY



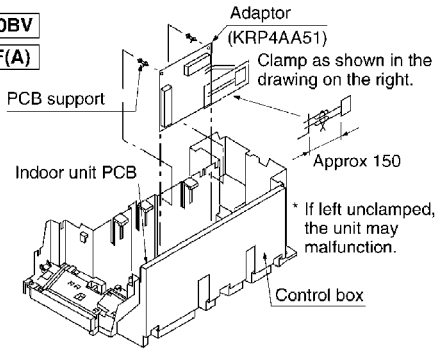
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Wall Mounted Type

FXA(Q)
FAQ71BV
FAY-L

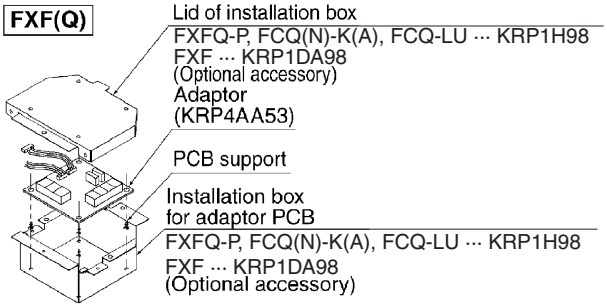


FAQ100BV
FA(Y)-F(A)



Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

FCQ(N)~K(A)
FCQ-LU
FXF(Q)

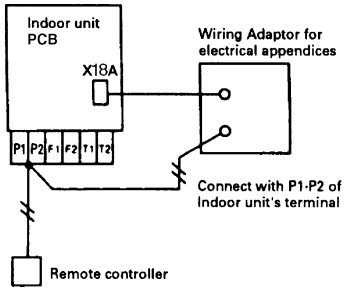


NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

C: 1PA59889N

6.1.4 Electric Wiring Work and Initial Setting

1. Wiring

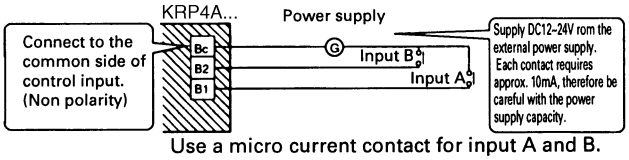


2. Depending on whether [voltage input] or [non voltage input], connect the wiring as shown below.
Input/Output for External Control

3. Depending on whether [voltage input] or [non voltage input], connect the wiring as shown below.

■ **Input with Voltage.**

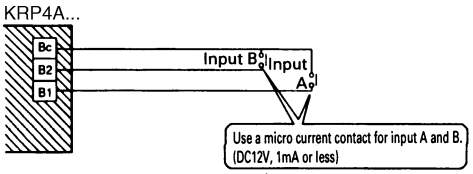
Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to VOLT.



Use a micro current contact for input A and B.
(DC12V, 1mA or less)

■ **Input with No Voltage.**

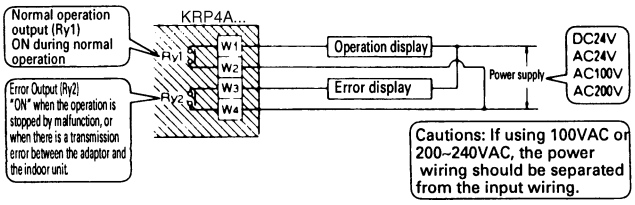
Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to NON VOLT.



Use sheathed vinyl cable of 0.18mm² or more and
the total length should be 150m or less.

4. Display Signal Retrieval (Output)

The normal operation output terminals (W1, W2) and error output terminals (W3, W4) are non-voltage output contacts. (Permissive current is 10mA~3A per contact.)

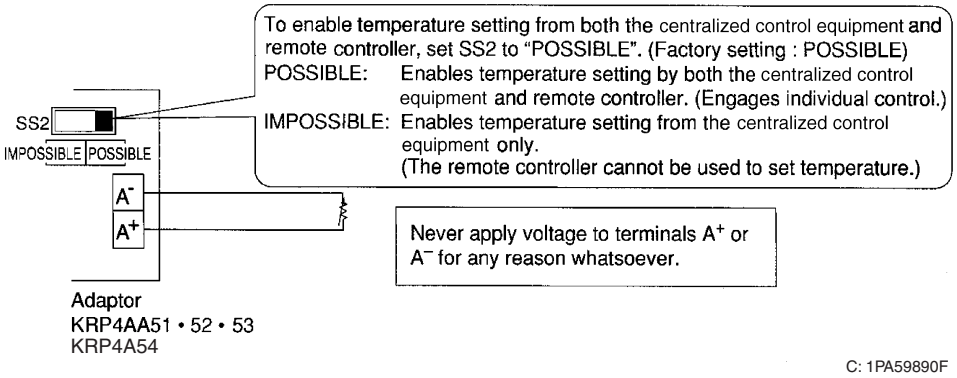


Output is as given below.

Output / System	Both Ry1 and Ry2 is OFF.	Only Ry1 is ON.	Only Ry2 is ON.
Group control	OFF	All normal operation	At least one unit is stopped due to error or transmission error between the adaptor and the indoor unit.

C: 1PA59890F

5. Temperature setting input



Temperature setting corresponds to resistance values in the range of 0 to 135Ω.
Their relationship is as shown below.

Relation between the setting temperature and the resistance are as follows.

Setting temperature (°C)	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Resistance (Ω)	0.0 ~ 3.4	5.0 ~ 11.6	13.8 ~ 20.0	22.4 ~ 28.4	31.0 ~ 36.4	39.4 ~ 44.8	48.2 ~ 52.8	56.6 ~ 61.2	65.2 ~ 69.4	73.8 ~ 77.8	82.4 ~ 85.8	91.0 ~ 94.0	99.4 ~ 102.2	108.6 ~ 110.4	117.2 ~ 119.2	125.8 ~ 127.4	134.2 ~ 140.0

Note:

- The value of resistance includes the resistance of wiring.
- The setting temperature is limited within the setting range of indoor unit. If you set the temperature outside of the range by the adaptor, it controls at the nearest setting range.

6. Setting of control mode selector switch (RS1)

CONTROL MODE Position **RS1** 	Function	Input A close		Input A open		Input B close (Input A is ignored)	
		Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller	Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller	Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller
0	Input Ignored	—			—		
1	Remote Control Rejection	ON	Rejection	OFF	Rejection	Forced OFF	Rejection
2	Central Priority	ON	Acceptable				
3	Remote controller Acceptable/ Rejection	ON	Only Stop acceptable				
4	Remote controller acceptance / rejection, OFF	Permit	Acceptable				

Position	Function	Input A close/open (pulse input)		Constant Input B close (Constant input) (Input A is ignored)	
		Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller	Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller
5	Remote Control Rejection	ON / OFF	Rejection	Forced OFF at close	Rejection
6	Last command Priority	ON / OFF	Acceptable		

Position	Function	Input A close/open (pulse input)		Input B close/open (pulse input)	
		Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller	Operation or not of indoor unit	From Remote controller
7	Remote Control Rejection	ON	Rejection	OFF at close	Rejection
8	Last command Priority	ON	Acceptable		
9	Remote controller OFF Acceptable	ON	Only Stop acceptable		
A	Remote controller acceptance / rejection, OFF	permit	Acceptable		
B	Last command Priority	ON	Acceptable	OFF	Acceptable
C	Position 5 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 5		Forced thermostat OFF at ON	
D	Position 5 + Temperature Set-Back			Setting temperature shift command at ON	
E	Position 6 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 6		Forced thermostat OFF at ON	
F	Position 6 + Temperature Set-Back			Setting temperature shift command at ON	

Note:

1. When constant input is used for input B at position 7~A, the system is shut-down forcibly (Ignored input A). Constant input cannot be used for input B at position B.
2. Refer to the followings for the outline of above functions.

■ **Description of Functions (Outline)**

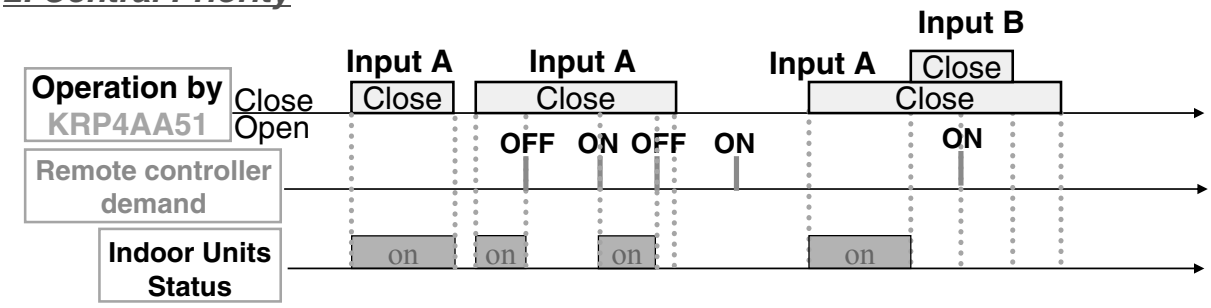
1. Remote Control Rejection..... For when you want to turn ON/OFF only by central remote controller. (ON/OFF cannot be controlled by remote controller for indoor unit.)
2. Remote controller OFF Only Accepted ..... For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and turn OFF only by remote controller for indoor unit.
3. Central Priority ..... For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and during the set time, turn ON/OFF freely by remote controller for indoor unit.
4. Individual Priority (Last command priority) ..... For when you want to turn ON/OFF by both central remote controller and remote controller for indoor unit.
5. Remote Controller Permission Timer ..... For when you want to turn ON/OFF by remote controller for indoor unit during set time, and you want to start the operation by remote controller for indoor unit at the programmed time of system start.

<Example when the control mode selector switch is set at position 6>

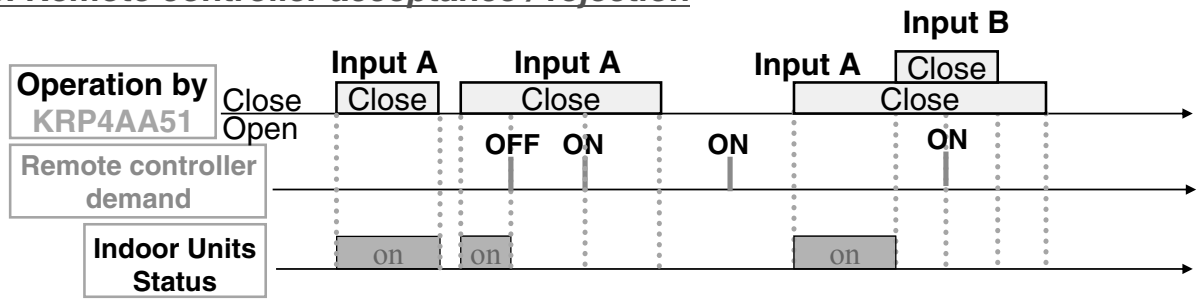
The following is the time chart for the command by remote controller and the indoor unit against input signal.

Timing Chart for Each Control Mode by momentary input

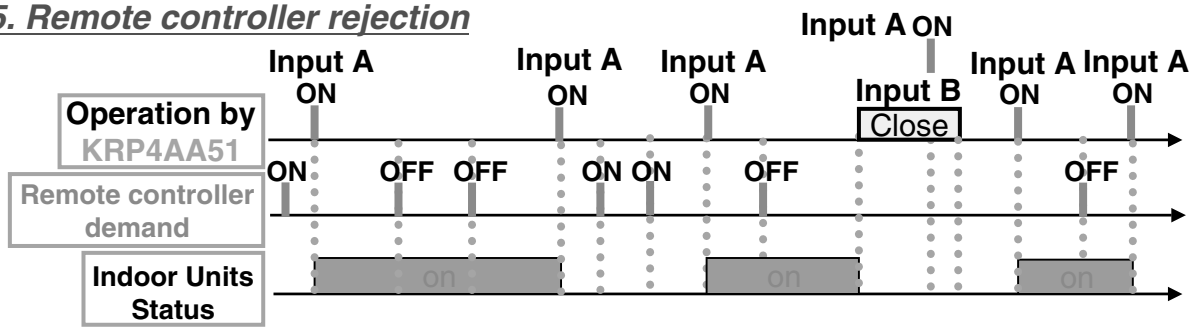
2. Central Priority



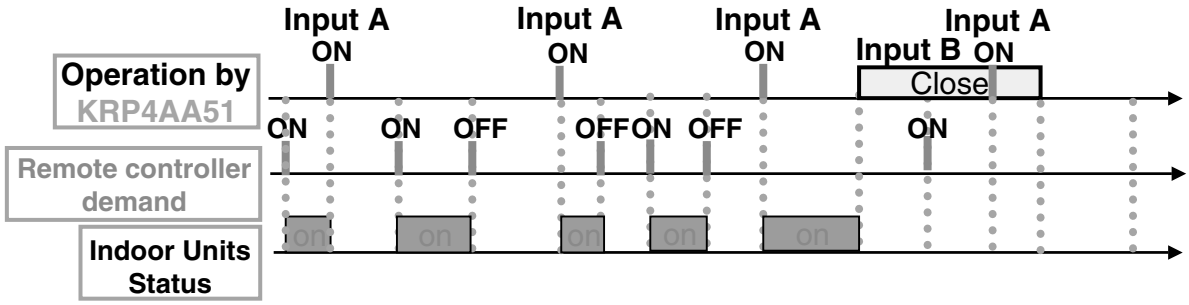
3. Remote controller acceptance / rejection



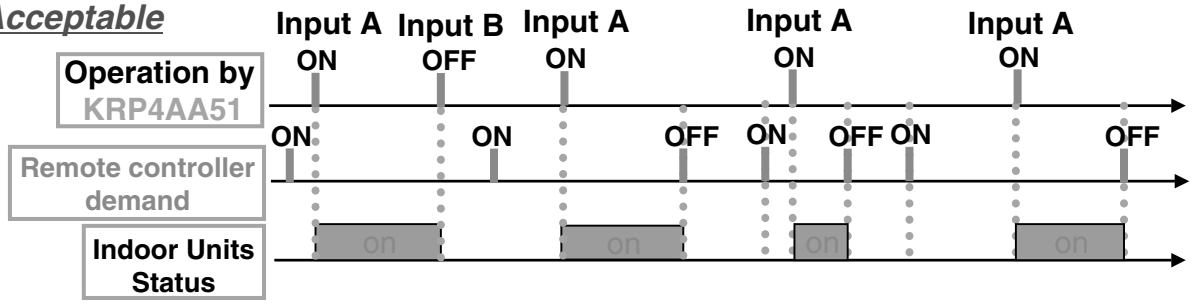
5. Remote controller rejection



6. Last Command Priority



9. Remote controller OFF Acceptable

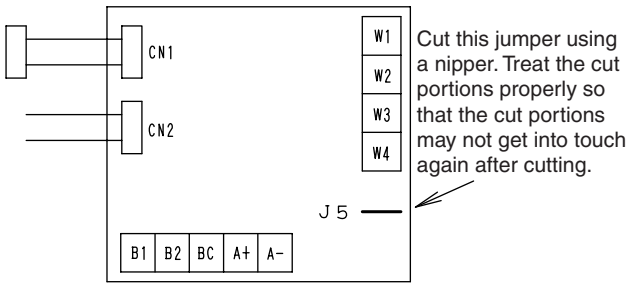


6.1.5 Precautions before Use for the Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)

Combined use of the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) and the centralized control equipment is possible by the following setting method only under the limited use condition.

[Setting method]

Cut the jumper (J5) for the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2).
(Note, however, that the adaptor may not operate normally unless the following use condition is met.



[Use condition]

(1) When the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) is used in the following ways, combined use of the wiring adopter and the centralized control equipment is possible.
   ① As for the monitor, operation using the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)
   ② Forced thermo. off control using the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)
   (Mode setting: Only input B is used at the positions C and E)
   ③ Room temperature set shift control using the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2)
   (Mode setting: Only input B is used at the positions D and F)

(2) In the case of teleconference using the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2), combined use is possible if the centralized control equipment is used as given in the following table.

Models	Conditions
Central remote controller (DCS302CA61)	Possible if forced outage input is not used and the adaptor is used using any of the operation codes 6, 7, 16, and 17.
Unified ON/OFF controller (DCS301BA61)	Possible if forced outage input is not used, and the adaptor is used using the operation code of priority to the last press
Schedule timer (DST301BA61)	Possible if the operation code is set to priority to the last press
Unification adaptor for computerized control (DCS302A52)	Possible if the input mode is set to the position 3

7. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature)

7.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B



Item \ Model		KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-4B
Length of branch wiring	m	12	
Appearance		Light ivory (with the Daikin logo)	
Box material		ABS resin	
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.3	
Dimensions (W × H × D)	mm	50 × 60 × 15	
Component parts		Remote sensor. Extension cord (12m). Screws. Clamps. Installation manual.	

- Recommended for ceiling suspension and ceiling-embedded types which often result in a difference between set temperature and actual temperature.
- The sensor for detecting the temperature can be placed away from the indoor air conditioner. (Branch wiring is included in the kit.)

Caution

- Select a location for the sensor where it can detect the average temperature. Avoid the following locations.

1. Locations in direct sunlight.
2. Locations where the outlet air from the air conditioner is directed.
3. Locations close to other heat sources.
4. Locations near doors which might be affected by air coming in.

Installation Manual

Remote Sensor Installation Manual

KRCS01-1B
KRCS01-4B

Be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction.

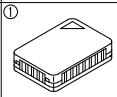
3K019189-1D

Notes

- Please check applicable kit model name by catalog etc..
- When installed on Skyair Round-flow type models, the dehumidification by detection of humidity does not operate.

Accessories

Check the following accessories.

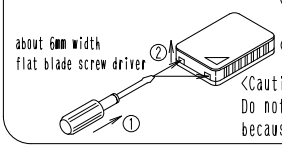
Name	Remote sensor (sensor box)	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamp	Installation manual (this drawing)	Mounting screw (M4X16)
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 
Quantity	X 1	X 1	X 2	X 1	X 2

1 Mounting

1)Selection of mounting location.
The thermistor for temperature detection is incorporated into the remote sensor. Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.

① Where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
② Where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
③ Where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
④ Where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
⑤ Where it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

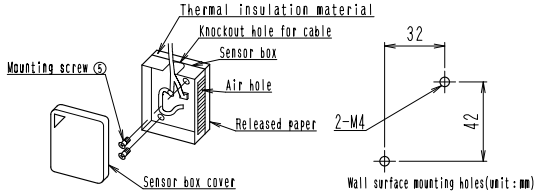
2)Mounting
●Remove the cover of the sensor box.



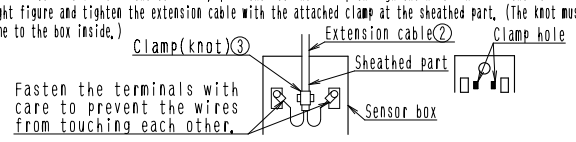
①Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box concave part (2 locations).
②Remove the cover pushig up the nail to the cover of the sensor box.
〈Cautions〉
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the nail.

3K019189D

(a)When mounting on the wall

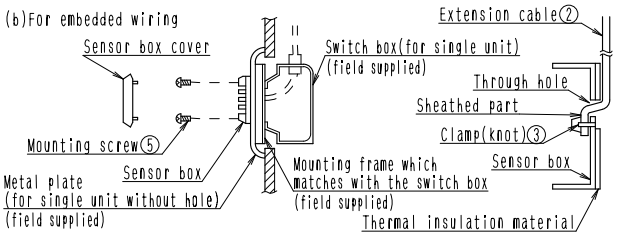


- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension wires through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable with the attached clamp at the sheathed part. (The knot must come to the box inside.)

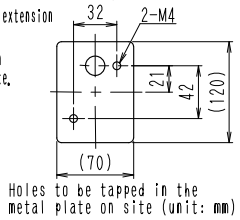


- Screw the sensor box securely to the wall surface with screws M4X16(2 places). If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface.

(b)For embedded wiring

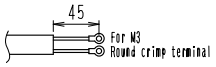


- Pass the extension cable through the switch box cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp though the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right figure.
- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (field supplied) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate.



<Cautions>

- When wiring the extension cable, the air holes will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the round crimp terminal for M3 (field supplied) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown. (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



❷ Wiring method

Connect the extension cable connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

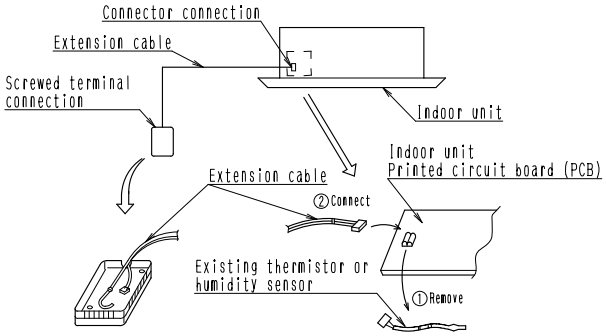
⚠ Caution

1) Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed. Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.
2) When wiring the extension cable, do not pass where the extension cable may be affected by the power line or noise.
3) Make sure to securely connect the connectors. Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4) Do not splice wires.
5) Since the connector marking of the thermistor for detection of inlet air temperature differ depending on the indoor unit type, make sure to check the indoor unit wiring diagram and follow it correctly.
6) Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line(cord for remote controller). And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line(cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

1) When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) and then connect the extension cable. When doing this work, make sure to check the symbol of connecting address on the PCB whether it is correct or not referring to the wiring diagram.

<For Skyair and VRV>



2) Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the existing thermistor. When doing this work, keep a certain distance between the high voltage wiring and the low voltage wiring to avoid error of sensor. Provide protection of the existing cable for thermistor without affecting other components.
3) Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box.

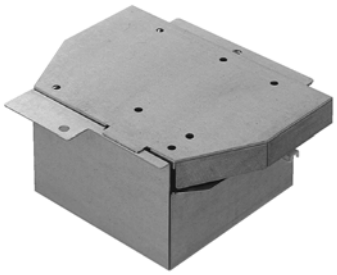
❸ Operation test after mounting the sensor

Conduct cooling and heating operation test after the sensor is mounted and the wiring is completed.

3K019189D

8. Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board

8.1 KRP1H98



Item \ Model	KRP1H98
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Applicable adaptor	KRP1C63 / KRP2A62 / KRP4AA53
Accessories	Clamps. Mounting screws. Earth wire (length: 1060m). Screw for earth wire. Installation manual.

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONER Installation box for adapter PCB. Installation manual

KRP1H98

READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.
KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

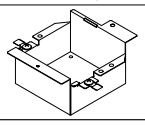
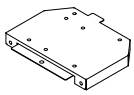
2P196605-1B

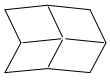
Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (round-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1H98	SkyAir	FCQ-K(A), FCQ-LU, FCQN-K
	VRV	FXFQ-P

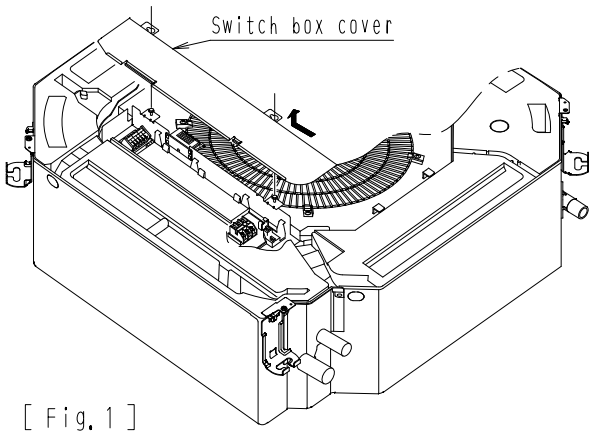
Accessories Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Screw(1)	Screw(2)
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape			 M4×12	 M4×8

Name	Clamp	Earth wire	Screw for earth wire	Installation manual
Quantity	8PCS.	1PC.	1PC.	1PC.
Shape				

❶ Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》
Remove the switch box cover. (Fig.1)



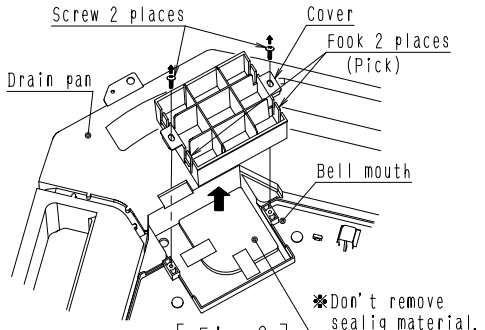
[Fig.1]

※ The figure mentions FCQ~C7VEB as a representative.

C: 2P196605B

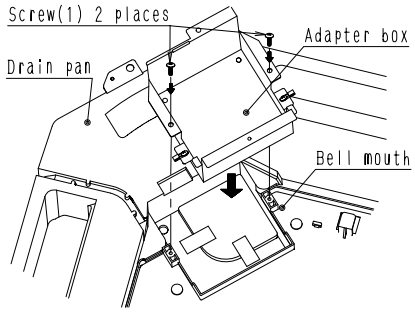
《Mounting the adapter box》

①Remove the cover, when the cover is attached. (Fig. 2)



[Fig. 2]

②Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places. (Fig. 3)



[Fig. 3]

※ The figure mentions FCQ~C7VEB as a representative.

❷ Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)

● See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

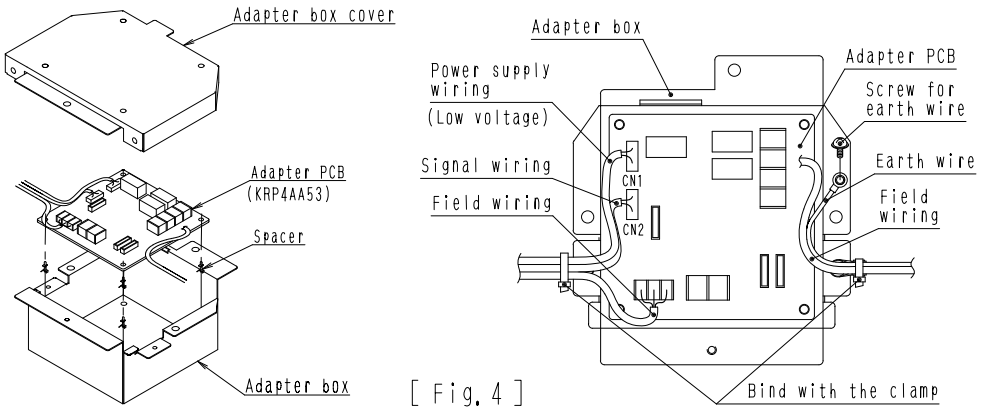
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
KRP4AA53 KRP2A62	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 4)
KRP1C63	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 5)
KRP1BA57	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 6)

● For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

③Fix the earth wire with the attached fixing screw for earth wire. (Fig. 4)

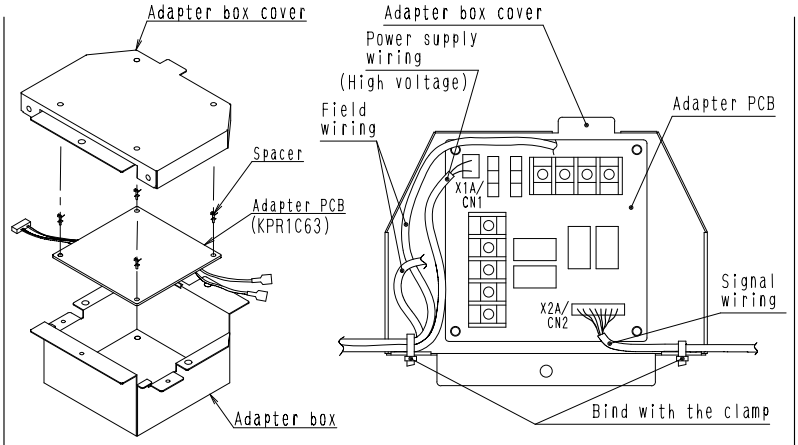
④Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB with the attached clamp. (Fig. 4~6)



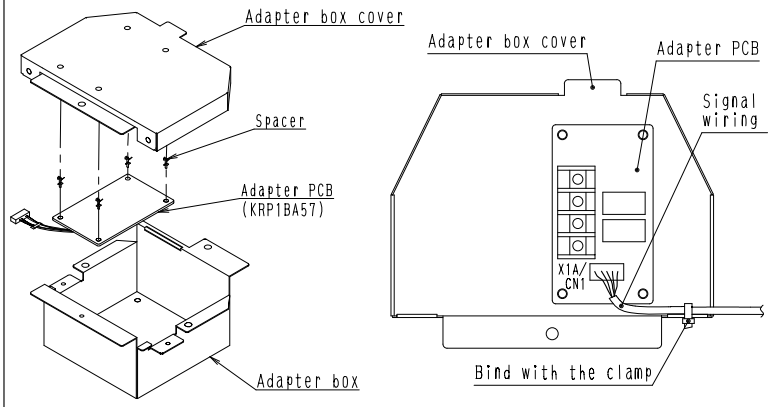
[Fig. 4]

Continues on back side

C: 2P196605B



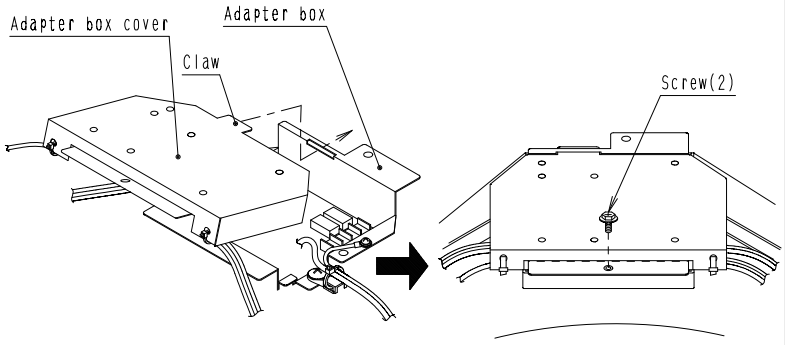
[Fig. 5]



[Fig. 6]

⑤ After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 7)

- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



[Fig. 7]

C: 2P196606B

❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

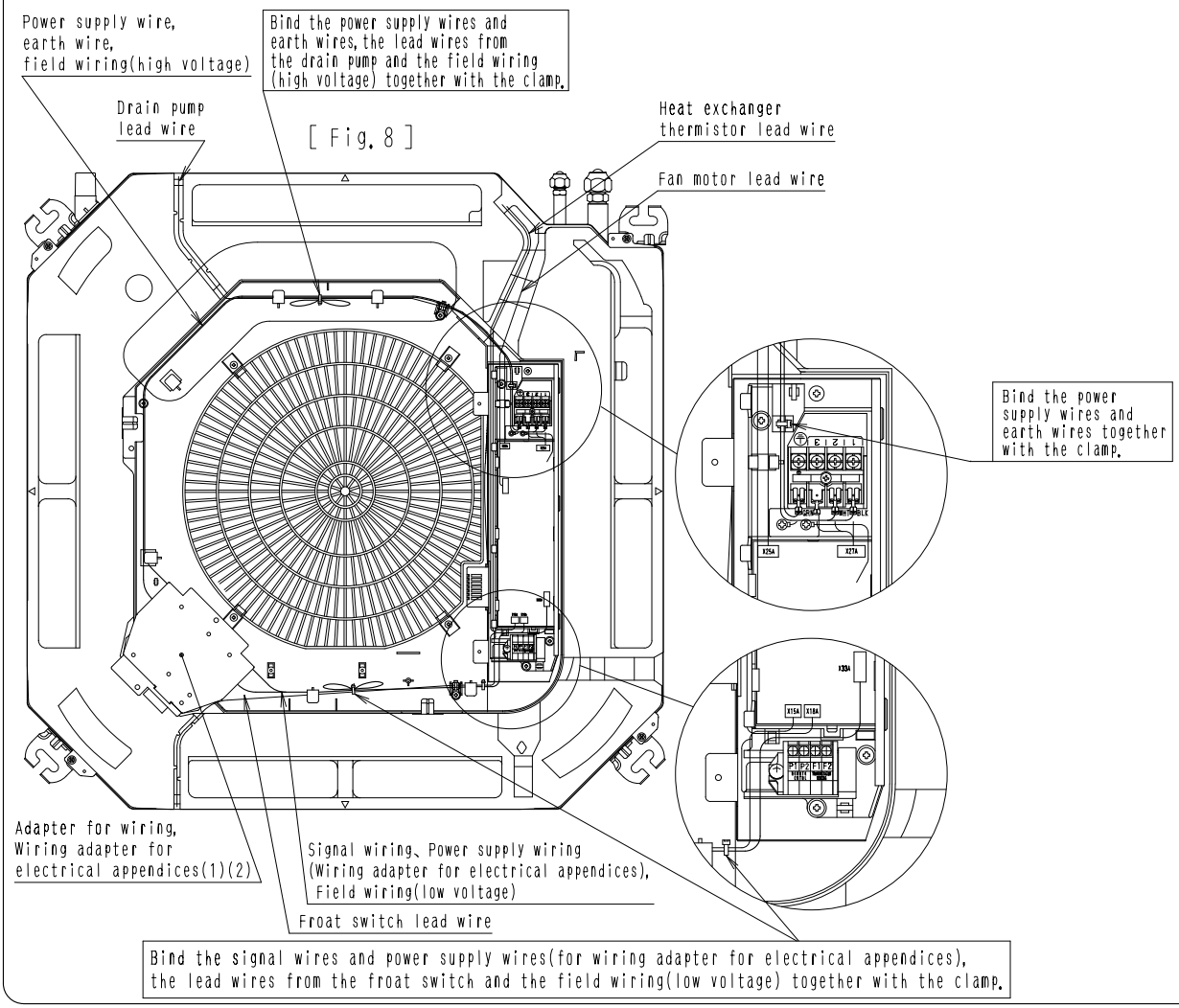
- Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires, earth wires) (See the installation manual of indoor unit and wiring diagram lavel for where to connect the wiring.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

① Fix the internal wirings.

- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Secure firmly the switch box cover in place in opposite order of removing.

- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



C: 2P196606B

8.2 KRP1BA101



Item \ Model	KRP1BA101
Installation	Internal
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Accessories	Clamp. Mounting screws. Code sticker. Installation manual.

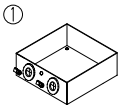
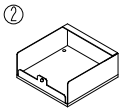
Notes

- One kit is required for each adaptor.
- Refer to the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and adaptor.

Kit name	Indoor unit
KRP1B101 KRP1BA101	FFQ type FXZQ type FXD type FXDQ type FTQ type FXTQ type

Accessories

Check the following accessories are included in this kit.

Name	Installation box	Lid of installation box	Clamp	Screw	Cord sticker	Installation manual		Screw
Quantity	x 1	x 1	x 3	x 3	x 3	KRP1B101	English x 1	x 2
						KRP1BA101	English x 1 , Japanese x 1	
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥  (This manual)		⑦ 

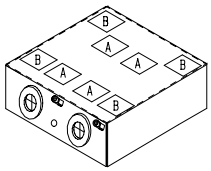
Applicable adaptor

Adaptor	Kit name		
	In case of FFQ, FXZQ type	In case of FXD, FXDQ type	In case of FXTQ, FTQ type
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B(A)57	KRP1B56	KRP1C75
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A52, KRP2A62	KRP2A53	————
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4A(A)53	KRP4A54, KRP4A74	KRP4A74
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A52, DTA104A62	DTA104A53	DTA104A53

<In case of FFQ, FXZQ type>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

Attach the adaptor

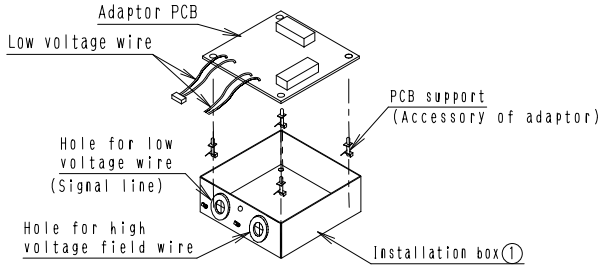


Attach the adaptor in the installation box① by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box① to insert the PCB support.

  Adaptor : KRP1B(A)57 --- Detach the aluminum tapes A.
  KRP2A52, KRP2A62, KRP4A(A)53, DTA104A52, DTA104A62 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.

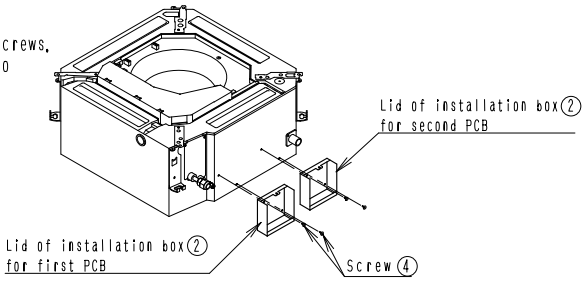
- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.



1P107687D

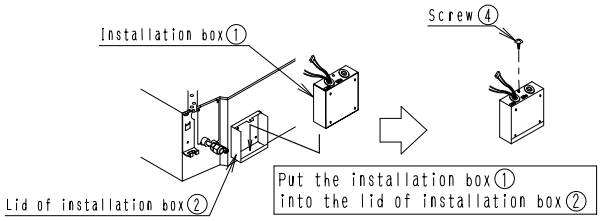
Attach the lid of installation box

Attach the lid of installation box ② to indoor unit with two screws. If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.



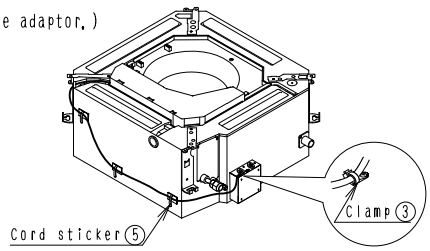
Attach the installation box

Attach the installation box ① into the lid of installation box ② with the screw.



❷ Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with the control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamp ③ as shown in the below drawing.

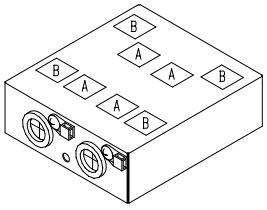


1P107687D

<In case of FXD, FXDQ type>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

Attach the adaptor

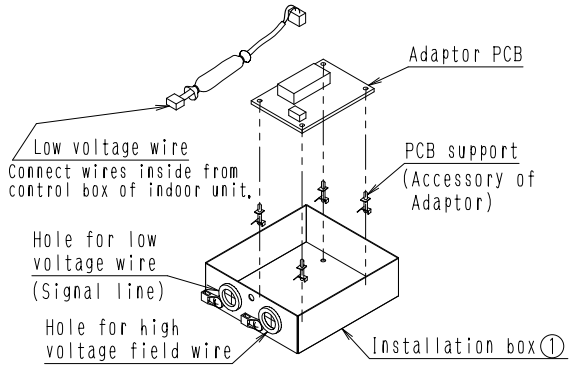


- Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1B56 --- Detach the aluminum tapes A.
  Adaptor : KRP2A53, KRP4A54, KRP4A74, DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.

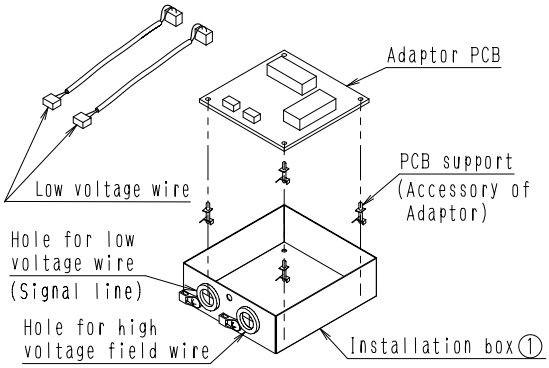
Attach the adaptor in the installation box① by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.

In case of KRP1B56 type

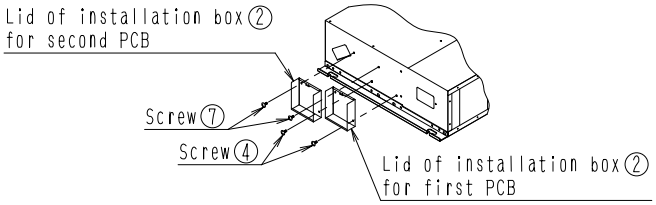


In case of KRP2A53, KRP4A54, KRP4A74, DTA104A53 type



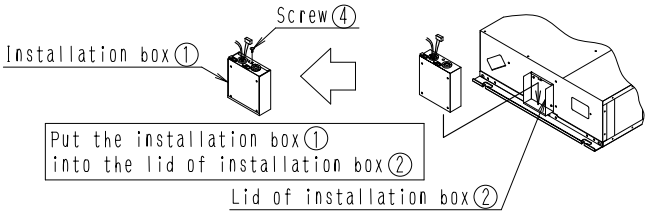
Attach the lid of installation box

- Attach the lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws④.
- If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.
- When the insulation kit is used together, attach the lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws⑦.



Attach the installation box

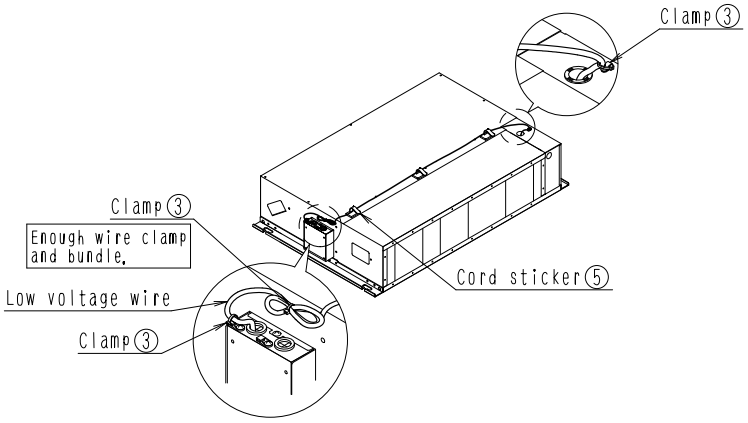
Attach the installation box① into the lid of installation box② with the screw④.



1P107687D

❷ Method of wiring processing

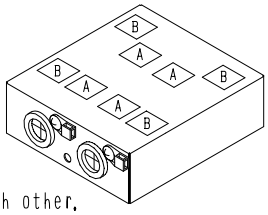
- Connect wires with control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.



<In case of FXTQ, FTQ type>

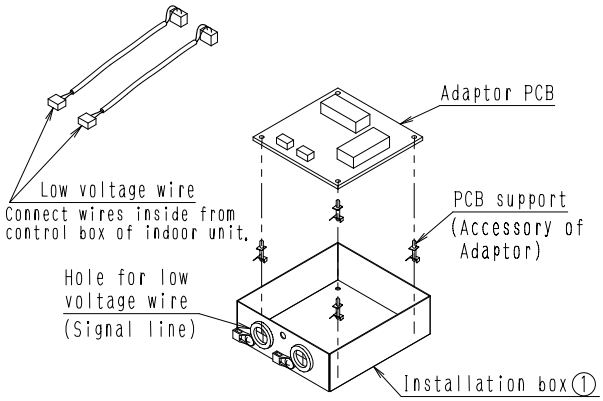
❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

Attach the adaptor



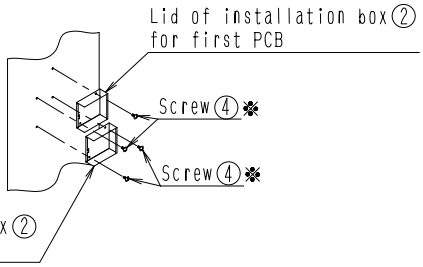
- Detach the aluminum tape of the installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1C75, KRP4A74, DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminum tapes B.
  Attach the adaptor in the installation box ① by the PCB supports.
  (PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)
- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the installation box ①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.

In case of KRP1C75, KRP4A74, DTA104A53 type



Attach the lid of installation box

- Do not mount the installation box directly on the unit.
  Mount the box near the local wiring outlet.
- Attach the lid of installation box ② on the vertical rigid surface near the unit with two screws ④.
- If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.

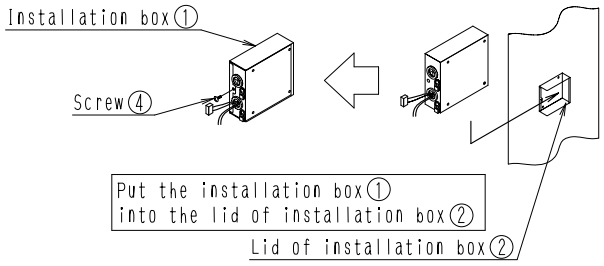


※If the attached screws ④ cannot be used due to the local conditions, procure the screws locally.

1P133507A

Attach the installation box

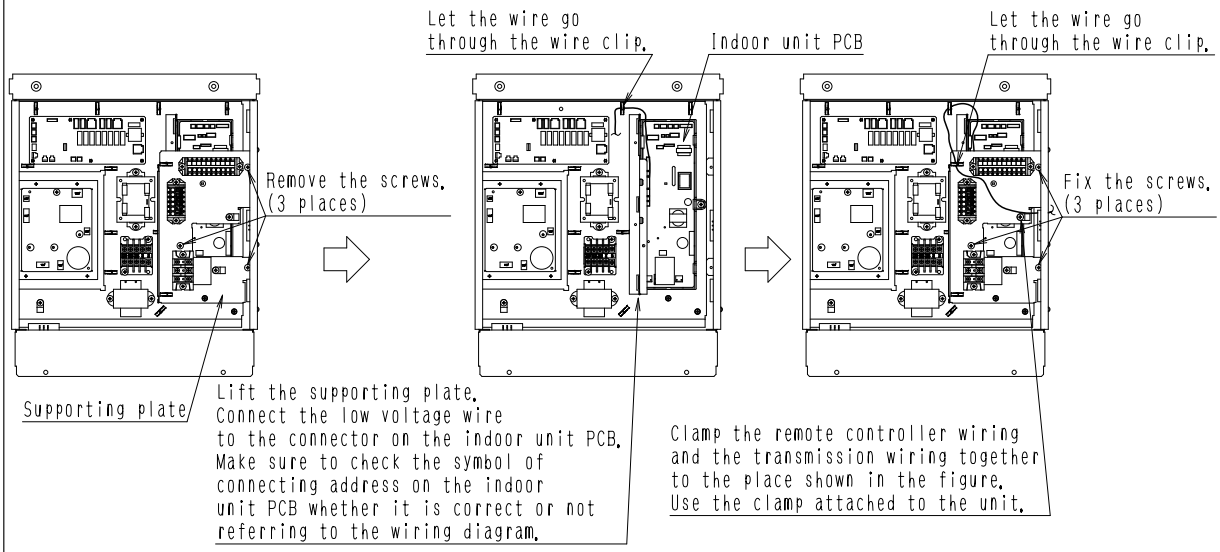
Attach the installation box① into the lid of installation box② with the screw④.

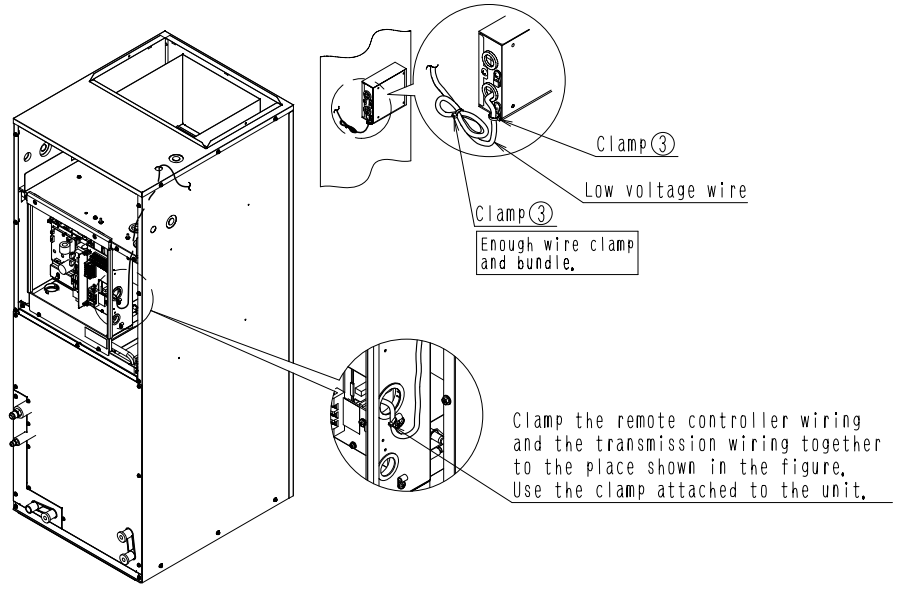


② Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the clamps③ as shown in the below drawing.

Detail view of control box





1P133507A

8.3 KRP1B98

Item \ Model	KRP1B98
Material	Adaptor box: HIPS black Adaptor box cover: Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Accessories	Clamp. Code sticker. Mounting screw for installation box cover. Installation manual.

Installation Manual

Daikin Air Conditioners

Installation Box for Adaptor PCB: Installation Manual

KRP1B98

This manual should be thoroughly read before proceeding with installation work and the procedures detailed herein strictly observed.

1P012267-1A

Cautions

- This product can be mounted on ceiling mounted cassette type <Multi flow types>. Check the model name of the indoor unit body shown in the table at right (List of Combinations) before mounting the product.
- Refer to both the Indoor Unit Body Installation Manual and the Adaptor PCB Installation manual when mounting the product.

Kit Name	Applicable Model	
KRP1B98	SkyAir	FHC35/50/60KVE, FHYC35/50/60/71/100/125/140KVE, FHC18/21/26/30/36/42/48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC18/24/48NUV2S, FHC21KV2S, FHC71DV2S

Details of Parts

Check the following parts.

Name	Installation Box	Installation Box cover	Clamp	Cord Sticker	Installation Box Installation Screws	Installation Manual
Quantity	1PC	1 set	2PCs	6PCs	1PC	1PC
Shape					 M4 × 16	

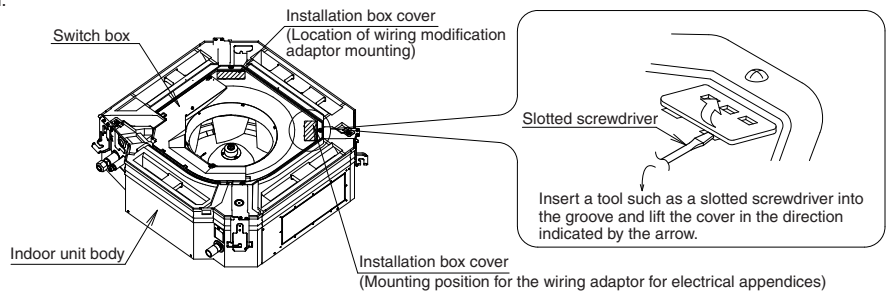
Applicable Adaptor PCB

Adaptor PCB Name	Kit Name
	SkyAir
Adaptor for Wiring	KRP1BA57
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	KRP4AA53

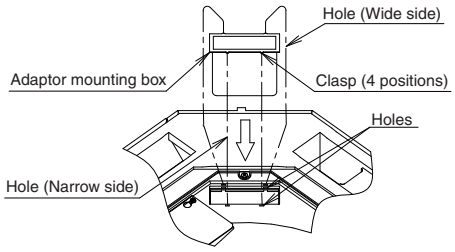
❶ Indoor Unit Installation

① Remove the installation box cover of the indoor unit body.

- The storage location differs depending on the adaptor PCB mounted.



② Mount the installation box.
Insert the installation box in the opening where the lid was removed in Step ①.
Insert the four clasps firmly into the holes and secure the box into place.
Be careful to mount the installation box in the proper orientation.
Check the relative positions of the clasps and the holes before mounting the box.



JC: 1P012267A

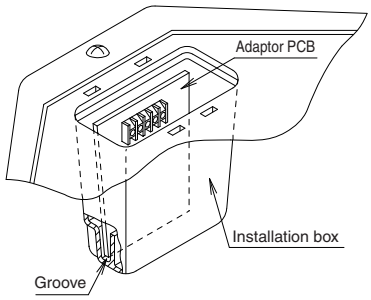
❷ Mounting the Adaptor PCB

(Refer also to the Installation Manual for the Adaptor PCB.)

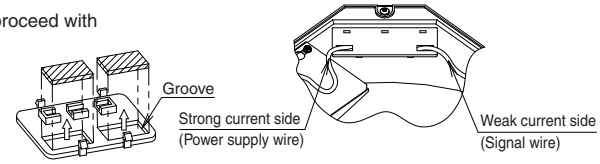
① Insert the Adaptor PCB in the installation box cover.
- Refer to the Adaptor PCB Manual for details of the Adaptor PCB insertion orientation.
- Insert the Adaptor PCB in the groove on the inner side of the Adaptor Mounting Box.

Caution

Complete wiring to the Adaptor PCB before mounting.

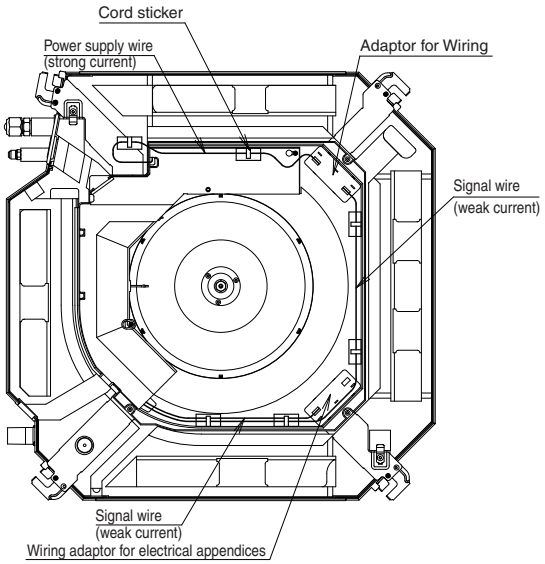


② Mount the installation box cover (Indoor unit body part) removed earlier.
- Use a tool such as a cutter to open electric wire through holes (2 locations) along the groove.
- Divide wires into strong and weak currents and pass through the holes. (Refer to ❸ Wiring Method)
- Remove the installation box cover and proceed with mounting in the reverse order.

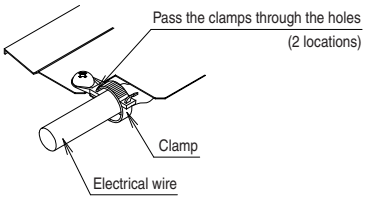


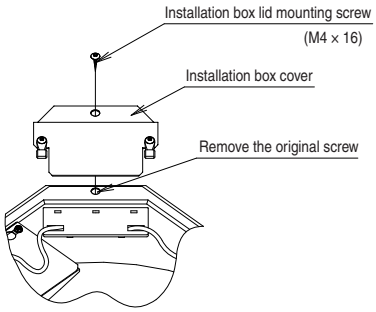
❸ Wiring Method

① Carry out internal wiring.
- Follow the electrical wiring procedure detailed in the Adaptor PCB Installation Manual.
  In addition, follow the procedure detailed in diagram below for wiring between the installation box and the indoor unit switch box.
- After completing wiring, secure wires into place using accessory cord stickers.



② Mount the accessory installation box cover.
- Check all bundling and wiring before mounting the accessory mounting box cover (diagram at right).
- After mounting the cover, firmly secure the electrical wires near the electric wire through holes using the accessory clamps (2 positions). (Diagram below)





J: 1P012267A

8.4 KRP4A96



Item \ Model	KRP4A96
Installation	Internal
Material	Steel sheet (t=0.8 painting)
Accessories	Mounting screw (M4×8). Sealing material. Clamp. Installation manual.

Installation Manual

Caution

- This plate is mountable on the ceiling mounted duct type unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this plate on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the plate, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adaptor PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.
- Fixing method is not on the installation manual attached to the adapter PCB. Please follow directions on this sheet.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible		
KRP4A96	Ceiling mounted duct type unit	SkyAir	FBQ-D(A)
		VRV	FXMQ-P

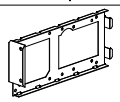
*See the DAIKIN catalog for the details

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

<Precaution>

The accessories are required for the installation of the air conditioner. Be sure to keep them until the installation work is completed.

Name	Adaptor plate	Screw	Sealing material	Clamp	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	2PCS.	2PC.	8PCS.	1PC.
Shape		 M4×8			

<Caution>

- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- Use copper wire only.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid.
- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

❶ Mounting the adaptor plate

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

① Remove the control box lid. [Fig.1]

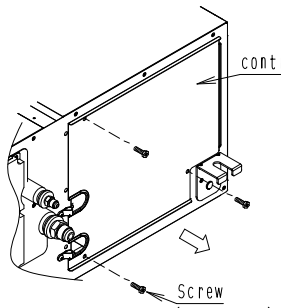
② Connect the wiring to the indoor unit. (The work is easier if the wiring is connected first.)

- See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.
- Please see the connector location on (figure 1) on the ❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring .

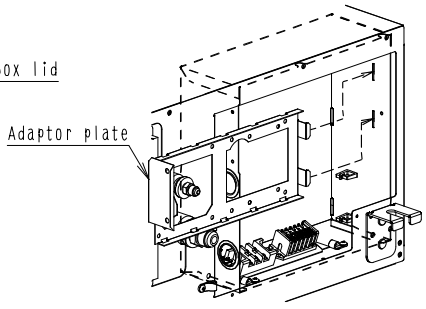
《Mounting the adaptor plate》

① Putting the claw of the adaptor plate into the hole of the box. [Fig.2]

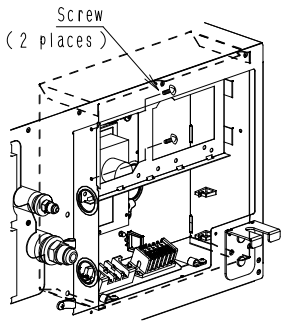
② Fix the box with the attached fixing screws at two places. [Fig.3]



[Fig.1]



[Fig.2]

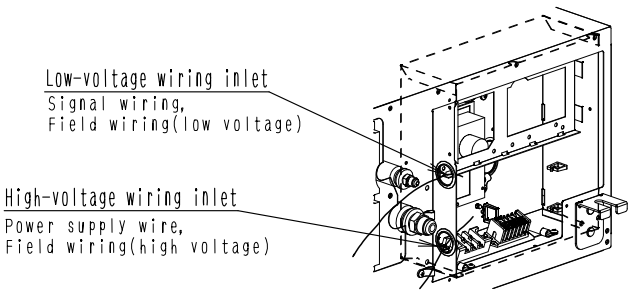


[Fig.3]

❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring

《How To Lead-in External Wires 》

Lay the wires in the control box through the wire inlet on the side of the control box.

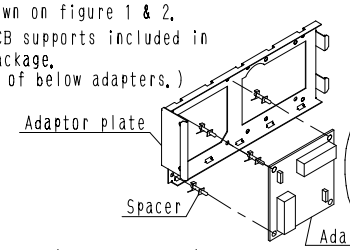


C: 2P226887

《How to mount the adaptor PCB》

① Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)
● See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for where to connect the wiring.

② Mount adapter PCB onto the mounting plate (in the direction) as shown on figure 1 & 2.
● Use PCB supports included in the package.
(for any of below adapters.)

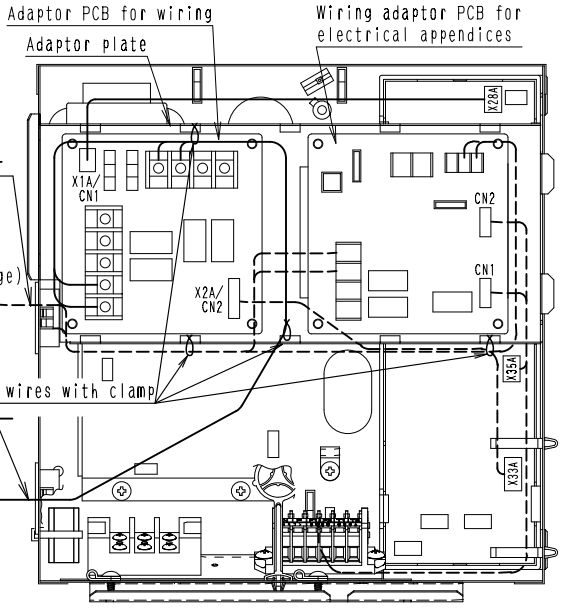


《Caution》If (adapter PCB is) mounted in a wrong direction, electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

Adaptor PCB		Place where to mount
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1C64	(Fig. 1)
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (※1)	KRP4AA51 KRP2A61	(Fig. 1)
External control adaptor for outdoor unit (※1)	DTA104A61	(Fig. 2)

(※1) adapter cannot be mounted 2 or more together.

〈Adaptor for wiring, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices〉



(Fig. 1)

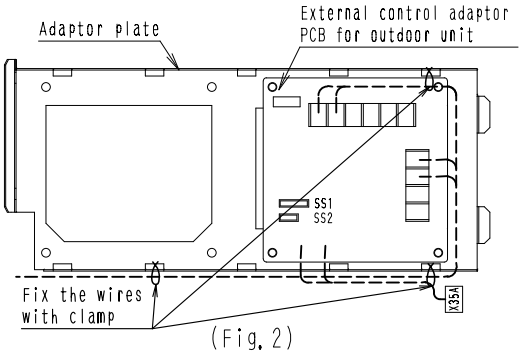
《How to handle the wiring》

《Caution》Do not make high-voltage and low-voltage wires run in parallel. Electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

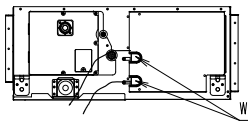
① Fix the internal wirings.
Bind the wiring from the adaptor plate to the indoor unit control box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
(Put the clamping materials through the corner holes to fix wires.)
● Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Put the control box lid, and wrap the wire sealing material around the wires so as to block the wire through holes.
● Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.
● After all the wiring connections are done, fill in any gaps in the through holes with putty or insulation (procured locally) to prevent small animals and insects from entering the unit from outside.
(If any do get in, they could cause short circuits in the control box.)

〈External control adaptor for outdoor unit〉

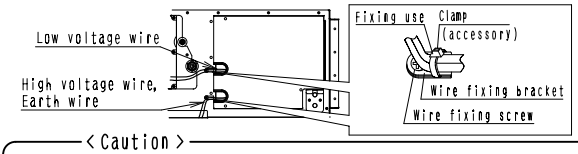


(Fig. 2)

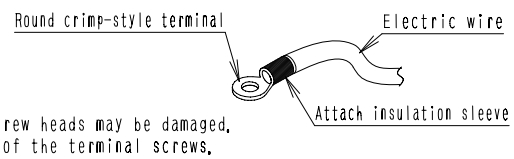


⚠Warning
Trim and lay the wiring neatly and attach the control box lid securely.
An electric shock or fire may result if the control box lid catches any wiring or the wires push up the lid.

③ Connect round crimp-style terminals provided with insulation sleeves to the terminal block for power supply.
● See the instruction attached to the indoor unit.



〈Caution〉
- Connect proper wires securely and fix the wires so that external force will not be imposed on the terminals.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver to tighten the terminal screws. The screw heads may be damaged if the screwdriver is too small and the terminal screws will not be tightened properly.
- Do not tighten the terminal screws excessively, or otherwise the screw heads may be damaged.
- Refer to the table below for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.



	Tightening torque (N・m)
Terminal block for remote controller and transmission wires	1.18 – 1.44
Terminal block for power supply, and wiring the units	1.18 – 1.44

C: 2P226887

8.5 KRP4AA93



Item \ Model			KRP4AA93
Applicable Adaptor			KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54
Installation			External
Material			Hot-dip zinc-coated steel sheet for painting
Dimensions	Width	mm	160
	Height	mm	180
	Thickness	mm	50

Installation Manual

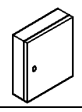
REMARKS

- This box can be mounted on the small wall mounted type indoor unit.
  One box is required for every adaptor.
- When mounting the box, see the installation manual of the indoor unit as well as the installation manual of the box.

Combination table

Kit model name	Model name of indoor unit which allows the box to be mounted	
KRP4AA93	SkyAir	FAQ71BVV1B, FAY71LVE
	VRV	FXA-L type FXAQ-M(A) type FXAQ-P type

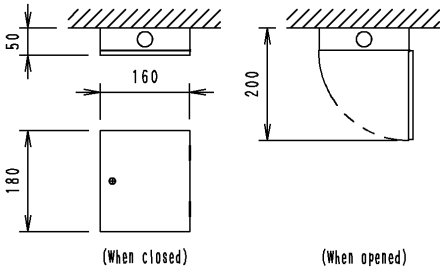
Parts included Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box for adaptor PCB	Screw for fixing door	Plastic washer	Installation manual
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 sheet
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④  (This sheet)

❶ Selection of mounting location

- The location of the box must be near the indoor unit and where open/ close of the door can be handled smoothly.

Caution
- Make sure to select the flat area for mounting.

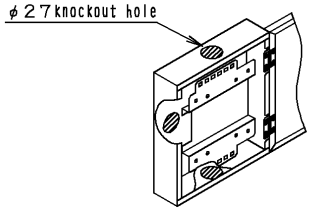


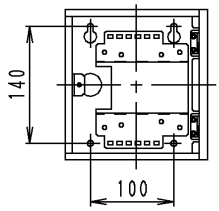
❷ Mounting the box

① Determine the wiring outlet side and open the knockout hole on the box.
- Three knockout holes for wiring outlet are located on the upper, the lower and the rear sides. (Shown right figs.)

② Determine the box mounting location properly so that it suits the wiring length and outlet location.

③ Fix the box with 4 screws (Field supplied)
- The dimensions for mounting is shown right.

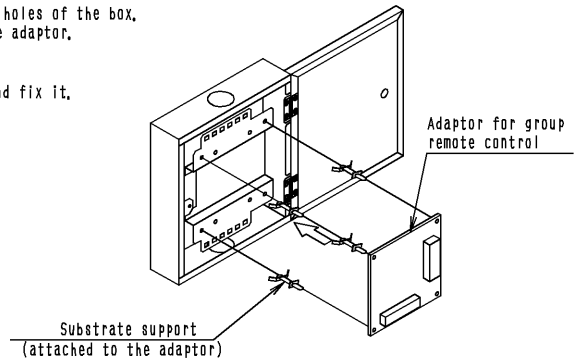




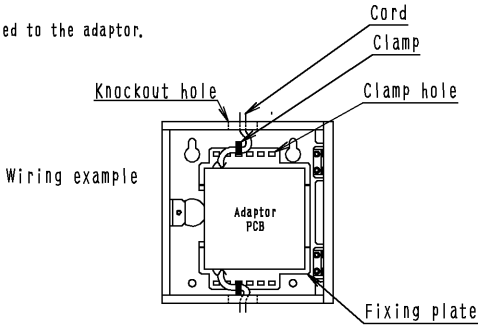
C: 3K012186D

③ Mounting the adaptor

- Fix 4 pieces of substrate supports to the holes of the box. The substrate supports are attached to the adaptor.
- Match the adaptor to substrate supports and fix it.

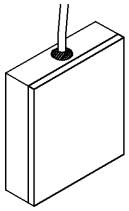


- For wiring, follow the installation manual attached to the adaptor.
- For wiring, fix the fixing plate with the clamp attached to the adaptor.

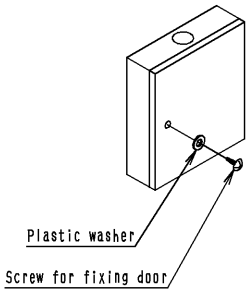


⚠Caution

- When passing wiring through the knockout holes, remove burrs around the knockout holes and protect the wiring with protective tape or conduit or bushing (field supply).
- If small animals or bugs might enter the unit, block off any gaps (hatching parts in below figure) with sealer (field supply).



- After checking the wiring, close the door and fix the door with the plastic washer and the fixing screws.



3K012186D

8.6 KRP1CA93



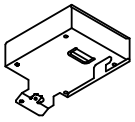
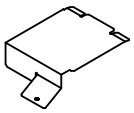
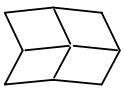
Item	Model		KRP1CA93
Installation			Internal
Material			Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions	Width	mm	109
	Length	mm	124
	Depth	mm	38
Component parts			Installation box. Box cover. Clamp. Screws. Installation Manual.

Installation Manual

NOTE:

- This box can be installed to the ceiling-hang type unit.
- Each adapter plate requires one kit.

Parts included: Check the following parts are include with your unit.

Part name	Installation box main body	Installation box lid	Installation screw	Fixing screw for lid	Fixture	Installation manual	Clamp
Shape			 M4×8	 M4×12			
Quantiity	1	1	2	2	2	1	4

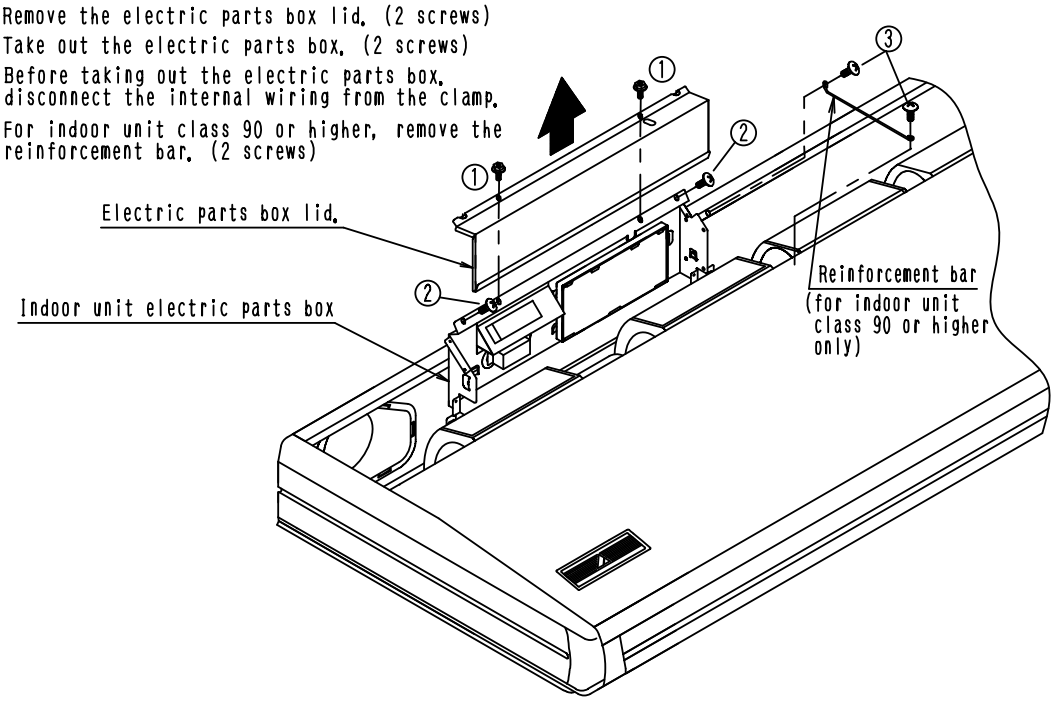
Applicable adapter plate

Adapter plate name	Kit name
(Group) Remote control adapter	KRP2A62, KRP4AA52

1 Installation preparation

① Remove the electric parts box lid. (2 screws)
② Take out the electric parts box. (2 screws)
- Before taking out the electric parts box, disconnect the internal wiring from the clamp.

③ For indoor unit class 90 or higher, remove the reinforcement bar. (2 screws)



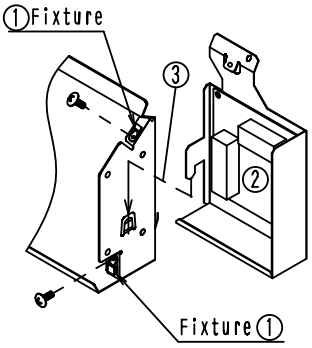
3K09595B

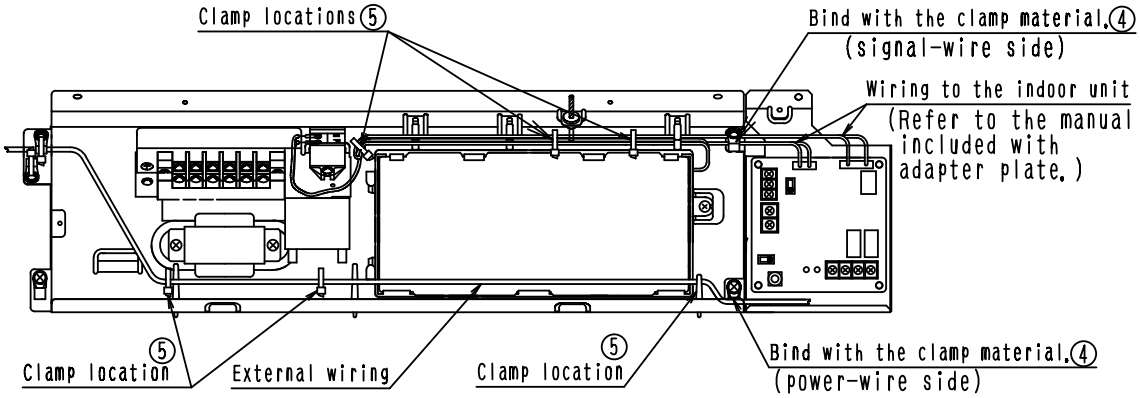
❷ Installation of Adapter Plate

①Install the fixture included with the kit to the electric parts box. (2 locations)
②Install the adapter plate to the adapter installation box.
- ●For installation direction of the adapter plate, refer to the installation manual included with the adapter plate.

③Temporarily hang the adapter installation box on the electric parts box of the indoor unit.
④Connect wires to the adapter plate and the indoor unit.
- ●For wiring locations, refer to the manual included with the adapter plate.
- ●Separate power wires and signal wires. Refer to the figure below on how to wire inside the electric parts box.
- ●Bind the wires taken out of the adapter plate together with the fixture installed in ① using the included clamp material.

⑤Fix the intemal wiring.
- ●Refer to the figure below on how to fix the wires inside the electric parts box to the clamp material.
- ●Bind the remaining wires with the clamp material, and house them inside the electric parts box.



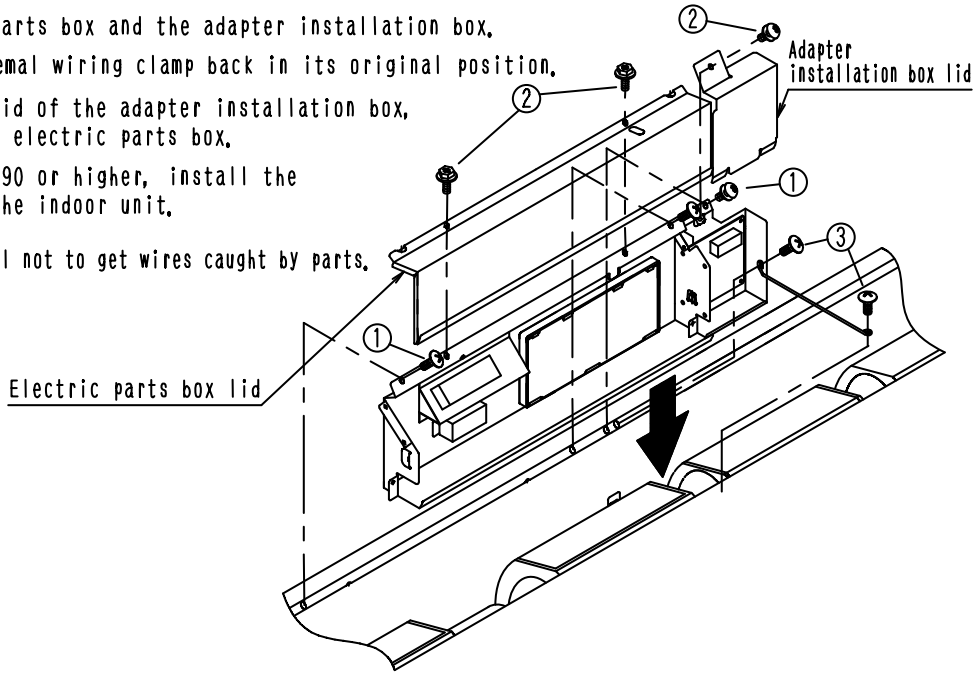


❸ Installation to the Indoor Unit

①Install the electric parts box and the adapter installation box.
- ●Place the removed intemal wiring clamp back in its original position.

②After installing the lid of the adapter installation box, install the lid of the electric parts box.
③For indoor unit class 90 or higher, install the reinforcement bar to the indoor unit.

※When installing, be careful not to get wires caught by parts.



3K09595B

8.7 KRP1BA97



Item / Model			KRP1BA97
Adaptor for Wiring			KRP4AA53
Installation			Internal
Material			Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions	Width	mm	110
	Length	mm	165
	Depth	mm	41

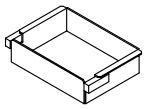
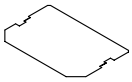
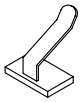
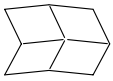
Installation Manual

Notes

- This kit is also attachable to the ceiling-suspended type unit.
- Also refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit before installation.

Description of Parts

Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box body	Installation box cover	Mounting screw	Cable Tie	Installation manual
Shape			 M4 × 12		
Q'ty	1 unit	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.

1. Preparation for mounting

(1) Remove the suction grill and open the el. compo. box lid. (2 screws) (Fig. 1-1)
(2) Remove the lead wire of the swing motor from the bell mouth (Fig. 1-1).
(3) Remove the bell mouth from the indoor unit body (No. of screws: 4) (Fig. 1-2).
(4) Use a nipper or cutter to cut a opening for bell mouth wiring (Fig. 1-3).
(5) Drill two holes in the concave of the bell mouth for the mounting screws (Fig. 1-3).

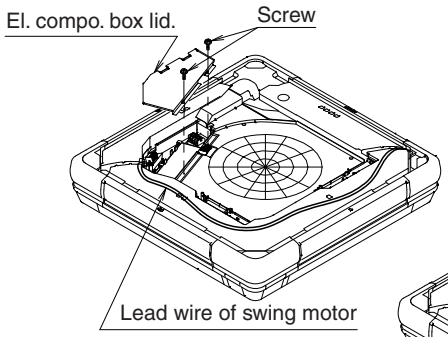


Fig. 1-1

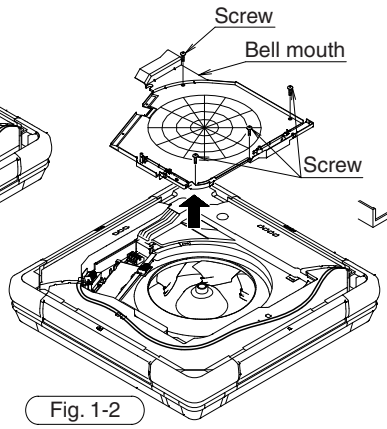


Fig. 1-2

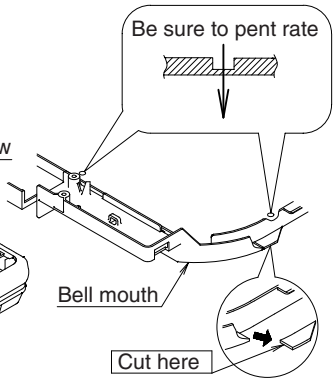


Fig. 1-3

J: 2P002952E

2. Mounting the adaptor (Also refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)

(1) Attach printed circuit board supports (4 pieces) to the holes of the installation box body (Fig. 2-1).
(Attach them before mounting the adaptor.)
Printed circuit board supports are supplied with the adaptor.

(2) Mount the adaptor according to the position of the printed circuit board supports.
Also connect the external wires to the adaptor.

(3) Attach the installation box body to the bell mouth with two screws supplied (Fig. 2-2).

(4) Bind the relay harness to the bell mouth with the clamp supplied with the adaptor. At this time, cut off the excess of the clamp. (Fig. 2-3)

(5) Attach the bell mouth to the indoor unit body (Fig. 2-3).

(6) Return the swing motor lead wire to the original positions and fix them.

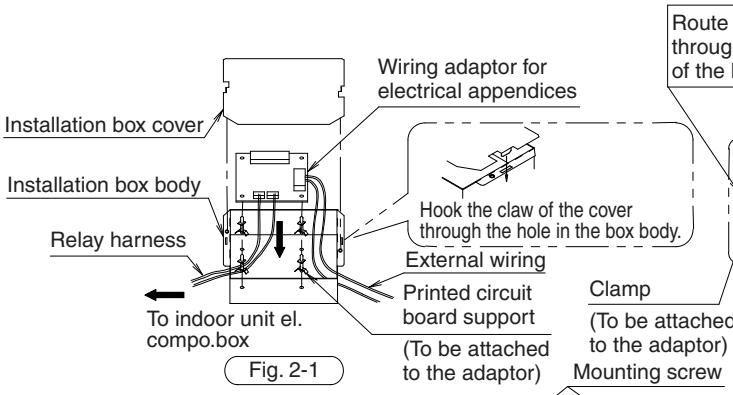


Fig. 2-1

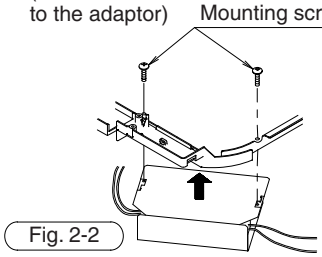


Fig. 2-2

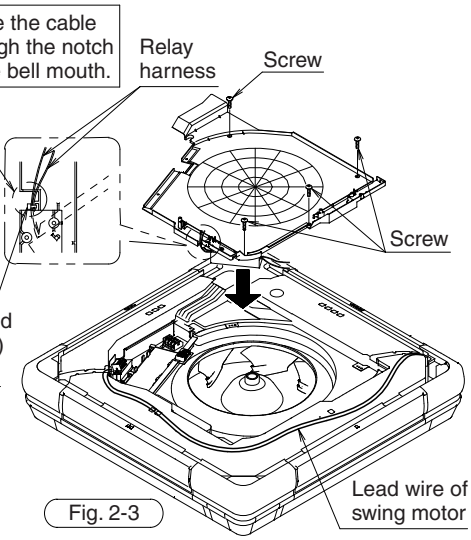


Fig. 2-3

3. Wiring method

● Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor for electric wiring.

(1) After completing the installation work, use the cable sticker supplied and clamp attached to the adaptor to fix the cable as shown in the figure below. (Fig. 3-1)
- Pay attention not to bend the cable.
- Cut off the excess of the clamp.
- Coil excess lead wire on the bell mouth as shown in the figure.

(2) Coil excess lead wire in the switch box and secure it with a clamp supplied with the adaptor (Fig. 3-1).

(3) Mount the el. compo. box lid. (Fig. 3-2).

(4) Mount the suction grille.

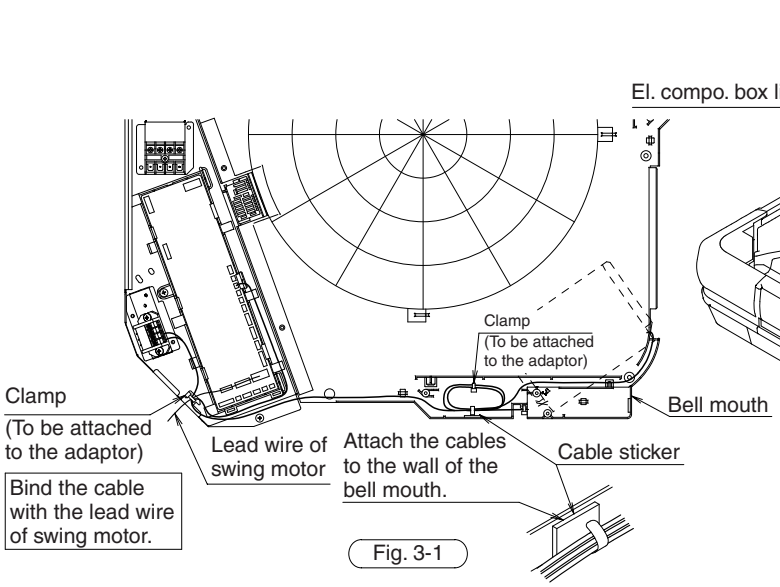


Fig. 3-1

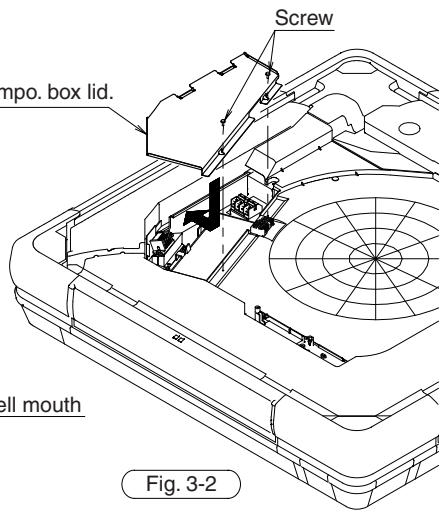


Fig. 3-2

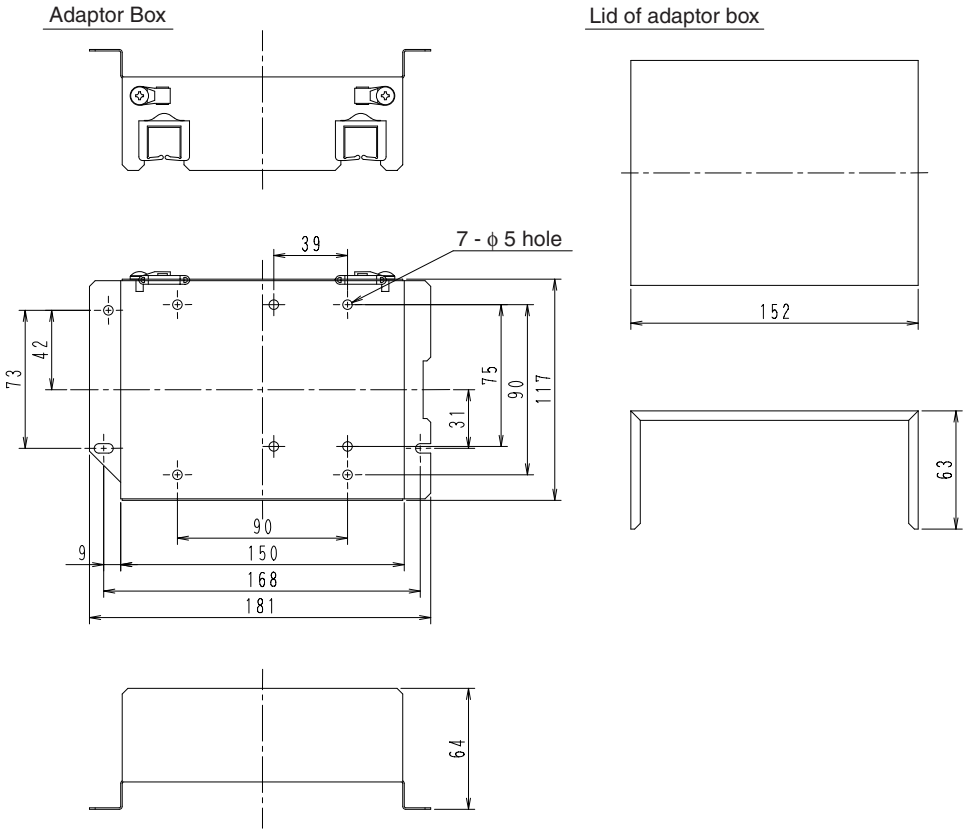
J: 2P002952E

8.8 KRP4AA95

Item \ Model			KRP4AA95
Applicable Adaptor			KRP1BA57 KRP4AA52 DTA102A52
Installation			Internal
Material			Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions	Width	mm	180
	Height	mm	117
	Thickness	mm	64
Accessories			Clamp. Wire clip. Tapping screw. Installation manual.

Dimensions

Unit (mm)



J: D3K2421A

Installation Manual

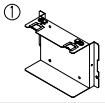
Daikin Air Conditioner Installation Box for Adaptor PCB Installation Manual

KRP4A95•KRP4AA95 Be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction 1P030678-1E

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to a SkyAir indoor unit floor standing type. One installation box is necessary per adaptor.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and the installation manual for the adaptor to be installed.

Parts Content The following parts are included.

Name	Installation box for adaptor PCB	Installation box lid	Clamp	Mounting screw	Wire clip	Installation Manual
Q'ty	1	1	2	4	1	1
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥  (This manual)

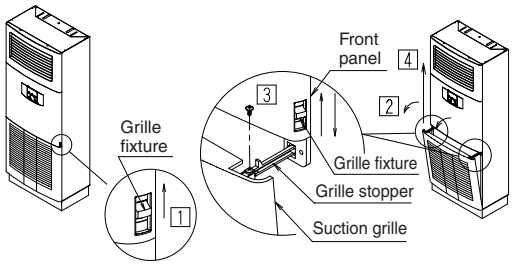
❶ Installation to the Indoor Unit

- Refer also to the installation manual for the indoor unit.
- Shut off the power supply before completing the installation work.

(1) Remove the suction grille and front panel from the indoor unit as shown below.

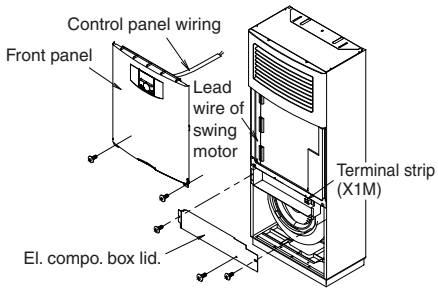
① Remove the suction grille.

[1] Pull the 2 grille stoppers (right and left) of the front panel upward.
[2] tilt the suction grille forward;
[3] remove the 2 grille stopper mounting screws (right and left); and
[4] pull the suction grille upward.

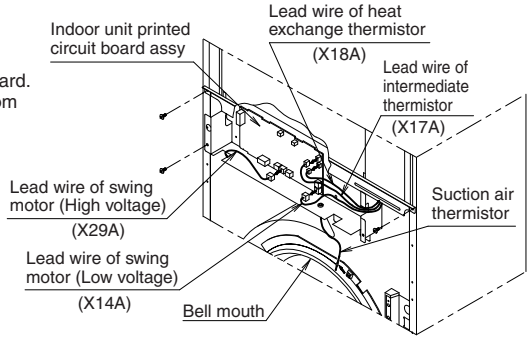


② Remove the el. compo. box lid. and remove the remote controller cord from the terminal N, P of the terminal strip. (X1M)

③ Remove the 2 screws from the front panel and pull the panel downward to remove it.

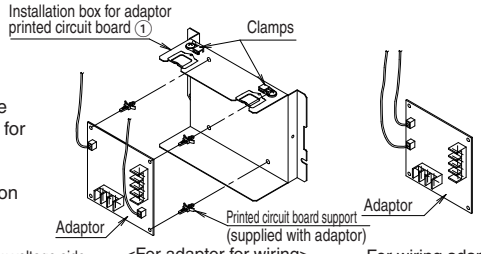


(2) Remove the 2 lead wire of swing motor and intermediate thermistor and heat exchanger thermistor from the indoor unit printed circuit board. In addition, unhook the suction air thermistor from the bell mouth.



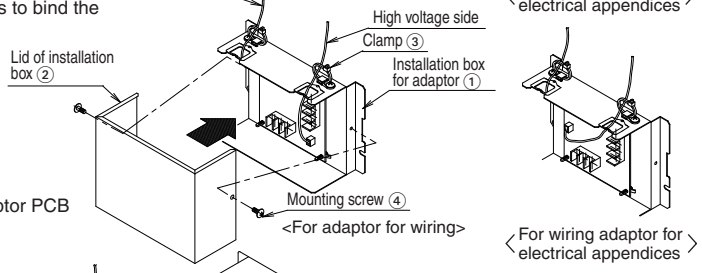
C: 1P030678F

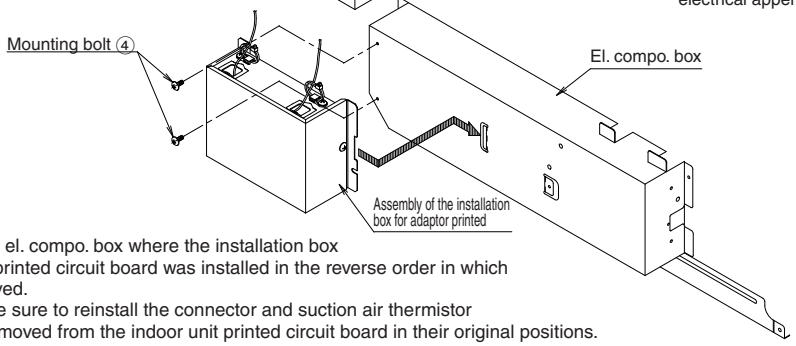
(3) Install the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices or adaptor for wiring onto the installation box for adaptor printed circuit board ①.
- Use the printed circuit board support (supplied with the adaptor) to install the adaptor onto the installation box for adaptor printed circuit board ①.
- Connect wiring to the adaptor.
  Wiring should be performed according to the installation manual supplied with the adaptor.
- Separate high and low voltage wires and feed them throughthe holes.
- Use the supplied clamping materials to bind the installation wires to the clamps.



(4) After wiring the adaptor, attach the lid ② to the installation box for adaptor PCB.

(5) Install the installation box for adaptor PCB onto the removed el. compo. box.



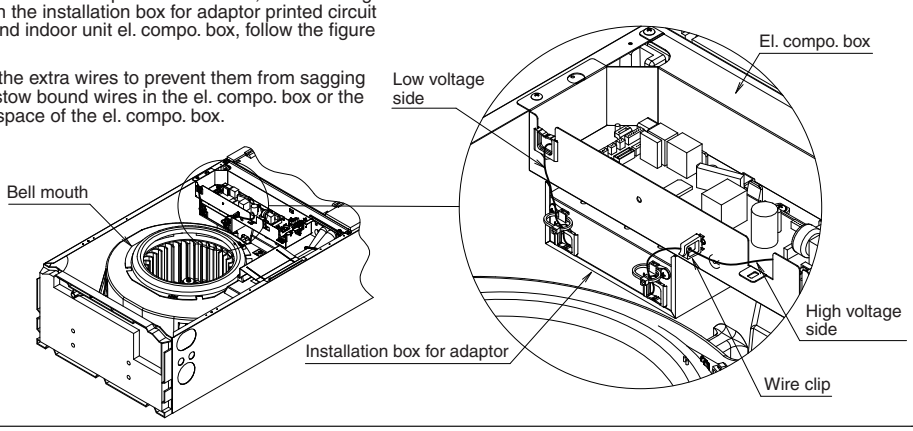


(6) Reinstall the el. compo. box where the installation box for adaptor printed circuit board was installed in the reverse order in which it was removed.
After that, be sure to reinstall the connector and suction air thermistor that were removed from the indoor unit printed circuit board in their original positions.

❷ Wiring

Wire both the indoor and outdoor units.
- For the electric wiring, follow the installation manual supplied with the adaptor. Furthermore, for the wiring between the installation box for adaptor printed circuit board and indoor unit el. compo. box, follow the figure below.

Note: Bind the extra wires to prevent them from sagging and stow bound wires in the el. compo. box or the rear space of the el. compo. box.



❸ Installation of front panel / suction grille

(1) Reinstall the front panel in the reverse order in which it was removed. In this step, pay attention not to pinch the remote controller cord between the panel and the unit.
(2) Connect the remote controller cord to the terminal strip (X1M). Polarity is not an issue.
(3) Attach the el. compo. box lid.
(4) Reinstall the suction grille in the reverse order in which it was removed.

J: 1P030678F

9. Central Remote Controller

9.1 DCS302CA61



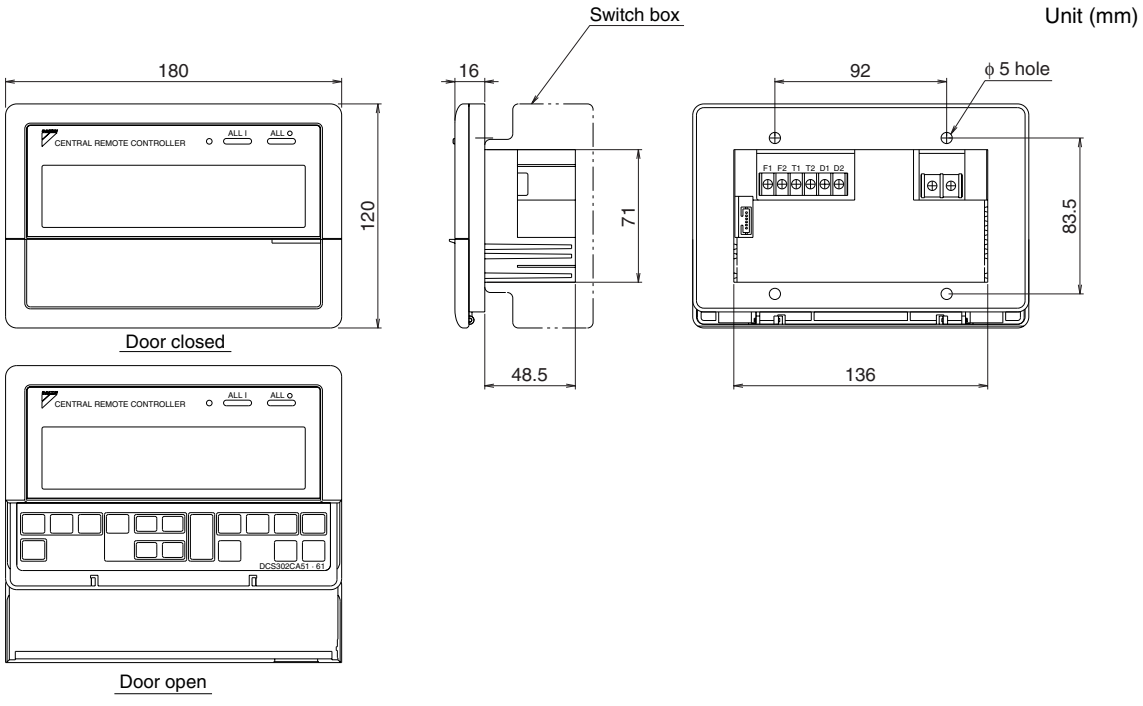
64 groups (zones) of indoor units can be controlled individually same as LCD Remote controller.

- Max.64 groups (128 indoor units controllable)
- Max. 128 groups (128 indoor units) are controllable by using 2 central remote controllers, which can control from 2 different places.
- Zone control
- Error code display
- Combination with Unified ON/OFF controller, schedule timer and BMS system
- Airflow rate and direction can be controlled individually for indoor units in each group operation.
- Ventilation volume and mode can be controlled for Heat Reclaim Ventilator.
- Up to 4 Operation/Stop pairs can be set per day by connecting a schedule timer.

9.1.1 Specifications

Item \ Model		DCS302CA61
Power supply voltage / frequency		AC100~240V ±10% 50/60Hz
Power consumption		Max. 8W
Setting data backup		Non-volatile memory (Data preserved semi-permanently)
Effects of instantaneous power failure		No effect for 20 milli-sec. or less
Forced OFF input Operation on the local side cannot be carried out during forced OFF input.		■ No-voltage normal open contact ■ Micro-current contact capable of handling 16VDC and approx. 10mA. ■ Max. 150 m cable length
Power supply for schedule timer		Power can be supplied to schedule timer. (Max. 1 unit)
Operating ambient temperature /humidity condition		-5~40°C, 95% RH or less (no condensation)
Size (width × height × depth)	mm	180×120×64.5 exposed portion of front panel : 16
Weight (Mass)	g	Approx. 420

9.1.2 Dimensions



3D050340

9.1.3 Operation Manual

BEFORE USE

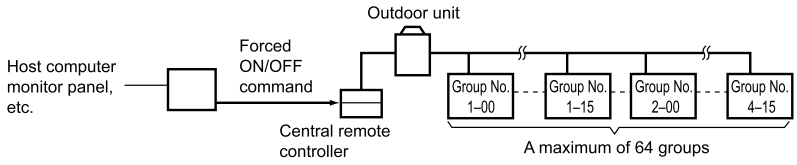
■ GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

This central remote controller can monitor and control up to 64 indoor unit groups.
Using two central remote controllers allows monitoring and controlling of up to 128 indoor unit groups.

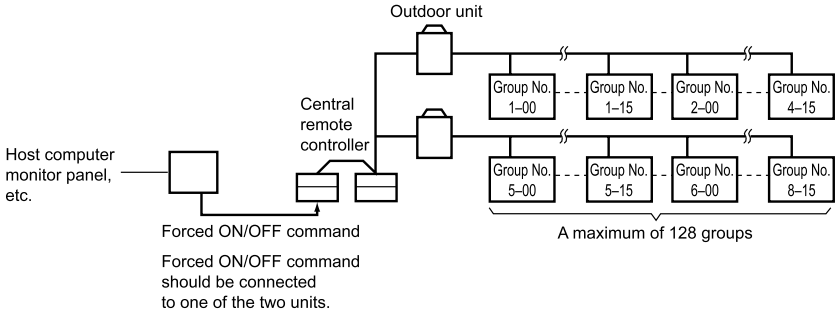
Main Functions

1. Batch starting and stopping of indoor units connected to the central remote controller.
2. Handling of operation settings such as start/stop, timer operation, remote controller prohibition/permission, etc., and operation status settings such as temperature.
3. Operation status monitoring of operation mode, set temperature, etc.
4. Can be connected to an external central monitor panel and key system using the forced stop input (non-voltage a connector).

- When using 1 central remote controller



- When using 2 central remote controllers

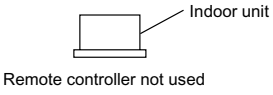


(The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter circuit board or group remote control adapter cannot be used together.)

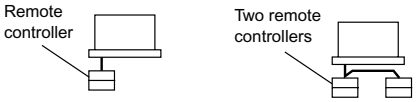
* GROUP OF INDOOR UNIT refers to the below.

1. A single indoor unit without remote controller

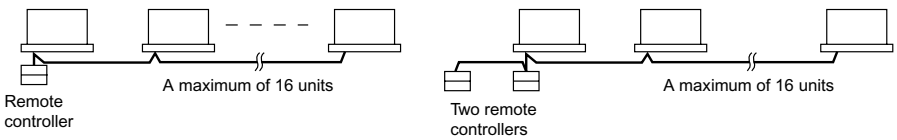
1. A single indoor unit without remote controller



2. A single indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers

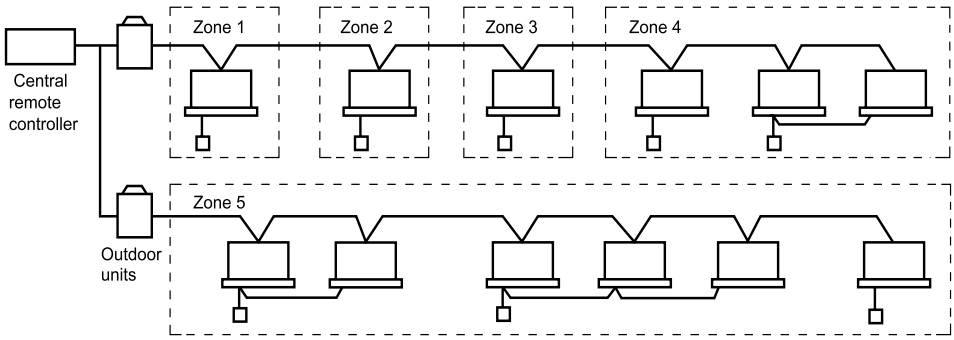


3. Maximum of 16 indoor units, group-controlled by one or two remote controllers



3P124623-8D

∗ Zone control from the central remote controller
Zone control is available from the central remote controller. With it, it is possible to make unified settings for multiple groups, so setting operations are greatly simplified.



- Any setting you make within a given zone will apply to all groups in the said zone.
- A maximum of 64 zones can be set from a single central remote controller. (Each zone contains a maximum of 64 groups.)
- Zones can be set randomly from the central remote controller.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read these "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the start-up operation.
Please instruct the customer on how to operate the unit and keep it maintained.
Also, inform customers that they should store this installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.
This air conditioner comes under the term "appliances not accessible to the general public".

Meaning of warning, caution and note symbols.

⚠ **WARNING** ....Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** .... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE**..... Indicates situation that may result in equipment or property-damage-only accidents.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this operation manual to the new user.

⚠ **WARNING**

In order to avoid electric shock, fire or injury, or if you detect any abnormality such as smell of fire, turn off power and call your dealer for instructions.

Ask your dealer for installation of the air conditioner.
Incomplete installation performed by yourself may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Ask your dealer for improvement, repair, and maintenance.
Incomplete improvement, repair, and maintenance may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electric shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Be sure only to use accessories made by Daikin which are specifically designed for use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.

Ask your dealer to move and reinstall the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Incomplete installation may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Never let the indoor unit or the remote controller get wet.
It may cause an electric shock or a fire.

Never use flammable spray such as hair spray, lacquer or paint near the unit.
It may cause a fire.

Never replace a fuse with that of wrong ampere ratings or other wires when a fuse blows out.
Use of wire or copper wire may cause the unit to break down or cause a fire.

Never inspect or service the unit by yourself.
Ask a qualified service person to perform this work.

Cut off all electric waves before maintenance.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with excessive water.
Electric shock or fire may result.

Do not install the air conditioner or the remote controller at any place where flammable gas may leak out.
If the gas leaks out and stays around the air conditioner, a fire may break out.

Do not touch the switch with wet fingers.
Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.

CISPR 22 Class A Warning:
This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

3P124623-8D

2

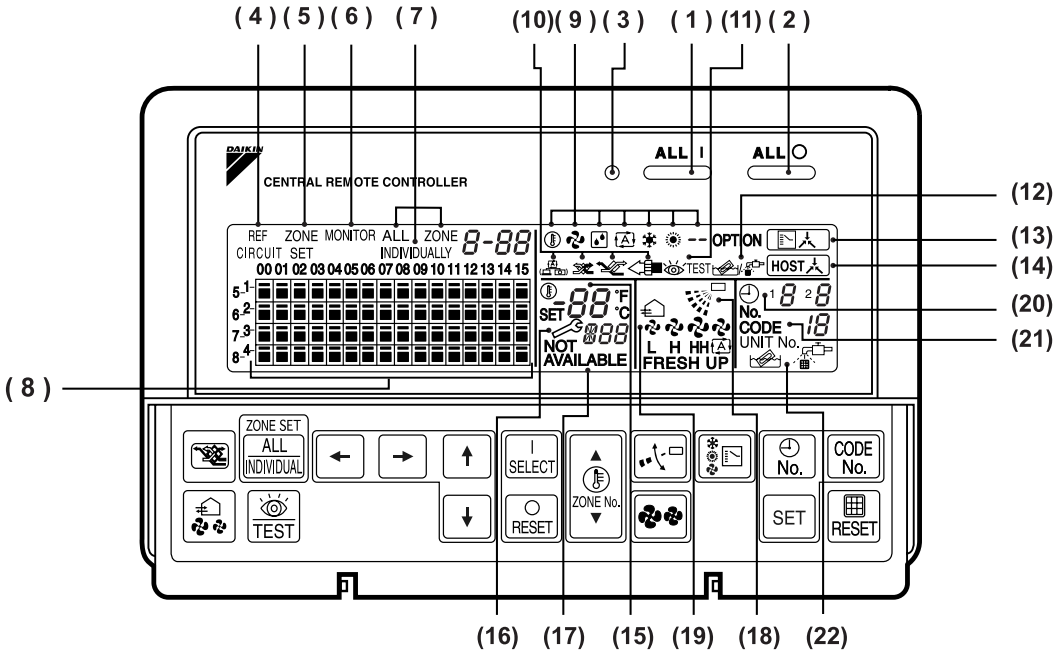


Fig. 1

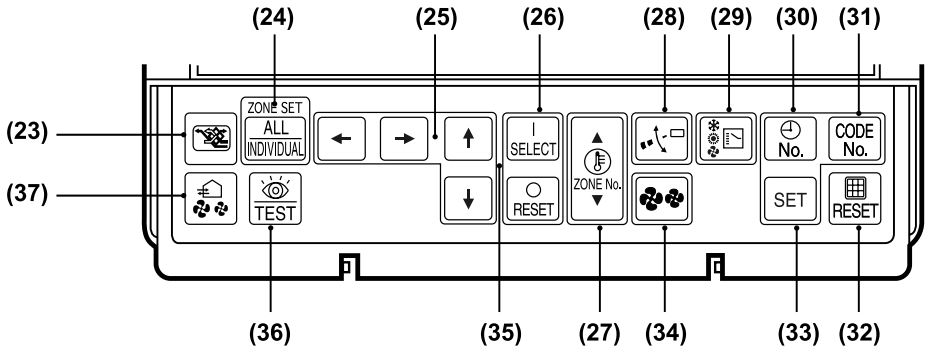


Fig. 2

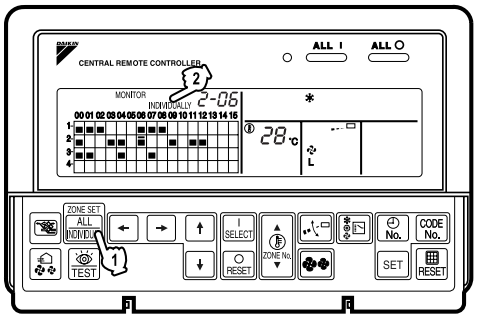


Fig. 3

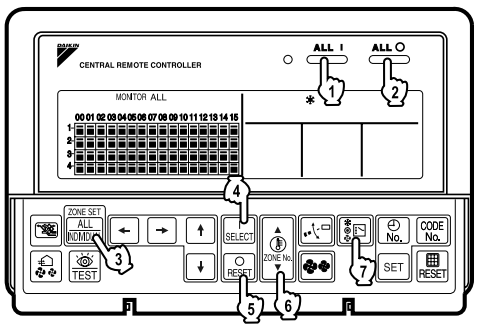


Fig. 4

3P124623-8D

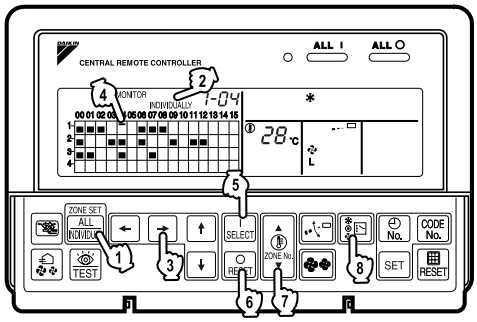


Fig. 5

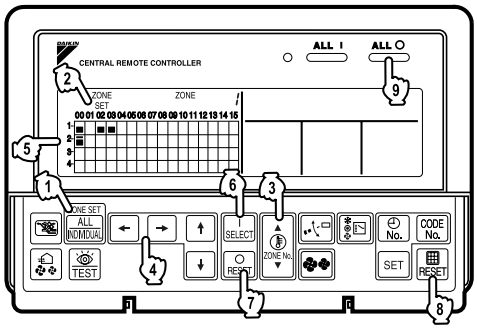


Fig. 6

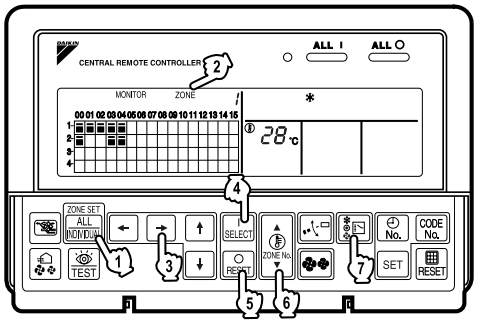


Fig. 7

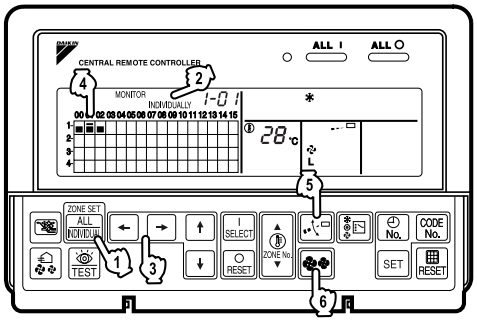


Fig. 8

3P124623-8D

2

⚠ CAUTION

After a long use, check the unit stand and fitting for damage.
If they are left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and result in injury.

Do not allow a child to mount on the unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not let children play on and around the unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, it may result in injury.

Do not place a flower vase and anything containing water.
Water may enter the unit, causing an electric shock or fire.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Some parts inside are dangerous to touch, and a machine trouble may happen. For checking and adjusting the internal parts, contact your dealer.

Avoid placing the controller in a spot splashed with water.
Water coming inside the machine may cause an electric leak or may damage the internal electronic parts.

Do not operate the air conditioner when using a room fumigation - type insecticide.
Failure to observe could cause the chemicals to become deposited in the unit, which could endanger the health of those who are hypersensitive to chemicals.

Safely dispose of the packing materials.
Packing materials, such as nails and other metal or wooden parts, may cause stabs or other injuries. Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. If children play with a plastic bag which was not torn apart, they face the risk of suffocation.

Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation.
Always wait at least five minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage and trouble may occur.

The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.

The remote controller should be installed in such a way that children cannot play with it.

⚠ NOTE

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Never pull or twist the electric wire of the remote controller.
It may cause the unit to malfunction.

Do not place the controller exposed to direct sunlight.
The LCD display may get discolored, failing to display the data.

Do not wipe the controller operation panel with benzine, thinner, chemical dustcloth, etc.
The panel may get discolored or the coating peeled off. If it is heavily dirty, soak a cloth in water-diluted neutral detergent, squeeze it well and wipe the panel clean. And wipe it with another dry cloth.

Dismantling of the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and eventual other parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local and national regulations.

CONTENTS

BEFORE USE 1
GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM 1
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS 2
FEATURES AND FUNCTIONS 6
NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION 7
OPERATION 8
Individual screen, all screen, zone screen 8
Batch operation and stop method 9
Group operation and stop method 9
Registering zones 9
Zone operation and stop method 10
Changing the fan direction and fan strength 11
Changing the ventilation mode and ventilation strength 11
Timer Number Setting 11
Setting the Operation Code 12
OPERATION MODE 13
Setting operation mode 16
Group monitoring 16
Error diagnosing function 17
Setting master remote controller 20
Display of time to clean 21
INSTALLATION TABLE 22
OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES 23
DOUBLE CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLERS 23
SPECIFICATIONS 24
Specifications 24
Outline drawings 24

Fig. 1, 2, 3, 4 3
Fig. 5, 6, 7, 8 4
Fig. 9, 10, 11, 12 25
Fig. 13, 14, 15, 16 26

3P124623-8D

FEATURES AND FUNCTIONS

■ **Operation menu**
This central remote controller can operate and stop machines by either group or zone.
Batch operation and batch stop functions are also available. When used in combination with the schedule timer (optional accessory), timer operation and stop functions are available.

See page 8—12.

■ **Various operation modes.**
You can operate the system from both this unit and the remote controller, so to enable various operation control patterns. Twenty different operation modes are available including five operation patterns:

1. Start/stop:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller stop-only permission, central priority, after-press priority, remote controller permission timer
2. Operation modes:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller permission
3. Set temperature:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller permission

See page 13—15.

■ **Zone control for simpler setting procedures**
You can control a maximum of 64 groups of indoor units by using this central remote controller. You don't have to repeat the same setting operations by group because you can make each of the following settings by zone.
A functions is available for setting all groups in one batch.

- Operation mode
- Control mode
- Setting temperature
- Programming time No. (Used in conjunction with the schedule timer)

See page 8—16.

■ **Monitoring all indoor unit information**
The following information can be displayed by group.

- Operation information such as operation mode, set temperature, etc., for indoor units
- Maintenance information such as cleaning signs for filters or elements
- Error codes and other malfunction diagnosis information

See page 16—21.

■ **Function of refrigerant system display**
This display helps you understand, at a glance, the indoor units sharing the same outdoor unit and the particular indoor unit among them that is set as the master remote controller.

See page 20.

• Room air conditioners and multi-purpose air conditioners may also be connected by using separately-sold adapter boards.
This may limit functionality, so consult the manuals that come with each adapter board.

3P124623-8D

2

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**UNIFIED OPERATION BUTTON**
	Press to operate all indoor units.
2	**UNIFIED STOP BUTTON**
	Press to stop all indoor units.
3	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)**
	Lit white any of the indoor units under control is in operation.
4	**“ REF CIRCUIT ” DISPLAY (REFRIGERANT SYSTEM DISPLAY)**
	This indication in the square is lit while the refrigerant system is being displayed.
5	**“ ZONE SET ” DISPLAY (ZONE SETTING)**
	The lamp is lit while setting zones.
6	**“ MONITOR ” DISPLAY (OPERATION MONITOR)**
	The lamp is lit while operation is being monitored.
7	**“ ALL ” “ ZONE ” “ INDIVIDUALLY ” DISPLAY**
	The status displays indicates either batch functions or which zone or individual unit (or group) are being used.
8	**OPERATION MONITOR**
	Each square displays the state corresponding to each group.
9	**“” “” “” “” “” “” “ – – ” DISPLAY (OPERATION MODE)**
	Displays operating state.
10	**“” “” “” “” DISPLAY (VENTILATION CLEANING DISPLAY)**
	This is displayed when a Ventiair total enthalpy heat exchanger unit or other such unit is connected.
11	**“ TEST ” DISPLAY (INSPECTION/TEST)**
	Pressing the maintenance/test run button (for service) displays this. This button should not normally be used.
12	**“” DISPLAY (TIME TO CLEAN)**
	It lights up when any individual unit (group) has reached the time for the filter or element to be cleaned.
13	**“ HOST ” DISPLAY (COOLING/HEATING SELECTION PRIVILEGE NOT SHOWN)**
	For zones or individual units (groups) for which this is displayed, cooling and heating cannot be selected.
14	**“ HOST ” DISPLAY (UNDER HOST COMPUTER INTEGRATED CONTROL)**
	While this display is lit up, no settings can be made. It lights up when the upper central machines are present on the same air conditioning network.
15	**“ SET 88 °C ” DISPLAY (PRESET TEMPERATURE)**
	Displays the preset temperature.
16	**“ U4 ” DISPLAY (MALFUNCTION CODE)**
	This displays (flashes) the content of errors when an error failure has occurred. In maintenance mode, it displays the latest error content.
17	**“NOT AVAILABLE” DISPLAY (NO FUNCTION DISPLAY)**
	If a function is not available in the indoor unit even if the button is pressed, “NOT AVAILABLE” is may be displayed for a few seconds.
18	**“” DISPLAY (FAN DIRECTION SWING DISPLAY)**
	This displays whether the fan direction is fixed or set to swing.
19	**“” “L” “H” “HH” “” “FRESH UP” DISPLAY (VENTILATION STRENGTH/SET FAN STRENGTH DISPLAY)**
	This displays the set fan strength.
20	**“ No. ” DISPLAY (TIME NO.)**
	Displays the operation timer No. when used in conjunction with the schedule timer.

3P124623-8D

21	**“CODE UNIT No. 18” DISPLAY (OPERATION CODE AND UNIT NUMBER DISPLAY)**
	The method of operation (remote controller prohibited, central operation priority after-press operation priority, etc.) is displayed by the corresponding code. This displays the numbers of any indoor units which have stopped due to an error.
22	**“” “” DISPLAY (TIME TO CLEAN AIR CLEANER ELEMENT/ TIME TO CLEAN AIR FILTER)**
	Displayed to notify the user it is time to clean the air filter or air cleaner element of the group displayed.
23	**VENTILATION MODE BUTTON**
	This is pressed to switch the ventilation mode of the total enthalpy heat exchanger.
24	**ALL/INDIVIDUAL BUTTON**
	Pressing this button scrolls through the “all screen”, “zone screen”, and “individual screen”.
25	**ARROW KEY BUTTON**
	This button is pressed when calling an individual indoor unit or a zone.
26	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Starts and stops ALL, ZONE, and INDIVIDUAL units.
27	**TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT BUTTON (ZONE NUMBER BUTTON)**
	This button is pressed when setting the temperature. Select the zone number if any zones have been registered.
28	**FAN DIRECTION ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	This button is pressed when setting the fan direction to “fixed” or “swing”.
29	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	This sets the operation mode. The dry setting cannot be done.
30	**TIME NO. BUTTON**
	Selects time No. (Use in conjunction with the schedule timer only).
31	**CONTROL MODE BUTTON**
	Selects control mode.
32	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	This button is pressed to erase the “clean filter” display after cleaning or replacement.
33	**SET BUTTON**
	Sets control mode and time No.
34	**FAN STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	Pressing this button scrolls through “weak”, “strong”, and “fast”.
35	**ZONE SETTING BUTTON**
	Zone registration mode can be turned on and off by pressing the start and stop buttons simultaneously for at least four seconds.
36	**INSPECTION/TEST RUN BUTTON (FOR SERVICE)**
	Pressing this button scrolls through “inspection”, “test run”, and “system display”. This button is not normally used.
37	**VENTILATION STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	This button is pressed to switch the ventilation strength (“fresh up”) of the total enthalpy heat exchanger.

(Notes)
1. Please note that all the displays in the figure appear for explanation purposes or when the cover is open.
2. If the unit is used in conjunction with other optional central controllers, the OPERATION LAMP of the unit that is not under operation control may light up and go out a few minutes behind schedule. This shows that the signal is being exchanged, and does not indicate any failure.

OPERATION

■ Individual screen, all screen, zone screen (Fig. 3)

This controller can perform operations in the individual screen, all screen, or zone screen.

- Individual screen — The individual screen is used when performing group operations.
- All screen — The all screen is used when performing operations for all units at once.
- Zone screen — The zone screen is used when performing zone operations.

1. ☞① Select the screen by pressing the “ALL/INDIVIDUAL” button.

☞② Every time the “ALL/INDIVIDUAL” button is pressed, the selection scrolls through INDIVIDUAL → ALL → ZONE.
If nothing is done in the all or zone screens for one minute, it automatically goes to the individual screen.

3P124623-8D

- If the zone number in the zone screen is displayed as "---," this indicates that no units are registered in a zone.
  Please perform zone registration before proceeding in the zone screen. (See page 9)

■ Batch operation and stop method (Fig. 4)

This is for operating or stopping all connected units at once.

A. What to do when operating or stopping all connected units at once.

1. Press either ☞ "ALL |" or ☞ "ALL ○".

- Operation can be performed from the individual screen, the all screen, or the zone screen.
- The "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" and "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" buttons cannot be used.
  To set the temperature and operation mode, use B. batch operation.

B. Batch Operation

1. ☞Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the all screen.

The " ▭ " display lights up on all registered units.

2. ☞Press the "SELECT" button.

The " ■ " display lights up on all connected units.

☞Press the "RESET" button.

The " ■ " display goes off on all connected units.

Operation and stop in the batch screen are done the same as with the batch operation and batch stop buttons.

3. ☞Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.

The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use batch setting for the temperature setting.
Setting to 1° above or below the temperature setting range displays " -- ".

4. ☞Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use batch setting for the operation setting.

■ Group operation and stop method (Fig. 5)

This is for operating or stopping connected units in groups.

[Group operation]

1. Press the ☞ "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞individual screen.

The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.

2. ☞Using the arrow keys, ☞move the " ▭ " to select the units to operate or stop.

Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

The " ▭ " in this screen has selected unit 1-04.

3. ☞Press the "SELECT" button.

The " ■ " display lights up in the group.

☞Press the "RESET" button.

The " ■ " display goes off in the group.

4. ☞Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.

The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.
Temperature adjustment cannot be done if the selected group's air conditioners are in fan mode.

5. ☞Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.

■ Registering zones (Fig. 6)

It is possible to set multiple groups as one zone and control each zone separately.
No zones are registered when the unit is shipped from the factory.
Zone registration can be done in the individual screen, all screen, or zone screen.

[Registration]

1. ☞Pressing the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button for four seconds. ☞Displays ZONE SET.

Zone Number 1 will be displayed, and if there are any groups already registered displayed zone, a " ■ " will light up on the operation monitor.

C: 3P124623-8D

2. ☞**Select the Zone Number to be registered using the "ZONE NUMBER" button.**
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

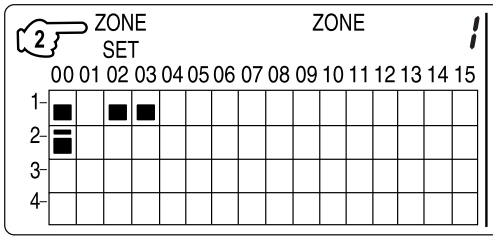
3. ☞"▬" **to the group you wish to** ☞**register using the arrow keys.**
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

4. ☞**Press the "SELECT" button to register that group to the zone.**

The "▣" display lights up on all the selected units.

☞**Pressing the "RESET" button removes the group from that zone, and "▣" goes off.**

Repeat steps 3 and 4 until all the units you wish to register to the zone have been added.



In this example, a screen is shown with units 1-00, 1-02, 1-03, and 2-00 registered to Zone Number 1.

5. **Repeat steps 2 to 4 to register to the next zone.**

6. **Once zone registration is complete,**
☞**press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button to turn off "ZONE SET" display and return to the individual screen.**
The display returns to the normal screen if nothing is done for one minute when in zone registration mode.

(NOTE)
- It is impossible to register one group to several different zones.
  If this is done, the last zone registered to will be valid.

[Batch deletion of zone registration]

1. ☞**Pressing the "ALL ○" for at least four seconds while** ☞**pressing the "FILTER SIGN RESET" button when** ☞**"ZONE SET" is displayed will delete all zone registrations.**
The zone registrations for all units will be lost.

■Zone operation and stop method (Fig. 7)

This is for operating or stopping connected units in zones.

[Zone operation]

1. ☞**Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the zone screen.**

2. ☞**Using the arrow keys, select the zone number to operate or stop.**

Pressing [←] and [↓] reduces the zone number while [→] and [↑] raise the number.
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
- If the zone number is displayed as "---," this indicates that no units are registered in a zone. Please perform zone registration before using a zone. (See page 9)

3. ☞**Press the "SELECT" button.**

The "▣" display lights up in the group.

☞**Press the "RESET" button.**

The "▣" display goes off in the group.

4. ☞**Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.**
The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.

Set to "--" when you do not wish to use zone setting for the temperature setting.
Setting to 1° above or below the temperature setting range displays "--".

5. ☞**Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.**

Set to "--" when you do not wish to use zone setting for the operation mode.

3P124623-8D

2

■ Changing the fan direction and fan strength (Fig. 8)

This changes the fan direction and strength settings in the air conditioner.
Changing the fan direction and strength is done in the individual screen.

[Registration]

1. **☞Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞individual screen.**
   The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.
2. **☞Using the arrow keys, ☞move the "▭" to select the units to fan direction adjustment or fan strength adjustment.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
3. **☞Press the "FAN DIRECTION ADJUSTMENT" button.**
   This sets "fixed" or "swing" for the fan direction.
   ☞Press the "FAN STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT" button.
   Pressing this button scrolls through "L", "H", and "HH".
   Depending on the indoor unit, only "L" and "H" may be available.

The functions included in the indoor units may vary.
Pressing a button for a function which is not available will cause "NOT AVAILABLE" to be displayed.

■ Changing the ventilation mode and ventilation strength (Fig. 9)

This changes the ventilation mode and strength settings in the total enthalpy heat exchanger.
Changing the ventilation mode and strength is done in the individual screen.

[Registration]

1. **☞Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞individual screen.**
   The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.
2. **☞Using the arrow keys, ☞move the "▭" to select the units to ventilation mode or ventilation strength adjustment.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
3. **☞Press the "VENTILATION MODE" button.**
   It will scroll through "(A)" → "⇄" → "⇄" → "(A)".
   ☞Press the "VENTILATION STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT" button.
   It will scroll through "L" → "H" → "L FRESH UP" → "H FRESH UP" → "L".
   The fresh up function may not be available depending on the connected unit model.

The functions included in the indoor units may vary.
Pressing a button for a function which is not available will cause "NOT AVAILABLE" to be displayed.

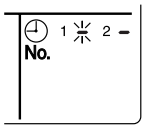
- **Ventilation Mode and Amount**
  If these are changed using the remote controller depending on the unit model, they cannot be displayed on the central remote controller.
  To monitor the ventilation mode and amount, check the values on the remote controller.

■ Timer Number Setting (Fig. 10)

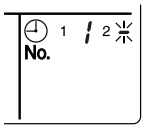
(Only when used with the schedule timer)
Using this together with the schedule timer makes it possible to set on and off times four times a day.

[Registration]

1. **☞Pressing the "TIMER NO." button causes the number set for timer number 1 to blink.**
   If no timer setting has been made "–" will be displayed.
   Select the desired timer number by pressing the ☞"TIMER NO." button.



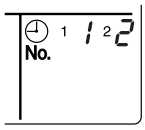
2. **☞Once the desired timer number is displayed, press the "SET" button.**
   Press the ☞ "SET" button within 10 seconds after the timer number is displayed.
   The display will return to how it was after 10 seconds.
   The display for timer number 1 will stop blinking and then timer number 2 will start blinking.



3P124623-8D

3. ☞ Select the desired timer number by pressing the "TIMER NO." button.

Once the desired timer number is displayed, ☞ press the "SET" button.
The display for timer number 2 will stop blinking.



The " No. " display will disappear after 3 seconds.

Select " – " in the timer number when you do not wish to set a timer number.
It is possible to set only one timer number.
(The times for turning the unit(s) on and off twice a day can be set with a single timer number.)

- **Timer Number Setting**
  Group control: select the unit in the individual screen and set the timer number.
  Batch control: set the timer numbers for all connected units.
  Zone control: set the timer numbers for all zone-registered units.
  Call up the zones which you wish to set in the zone screen and set the timer numbers.
- **Since the timer number will be set to after-press priority, the timer number in the last screen set will be valid for the connected units.**

  Example 1
  Setting timer number 1 for unit 1-00 to "1" and timer number 2 to "2" in the individual screen and then setting timer number 1 to "3" and timer number 2 to "4" in the batch screen causes the timer numbers for all units to be set, so timer number 1 for unit 1-00 will be "3" and timer number 2 will be "4".

  Example 2
  To prevent leaving units on, timer number 1 is set to "5" in the batch screen.
  Setting timer number 1 in zone number 1 to " – " in the zone screen after that will change the timer number for zone number 1, so the setting to prevent leaving the units on will be lost for zone number 1 only.

  If a timer number is set incorrectly by accident, redo the setting in the desired screen.
- **What happens when the timer number on time and off time are set to the same time**

  When the on time and off time are set to the same time for the same timer number, operation does not change.
  When the on time and off time are set to the same time for different timer numbers, the off time is given priority.

When using timer operation, make sure the times do not overlap when setting the program of the schedule timer.

■ Setting the Operation Code (Fig. 11)

[Registration]

1. ☞ Pressing the "CONTROL MODE" button causes the currently set operation code to blink.
Call up the desired code number by pressing the ☞ "CONTROL MODE" button.
Scroll through the code numbers.

2. ☞ Once the code number is displayed, press the "SET" button.
The display will stop blinking.
The operation code display will disappear after 3 seconds.

[The Operation Code Setting]

Group control: select the unit in the individual screen and set the operation code.
Batch control: set the operation code for all connected units.
Zone control: set the operation code for all zone-registered units.
Call up the zones which you wish to set in the zone screen and set the operation code.

Since the operation code will be set for after-press priority, setting the operation code in the zone and individual screens after setting the operation code in the batch screen, will cause the operation codes set afterwards to be valid.

3P124623-8D

2

OPERATION MODE

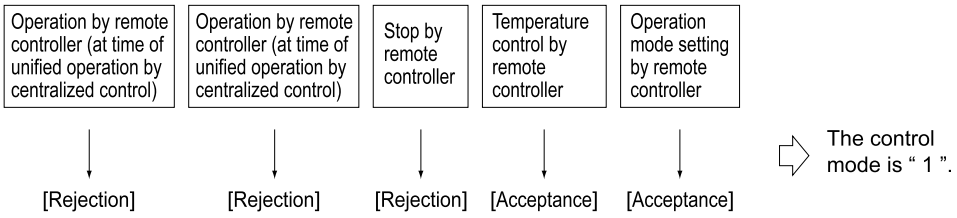
The following five operation control modes can be selected along with the temperature setting and operation mode by remote controller, for a total of twenty different modes. These twenty modes are set and displayed with control modes of 0 to 19. (For further details, see **EXAMPLE OF OPERATION SCHEDULE** on the next page.)

- ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller..... Use this mode when operating and stopping from the central remote controller only. (ON/OFF control by the remote controller is disabled.)
- Only OFF control possible by remote controller ..... Use this mode when executing the operation only by the central remote controller, and executing only the stop by remote controller.
- Centralized ..... Use this mode when executing the operation only by the central remote controller, and executing start/stop freely by remote controller during the preset hours.
- Individual ..... Use this mode when executing start/stop both by central remote controller and remote controller.
- Timer operation possible by remote controller..... Use this mode when executing start/stop by remote controller during the preset hours, and not starting operation by the central remote controller at the programmed time of system start.

[HOW TO SELECT THE CONTROL MODE]

- Select whether to accept or to reject the operation from the remote controller regarding the operation, stop, temperature setting and operation mode setting, respectively, and determine the particular control mode from the rightmost column of the table below.

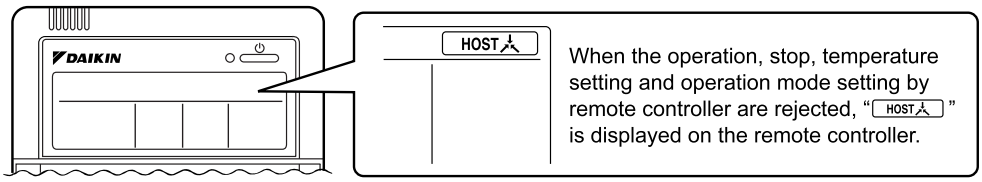
  Example



3P124623-8D

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="3">Operation mode</th><th colspan="5">Control by remote controller</th><th rowspan="3">Control mode</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Operation</th><th rowspan="2">Stop</th><th rowspan="2">Tempera-ture control</th><th rowspan="2">Operation mode setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>Unified operation, individ-ual operation by central remote controller, or opera-tion controlled by timer</th><th>Unified stop, individual stop by central remote controller, or timer stop</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller</td><td rowspan="5">Rejection
(Example)</td><td rowspan="7">Rejection
(Example)</td><td rowspan="3">Rejection
(Example)</td><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Acceptance
(Example)</td><td>Acceptance
(Example)</td><td>1 (Example)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Only OFF control possible by remote controller</td><td rowspan="8">Acceptance</td><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>11</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Centralized</td><td rowspan="2">Acceptance</td><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>12</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Individual</td><td rowspan="2">Acceptance</td><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>13</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Timer operation possible by remote controller</td><td rowspan="2">Acceptance
(During timer at ON position only)</td><td rowspan="2">Rejection
(During timer at OFF position)</td><td rowspan="2">Acceptance</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>14</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>6</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>15</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Acceptance</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>7</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>16</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Rejection</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>17</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Acceptance</td><td>Acceptance</td><td>9</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rejection</td><td>18</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>19</td></tr>
</table>

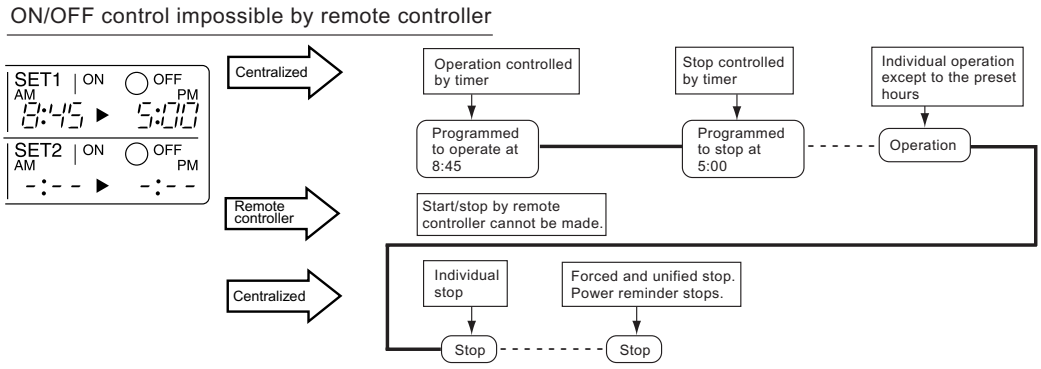
Note) Do not select the timer operation possible without the remote controller. In this case, timer operation is disabled.



EXAMPLE OF OPERATION SCHEDULE

Operation schedule is possible only in conjunction with the schedule timer (optional accessory).

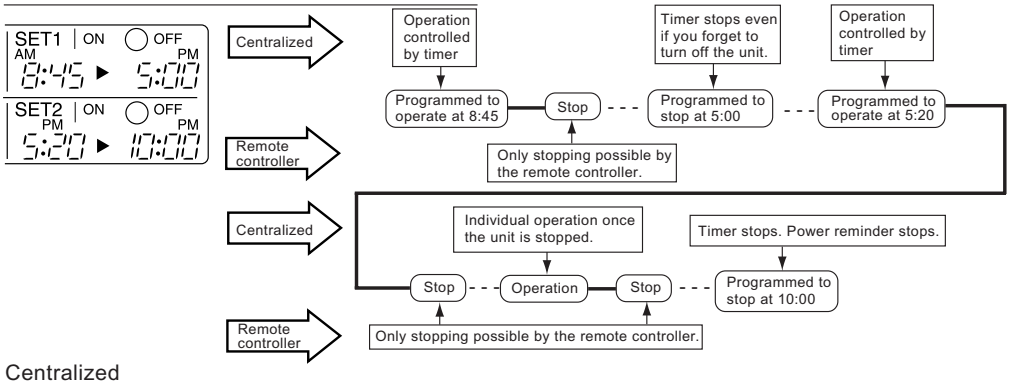
Liquid crystal display of schedule timer



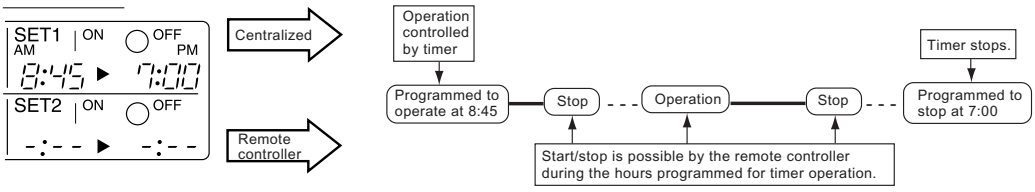
3P124623-8D

2

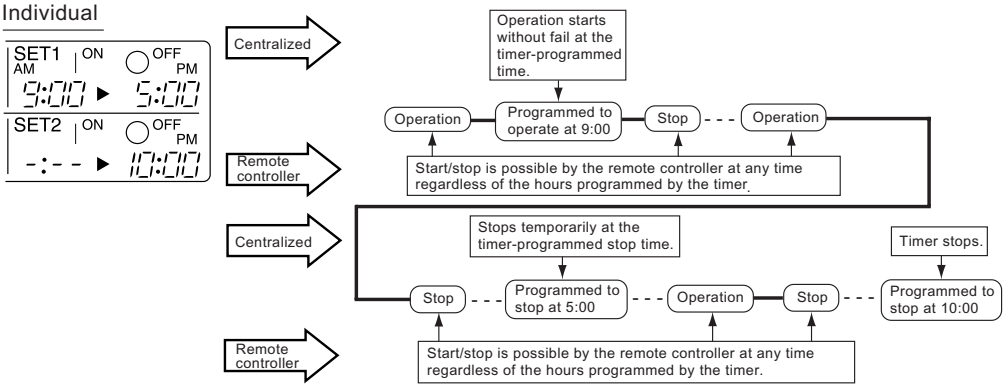
Only OFF control possible by remote controller



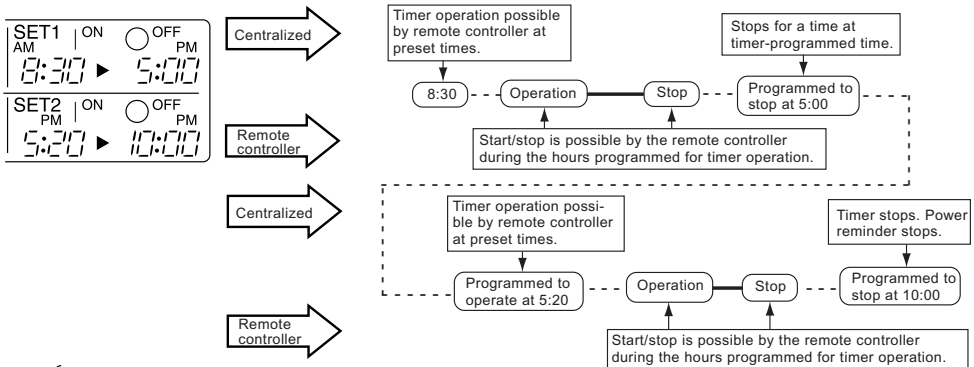
Centralized



Individual



Timer operation possible by remote controller



Air conditioner now operating.
Air conditioner now stopping.
Command by central remote controller
Command by remote controller

C: 3P124623-8D

■ Setting operation mode (Fig. 12)

[Registration]

1. ☞ Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON. Each time you press this button, the display rotates as shown on the below list.

- **List of operations which can be set**
  In the below list, " ○ " refers to the acceptable setting, while " × " refers to the not acceptable setting.

Display	**A**: Zones and groups with no " " display. Setting	Contents of setting
	×	
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○ ∗1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
or or	○ ∗1	Can be set in individual zones or groups ∗3
	○ ∗1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Select this display if you don't wish to set by zone.

Display	**B**: Zones and groups with a " " display. Setting	Contents of setting
	○	To be set by zone ∗2
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	×	
	×	The displays are shown by group ∗4
	×	The displays are shown by group ∗4
or or	○ ∗1	Can be set in individual zones or groups ∗3
	○ ∗1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Select this display if you don't wish to set by zone.

∗1: Setting may not be acceptable depending on the type of indoor unit with which this unit is connected.
∗2: In zone control, the units run in temperature adjustment mode (heating or cooling) for the outdoor system for the groups registered to those zones. Heating or cooling selection is not available.
*3: or or
Changing the ventilation mode cannot be done in the zone screen. Changing the ventilation mode should be done in the individual screen.
∗4: In group control, the units run in temperature adjustment mode (heating or cooling) for the group outdoor system. Heating or cooling selection is not available.

- **The Zone consists of the following two cases.**

A. Zone without display" "
The group with master remote controller setting exists in this zone.
Setting the master remote controller enables cool/heat selection.
Operations other than cool/heat operations can also be set for some operations. For further details, see the list on the left.

B. Zone with display" "
No group with master remote controller setting exists in this zone.
The cool/heat selection is not available because the master remote controller has not been set.
Some operations other than cool/heat operations can be set. For further details, see the list in the left.

See page 20 if the display" " is flashing.

- Fan operation can be performed for each zone using the central remote controller even if there is no cooling/heating selection right during cooling or heating. Also, if a Ventiair is connected in the zone, ventilation and ventilation cleaning operation is possible. See the included operating manuals for details.
- When the indoor unit is in heat operation, change the setting to FAN operation through the central remote controller; then, you can switch the fan speed to the extremely low fan speed. Warm air may blow if any other indoor unit belonging to the same system is in heat operation.
- The indoor fan stops during defrost/hot start.
- DRY cannot be set from the central remote controller.

■ Group monitoring (Fig. 13)

Utilize the group monitor function in each of the following cases:
1. Check the malfunction code.
   (See the next page.)
2. Check the group that requires cleaning of the air filter and air cleaner element. (See page 21.)
3. Change the setting of the master remote controller. (See page 20.)
4. Check the group(s) sharing the same outdoor unit. Or, check the particular group(s) with the master remote controller setting. (See page 20.)
5. Check the conditions of other individual groups.

3P124623-8D

2

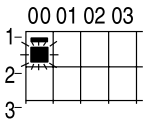
When in zone screen
The zone screen will revert to the individual screen automatically if nothing is done in it for one minute.

[Registration]

1. ☞**Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button to switch to the** ☞**"INDIVIDUAL" screen.**
2. ☞**Using the arrow key,** ☞**move the "▣" to select the unit to be monitored.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
   ☞The "▣" lights up and the status of that unit is displayed in the LCD. The cursor in the screen Fig. 13 has selected unit 2-06.

■ Error diagnosing function (Fig. 14)

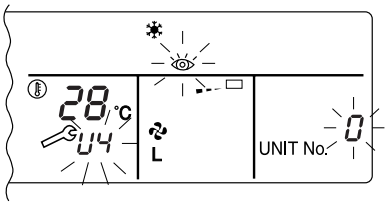
This central remote controller is provided with a diagnosing function, for when an indoor unit stops due to malfunction. In case of actuation of a safety device, disconnection in transmission wiring for control or failure of some parts, the operation lamp, inspection display and unit No. start to flash; then, the malfunction code is displayed. Check the contents of the display, and contact your DAIKIN dealer because the above signs can give you the idea on the trouble area.



The display " ▬ " flashes under the group No. where the indoor unit that has stopped due to malfunction.

[Registration]

1. ☞**Press the ARROW KEY BUTTON to call up the group that has stopped due to malfunction.**
   ☞The unit No. ☞the malfunction code is flashing because of an error failure.



Operation lamp	Maintenance display	Unit No.	Malfunction code	Error content
☼	●	◑	**64**	Indoor air thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**65**	Outdoor air thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**68**	HVU error (Ventiair dust-collecting unit)
☼	●	◑	**6A**	Dumper system error
◑	◑	◑	6A	Dumper system error + Thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**6F**	Simple remote controller error
☼	●	◑	**6H**	Door switch (Ventiair dust-collecting unit), relay harness fault (Ventiair dust-collecting/humidifier unit)
◑	◑	◑	94	Ventiair internal transmission error (between total enthalpy – fan unit)
◑	◑	◑	A0	Indoor unit · external safety device error
◑	◑	◑	A1	Indoor unit · BEV unit (Sky-Air connection unit) PC board assembly fault
☼	●	◑	**A1**	Indoor unit · PC board assembly fault
◑	◑	◑	A3	Indoor unit · Drain level error (33H)
◑	◑	◑	A6	Indoor unit · Fan motor (51F) lock, overload
☼	●	◑	**A7**	Indoor unit · Fan direction adjustment motor (MA) error
◑	◑	◑	A9	Indoor unit · BEV unit, electric expansion valve motor (20E) error
☼	●	◑	**AF**	Indoor unit · Malfunctioning drain
☼	●	◑	**AH**	Indoor unit · Dust-collector error
◑	◑	◑	AJ	Indoor unit · Insufficient capacity setting, address setting fault

3P124623-8D

☼	☼	☼	C4	Indoor unit · Liquid piping thermistor (Th2) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	C5	Indoor unit · BEV unit, gas piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	C9	Indoor unit · Intake air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	CA	Indoor unit · Outlet air thermistor (Th4) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	☼	**CJ**	Indoor unit · remote controller sensor error
☼	☼	☼	E0	Outdoor unit · Safety device operation
☼	☼	☼	E1	Outdoor unit · PC board assembly fault
☼	●	☼	**E1**	Outdoor unit · PC board assembly fault
☼	☼	☼	E3	Outdoor unit · High-pressure switch fault
☼	☼	☼	E4	Outdoor unit · Low-pressure switch fault
☼	☼	☼	E9	Outdoor unit · Electric expansion valve motor (20E) error
☼	●	☼	**EC**	Heat source unit · Intake water temperature inter-lock operation (fan operation)
☼	☼	☼	EF	Outdoor unit · Ice thermal storage unit error
☼	☼	☼	F3	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping temperature error
☼	●	☼	**H3**	Outdoor unit · High-pressure switch operation
☼	☼	☼	H4	Outdoor unit · Low-pressure switch operation
☼	☼	☼	H9	Outdoor unit · Outdoor air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	☼	**H9**	Outdoor unit · Outdoor air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	☼	**HC**	Outdoor unit · Water temperature sensor system error
☼	●	☼	**HF**	Ice thermal storage unit error, ice thermal storage controller error, error in outdoor unit during ice thermal storage operation
☼	☼	☼	HJ	Outdoor unit · water system fault
☼	☼	☼	J1	Outdoor unit · pressure sensor error
☼	☼	☼	J3	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	☼	**J3**	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	J5	Outdoor unit · Intake piping thermistor (Th4) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	J6	Outdoor unit · Heat exchange thermistor (Th2) error
☼	●	☼	**J6**	Outdoor unit · Heat exchange thermistor (Th2) error Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	☼	☼	J7	Outdoor unit · Header thermistor (Th6) error
☼	☼	☼	JA	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping pressure sensor error
☼	☼	☼	JC	Outdoor unit · Intake piping pressure sensor error
☼	☼	☼	JF	Outdoor unit · Oil temperature sensor (Th5) system error
☼	●	☼	**JH**	Outdoor unit · Oil temperature sensor (Th5) system error
☼	☼	☼	L0	Outdoor unit · Inverter system fault
☼	☼	☼	L4	Outdoor unit · Inverter cooler fault
☼	☼	☼	L5	Outdoor unit · Ground circuit for compressor motor, short circuit, or power unit short circuit

3P124623-8D

2

◑	◑	◑	L6	Outdoor unit · Ground circuit for compressor motor, short circuit
☼	◑	◑	L8	Outdoor unit · Compressor overload, compressor motor wire disconnection
◑	◑	◑	L9	Outdoor unit · Compressor lock
◑	◑	◑	LA	Outdoor unit · Power unit error
◑	◑	◑	LC	Outdoor unit · Transmission error between inverter and outdoor control unit
☼ or ●	◑	◑	M1	Central controller: PC board fault
☼ or ●	◑	◑	M8	Transmission error between central controllers
☼ or ●	◑	◑	MA	Central controller: Incorrect combination
☼ or ●	◑	◑	MC	Central controller: Address setting fault
◑	●	◑	**P0**	Insufficient gas (thermal storage)
◑	◑	◑	P1	Outdoor unit · Power voltage imbalance, phase loss
◑	◑	◑	P4	Outdoor unit · Power unit temperature sensor error
☼	●	◑	**U0**	Pressure drop due to insufficient refrigerant, electric expansion valve fault, etc.
◑	◑	◑	U1	Reversed or lost phase
◑	◑	◑	U2	Power voltage error, momentary electrical stoppage
◑	◑	◑	U4	Transmission error between indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor/BS unit, Transmission error between outdoor unit and BS unit
◑	◑	◑	U5	Transmission error between remote controller and indoor control unit
●	☼	●	U5	Remote controller board fault or remote controller setting fault
◑	◑	◑	U6	Transmission error between indoor units
◑	◑	◑	U7	Transmission error between outdoor units Transmission error between outdoor unit and ice thermal storage unit
☼	●	◑	**U7**	Transmission error between outdoor units (cooling/heating batch, low-noise operation)
◑	◑	●	U8	Transmission error between master remote controller and slave remote controller (slave remote controller error) Incorrect combination of indoor unit and remote controller within a single system (model)
◑	◑	◑	U9	Transmission error between indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor unit within a single system Transmission error between BS unit and indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor unit within a single system
◑	◑	◑	UA	Incorrect combination of indoor, BS, and outdoor units within a single system (model, number of units, etc.) Incorrect combination of indoor unit and remote controller (remote controller in question) BS unit connection position fault
☼	●	☼	**UC**	Central control group numbers overlap
◑	◑	◑	UE	Transmission error between indoor unit and central controller
◑	◑	◑	UF	Unset system, incorrect settings between BEV unit and indoor unit
◑	◑	◑	UH	System fault

▬ error codes (in outline font) do not display “maintenance” and the system will run, but please check the content of the display and contact your dealer.

3P124623-8D

■ Setting master remote controller (Fig. 15)

You must set the master remote controller of the operation mode for one of the indoor units, if two or more such indoor units with the remote controller are connected with the outdoor unit where the operation modes such as cool/heat operation and FAN operation can be set by remote controller and central remote controller.

1. Preparations

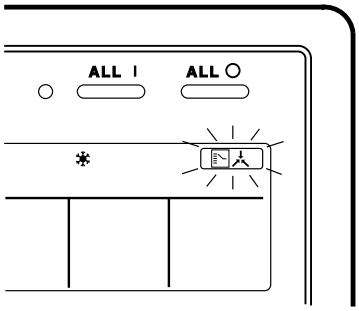
When you want to fix settings

- **Check the particular group with the master remote controller setting for the refrigerant system you wish to reset. (See the below.)**
- **Call up the group without the display " " (See page 16.)**

  ☞Hold the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON down for about four seconds while the above group is being called up.

  The display " " flashes on the liquid crystal display of the remote controller for all the groups sharing the same outdoor unit or BS unit.

  When you turn on the power switch for the first time, the display" " flashes.



2. Setting selection right

Pall up the desired group to set the master remote controller, and ☞press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON. The master remote controller is set for this group, and the display " " goes out. The display " " appears for the other groups.

Setting is finished now.

When switching operation

● In case of operation switch

Call up the zone including the group with the setting of master remote controller.

(Zone without the display " ")

☞Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON several times, and switch to the desired operation mode.

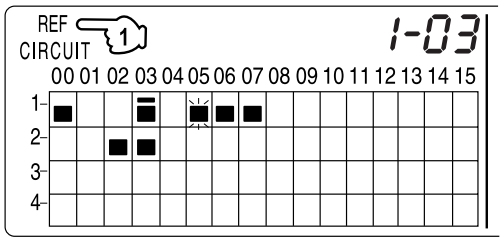
Each time you press it, the display is switched to " " " " " " and " " in sequence.

NOTE

- However, the displays " " " " and "VENTILATION MODE" may appear in some zones, depending on the type on indoor unit with which they are connected.
  (VENTILATION MODE)
  or or

[System Display]

1. Test run mode is necessary to display the system display.
2. In order to turn on test run mode, select the appropriate air conditioner on the individual screen with the cursor and then set its operation mode to either cooling or heating. (The air conditioner does not need to be running. It doesn't matter if it is, though.)
3. Press the "inspection/test run" button twice to put it into test run mode.
4. Pressing the "inspection/test run" button for four or more seconds in test run mode will display ☞ the "REF CIRCUIT."



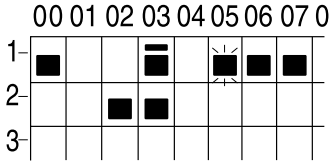
3P124623-8D

2

Call the unit whose system you wish to look up using the arrow keys.

The " ■ " on all groups in the same system as the displayed group will light up.

Of those, the " ■ " display in all groups which have cooling/heating selection privilege will blink.



In this example, individual units 1-00, 1-03, 1-05, 1-06, 1-07, 2-02, and 2-03 are in the same system, and 1-05 has the cooling/heating selection privilege.

To look up other systems, call up all the units you wish to look up using the arrow keys.

Pressing the inspection/test run button one more time gets rid of the system display and ends it.

The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute in the system display screen.

This function may not be available for all connected outdoor units, in which case "REF CIRCUIT" will blink. It will also not be correctly displayed if DIII-NET extension ADP is used.

■ Display of time to clean (Fig. 16)

This central remote controller displays the time to clean the air filter or air cleaner element for each group or any given group by utilizing two types of signs. The display " " tells the time to clean the air filter or the air cleaner element of some group.

If a cleaning sign is displayed

A filter or element in some group is ready to be cleaned.

1. Press the ARROW KEY BUTTON, and search the groups displaying " " or " " (The group may be plural.)

Clean or change the air filter or air cleaner element.

For further details, see the operation manual attached to each indoor unit. (Clean or change the air filter or air cleaner element of all the groups displaying " " or " ".)

2. Press the FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON, and the display " " disappears. (Including all the groups where the air filter has been cleaned.)

NOTE

Be sure to check the display ③ " " has disappeared at this point. The appearance of the above display is a sign that the air filter or air cleaner element of some group still needs cleaning.

INSTALLATION TABLE

When installing the equipment, mark the zone No. of each group and installation location in the below table.

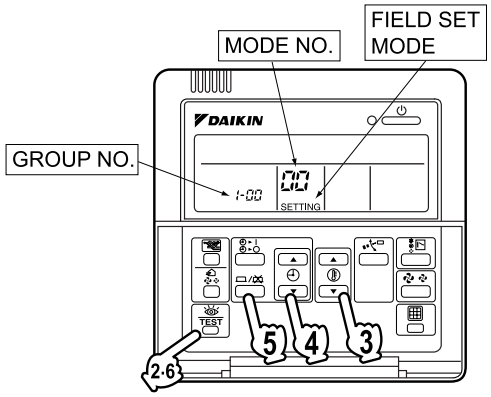
Setting group No.
(Setting is not possible unless power is activated to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.)

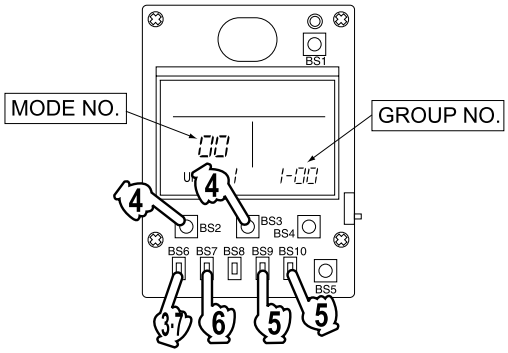
Operated by remote controller

1. Activate power to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.
2. While in the normal mode, hold down the " " button for a minimum of 4 seconds. The unified ON/OFF controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.
3. Select the MODE No. " 00 " with the " " button.
4. Use the " " button to select the group No. for each group. (Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 8-15.)
5. Press " " to set the selected group No.
6. Press " " to return to the NORMAL MODE.

Operated by simplified remote controller

1. Activate power to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.
2. Remove the upper part of the remote controller.
3. Press the BS6 BUTTON (field set) on the PC board. The controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.
4. Select the MODE No. " 00 " with the BS2 BUTTON and BS3 BUTTON (temperature setting).
5. Use the BS9 BUTTON (set A) and BS10 BUTTON (set B) to select the group No. for each group. (Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 8-15.)
6. Press BS7 BUTTON (set/cancel) to set the selected group No.
7. Press BS6 BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.





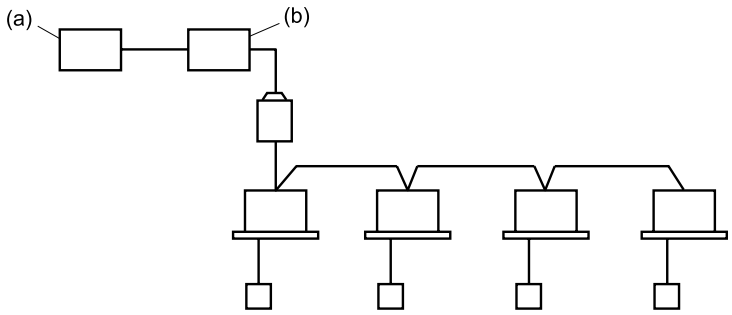
Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																
Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																

3P124623-8D

2

Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																
Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																

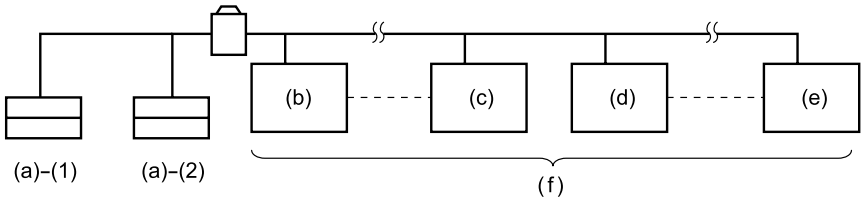
OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES



You can perform the normal operation, take off the malfunction contact point and unified start/stop by contact point, all by connecting this unit with the unification adaptor for computerized control. For further details, ask your DAIKIN dealer.

(a) Unification adaptor for computerized control (b) Central remote controller

DOUBLE CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLERS



With two central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations.

(a) Central remote controller (b) Group No. 1 – 00 (c) Group No. 1 – 15 (d) Group No. 2 – 00
(e) Group No. 4 – 15 (f) A maximum of 64 groups

Note)

- For control alignment and settings for double central remote controllers, contact your dealer.

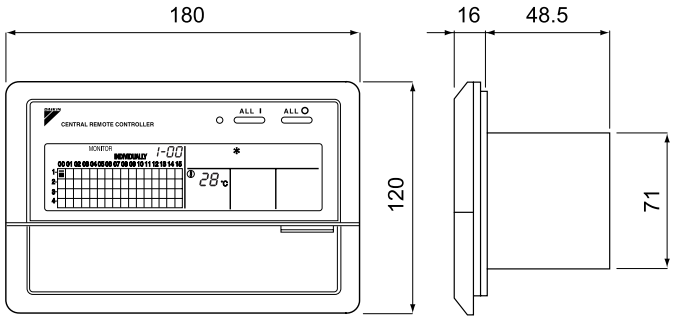
3P124623-8D

SPECIFICATIONS

■ Specifications

Power supply	1 ~ 50/60Hz, 100V – 240V
Power consumption	Max. 8W
Forced ON/OFF input	Continuous “a” contact Contact current: approximately 10mA
Size	180 (W) × 120 (H) × 64.5 (D)
Weight	420g

■ Outline drawings



When using this unit an electric parts box of KJB311AA is required.
For installation, a steel electric parts box to be embedded is mandatory.

3P124623-8D

2

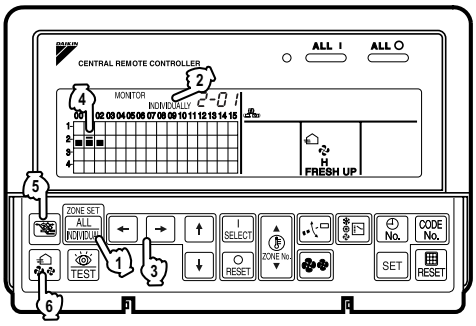


Fig. 9

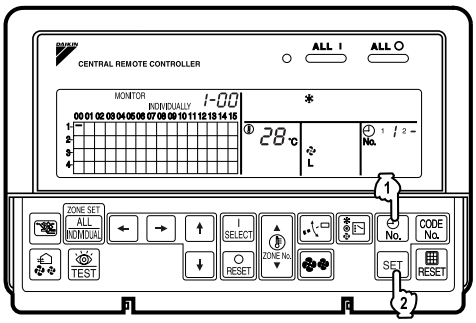


Fig. 10

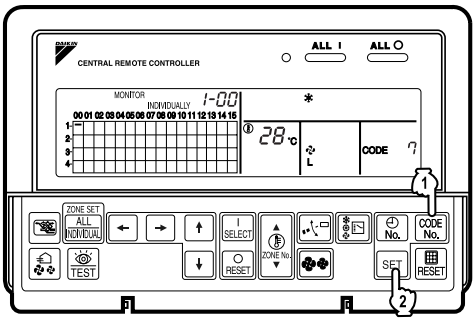


Fig. 11

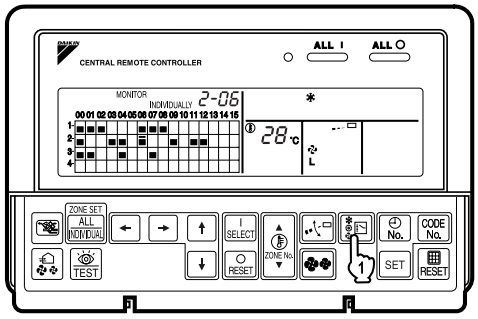


Fig. 12

3P124623-8D

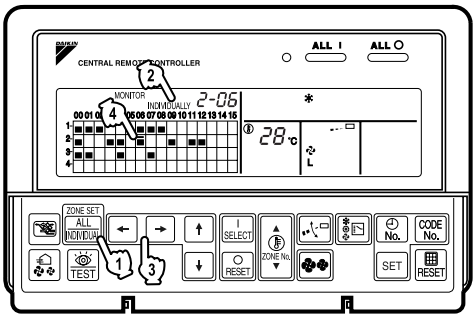


Fig. 13

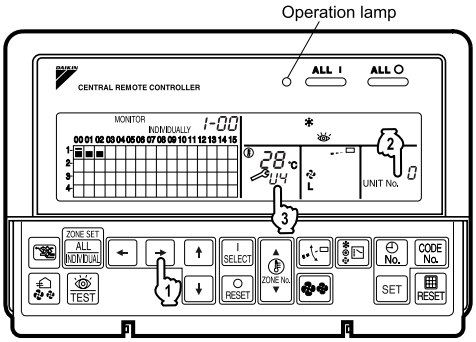


Fig. 14

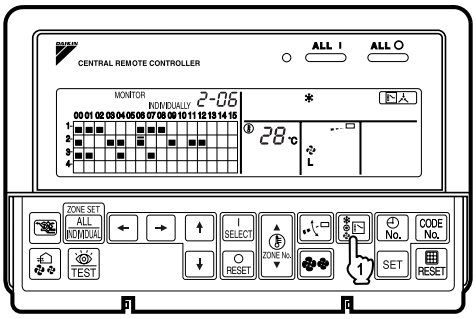


Fig. 15

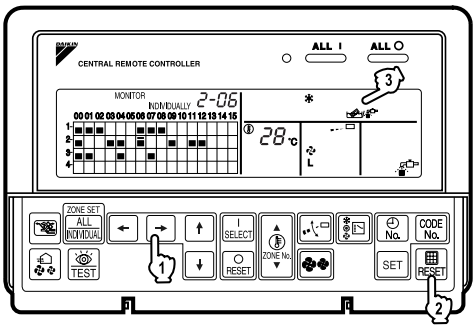


Fig. 16

3P124623-8D

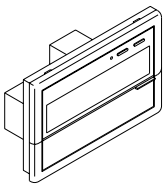
9.1.4 Installation Manual

1 COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Installation screw (M4 × 16)	4
Operation manual	1
Installation manual	1
Installation table	1

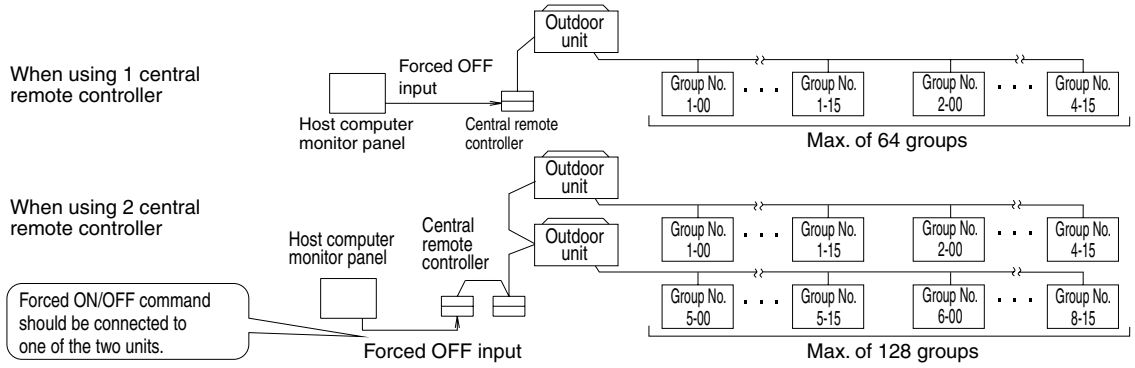
Body



When using this optional accessory an electric parts box of KJB311A is required.
For installation, a steel electric parts box to be embedded is necessary.

2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

With the central remote controller, unified operation/stop is possible with up to a maximum 64 groups of indoor units.
When using 2 central remote controllers, unified operation is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups.
With this optional accessory, setting of control modes including operation, stop, operation controlled by timer, and ON/OFF control possible/impossible by remote controller can be set individually by zones while it enables to control and display the operation state such as set temperature.
It can be connected with the external key system, host computer monitor panel, etc., through forced OFF input (no-voltage normally open contactor).
A zone is a one or more groups together. In general, the same settings are used throughout a zone.



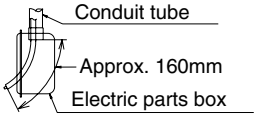
The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter circuit board or group remote control adapter cannot be used together. See the D-BACS design guide for details.

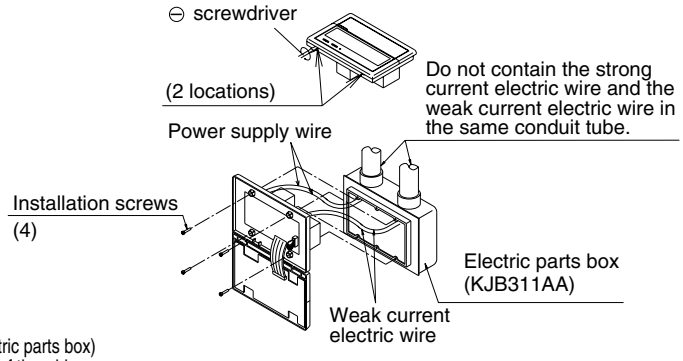
3 INSTALLATION

(1) Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver(2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.

(2) Open the upper part of remote controller and install the Electric parts box with the attached installation screws (M4 × 16).





NOTE) Suitable length of the electric wire is about 160mm. (from electric parts box)
If it is difficult to contain a long wiring, strip the sheathed part of the wiring.

2P162816

❹ INITIAL SETTING

Setting (1) through (3) are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power. (The positions of connectors and switches used for settings in this section are shown in Fig. 1.)

(1) Connector for setting master controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)

- When using only 1 central remote controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple central remote controllers, or using the central remote controller in conjunction with the optional controllers for centralized control, makes settings as indicated in the below table.

Pattern of connection of optional controllers for centralized control			Connector for setting master controller (X1A) Setting, Removed		
Central remote controller	Unified ON/OFF controller	Schedule timer	Central remote controller	Unified ON/OFF controller	Schedule timer
1 to 4	1 to 16	1	Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used"	Set all to "Not used"	"Not used"
		1			"Not used"

(Remove all the connectors for the central remote controller, the on/off controller, and the schedule timer when using the unit together with the Ve-UP controller, the master station II, the DMS interface, the payment management unit, or the parallel interface station.)

(2) Address setting

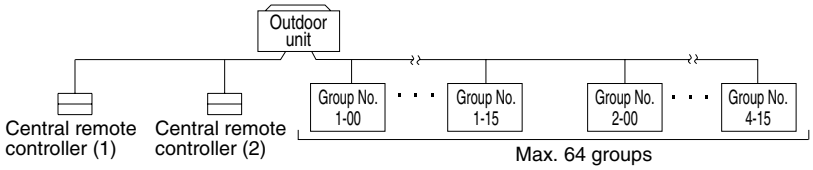
Two central remote controllers can be used as shown in ❷ **SYSTEM CONFIGURATION**, to control anywhere up to a max. 128 groups of indoor units. In this case, group address must be set. This is done with the switch for setting each address (SS3).

SS3 setting	Indoor unit address
SETTING EACH ADDRESS 5-00 ~ 8-15 / 1-00 ~ 4-15	To control indoor units from group Nos. 1-00 through 4-15

SS3 setting	Indoor unit address
SETTING EACH ADDRESS 5-00 ~ 8-15 / 1-00 ~ 4-15	To control indoor units from group Nos. 5-00 through 8-15

(3) MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting

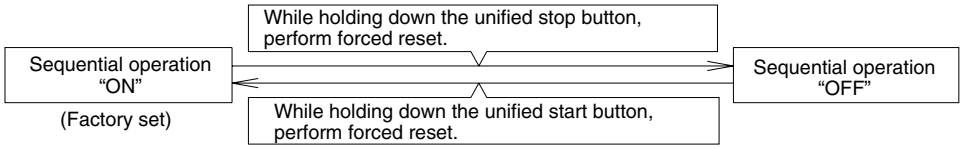
With two central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.



One of the two central remote controllers (1) · (2) is set to "MAIN" while the other is set to "SUB".

(4) Setting of the sequential operation function

The central remote controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.") To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



NOTE: The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

(5) Forced reset switch

When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, etc., you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.
(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)

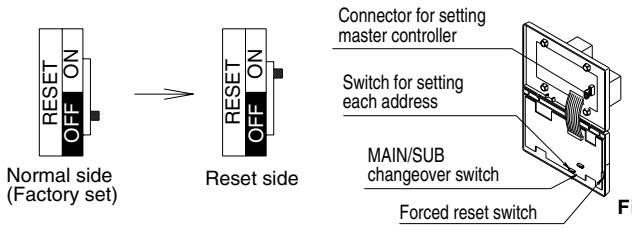
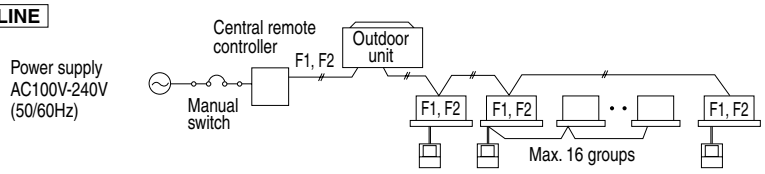


Fig. 1

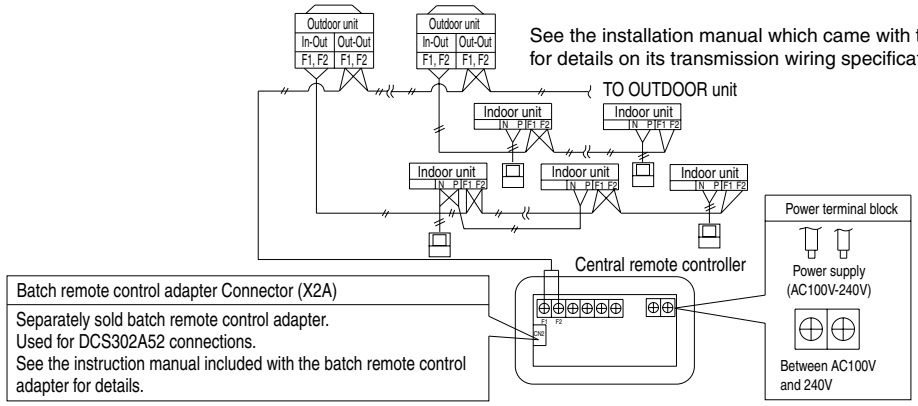
2P162816

5 ELECTRIC WIRING

WIRING OUTLINE



WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT



See the installation manual which came with the air conditioner for details on its transmission wiring specifications.

Wiring specifications

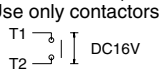
Power supply wiring	2mm²
Transmission wiring for control	0.75 – 1.25 mm² sheathed vinyl cord or cable (balanced type) – maximum length 1000 m (total overall wiring length 2000 m)
Manual switch	10A or 15A

Wire the indoor units to the outdoor units and between all power, indoor units, and remote controllers. See the instruction manual included with the indoor and outdoor units for details.

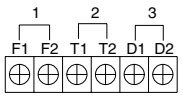
CONTROL TERMINAL STRIP

*1 For connecting Indoor unit (F1, F2)

*2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
None of the indoor units connected to the forced OFF input contact (non-voltage contact with minimal current) will operate when it is shut off.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load DC 16V, 10mA.



NOTE) Use instantaneous contactor of over 200m sec. energizing time, when necessary.



*3 For schedule timer (D1, D2)
Power can be supplied to the schedule timer (DST301B51·61) separately sold. For details, refer to the installation manual of the schedule timer.

Wire *2 and *3 only when necessary.

(NOTE)
Do not connect the power supply wiring (100 to 240V) to the control terminal strip. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of optional controllers for centralized control and indoor unit. It may result in serious danger. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

2P162816

6 SETTING GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

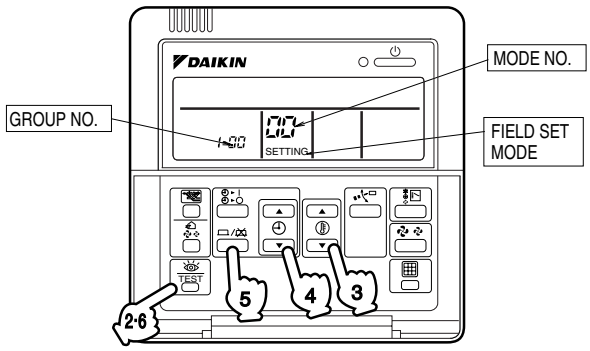
(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the " TEST " button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the " " button.

(4) Use the " " button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00,1-01,···1-15, 2-00, ···8-15.)

(5) Press " " to set the selected group No.

(6) Press " TEST " to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTES)
- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the installation table in the operation manual.
Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

7 TEST OPERATION (Perform a test operation in the individual screen before registering zones.)

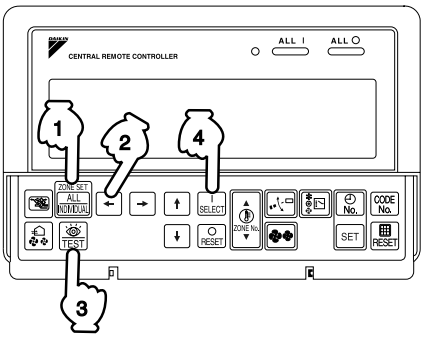
Before starting test operation, check that the power is supplied to the indoor and outdoor units, and central remote controller.

(1) Select the display "INDIVIDUALLY"
Press " " button to display "INDIVIDUALLY"

(2) Select the group to be tested.
Select the group No. with " " " " " " " " button.

(3) Press " TEST " button to select the test operation mode.
" TEST " is displayed.
" HOST " is displayed on the remote controller.

(4) Press " SELECT " button within 10 seconds after entering into the test operation mode.
Operation the unit for 30 minutes.
When pressing the " RESET " button, the unit stops operating.
If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction.
Call the group of flashing display, confirm malfunction code, and check the source of malfunction.
(The operation manual lists all error codes, so refer to it.)



NOTES
- For test operation, refer to the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
- After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for two minutes or more with the display of "88", check the following points.
  - Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

2P162816

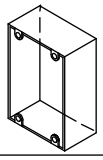
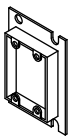
10. Electrical Box with Earth Terminal

10.1 KJB212AA / KJB311AA

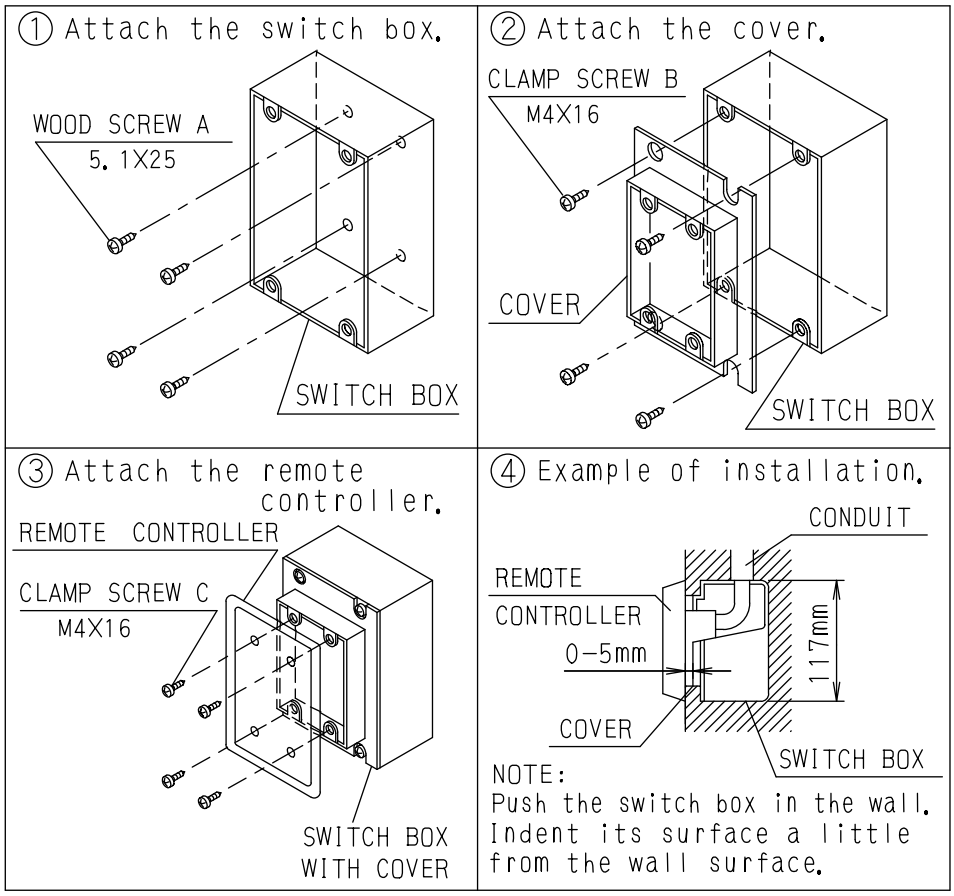


INSTALLATION POINT OF SWITCH BOX

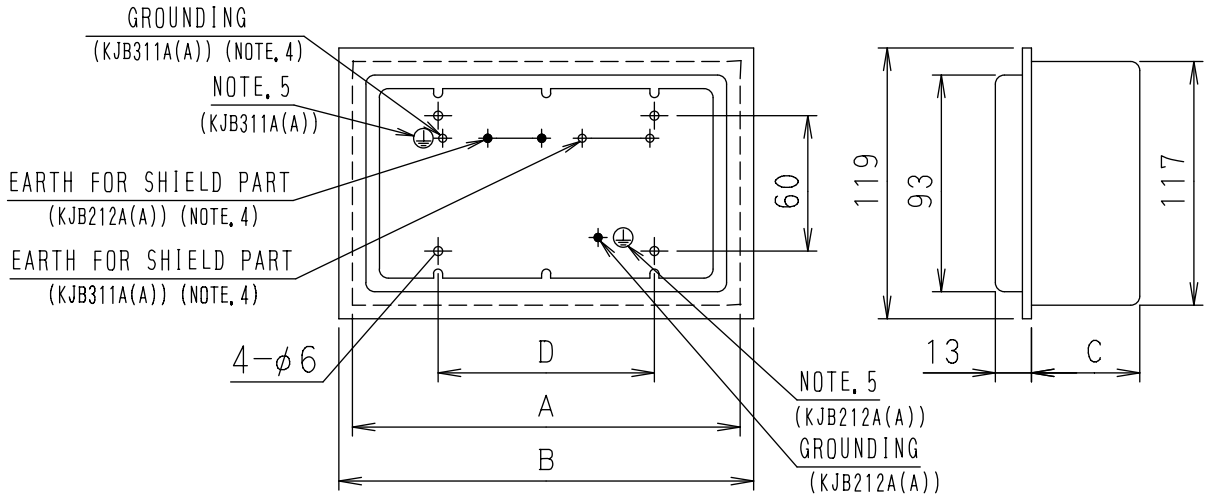
PARTS • Check the parts according to the list shown below.

NAME		SWITCH BOX	COVER	WOOD SCREW A (5.1×25)	CLAMP SCREW B (M4×16)	EARTH SCREW (M4×12)	C-CUP WASHER	LABEL FOR EARTH
Q	KJB212A(A)	1	1	4	4	3	2	1
T	KJB311A(A)	1	1	4	4	3	3	1
Y	KJB411A	1	1	4	4	—	—	—
SHAPE								

INSTALLATION



C: 3PA34878C



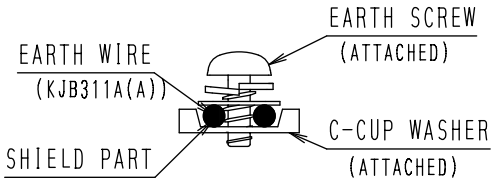


Fig. 1

MODEL	SIZE (mm)			
	A	B	C	D
KJB212A(A)	136	138	44	70
KJB311A(A)	182	184	44	110
KJB411A	228	230	54	155

NOTES: 1. Refer to the installation of each remote controller.
2. Do not bind the lead wires for switch box with the power cord and the link wiring.
This may cause erratic operation.
3. The remote controller and the clamp screw C are one kit.
They are sold separately and attach to the switch box.
4. Ground the shield part of shielded wire or earth wire (only KJB311A(A)) as shown in the Fig. 1.
5. Stick the label for earth attached to the equipment.

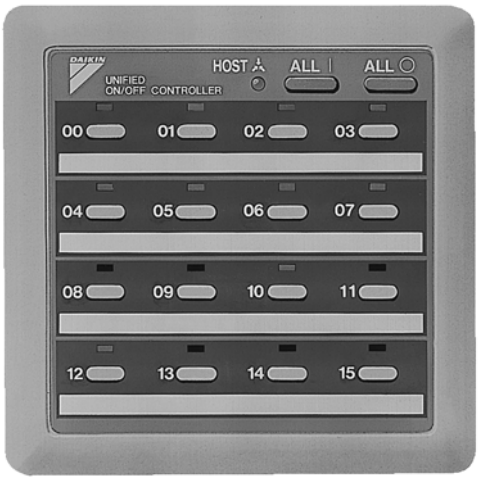
C: 3PA34878C

11. Unified ON/OFF Controller

11.1 DCS301BA61

11.1.1 Features

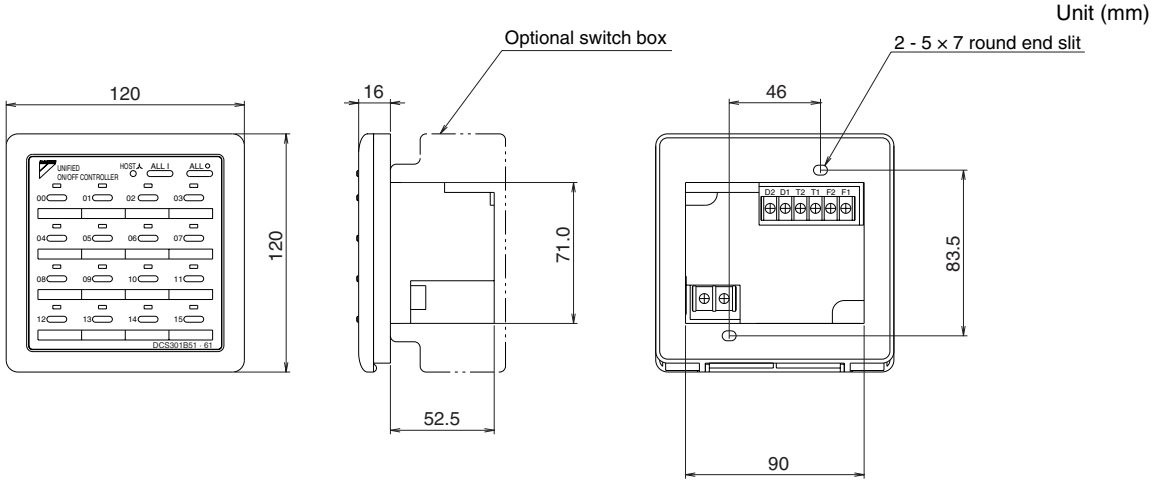
Turns up to 16 groups of indoor units (max. 128 units) ON/OFF (operation/stop) by individual group or all at once, and lets you check display of operation/malfunction at the same time.



- For a maximum of 16 groups of indoor units (max. 128 units), unified operation/stop or individual operation/stop can be performed with this optional accessory. Also allows you check operation/error display at a glance.
- By combining with a central remote controller and schedule timer, you can construct a system that matches the size and use of the building.
- Up to 8 units connectable within 1 system.
  Up to 16 units in the double centralized control mode.
- Features thin design of a mere 16mm in thickness. (Use of the optional JIS 2-block wall embedded box (KJB212AA))
- Can be used in combination with other D-BACS equipment.

11.1.2 Dimensions

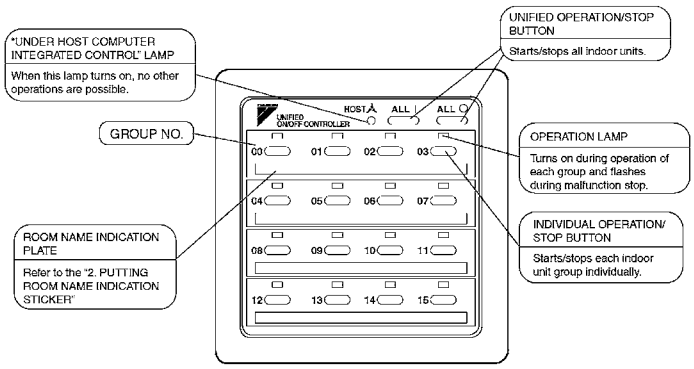
Unit (mm)



3D050339

11.1.3 Operation Manual

❶ NAMES AND FUNCTIONS

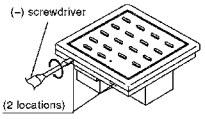


《 NOTE 》
- When using unified ON/OFF controller with other optional controllers for centralized control, "OPERATION LAMP" of the equipment which is not operated may turn on or off after several minutes. This state occurs due to signal communications and is not a failure.
- Do not open the upper part of remote controller except when rewriting the indication sticker or selecting control modes.

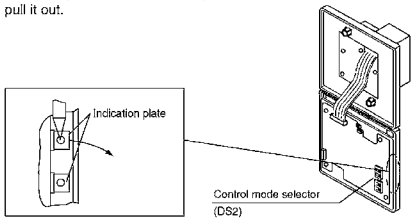
❷ PUTTING ROOM NAME INDICATION STICKER

① Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a (–) screwdriver into the recess between the upper and lower part of remote controller (at 2 locations) and twist the screwdriver lightly.

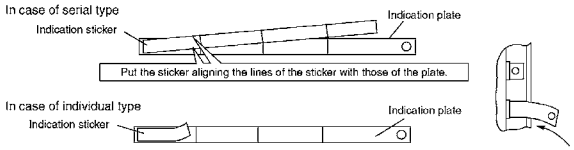
PC board is attached both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.



② Pull out the room name indication plate.
Insert the point of a mechanical pencil etc. into the hole of the indication sticker to pull it out.



③ Put the attached indication sticker on the room name indication plate.



Put the sticker on the center of the frame.
Write the room name in the frame of the sticker with a ball point pen or a felt-tip pen (oil-base).

④ Reinstall the plate as it were, with checking the correct direction.
⑤ Close the upper part of remote controller.

❸ SELECTING CONTROL MODES

The following four patterns of control mode can be set.

Control mode	Individual	Centralized	Timer operation possible by remote controller	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller
Content	Operation/stop is controlled by both unified ON/OFF controller and remote controller.	After operated by unified ON/OFF controller, operation/stop is freely controlled by remote controller until stopped by unified ON/OFF controller.	When used in conjunction with schedule timer, operation/stop is controlled freely by remote controller during the set time but operation is not available when schedule timer is ON.	Operation/stop is controlled by unified ON/OFF controller only. Indoor units can not be operated/ stopped by remote controller.
DS2 setting	ON 1 2 CONTROL MODE (Factory set)	ON 1 2 CONTROL MODE	ON 1 2 CONTROL MODE	ON 1 2 CONTROL MODE

NOTE : • ■ indicates the position of switches.
• Set control modes before turning power supply on.
• When used in conjunction with central remote controller, the control modes of the central remote controller has the priority.

❹ DISPLAY OF MALFUNCTION

Flashing of lamps indicates malfunctions. Contact your Daikin dealer.
When turning power supply on, all lamps may light and UNDER HOST COMPUTER INTEGRATED CONTROL lamp may flash and not accept the operation for about one minute. These conditions are not malfunctions.

States of lamps	Contents of malfunctions
Flashing of operation lamp	Indicates malfunctions in the indoor unit in the group where the operation lamp is flashing.
Flashing of UNDER HOST COMPUTER INTEGRATED CONTROL lamp	Indicates malfunctions in optional controllers for centralized control.

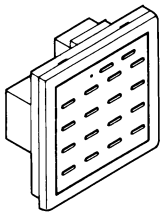
2P167410A

11.1.4 Installation Manual

1 COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Body



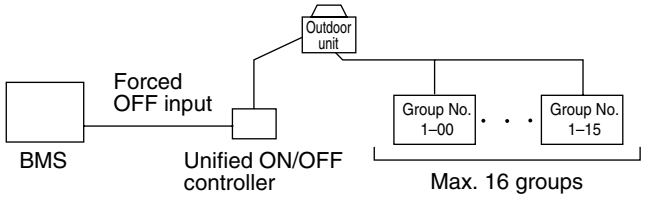
Installation screw (M4 x 16)	2
Operation manual	1
Installation manual	2
Installation table	2
Switch display sticker	1

For installation, a steel electrical box to be embedded is necessary.

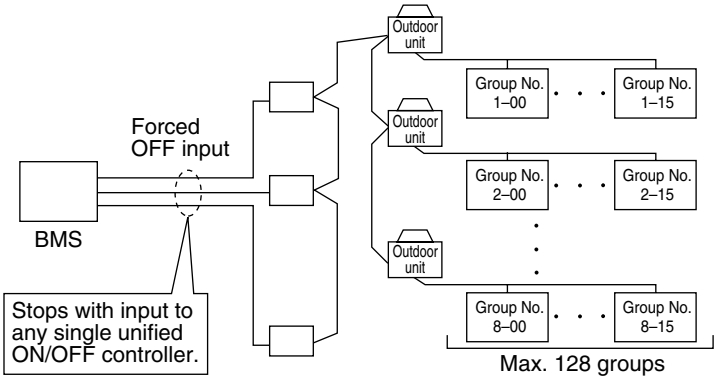
2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

This unified ON/OFF controller enables individual and unified ON/OFF for a maximum of 16 groups of indoor units. With 2 to 8 unified ON/OFF controllers, individual and unified control is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups of indoor units.

■ **When using 1 unified ON/OFF controller**



■ **When using 2 to 8 unified ON/OFF controllers**



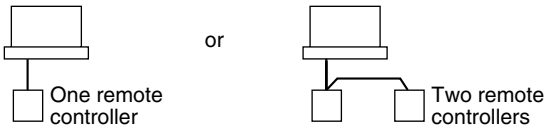
(This optional accessory can not be used in conjunction with wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (optional accessory).)

The groups of indoor units are as follows:

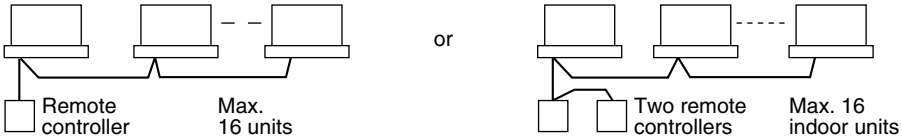
1. One indoor unit without remote controller



2. One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



3. A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled in groups by one or two remote controllers



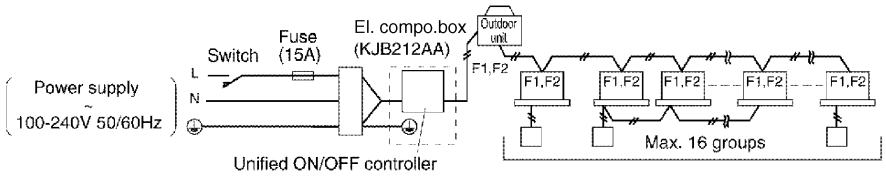
1P162827A

3 ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on the site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All field wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- Fit the power supply wiring with a fuse and a switch.
- After wiring work, check power to the equipment shuts OFF when switch is shut OFF.

WIRING OUTLINE



Wiring specification

	Type	Size
Power supply wiring	H05VV-U3G	(NOTE 1)
Transmission wiring	Sheathed wire (2 wire) (NOTE 2)	0.75 – 1.25mm²

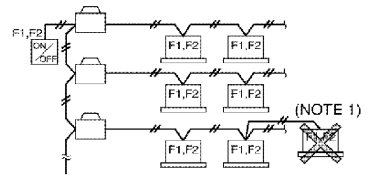
NOTES) 1. The size of power supply wiring must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
2. Allowable length of transmission wiring is as follows. Max. 1000m (Total wiring length: 2000m)

Connect the wiring between indoor and outdoor units, indoor/outdoor units and power supply, and indoor units and remote controllers. For details, refer to the installation manuals of indoor and outdoor units.

1P162827A

EXAMPLES OF WIRING FOR TRANSMISSION

Series wiring



ON/OFF : Unified ON/OFF controller

: Terminal board (Part to be procured in the field)

: Indoor unit

: Outdoor unit

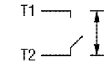
NOTES) 1. No branching is allowed after first branching.
2. Use a relay terminal board (part to be procured in the field) to branch more than 3 control wirings from the same terminal board.

WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT

CONTROL TERMINAL STRIP

∗1 For connecting indoor unit (F1, F2)

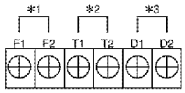
∗2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
While the forced OFF input (no voltage contactor, for micro current) is ON (energized), all the connected indoor units are stopped and can not be operated.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load DC16V, 10mA.

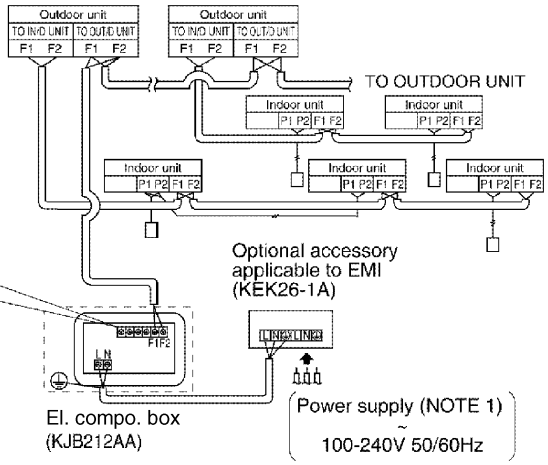


NOTE) Use instantaneous contactor of over 200msec. energizing time, when necessary.

∗3 For schedule timer (D1, D2)
Power can be supplied to the schedule timer (DST301BA51•61 optional accessory). For details, refer to the installation manual of the schedule timer.

Wire ∗2 and ∗3 only when necessary.





NOTE) 1. When not using the optional accessory applicable to EMI (KEK26-1A), connect the power supply wiring directly to the unified ON/OFF controller.

(NOTE)
Do not connect the power supply wiring (220 to 240V) to the control terminal strip. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of optional controllers for centralized control and indoor unit. It may result in serious danger. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

1P162827A

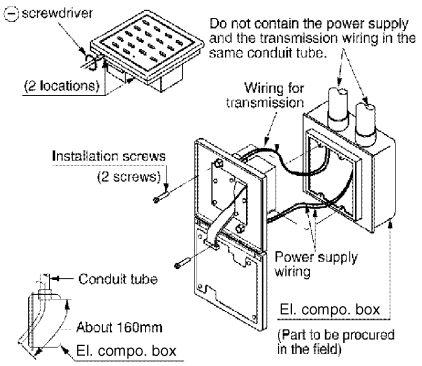
4 INSTALLATION

① Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver (2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.

② Open the upper part of remote controller and install the electric parts box (part to be procured in the field) with the attached installation screws (M4 × 16).

NOTE) Suitable length of the electric wire is about 160mm from the inlet of the el. compo. box. If it is difficult to contain a long wiring, strip the sheathed part of the wiring.



5 INITIAL SETTING

Setting ① through ③ are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power.

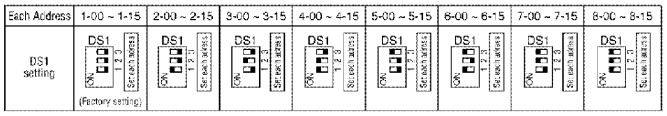
① Connector for setting main controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)
- When using 1 unified ON/OFF controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple unified ON/OFF controllers, or using the unified ON/OFF controller in conjunction with other optional controllers for centralized control, makes settings as indicated in the below table.

1P162827A

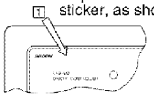
Pattern of connection of optional controllers for centralized control			Connector for setting master controller (X1A) Settings		
Unified ON/OFF controller	Central remote controller	Schedule timer	Unified ON/OFF controller	Central remote controller	Schedule timer
1 to 16			Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used".		
	1 to 4		Set all to "Not used".	(Note)	
		1	Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used".		"Not used"
	1 to 4	1	Set all to "Not used".	(Note)	"Not used"

(Note) For instructions on how to set the connector for setting master controller on the central remote controller, see the installation manual provided with the central remote controller.

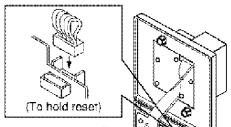
② Switch for setting each address (DS1)
These switches are used to set group control address.
Groups Nos. 1–00 through 1–15 are grouped in the same control group when the unit is shipped from the factory.



After setting, attach the number seal applicable to respective control range of the attached switch display sticker, as shown in the diagram below.



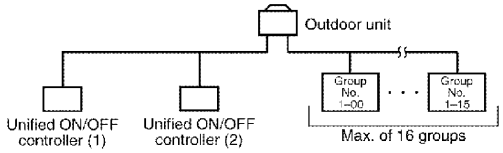
(Example)
In the case of 1-00 to 1-15, attach 1 .



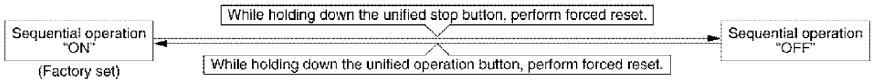
Connector for setting master controller
Forced reset switch
Switch for setting each address
Control mode selector
MAIN/SUB changeover switch

③ MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting
With two unified ON/OFF controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.

One of the two unified ON/OFF controllers (1)·(2) is set to "MAIN" while the other is set to "SUB".

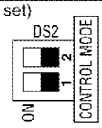
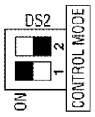
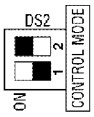
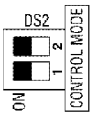


④ Setting of the sequential operation function
The unified ON/OFF controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.") To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



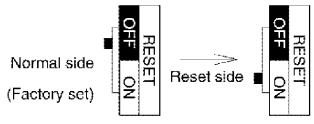
NOTE: The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

⑤ Control mode selector (DS2)
The following four patterns of control mode can be set.

Control mode	Individual	Centralized	Timer operation possible by remote controller	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller
Content	Operation/stop is controlled by both unified ON/OFF controller and remote controller.	After operated by unified ON/OFF controller, operation/stop is freely controlled by remote controller until stopped by unified ON/OFF controller.	When used in conjunction with schedule timer, operation/stop is controlled freely by remote controller during the set time but operation is not available when schedule timer is ON.	Operation/stop is controlled by unified ON/OFF controller only. (This unit can not be operated/stopped by remote controller.)
DS2 setting	(Factory set) 			

NOTES) • ■ indicates the position of switches.
• Set control mode before turning power supply ON.
• When used in conjunction with central remote controller, the control modes of the central remote controller has the priority.

⑥ Forced reset switch (SS1)
When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, etc., you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.
(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)



1P162827A

6 SETTING GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and UNIFIED ON/OFF CONTROLLER.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

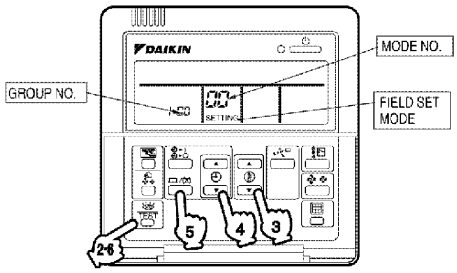
(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the "TEST" button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the "▲▼" button.

(4) Use the "▲▼" button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00,1-01,···1-15, 2-00, ···8-15.)

(5) Press "SET" to set the selected group No.

(6) Press "TEST" to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTES)
- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the installation table in the operation manual.
Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

7 CONFIRMING OPERATION

Before starting test operation, supply power to the indoor units, outdoor units, and unified ON/OFF controller and press the ON/OFF button.
If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the indoor unit of the applicable group.
If the display of "HOST" flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the optional controllers for centralized control. Check for such malfunctions.

NOTES
- For test operation of indoor and outdoor units, refer to the installation manual attached with the outdoor unit.
- After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for two minutes or more with the display of "HOST" flashing, check the following points.
  - Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

1P162827A

12. Schedule Timer

12.1 DST301BA61

12.1.1 Features

Enables you to connect and control weekly schedule for up to 128 indoor units all together.

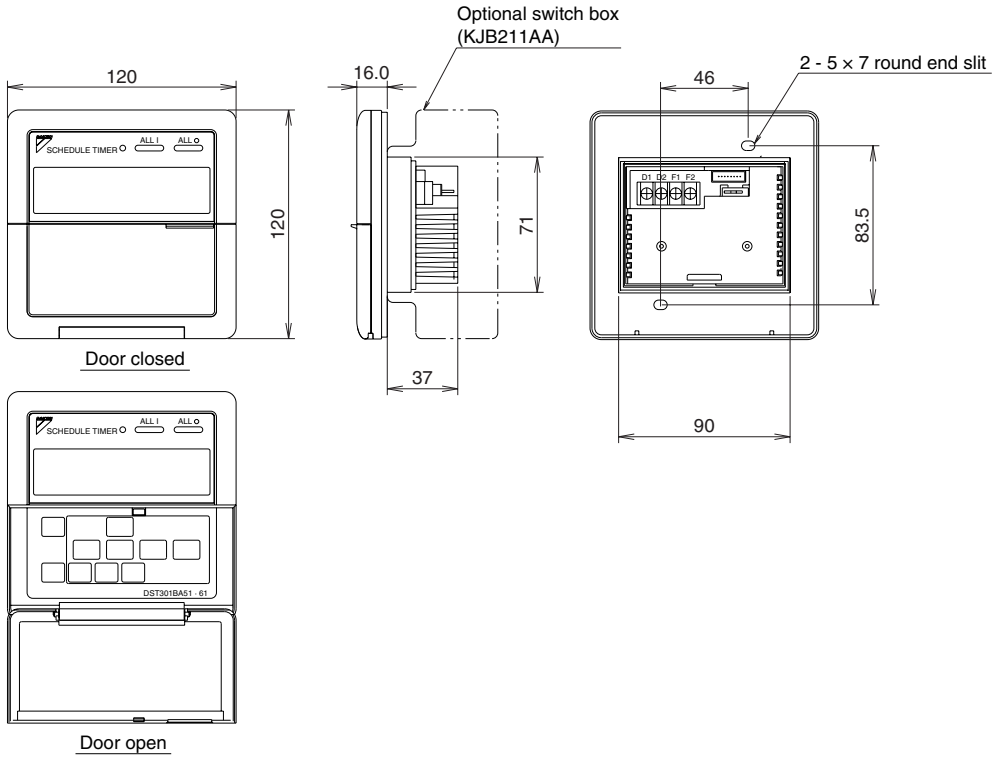


- Simultaneous control of up to 128 indoor units is managed by a week schedule.
- The start and stop time for twice a day can be set for the week in increments of 1 minute.
- By combining with a central remote controller and schedule timer, you can construct a system that matches the size and use of the building.
- If used together with a central remote controller, you can set up to 8 schedule patterns which can be distributed among zones as desired using the central remote controller.
- Is equipped with a compensation function for power failure up to 48 hours.
- Features thin design of a mere 16 mm in thickness. (Use of the optional JIS 2-block wall embedded box (KJB212AA))
- Can be used in combination with other D-BACS equipment.

12.1.2 Dimensions

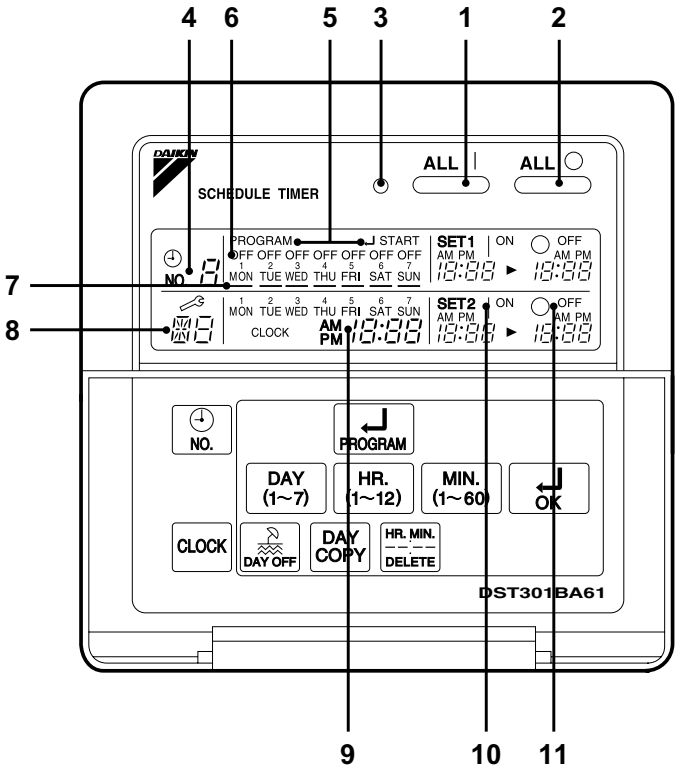
Schedule Timer

Unit (mm)

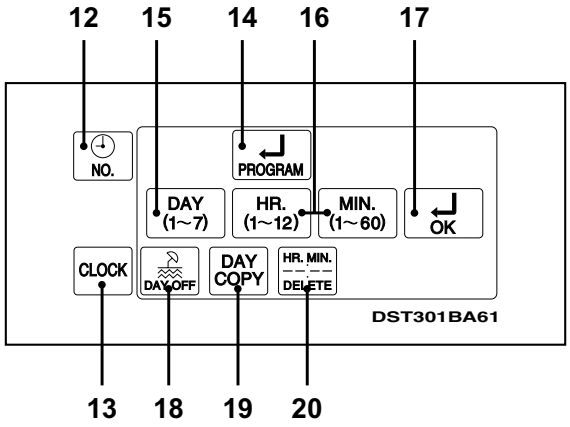


C: 3D049544

12.1.3 Operation Manual



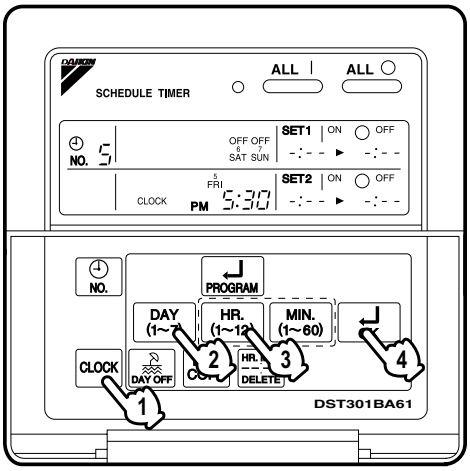
1



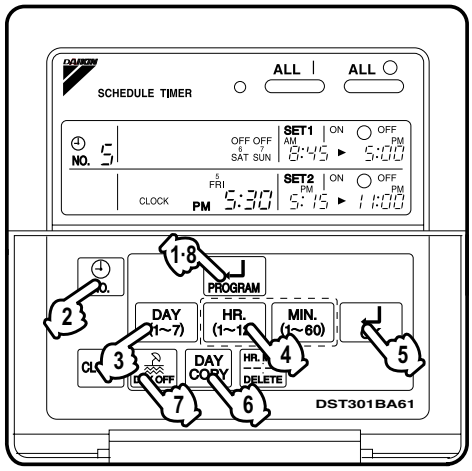
2

3P124623-5C

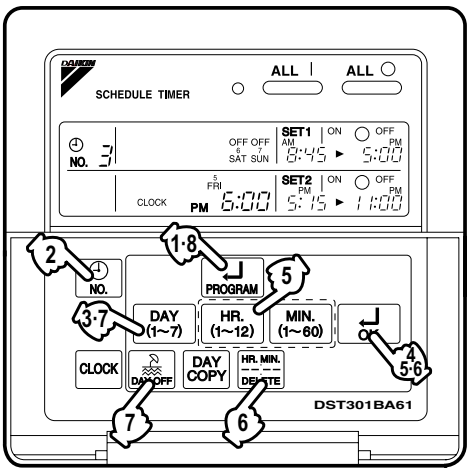
2



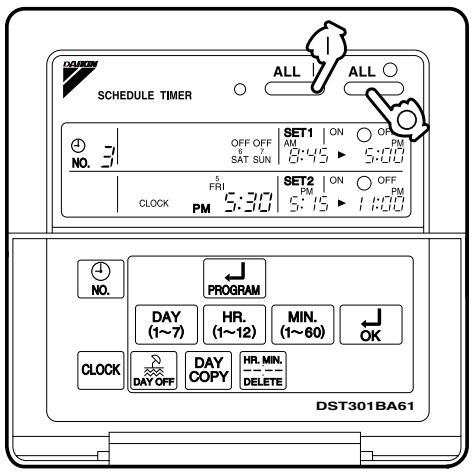
3



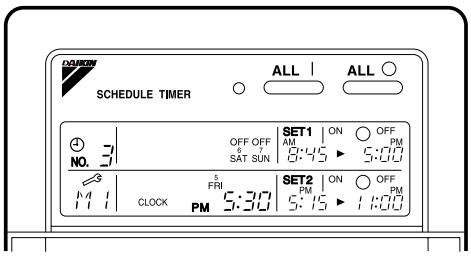
4



5



6



7

3P124623-5C

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read these " SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS " carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the start-up operation.
Please instruct the customer on how to operate the unit and keep it maintained.
Also, inform customers that they should store this installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.
This air conditioner comes under the term " appliances not accessible to the general public ".

Meaning of warning, caution and note symbols.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE**..... Indicates situation that may result in equipment or property-damage-only accidents.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this operation manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

In order to avoid electric shock, fire or injury, or if you detect any abnormality such as smell of fire, turn off power and call your dealer for instructions.

Ask your dealer for installation of the air conditioner.
Incomplete installation performed by yourself may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Ask your dealer for improvement, repair, and maintenance.
Incomplete improvement, repair, and maintenance may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electric shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Be sure only to use accessories made by Daikin which are specifically designed for use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.

Ask your dealer to move and reinstall the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Incomplete installation may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Never let the indoor unit or the remote controller get wet.
It may cause an electric shock or a fire.

Never use flammable spray such as hair spray, lacquer or paint near the unit.
It may cause a fire.

Never replace a fuse with that of wrong ampere ratings or other wires when a fuse blows out.
Use of wire or copper wire may cause the unit to break down or cause a fire.

Never inspect or service the unit by yourself.
Ask a qualified service person to perform this work.

Cut off all electric waves before maintenance.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with excessive water.
Electric shock or fire may result.

Do not install the air conditioner or the remote controller at any place where flammable gas may leak out.
If the gas leaks out and stays around the air conditioner, a fire may break out.

Do not touch the switch with wet fingers.
Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.

CISPR 22 Class A Warning:
This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

3P124623-5C

⚠ CAUTION

After a long use, check the unit stand and fitting for damage.
If they are left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and result in injury.

Do not allow a child to mount on the unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not let children play on and around the unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, it may result in injury.

Do not place a flower vase and anything containing water.
Water may enter the unit, causing an electric shock or fire.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Some parts inside are dangerous to touch, and a machine trouble may happen.
For checking and adjusting the internal parts, contact your dealer.

Avoid placing the controller in a spot splashed with water.
Water coming inside the machine may cause an electric leak or may damage the internal electronic parts.

Do not operate the air conditioner when using a room fumigation - type insecticide.
Failure to observe could cause the chemicals to become deposited in the unit, which could endanger the health of those who are hypersensitive to chemicals.

Safely dispose of the packing materials.
Packing materials, such as nails and other metal or wooden parts, may cause stabs or other injuries.
Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. If children play with a plastic bag which was not torn apart, they face the risk of suffocation.

Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation.
Always wait at least five minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage and trouble may occur.

The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.

The remote controller should be installed in such away that children cannot play with it.

⚠ NOTE

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Never pull or twist the electric wire of the remote controller.
It may cause the unit to malfunction.

Do not place the controller exposed to direct sunlight.
The LCD display may get discolored, failing to display the data.

Do not wipe the controller operation panel with benzine, thinner, chemical dustcloth, etc.
The panel may get discolored or the coating peeled off. If it is heavily dirty, soak a cloth in water-diluted neutral detergent, squeeze it well and wipe the panel clean. And wipe it with another dry cloth.

Dismantling of the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and eventual other parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local and national regulations.

3P124623-5C

CONTENTS

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS.....1
FEATURES AND FUNCTIONS.....3
NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF OPERATING SECTION.....4
OPERATION.....5
Setting present time.....5
Setting no. of programmed time.....6
Change and cancellation of no. of programmed time.....7
Manual operation.....9
Operation control code.....9
Error diagnosing function.....9
QUESTION AND ANSWER.....10
SPECIFICATIONS.....12
Specifications.....12
Outline drawings.....12

FEATURES AND FUNCTIONS

■ **Operation controlled by programmed time**
Operating time and stopping time can be set to the minute by each day of the week. The operating and stopping patterns can also be set in schedule according to the time slot given twice a day in tune with the uses.

See page 5—9.

■ **Unified Operation/Stop**
By using this schedule timer, the unified operation/stop of the indoor unit can be executed manually regardless of the No. of programmed time in operation.

See page 9.

- **When used in conjunction with central remote controller (Optional Accessory)**
  The operation controlled by programmed time can be set for up to eight different patterns (timer No. 1 – 8). Each schedule pattern can be also selected.

3P124623-5C

2

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**UNIFIED OPERATION BUTTON “ ALL ”**
	Press this button to perform the unified operation regardless of the No. of programmed time.
2	**UNIFIED STOP BUTTON “ ALL ”**
	Press this button to perform the unified stop regardless of the No. of programmed time.
3	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)**
	The light turns on during the operation of the indoor unit.
4	**DISPLAY “ NO. 8 ” (TIME NO.)**
	Displays the time No. only when used in conjunction with the central remote controller.
5	**DISPLAY “PROGRAM ↵ START.” (PROGRAMMING START)**
	The light turns on when the timer is programmed.
6	**DISPLAY “ OFF ” (HOLIDAY SETTING)**
	Lights above the day of the week set as holiday. The operation controlled by timer is not available on that day.
7	**DISPLAY “ — ” (SETTING OF DAYS OF A WEEK)**
	Flashes below the day of the week programmed.
8	**DISPLAY “ ” (MALFUNCTION CODE)**
	Displays the contents of malfunction during the stop due to malfunction.

9	**DISPLAY “ MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN CLOCK AM PM 10:00 ” (PRESENT TIME)**
	Displays the present day of the week and time.
10	**DISPLAY “ AM PM ON 10:00 ” (PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM START)**
	Displays the time programmed to start.
11	**DISPLAY “ OFF AM PM 10:00 ” (PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM OFF)**
	Displays the time programmed to stop.
12	**TIME NO. BUTTON “ NO. ”**
	See page 5–9.
13	**CLOCK ADJUSTING BUTTON “ CLOCK ”**
	Press this button to set the present time.
14	**PROGRAMMING START BUTTON “ ↵ PROGRAM ”**
	Press this button to set or check the No. of programmed time. Press it again after you are through with the program.
15	**BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK “ DAY (1~7) ”**
	Press this button to select the day of the week.
16	**HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON “ HR. (1~12) MIN. (1~60) ”**
	Press this button to adjust the present time and the programmed time.

3P124623-5C

17	**TIMER ON BUTTON “ [OK] ”**
	Press this button to set the present time and the programmed time.
18	**HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON “ [DAY OFF] ”**
	Press this button to set holidays.
19	**BUTTON FOR COPYING PROGRAM OF PREVIOUS DAY “ [DAY COPY] ”**
	Use this button to set the No. of programmed time same as that of the previous day.
20	**PROGRAM CANCELING BUTTON “ [HR. MIN. DELETE] ”**
	Use this button to set the programmed time to cancel. The display shows “ – ; – – ”.
(Note) 1. Please note that all the displays in the figure appear for explanation purpose or when the cover is open.	

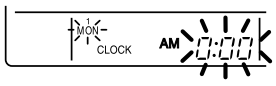
OPERATION

■ Setting present time (Fig. 3)

(Example) In case of setting Friday, 5:30 p.m.

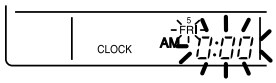
1. ☞1 Press the CLOCK ADJUSTING BUTTON. The present time display flashes.

(NOTE)
- The present time needs adjusting in case of turning power supply on for the first time or the occurrence of power failure over the period of 48 hours or more.



2. ☞2 Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK. Each time the button is pressed, the day display shifts to the right.

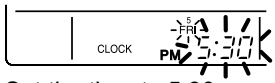
(NOTE)
- The display “ MON ” follows the display “ SUN. ”



Set the day to Friday.

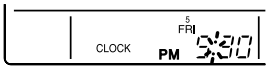
3. ☞3 Set the time with the HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON. Each time the HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON is pressed, the display is put forward minute by minute and hour by hour. When the button is kept pressed, the display is put forward continuously.

(NOTES)
- After becoming “ AM 11:00 ”, when the button is pressed, the display becomes “ PM 0:00 ”.
- After becoming “ 59 ” (minute), when the button is pressed, the display becomes “ 00 ” (minute).



Set the time to 5:30 p.m.

4. ☞4 Press the TIMER ON BUTTON the moment the time signal of TV, radio, telephone, etc. is heard. The mark “ : ” flashes, and the clock starts.



Press the TIMER ON BUTTON in tune with the time signal at 5:30 p.m.

(NOTES)
- The clock used is of 12-hour type.
- When you turn power supply on, the system may display “ 88 ” for about one minute and not start to operate after all the liquid crystal displays appear at a time.
- If the CLOCK ADJUSTING BUTTON is pressed by mistake, press it again to return to the original state. As the clock does not stop, the time indicated by the clock is kept correct. In case of power failure within 48 hours, the clock keeps operating by utilizing the built-in battery.

3P124623-5C

2

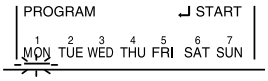
■ Setting no. of programmed time (Fig. 4)

(Example) **Time No. 5 (to be programmed only when used in conjunction with the central remote controller)**

Monday to Friday:
Operating from 8:45 a.m. till 5:00 p.m.
Operating from 5:15 p.m. till 11:00 p.m.

Saturday and Sunday:
Setting the whole day stop operation (application for holidays) controlled by programmed time.

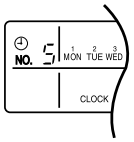
1. ☞1 Press the PROGRAMMING START BUTTON. Programming is available.
The display " PROGRAM ↵START " appears, and the display of days of a week flashes.



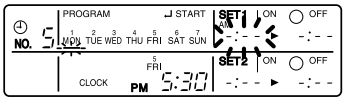
2. ☞2 Press the TIME No. BUTTON, and select the desired number.

(NOTE)
- Unless used in conjunction with the central remote controller, The TIME No. is not displayed and can not be selected.

Select the TIME No. 5.



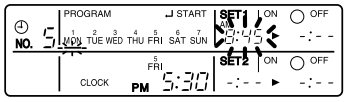
3. ☞3 Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK, and set the proper day of the week. Each time you press it, the flashing display of days of a week shifts to the right.



Set to Monday.

(1) Setting programmed time

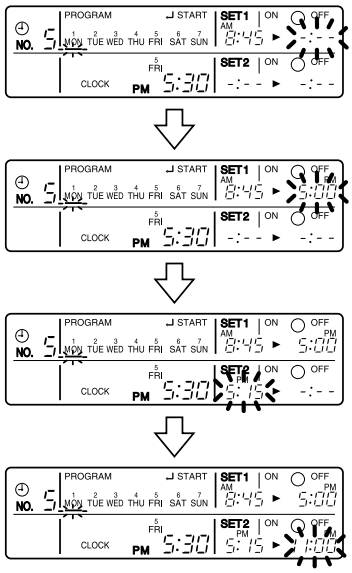
4. ☞4 Set the programmed time of system start 1 by using the HOUR/ MINUTE BUTTON. Each time the HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON is pressed, the display is put forward minute by minute and hour by hour. When the button is kept pressed, the display is put forward continuously.



Set the "PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM START 1" at 8:45 a.m.

5. ☞5 Press the TIMER ON BUTTON, and set the programmed time of system start 1. Each time you press it, the next area to be set flashes.

(NOTE)
- Set the other programmed time in the same procedure.



3P124623-5C

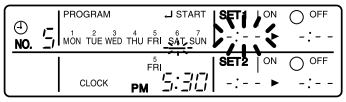
(2) Set the next day of the week.
Set the day of the week to Tuesday, and copy the program of the previous day (Monday). In the same procedure, set the day of the week to Wednesday through Friday in sequence.

6. ☞6 Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK and set the following day. Press the BUTTON FOR COPYING PROGRAM OF PREVIOUS DAY. The same program as that of the immediately preceding day of the week is set.

(NOTE)
- Repeat each procedure 3 – 5 in the above when not copying the contents of the previous day.

(3) Holiday setting

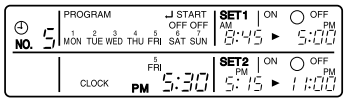
7. ☞7 Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK and set one or more days of the week as holiday. Press the HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON, and the display " OFF " is displayed at the top of the day of the week. If you press it again, the display returns to the original state.



Set Saturday and Sunday as holidays.

8. ☞8 Press the PROGRAMMING START BUTTON, and finish the program setting.

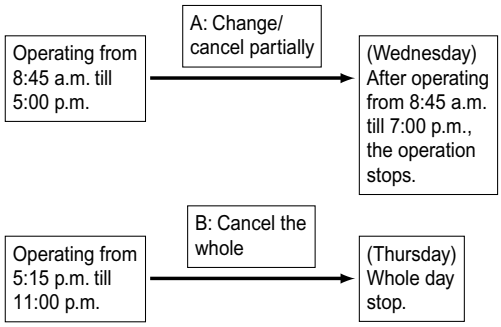
(NOTES)
- Unless the button is pressed within 20 minutes, the display will automatically revert back to the original state. In this case, setting contents up to the point where the TIMER ON BUTTON (or HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON or BUTTON FOR COPYING PROGRAM OF PREVIOUS DAY) is pressed will only take effect.
- The display " PROGRAM ↵START " and the display of days of a week " — " disappears.
- The flashing display goes off, and the No. of programmed time of the present day is displayed. Then the operation controlled by timer starts.
- The operation controlled by timer is executed even while the program is being set.



This is the end of the setting example.

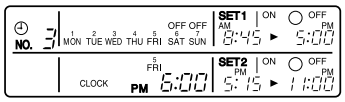
■ Change and cancellation of no. of programmed time (Fig. 5)

(Example) Time No. 3 (to be set only when used in conjunction with the central remote controller)



1. ☞1 Press the PROGRAMMING START BUTTON. The program setting is ready. The display " PROGRAM ↵START " appears, and the display of days of a week flashes.

2. ☞2 Press the TIME No. BUTTON, and select the desired No.

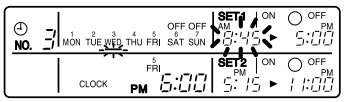


Select the time No. 3.

3P124623-5C

2

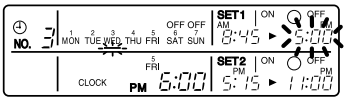
3. Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK, and set the day of the week to be changed. The set No. of programmed time of the day of the week is displayed.



Set the day to Wednesday.

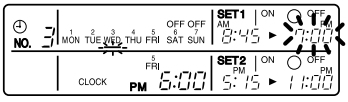
A. Change/cancel partially

4. Press the TIMER ON BUTTON and change, and the display of programmed time flashes. Each time you press it, the next area to be set flashes.



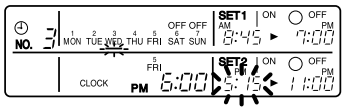
Shift to the display “PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM OFF 1”.

5. Press the HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON and change the programmed time. Press the TIMER ON BUTTON, and finalize the setting of change.

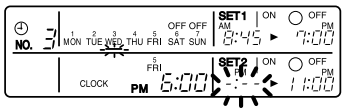


Change the “PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM OFF 1” to 7:00 p.m.

6. Press the PROGRAM CANCELING BUTTON, and cancel the programmed time. If you press it again, display returns to the original state. Press the TIMER ON BUTTON to finalize the cancellation.



Shift to the “PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM START 2”.

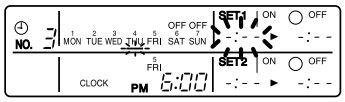


Set the “PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM START 2” to program cancellation.

In the same procedure, cancel the programmed time of system off 2.

B. Cancel the whole

7. Press the BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK, and shift to the day of the week to be canceled. Then, press the HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON, the display “ OFF ” appears at the top of the particular day of the week. The programmed time is canceled. If you press the button again, the display returns to the original state.



Shift the day of the week to Thursday to set as a holiday.

3P124623-5C

8. ☞ Press the PROGRAMMING START BUTTON. The program setting is now finished.

(NOTES)
- Unless the button is pressed within 20 minutes, the display will automatically revert back to the original state. In this case, setting contents to the point where the TIMER ON BUTTON (or HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON or BUTTON FOR COPYING PROGRAM OF PREVIOUS DAY) is pressed will only take effect.
- To continue the change/cancellation, do not press the PROGRAMMING START BUTTON until all change/cancellation are completed.
- The operation controlled by timer is executed even while the program is being set.

■ Manual operation (Fig. 6)

This schedule timer enables the operation/stop by pressing the UNIFIED OPERATION/STOP BUTTON in addition to the operation controlled by timer (operation/stop according to the programmed time) at any time.

1. ☞ Press the UNIFIED OPERATION BUTTON, and the OPERATION LAMP turns on.

2. ☞ Press the UNIFIED STOP BUTTON, and the OPERATION LAMP is turned off.

(NOTES)
- The operation automatically stops according to the programmed time of system off even during the manual operation. In the meantime, the operation starts automatically according to the programmed time of system start even during the stop of operation.
- If the unit is used in conjunction with other optional controllers for centralized control, the OPERATION LAMP of the unit that is not under operation control may be turned on or off a few minutes behind schedule. This shows that the signal is being exchanged, and does not indicate any failure.

Operation lamp	
○ Turn on:	The light turns on when any of the indoor units is in operation whether the operation is controlled by timer or by hand.
● Turn off:	The light turns off when all the indoor units stop.

■ Operation control code

Two different types of operation control codes can be selected when this kit is used independently (when not used in conjunction with the central remote controller, unified ON/OFF controller, etc.).

Individual

In case where the operation/stop is controlled by both schedule timer and remote controller.

Centralized

The operation is controlled by the schedule timer alone, and the operation/stop is controlled freely with the remote controller during the programmed time.

(NOTES)
- For current settings, contact your DAIKIN dealer.
- To change settings, contact your DAIKIN dealer.
  Do not change settings yourself.

■ Error diagnosing function (Fig. 7)

This schedule timer is provided with the malfunction diagnosing function. The malfunction code flashes if there occurs any malfunction in communication, etc. between and among the optional controllers for centralized control. In addition, the operation lamp also flashes if there occurs any malfunction in communication with the indoor unit. Check the contents of the display and contact your DAIKIN dealer because the signals give you the idea of the trouble area.

3P124623-5C

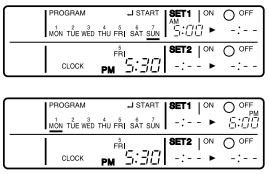
2

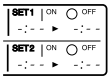
Operation lamp	Malfunction code	Contents of malfunction
Turn off	M1	Failure of PC board of schedule timer. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. **1.** PC board problems
Turn on or off	M8	Malfunction of transmission between each optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** Check all central devices which are connected (e.g., power supply, transmission wiring, etc.).
Turn on or off	MA	Improper combination of optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. **1.** Are all central devices combined correctly? **2.** Is the master central connector attached to two or more central devices? **3.** Are there 128 or more indoor units connected?
Turn on or off	MC	Address failure of schedule timer. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. **1.** Do the control range addresses in the central remote controller overlap? **2.** Do the control range addresses in the on/off controller overlap? **3.** Are there 2 or more schedule timers connected?
Flash	UE	Malfunction of transmission between indoor unit and optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** Inspect all indoor units which are displaying an error (e.g., power supply, transmission wiring, etc.).
Flash	—	Malfunction in indoor unit (Refer to the malfunction codes of the indoor remote controller, while also read the " CAUTION FOR SERVICING " attached to the indoor unit.)

QUESTION AND ANSWER

Question	Answer
It is possible to make settings twice a day, but is it possible to make only the " off " setting? (To avoid forgetting to turn the unit off.)	Yes. Press the PROGRAM CANCELING BUTTON in the " AM PM ON " section in order to set it to " **OFF** ".

3P124623-5C

Is it possible to set times which straddle days?	Yes, it is possible. Example: Start operation at 5:00 a.m. on Sunday Stop operation at 6:00 p.m. on Monday 
The unit does not turn on even though the set " on " time has come. (When using the schedule timer alone)	The following causes are possible. **1.** Are the " on " time and the " off " time set to the same time?
The unit does not turn on even though the set " on " time has come. (When using the unit with a central remote controller)	The following causes are possible. Check each one. **1.** Was the timer number set with the central remote controller? Was an incorrect timer number set? **2.** Is another timer no. set with the central remote controller set for " off " at the same time? **3.** Is the operation code set to " remote control permission timer " using the central remote controller or the on/off controller?
The unit operates even though that day is set as a holiday. (When using the unit with a central remote controller)	The following causes are possible. **1.** Is another timer number set with the central remote controller set for " on " at the same time? (If two timer numbers are set, make sure that the settings for holidays and working days do not overlap between the different timer numbers.)

The TIME NO. is not displayed.	The following causes are possible. **1.** The TIME NO. is not displayed when using the schedule timer alone. (It can be set if using the central remote controller at the same time.)
The display remains "  " even though I push the HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON in the timer program settings.	The following causes are possible. **1.** Is the day set to a holiday?
I cannot set " central management priority " or " after-push priority " with the schedule timer.	The following causes are possible. **1.** Is a central remote controller or on/off controller also installed? ✱ **The priority order of the operation codes depends on the central devices which are installed.** The below operation codes are set. • Schedule timer Central remote controller is used as well Operation code of the central remote controller • Schedule timer On/off controller is used as well Operation code of the on/off controller • Schedule timer Central remote controller On/off controller is used as well Operation code of the central remote controller

3P124623-5C

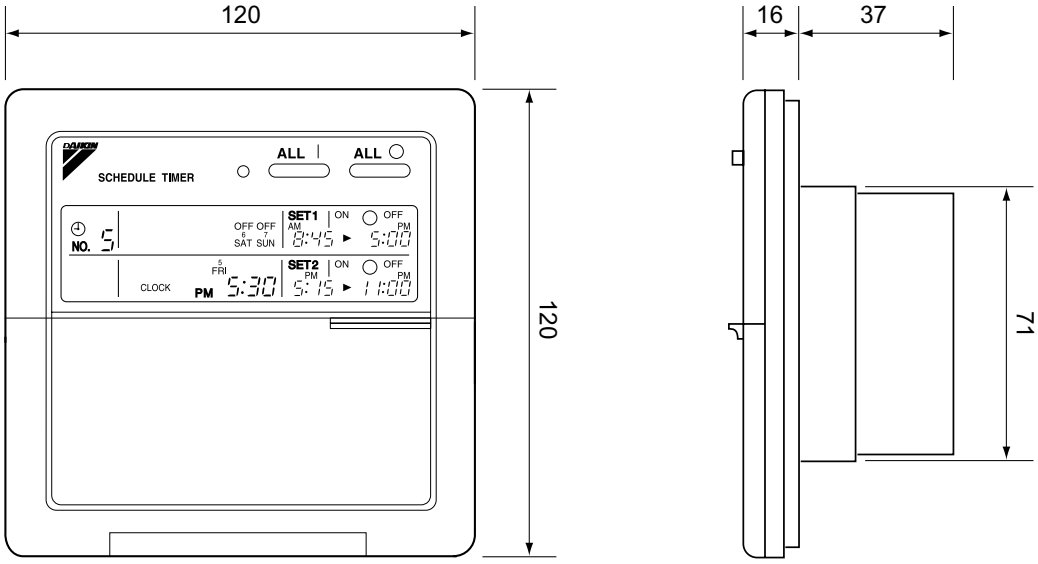
2

SPECIFICATIONS

■ Specifications

Display of time	12-hour digital display
Clock cycle type	Quartz clock type
Clock accuracy	Within ±30 sec./month (environmental temperature from 15°C to 35°C)
Timer programming	Two pairs of programmed time for both system start and system off can be set in units of minute for each day of the week
Power failure compensation time	Approximately 48 hours for a single occurrence of power failure (clock with No. of programmed time)
Size	120 (W) × 120 (H) × 53 (D) mm (Width/Height/Depth)
Weight	Approximately 210g

■ Outline drawings



Specifications and appearance subject to change without notice.

3P124623-5C

12.1.4 Installation Manual

1 ACCESSORIES

Check the following accessories are included in the kit before installation.

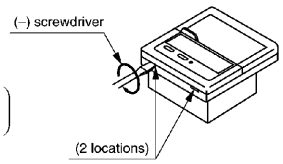
Body	1	Installation screws (M4 × 16)	2
Operation manual	1	Attached electric wire (for individual use)	1
Installation manual*	4	Crimp style terminal (for individual use)	2

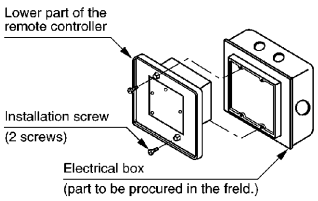
For Installation, a electrical box to be embedded is necessary (part to be procured in the field/with covers).
* DST301BA61 includes only one installation manual.

2 INSTALLATION AND INITIAL SETTING

1. Remove the upper part of the remote controller.

- Insert a (–) screwdriver (2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of the remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.
  (The PC board is attached with the upper part of the remote controller. Do not damage electric parts with a screwdriver, etc.)





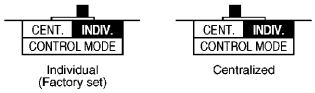
- Attach the lower part to the electrical box (part to be procured in the field) with the provided installation screws.
  (Select a flat face as a installation place. Do not tighten the installation screws excessively not to damage the lower part of the remote controller.)

For part to be procured in the field electrical box, use KJB212AA (optional accessory).

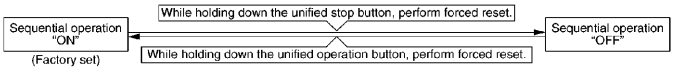
2. Initial setting

① Setting connector for individual use (X1A) (Factory set : OFF) (Set for individual use only)
- For individual use of schedule timer
  Insert the connector attached with the body case on the PC board.
- For combined use with other optional controllers for centralized control
  Do not change the factory setting.

② Control mode selector (SS2) (Set for individual use only)
By changing the switch, setting mode of individual and centralized operation is available.
Note) When used with other optional controllers, control mode of central remote controller and unified ON/OFF controller have the priority.

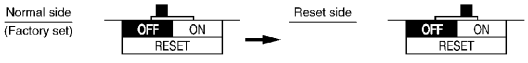


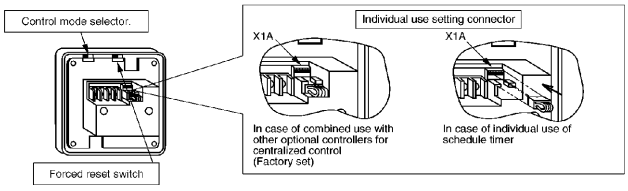
③ Setting of the sequential operation function
The schedule timer is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation.
(Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.")
To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



Note) The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not quarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

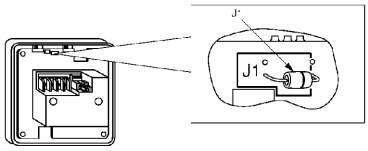
④ Forced reset switch (SS1)
When changing the setting of the connector for individual use, etc., the switch can be reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side. This procedure enables to reset without turning off the power. (Set the normal side at normal operation.)





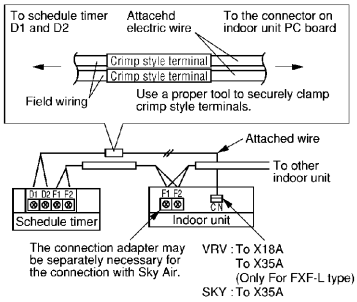
3P162015A

⑤ Setting for special function
When you want to have a programmed operation of a part of indoor units by using only schedule timer, cut off JP1 and supply the power again.
You can have a programmed operation of the indoor units set the address for central control by local remote controller.



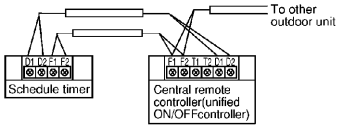
3. Transmission wiring

- In case of individual use of schedule timer
  Connect terminals of the schedule timer (F1. F2) with terminals of the indoor unit (F1. F2). Connect terminals of the schedule timer (D1. D2) and the connector on the indoor unit PC board, using the attached electric wire and crimp style terminals.
  Prevent the connection part of crimp style terminal from getting out of the electric parts box of indoor unit.
- In case of combined use with other optional controllers for centralized control
  Connect terminals of the schedule timer (F1, F2, D1, D2) and the terminals of the central remote controller (or unified ON/OFF controller).



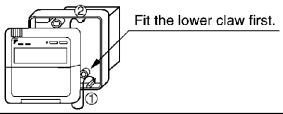
Wiring specifications

	F1, F2	D1, D2
Wiring	Sheathed wire (2-wire)	Sheathed wire (2-wire)
Gauge	0.75 ~ 1.25mm²	0.75 ~ 1.25mm²
Length	Max. 1000m	Max. 150m



NOTES:
1. Electrical box and transmission wiring are not attached.
2. Do not touch the PC board with your hand.
3. Keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunctions.

4. Install the upper part of the remote controller as before.



3 SETTING GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and SCHEDULE TIMER.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

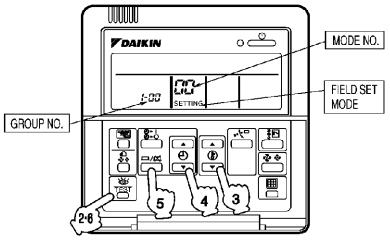
(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the " " button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the " " button.

(4) Use the " " button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00,1-01,···1-15, 2-00,···8-15.)

(5) Press " " to set the selected group No.

(6) Press " " to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTES)
- In case of individual use of schedule timer
  Group number setting is not necessary. It is automatically set when turning power supply ON.
- See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

4 TEST OPERATION

Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

In case the schedule timer is used individually and the wiring is changed after the system has been operated, reset the power after energizing for more than five minutes.
It may not be possible to control the unit from the schedule timer.

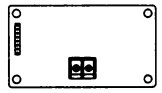
3P162015A

13. Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series

13.1 DTA102A52

13.1.1 Installation Manual

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

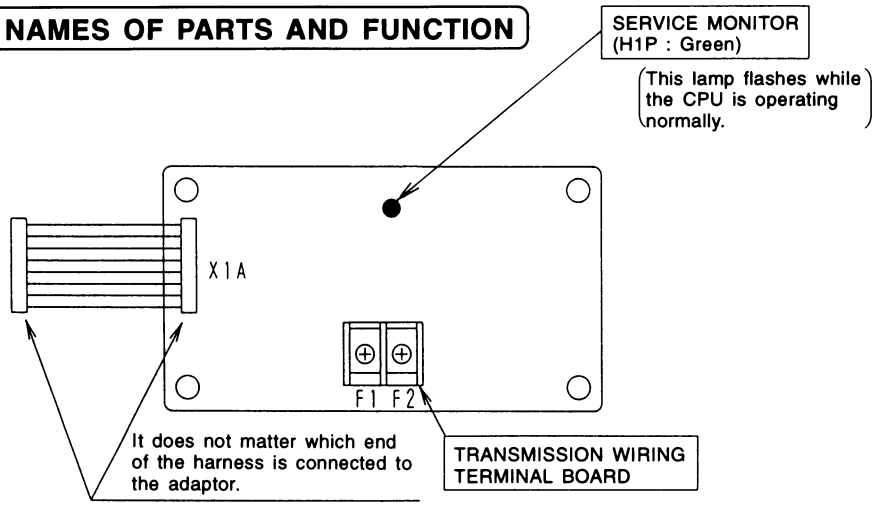
Adaptor	Relay harness
x 1	x 1
	

PC board support	x 4
Tie wrap	x 2
Installation manual	x 1

1 SYSTEM OUTLINE

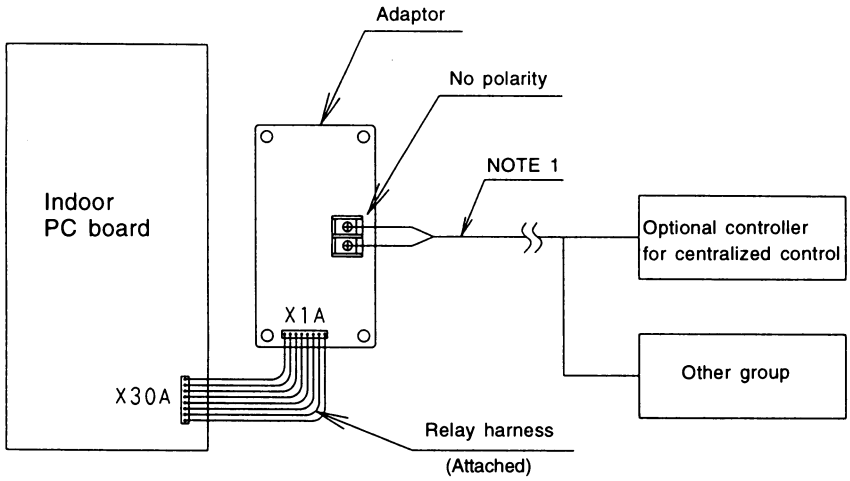
- By connecting this kit to an optional controller for centralized control, all units of the SKY AIR Series in the system can be controlled as a group from the optional controller.
- One kit must be installed onto the master unit of each group.

2 NAMES OF PARTS AND FUNCTION



3 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Wire this kit as described below.
- Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.



NOTE 1. Wiring specifications . . . Use a 0.75 – 1.25 mm^2 sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wire).
2. For details on compatible systems and how to connect to optional controllers, see the instruction manual of the optional controller and technical reference materials.

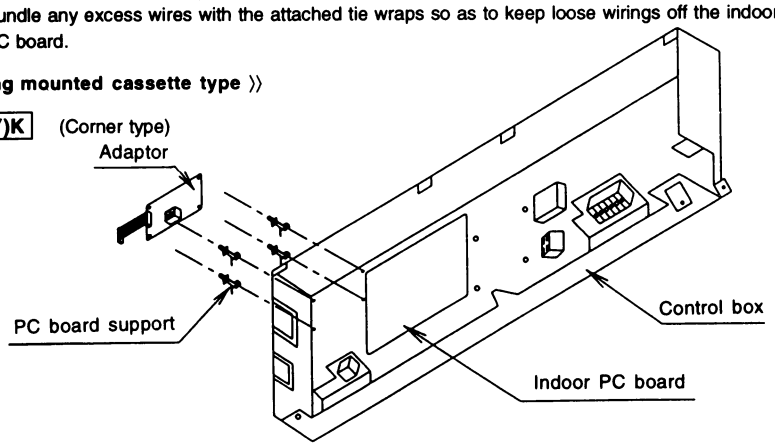
1PA59896

4 INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached tie wraps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

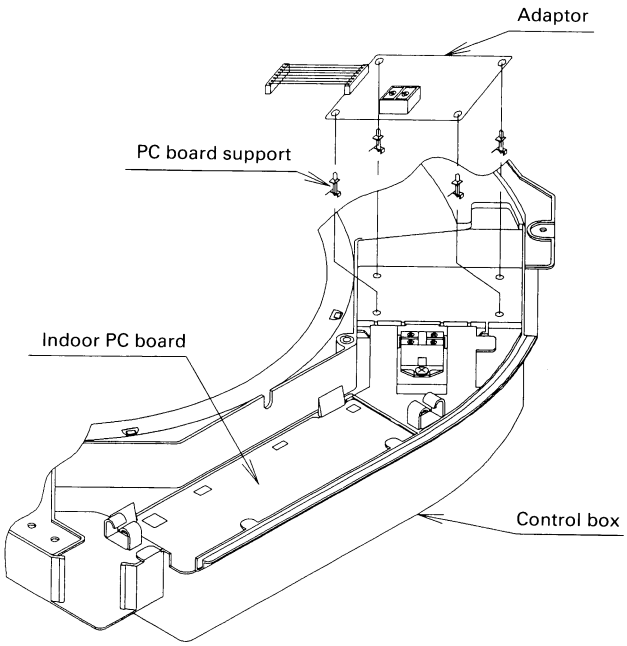
《 **Ceiling mounted cassette type** 》

FH(Y)K (Corner type)

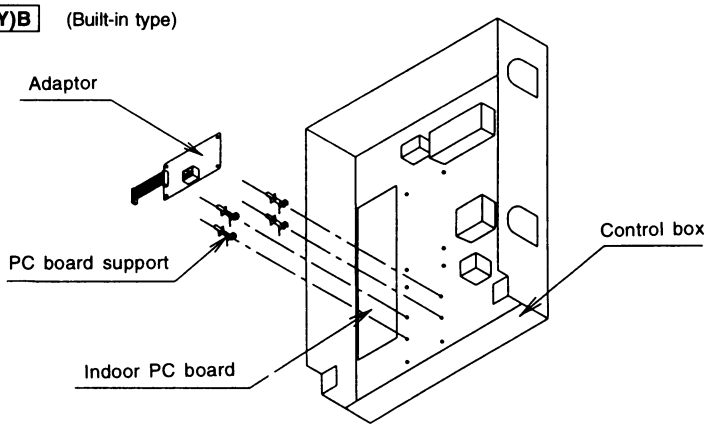


《 **Ceiling mounted cassette type** 》

FH(Y)C (Multiflow type)



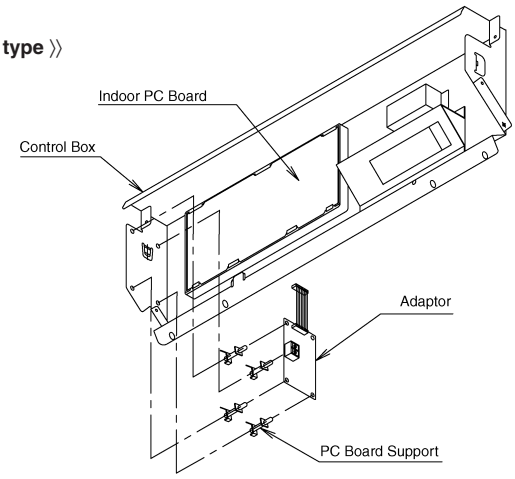
FH(Y)B (Built-in type)



C: 1PA59896

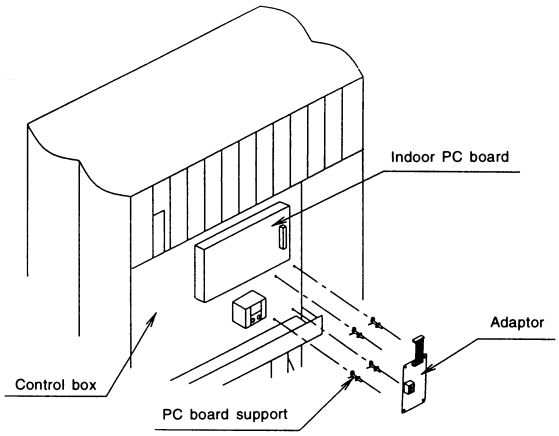
〈〈 **Ceiling suspended type** 〉〉

FH(Y)



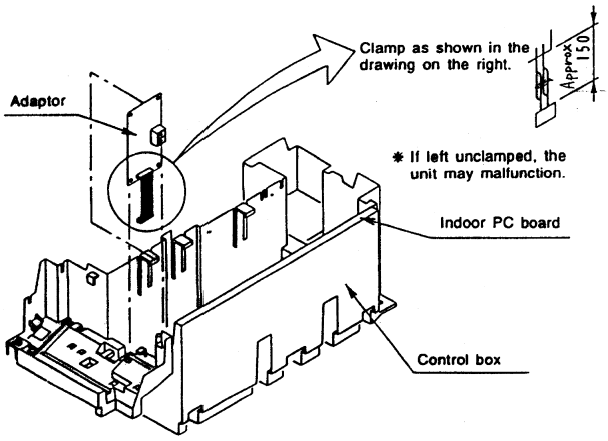
〈〈 **Floor standing type** 〉〉

FVY



〈〈 **Wall mounted type** 〉〉

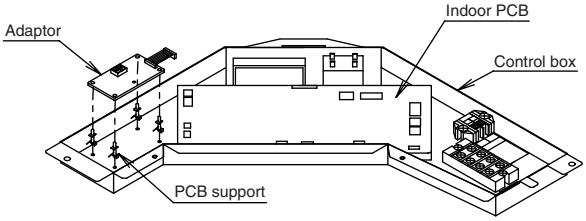
FA(Y)-F(A)
FAQ100BVV1B



C: 1PA59896

<< Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type >>

FXUQ **FUY**



JC: 1PA57137K

13.2 DTA112BA51

Installation

2

Interface adaptor for SkyAir Series — Installation manual

DTA112B51, DTA112BA51

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

① Adaptor	② Relay PCB	③ Relay harness	④ PC board support	⑤ Clamp material	⑥ Installation manual
x1	x1 (for models other than FFQ)	x1 (for FFQ model)	x4	x2	x1

Note Before opening control box lid, be sure cut off the all air conditioner power of indoor unit and outdoor unit, or you may get an electric shock..

1 SYSTEM OUTLINE

- By connecting this kit to an optional controller for centralized control, all units of the SKY AIR Series in the system can be controlled as a group from the optional controller.
- One kit must be installed onto the master unit of each group.

2 ELECTRIC WIRING for FFQ model

(1) Mount the Adapter ① on the indoor unit PCB by setting the triangle marks together. (Fig. 1)
(2) Insert the Relay harness ③ into the connector of the Adapter ① (Fig. 2)
(3) Remove the remote control terminal block(X1M) from the control box mounted inside the indoor unit.
(4) Connect the Relay harness ③ with the terminals F1 and F2 on the terminal block(X1M). (Fig. 2)
(5) Mount the remote control terminal block(X1M) on the inside of the control box as it was before removing it.
(6) Bind the extra wires with the attached Clamp material ⑤ so that the wires do not go over the indoor unit PCB. (Fig. 3)
(7) Connect the wires from the terminals F1 and F2 to the centralized control. (Fig. 2)

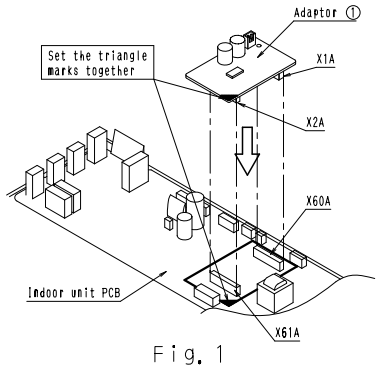


Fig. 1

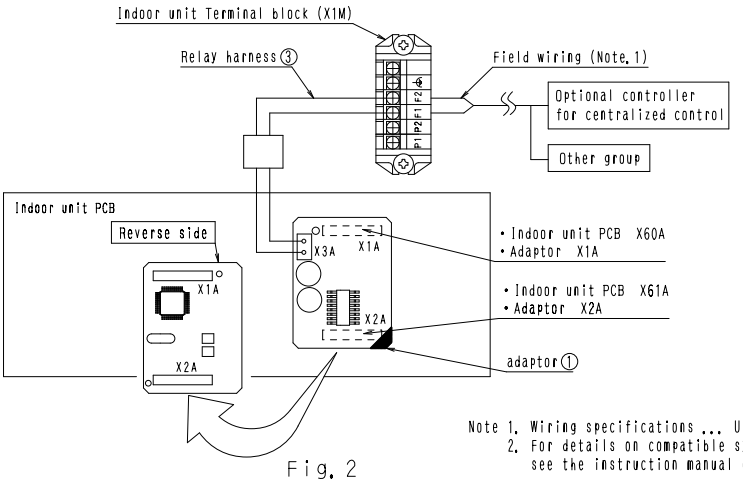


Fig. 2

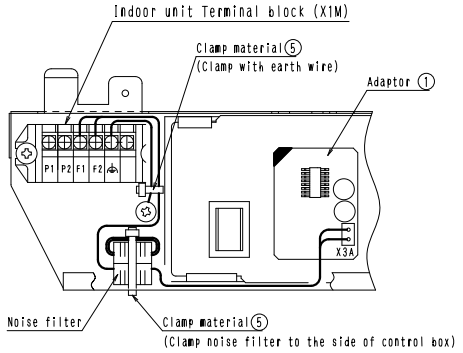


Fig. 3

Note 1. Wiring specifications ... Use a 0.75-1.25mm sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wires).
2. For details on compatible systems and how to connect to optional controllers, see the instruction manual of the optional controller and technical reference materials.

1P107904C

❸ ELECTRIC WIRING for MODELS OTHER THAN FFQ

(1) Mount the adapter ① on the indoor unit PCB by setting the triangle marks together. (Fig. 1 in ❷ ELECTRIC WIRING for FFQ model)
(2) Insert the harness from Relay PCB ② into the connector (X3A) of the Adapter ①. (Fig. 4)
(3) Mount the Relay PCB ② on the required location referring to the figure of Installe position of Relay PCB .
(4) Bind the extra wires with the attached Clamp material ⑤ so that the wires do not go over the indoor unit PCB and the parts on the PCB do not get damaged.
(5) Connect the wires from the terminals F1 and F2 to the centralized control. (Fig. 4)

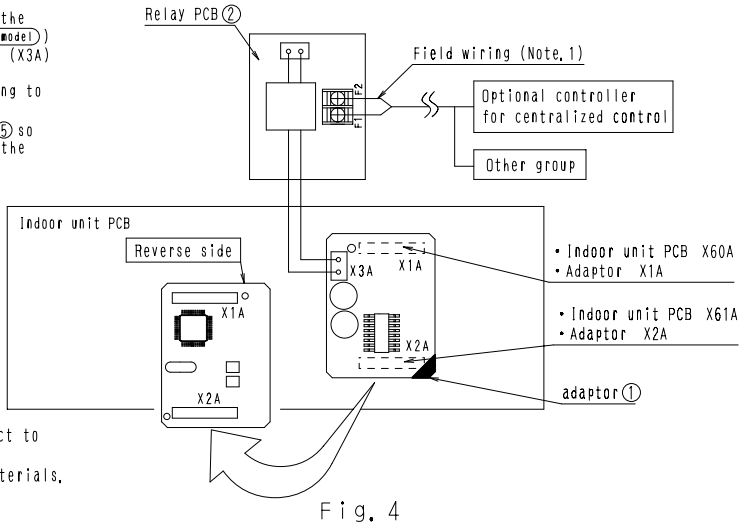
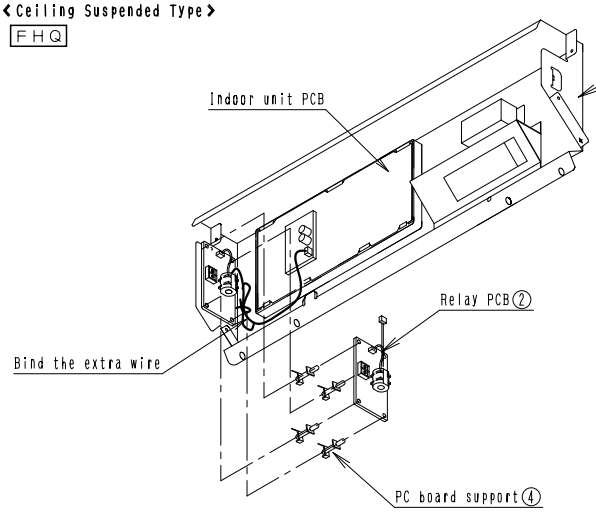


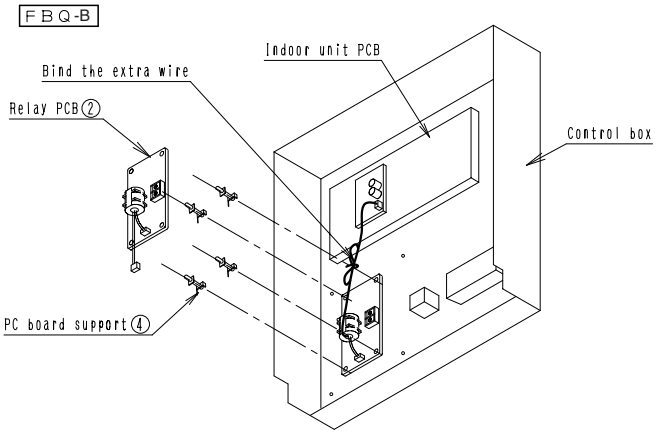
Fig. 4

Note 1. Wiring specifications ... Use a 0.75-1.25mm sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wires).
2. For details on compatible systems and how to connect to optional controllers, see the instruction manual of the optional controller and technical reference materials.

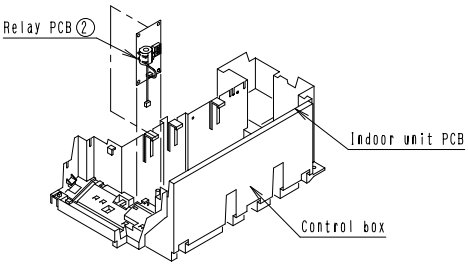
❮Ceiling Suspended Type❯
FHQ



❮Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type❯
FBQ-B



❮Wall-mounted Type❯
FAQ



C: 1P107904C

14. intelligent Touch Controller

14.1 DCS601C51

14.1.1 Front and Side View





PCMCIA Card Slot

Used when using the optional Power Proportional Distribution (DCS002C51) or updating the intelligent Touch Controller software to a newer version.

Color LCD with Touch Panel

Provides a display for monitoring and operation.
Be sure to use the touch pen provided for operation.

Touch Pen

Use the touch pen for operation.
Be sure to use the touch pen for operation.
Use caution not to lose the touch pen.
(When the pen is lost, contact the dealer you purchased the product from.)

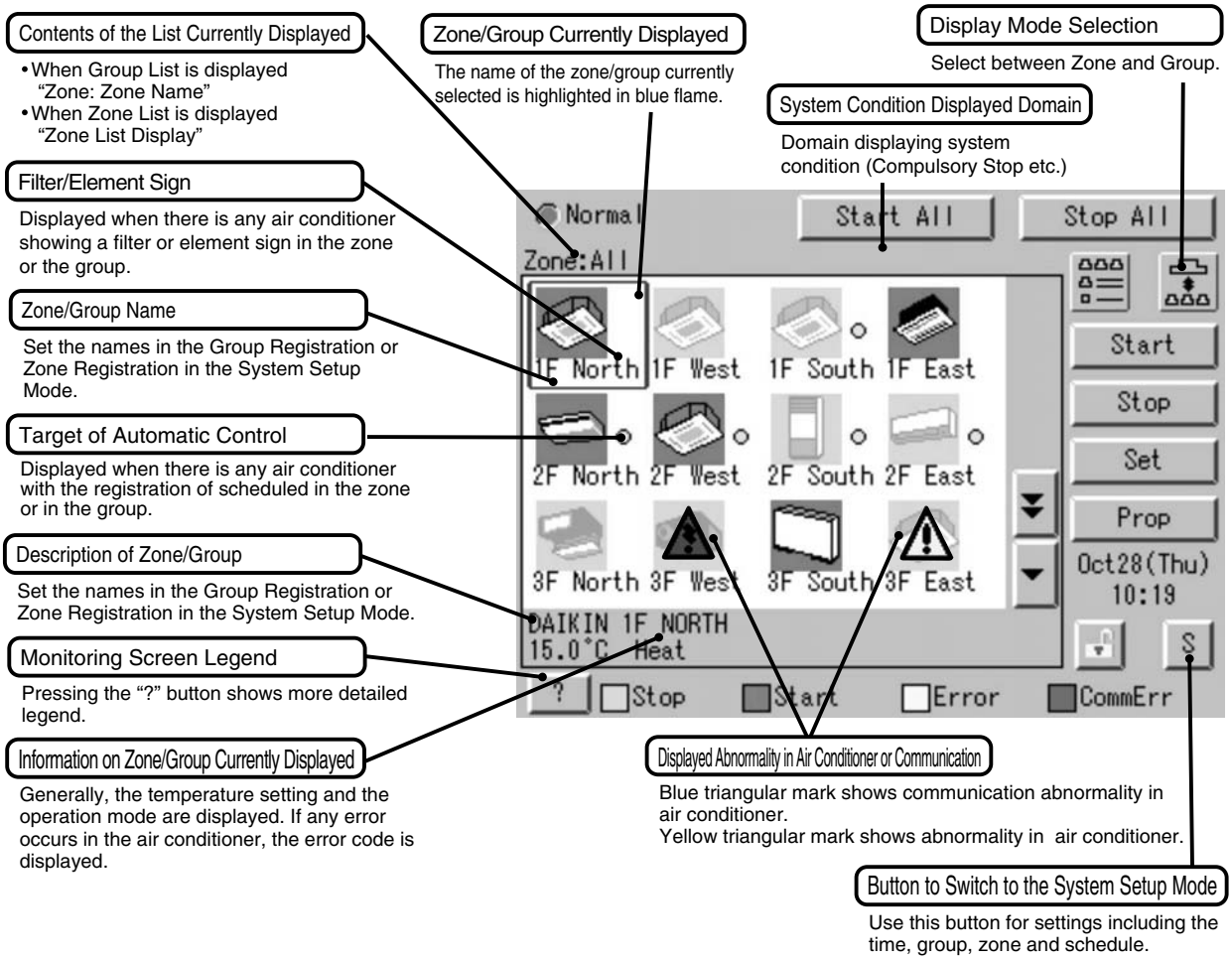
Note:

- Be sure to use the touch pen for operation of the touch panel of the intelligent Touch Controller. Operating with an object other than the touch pen provided may cause damage and failure.

C: 3P073677-12R

14.1.2 Part Names on the Monitoring Screen and the Functions

■ **Icon**



2

Display for Collective Monitoring of Air Conditioners Connected to intelligent Touch Controller

When operation is normal and any air conditioner is in operation:
Red/Normal
When operation is normal and all air conditioners are in stoppage:
Green/Normal
When there is any air conditioner generating an error:
Yellow/Abnormal
When there is any air conditioner with communication error:
Blue/Abnormal
(Change in color of Start/Stop is possible by Iconcolor Settings in System Settings.)

Start All Button

Button to collectively start all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Stop All Button

Button to collectively stop all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Display Mode Selection

Select the mode among icon/list/detailed icon.

Group/Zone Start Button

Button to start operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Stop Button

Button to stop operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Set Button

Makes settings (temperature setting, temperature control mode, etc.) and display of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Prop Button

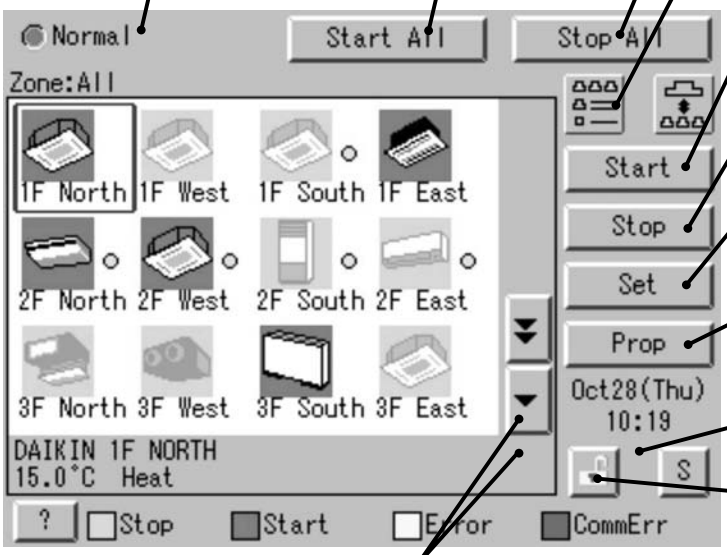
Detailed display of the group/zone selected

Current Time Display

Shows the current date and time.

Lock Setting/Cancel Button

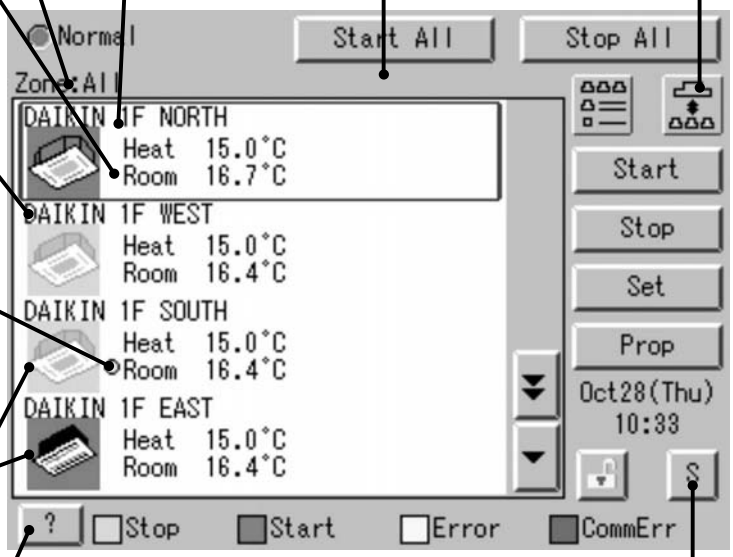
Displays possibititiy of monitor operation.



Scroll Buttons

Up/Down scroll button used when monitoring zone/group which are not currently displayed.
Left/Right scroll button used when monitoring temperature and errors etc.
Which are not currently displayed.

EM04A055A



Contents of the List Currently Displayed

- When Group List is displayed "Zone: Zone Name"
- When Zone List is displayed "Zone List Display"

Zone/Group Currently Displayed

The name of the zone/group currently selected is highlighted in blue frame.

Display Mode Selection

Press the button ana display change between Zone and Group.

System Condition Displayed Domain

Domain displaying system condition (Compulsory Stop etc.).

Filter/Element Sign

Displayed when there is any air conditioner showing a filter or element sign in the zone or the group.

Zone/Group Name

Set the names in the Group Registration or Zone Registration in the System Setup Mode.

Target of Automatic Control

Displayed when there is any air conditioner with the registration of scheduled in the zone or in the group.

Displayed Abnormality in Air Conditioner or Communication

Blue triangular mark shows communication abnormality in air conditioner.
Yellow triangular mark shows abnormality in air conditioner.

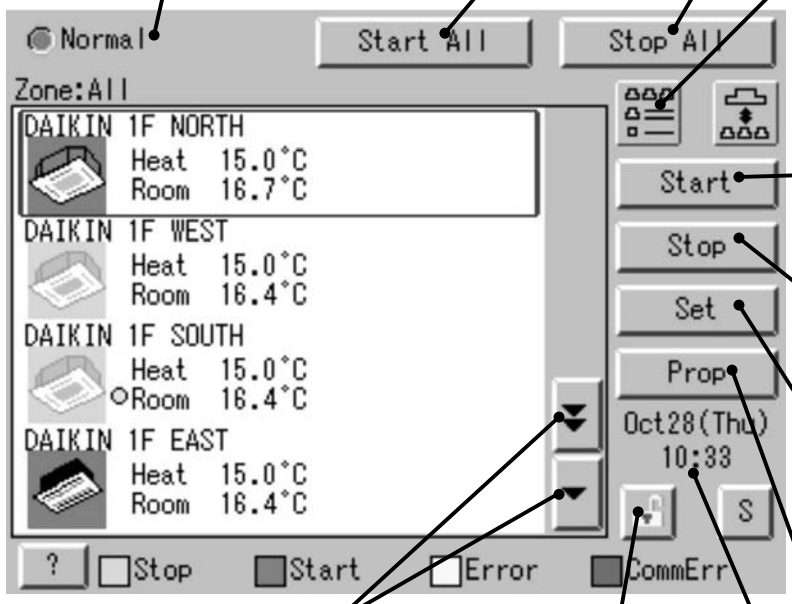
Monitoring Screen Legend

Pressing the "?" button shows more detailed legend.

Button to Switch to the System Setup Mode

Use this button for settings including the time, group, zone and schedule.

2



Display for Collective Monitoring of Air Conditioners Connected to intelligent Touch Controller

When operation is normal and any air conditioner is in operation:
Red/Normal
When operation is normal and all air conditioners are in stoppage:
Green/Normal
When there is any air conditioner generating an error:
Yellow/Abnormal
When there is any air conditioner with communication error:
Blue/Abnormal
Change in color of Start/Stop is possible by Iconcolor Settings in System Settings.

Start All Button

Button to collectively start all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Stop All Button

Button to collectively stop all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Display Mode Selection

Select the mode among icon/list/detailed icon.

Group/Zone Start Button

Button to start operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Stop Button

Button to stop operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Set Button

Makes settings (temperature setting, temperature control mode, etc.) and display of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Prop Button

Detailed display of the group/zone selected

Current Time Display

Shows the current date and time.

Scroll Buttons

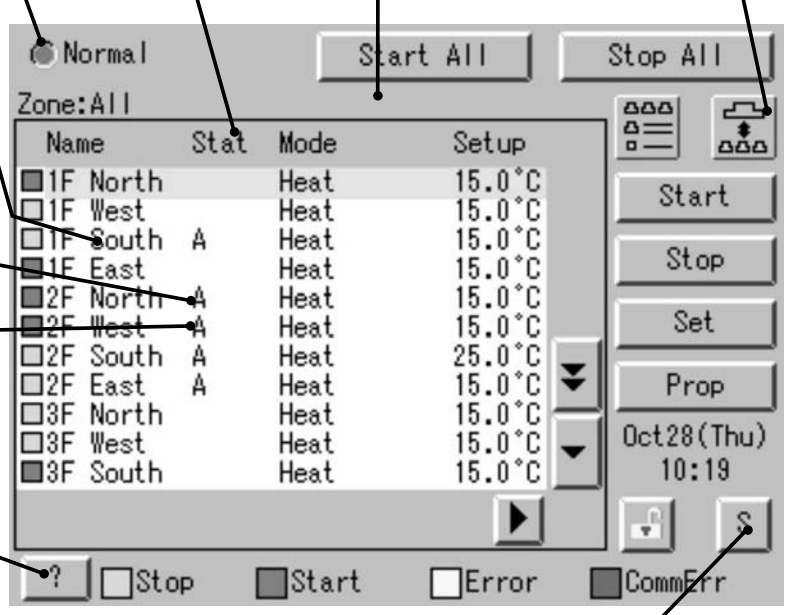
Up/Down scroll button used when monitoring zone/group which are not currently displayed.
Left/Right scroll button used when monitoring temperature and errors etc.
Which are not currently displayed.

Lock Setting/Cancel Button

Displays possibititiy of monitor operation.

EM04A055A

■ **List**



Contents of the List Currently Displayed

- When Group List is displayed "Zone: Zone Name"
- When Zone List is displayed "Zone List"

Zone/Group Currently Displayed

The name of the zone/group currently selected is highlighted in light-blue.

Display Mode Selection

Press the button and display change between Zone and Group.

System Condition Displayed Domain

Domain displaying system condition (Compulsory Stop etc.)

Zone/Group Name

Set the names in the Group Registration or Zone Registration in the System Setup Mode.

Target of Automatic Control

Displayed when there is any air conditioner with the registration of scheduled in the zone or in the group.

Filter/Element Sign

Displayed when there is any air conditioner showing a filter or element sign in the zone or the group.

Monitoring Screen Legend

Pressing the "?" button shows more detailed legend.

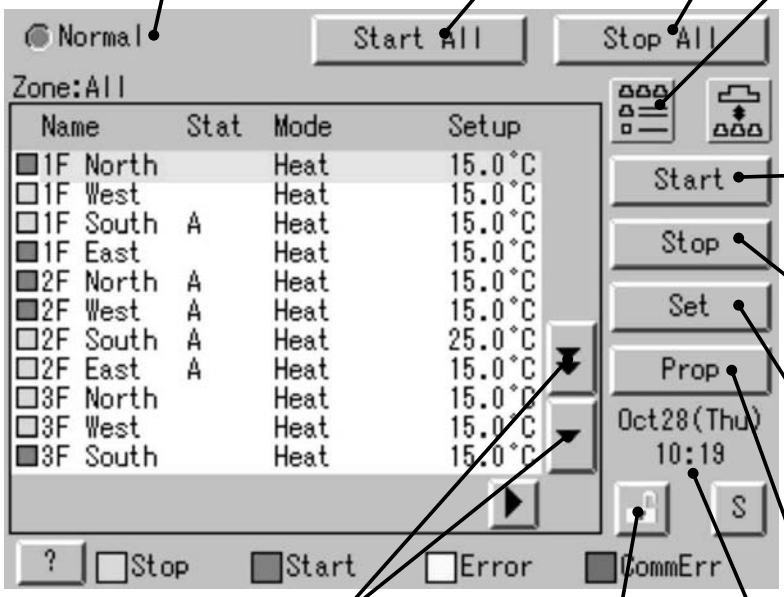
Button to Switch to the System Setup Mode

Use this button for settings including the time, group, zone and schedule.

2

Display for Collective Monitoring of Air Conditioners Connected to intelligent Touch Controller

When operation is normal and any air conditioner is in operation:
Red/Normal
When operation is normal and all air conditioners are in stoppage:
Green/Normal
When there is any air conditioner generating an error:
Yellow/Abnormal
When there is any air conditioner with communication error:
Blue/Abnormal
(Change in color of Start/Stop is possible by Iconcolor Settings in System Settings.



Start All Button

Button to collectively start all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Stop All Button

Button to collectively stop all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.

Display Mode Selection

Select the mode among icon/list/detailed icon.

Group/Zone Start Button

Button to start operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Stop Button

Button to stop operation of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Set Button

Makes settings (temperature setting, temperature control mode, etc.) and display of the group/zone selected.

Group/Zone Prop Button

Detailed display of the group/zone selected

Current Time Display

Shows the current date and time.

Scroll Buttons

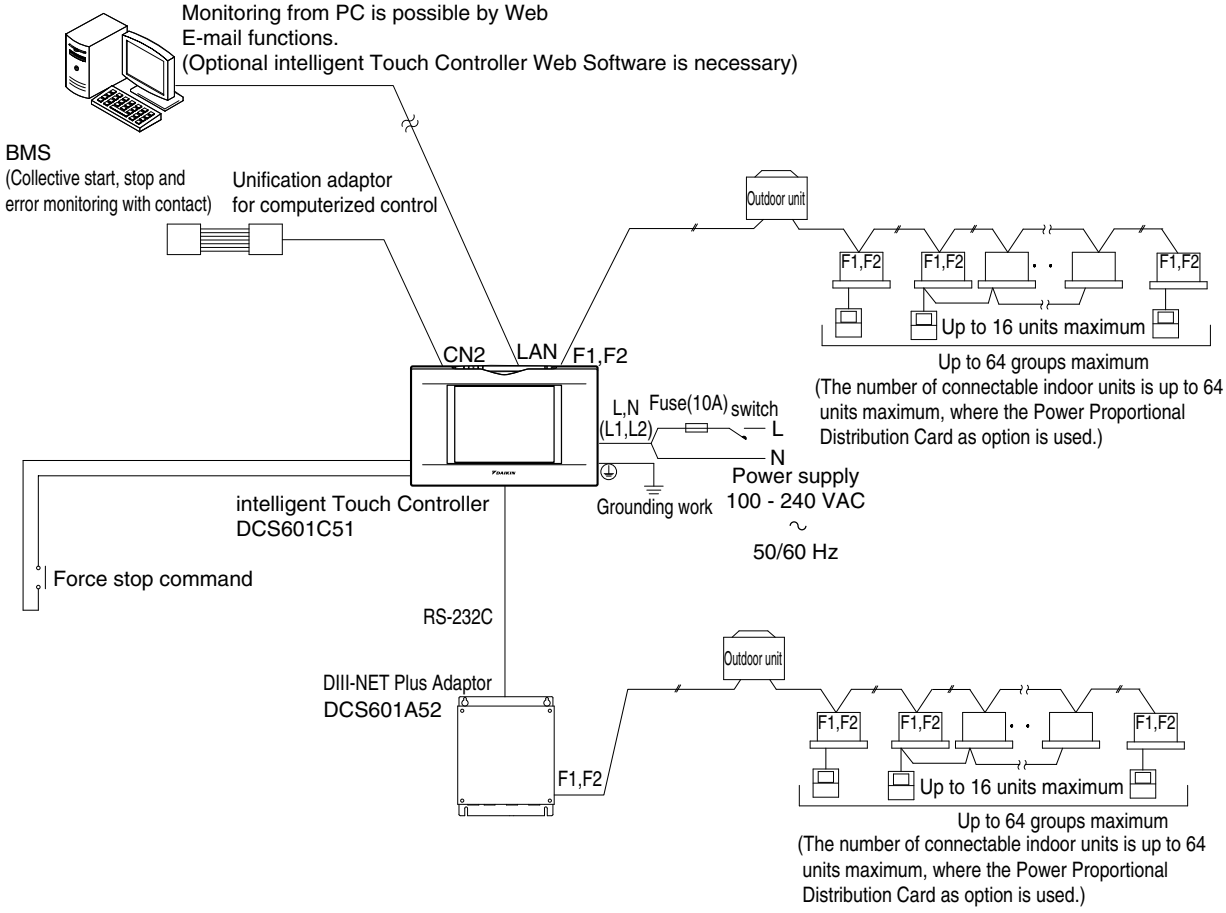
Up/Down scroll button used when monitoring zone/group which are not currently displayed.
Left/Right scroll button used when monitoring temperature and errors etc.
Which are not currently displayed.

Lock Setting/Cancel Button

Displays possibititiy of monitor operation.

EM04A055A

14.1.3 System Outline

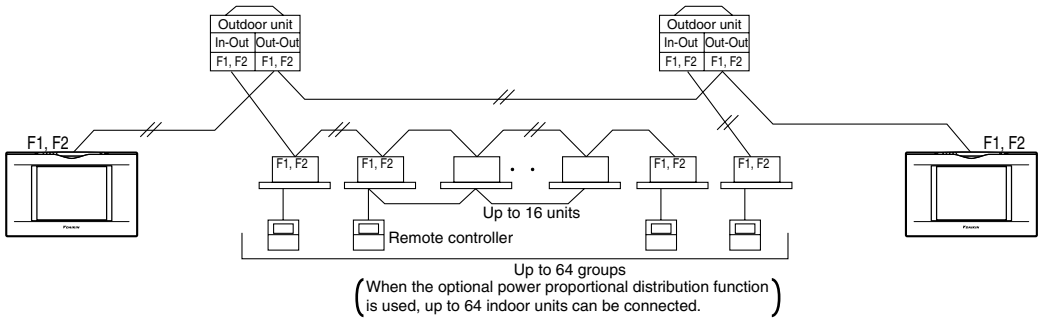


EM04A055A

Connecting Unification adaptor allows using the contact for normal and abnormal operation signal and collective start/stop with a contact. For details, contact the vendor you purchased the product from.
Also, by connecting DIII-NET Plus Adaptor, it is possible to operate and monitor the indoor units of 64 groups (intelligent Touch Controller plus DIII-NET Plus Adaptor–128 groups in total) additionally.

14.1.4 Double intelligent Touch Controllers

Using two intelligent Touch Controllers allows centralized control of indoor units from different places.



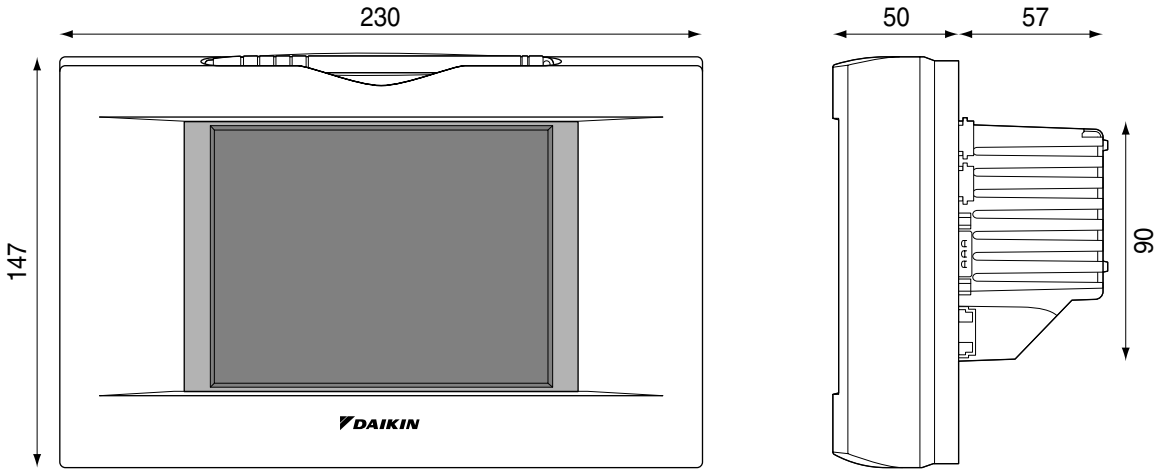
Note:
For combination and settings for double intelligent Touch controllers, be sure to consult the vendor.

14.1.5 Specification

Name		intelligent Touch Controller (DCS601C51)	DIII-NET Plus Adaptor (DCS601A52)
Power supply		Externally supplied 100 V AC-240 V AC 50/60 Hz	Externally supplied 100 V AC-240 V AC 50/60 Hz
Installation method condition for use		Use of the optional JIS 4-block wall embedded box (KJB411A)	—
Operating condition	Surrounding temperature/humidity	0˚C to 40˚C/less than 85% RH (if no condensation)	-10˚C to +40˚C/less than 90% RH
Dimensions	(W × H × D)	230 × 147 × 107 (mm)	157 × 190 × 42 (mm)
Overseas certification	Safety of Information Technology Equipment	IEC60730 (including IEC60335)	IEC60730 (including IEC60335)
	Interference (EMC)	EN55022 Class-A , EN55024	EN55022 Class-A , EN55024
LCD Panel	Size/no. of dots/no. of colors	5.7 inches / QVGA 320 × 240 / 4096 colors	—
Communication functions	DIII-NET ×1	A/C equipment communication line	A/C equipment communication line
	10BASE-T	Web option	—
Input terminals	Digital input Di ×1	Forced Shutdown	—
	Pulse input Pi ×3	—	—

14.1.6 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

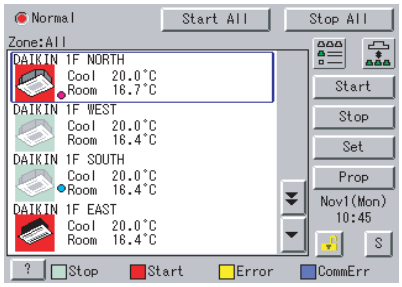
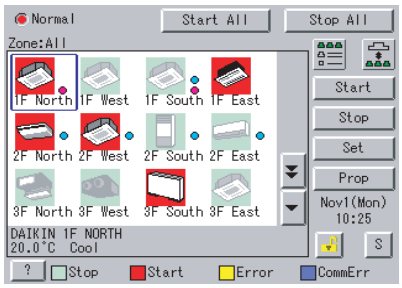


The specification and appearance of the product may be modified for improvement without prior notice.

EM04A055A

14.1.7 Functions

Centralized control device name			intelligent Touch Controller	
Product name/System name			intelligent Touch Controller main unit alone	Use with DIII-NET Plus adaptor
Model name			DCS601C51	DCS601C51+DCS601A52
Function		Details		
Wiring Limitations	No. of DIII lines (ports)	No. of F1/F2	1	2 (1+1)
	No. of controllable indoor units	No. of groups	64	128 (64+64)
		No. of units connected (Max. No. of units is 128 per DIII-NET line)	128	256
	No. of controllable zones	1 zone --- 1 group or more 1 zone --- the same setting for all of the indoor units. 1 zone is from 1 up to 64 groups	128	128
	No. of outdoor units	No. of connected units (Max. No. of 10 units per 1 DIII-NET line)	10	10×2
	Required master-slave setting when installed in multiple sites	Connectors, screens and switches	On screen: (Master/Slave)	Follows the settings of the intelligent touch controller unit
	Connector for a parent centralized setting	Determine master-slave relationship for other centralized control equipment	CN1 (Master centralized setting connector)	CN1 (Master centralized setting connector)
	Necessity of power supply	Yes / Terminal block	Yes/N-L	Yes/N-L
Operation setups	Operation		Touch panel	Operated via the intelligent touch controller touch panel
	Operation (ON)	Group	Yes	
	Stop (OFF)	Group	Yes	
	Unified ON/OFF	All connected units	Yes	
		By group/zone	Yes	
	Switching operation mode	By group/zone	Yes	
	Temperature setting	By group/zone	Yes	
	Filter sign reset	By group/zone	Yes	
	Wind direction	By group/zone	Yes	
	Fan speed	By group/zone	Yes	
	Ventilation mode	By group/zone	Yes	
	Ventilation rate	By group/zone	Yes	
	Forced OFF input	External signal: Non-voltage, normally open contact, to Main unit terminal block 0.75-1.25 mm^2 up to 150 m	Yes	Yes (Forced OFF (shut down) is input from the contact point of the intelligent touch controller main body and conducted simultaneously with shut down (forced OFF) of the A/C units connected to the intelligent touch controller unit.)
	Individual remote controller rejection/ acceptance setting	Permitted or Prohibited By group / Zone for ON/OFF, Operation mode and Temperature setting	Yes	

Centralized control device name			intelligent Touch Controller	
Product name/System name			intelligent Touch Controller main unit alone	Use with DIII-NET Plus adaptor
Model name			DCS601C51	DCS601C51+DCS601A52
Function		Details		
Monitor	Monitor	By group/zone	Yes	
		Screen display method	 Icon/Icon details (above picture) / List	
		Icon colour, etc.	 Changeable to ON (Green) and OFF (Red) using the system setting menu. During breakdowns or communication errors, a frame (highlight) as shown above is to be displayed in addition to the change in the icon colour.	
Other	Password setup	To restrict persons responsible for control operations / No. of PW	Yes/1	
		To restrict operation of monitoring screens / No. of PW	Yes/1	
	Time zone & Time setup (according to area, daylight saving, time of day)		Yes	
	Backlight setup	Auto OFF function	Yes	
	Group setup	Names and upper/lower temp. setting	Yes	
	Zone setup	Zone setting	Yes	
	Schedule setup	Weekly / By group/zone	Yes	
		Daily setting for a year (13 months) / By group/zone	Yes	
		Each day (time, minute) / By group/ zone	Yes	
		Types of days schedulable	Sun-Sat + Special day 1-10 = 17 types in total	
		No. of time settings for each day set	16	
		Time No.	8	
	Changeover setup	No. of control groups	64 groups	128 groups

Centralized control device name		intelligent Touch Controller	
Product name/System name		intelligent Touch Controller main unit alone	Use with DIII-NET Plus adaptor
Model name (1 unit)		DCS601C51	DCS601C51+DCS601A52
Function	Details		
Temperature limit setup	Prevention of excessive temperature increases/decreases in unmanned rooms	Yes / 64 groups for 1 setting, 8 settings	Yes / 128 groups for 1 setting, 8 settings
Heating optimization setup	Stops fan operation in order to prevent temperature increases during the Heating mode or Thermo OFF	Yes	
Control of other facilities	ON/OFF	Di unit, Dio Unit or general purpose adaptor is required	
Touch panel correction	When touch panel is not recognized anymore	Yes	
History display	The 10 most recent breakdowns are saved for each group/zone. The 500 most recent control entries are saved.	Yes	
Version information		Yes	

14.1.8 Function Details

- **Atm Control**
  - **Schedule Setup**
  - **Change Over Settings**
  - **Temperature Limit Settings**
  - **Heating Optimization Settings**
  - **Simple linkage Setup**

  For details, refer to the following pages.

The following table describes the items mentioned above.

<table>
<tr><th>System Setup Menu Item</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Setting Schedule Outline</td><td>This menu permits you to make settings for the scheduled operations in units of zones or groups. The scheduled operations are used to automatically start or stop an air-conditioner at the date and time (year, month, day, day of the week, hour and minute) previously set in the intelligent Touch Controller according to the operating conditions of the air-conditioner.
The following operations can be scheduled and controlled.
● Start/stop ● Remote control enabled/disabled ● Operation mode
● Temperature setting ● Ventilation mode (∗) ● Ventilation volume (∗)
∗ Note that these settings cannot be made depending on the model in use.
The following describes a procedure for setting the schedule.
● 17 kinds of dates can be registered including the weekly settings (Sunday to Saturday) and special settings (Ex1 to Ex10).
These 17 kinds of dates are registered via following Setting Calendar menu.
When registering them in setting calendar, you can register 11 kinds of dates including one weekly setting (because settings from Sunday to Saturday are used as a single setting) and 10 special settings (Ex1 to Ex10).
● Calendar settings, weekly settings and special settings can be made.
(Example: The weekly settings are made for regular use and special settings are made for summer holiday.)→These settings can be made for the coming 13 months.
● Lastly, concrete events can be registered on the respective 17 kinds of dates for which 7 weekly settings (Sunday to Saturday) and 10 special settings (Ex1 to Ex10) have been made.
(Example: Setting for starting zone 1 at 9:00 and stopping it at 17:00)
A maximum of 16 operations can be registered for each date.
● A maximum of 8 schedules can be registered when the above settings are handled as a single schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following describes how to make the settings, showing a few examples.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Setting Zone</td><td>1. [Utilization of floors]
1F : Reception Register “1F” as a zone name.
2F : Office Register “2F” as a zone name.
3F : Canteen Register “3F” as a zone name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Schedule Setting Calendar</td><td>2. [Make the weekly and special settings on the setting calendar menu for the above zones]
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Zone name / Day of the week</th><th>Zone 1F</th><th>Zone 2F</th><th>Zone 3F</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Sunday</td><td>Holiday</td><td>Holiday</td><td>Holiday</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Monday</td><td>9:30 to 18:00: Working hours</td><td>8:30 to 17:00: Working hours
12:00 to 13:00: Lunch hour
17:00 to 22:00: Overtime
22:00: Locking</td><td>9:30 to 14:30: Working hours</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Tuesday</td><td>Same as above</td><td>Same as above</td><td>Same as above</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Wednesday</td><td>9:30 to 17:00: Working hours</td><td>Same as above</td><td>Same as above</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Thursday</td><td>Same setting as for Monday</td><td>Same as above</td><td>Same as above</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Friday</td><td>Same setting as for Monday</td><td>Same as above</td><td>Same as above</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Saturday</td><td>holiday</td><td>holiday</td><td>holiday</td></tr>
<tr><td>EX1</td><td>Third Saturday in every month</td><td>Handled as a weekday for attendance</td><td>Handled as a weekday for attendance</td><td>Handled as a weekday for attendance</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">EX2</td><td>August 1 to August 20</td><td rowspan="2">holiday</td><td rowspan="2">holiday</td><td rowspan="2">holiday</td></tr>
<tr><td>December 29 to January 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>EX3</td><td>December 28</td><td>9:00 to 12:00: Working hours</td><td>9:00 to 12:00: Working hours</td><td>holiday</td></tr>
<tr><td>EX4</td><td>January 5</td><td>10:00 to 15:00: Working hours</td><td>9:00 to 12:00: Working hours
12:00 to 13:00: Lunch hour</td><td>9:30 to 14:30: Working hours</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

EM04A055B

2

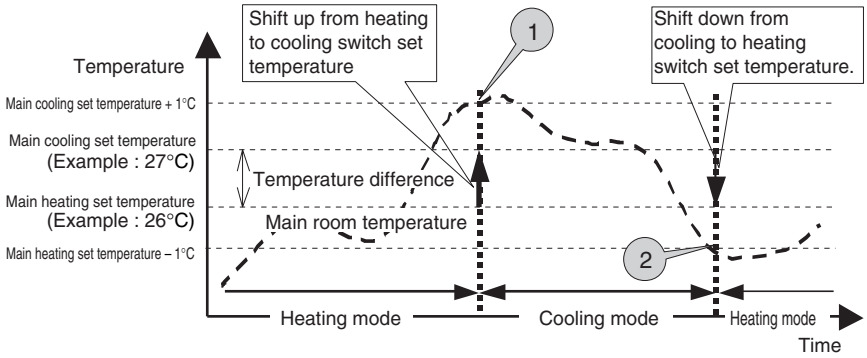
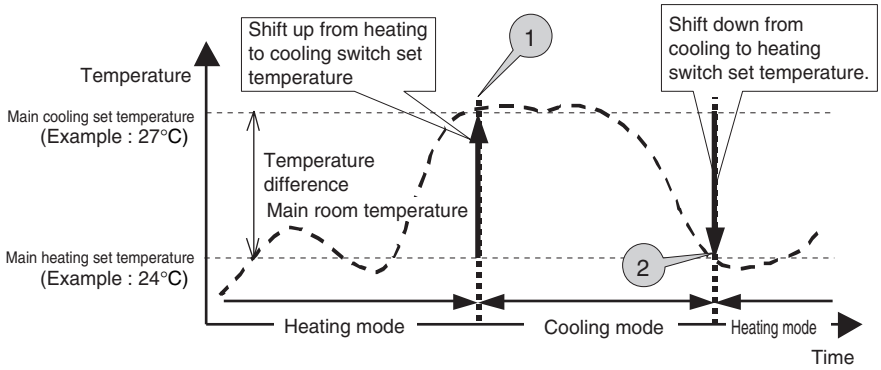
<table>
<tr><th>System Setup Menu Item</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Setting Scheduled Event</td><td>
3. [Set events for zone 2F.]
(Note) The following lists the events for reference.
Change the settings according to the actual use conditions.
Setting events for Monday to Friday
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>8:30</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>13:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>17:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Only stop operation permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>22:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Remote control operation prohibited</td></tr>
</table>
Setting events for Saturday and Sunday
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>8:30</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Remote control operation prohibited</td></tr>
</table>
Setting events for Ex1 (Third Saturday in every month)
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>8:30</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>13:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>17:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Only stop operation permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>22:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Remote control operation prohibited</td></tr>
</table>
Setting events for Ex2 (Summer holiday, etc.)
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>9:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later</td></tr>
<tr><td>17:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Remote control operation prohibited</td></tr>
</table>
Setting events for Ex3 (December 28)
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>12:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Heating</td><td>25°C</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later
Temperature setting prohibited
Operation mode prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>17:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Only stop operation permitted</td></tr>
</table>
Setting events for Ex3 (December 28)
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Target zone</th><th>Start/stop</th><th>Operation mode</th><th>Setting temperature</th><th>Remote control code</th></tr>
<tr><td>10:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Heating</td><td>25°C</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later
Temperature setting prohibited
Operation mode prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Only stop operation permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>13:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>Start</td><td>Disabled</td><td>25°C</td><td>Assign priority to key pushed later
Temperature setting prohibited
Operation mode prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>15:00</td><td>Zone 2F</td><td>stop</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Disabled</td><td>Only stop operation permitted</td></tr>
</table>
∗ The term “Disabled” means that the setting is not changed
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Change Schedule Name</td><td>4. [Change a schedule name.]
This function enables you to change the existing schedule name to an easy-to-understand schedule name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Change Special Date Name</td><td>5. [Change a special day name.]
This function enables you to change the existing special holiday name to an easy-to-understand holiday name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Enable or disable a schedule.</td><td>6. [Enable or disable a schedule.]
This function finally enables you to decide whether to enable or disable the setting made.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Schedule Functions</td><td>7. [Convenient functions for setting a schedule]</td></tr>
</table>

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Change Over Settings	This function allows the optimal room temperature to be maintained without the users having to change the operation mode by automatically switching the air conditioner's operation mode (cooling or heating) according to the room temperature for locations where the temperature difference during the day and at night is very large. < Overview of Function > This function automatically switches the air conditioner's operation mode and set temperature in units of one **(4) automatic cooling/heating switch group** according to the following 3 parameters: **(1) main set temperature, (2) main room temperature,** and the difference between the set temperatures when in cooling and in heating operation (listed hereafter as **(3) temperature difference**). [1] Control Method (How to determine the (1) Main Set Temperature and (2) Main Room Temperature) The 3 following methods exist for determining the above temperatures. **1.Fixed Air Conditioner Method** The first indoor unit (the one highest on the screen) among those registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group is designated the main indoor unit and the set temperature and room temperature of that indoor unit are designated the main set temperature and main room temperature. Note, however that if the main indoor unit is in fan operation mode, its automatic cooling / heating switch group cannot be controlled. **2.Operating Air Conditioner Selection Method** Starting with the first indoor unit (the one highest on the screen) of those registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group and working down, a search is performed to find an indoor unit which is both operating and in either cooling, heating, or automatic operation mode. The first one which satisfies both of these conditions is designated the main indoor unit and the set temperature and room temperature of that indoor unit are designated the main set temperature and main room temperature. If none is found which satisfies these conditions, the main set temperature and main room temperature are determined using the Fixed Air Conditioner Method shown above. **3.Average Method** All the indoor units which are registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group, are operating, and are either in cooling, heating, or automatic mode are found, and the averages for their set temperatures and room temperatures are calculated and used as the main set temperature and main room temperature. (Decimals are rounded up.) Note, however, that if there no air conditioners among the registered air conditioners for the averages to be calculated, the main set temperature and main room temperature are determined using the Fixed Air Conditioner Method shown above. [2] (3) Temperature Difference The temperature difference is the difference between the set temperatures when automatically switching between cooling and heating when using this control. The temperature difference is set to between 1°C and 7°C in 1°C units. (When shipped from the factory, the setting is 2°C.) [3] (4) Automatic Cooling / Heating Switch Group ● This control is performed using one automatic cooling / heating switch group as a unit. ● Up to 128 indoor unit groups can be registered in one automatic cooling / heating switch group. ● It is not possible to register the same indoor unit to multiple automatic cooling / heating switch groups. ● Up to 128 automatic cooling / heating switch groups can be registered in this unit. ● These controls can be enabled and disenabled for each individual automatic cooling / heating switch group. (These controls only work for groups set as enabled.) ● A mark indicating that the indoor unit is under automatic control will appear on the monitor screen.

EM04A055B

2

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Change Over Settings	< Control Implementation Conditions > The relationship between the main room temperature, the main set temperature, and the operation mode is described below, with examples. (Two examples are given, as the operation differs for temperature differences 2°C and below and 3°C and above.) The controls are implemented when the control conditions are satisfied, every 5 minutes from the time the power is turned on. < Implementation conditions when the temperature difference is 2°C or lower.> (The figure below is for a temperature difference of 1°C)  ①Conditions for switching from heating to cooling : Main room temperature > main set temperature + temperature difference + 1°C (Example : 28.1°C > 26°C + 1°C + 1°C) ②Conditions for switching from cooling to heating : Main room temperature < main set temperature – temperature difference – 1°C (Example : 24.9°C < 27°C – 1°C – 1°C) <Implementation conditions when the temperature difference is 3°C or higher.> (The figure below is for a temperature difference of 3°C)  ①Conditions for switching from heating to cooling : Main room temperature > main set temperature + temperature difference (Example : 27.1°C > 24°C + 3°C) ②Conditions for switching from cooling to heating : Main room temperature < main set temperature - temperature difference (Example : 23.9°C < 27°C – 3°C) * See the next page for a detailed description of the instructions to the air conditioner.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Change Over Settings	The control instruction is sent to the indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group when the control implementation conditions shown on the previous page are satisfied. The actual control instructions sent differ according to the control method setting (fixed air conditioner / operating air conditioner selection / average) and the satisfied conditions (switch from cooling to heating, etc.). The control instructions for each situation are shown below.

<Instructions sent to indoor units when control is implemented>

1.Fixed air conditioner/operating air conditioner selection methods

The control instructions are determined by the operation mode of the main indoor unit and the main set temperature. Instructions regarding the operation mode and the set temperature, shown below, are sent to all the indoor units registered in the group once all the control implementation conditions on the previous page are satisfied.

When conditions are met for switching from heating to cooling

		Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group	
		Operation mode	Set temperature
Operation mode of the main indoor unit	Heating / Automatic heating	cooling	main unit setting temperature+temperature difference
	Cooling / Automatic cooling	cooling	main unit setting temperature

When conditions are met for switching from cooling to heating

		Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group	
		Operation mode	Set temperature
Operation mode of the main indoor unit	Cooling / Automatic cooling	heating	main unit setting temperature–temperature difference
	Heating / Automatic heating	heating	main unit setting temperature

For this control, when the operation mode of the main indoor unit is automatic, whether it is automatic cooling mode or automatic heating mode is checked when judging the control conditions. Once the instructions have been determined, either a cooling or a heating instruction is sent to indoor units in automatic operation mode. (They switch from automatic to cooling or heating.)

2. Average Method

Unlike the fixed air conditioner and operating air conditioner selection methods, the set temperature is decided based on considerations of the current set temperature for each individual unit, without sending the same instruction based on the main indoor unit to all the air conditioners. When implementing the control, the following operation modes and set temperature instructions are executed.

When conditions are met for switching from heating to cooling

		Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group	
		Operation mode	Set temperature
Current indoor unit operation mode	Heating / Automatic heating	cooling	Current set temperature+temperature difference
	Cooling / Automatic cooling	No instruction	No instruction
	Other than the above	cooling	main unit setting temperature+temperature difference

When conditions are met for switching from cooling to heating

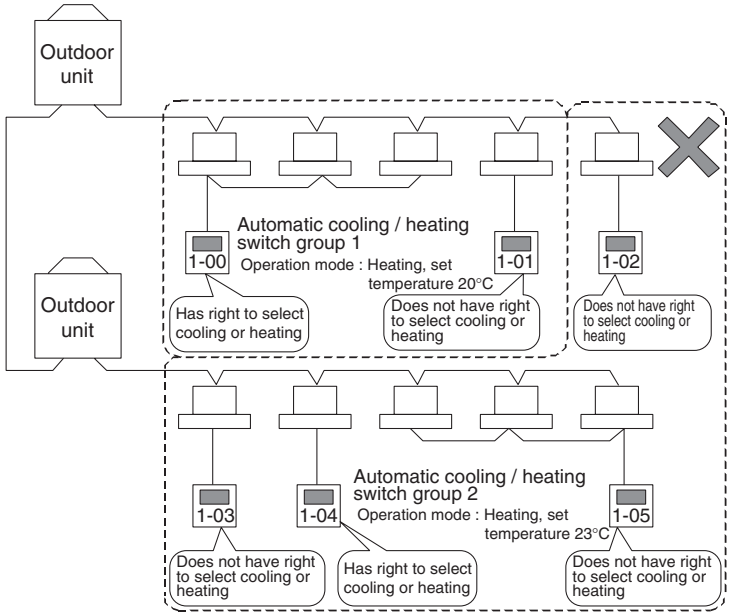
		Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group	
		Operation mode	Set temperature
Current indoor unit operation mode	Cooling / Automatic cooling	heating	Current set temperature-temperature difference
	Heating / Automatic heating	No instruction	No instruction
	Other than the above	cooling	main unit setting temperature–temperature difference

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Change Over Settings	<Precautions when using this control> 1.Do not use the set temperature restriction function in indoor units which are subject to control. If it is used, operation modes will be switched and the set temperature will be changed repeatedly, **possibly causing the air conditioners to break down.** Caution 2.The following will happen if a communication error (the icon on the screen is blue) occurs in the air conditioner being controlled. 2-1.Fixed air conditioner If the main unit experiences a communication error, the automatic cooling / heating switch group control will not happen. 2-2.Operating Air Conditioner Selection Method Remove the air conditioner experiencing the communication error from selection as the main unit, and select an air conditioner with normal communication. 2-3.Average Method Remove the air conditioner experiencing the communication error from the calculation for the average, and only use air conditioners with normal communication for calculating the average. 3.Control which matches the main unit's operation mode (Control for when the operation mode of the main unit does not represent the automatic cooling / heating switch group.) It is possible that only the operation mode for the main unit is changed when control using this function is done based on the main group unit (when the control method is fixed air conditioner or operating air conditioner). The following control is performed because it is possible that the operation mode of air conditioners other than the main unit in the group might be in violation of the purpose of control and not automatically switch if the conditions for implementing control using this function are not satisfied. [Example] Heating Mode-Matched Control When the main unit is already operating in heating mode, whether or not the conditions for implementing a switch from cooling to heating (main room temperature < main set temperature – temperature difference) depends on the state (environment) of the main unit. (If only the main unit is in heating operation, it is possible that the room temperature might not rise because of the indoor units other than the main unit which are in cooling operation, and the above control conditions might not be satisfied.) Therefore, only when control is performed based on the main group unit is the control below performed depending on the operation mode of the main group unit. Cooling Mode-Matched Control Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group Operation mode: Cooling; Set temperature: main set temperature State of main unit (control conditions) Operation mode: Cooling / Automatic cooling Temperature: Main room temperature>main set temperature Heating Mode-Matched Control Instructions to indoor units registered in the automatic cooling / heating switch group Operation mode: Heating; Set temperature: main set temperature State of main unit (control conditions) Operation mode: Heating / Automatic heating Temperature: Main room temperature<main set temperature

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Change Over Settings	4.Because this control automatically switches the operation mode, if the air conditioner is not a cooling / heating free unit, always register indoor units which have the right to select cooling or heating for the same cooling system to the same automatic cooling / heating switch group, when controlling indoor units which do not have such rights. Unexpected things may happen if control is done using the following incorrect automatic cooling / heating switch group settings.



If indoor units (address 1-02) which do not have the right to select cooling or heating for the same cooling system are not registered to the same automatic cooling / heating switch group, address 1-02 will behave in the following way.

[Actions related to operation mode]
If the room temperature of Group 1 rises, group 1 will switch to cooling as per this control and the set temperature will become 25°C (if the temperature difference is 5°C).
When this happens, the set temperature of the indoor unit at 1-02 will continue at 23°C although only the operation mode will change to cooling, i.e. in a different operation mode from the other indoor units in Group 2.
→The operation mode will be determined by Group 1.

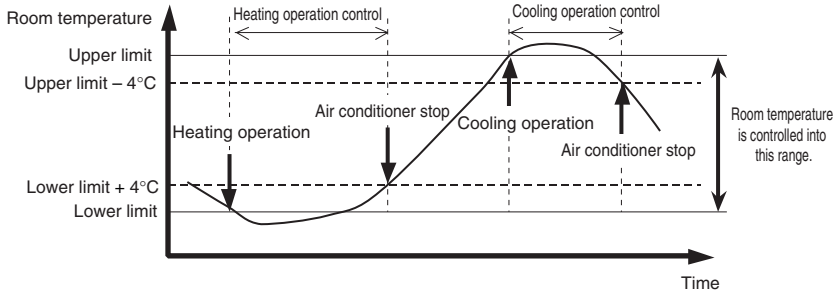
[Actions regarding set temperature]
If the room temperature of Group 2 rises, group 2 will switch to cooling as per this control and the set temperature will become 28°C (if the temperature difference is 5°C).
When this happens, the operation mode of the indoor unit at 1-02 will continue in heating and only the set temperature will change to 28°C, i.e. in a different operation mode from the other indoor units in Group 2.
→The set temperature will be determined by Group 2.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Temperature Limit Settings	This function automatically starts and stops air conditioners in order to prevent the room temperature of unmanned rooms from getting too high or too low. For example, This has the following advantages. ● It prevents overheating of or condensation from forming on equipment which needs to be temperature controlled in unmanned rooms. ● It can also help buildings and not just individual rooms to preserve heat by preventing unmanned rooms from reaching extremes of temperature at night. <Overview of Function> This function performs automatic control by monitoring the relationship between the set upper and lower limits and the room temperature (the air conditioner intake temperature) to prevent the set room temperature from exceeding those limits. This function starts and stops the air conditioners and changes the operation mode. ● **Cooling operation control (and stop control)** Cooling operation is automatically started when the room temperature rises above the set upper temperature limit. The air conditioner is stopped once the room temperature falls sufficiently far below the upper temperature limit (upper temperature limit – 4°C or more) during cooling due to this control. ● **Heating operation control (and stop control)** Heating operation is automatically started when the room temperature falls below the set lower temperature limit. The air conditioner is stopped once the room temperature rises sufficiently far above the lower temperature limit (lower temperature limit + 4°C or more) during heating due to this control. ① : Controlled air conditioners ● This controls auto-start and auto-stop for each air conditioner based on the temperature set for each room temperature limit control group. ● This control is not applicable to air conditioners which are already operating, even if they are registered to the room temperature limit control group. (It is only applicable to stopped air conditioners.) ● Up to 128 indoor groups can be registered in one room temperature limit control group. ● It is not possible to register the same indoor unit to multiple room temperature limit control groups. ● Up to 8 room temperature limit control groups can be registered in this unit. ● These controls can be enabled and disenabled for each individual room temperature limit control group. (These controls only work for groups set as enabled.) ● A mark indicating that the indoor unit is under automatic control will appear on the monitor screen. ② : Upper room temperature limit ● **Upper and lower room temperature limit** The upper and lower room temperature limits desired for automatic control. The settable range of upper and lower limits is as follows. **Upper limit** : 34°C to 50°C in 1°C units. (The default is 36°C.) **Lower limit** : 2°C to 14°C in 1°C units. (The default is 14°C.) The temperature different between the upper or lower limit and the room temperature when the air conditioner under cooling (heating) operation control using this function (to prevent hunting) is 4°C.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Temperature Limit Settings	③ : Control Implementation Conditions The relationship between room temperature, upper / lower limit, and operation mode is shown below. The controls are implemented when the control conditions are satisfied, every 5 minutes from the time the power is turned on.



This function performs stop control for cooling / heating operation and other operation controls to prevent excessive increase or decrease of the room temperature. The set values of room temperature upper / lower limit control group are used for the upper / lower limit values and other factors of this control.
This control is not performed for the group of air conditioners to which this control is set invalid. The set temperatures of the air conditioners are not changed by this control.

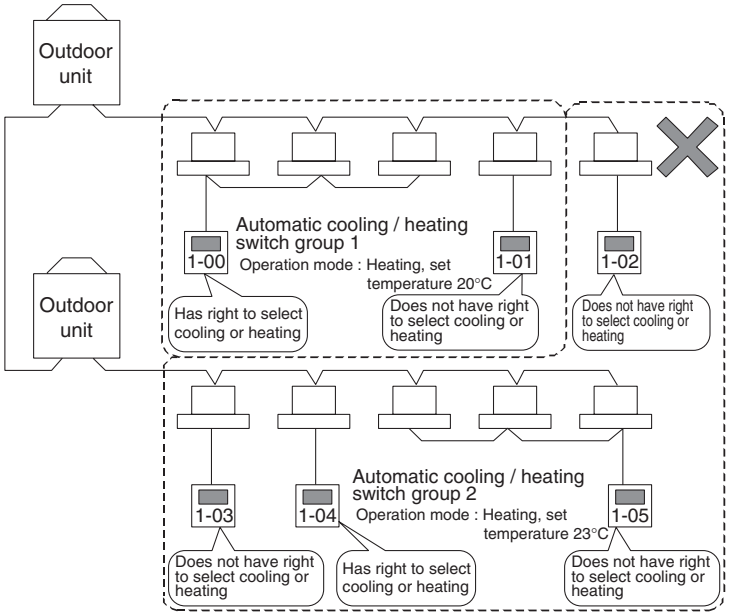
①**Start condition of cooling operation :**
Cooling operation is controlled when the room temperature is higher than the upper limit of room temperature and the unit is stopped.

②**Start condition of heating operation :**
Heating operation is controlled when the room temperature is lower than the lower limit of room temperature and the unit is stopped.

③**Stop condition :**
The air conditioners under cooling / heating control by this function stop when any of the following conditions are met.

- **During cooling operation**
"Room temperature is lower than the upper limit of room temperature – 4°C" or "Room temperature is lower than the cooling set temperature"
- **During heating operation**
"Room temperature is higher than the lower limit of room temperature + 4°C" or "Room temperature is higher than the heating set temperature"

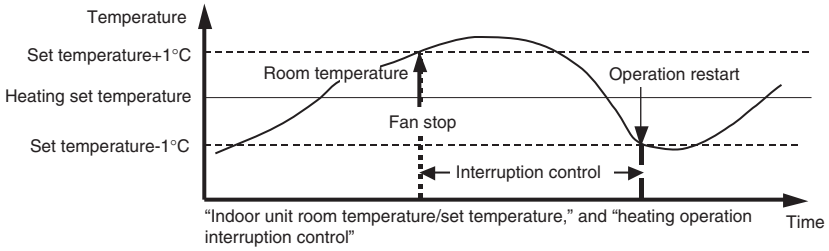
EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Temperature Limit Settings	④ : Precautions for the use of this control The operation modes are switched over automatically with this control. Therefore, if the air conditioners are not cooling / heating-free machines, and when an indoor unit without cooling / heating selection right is to be controlled, be sure to register an indoor unit with cooling / heating selection right in the same cooling system into the same room temperature upper / lower limit group. If the control is performed with a wrong setting of room temperature upper / lower limit control group as shown in the figure below, the following unexpected control will be performed.  As shown in the figure above, if an indoor unit (address 1-02) not having the cooling / heating selection right is not registered into the same room temperature upper / lower limit control group with an indoor unit having cooling / heating selection right in the same cooling system, the operation of the address 1-02 will be as follows. [Actions related to operation mode] When the room temperature of the group 1 rises, the operation mode of the group 1 is switched to cooling operation by this control, and the automatic operation continues. At this time, only the operation mode of the indoor unit 1-02 changes into cooling mode, and operates in the mode different from other indoor units. →The operation mode will be determined by Group 1.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Heating Optimization Setting	With the air conditioners made by Daikin (VRV outdoor unit or VRV indoor unit), when the thermo-switch is turned off (the compressor is off) during heating operation, the fan does not stop. (It continues to run at the minimum speed, or at the speed set in the heating mode.) Also, because a slight amount of refrigerant continues to circulate at this time, the room temperature may rise slightly by the fan operation described above. Therefore, this function starts / stops the air conditioner based on the room temperature (intake air temperature) and the set temperature during heating operation to prevent the temperature rise. <Overview of Function> ● **Operation interruption control** When the room temperature for the air conditioner in heating operation becomes higher than the set temperature + 1°C, the air conditioner is stopped. However, because the stop control (operation interruption) by this function is the optimum control for turning off of the thermo-switch during heating operation, the system regards this status as in operation, and the screen display on the unit remains "In-operation." ∗After the unit is interrupted by this function, it restarts when the specified conditions are met. Therefore the user's explicit stop command is effective. ● **Operation restart control** When the room temperature for the air conditioner under the stop control by this function (during heating operation interruption) becomes lower than the set temperature – 1°C, the air conditioner is restarted. ① : Controlled air conditioners ● This control is performed for each individual air conditioner. This function can be set to enabled / disabled for each air conditioner. ● Only the air conditioners with this function set to enabled becomes the subject for the control. ● For the indoor units under this control, a mark showing the automatic control is displayed on the monitoring screen.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Heating Optimization Setting	② : Control execution condition The relationship between room temperature, set temperature, and operation / stop status is shown in the figure below. The operation period of the control is every 5 minutes after the system power is turned on, and the operation is executed when the control conditions are met at each timing.  "Indoor unit room temperature/set temperature," and "heating operation interruption control" This function performs start / stop control based on the relationship between the set temperature and the room temperature (intake air temperature) of the air conditioner in heating operation. The control conditions are described below. **Operation interruption control in heating mode (Stop control)** When the room temperature for the air conditioner in heating operation becomes higher than the set temperature + 1°C, the air conditioner is stopped. The stoppage (operation interruption) by this control is processed as "in-operation of the air conditioner" on the monitoring screen of the unit. **Operation restart control in heating mode (start control)** When the room temperature for the air conditioner in interruption becomes lower than the set temperature – 1°C by this function, the air conditioner is restarted. **Enabled-to-disabled change over control (start control)** When the setting of this function for the air conditioner is changed from enabled to disabled during operation interruption, the operation is restarted. **Operation mode change over control (Start control)** When the operation mode of the air conditioner in interruption is changed by this function, the air conditioner is restarted. ③ : Precautions for the use of this control 1.The stoppage (operation interruption) by this control is processed as "in-operation of the air conditioner" on the monitoring screen of the unit. As a result, this status is indicated as "Stop" on the remote controller of the air conditioner, and as "In-operation" on the monitoring screen of the unit. 2.As explained above (item 1), because the display on the remote controller during operation interruption by this control is "Stop," the user may not perform the stop operation even at the scheduled time of system stoppage, resulting in forget-to-stop error. Therefore, it is recommended that a measure against forget-to-stop error be executed by the scheduled control of the unit or other appropriate methods.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description
Simple Interlock Setting	This menu is used to make settings of an interlock control function in units of zones or groups. The simple interlock control is a function to automatically control groups or zones corresponding to a change of the operation states or the stop states in any groups. The settings of the simple interlock control are described below. • The simple interlock can store a maximum number of 128 program registrations. For each program, the following settings can be made : • **Interlock input point** The target groups you want to monitor as the interlock input points (e.g. air-conditioning unit, Di unit*, Dio unit*, Heat Reclaim Ventilator) are registered. * : Monitoring is performed for the input states at the operation / stop connection point. In one program, the maximum number of 128 groups can be registered. • **Interlock output** "Select conditions of interlock input points", "Registration of control targets", and "Settings of control details" are performed. • "Select condition of interlock input points" The interlock control function is initiated when the groups specified as the interlock input points indicate the operation states described below. Select from (1)-(5) to specify the condition. (The control function is actually initiated when the state of the input point has changed.) (1) No detection : Detection of inputs is not performed. (The control function is not effective.) (2) Any one or more of the groups ON : When any one or more of the groups registered as the input points turn on, the control function is initiated. (3) All ON : When all of the registered groups as the input points turn on, the control function is initiated. (4) Any one or more of the groups OFF : When any one or more of the groups registered as the input points turn off to stop, the control function is initiated. (5) All OFF : When all of the registered groups as the input points turn off to stop, the control function is initiated. ***1 Selecting "Any one or more of the groups ON (or OFF)" while some interlock input points are already ON (or OFF) will not initiate anew the interlock control function even when another interlock input point turns ON (or OFF). (Once the selected condition has become invalid and then, when the selected condition is satisfied again, the function can be initiated.)** ***2 When a communication error occurs in any of the interlock input points, the condition will be checked only for the interlock input points in the normal communication state.** • "Registration of control targets" A single group or zone, which is to be controlled when the interlock condition is met, is registered. ∗ **If the interlock condition has been met during a communication error in the control target, the interlock control function will not be initiated even when the communication error is cleared.** • "Settings of control details" Details of the control operations for the target device where the interlock condition is met are defined. The available control operations are described below. Multiple operations can be set at a time. (Ex. : Start Command and Change Temperature Setting) • Start / Stop commands • Operation mode switching • Change temperature setting • Setting of permission / prohibition of hand-held remote controller operations (Start / Stop, Temperature setting, Operation mode switching) • Ventilation mode switching (∗) • Ventilation amount switching (∗) ∗ for Heat Reclaim Ventilator For one interlock program, two interlock outputs at the maximum can be specified.

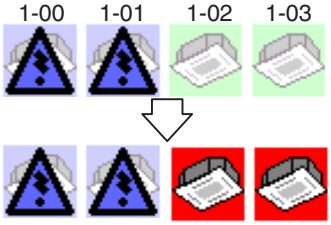
EM04A055B

2

System Setup Menu Item	Description

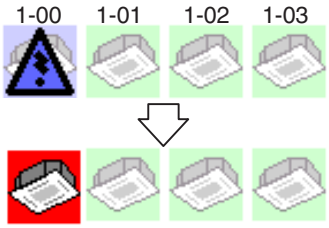
Control operations when a communication error occurs in the interlock input points

Example 1) When a communication error occurs in any of the interlock input points, the condition will be checked only for the interlock input points in the normal communication state.



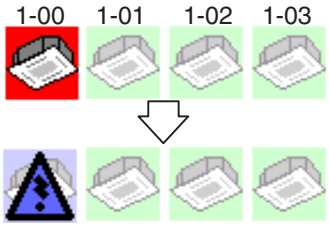
When "All ON" is selected, the state change shown in the left figure can initiate the interlock control function.

Example 2) Even if the interlock input point recovered from the communication error meets the specified condition, the interlock control function cannot be initiated.



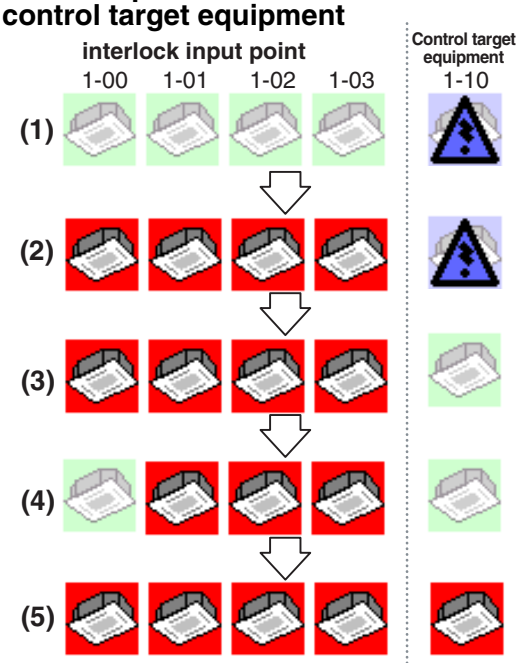
When "Any one or more of the groups ON" is selected, the state change shown in the left figure cannot initiate the interlock control function.

Example 3) When a communication error occurs in an interlock input point and, consequently, the specified condition is met, the interlock control function cannot be initiated.



Even when "All OFF" is selected, the state change shown in the left figure cannot initiate the interlock control function.

Control operations when a communication error occurs in the control target equipment



Condition of interlock input points :
"All ON" is selected.

The condition of interlock input points is not met.

Although the condition of interlock input points is met, the communication error in the control target will not allow initiating the interlock control function.

Even when the control target recovers from the communication error, the interlock control function is not initiated.

In this case, once the condition of interlock input points has become invalid and then, when the condition is satisfied again, the interlock control function can be initiated.

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description

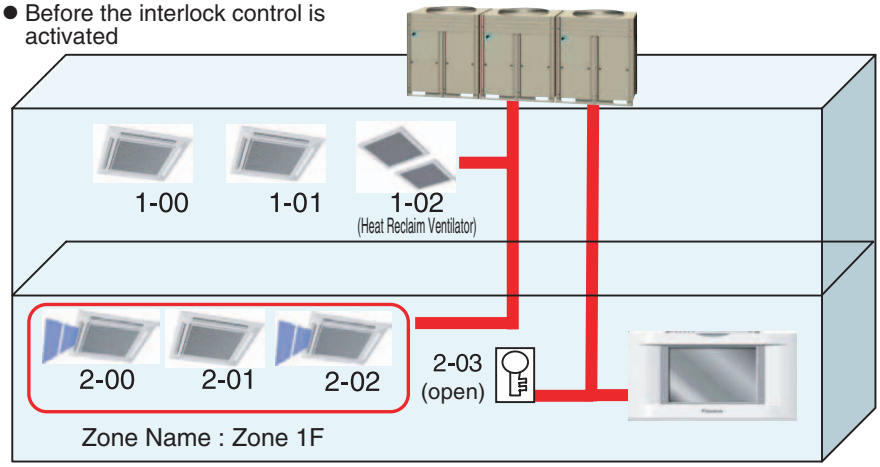
In the following section, utilization of the simple interlock control function is described while giving some examples.
Referring to the figure below, the setting examples of the simple interlock control program are provided.

[Example 1 of interlock control]
When any of the air-conditioning units on the second floor (1-00, 1-01) start operating, Heat Reclaim Ventilator (1-02) will be started. When all of the air-conditioning units (1-00, 1-01) on the second floor stop, Heat Reclaim Ventilator (1-02) will be stopped.

[Example 2 of interlock control]
When the key of the first floor (2-03)∗ is locked, the air-conditioning units (2-00 to 2-02) will be stopped and start/stop operations of the hand-held remote controller will be prohibited.

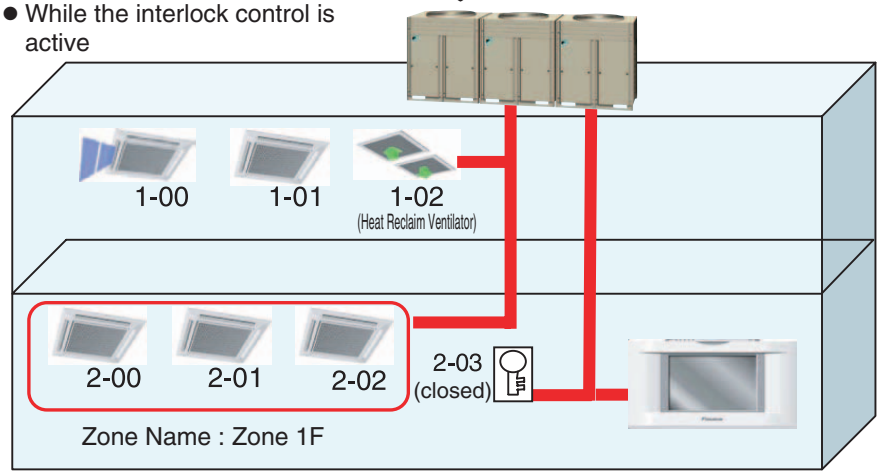
∗ : The mark shown in the figure below represents a key. In this example, locking the key to the Di unit allows a closing (ON) connection point to be connected.

● Before the interlock control is activated



Air-conditioning unit (1-00) in operation
Di unit (2-03) locked

● While the interlock control is active



Settings for performing the control operations described above

Interlock Program Number	Interlock input point	Interlock Output 1			Interlock Output 2		
		Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item	Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item
Program 1 (two interlock operations)	1-00 1-01	Anyone or more of the groups ON	1-02	Start operation	All OFF	1-02	Stop
Program 2 (one interlock operations)	2-03	All ON	Zone 1F	• Stop • hand-held remote controller • Prohibition of start/stop	No detection	–	–

EM04A055B

System Setup Menu Item	Description

• Limitations of the simple interlock function

In the simple interlock function, setting the inconsistent input/output conditions is allowed as described below.

∗ Priority of the interlock programs is determined in such a way that the lower program has a higher priority and the output 2 has a higher priority than the output 1.

Example 1) When the interlock input point and the control target are same

Interlock Program Number	Interlock input point	Interlock Output 1			Interlock Output 2		
		Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item	Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item
Program 1	1-00	Any one or more of the groups ON	1-00	Stop	No detection	–	–

Result : 1-00 cannot be initiated. (Even if it has been initiated, it should be stopped by the interlock control function.)

Example 2) When the interlock input point and the control target are same but the control items specify opposite operations

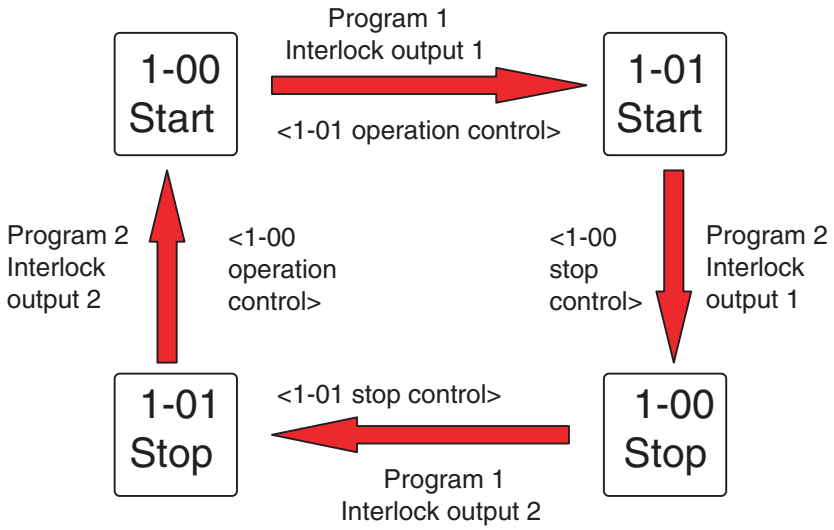
Interlock Program Number	Interlock input point	Interlock Output 1			Interlock Output 2		
		Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item	Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item
Program 1	1-00	Any one or more of the groups ON	1-01	Start operation	Any one or more of the groups OFF	1-01	Stop

Result : The interlock output 2 with a higher priority is executed. (1-01 stops.)

The settings of the input/output conditions as described in the example 3 below **will cause a failure of the air-conditioning unit; therefore never use these settings**.

Example 3) When the interlock input point and the control output fall into a loop

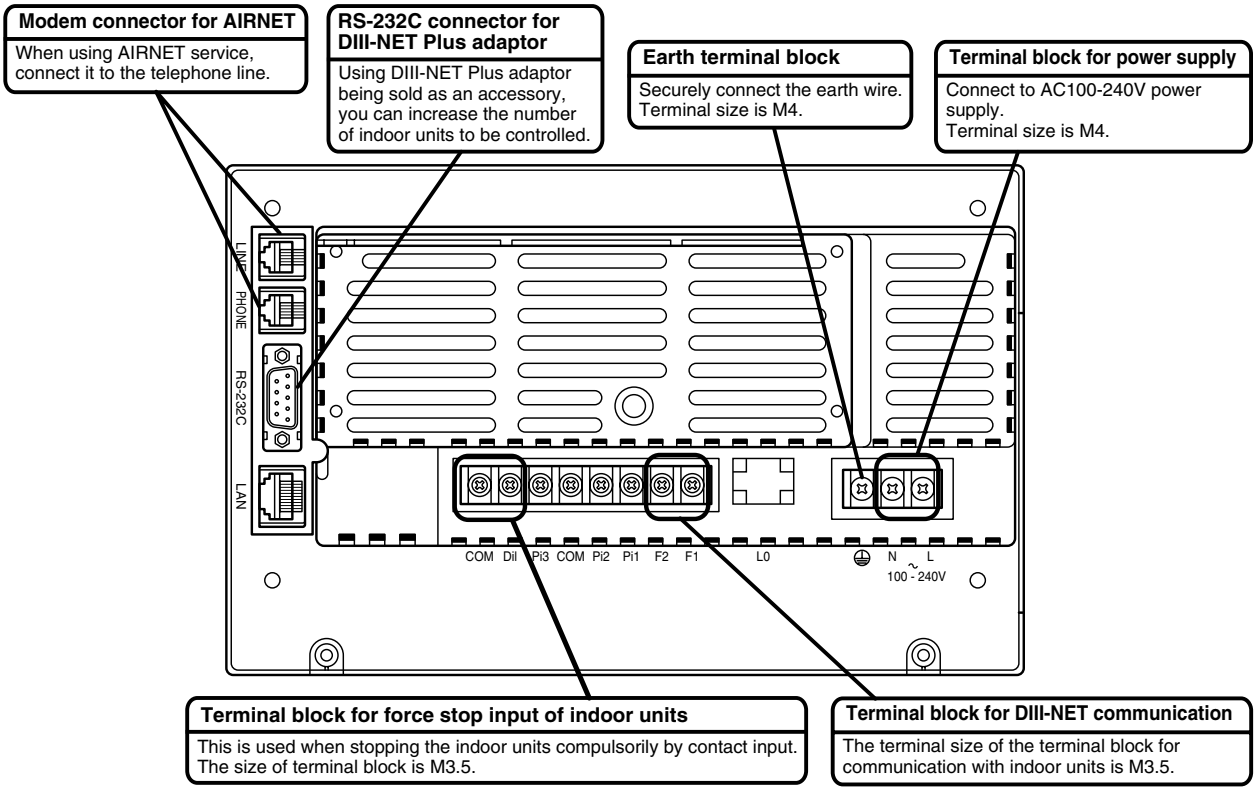
Interlock Program Number	Interlock input point	Interlock Output 1			Interlock Output 2		
		Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item	Input Condition	Control Target	Control Item
Program 1	1-00	Any one or more of the groups ON	1-01	Start operation	Any one or more of the groups OFF	1-01	Stop
Program 2	1-01	Any one or more of the groups ON	1-00	Stop	Any one or more of the groups OFF	1-00	Start operation



Result : The interlock program is repeated endlessly. In the example above, the air-conditioning units : 1-00 and 1-01 repeat start/stop operations endlessly.

EM04A055B

14.1.9 Terminals on the Back of intelligent Touch Controller



C: 3P073677-12R

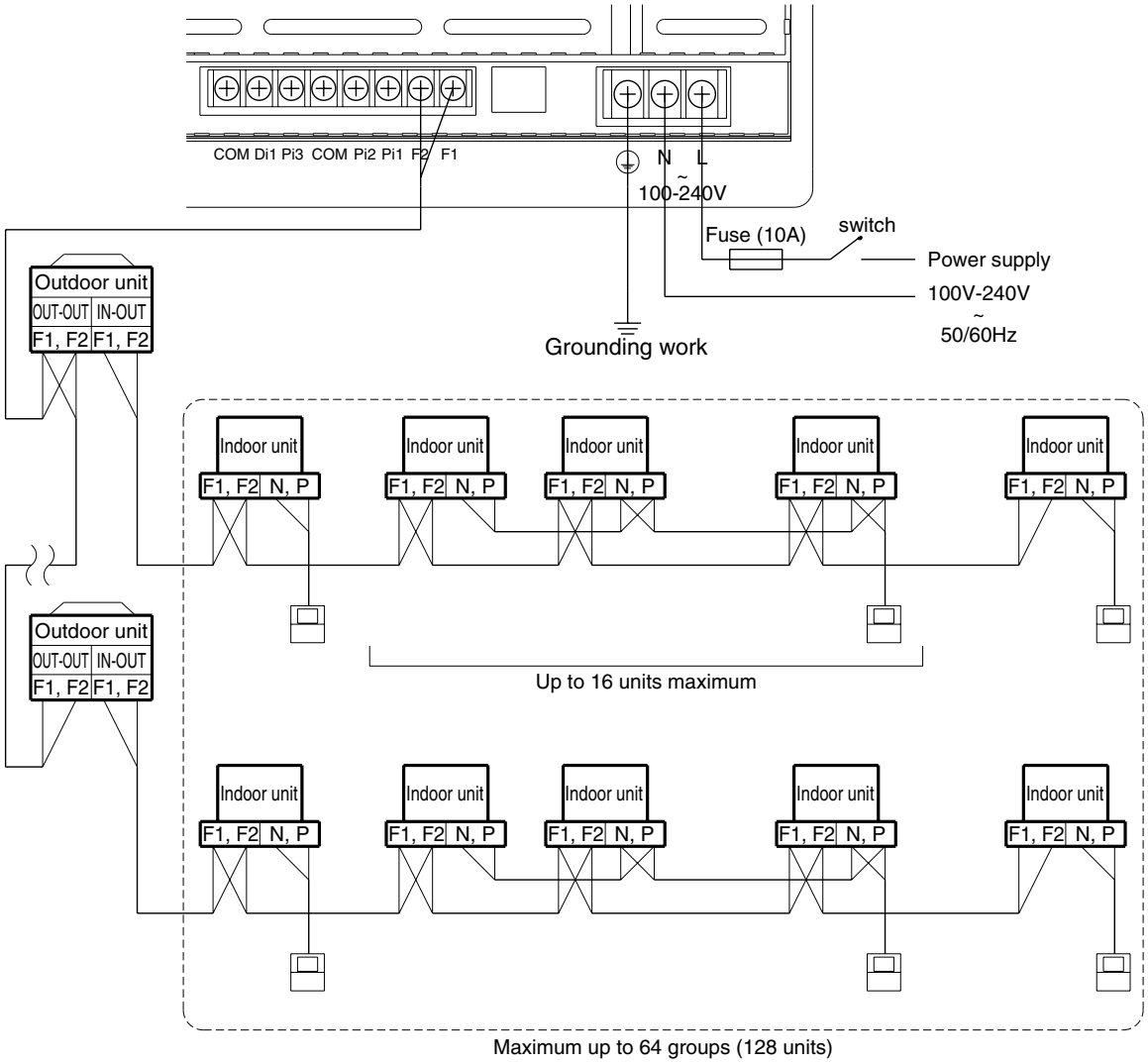
14.1.10 Points of Installation

(Do not fail to use a round crimp terminal with reinforcing sleeve for safety wiring connection to the intelligent Touch Controller.)

When wiring, cut off the power supply (using a local switch) and do not apply power until all work has been finished.

Wiring for power supply and Connecting wiring for DIII-NET communication of indoor units

In order to perform centralized control of indoor units using this controller, connect the power wiring to terminals L and N, earth wire to earth terminal ⏚ and connecting wiring for DIII-NET communication of air-conditioner (indoor unit and outdoor unit) to terminals F1 and F2 respectively as shown in the figure below.



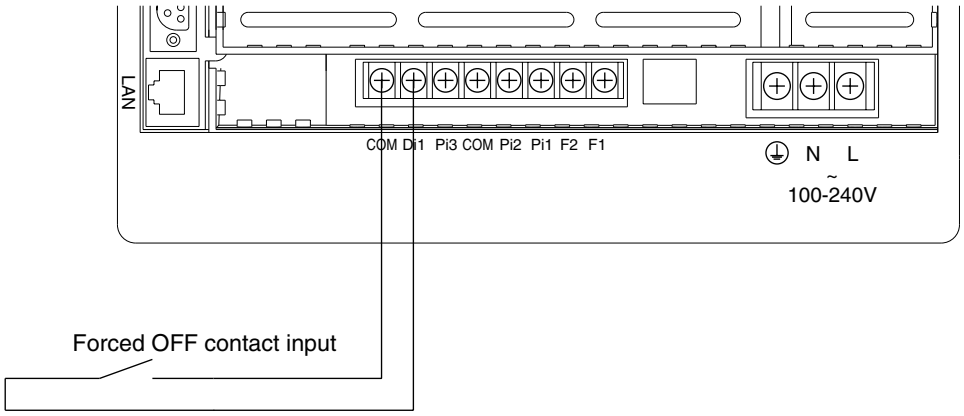
Power cable wiring	1.25mm²
Fuse	10A
Connecting wiring for DⅢ-NET communication of indoor and outdoor units	0.75 - 1.25mm² vinyl cord or cable with sheath (2 wire) ---Up to 1000m maximum (wiring length -- up to 2000m maximum) (When shield cable is used, the wiring length is available up to 1500m.)

<< CAUTION >>

- Do not fail to perform installation of grounding work. Don't connect the grounding wire to any of gas pipe, city water pipe, lightning rod, and telephone grounding wire.
- Do not turn ON the power supply (front switch) until all the works are complete.
- The connecting wiring for communication of indoor and outdoor units is a connecting wiring for the control. Do not clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- Do not connect the power cable to F1, F2 terminal blocks. Wrong connection to these terminal blocks could result in damage and burning of the centralized control equipment and of the electric parts of the indoor and outdoor units. This is very hazardous. Check each wired cable once more before turning ON the power switch.

14.1.11 Wiring for Force Stop Input

In order to stop the air-conditioner through force stop input, connect the wiring for force stop input to the terminals Di1 and COM as shown in the figure below.



Wiring for force stop input	• 0.75 - 1.25mm² vinyl cord or cable with sheath (2 wire) -- up to 150m maximum • When FORCE-STOP INPUT is kept ON, the indoor units connected thereto are unable to be operated because they are force-stopped. • Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA. • Use an instantaneous contact of 200msec or more in current feed time, where required.

<< CAUTION >>

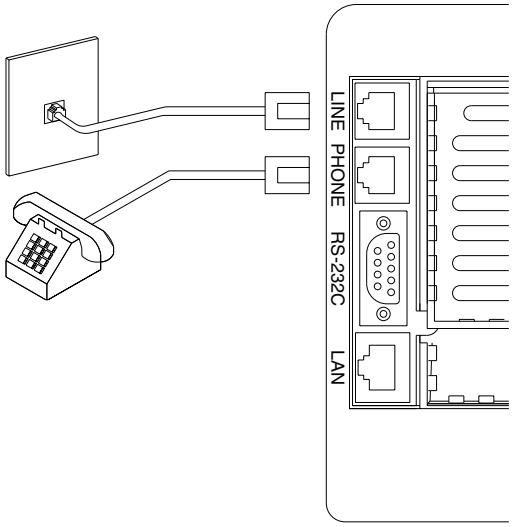
- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- Terminals COM are inter-connected. Connecting to either one is allowed, but the number of cables connectable to one terminal is limited to 2 pieces.
- Don't connect the power cable to Pi, Di, COM terminal blocks. Wrong connection to these terminal blocks could result in damage and burning of the centralized control equipment and of the electric parts of the indoor and outdoor units. This is very hazardous. Check each wired cable once more before turning ON the power switch.

14.1.12 Connection to Public Telephone Line

Connect to the telephone line in order to monitor the air-conditioner via AIRNET service.
Connect to modular cable from the public telephone line to the upper connector with a stamping of LINE, and connect the modular cable of the telephone to the lower connector with a stamping of PHONE, as shown in the figure below.

<< CAUTION >>

- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- When using AIRNET service, it is necessary to use a separate modem specified by us and enter into Maintenance Agreement with charge.

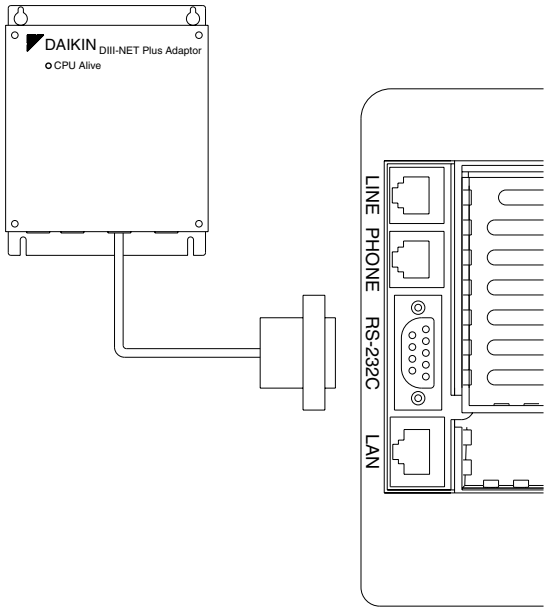


14.1.13 DIII-NET Plus Adaptor Connection

In order to increase the number of indoor units to be controlled, connect DIII-NET Plus adaptor using RS-232C cable attached to the adaptor.
For details, refer to the installation manual of DIII-NET Plus adaptor.

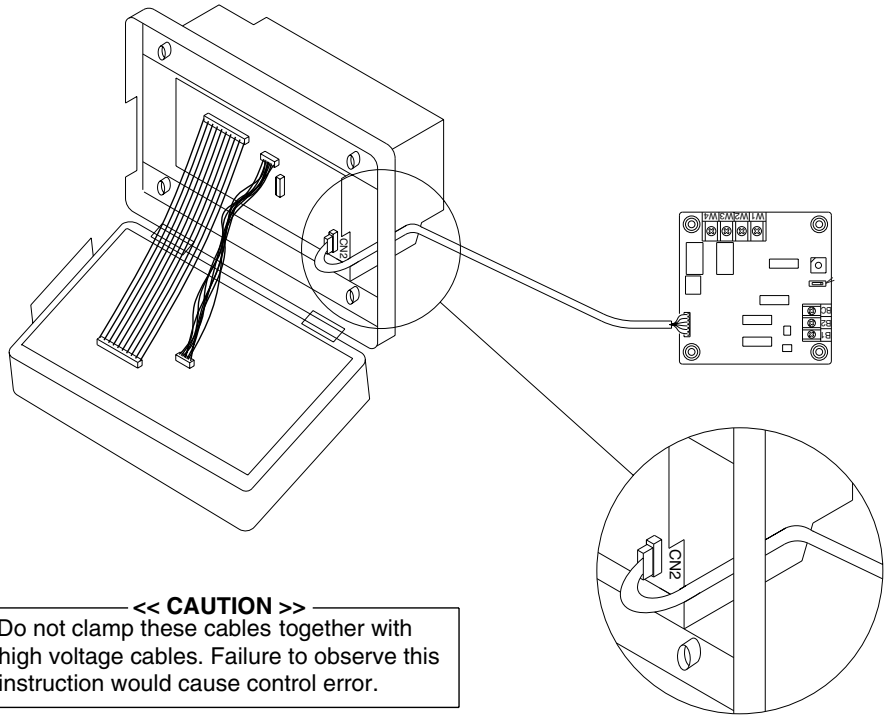
<< CAUTION >>

- Do not clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.



14.1.14 Connection for Unification Adaptor

In order to perform total start and stop/situation monitoring from BMS, etc.,
connect a Unification Adaptor sold separately.
As shown in the figure below, open the controller and connect the cable from the Unification Adaptor to CN2 connector located on the printed board on the lower case.
If you route the cable in the cable guide groove on the lower case, you can make a smart connection without any slack of the cable.

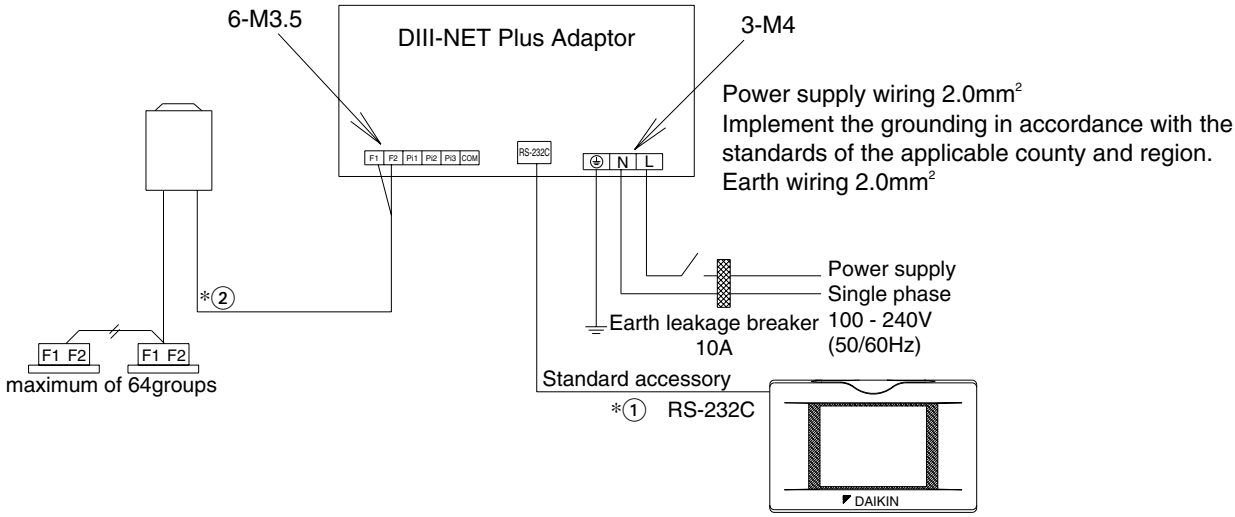


<< CAUTION >>

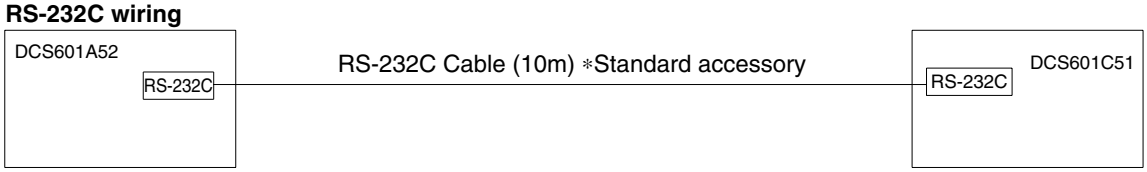
- Do not clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.

14.1.15 DIII-NET Plus Adaptor

- Use a round crimp terminal with reinforcing sleeve for safety wiring connection to this unit.

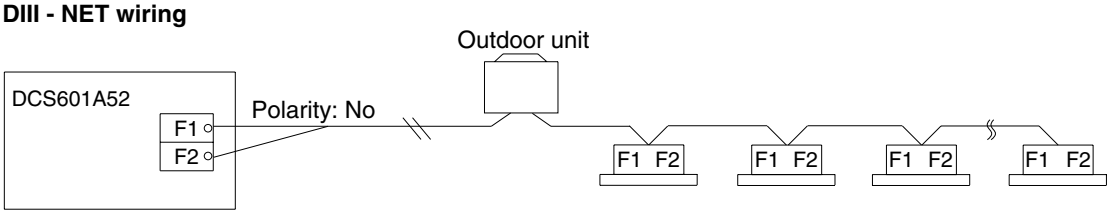


***① RS-232C wiring**



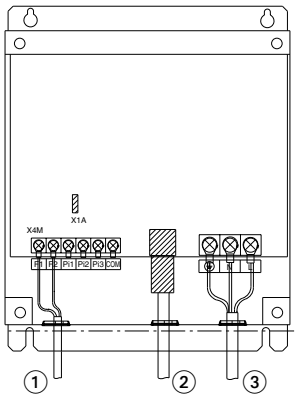
Wirings must be isolated from the power lines.

***② DIII - NET wiring**



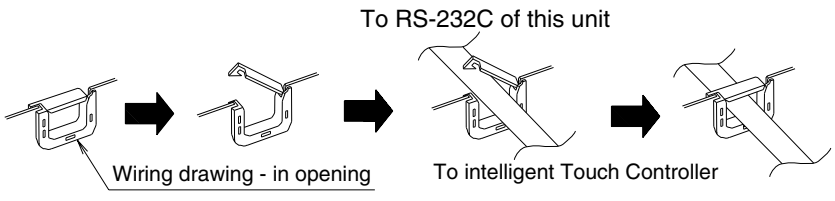
1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores.
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
3. Wire length : Max 1000m
4. Do not bind the wire for DIII-NET
5. Wirings for DIII-NET must be isolated from the power lines.
6. Terminal contact size : M3.5

- How to draw local wiring should follow the following figure.



① To terminals F1, F2 of outdoor unit
② To intelligent Touch Controller (DCS601C51)

- Please put in wiring, as shown in the following figure.

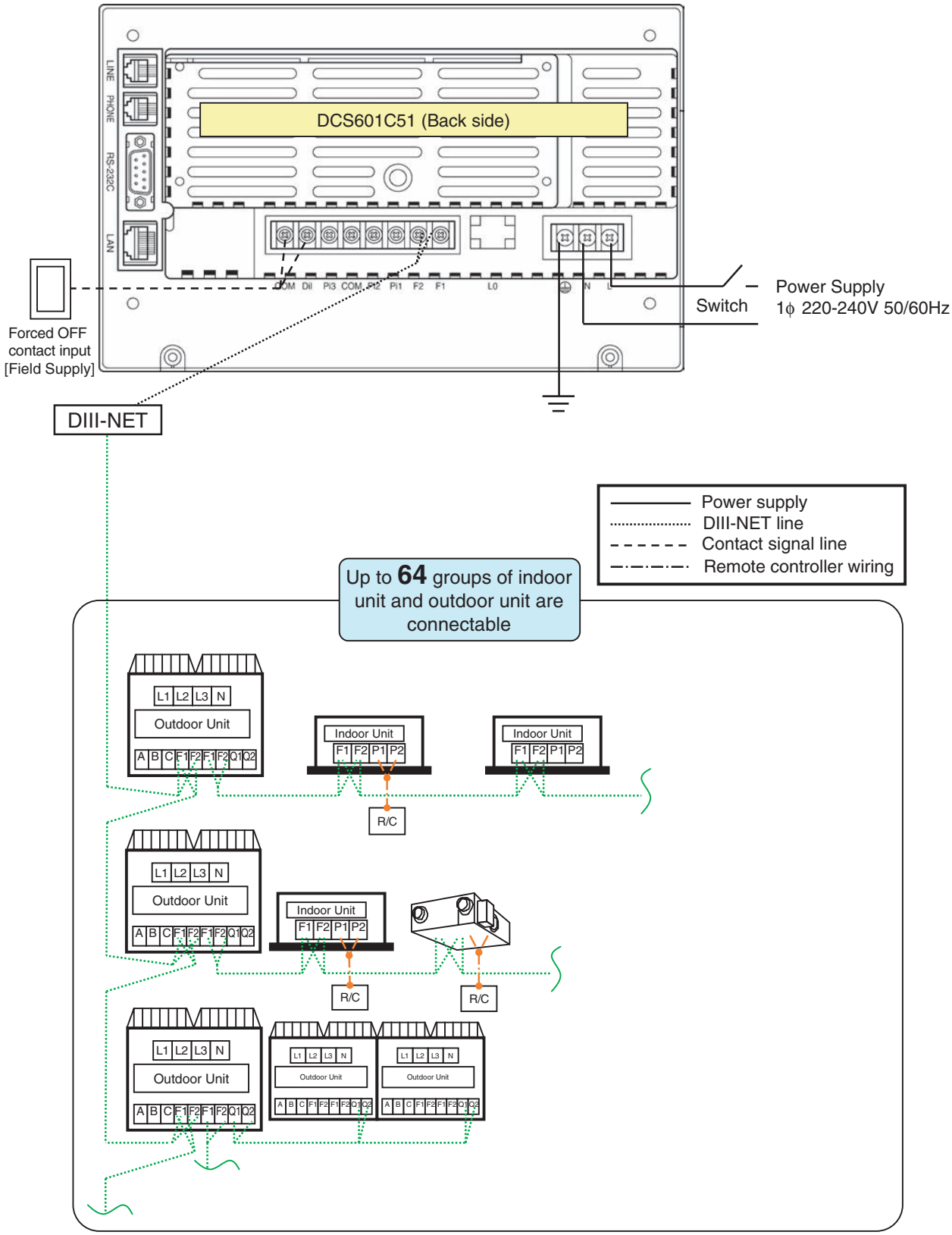


③ To 100 - 240V ~ 50/60Hz and earth

14.1.16 Wiring Example for intelligent Touch Controller <DCS601C51>

■ **intelligent Touch Controller (DCS601C51) Only**

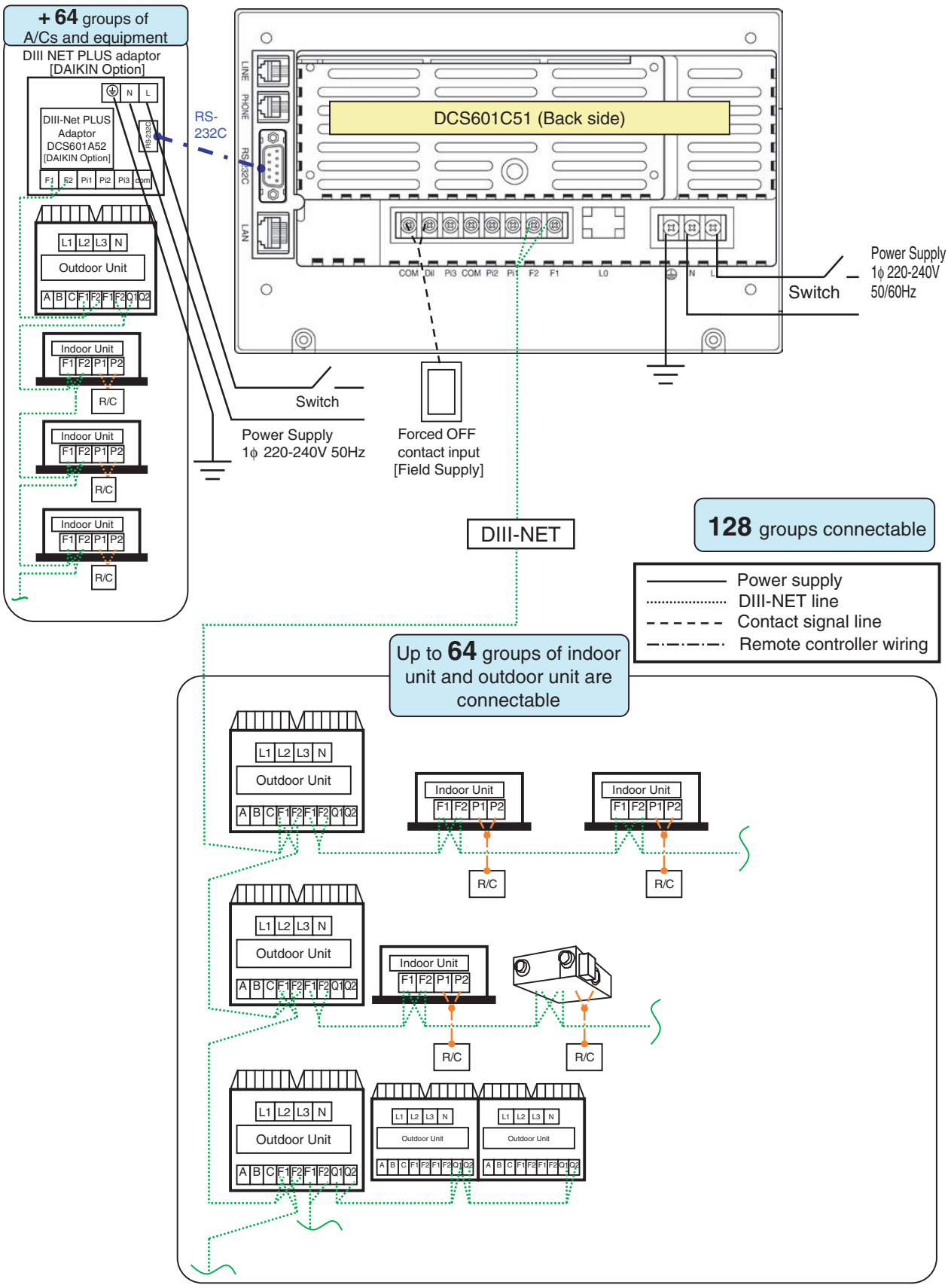
The intelligent Touch Controller can control the air conditioning associated equipment for 64 groups.



Equipment	Arrangement	Model/Spec	Remark
intelligent Touch Controller	DAIKIN	DCS601C51	Up to 64 groups can be connected

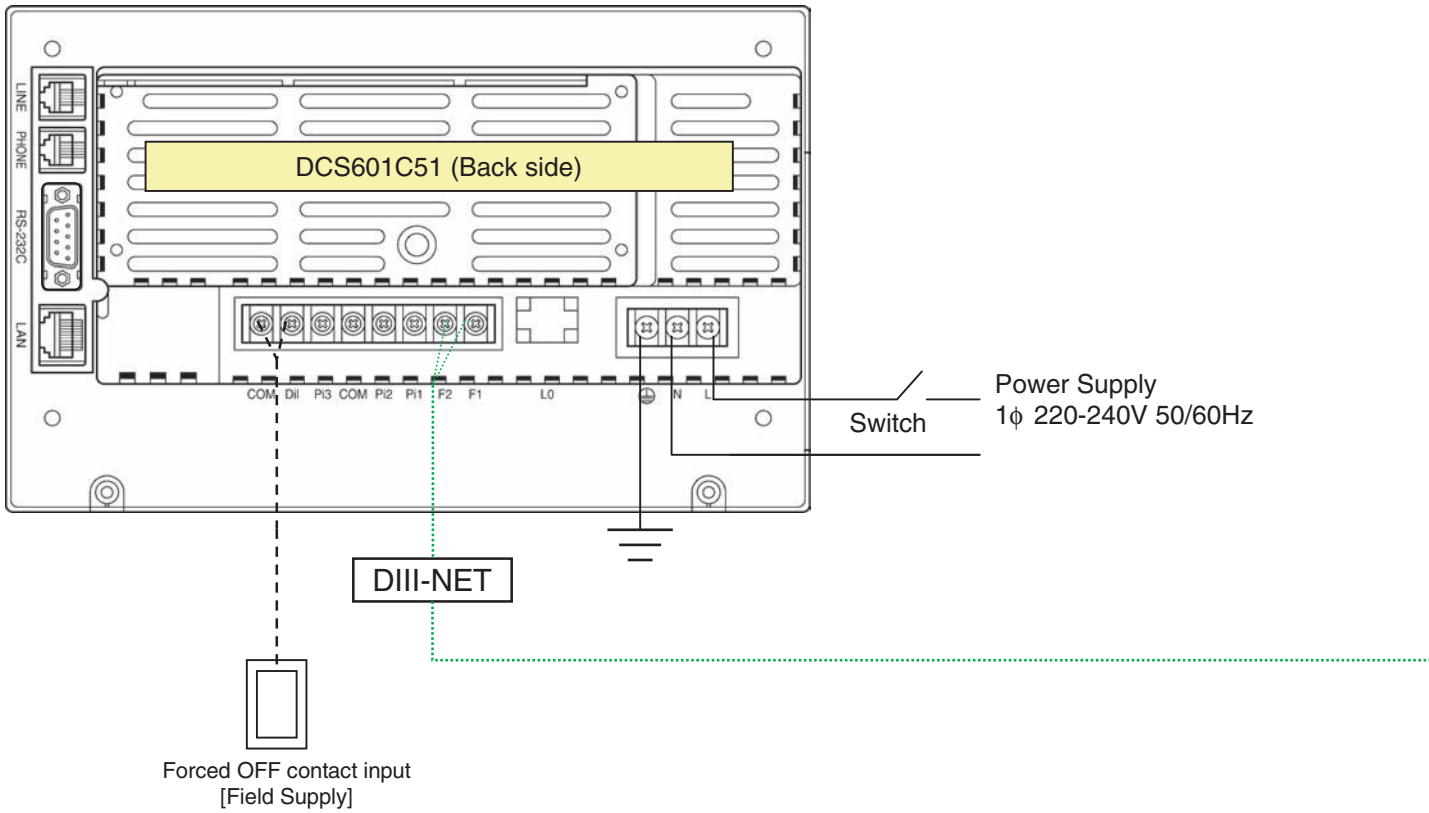
2

■ The Case of DIII-NET Plus Adaptor <DCS601A52> Added



Equipment	Arrangement	Model/Spec	Remark
intelligent Touch Controller	DAIKIN	DCS601C51	Up to 64 groups can be connected
DIII-Net PLUS Adaptor	DAIKIN	DCS601A52	+64 Groups can be connected

■ **Other Air Conditioner + Di, Dio Units**



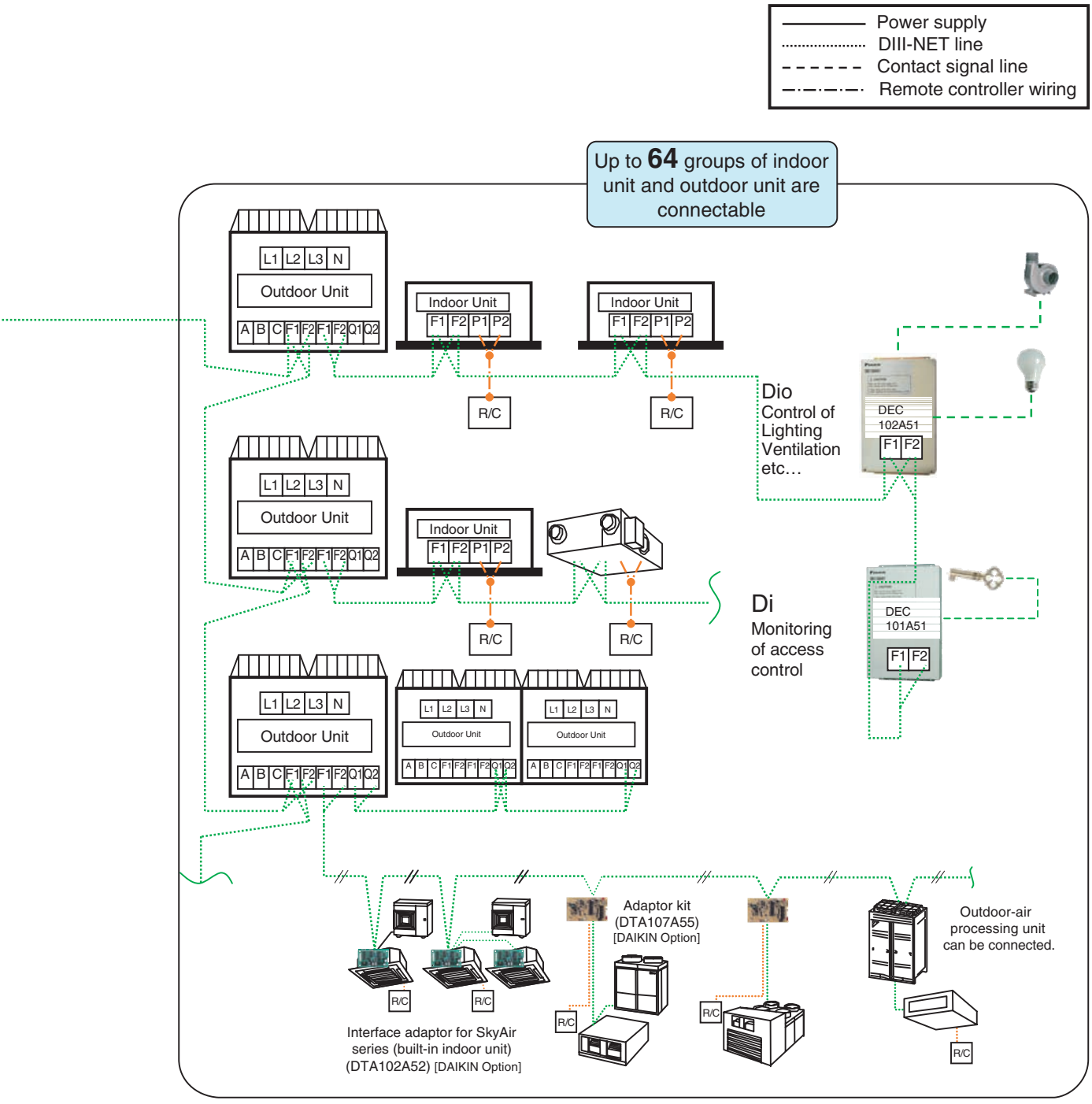
Equipment	Arrangement	Model/Spec	Remark
intelligent Touch Controller	DAIKIN	DCS601C51	Up to 64 groups can be connected
interface adaptor for SkyAir-series*	DAIKIN	DTA102A52	For SkyAir Series
Central control adaptor kit*	DAIKIN	DTA107A55	For UAT(Y)-K(A),FD-K
Dio	DAIKIN	DEC102A51	4 ports: use for connection with the equipment of the other companies
Di	DAIKIN	DEC101A51	8 ports: use for connection with the equipment of the other companies

Note:

*: Adaptors required to connect products other than those of the VRV System to the high-speed DIII-NET communication system adopted for the VRV System.

* To use any of the above optional controllers, an appropriate adaptor must be installed on the product unit to be controlled.

2

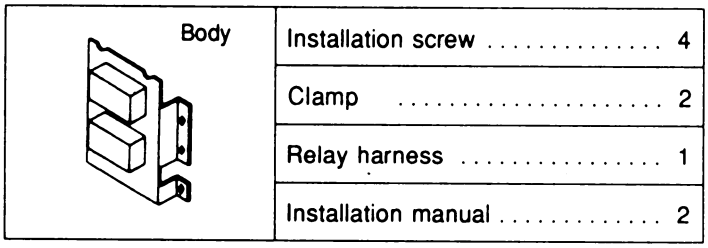

Power supply
DIII-NET line
Contact signal line
Remote controller wiring
Up to 64 groups of indoor unit and outdoor unit are connectable
L1 L2 L3 N
Outdoor Unit
A B C F1 F2 F1 F2 Q1 Q2
Indoor Unit
F1 F2 P1 P2
R/C
Dio
Control of
Lighting
Ventilation
etc…
DEC
102A51
F1 F2
Di
Monitoring
of access
control
DEC
101A51
Adaptor kit
(DTA107A55)
[DAIKIN Option]
Outdoor-air
processing unit
can be connected.
Interface adaptor for SkyAir
series (built-in indoor unit)
(DTA102A52) [DAIKIN Option]

15. Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only)

15.1 KEK26-1A

1 COMPONENTS

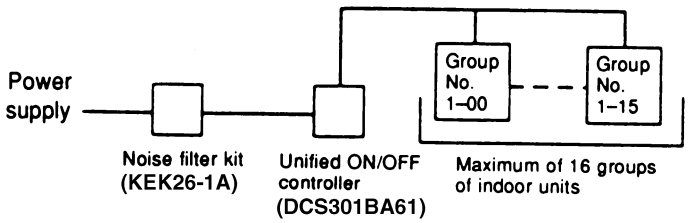
- Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.



- Store this optional accessory in the control box.
- When supplying a control box at site, prepare a control box whose dimensions are equal to or larger than the figures shown below.
  Wide x Height x Depth = 136 x 117 x 44 mm

2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

- **When connecting this optional accessory to the unified ON/OFF controller for VRV series, it is applicable to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).**



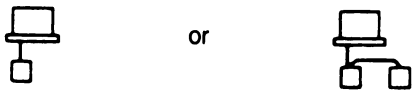
The groups of indoor units are as follows:

① One indoor unit without remote controller



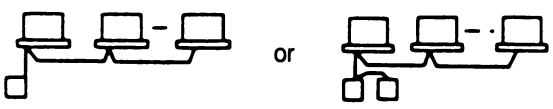
Without remote controller

② One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



One remote controller Two remote controllers

③ A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled in groups by one or two remote controllers



One remote controller
Max. 16 units

Two remote controllers
Max. 16 indoor units

C: 2PA54937C

3 ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on the site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- Fit the power supply wiring with a fuse and a switch.
- Before wiring work, turn the switch OFF and confirm that power to the equipment shuts OFF.

〈 **Wiring specification** 〉

	Type	Size
Power supply wiring	H05VV-U3G	(NOTE 1)
Transmission wiring	(NOTE 2)	0.75–1.25mm^2

NOTE) 1. The size of power supply wiring must comply with the applicable national and local codes.
2. Transmission wiring must comply with the condition as follows:
① When indoor unit is H series.
Use shield wire (2 wire).
② When indoor unit is G series.
Use sheathed wire (2 wire).

- You may also use the sheathed wire if the above condition ① is satisfied, but remember that the sheathed wire fails to comply with EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).
- When using sheathed wire, EMC conforms to Japanese standards stipulated in the Electric Appliance Regulatory act.
- The grounding of transmission line as shown in the figure 1 is not required if the sheathed wire is used.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

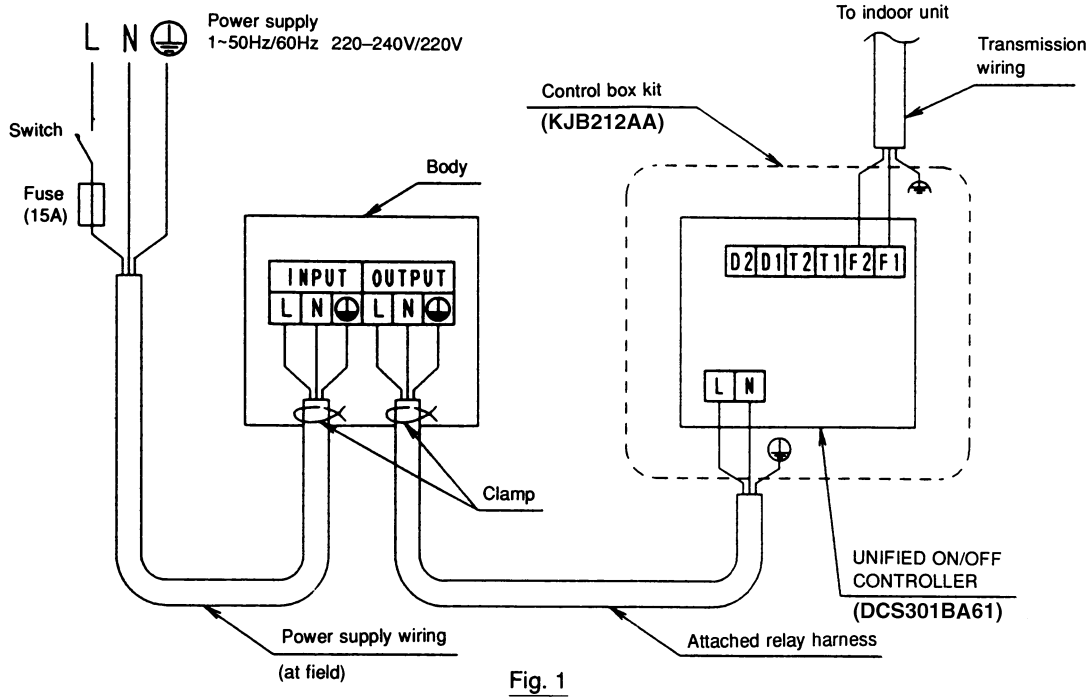


Fig. 1

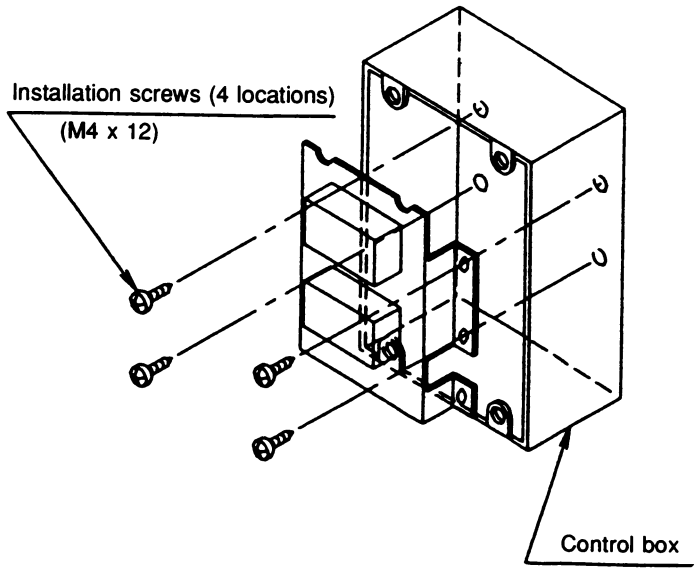
NOTE

- Cramp the field supplied wirings with the body, using the attached tie wraps.

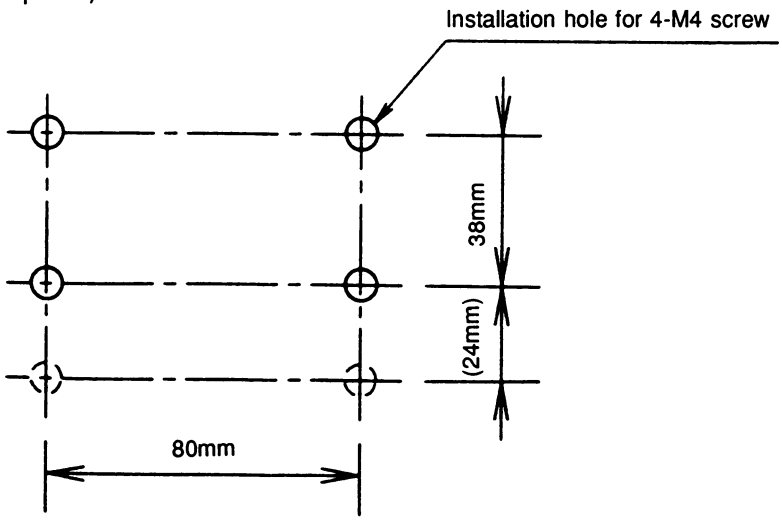
C: 2PA54937C

4 INSTALLATION

Install this optional accessory on the control box (field supplied part) with the attached installation screws.



〈 Installation hole pitch 〉



NOTE

- Lower two installation holes are reserves. Generally, use the upper 4 holes to install this optional accessory.

C: 2PA54937C

Part 3
Indoor Units

3

1. FCQ(N) — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Round Flow) 521
   - 1.1 BYCP125K-W1 — Decoration Panel.....521
   - 1.2 BYCP125K-WS — Decoration Panel 525
   - 1.3 KDBH55K160F — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet 529
   - 1.4 KDBP55H160FA / WA — Panel Spacer.....533
   - 1.5 KDDP55B160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type) 536
   - 1.6 KDDP55X160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 541
   - 1.7 KKSJ55KA160 — Chamber Connection Kit 544
   - 1.8 KDTP55K80 / 160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity 545
   - 1.9 KAFP556B80 / 160, KAFP557B80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Unit 547
   - 1.10 KAFP552B80 / 160, KAFP553B80 / 160 — Replacement High Efficiency Filter 550
   - 1.11 KDDFP55B160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber.....551
   - 1.12 KAFP551K160 — Replacement Long-life Filter 554
   - 1.13 KAFP55B160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber).....555
   - 1.14 KAFP55H160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter.....558
   - 1.15 KDJP55B80 / 160 — Branch Duct Chamber.....559
2. FFQ — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi Flow) 562
   - 2.1 BYFQ60B8W1 — Decoration Panel.....562
   - 2.2 KDBH44BA60 — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet 565
   - 2.3 KDBQ44BA60A — Panel Spacer 568
   - 2.4 KDDQ44XA60 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 571
   - 2.5 KAFQ441BA60 — Replacement Long-life Filter 573
3. FHQ — Ceiling Suspended Type.....574
   - 3.1 KAF501DA56 / 80 / 112 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter.....574
   - 3.2 KDU50N60VE / KDU50N125VE — Drain-up Kit.....575
   - 3.3 KHFP5MA35 / 63 / 160 — L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)...580
4. FAQ — Wall Mounted Type 581
   - 4.1 K-KDU572EVE (Supplying goods to order) — Drain Pump Kit.....581
5. FBQ — Ceiling Mounted Built-in / Duct Type.....591
   - 5.1 KAF372AA80 / 160, KAF373AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter.....591
   - 5.2 KAF371AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter 592
   - 5.3 KDDF37AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber.....593
   - 5.4 KAF375AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter Chamber Kit 596
   - 5.5 KTB25KA56 / 80 / 160W, KTBJ25K80 / 160T, KTBJ25K80 / 160F — Service Access Panel.....599
   - 5.6 KDAJ25K56 / 71 / 140A — Air Discharge Adaptor.....602
6. FH(Y)C — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Multi Flow).....604
   - 6.1 BYC125K-W1 / BYC125K-W2 — Decoration Panel.....604
   - 6.2 BYC125K-W1S — Decoration Panel.....607
   - 6.3 KDBH55D160W — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet 610
   - 6.4 KDD55DA160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type).....613
   - 6.5 KDDJ55XA160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 617

6.6 KAF556DA80 / 160, KAF557DA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)....620
6.7 KDDF55DA160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....623
6.8 KAF551KA160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....626
6.9 KAF55DA160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)....627
6.10 KAF55KA160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter....630
6.11 KDJ55K80 / KDJ55K160— Branch Duct Chamber....631
7. FH(Y) — Ceiling Suspended Type....633
7.1 KDU50B50 / 71 / 125VE — Drain Pump Kit....633
7.2 KHFJ5F50 / 60 / 80 / 160 — L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)....634
8. FUY — Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type....635
8.1 KDBT49FA80 / 140 — Decoration Panel for Air Discharge....635
8.2 KDBH49FA80 / 140 — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet....636
8.3 KDGJ49FA80 / 140 — Vertical Flap Kit....638
8.4 KAF495FA140 — Replacement Long-life Filter....640
8.5 KHFJ49F80 / 140 — L Connection Piping Kit....641
9. FH(Y)K — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type....642
9.1 BYK45 / 71FJW1 — Decoration Panel....642
9.2 KPBJ52F56 / 80W — Panel Spacer....646
9.3 KDBJ52F56 / 80W — Air Discharge Blind Panel....651
9.4 KAFJ521F56 / 80 — Replacement Long-life Filter....658
9.5 K-HV7 / 9AW — Discharge Grille....659
9.6 KFDJ52FA56 / 80 — Flexible Duct with Shutter....660
10. FV(Y) — Floor Standing Type....668
10.1 KAFJ95L160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....668
11. FH(Y)B — Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type....669
11.1 BYBS45 / 71 / 125DJW1 — Decoration Panel....669
11.2 KAF252LA56 / 80 / 160, KAF253LA56 / 80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter....673
11.3 KAFJ251K56 / 80 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter....674
11.4 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160D — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction....675
11.5 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160B — Filter Chamber for Rear Suction....676
11.6 KSA-25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)....680
11.7 K-DGC4 / 5 / 7 / 9D — Discharge Chamber....681
11.8 K-DG4 / 5 / 7 / 9DW — Discharge Grille....686
11.9 K-FDS151 / 152 / 153 / 154 / 155 / 156D, K-FDS201 / 202 / 203 / 204 / 205 / 206D — Flexible Duct....689
11.10 KBBJ25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Screening Door....690
11.11 K-DDV20B15 — Branch Chamber....691
11.12 KDJ2507K56 / 80 / 160 — Air Suction Flange....693
12. FDBG — Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type....694
12.1 KDGF19A45 / 71 — Decoration Panel....694
12.2 KKD19A1 — Drain Pan Cover....694

1. FCQ(N) — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Round Flow)

1.1 BYCP125K-W1 — Decoration Panel

BYCP125K-W1	Decoration Panel	Installation manual

3

CONTENTS

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION 1
2. PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL 1
3. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY.....2
4. INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE AND SERVICE COVER 4

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1. PRECAUTIONS
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

2. ACCESSORIES
- Installation manual.

3. NOTE TO INSTALLER
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

〈〈For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase optional blocking pad kit.〉〉

HANDLING OF DECORATION PANELS
- Never place the panel facing down nor lean it against a wall nor leave it on a projecting object.
- Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap. (The swing flap may malfunction)

(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.

1 Press the lever on the suction grille and lift the lever side. **(Refer to Fig. 1)**

2 Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees. **(Refer to Fig. 2)**

3 Remove the transporting cardboard (in 4 locations) from the main unit. **(Refer to Fig. 3)**

4 Remove the transporting tape (in 4 locations) on the back of the suction grille. **(Refer to Fig. 4)**

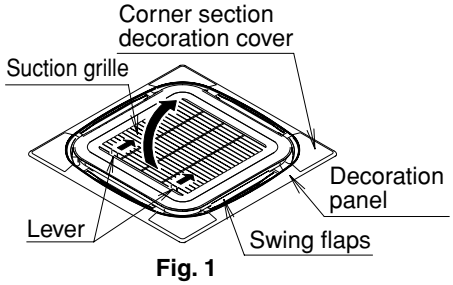


Fig. 1

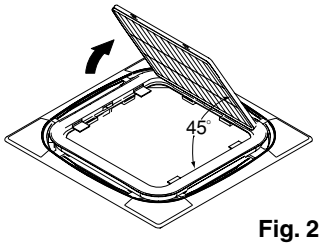


Fig. 2

3PA64319-13Q

(2) Remove the corner section decoration cover.
- Lift the four corner decoration covers in the direction of the arrow and remove. **(Refer to Fig. 5)**

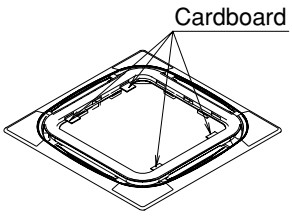


Fig. 3

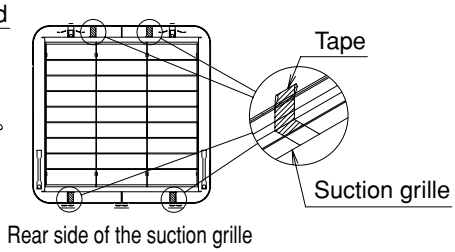


Fig. 4

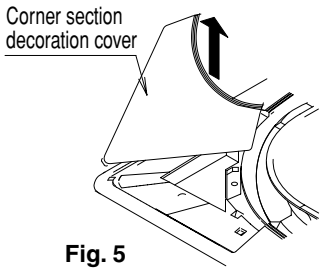


Fig. 5

3. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

⟨⟨Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit. ⟩⟩

(1) Match the “PIPING SIDE” and “DRAIN SIDE” displays on the decoration panel with the position of the piping section and drain section on the indoor unit.

(2) Install the decoration panel

1 Temporarily install the decoration panel to the indoor unit by hanging the temporary latch of the decoration panel to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 locations)

2 Hook the four mounting brackets on the corner sections of the decoration panels onto the hooks around the main indoor unit body.
(Make sure at this time that the swing motor lead wire does not get caught between the decoration panel and the main unit.)

3 Screw all 4 hexagon head screws located right beneath the latches in approximately 5 mm. (Panel will rise)

4 Adjust the decoration panel by turning it to the arrowed direction in Fig. 6 so that the ceiling opening is completely covered.

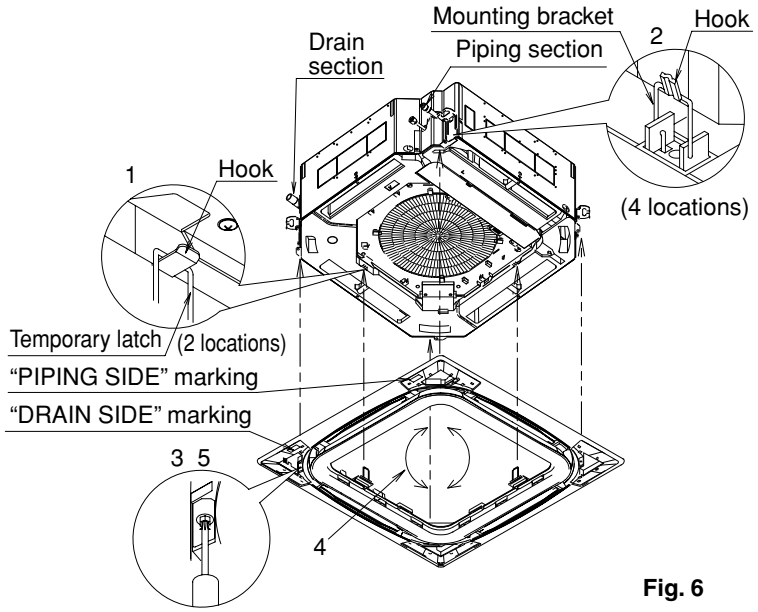
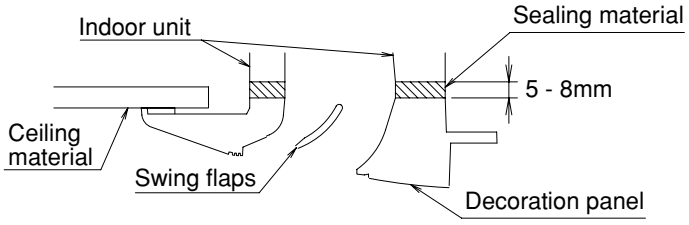


Fig. 6

5 Tighten the screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit body reduces to 5-8 mm.



[PRECAUTIONS]

- Improper screwing of the screws may cause the troubles shown in Fig. 7 Screw properly.

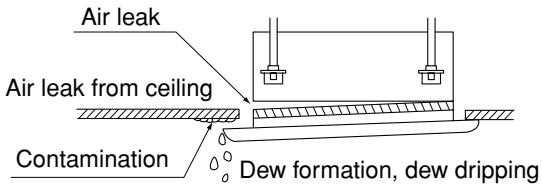


Fig. 7

- If gap is still left between the ceiling and the decoration panel after screwing the screws, readjust the indoor unit body height. **(Refer to Fig. 8)**

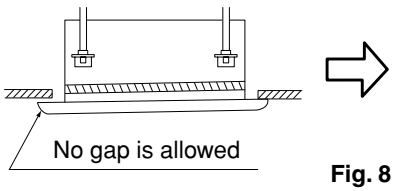
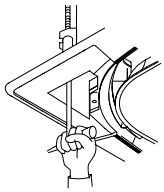


Fig. 8

Adjustment of the indoor unit body height from the holes in the corner of the decoration panel is possible if the indoor unit is kept leveled and the drain piping, etc. is unaffected.



(3) Wiring of the decoration panel **(Refer to Fig. 9)**

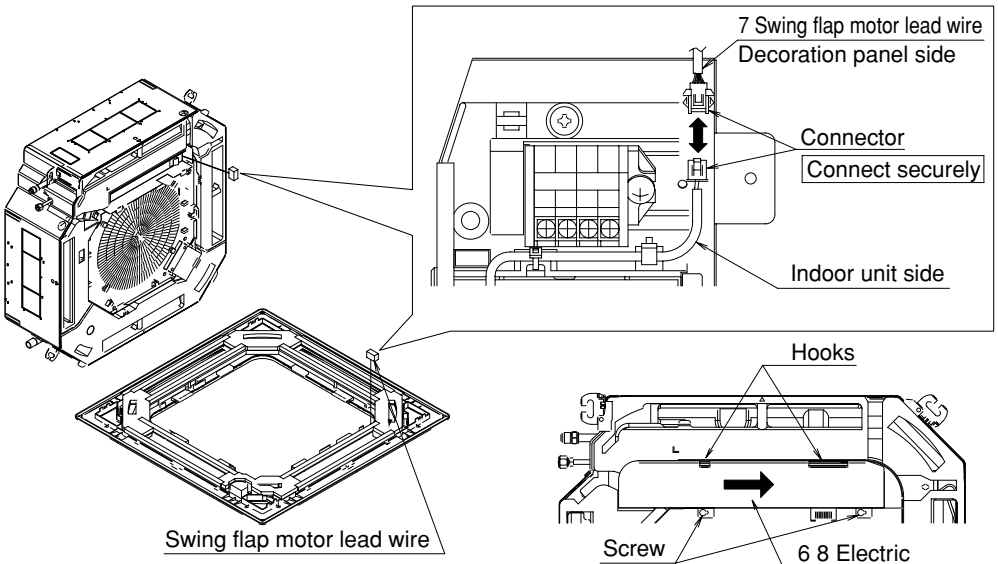
6 Remove the electric components box lid.

7 Connect the connectors for swing flap motor lead wire installed on the decoration panel.

8 Replace the electric components box lid reversing the procedure to remove it.

Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the electric components box and its lid, and between the indoor unit body and the decoration panel.

C: 3PA64319-13Q



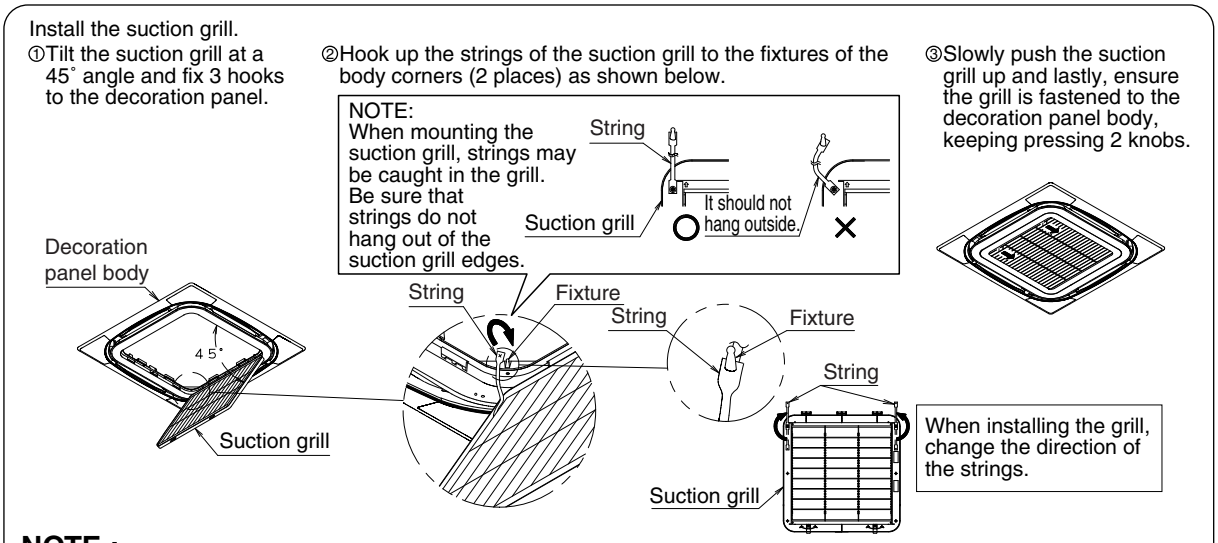
<Wiring Diagram>
(The orientation of the indoor unit is changed for purposes of description.)

Loosen the two screws, slide the cover in the direction of the arrows, and disengage from the hooks.

Fig. 9

4. INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE AND SERVICE COVER

(1) Install the suction grille
Install by reversing the procedure shown in "PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL".
It is possible to install the suction grille in 4 directions by turning the suction grille.
Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or in meeting customers' demands.



NOTE :
Be careful not to get swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

(2) Install the corner section decoration cover.

1 Attach the string of the corner section decoration cover to the pin of the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 10)**

2 Install the corner section decoration cover over the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 11)**

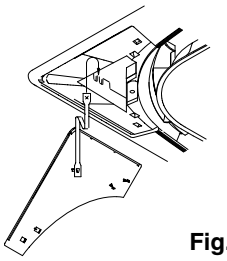
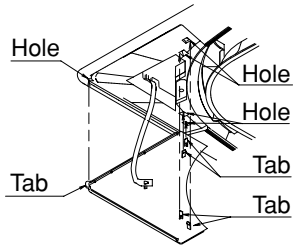


Fig. 10



Attach by inserting the five tabs on the corner section decoration cover into the holes on the decoration panel.

Fig. 11

C: 3PA64319-13Q

1.2 BYCP125K-WS — Decoration Panel

DAIKIN

BYCP125K-WS หน้ากากแอร์ คู่มือการติดตั้ง

3

สารบัญ

1. ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง.....1
2. การเตรียมหน้ากาก.....1
3. การติดตั้งหน้ากากเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร.....2
4. การติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศและฝาปิด.....4

1. ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง

1. ข้อพึงระวัง

- โปรดอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งของเครื่องภายในอาคารด้วย

2. อุปกรณ์ต่างๆ

- คู่มือการติดตั้ง

3. หมายเหตุสำหรับผู้ติดตั้ง

- โปรดตรวจให้มั่นใจว่าท่านได้สอนวิธีใช้งานที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสมและแสดงคู่มือการใช้งานที่ติดมากับเครื่องให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

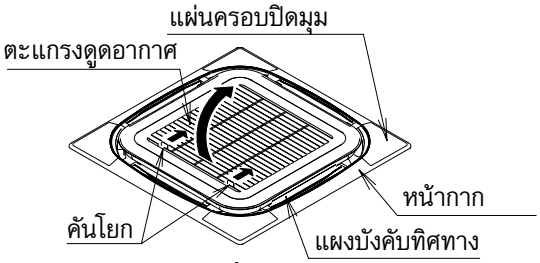
2. การเตรียมหน้ากาก

〈สำหรับเครื่องนี้ ท่านสามารถเลือกทิศทางการไหลของอากาศได้ ท่านจำเป็นต้องซื้อชุดแผ่นปิดเพื่อเลือกทิศทางลม〉

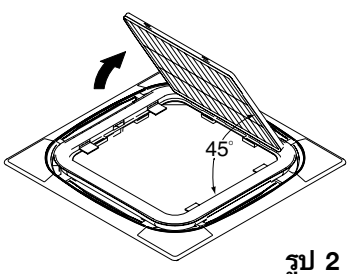
การปฏิบัติต่อหน้ากาก

- อย่าวางแผ่นนี้คว่ำหน้าลงหรือวางพิงฝาผนังหรือวางบนวัตถุที่มีส่วนที่ยื่นออกมา
- อย่าจับหรือออกแรงกดบนแผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศ
  (อาจทำให้แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศเสียหาย)

1. ปลดตะแกรงดูดอากาศออกจากหน้ากาก
   1) กดคันโยกของตะแกรงดูดอากาศเข้าข้างในแล้วยกด้านคันโยกขึ้น (ดูรูป 1 ประกอบ)
   2) ดึงตะแกรงดูดอากาศออกจากหน้ากากโดยการยกตะแกรงขึ้นประมาณ 45 องศา (ดูรูป 2 ประกอบ)
   3) ถอดกรอบโครงกระดาษกันกระแทกระหว่างขนส่ง (4 จุด) ออกจากตัวเครื่อง (ดูรูป 3 ประกอบ)
   4) ลอกกระดาษกาวที่ติดระหว่างการขนส่ง (4 จุด) ออกจากด้านหลังของตะแกรงดูดอากาศ (ดูรูป 4 ประกอบ)

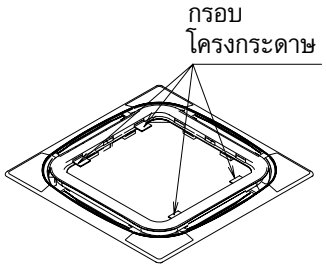


รูป 1

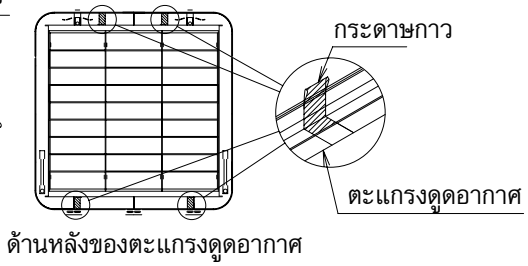


รูป 2

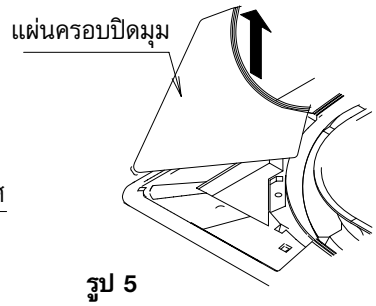
2. ถอดแผ่นครอบปิดมุมออก
   • ยกแผ่นครอบปิดมุมทั้ง 4 อันขึ้นตามทิศทางของลูกศร แล้วถอดออก (ดูรูป 5 ประกอบ)



รูป 3



รูป 4

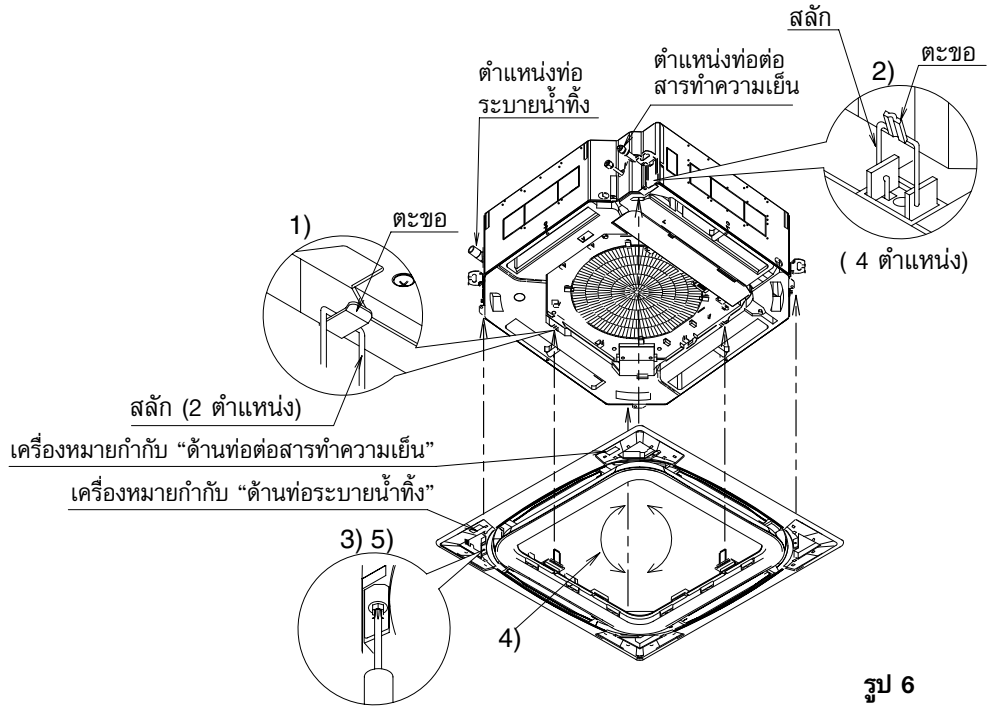


รูป 5

3. การติดตั้งหน้ากากเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร

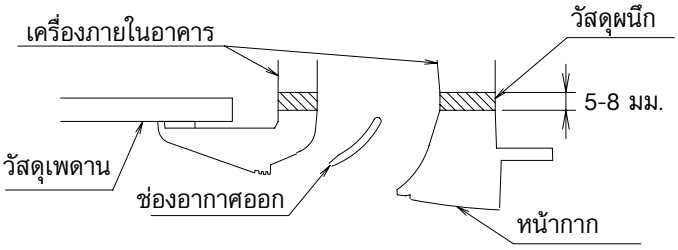
〈โปรดดูการติดตั้งตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ติดมากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร〉

1. วางตำแหน่ง “ด้านท่อต่อสารทำความเย็น” และ “ด้านท่อระบายน้ำทิ้ง” ตามที่แสดงบนหน้ากาก เข้ากับตำแหน่งสำหรับติดตั้งท่อต่อสารทำความเย็นและท่อระบายน้ำทิ้งของตัวเครื่องภายในอาคาร
2. ติดตั้งหน้ากาก
   1) ติดตั้งหน้ากากเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคารอย่างชั่วคราวโดยการแขวนสลักที่อยู่ด้านตรงข้ามกับมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศของหน้ากากเข้ากับตะขอของตัวเครื่องภายในอาคาร (2 ตำแหน่ง)
   2) แขวนสลักที่เหลืออีก 2 อันเข้ากับตะขอบนเครื่องภายในอาคารอย่างชั่วคราว
   (โปรดระวังอย่าให้สายมอเตอร์บังคับทิศทางลม ไปหนีบระหว่างหน้ากากและตัวเครื่องภายใน)
   3) ขันสกรูทั้ง 4 ที่อยู่ตรงด้านล่างของสลักเข้าไปประมาณ 5 มม. (หน้ากากจะถูกยกขึ้น)
   4) จัดตำแหน่งของหน้ากากโดยการหมุนไปตามทิศของลูกศรในรูป 6 เพื่อให้ช่องเปิดเพดานถูกปิดจนหมด



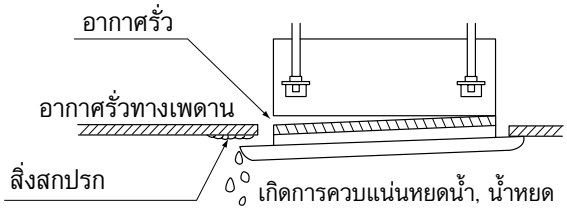
รูป 6

5) ขันสกรูให้แน่นจนกระทั่งความหนาของวัสดุผนึกระหว่างหน้ากากกับเครื่องภายในอาคารลดลงเหลือ 5-8 มม.



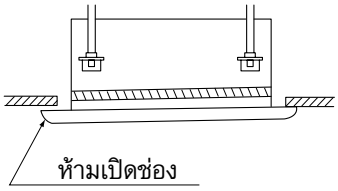
[ข้อพึงระวัง]

- การขันสกรูที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้เกิดปัญหาดังแสดงในรูป 7 โปรดขันสกรูอย่างถูกต้อง



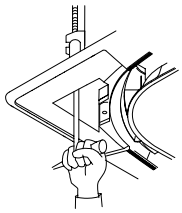
รูป 7

- หากมีช่องระหว่างเพดานและหน้ากากหลังจากที่ขันสกรูแล้ว โปรดปรับความสูงของเครื่องภายในอาคาร (ดูรูป 8 ประกอบ)



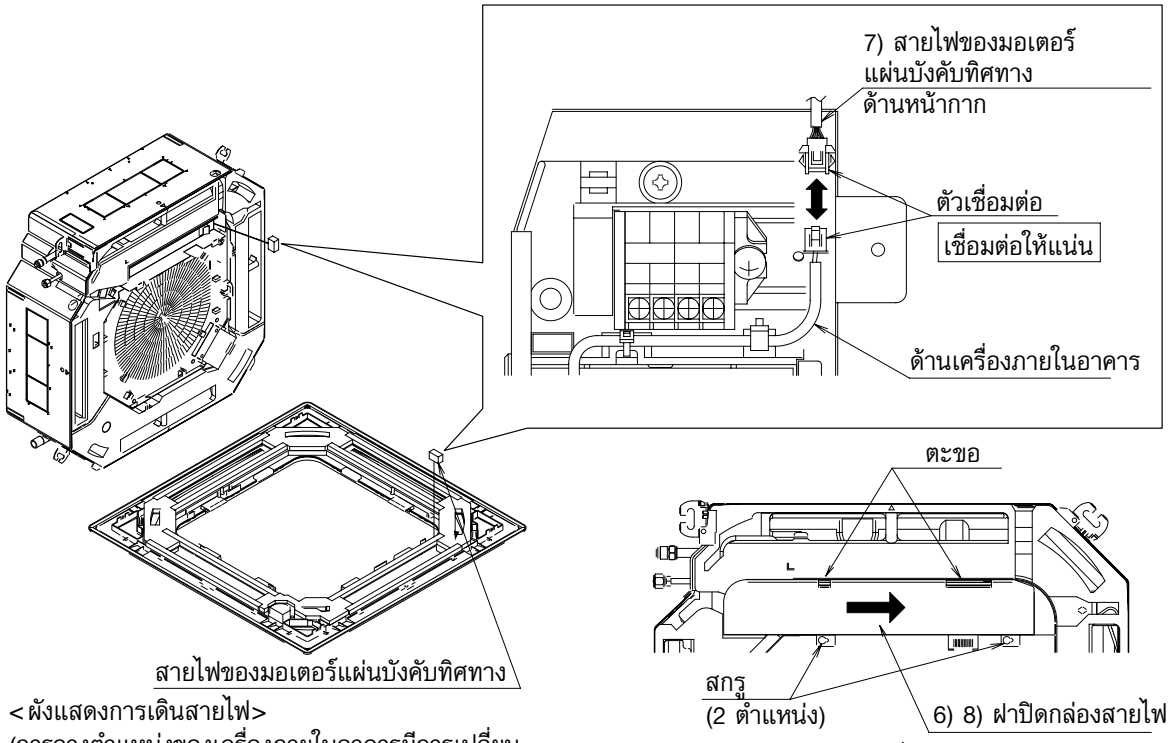
รูป 8

ท่านสามารถปรับความสูงของตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารผ่านช่องของหน้ากากหากเครื่องภายในอาคารถูกยกอยู่และไม่กระทบต่อท่อน้ำทิ้งและอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ



3. ต่อสายของหน้ากาก (ดูรูป 9 ประกอบ)
   6) ถอดฝาปิดกล่องสายไฟออก
   7) ต่อตัวเชื่อมต่อสำหรับมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศที่ติดตั้งอยู่บนหน้ากาก
   8) ใส่ฝาปิดกล่องสายไฟกลับเข้าที่โดยย้อนกลับขั้นตอนการถอดฝาออก

ตรวจดูให้แน่ใจว่าสายไฟของมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศไม่ไปติดอยู่ระหว่างเครื่องภายในอาคารกับหน้ากาก



<ผังแสดงการเดินสายไฟ>
(การวางตำแหน่งของเครื่องภายในอาคารมีการเปลี่ยนแปลงเพื่อประกอบคำอธิบายเท่านั้น)

คลายสกรูสองตัวออก เลื่อนหน้ากากตามทิศทางของลูกศร แล้วปลดออกจากตะขอ

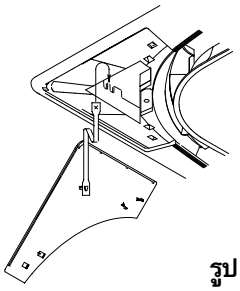
รูป 9

4. การติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศและฝาปิด

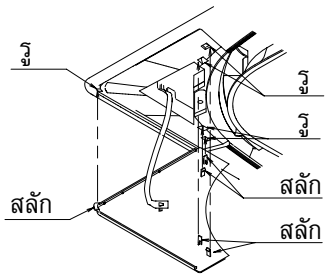
1) ติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศ
ทำการติดตั้งโดยทำย้อนกลับขั้นตอนที่กล่าวในหัวข้อ “การเตรียมหน้ากาก” ท่านสามารถติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศได้ 4 ทิศทาง โดยการหมุนตะแกรงดูดอากาศเปลี่ยนทิศทางเมื่อทำการปรับทิศทางของตะแกรงดูดอากาศของระบบแบบหลายเครื่องหรือให้ตรงกับความต้องการของลูกค้า

หมายเหตุ
ระวังอย่าทำให้สายไฟมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศเข้าไปติดระหว่างทำการติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศ

2) ติดตั้งฝาปิดบนเครื่อง
1. ติดสายของฝาปิดเข้ากับเซ็มของหน้ากากดังแสดงในรูป 10
2. ติดตั้งฝาปิดบนหน้ากากดังแสดงในรูป 11



รูป 10



ติดตั้งฝาปิดโดยการเลื่อนสลักทั้ง 4 เข้าไปในรูของหน้ากากให้แน่นหนา

รูป 11

1.3 KDBH55K160F — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet

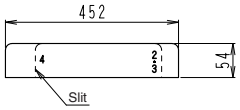
KDBH55K160 / KDBH55K160F



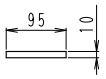
3

Dimensions Unit (mm)

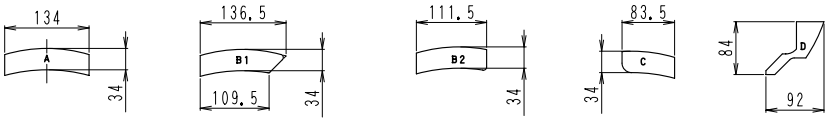
Sealing materials for long air outlets (Polyethylene foam t10): 2 pieces



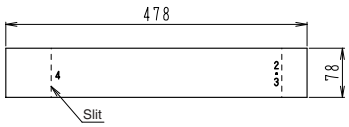
Sealing materials for horizontal blades (Polyethylene foam t10): 8 pieces



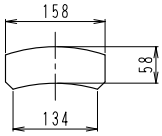
Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner (Polyethylene foam t10): 1 piece for each



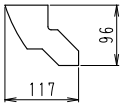
Tape for sealing materials
for long air outlets (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 2



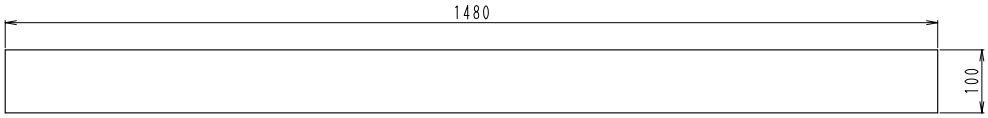
Tape for sealing materials
for air outlets at the corner (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 3



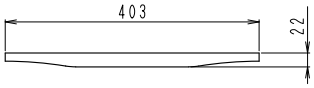
Tape for sealing materials
for air outlets at the corner (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 1



Side insulation plate (NB foam t10) : 2

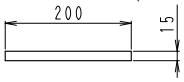


Antisweat material (Flocking tape): See right



Applicable part number	Q'ty and color
KDBH55K160F	4, grey
KDBH55K160	4 for each, Dark grey or black

Antisweat material (Flocking tape): See right



Applicable part number	Q'ty and color
KDBH55K160F	4, grey
KDBH55K160	4 for each, Dark grey or black

J: D3K05112

Installation Manual

Precautions

- Use this manual with the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit's main body and decoration panel.
- When other separately-sold products are mounted, the 3-way blow and 2-way blow may not be selected. For details, refer to the Engineering Data or catalog.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Longitudinal air outlet sealing material	Corner air outlet sealing material A	Corner air outlet sealing material B1	Corner air outlet sealing material B2	Corner air outlet sealing material C	Corner air outlet sealing material D	Longitudinal air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material
Number of pieces	2	1	1	1	1	1	2	3	1
Shape/Symbol	1	2 (A)	3 (B1)	4 (B2)	5 (C)	6 (D)	7	8	9

Name	Absorbent (Inside 1)		Absorbent (Inside 2)	Absorbent (Outside)	Absorbent (Bridge centre)	Absorbent (Bridge outside)
Number of pieces	2	1	1	2	2	2
Shape/Symbol	10 Use only FXFQ25~50PVE 24mm×328mm	11 Use only FCQ30~140LUV1, FCQ50~140KVEA, FCQN71~140KVEA, FCQ71100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT, FCQ30~48LUV2S, FXFQ63~125PVE 24mm×410mm	12 Use only FXFQ25~50PVE 24mm×290mm	13 8mm×505mm	14	15 Use only FXFQ25~50PVE 47mm×47mm

The sticking procedure for absorbent differs with FXFQ25~50PVE and with FCQ50~140LUV1, FCQ50~140KVEA, FCQN71~140KVEA, FCQ71/100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT, FCQ30~48LUV2S, FXFQ63~125PVE.
(Refer to ❷ Sticking of absorbent to air outlet.)

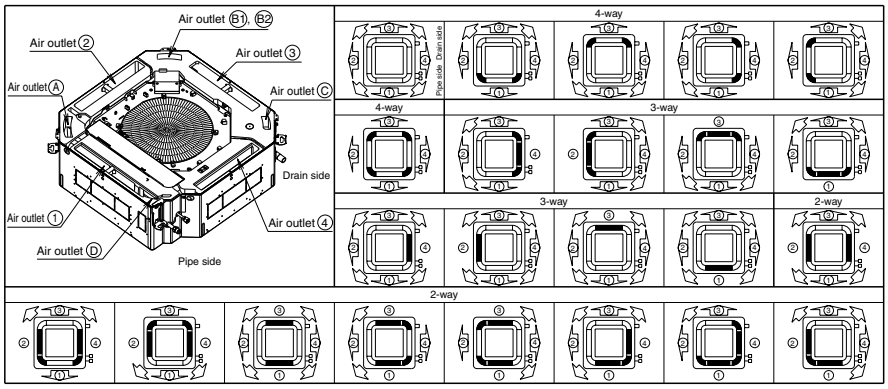
Name	Side insulator plate	Horizontal blade absorbent				Horizontal blade sealant
		With 4-blade KDBH55K160F	With 8-blade (2 colours) KDBH55K160	With 4-blade KDBH55K160F	With 8-blade (2 colours) KDBH55K160	
Number of pieces	2					8 pieces
Shape/Symbol	16 100mm×1480mm	17 (With KDBH55K160, two colours are available: gray and black, matching the blade colours.)		18 15mm×200mm (With KDBH55K160, two colours are available: gray and black, matching the blade colours.)		19 10mm×95mm

❶ Blow Direction Selection and Sealing Material Mounting

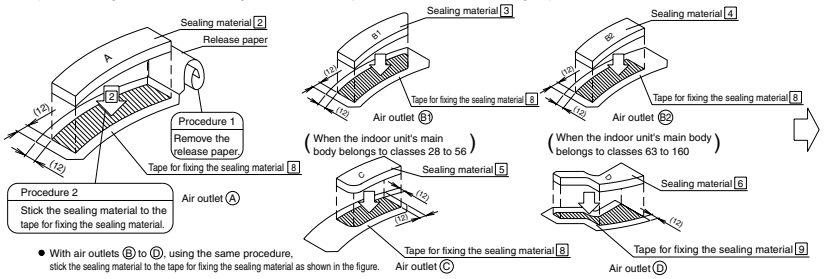
(1) Blow direction selection

- Depending on the installation location, select a blow direction from the table below. For the second code number, refer to ❹ Field Setting.
  For the selection of installation location, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit's main body.

Precautions Blow direction patterns other than those shown in the figure below cannot be selected. (Condensation may occur.)

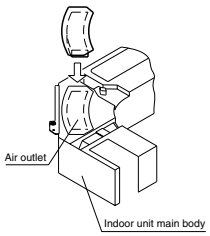


(2) Matching with the corner air outlets Ⓐ to Ⓓ that are to be blocked, stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material.
(Stick the sealing material so that the sealing material comes to the positions shown in the schematic diagram.)



- With air outlets Ⓑ to Ⓓ, using the same procedure, stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material as shown in the figure.

(3) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (2) to the air outlet of indoor unit main body.



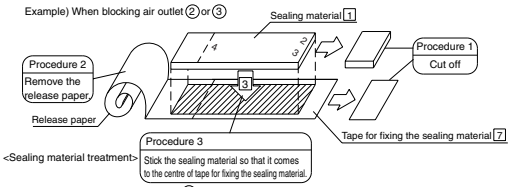
Precautions

- The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of outlet to be blocked becomes visible.
- When blocking both the air outlet ① and air outlet Ⓓ, start the sticking of sealing material with the air outlet Ⓓ.

(4) Matching the longitudinal air outlet numbered ① to ④ that are to be blocked, prepare the sealing material and tape for fixing the sealing material.

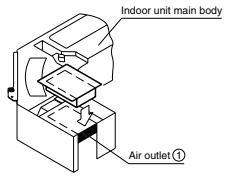
- Cut both the sealing material and tape for fixing the sealing material along the perforation (dotted line).
- Stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material.
  (Stick so that the sealing material comes to the centre of tape for fixing the sealing material.)

Example) When blocking air outlet ② or ③



∗ When blocking the air outlet ①, the sealing material preparation is not necessary.

(5) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (4) to the air outlet of indoor unit main body.



<Mounting to air outlet>

Precautions The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of outlet to be blocked becomes visible.

JC: 1P177350A

3

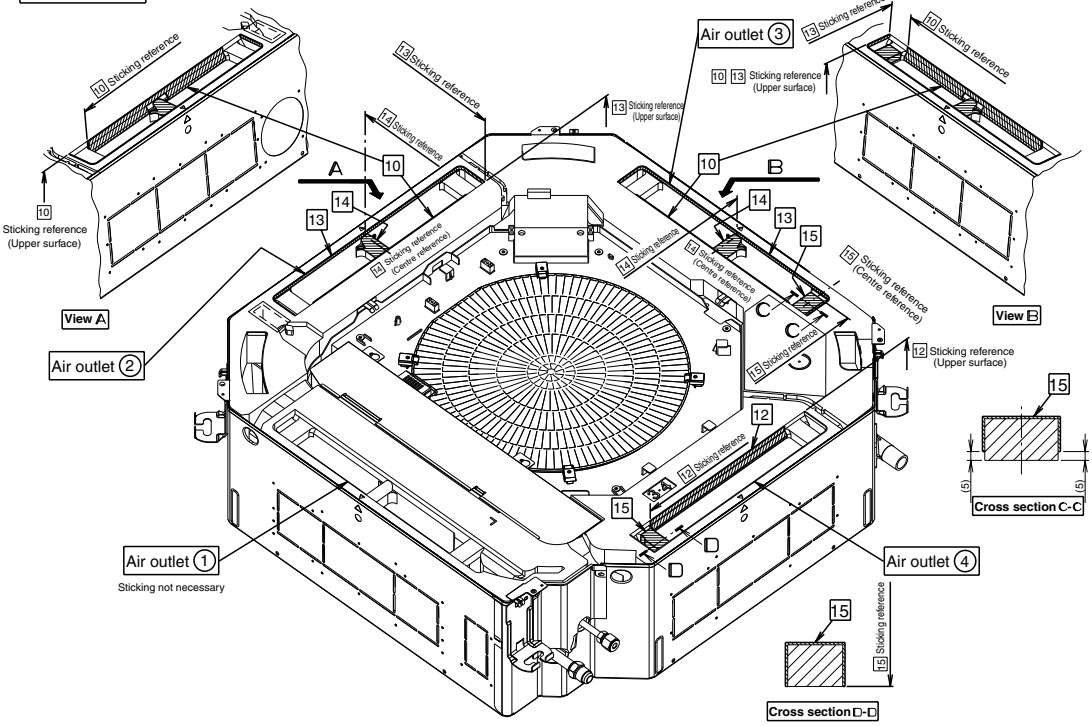
❷ Sticking of Absorbent to Air Outlet

● Stick the absorbent indicated in the table below to the air outlet that was not blocked in ❶ according to the procedure shown in the figure below.

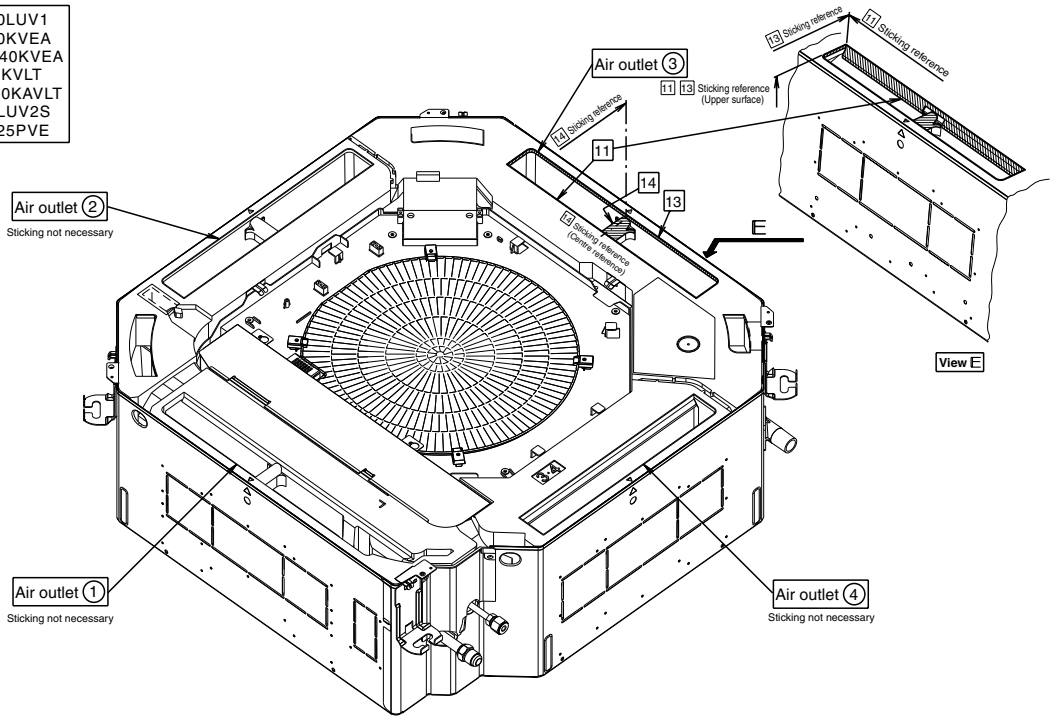
	FXFQ25~50PVE	FCQ50~140LUV1, FCQ50~140KVEA, FCQN71~140KVEA, FCQ71/100KVLT FCQ125/140KAVLT, FCQ30~48LUV2S, FXFQ63~125PVE
Air outlet ①	——	——
Air outlet ②	Absorbent 10 13 14 Total 3 pieces	——
Air outlet ③	Absorbent 10 13 14 15 Total 4 pieces	Absorbent 11 13 14 Total 3 pieces
Air outlet ④	Absorbent 12 15 Total 2 pieces	——

Precautions
- If the sticking of absorbent is omitted, condensation may occur.
- To positions where the absorbent is already stuck, the sticking of absorbent is not necessary.

FXFQ25~50PVE



FCQ50~140LUV1
FCQ50~140KVEA
FCQN71~140KVEA
FCQ71/100KVLT
FCQ125/140KAVLT
FCQ30~48LUV2S
FXFQ63~125PVE



continued on back side

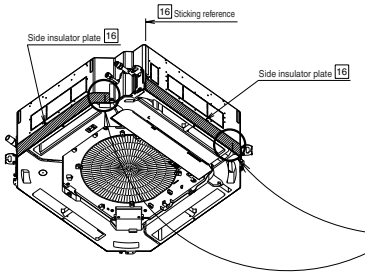
JC: 1P177350A

❸ Sticking of Insulator to Indoor Unit Main Body

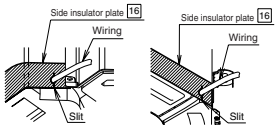
● For safety, be sure to shut off power supply before starting the insulator sticking operation, decoration panel mounting operation, and connecting of connectors for swinging.

Precautions If the sticking of insulator is omitted, condensation may occur.

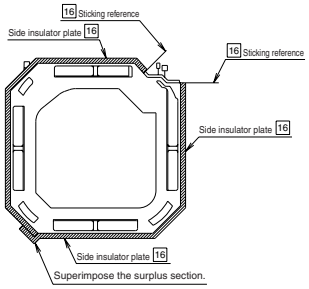
● Stick the side insulator plate 16 according to the figure below.



For a wiring takeoff point with two sections, make a slit on the side insulator plate 16 as shown in the figure below, then route the wiring.



Wiring takeoff point



Superimpose the surplus section.

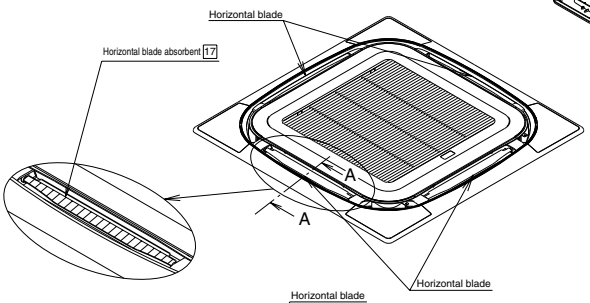
❹ Sticking of Absorbent to Panel Horizontal Blade

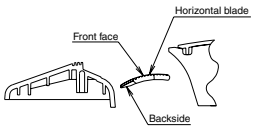
● Perform the operation on soft cloth to prevent damage to the panel.
● Perform sticking for the horizontal blades of all air outlets.
● Do not apply force to the horizontal blade. (Application of force may lead to horizontal blade swing failure.)

● According to the figure below, stick the horizontal blade absorbent 17 and 18 as well as the horizontal blade sealing pad 19.
(With KDBH55K160, stick the horizontal blade absorbent with matching blade colour.)

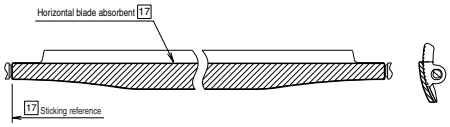
Precautions When the sticking of absorbent and sealant is omitted, condensation may occur.

① Stick the horizontal blade absorbent 17 in line with the blade shape to the front face of the horizontal blade.

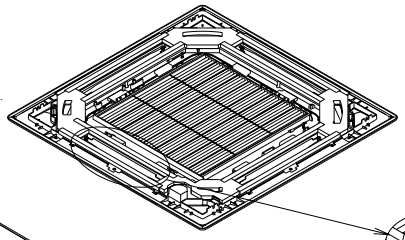


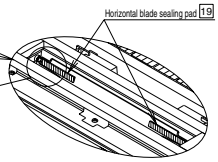


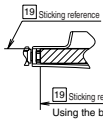
A-A cross section



② Stick the horizontal blade sealing pad 19 to the backside of the blade. (For both left and right)



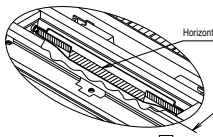


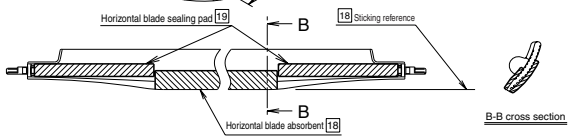


Using the base of the rib as a reference, stick without leaving any gap.



③ Stick the horizontal blade absorbent 18 in between the horizontal blade sealing pad 19.





B-B cross section

❺ Field Setting

● Depending on the installation status of the indoor unit's main body, the field setting needs to be performed by remote control operation.

● Perform the setting by switching among the following three items: "Mode number", "First code number", and "Second code number".
● The setting procedure and operation method are described in "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

(1) Setting by number of air outlets used
While referring to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control, perform the setting according to the table in the right.
Also, when the corner air outlet is blocked with 4-way blow, set the wind direction slightly downward.
(Note) When the installation height becomes higher than the standard, the setting by ceiling height in (2) becomes necessary.

(2) Setting by ceiling height
For the ceiling height, refer to the guidelines of ceiling height and number of air outlets used, then perform the setting for each air outlet used according to the table below.

(Guidelines of ceiling height and number of air outlets used)

			Number of air outlets used							
Indoor unit applicable model		SkyAir	FCQ50-71LUV1 FCQ71KVLT FCQ50-71KVEA FCQN71KVEA				FCQ100-140LUV1 FCQ100KVLT FCQ100-140KVEA FCQ125/140KAVLT FCQ30-48LUV2S FCQN100-140KVEA			
		VRV	FXFQ25-80PVE				FXFQ100/125PVE			
			All-around blow	4-way blow	3-way blow	2-way blow	All-around blow	4-way blow	3-way blow	2-way blow
Ceiling height	Standard		2.7m or less	3.1m or less	3.0m or less	3.5m or less	3.2m or less	3.4m or less	3.6m or less	4.2m or less
	High ceiling ①		3.0m or less	3.4m or less	3.3m or less	3.8m or less	3.6m or less	3.9m or less	4.0m or less	4.2m or less
	High ceiling ②		3.5m or less	4.0m or less	3.5m or less	——	4.2m or less	4.5m or less	4.2m or less	——

Values for ceiling height are provided as reference.

[Setting content] (Setting by number of air outlets used)

(Number of air outlets used)	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
3-way blow	13 (23)	1	02
2-way blow			03

[Setting content] (Setting for when corner air outlet is blocked with 4-way blow)

(Wind direction)	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
Standard	13 (23)	4	02
Slightly downward			03

[Setting content] (Setting by ceiling height)

	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
Standard	13 (23)	0	01
High ceiling ①			02
High ceiling ②			03

JC: 1P191031A

1.4 KDBP55H160FA / WA — Panel Spacer

KDBP55H160FA



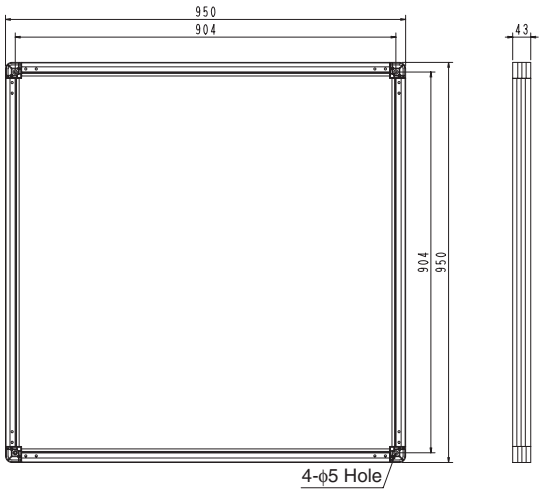
Item \ Model		KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA
Exterior		Fresh White (6.5Y9.5/0.5)	White (10Y9/0.5)
Material		Outside frame: Resin Insulation: Polyethylene foam	
Accessories		Fixture : 4 pieces Screws : 1 set Sealing material : 1 set Installation manual.	
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.2	

- Using the panel spacer in areas of the ceiling with limited space makes it possible to install the air conditioner.
- Hides the gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling.

Caution

- When the panel spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.
- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the panel spacer for its installation.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K04626

Installation Manual

Combination table

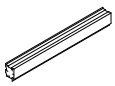
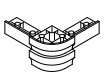
Panel spacer	KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA KDB55K160WA
Decoration panel	BYCP125K-W1 **BYCP125K-WS**	BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 **BYCP125-W2** BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S

Caution

- **When the Panel Spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.**
- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the Panel spacer for its installation.

Contents of kit

Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Panel spacer frame	Resin corner part	Fixing metal	Screw
Quantity	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	28 PCS.
Shape • number	① 	② 	③ 	④  M4×10 Tapping screw (Class 2)

Name	Sealing material		Caution label	Others
Quantity	2 PCS.	2 PCS.	1 PC.	• This Installation Manual
Shape • number	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 	

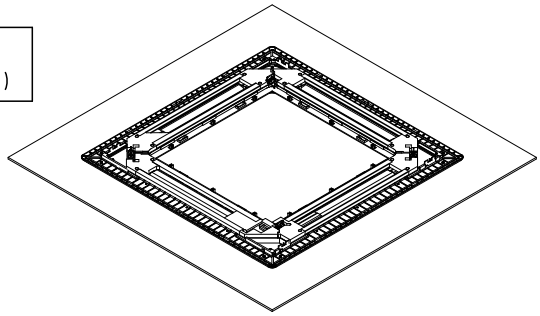
❶ Preparation of the Decoration panel

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

Never place the panel face down, or lean the panel against wall or place on the projective object.
(It causes the dent or damage of the surface of the panel or damage of swing motor.)

(1) Remove the suction grill from the decoration panel.
(Refer to the installtion manual of the decoration panel how to remove.)

(2) Place the panel face down on the corrugated board or the vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the panel.

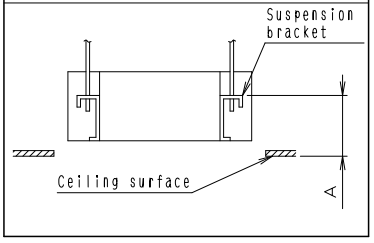


❷ Installation of the indoor unit

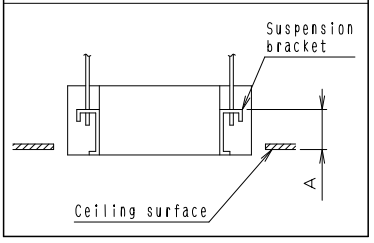
Adjust the height of the indoor unit.

Be sure the piping will not contact with the ceiling joist etc. after adjusting the height.

Standard installation



When the Panel spacer is installed



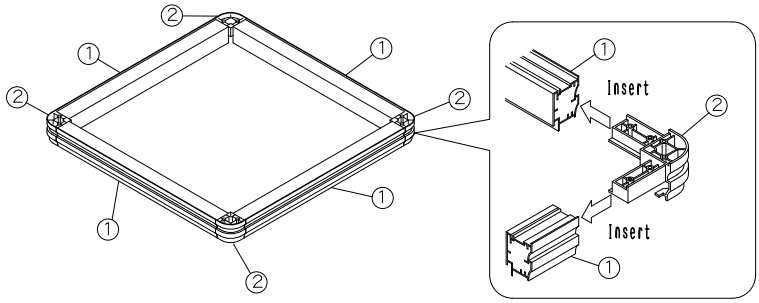
Decoration panel	A(mm)
BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 **BYC125K-W2** BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S	145~150
BYCP125K-W1 **BYCP125K-WS**	125~130

Decoration panel	A(mm)
BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 **BYC125K-W2** BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S	105~110
BYCP125K-W1 **BYCP125K-WS**	85~90

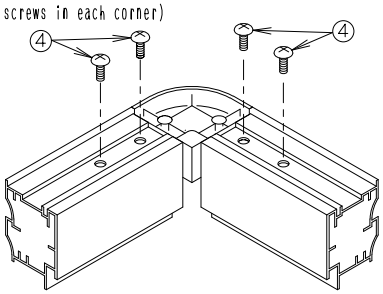
C: 1P136564E

❸ Assembly of panel spacer

(1) Assemble the panel spacer frame ① and the plastic corner joint ② temporarily.



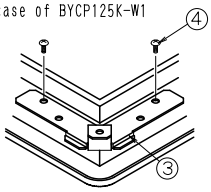
(2) Fix with the screws ④ from the top.
(4 screws in each corner)



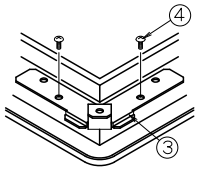
❹ Fixing to the Decoration panel

(1) Set the fixing metal ③ on each corner with screws ④.
(Screw positions change with decoration panels, as shown in the following figure.)

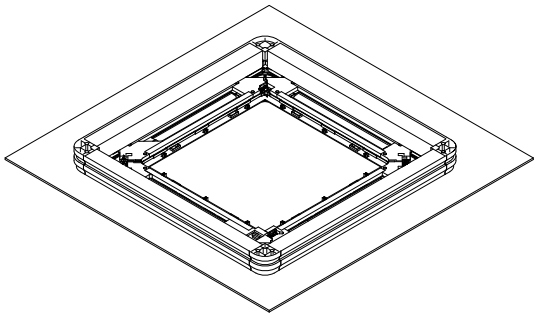
● In the case of BYCP125K-W1



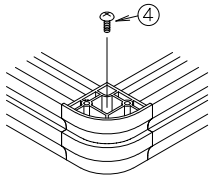
● In the cases of other than the above.



(2) Place the panel spacer assembled in item ③Assembly of panel spacer of the above on the outer frame of the Decoration panel.

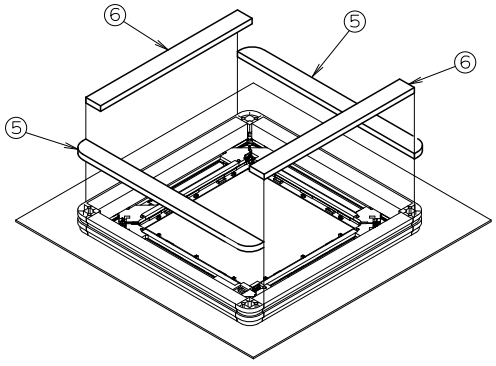


(3) Fix the panel spacer to the fixing metal ③ with screws ④ (4 portions).



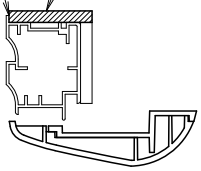
❺ Adhesion of the sealing material

Adhere the sealing material ⑤ ⑥ on the upper face of the panel spacer in the order of ⑤ and ⑥.



Sticking reference
(Adhere it along the inner rib.)

Sealing material
⑤⑥

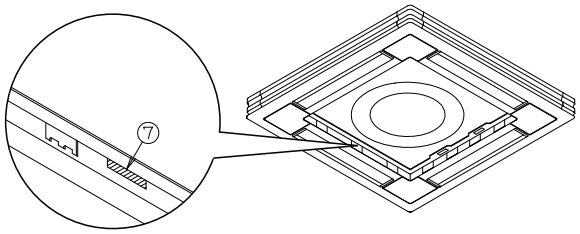


❻ Installation of the Decoration panel

(1) install the decoration panel to the indoor unit according to the installation manual of decoration panel.

The panel spacer is not firmly fixed to the decoration panel, so that never hold the panel spacer directly or lean the decoration panel extremely.

(2) After installation of the Decoration panel, adhere the caution sticker ⑦ next to the name plate of the indoor unit as shown on the right.



1P136564E

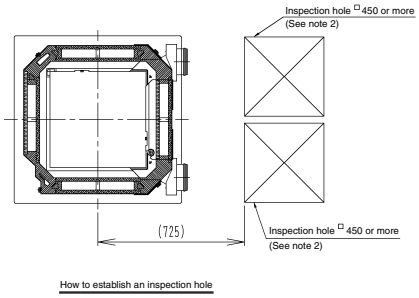
1.5 KDDP55B160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)

KDDP55B160 (without T-shape, without Fan)

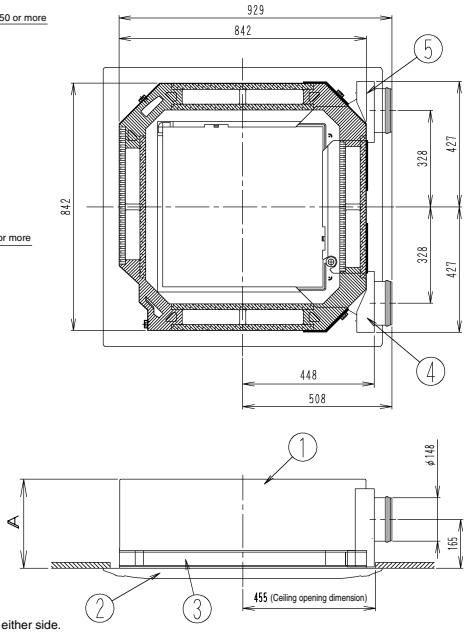


Item		Model KDDP55B160
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.5

Dimensions Unit (mm)



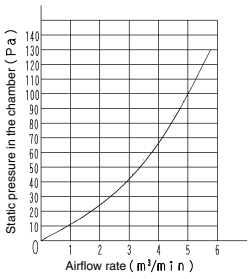
How to establish an inspection hole



Number	Name	Description
1	Indoor unit main body	
2	Decoration panel	
3	Suction chamber	
4	Connecting port chamber (right)	
5	Connecting port chamber (left)	

Accessories
- Screws (M5×12) : 4 pieces
- Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Tape for fixing sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Installation manual

Resistance in the passage inside the chamber



Note)
1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 meters.
2. When installing this kit, an inspection hole is required (in order to maintain this kit). Establish an inspection holes on either side.
3. This kit is field assembly.
4. Install the hanging fixing for the T joint. Otherwise the load from T-shape pipe assembly, etc., could create a gap between the indoor unit and suction chamber.
5. When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
6. With the intake air volume, 10% or less of the "H" wind volume of the indoor unit is recommended.
   Excessive intake air volume may increase the operation sound level or affect the performance of the suction air temperature detection in the indoor unit.

Decoration panel	Indoor unit		A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	SkyAir	FCQ50-71LUV1, FCQ50-71KVEA, FCQN71KVEA, FCQ71KVLT	306
	VRV	FXFQ25-80PVE	
	SkyAir	FCQ100-140LUV1, FCQ100-140KVEA, FCQN100-140KVEA, FCQ100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT	348
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE	
BYCP125K-WS	SkyAir	FCQ30-48LUV2S	

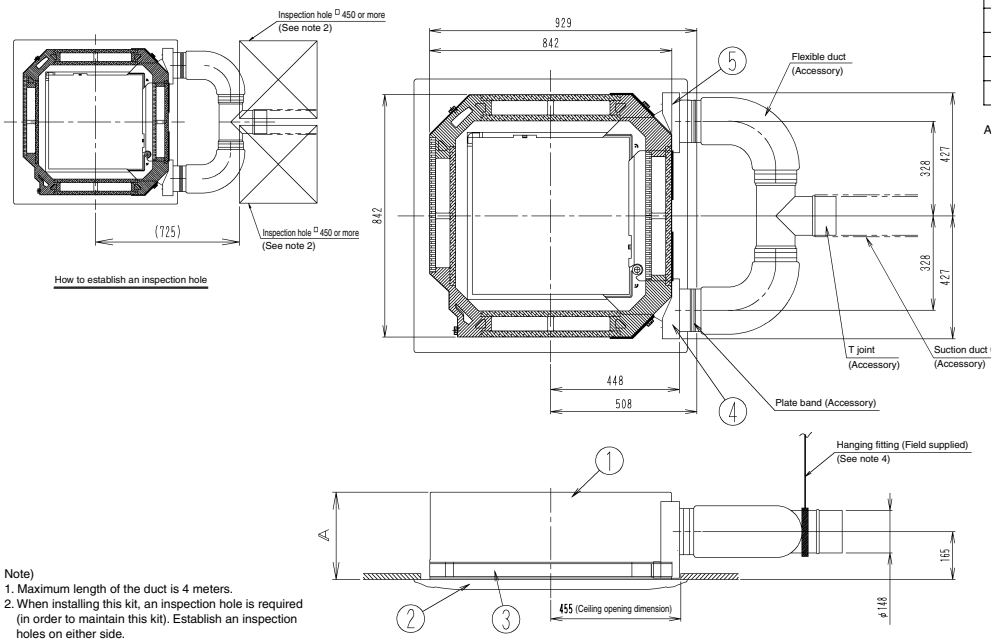
JC: D3K07959

KDDP55B160K (with T-shape, without Fan)

Item	Model	KDDP55B160K
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.5

3

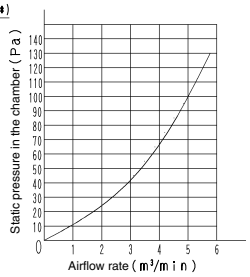
Dimensions Unit (mm)



Number	Name	Description
1	Indoor unit main body	
2	Decoration panel	
3	Suction chamber	
4	Connecting port chamber (right)	
5	Connecting port chamber (left)	

Accessories
Screws (M5×12) : 4 pieces
Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
Tape for fixing sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
Installation manual

Resistance in the passage inside the chamber (Note 7)



Note)
1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 meters.
2. When installing this kit, an inspection hole is required (in order to maintain this kit). Establish an inspection holes on either side.
3. This kit is field assembly.
4. Install the hanging fixing for the T joint. Otherwise the load from T-shape pipe assembly, etc., could create a gap between the indoor unit and suction chamber.
5. When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
6. With the intake wind volume, 10% or less of the "H" wind volume of the indoor unit is recommended.
7. This graph shows values from the inlet of the T joint through that of the indoor unit when KDDP55B160K (with a T joint) is connected.

Decoration panel	Indoor unit		A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	SkyAir	FCQ50-71LUV1, FCQ50-71KVEA, FCQN71KVEA, FCQ71KVLT	306
	VRV	FXFQ25-80PVE	
	SkyAir	FCQ100-140LUV1, FCQ100-140KVEA, FCQN100-140KVEA, FCQ100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT	348
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE	
BYCP125K-WS	SkyAir	FCQ30-48LUV2S	

JC: D3K07961

Installation Manual

⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used. If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Recommendations

· This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <Round flow>.
· At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.
· When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor [KRP1C63] to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
For the intake wind volume, 10% or less of the indoor unit wind volume of "H" is recommended.
When the intake wind volume becomes excessive, operation noise may become louder or the intake temperature detection of the indoor unit may be affected.
· Be sure to mount the supplied sensor assembly.
<For the duct used for field connection, those in the table below are recommended.>

Part name	Part number
Flexible duct (Nominal diameter ϕ150)	K-FDS151D (1m) K-FDS152D (2m) K-FDS153D (3m) K-FDS154D (4m)

Name	⑭Partition plate	
Shape		
Number of pieces	KDDP55B160	1
	KDDP55B160K	1

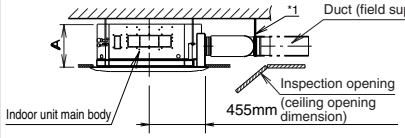
Parts content Check the following parts. (Shaded part ⋯⋯ is included in a different package.)

Name		①Suction chamber	②Connecting chamber (left)	③Connecting chamber (right)	④Corner air outlet sealing material	⑤Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	⑥Mounting screw	⑦Sensor assembly	⑧Clamp	⑨Mounting screw (for sensor)	⑩T joint	⑪Flexible duct	⑫Sealing pad	⑬Installation manual
Shape							M5 × 12							(this document)
Number of pieces	KDDP55B160	1	1	1	2	2	4	1	2	1	——	——	——	1
	KDDP55B160K	1	1	1	2	2	4	1	2	1	1	2	4	1

④, ⑦ and ⑭ are only used in combination with round flow type.

❶ Selection of Installation Location and Establishment of Inspection Opening

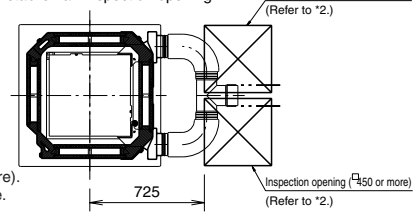
(1) Refer to the figure below to select the installation location. Unit (mm)



*1. Install the suspension bracket for the T joint section. Because of the load from T joint, etc., a gap may be created in between the indoor unit and suction chamber.

*2. Establish an inspection opening (□450 or more). Establish an inspection opening to either side.

(2) Establish an inspection opening.



Decoration panel	Indoor unit		A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	SkyAir	FCQ50-71LUV1, FCQ50-71KVEA, FCQN71KVEA, FCQ71KVLT	306
	VRV	FXFQ25-80PVE	
	SkyAir	FCQ100-140LUV1, FCQ100-140KVEA, FCQN100-140KVEA, FCQ100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT	348
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE	
BYCP125K-WS	SkyAir	FCQ30-48LUV2S	

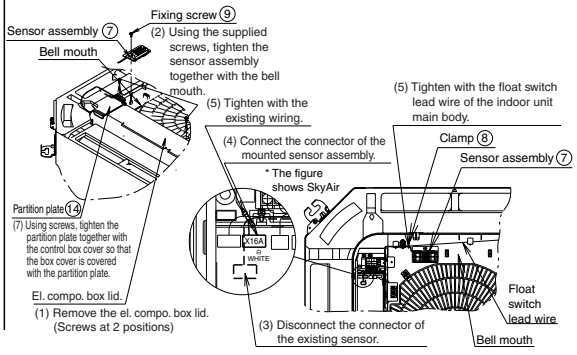
❷ Mounting of Sensor Assemblies and Suction Chamber

* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
- Shut off power supply before performing operation.
- Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body. (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

Round flow

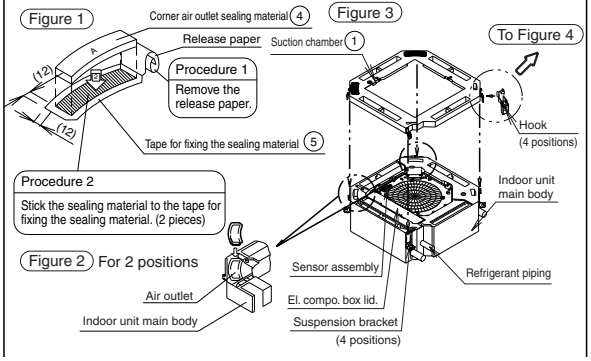
<Mounting of sensor assembly>

(1) According to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit main body, remove the el. compo. box lid.
(2) Using the supplied screws, tighten the sensor assembly together with the bell mouth to the indoor unit main body. (Mount without pinching the float switch lead wire.)
(3) Remove the connector (X16A) of the existing sensor from the printed circuit board of the indoor unit main body.
(4) Connect the lead wire of the mounted sensor assembly to the connector (X16A) on the printed circuit board of the indoor unit main body as shown in the figure below.
(5) As shown in the figure below, fix the lead wire using the supplied clamp.
(6) After all the wiring is completed, fit the el. compo. box lid. according to the installation manual attached to the main body.
(7) Making sure that the el. compo. box lid. is covered with the partition plate ⑭, tighten these together using the screws on the cover. (Hook the partition plate tab onto the cover.)



<Mounting of suction chamber>

* Figure shows an example where the indoor unit main body is newly installed.
(1) Stick the corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material ⑤ to the corner air outlet sealing material ④, then stick it to the air outlet of the indoor unit main body. (2 positions) (Figure 1) (Figure 2)
(2) Mount the suction chamber ① to the indoor unit main body using the hook (4 positions). (Figure 3) to (Figure 5)
For the fixing method of the hook, refer to (Figure 4), then mount at 4 positions.
* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and suction chamber match. (Figure 4) (Figure 6)



JC: 3K022728B

Figure 4 Mounting status

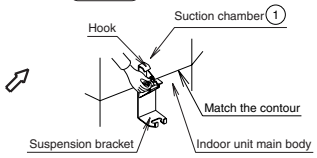


Figure 5 Status after mounting

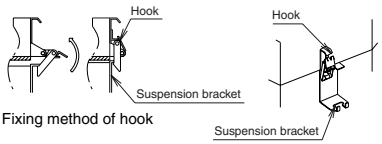
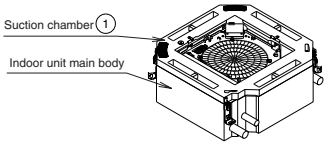


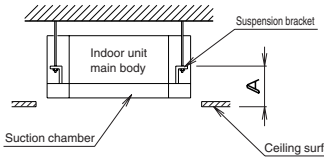
Figure 6 Drawing of mounting at completion



JC: 3K022728

3 Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Suction Chamber

- Install the indoor unit main body and suction chamber.
  At the time of installation, perform the engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the suction chamber to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1 BYCP125K-WS	185

4 Mounting of Connecting Chamber and Connection of Flexible Duct

Mount the connecting chamber. (1 piece each for left and right, a total of 2 pieces) Figure 7

(1) Press the square hole area of the connecting chamber (2) ((3)) into the hook section (tab) of the suction chamber (1). (2 positions)

(2) Using the supplied screws (6), fix the connecting chamber. (2 positions)

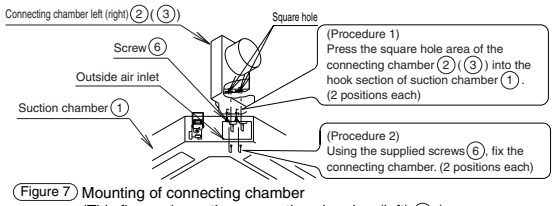
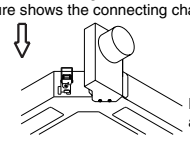
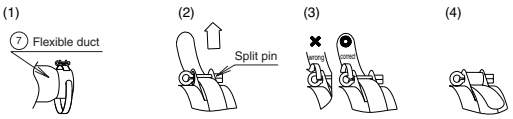


Figure 7 Mounting of connecting chamber
(This figure shows the connecting chamber (left) (2).)



<How to Tight Sealing Pad>



(1) Wrap the sealing pad to the position to be tightened.

(2) Insert the tip of the band through the gap of the split pin, then lightly tighten by hand.

(3) Using a standard tool (driver, pliers, etc.), turn the split pin to the direction shown in the figure to tighten the band.

(4) This completes the mounting.

Precautions

Because the split pin has a structure to prevent counter rotation, be careful with the turning direction. (When a counter rotation is forced, the ratchet will be damaged, and the tightening force will be weakened.)

In case of KDDP55B160K

(3) Connect the connecting chamber and T joint. Figure 8
Mount the flexible duct (11) with the sealing pad (12).

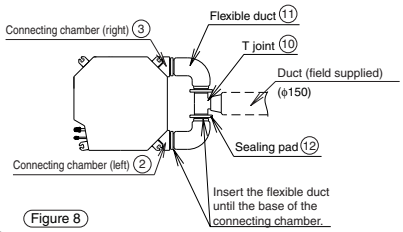
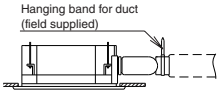
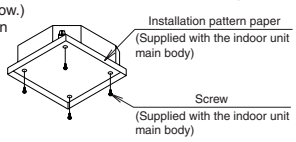


Figure 8



To prevent applying weight to the connecting chamber, hang the T joint using the hanging band for the duct.

(4) Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit by using screws to cure the indoor unit.
(Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
(Refer to the figure below.)
(Mounting of installation pattern paper)



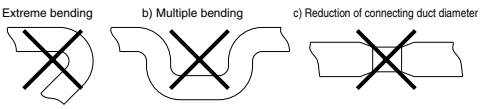
- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping works for the indoor unit main body.

5 Duct Connection <<Duct: Nominal diameter ϕ150>>

(1) Connect the duct to the duct connection area.
(2) Wrap the connection area with vinyl tape, etc., (field supply) to prevent an air leak.

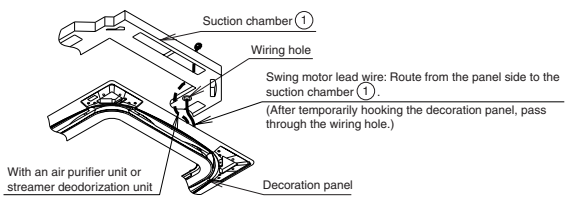
Precautions

- For the duct, be sure to apply the insulation treatment to prevent condensation.
- Do not perform duct manipulations described in the figure to the right.
- Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
- When a duct goes through fire protection areas including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
- When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.
- Mount the outside duct so that it has a downslope toward the outside, and prevent rainwater from leaking in with a hood, etc. (Gradient of 1/100 to 1/50)
- To prevent the intrusion of small animals, such as birds, and bugs, be sure to attach a netting to sections open to outside air.
- To protect the heat exchanger of the indoor unit, be sure to attach an air filter to sections open to outside air.

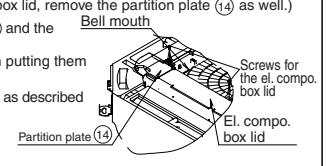


6 Mounting of Decoration Panel and Suction Chamber

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the swing motor lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wiring hole of the suction chamber.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
  However, when used in combination with the air purifier unit or streamer deodorization unit, perform wiring without routing through the wiring hole.
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel. (When you remove the el. compo. box lid, remove the partition plate (14) as well.)



- After wiring leads, put the partition plate (14) and the el. compo. box lid in position.
  Be careful not to pull in the lead wire when putting them in position.
  Install the sensor assembly in the same way as described in (2) Mounting of Sensor…Chamber <Mounting of sensor assembly> (7).

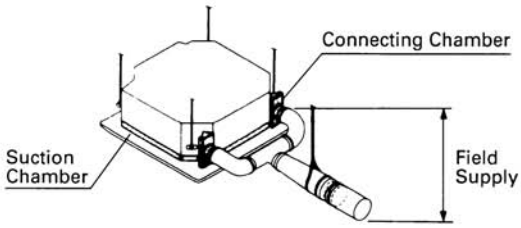


With wireless unit

- For details on connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

JC: 3K022964A

KDDP55B160 (without T joint, without fan)

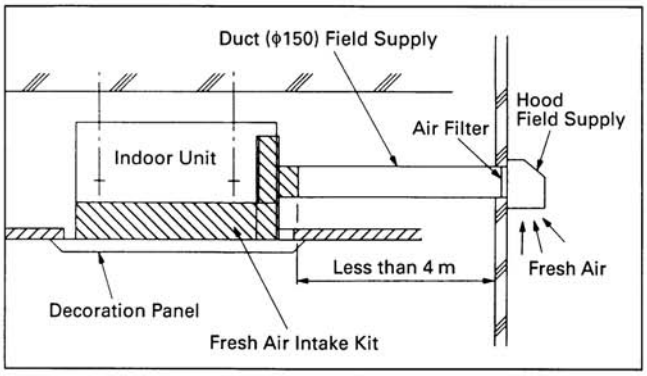


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. In wireless remote controller use, Flexible Duct in the right can not connect.

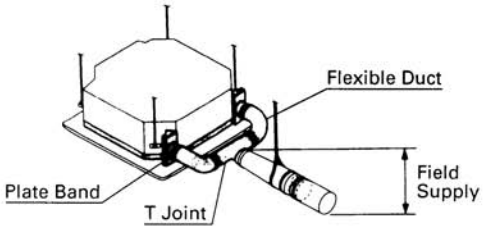
• **Specifications**

Item \ Model	KDDP55B160
Method of fresh air intake	Fresh air intake by the indoor unit fan
Size of connecting duct	ϕ150

• **Example of Installation**



KDDP55B160K (with T joint, without fan)

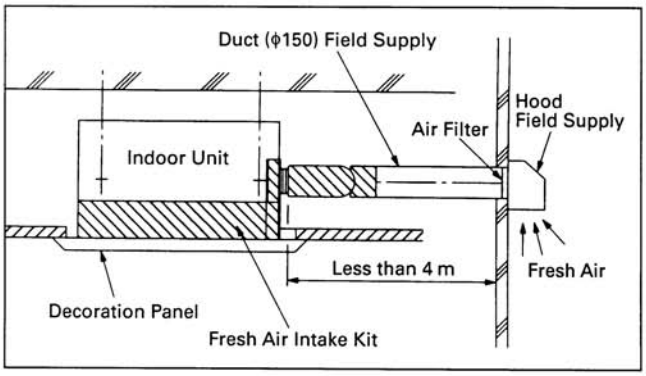


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. It isn't possible to do simultaneous use with wireless remote controller.

• **Specifications**

Item \ Model	KDDP55B160K
Method of fresh air intake	Fresh air intake by the indoor unit fan
Size of connecting duct	ϕ150

• **Example of Installation**



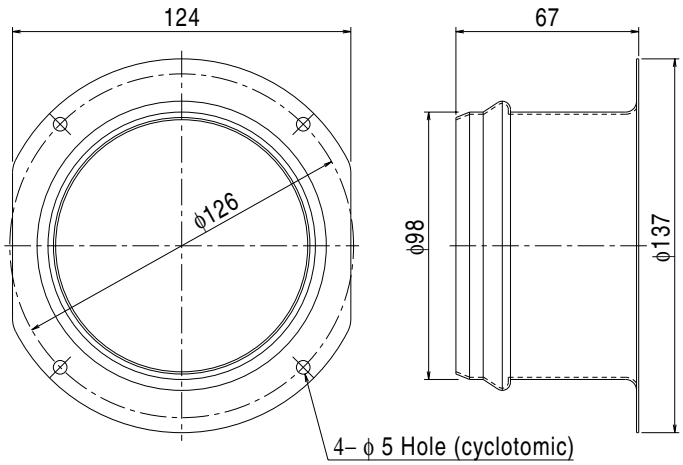
1.6 KDDP55X160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

KDDP55X160



Item \ Model	KDDP55X160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Diameter of connection duct	ϕ100
Accessories	Insulation material retainer plate : 1 Insulation material : 1 set Mounting screws : 4 Installation manual.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K04240A

Installation Manual

Precautions

- This kit can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner.
- When using this kit, a duct (nominal diameter: ϕ100) is required separately.

- Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
- When a duct goes through fire protection areas including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
- When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.
- Mount the outside duct so that it has a downslope toward the outside, and prevent rainwater from leaking in. (Gradient of 1/100 to 1/50)
- To prevent the intrusion of small animals, such as birds, and bugs, be sure to attach a netting to sections open to outside air.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	① Duct flange	② Mounting screws	③ Duct flange insulator	④ Main body opening insulator	⑤ Sealing pad retainer	⑥ Installation manual
Number of pieces	1	4	1	1	1	1
Shape		 M4×12				

Tools needed for mounting Phillips-type screwdriver, nippers, and cutter, etc.

1 Mounting of Duct Flange

1) Cut off the side plate of the indoor unit main body along the dowel hole without damaging the internal insulator. (Figure 1)

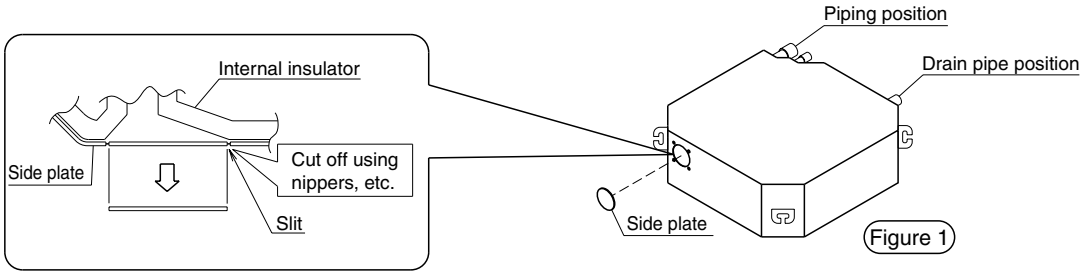
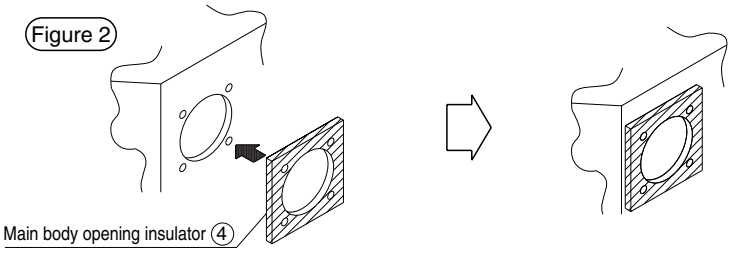


Figure 1

2) Stick the main body's opening insulator ④ to the opening. (Figure 2)

Figure 2



JC: 2P137676B

3) After mounting the duct flange ① to the opening using the mounting screws ② (M4×12, 4 pieces), stick the duct flange insulator ③. (Figure 3)

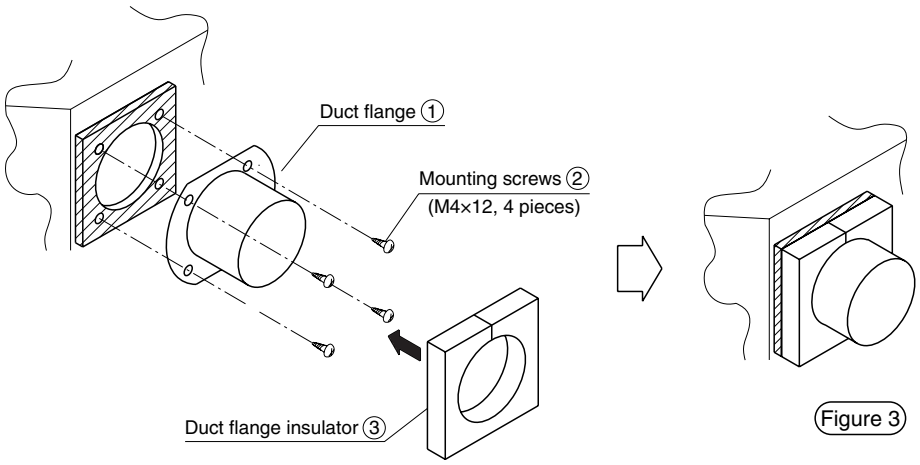


Figure 3

4) Before mounting the decoration panel, remove the insulator, and stick the sealing pad retainer ⑤ to the indoor unit drain pan. (Figure 4)

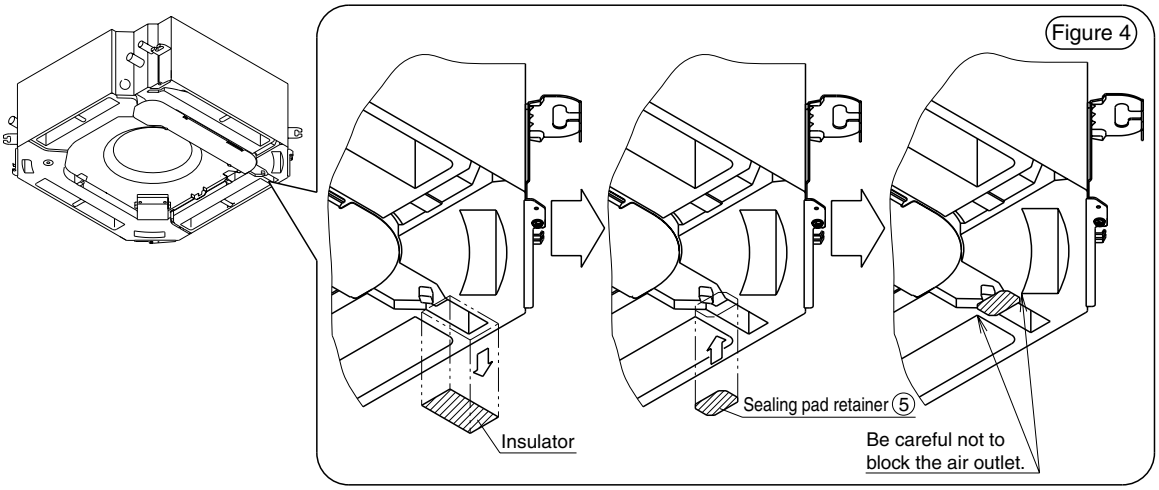


Figure 4

② Duct Connection ⟨⟨Duct: Nominal diameter ϕ100⟩⟩

1) Connect the duct to the outside of the duct flange. (Figure 5)
2) After the connection, wrap the connection area with tape (field supplied) to prevent an air leak.

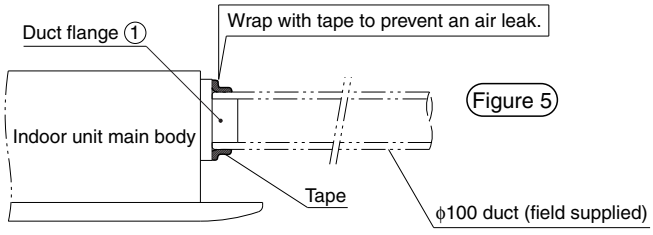
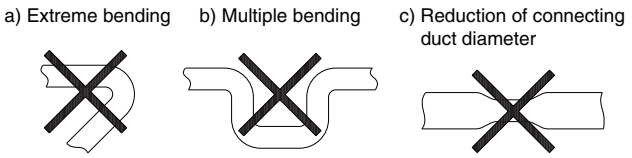


Figure 5

Precautions

- Perform insulation for all ducts.
- Do not perform duct manipulations shown to the right.



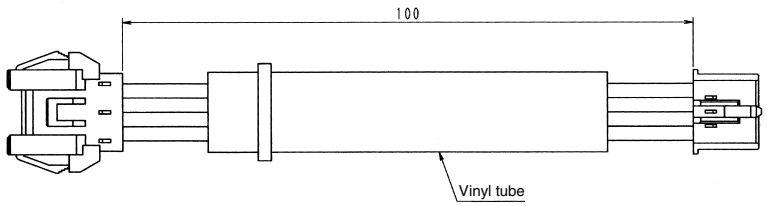
J: 2P137676B

1.7 KKSJ55KA160 — Chamber Connection Kit

KKSJ55KA160



Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K2186

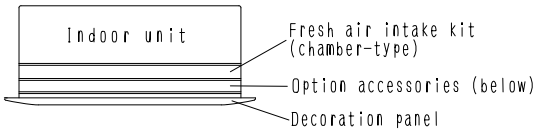
Installation Manual

Daikin Air Conditioners Chamber Connection Kit Installation manual

KKSJ55K160 • KKSJ55KA160 Caution : Before installation, read this safety instruction.

Combining with option accessories (chamber-type)

- This chamber connection kit is for use with the multi-flow set. Refer to the catalog, etc. for details on the separately sold items (chamber-type) to be connected.
- Refer to the table at right for combinations of this kit and other option accessories(chamber-type). Also, be sure to install the fresh air intake (chamber-type) kit above.



	Above: Fresh air intake kit
below: Air purification unit	○
below: High Effciency filter unit	○
below: Ultra-long life filter unit	○
below: Fresh air intake kit	

Combinations not listed in this table should not be attempted as they will cause malfunctions.

Contents of parts

Check the following parts

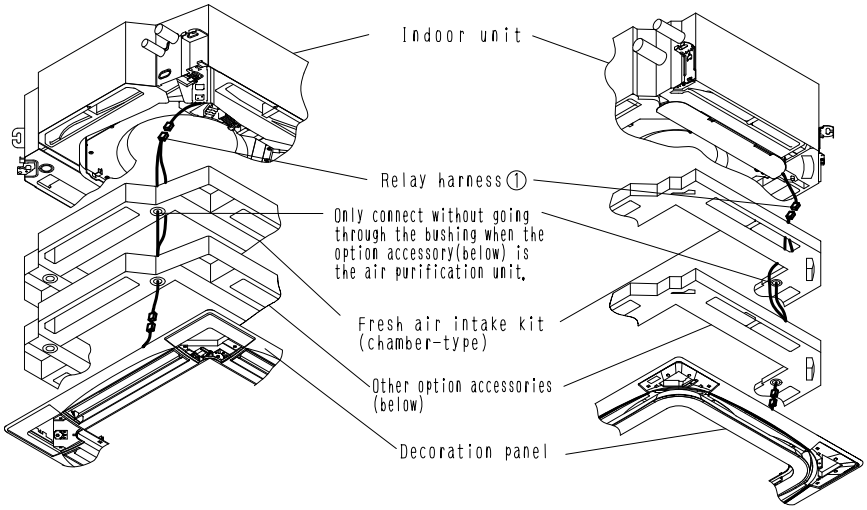
Name	Relay harness	Clamping material	Others
Shape	① 	② 	This Installation Manual
Quantity	1 PC.	2 PCS.	

Installation of the Chamber connection kit.

Refer to the installation (attachment) manuals included with the indoor unit, the option accessories (chamber-type), and Decoration panel for details on installation (attachment).

Caution

Extend the Decoration panel's swing motor lead wire using the included relay harness ① and connect it to the indoor unit. When doing this, use the included clamping material ② to tie the lead wire so it does not droop.



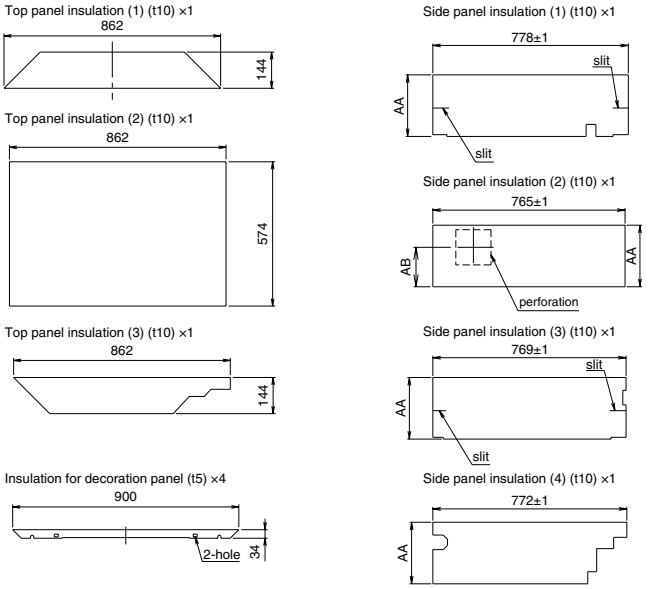
Applicable model	SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-140KVE, FHC18-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC18/24/48NUV2S, FHC21KV2S, FHC71DV2S	Applicable model	SkyAir	FCQ50-140LUV1, FCQ50-140KVEA, FCQN71-140KVEA, FCQ71/100KVLT, FCQ125/140KAVLT, FCQ30-48LUV2S
	VRV	FXF25-125LVE		VRV	FXFQ25-125PVE

C: 3P089651D

1.8 KDTP55K80 / 160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity

Dimensions Unit (mm)

Model	AA	AB
KDTP55K80	245	157
KDTP55K160	287	186



J: D3K05113

Item \ Model	KDTP55K80	KDTP55K160
Material	Polyethylene foam (with adhesive on the reverse side)	
Applicable ambient temperature	40°CDB, RH85%	
Accessories	Insulation for hanger bracket : 4 Installation manual.	

3

Installation Manual

Precautions

- This kit can be mounted to an ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- This kit cannot be used for the mounting of humidifier and branch duct.

Parts content

Check the following parts.

Name	Side insulator plate (1)	Side insulator plate (2)	Side insulator plate (3)	Side insulator plate (4)	Top insulator plate (1)
Shape	① 778mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; A; Slit	② 765mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; A	③ 769mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; A; Slit	④ 772mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; A	⑤
Number of pieces	1	1	1	1	1

Name	Top insulator plate (2)	Top insulator plate (3)	suspension bracket insulator	Panel insulator	Installation manual
Shape	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩
Number of pieces	1	1	4	4	1 (This manual)

1 Sticking Procedure

- Perform the work on soft cloth to prevent damage to the indoor unit and panel.

<Procedure>

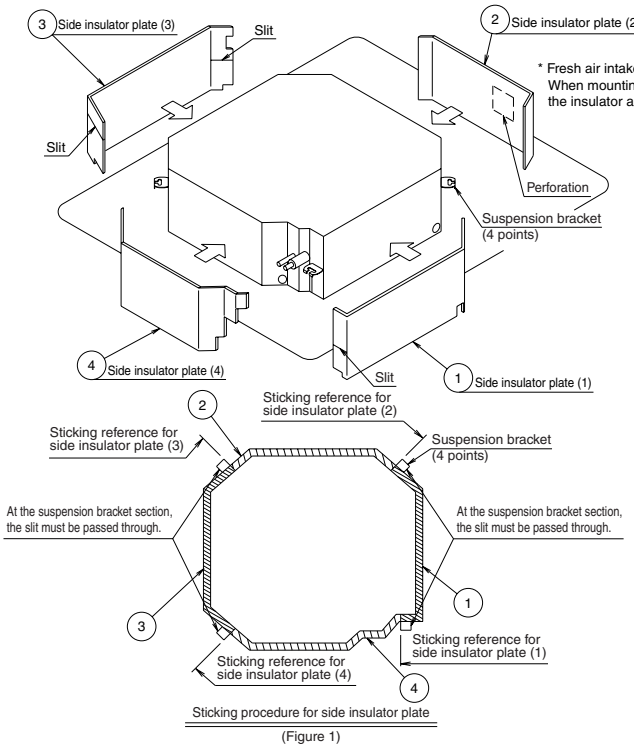
(1) According to the sticking procedure for the side insulator plate, stick the side insulator plates (1 to 4) in sequential order without leaving any gap in between. (Figure 1)
(When mounting the fresh air intake kit (KDDP55X160), cut off the side insulator plate (2) with a knife along the perforation. The cut-off insulator is no longer needed.)

(2) Stick the top insulator plates (1 to 3) without leaving any gap in between. Also, stick the top insulator plates without leaving any gap against the side insulator plates all the way around. (Figure 2)

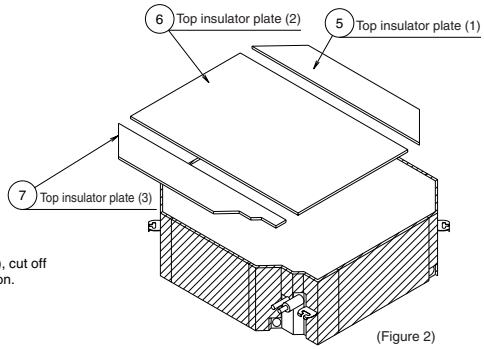
(3) Hang the product.

(4) Stick the suspension bracket insulator to the suspension bracket together with the washer and bolt. (Figure 3)

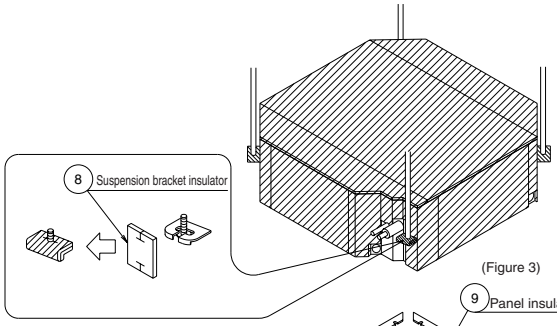
(5) Lastly, stick the panel insulator to the backside of the panel. (Figure 4)



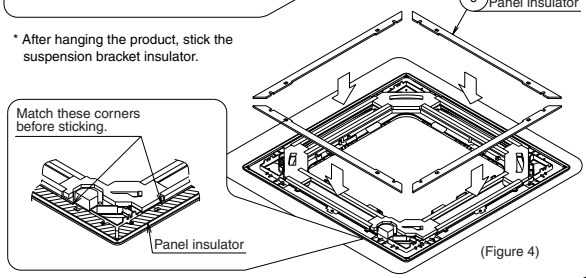
(Figure 1)



(Figure 2)



(Figure 3)



(Figure 4)

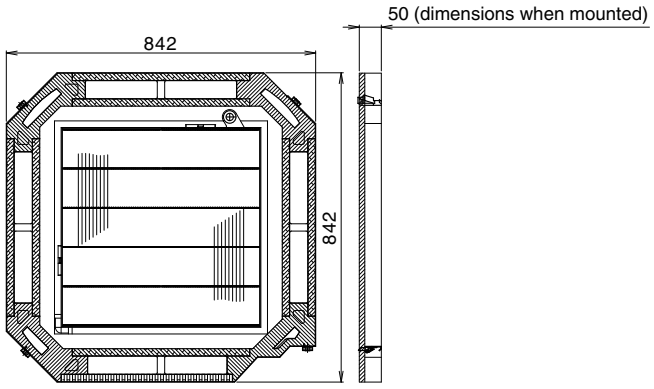
JC: 3P179341E

1.9 KAFP556B80 / 160, KAFP557B80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Unit

KAFP556B80 / KAFP556B160
KAFP557B80 / KAFP557B160



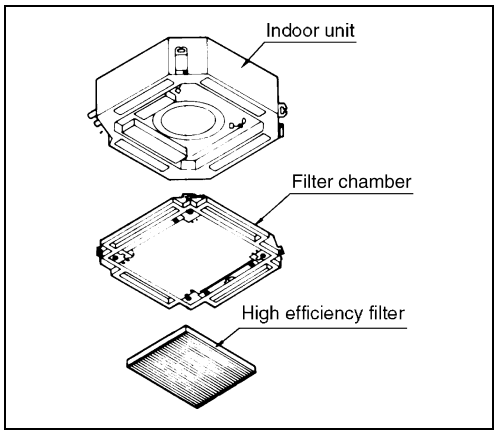
Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K07905
J: D3K07955

Caution

· Field setting by remote controller is necessary when the high efficiency filter is installed.



Item	Model	KAFP556B80	KAFP556B160	KAFP557B80	KAFP557B160
Material		Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	20	33	20	33
	l/sec	333	550	333	550
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Accessories		Installation manual. Sealing material: 2			
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.6	4.2	3.6	4.2

Replacement filter (optional accessories)	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160

Installation Manual

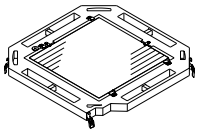
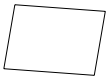
⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow >.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and to the installation manual of the decoration panel.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	High efficiency filter unit	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

1 Mounting of High Efficiency Filter Unit

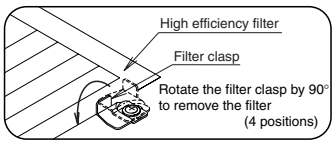
* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
  Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
  Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit's main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

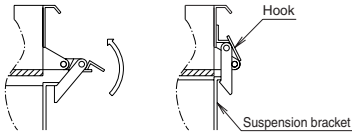
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

(1) Remove the high efficiency filter from the high efficiency filter unit. (Figure 1)
(2) Mount the high efficiency filter unit to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions). (Figure 2) to (Figure 4)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber match. (Figure 3) (Figure 5)

Figure 1





Fixing method of hooks

Figure 2

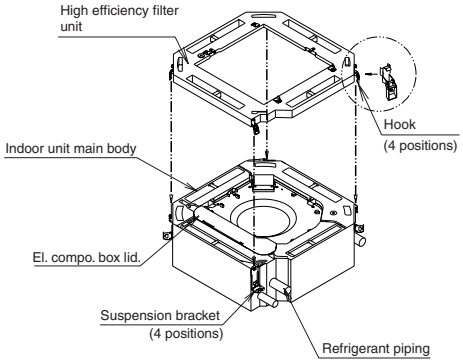


Figure 3 Mounting status

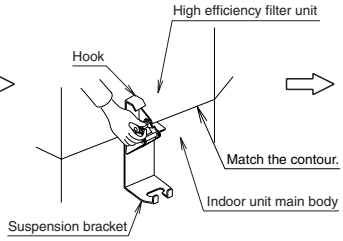


Figure 4 Status after mounting

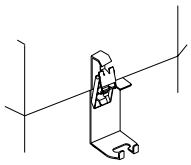
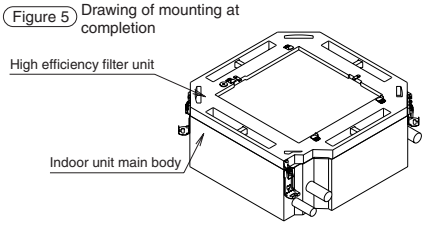


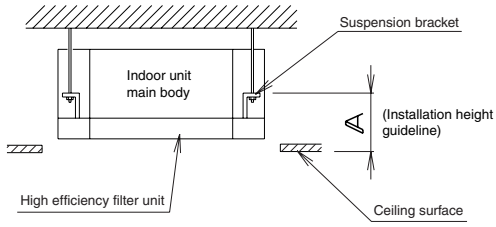
Figure 5 Drawing of mounting at completion



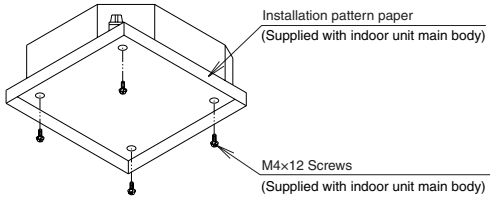
JC: 3K022806B

❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and High Efficiency Filter Unit

- Install the indoor unit main body and high efficiency filter unit.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the high efficiency filter unit to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.
- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1 BYCP125K-WS	185



[Mounting of installation pattern paper]

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of High Efficiency Filter

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the high efficiency filter unit.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

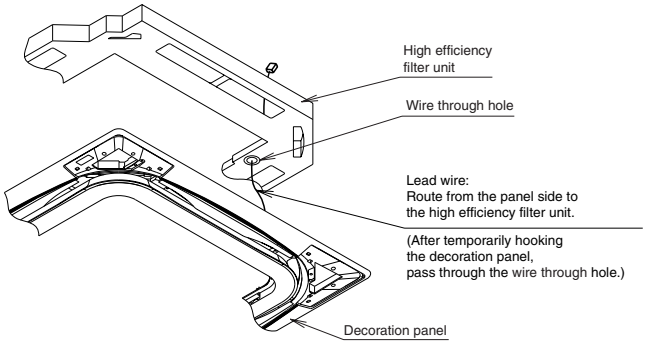
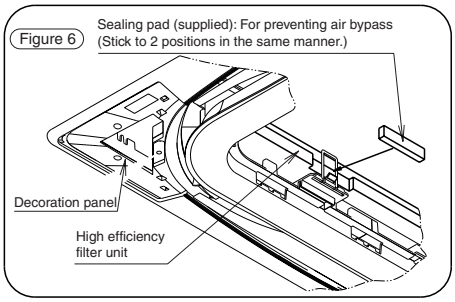


Figure 6



- Mounting of high efficiency filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the high efficiency filter. Figure 6 Figure 7

  When you attach the high efficiency filter to the unit, do not apply too much force to the filter.

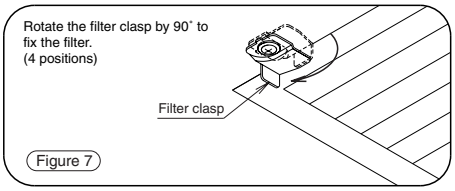


Figure 7

With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor PC board ass'y.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- With the mounting of a high efficiency filter unit, setting the indoor unit main body is required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, change the second code number as shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

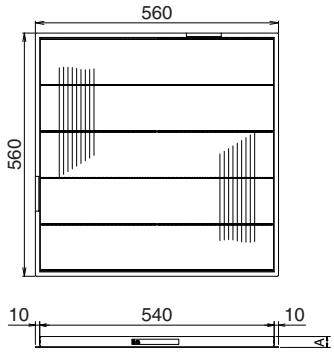
Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.	Remarks
13 or 23	0	02	80 only
	1	02	Both 80 and 160

JC: 3K022806B

1.10 KAFP552B80 / 160, KAFP553B80 / 160 — Replacement High Efficiency Filter

Dimensions Unit (mm)

Model	A
KAFP552B80 · KAFP553B80	25
KAFP552B160 · KAFP553B160	45



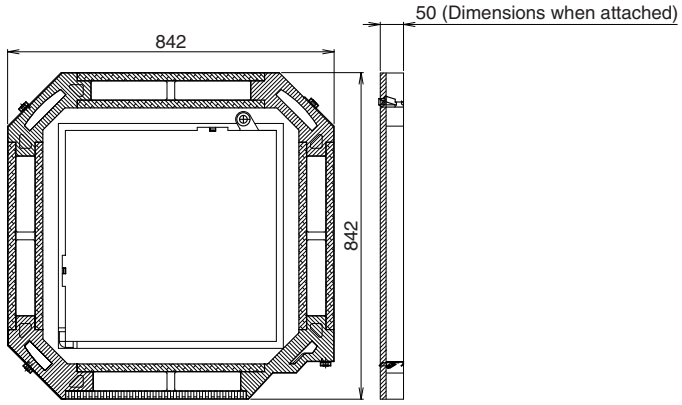
J: D3K07954
J: D3K07953

Caution
- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (KDDFP55B160 or KDDF55DA160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Item	Model	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	23.5	35.5	23.5	35.5
	l/sec	392	592	392	592
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.6	1.2	0.6	1.2

1.11 KDDFP55B160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K07903

Item			Model KDDFP55B160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFP552B80 KAFP552B160
		90% (colorimetric method)	KAFP553B80 KAFP553B160
	Ultra long-life filter		KAFP55H160H
Material			Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.
Accessories			Installation manual Sealing pad : 2
Mass (Weight)		kg	3.0

Installation Manual

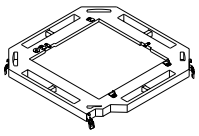
⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety Precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Recommendations (When using ultra-long life filter)

The ultra-long life filter can be reused after cleaning.
After engineering work is completed, provide instructions to the customer about the filter cleaning interval and how to remove the filter.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Filter chamber	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

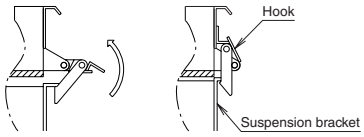
Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.

1 Mounting of Filter Chamber

* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
  Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
  Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

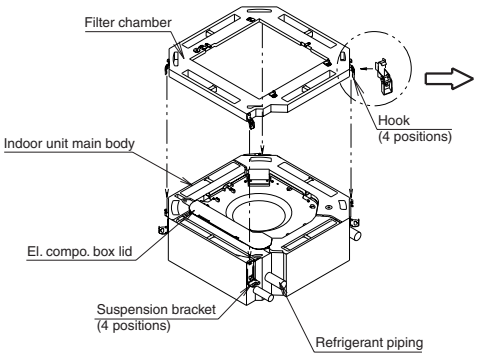
(1) Mount the filter chamber to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions).
(Figure 1) to (Figure 3)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.



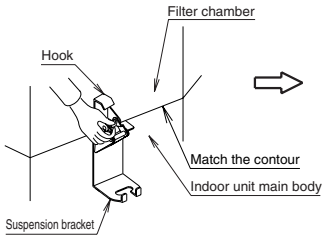
Fixing method of hooks

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber are match. (Figure 2) (Figure 4)

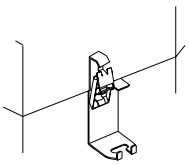
(Figure 1)



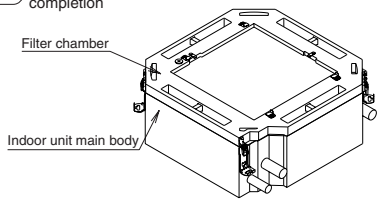
(Figure 2) Mounting status



(Figure 3) Status after mounting



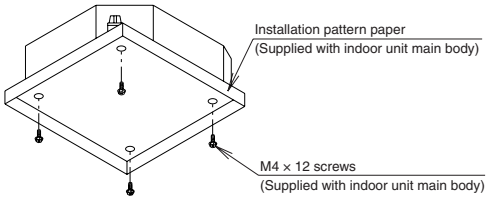
(Figure 4) Drawing of mounting at completion



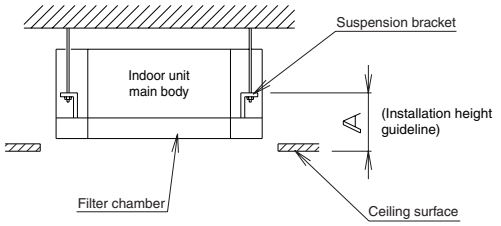
JC: 3K022717B

❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Filter Chamber

- Install the indoor unit main body and filter chamber.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the filter chamber to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.
- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)



[Mounting of installation pattern paper]



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1 BYCP125K-WS	185

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of Filter Chamber

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the filter chamber.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

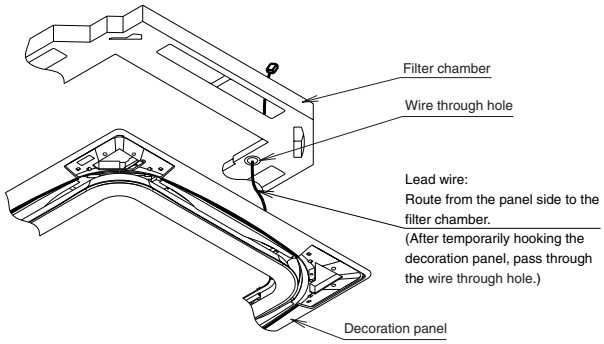
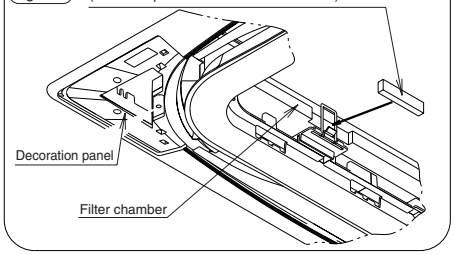


Figure 5



- Mounting of filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the filter.
  However, for a high-efficiency filter, use cutter to cut in the groove and remove the unnecessary areas (2 areas) before installing the filter.
  Figure 5 Figure 6
- ∗ When you attach the high efficiency filter to the unit, do not apply too much force to the filter.

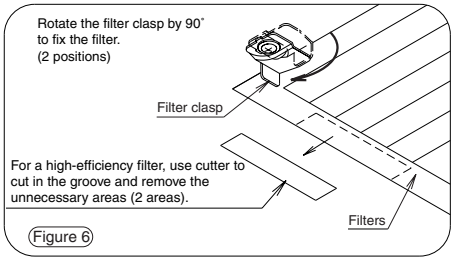


Figure 6

With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor PC board assembly.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- Depending on the types of mounting filters, setting the indoor unit main body is may be required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

Filter name		Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.		Filter sign display interval time
High performance filter	80 only	13 or 23	0	02		———
	Both 80 and 160		1	02		
Ultra-long life filter		10 or 20	0	Where there is minimal fouling (Example: Office, etc.)	01	Approximately every 10,000 hours
				Where there is considerable fouling (Example: Pachinko parlor, etc.)	02	Approximately every 5,000 hours
			1	02		Initial setting for ultra-long life filter

JC: 3K022717B

1.12 KAFP551K160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

KAFP551K160

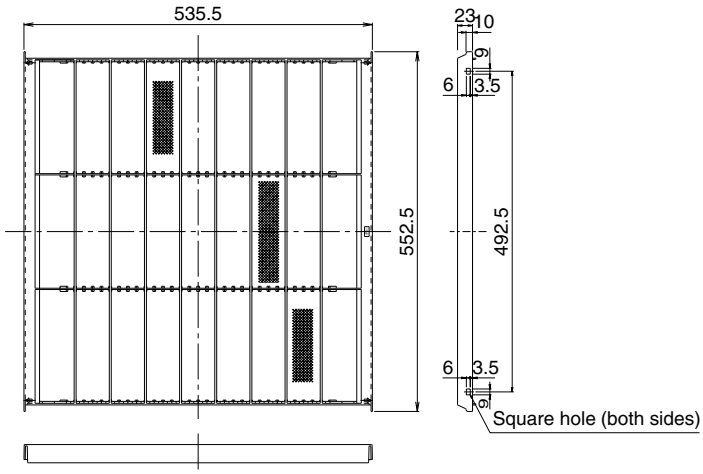


Item	Model	KAFP551K160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	4.9 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	60 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	18
	l/sec	300
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof and antibacterial resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.2

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

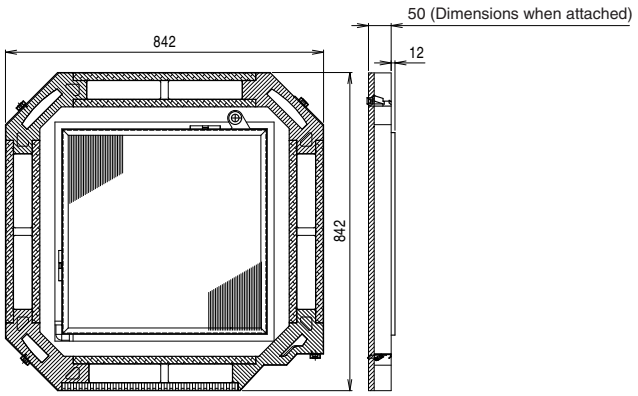
Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K05114

1.13 KAFP55B160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)

Dimensions Unit (mm)

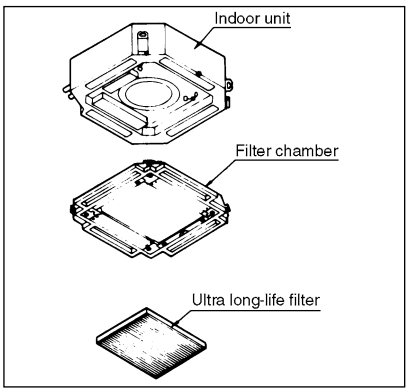


J: D3K07904

Caution

- In order to mount a ultra long life filter unit, setting of the main unit of indoor unit should be made.
- Individual filter (KAFP55H160H) is available as an optional accessory.

Mounting locations	Filter cleaning period
Locations with much dust	Approximately every 5,000 hours
Locations with little dust (e.g. offices)	Approximately every 10,000 hours



Item	Model	KAFP55B160
Material		Galvanized steel iron. Foam polystyrene.
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Polypropylene honeycomb (with mould-proof)
Number of sheets included		1
Accessories		Installation manual. Sealing pad : 2
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.7

Installation Manual

⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

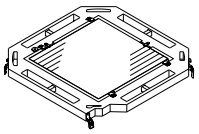
Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <Round flow>.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.

Recommendations

The ultra-long life filter can be reused after cleaning.
After the engineering works are completed, provide instructions to the customer about the filter cleaning interval and how to remove the filter.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Ultra-long life filter unit	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

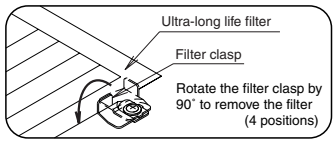
1 Mounting of Ultra-Long Life Filter Unit

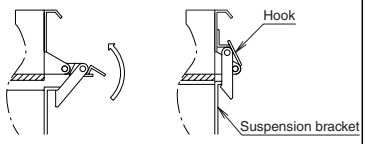
* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
  Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
  Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

(1) Remove the ultra-long life filter from the ultra-long life filter unit. (Figure 1)
(2) Mount the ultra-long life filter unit to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions). (Figure 2) to (Figure 4)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber match. (Figure 3) (Figure 5)

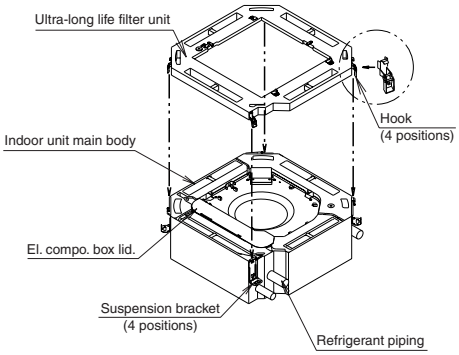
(Figure 1)



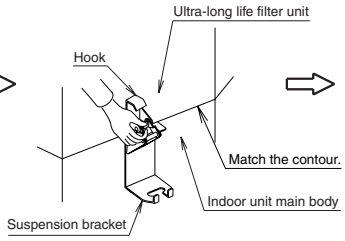


Fixing method of hooks

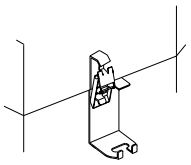
(Figure 2)



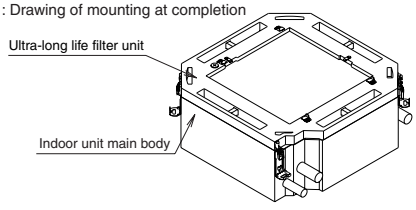
(Figure 3) Mounting status



(Figure 4) Status after mounting



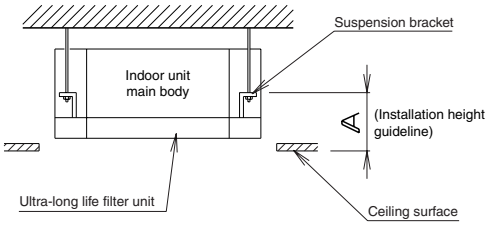
(Figure 5): Drawing of mounting at completion



JC: 3K022852B

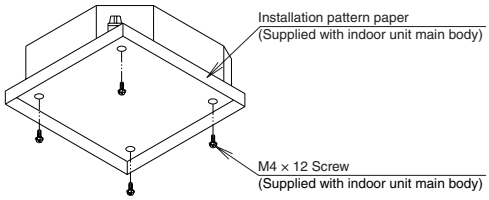
❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Ultra-Long Life Filter Unit

- Install the indoor unit main body and ultra-long life filter unit.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the ultra-long life filter unit to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1 BYCP125K-WS	185

- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit by using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)

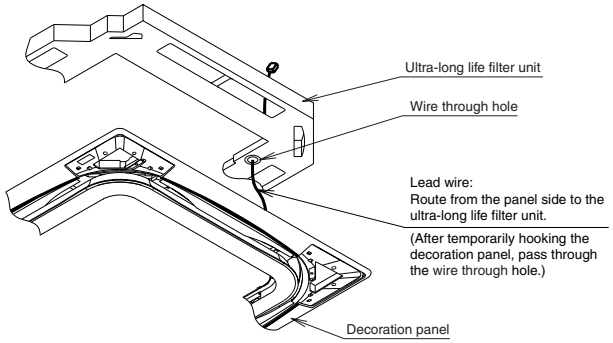


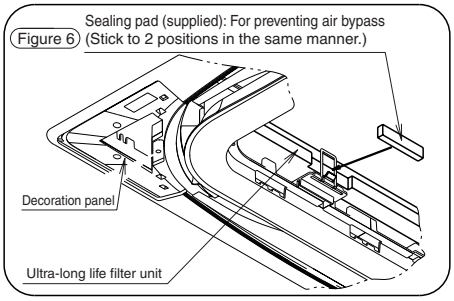
[Mounting of installation pattern paper]

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

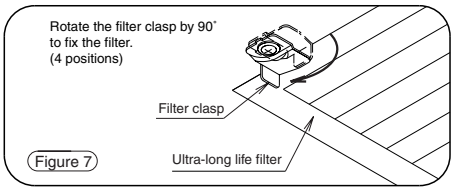
❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of Ultra-Long Life Filter

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the ultra-long life filter unit.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.





- Mounting of ultra-long life filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the ultra-long life filter. (Figure 6) (Figure 7)



With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor printed circuit board assembly.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- With the mounting of a ultra-long life filter unit, setting the indoor unit main body is required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.		Filter sign display interval time
10 or 20	0	Where there is minimal fouling (Example: Office, etc.)	01	Approximately every 10,000 hours
		Where there is considerable fouling (Example: Pachinko parlor, etc.)	02	Approximately every 5,000 hours
	1	02		Initial setting for ultra-long life filter

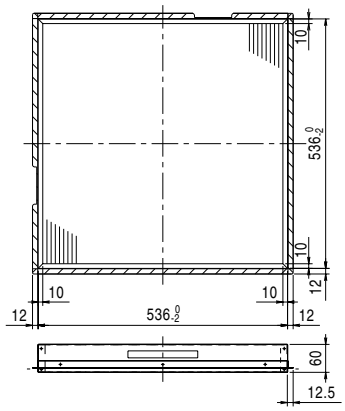
JC: 3K022852B

1.14 KAFP55H160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter

KAFP55H160H



Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K04257

Caution

- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.
- The filter chamber (KDDFP55B160) is required when the ultra long life filter will be installed.

Item	Model	KAFP55H160H
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.4

1.15 KDJP55B80 / 160 — Branch Duct Chamber

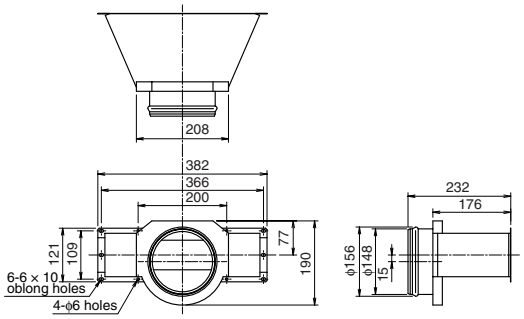
Item \ Model	KDJP55B80	KDJP55B160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet (with insulation)	
Accessories	Mounting screws. Blocking pad. Tape for fixing the blocking pad. Opening sealing material. Insulation material. Installation manual.	

Caution

1. When mounting, refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

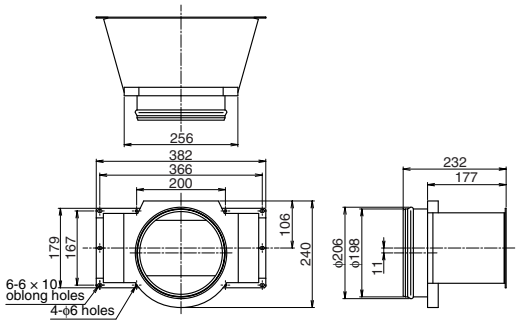
Dimensions Unit (mm)

KDJP55B80



J: D3K07974A

KDJP55B160



J: D3K07975A

Installation Manual

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit main body and to the one for the decoration panel.
- For the duct (field supplied) to be connected, those specified in the table to the right are recommended.

Recommended duct

Branch duct chamber	Connecting duct kit name
KDJP55B80	K-FDS151D (1 m) or K-FDS152D (2 m) (Flexible duct: Nominal diameter of ϕ150)
KDJP55B160	K-FDS201D (1 m) or K-FDS202D (2 m) (Flexible duct: Nominal diameter of ϕ200)

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name		Main body insulator			Main body opening sealant		
Shape/ Number		1	2	3	4	5A (Small)	5B (Large)
Number of pieces	80	1	1	2	2	2	—
	160					1	1

Name		Branch duct chamber	Mounting screw	Installation manual	Sealing material	Tape for fixing the sealing material
Shape/ Number		6	7 M4×16	8	9	10
Number of pieces	80	1	10	1	2	2
	160					

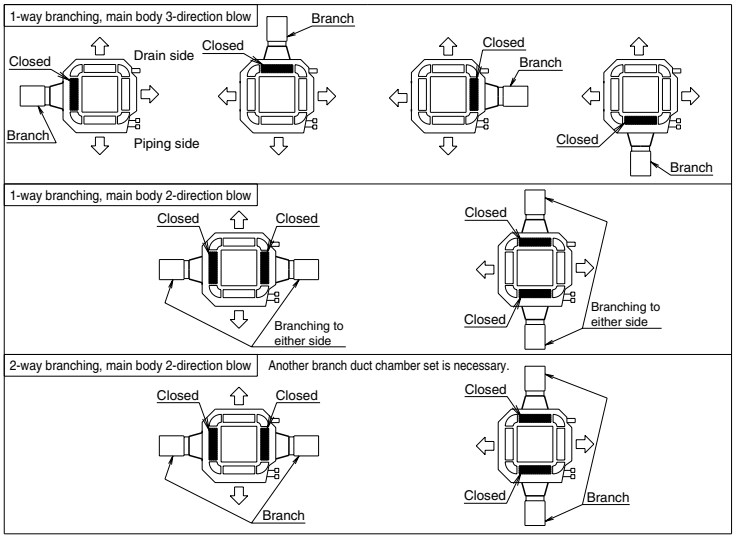
1 Preparation Before Installation

With this branch duct, an independent 4-way and simultaneous 2-branch drawing are also possible.

- With this branch duct chamber, the blow directions shown in the figure to the right can be selected.
  Select the blow direction that is most appropriate for the room shape and installation position. (Blow directions other than those in the figure to the right cannot be selected.)
- From the external static pressure/air volume characteristics (refer to the Engineering Data), select the duct length and air outlet.

Precautions

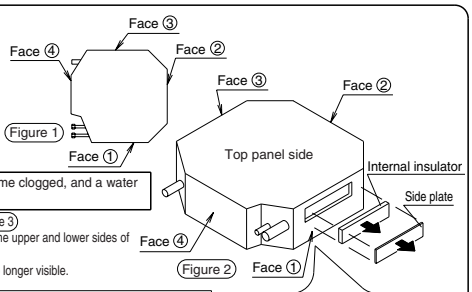
- Be sure to securely block the air outlet of the indoor unit main body to which the branch duct chamber is mounted. If the blocking is incomplete, water spraying or condensation may occur. Do not block the corner sections.
  (Refer to 4 Mounting of Sealing Material to Indoor Unit .)
- When mounting the branch duct chamber, be sure to perform field setting of the indoor unit main body.
  (Refer to 5 Field Setting .)



2 Mounting of Branch Duct Chamber

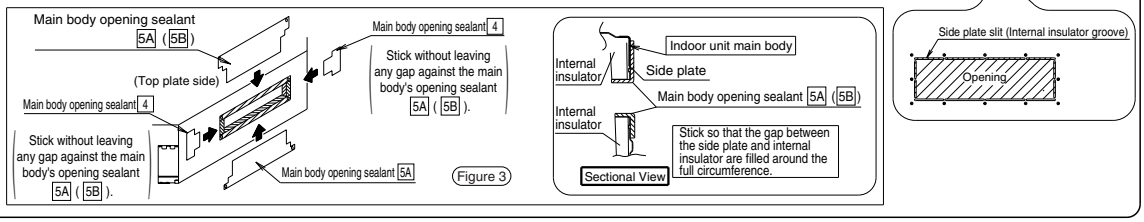
When an installation is performed after mounting the branch duct chamber to the indoor unit main body (at new installation), do not apply force to the branch duct chamber. (Deformation may occur.)

(1) Select the position where the branch duct chamber is mounted.
(2) Mount the branch duct chamber to the indoor unit according to the following procedure. (Figure 2 is an example of the face ① side.)
1) Along the slit, cut the side plate of the indoor unit to which the branch duct chamber is mounted. Then, cut the internal insulator along the groove.
(Use nippers, etc., to cut the slit section, and cutter, etc., to cut the groove section.) Figure 2



⚠ For the port opening operation, do not use a tool that produces chips, such as a saw. The drain system may become clogged, and a water leak may occur.

2) Use the sealant for sticking so that the gaps between the side plate and internal insulator are filled around the full circumference. Figure 3
- First, stick the main body's opening sealant 4 to left and right of the opening, and the main body's opening sealant 5A (5B) to the upper and lower sides of the opening.
  At this time, fold the main body opening sealant towards the inside so that the gap between the side plate and internal insulator is no longer visible.



JC: 1P267944D

3) Mount the branch duct chamber 6. (Figure 4)

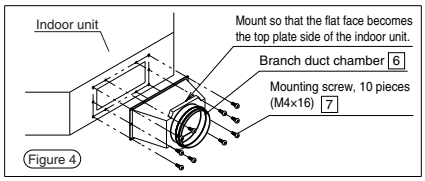


Figure 4

(3) Stick the main body insulator to the indoor unit. (The figure is an example of the face ① side) (Figure 5)

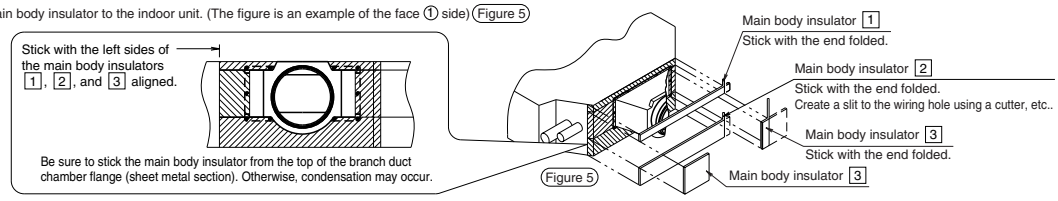


Figure 5

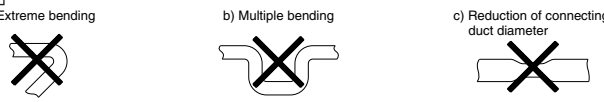
3 Duct Connection <<Duct: KDJP55B80 ··· Nominal diameter of ϕ150 KDJP55B160 ··· Nominal diameter of ϕ200>>

1) Connect the duct to the outside of the branch duct chamber. (Figure 6)
- After the connection, wrap the connection area with tape (field supplied) to prevent an air leak.

• Apply insulation for all the ducts.

Precautions Do not perform duct manipulation described below.

a) Extreme bending b) Multiple bending c) Reduction of connecting duct diameter



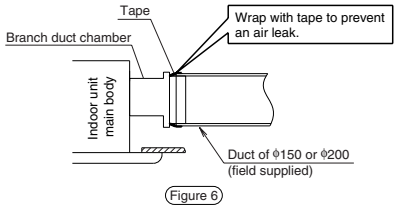
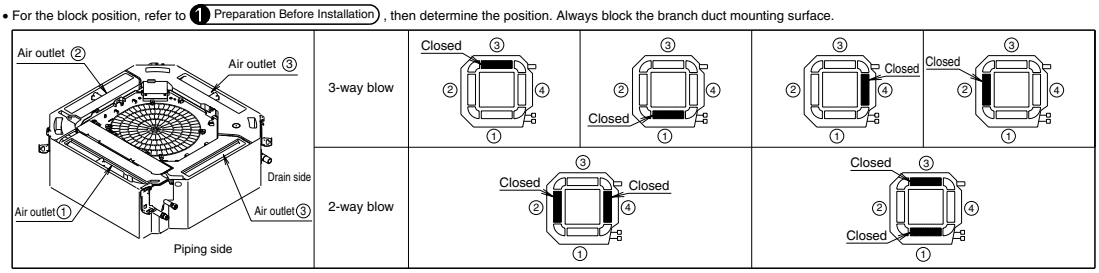


Figure 6

∗ 1. Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
2. When a duct goes through fire protection areas, including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
3. When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.

4 Mounting of Sealing Material to Indoor Unit <<With the sealing material supplied in this kit, blocking of two openings can be performed.>>

• For the block position, refer to 1 Preparation Before Installation, then determine the position. Always block the branch duct mounting surface.

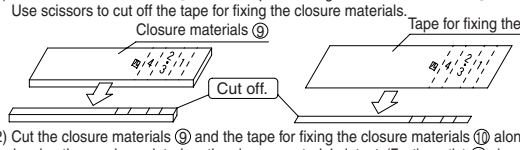


<Round flow>

(1) Prepare the closure materials and the tape for fixing the closure materials to suit the outlets to be closed (①to④) and apply them to the outlets.

Precautions When pasting the closure materials to the tape, be sure that the number printed on the closure materials are visible so that the closure materials can be identified easily.

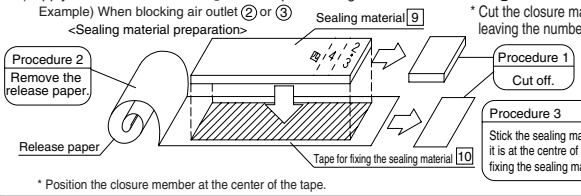
1) Cut the closure materials ⑨ and the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩ along the longitudinal perforation (--- Part). Use scissors to cut off the tape for fixing the closure materials.



2) Cut the closure materials ⑨ and the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩ along the latitudinal perforation (--- Part), leaving the number printed on the closure materials intact. (For the outlet ④, leave the number "4".) Use scissors to cut off the tape for fixing the closure materials.

3) Apply the closure materials ⑨ to the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩.

Example) When blocking air outlet ② or ③

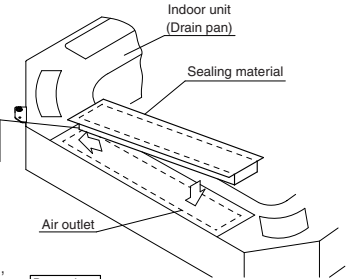


* Position the closure member at the center of the tape.

* Cut the closure materials and the tape along the perforation, leaving the number of the outlet to close intact.

Precautions The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of the outlet to be blocked becomes visible.

(2) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (1) to the air outlet of the indoor unit main body.



Precautions When pasting the closure materials to the outlet, be careful not to leave any gap or a rising part between the closure materials and the outlet. It may cause leaking air and condensation.

5 Mounting of Decoration Panel

For safety, be sure to shut off power supply before starting the decoration panel mounting operation and connecting the connectors for swinging.

JC: 1P267944D

Refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
After mounting the decoration panel, check that no gap is present between the decoration panel and the unit's main body.

6 Field Setting

• When mounting the branch duct chamber, setting the indoor unit main body is required. After all the engineering work is completed, perform setting together with field setting of the indoor unit.
Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right. For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

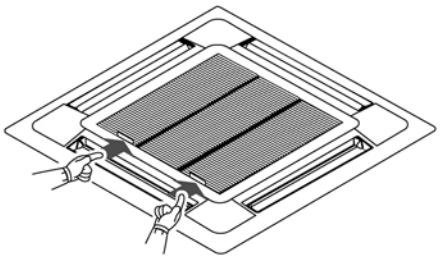
Branch blow pattern	Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.
1-way branching, 3-direction blow	13 or 23	1	02
1-way branching and 2-way blow or 2-way branching and 2-way blow			03

JC: 1P269813B

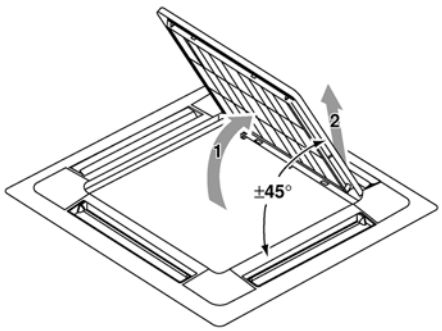
2. FFQ — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi Flow)

2.1 BYFQ60B8W1 — Decoration Panel

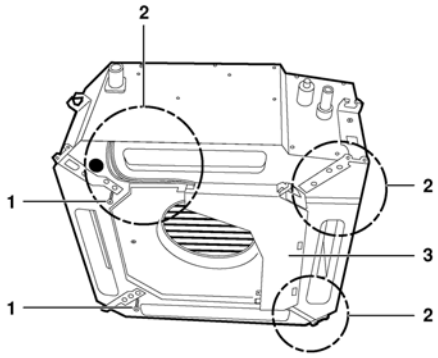
Installation Manual



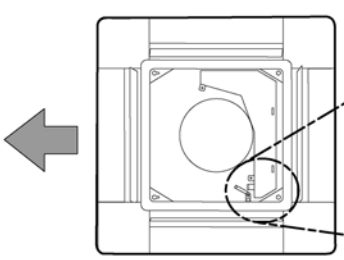
1



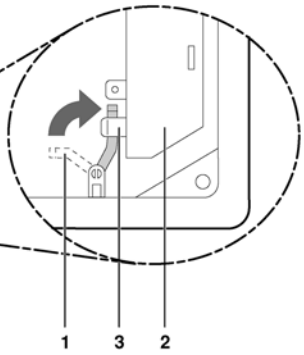
2



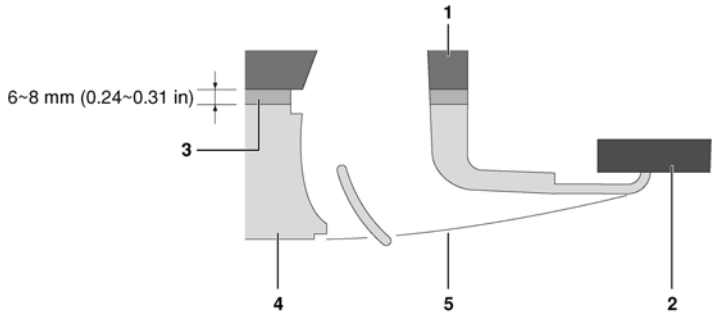
3



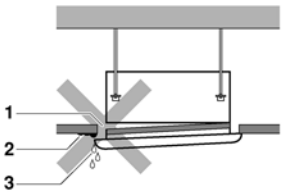
4



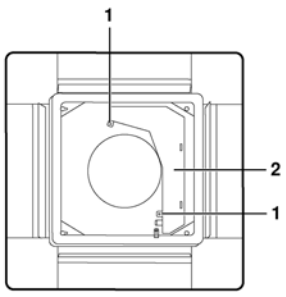
5

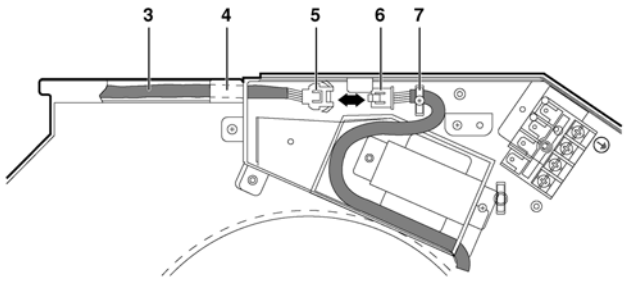


6



7





8

4PW42160-1

Read this manual attentively before installation. Do not throw it away. Keep it in your files for future reference.

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electric shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Be sure only to use accessories made by Daikin that are specifically designed for the use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.

If unsure of installation procedures or use, always contact your dealer for advice and information.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Leave the unit inside its packaging until you reach the installation site.
- Refer to the warning symbols on the unit.

Rotary fan



Cut off the main power before opening the grille.

- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for items not described in this manual.

NOTE **To the installer**

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him or her the operation manual of the indoor unit.

Accessories

Installation manual	
Screws (4x)	

PREPARATION BEFORE INSTALLATION

For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase the optional blocking pad kit.

Handling of the decoration panel

To prevent any damage to the decoration panel, take care of the following:

- Never place the panel with the front facing down.
- Never let the panel lean against a wall.
- Never put it down on a projecting object.
- Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap in order to prevent malfunction of the swing flap.

Preparing the decoration panel for installation

1 Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.
- Push the suction grille lever in the direction of the arrow and open the grille. (See figure 1)
- Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees so the grille can be removed. (See figure 2)

INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT

Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for details on installing the indoor unit.

1 Hold the decoration panel against the indoor unit by matching the piping side and drain side marks on the decoration panel with the position of the piping section and drain section of the indoor unit.

2 Install the decoration panel.

1 Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire does not come out of the groove for routing the wire inside the indoor unit (3 locations). If it has, put it back in. (Connecting the decoration panel with the wire out of the groove may cause water leakage.)

2 Provisionally tighten the 2 supplied screws approximately 5 mm (0.2 in) into the indoor unit at the side opposite the switch box. (See figure 3)

1 Supplied screws
2 Groove for wire routing
3 Switch box

3 Slide the panel in the direction of the arrow, matching the 2 attachment holes ( ) over the provisionally tightened screws. (See figure 4)

4 Turn the decoration panel lever at the side of the indoor unit switch box over the hook located on that switch box. (See figure 5)

1 Lever
2 Switch box
3 Hook

5 Attach the remaining screws and tighten all 4 screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit is reduced to 6~8 mm (0.24~0.31 in). (See figure 6)

1 Indoor unit
2 Ceiling
3 Sealing material
4 Decoration panel
5 Air outlet

Precautions

- Improper tightening of the screws (see figure 7) may cause air to leak into the unit and air to escape between the ceiling and the decoration panel (1), resulting in contamination (2) and dew formation (3).
- If there is a gap remaining between the ceiling and the decoration panel after tightening the screws, re-adjust the indoor unit body height.

3 Wiring of the decoration panel (See figure 8)

1	Screws (2)
2	Switch box
3	Swing flap motor lead wire
4	Hang the swing flap motor lead wire on this tab
5	Connector of the decoration panel swing flap motor
6	Connector of the indoor unit
7	Clamp Pass the swing flap motor lead wire through the clamp as shown. After connection, store the connector inside the switch box.

1 Remove the switch box cover after making sure that the power to the unit is off.
2 Connect the connectors of the swing flap motor lead wire.
3 Put the switch box cover back in place and fix it with the 2 screws again.

- If the connectors are not connected properly, the swing flap will not work.
- Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

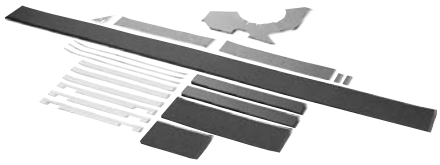
INSTALLATION OF THE SUCTION GRILLE

Install the suction grille by reversing the procedure shown in "Preparing the decoration panel for installation" on page 1.

- The suction grille may be installed in 4 directions by simply turning it 90 degrees.
- Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or to comply with the demands of the customer.

NOTE Be careful not to get the swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

2.2 KDBH44BA60 — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet



Component

Name	Sealing material	Tape for fixing the sealing material	Insulation for side plate			Moisture absorber for bell-mouth
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape	①	②	③-1 100mm×179mm	③-2 100mm×370mm	③-3 100mm×1538mm	④
Name	Moisture absorber for swing flap		Moisture absorber for panel edge	Moisture absorber for attached point	Moisture absorber for flesh air intake	
Quantity	3 pieces	3 pieces	3 pieces	1 piece	2 pieces	
Shape	⑤ 25mm×361mm	⑥	⑦ 8mm×450mm	⑧	⑨ 50mm×20mm	

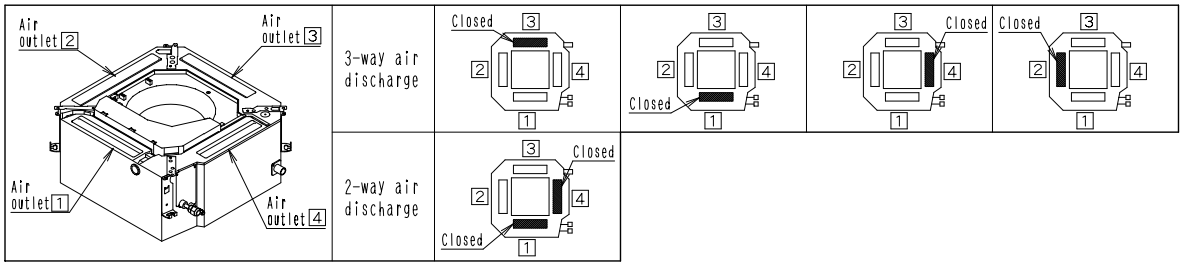
Installation Manual

❶ The direction of air discharge and the positioning of sealing material

(1) Selection of the air outlet

- Select the direction of air discharge from the following table according to the location of the indoor unit.
  Refer to ❷ Setting for indoor unit for setting position number.
  Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for selection of installation location.

Caution Never select the direction of air discharge other than the following pattern. (You may have a condensation problem.)

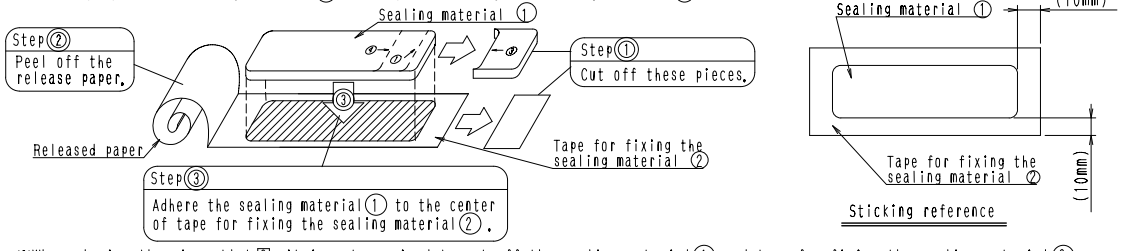


(2) Prepare the sealing material ① and the tape for fixing the sealing material ② according to the air outlet No. to be closed.

- Cut off the sealing material ① and the tape for fixing the sealing material ② along the perforated lines (marked ———).
- Adhere the sealing material ① to tape for fixing the sealing material ② .
  (Make sure that the sealing material ① is placed at the center of the tape for fixing the sealing material ② .)

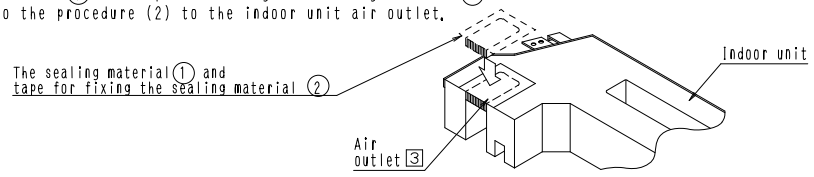
Example) For closing the air outlet 3

〈How to prepare the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② 〉



※When closing the air outlet 2, it is not required to cut off the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② .

(3) Adhere the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② prepared according to the procedure (2) to the indoor unit air outlet.



Adhering the sealing material for air outlet

1P109292B

❷ Setting for indoor unit

It is required to make a field setting from the remote controller according to how the indoor units are installed.
The direction of air discharge must also be set by the remote controller.

- The 3 different kinds of setting such as "Mode number" , "The setting switch number" and "The setting position number" must be made by the remote controller.
- Refer to the item of "Field setting" in the operation manual of the remote controller for the setting procedure.

Setting according to number of use of the air discharge.
Check the setting position number corresponding to the direction of air discharge in a table, below.

(Content of setting)

(Number of use of air outlets)	Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.
3-way air discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way air discharge			03

❸ Installation of the insulation

Please turn off the power supply for safety absolutely , before you do installation of the decoration panel and affixation of insulation and connected work of swing conector.

(1) Adhere the insulations for side plate ③ in position, referring Fig. 1 Fig. 2 .
(2) Adhere the moisture absorber for bell-mouth ④ on the inner surface of the bell-mouth.
See Fig. 1 Fig. 2 Fig. 3 .

Fig. 1

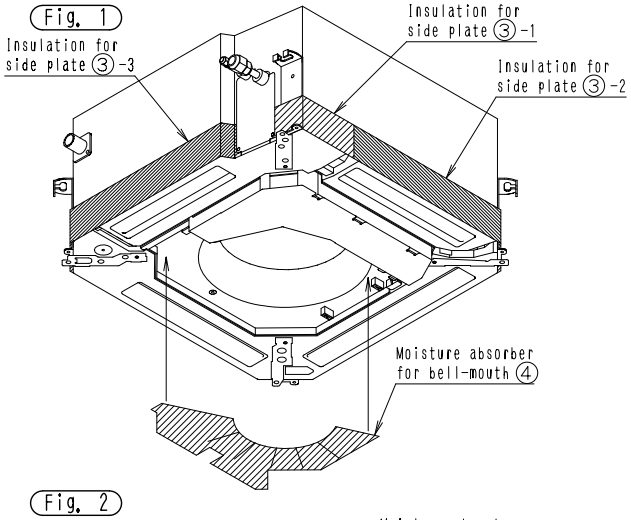


Fig. 3

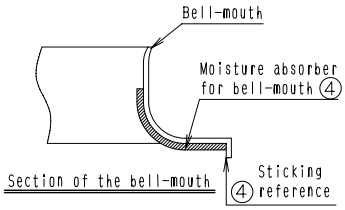
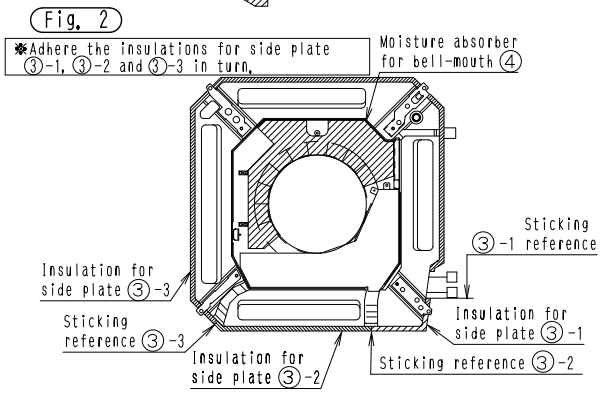


Fig. 2



1P109292B

(3) Confirm the air outlet and NO. not to be closed on the panel. See Fig. 4.
(4) Adhere the moisture absorbers for swing flap ⑤⑥ aligning with the upper edge of the swing flap on the air outlet. And, adhere the moisture absorbers for panel edge ⑦ with the panel edge on the air outlet. See Fig. 5.
(5) Adhere the moisture absorber for attached point ⑧ with the attached point to indoor unit between the air outlet 2 and 3. And, adhere the moisture absorbers for flesh air intake ⑨ with the flesh air intake hole. See Fig. 6.

Fig. 4

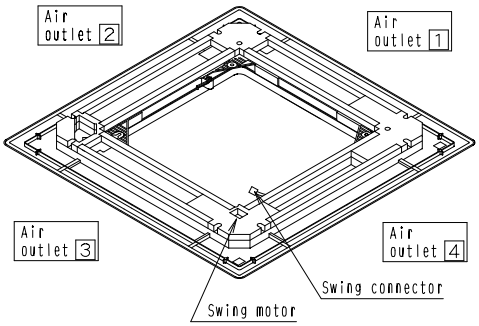


Fig. 5

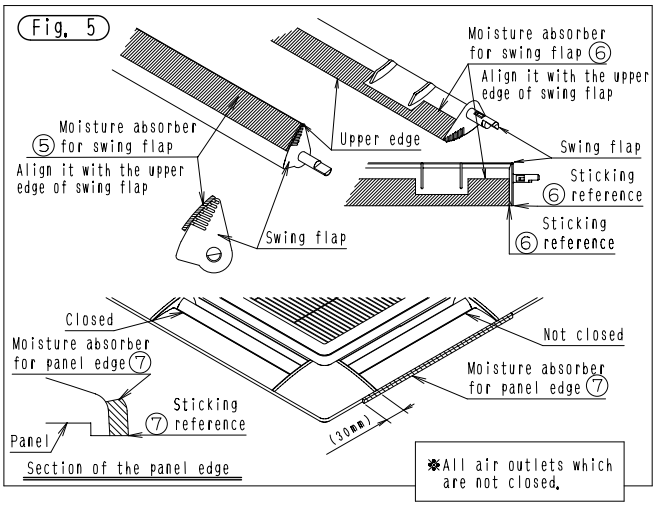
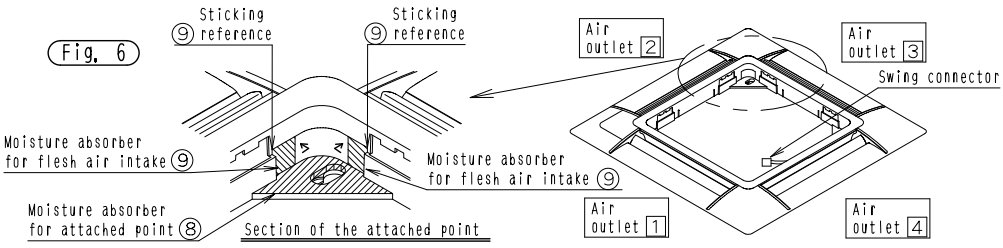


Fig. 6



1P109292B

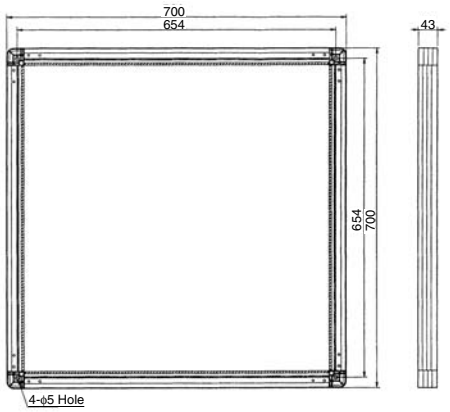
2.3 KDBQ44BA60A — Panel Spacer

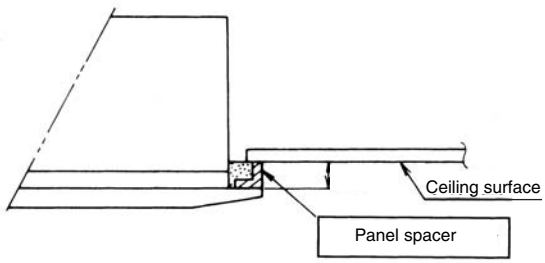


Item	Model	KDBQ44BA60A
Applicable decoration panel		BYFQ60B8W1
Exterior		White
Material		Outside frame: Resin Insulation: Foam polyethylene
Component Parts		Panel spacer. Insulation. Sealant. Mounting screws. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.5

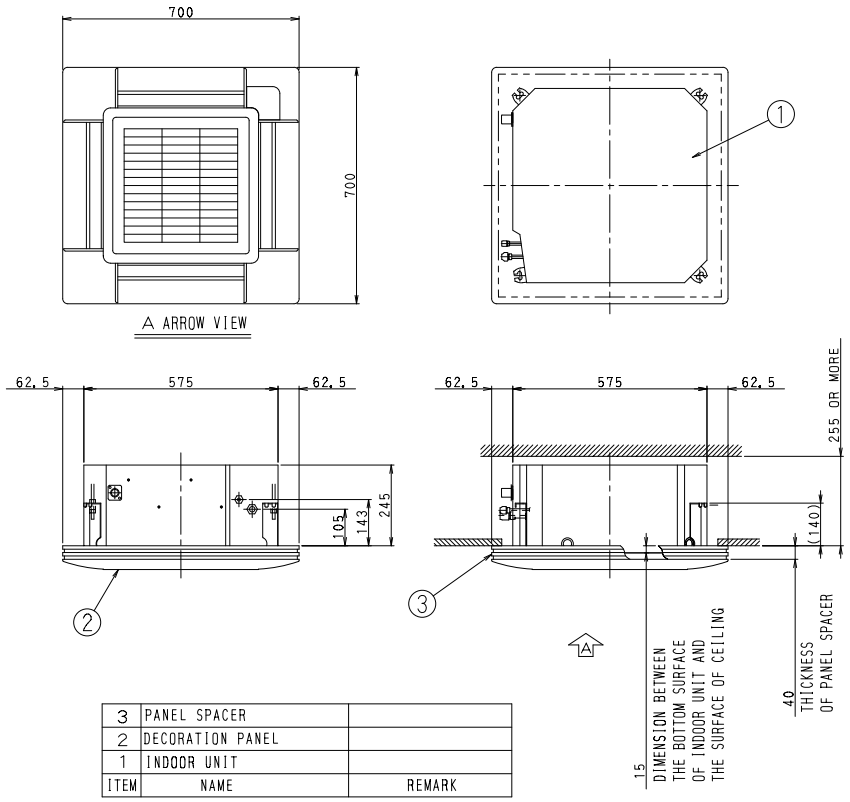
- Using the panel spacer in areas of the ceiling with limited space makes it possible to install the air conditioner.
- Hides the gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling.

Dimensions **Installation** Unit (mm)





FFQ / FXZQ + KDBQ44BA60A Unit (mm)



3D041038A

Installation Manual

Daikin Air Conditioners Panel Spacer Installation manual

KDBQ44BA60A Caution : Before installation, read this safety instruction. 1P107764-1C

Combination table

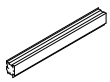
Panel spacer	KDBQ44BA60A
Decoration panel	BYFQ60B8W1

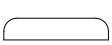
Caution

- When the Panel Spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.
- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the Panel spacer for its installation.

Contents of kit

Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Panel spacer frame	Resin corner part	Fixing metal	Screw
Quantity	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	28 PCS.
Shape・number	① 	② 	③ 	④  M4×12 Tapping screw (Class 2)

Name	Sealing material	
Quantity	2 PCS.	2 PCS.
Shape・number	⑤ 	⑥ 

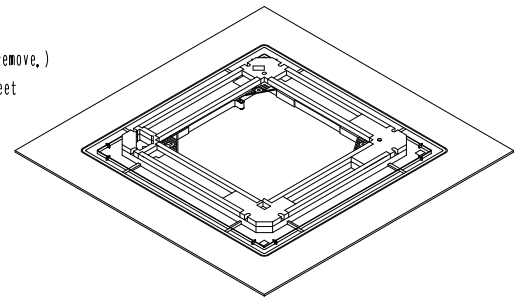
❶ Preparation of the decoration panel

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

Never place the panel face down, or lean the panel against wall or place on the projective object.
(It causes the dent or damage of the surface of the panel or damage of swing motor.)

(1) Remove the suction grill from the decoration panel.
(Refer to the installtion manual of the decoration panel how to remove.)

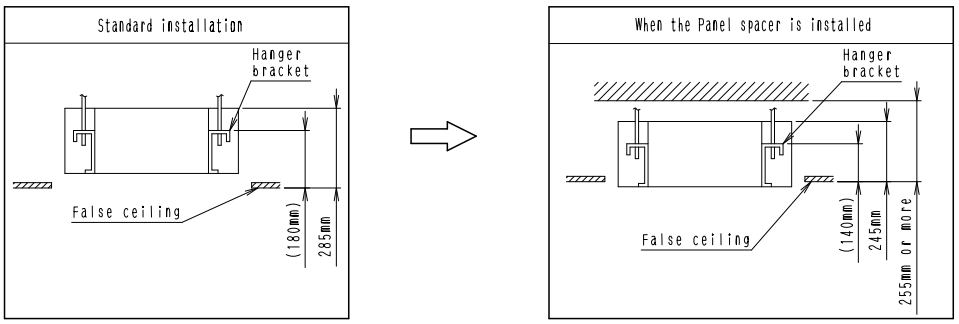
(2) Place the panel face down on the corrugated board or the vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the panel.



❷ Installation of the indoor unit

Adjust the height of the indoor unit.

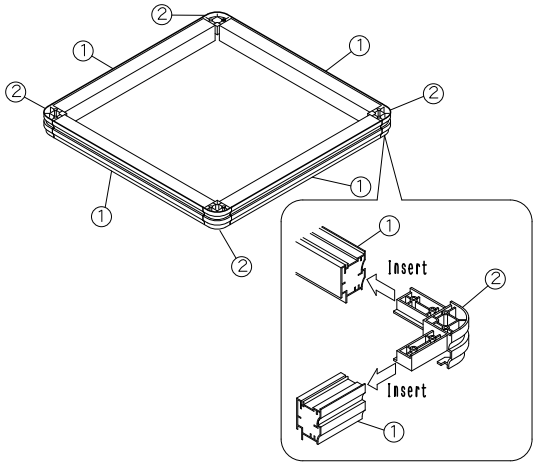
Be sure the piping will not contact with the ceiling joist etc. after adjusting the height.



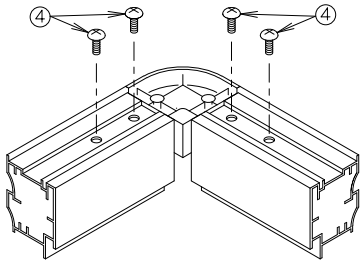
C: 1P107764C

❸Assembly of panel spacer

(1)Assemble the panel spacer frame ① and the plastic corner joint ② temporarily.



(2)Fix with the screws ④ from the top. (4 screws in each corner)

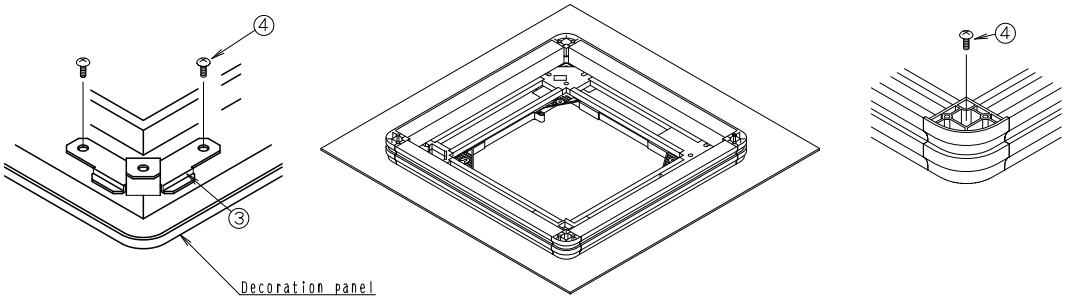


❹ Fixing to the decoration panel

(1)Set the fixing metal ③ on each corner with screws ④.

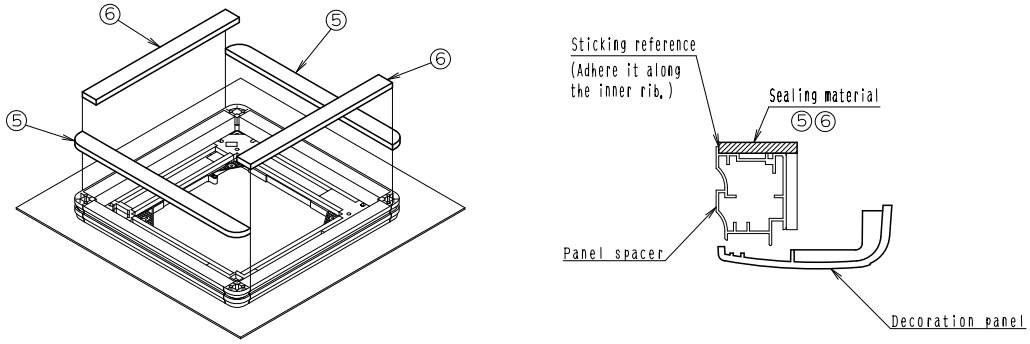
(2)Place the panel spacer assembled in item ③Assembly of panel spacer of the above on the outer frame of the decoration panel.

(3)Fix the panel spacer to the fixing metal ③ with screws ④ (4 portions).



❺Adhesion of the sealing material

Adhere the sealing material ⑤ ⑥ on the upper face of the panel spacer in the order of ⑤ and ⑥.



❻Installation of the decoration panel

Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit according to the installation manual of decoration panel.

The panel spacer is not firmly fixed to the decoration panel, so that never hold the panel spacer directly or lean the decoration panel extremely.

1P107764C

2.4 KDDQ44XA60 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

Installation

3

Daikin Air Conditioners Fresh Air Intake Kit (Duct Flange) Installation manual

KDDQ44XA60 Caution: Before installation, read this safety instruction.

Remarks:

1. This kit can be installed to the Ceiling mounted cassette type (Multi-flow).
2. When installing this kit, duct (Nominal dia. : ϕ100) is required on site.

- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden walls, make sure the duct and the wall electrically insulated.
- Install the duct inclined downwardly to outdoor so that the rain may not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- To avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct, make sure to install net where it contacts the outside air.

Contents

Prior to installation, make sure you have the complete kit of parts.

Name	① Duct flange	② Screws	③ Insulation for duct flange	④ Insulation for opening of unit	⑤ Installation manual
Q'ty	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12			

Necessary tools

Philips head screw driver, nipper, cutter etc.

❶ Installation procedures of duct flange

1. Cut off the knockout hole on the side plate. (Fig. 1)

The knockout hole is opposite to ref. pipe.

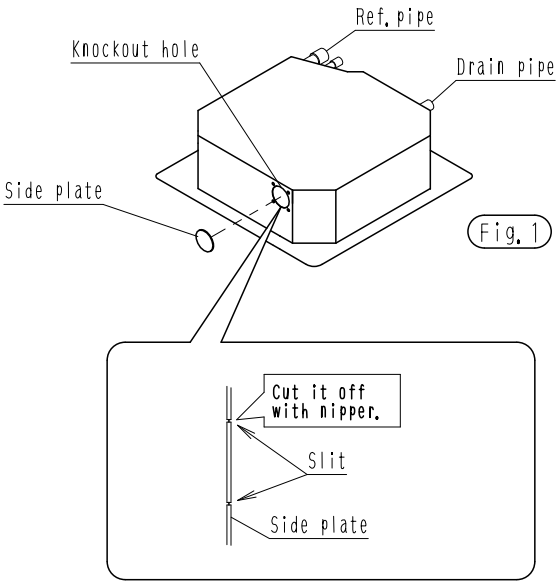


Fig. 1

2P108307A

2. Adhere the insulation④ for opening of unit to the opening. (Fig. 2)

Put the insulation ④ to be suitable for the hole of the insulation ④ and hole of the indoor unit.
However, put the insulation ④ so as not to conceal the screw hole of the indoor unit.

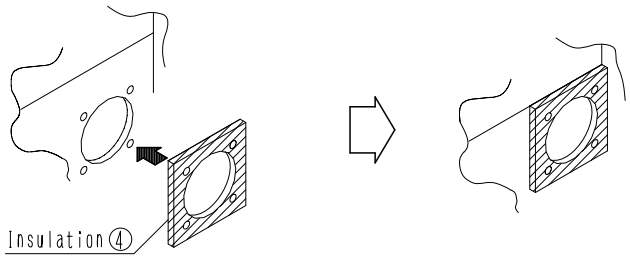


Fig. 2

3. Install the duct flange①with screws②(M4×12, 4 screws)to the opening and adhere the insulation③(Fig. 3)

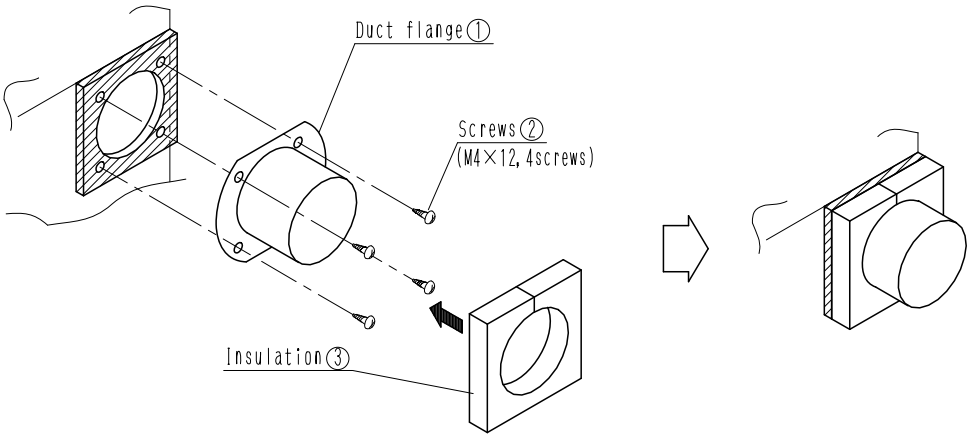


Fig. 3

❷ Installation procedures of duct <Nominal diameter of duct: φ100>

1. Connect the duct to the duct flange. (Flange fits inside the duct.)(Fig. 4)
2. After connection, wrap vinyl tape (field supply)around the duct connection to prevent air leak.

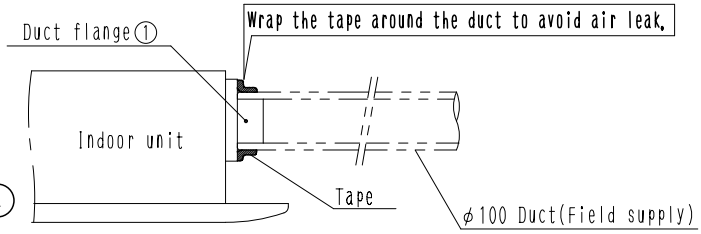
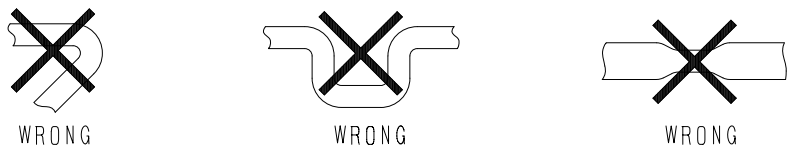


Fig. 4

Precaution

- All ducts must be completely insulated.
- Do not do the followings when installing duct.

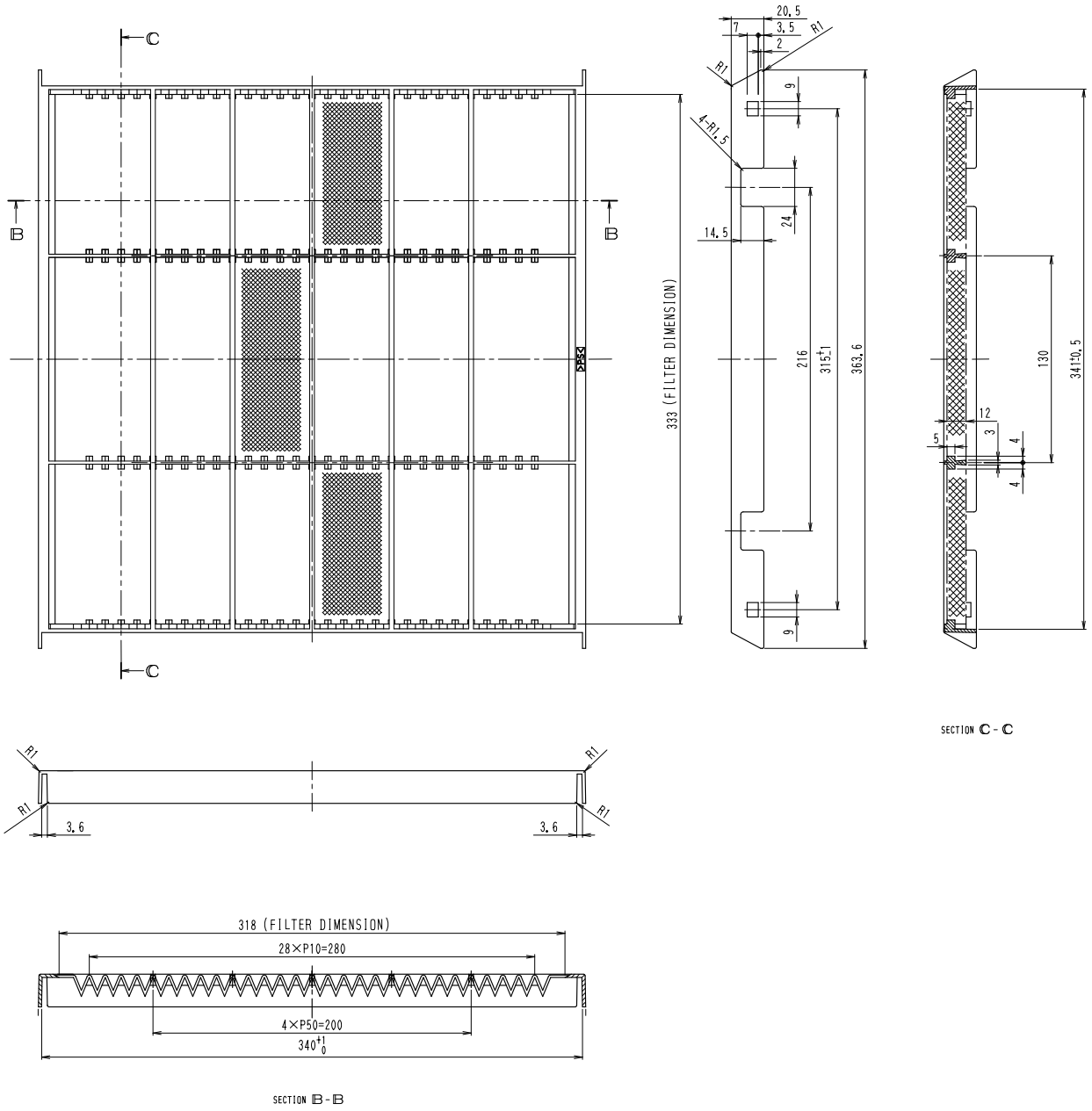
A) To bend the duct excessively B) To bend the duct too many times C) To reduce the duct diameter



2P108307A

2.5 KAFQ441BA60 — Replacement Long-life Filter

Dimensions Unit (mm)

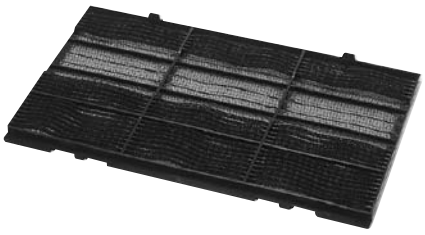


2P100214B

3. FHQ — Ceiling Suspended Type

3.1 KAF501DA56 / 80 / 112 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

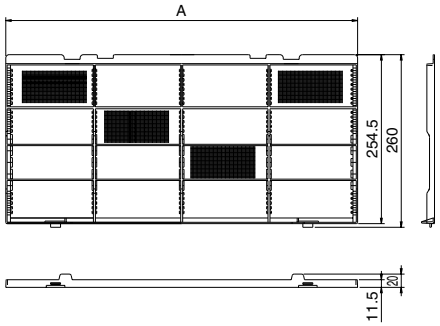
KAF501DA56



Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A
KAF501DA56	430
KAF501DA80	530
KAF501DA112	430
KAF501DA160	493

D3K3074A

Item		Model KAF501DA56	KAF501DA80	KAF501DA112	KAF501DA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	10 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	59 or less			
Average efficiency	%	45 (gravity method)			
Air flow rate	m^3/min	13	17	24	32
	l/sec	217	283	400	533
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net			
Number of sheets included		2	2	3	3
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6

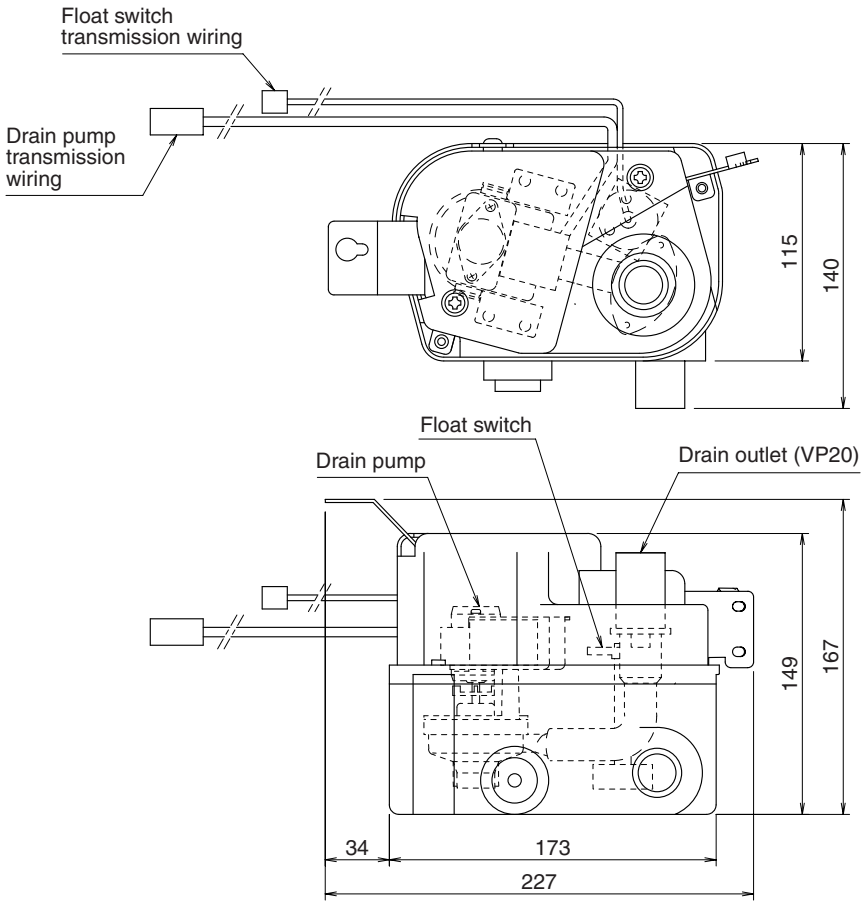
3.2 KDU50N60VE / KDU50N125VE — Drain-up Kit

KDU50N60VE
KDU50N125VE



Item		Model	KDU50N60VE	KDU50N125VE
Drain-up lift		mm	600	
Drain Con. diameter			VP20 (Ex. dia. ϕ26, Int. dia. ϕ20)	
Pump	Power supply		Single phase 220-240V/220V 50/60Hz (from Indoor Unit PCB)	
	Power consumption	W	13.5/12 (50/60Hz)	

Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K03613B

Installation Manual

Perform all installation work accurately only after reading these precautions.

- The safety precautions provided in this manual are classified into two categories: "⚠WARNING",and "⚠CAUTION". Hazardous situations which may be caused by incorrect installations and could result in death or serious injury are described in the columns indicated with "⚠WARNING".
  However, even the items described in the columns indicated with "⚠CAUTION" could result in hazardous situations depending on the condition. Since these warnings and cautions are extremely important to secure safety, always observe them when performing the work.
- After completing installation, perform a test run to see if there is anything wrong.
  Also, explain to the customer how to use and maintain the unit, following the operation manual. Have the customer store this installation manual along with the operating manual.

⚠ WARNING

The installation should be performed only by the qualified installer.
Improper installation, if any, may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Perform the installation work in accordance with the installation manual.
Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Use only the attached accessories and the specified parts for installation.
Otherwise it may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Use the specified wires for all wiring, making sure that all terminal connections are fastened securely and free of external pressure. Defective connections or fastening may cause heat or fires.

⚠ CAUTION

Connect all pipes, observing the instructions in the installation manual, to ensure proper drainage. Make sure they are insulated to prevent condensation from forming. If the piping is done incorrectly drain may leak and damage furniture.

Do not install in the following locations.

1. Locations with mineral oil in the atmosphere, or food preparation areas where drops of oil or steam can reach the unit; as resin parts will deteriorate and may cause leaking or falling parts.
2. Locations where sulfurous gas or other corrosive gases are produced. Copper pipes or brazed areas may corrode, causing the refrigerant to leak.
3. Locations where there is machinery which gives off electromagnetic waves.This may cause the control system to malfunction, impeding proper functioning of the unit.
4. Locations where gas might leak into the atmosphere, or locations where thinner, gasoline, or other volatile or flammable substances are handled. An explosion could be caused by gas leaking and accumulating around the drain pump kit.

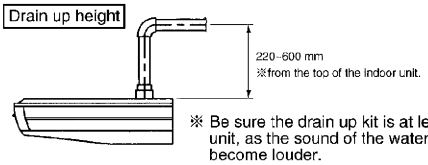
Caution

- This kit may be attached to a ceiling-hung air conditioner.
- Check the indoor unit main unit type on the list below before installing.
- When installing, also refer to installation manual for the indoor unit main unit.

Particular caution should be exercised for the following items.
Re-check all items after installation is completed.

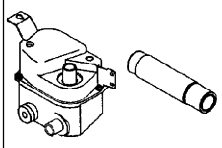
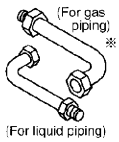
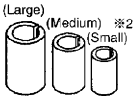
Item to be checked	In case of malfunction	Check column
Has the installation of the indoor unit main unit and the drain up kit each been done without fault?	Falling, condensation, shaking	
Are all wires connected without fault?	Inoperable, burning	
Is the drain flowing smoothly?	Leaking	

Drain up height



※ Be sure the drain up kit is at least 220 mm above the unit, as the sound of the water flowing may otherwise become louder.

Parts

Name		① Drain up kit main unit	② Drain hose	③ Hose band	④ Screw (M4)	⑤ Clamp material	⑥ attached pipes				⑦ Insulation pipe cover				⑧ Insulating material		
															⑧-1 For attached pipes	⑧-2 For indoor drain hose	⑧-3 For the drain hose connections
Shape															(For gas piping) 200×50×t5 (For liquid piping) 200×30×t5	185×230×t10	170×30×t10
							(For liquid piping)		(For gas piping)		(Large)	(Medium)		(Small)			
							For φ6.5	For φ9.5	For φ9.5	For φ12.7 φ15.9	I.D.φ42 X.t160	I.D.φ32 X.t100	I.D.φ38 X.t100	I.D.φ28 X.t80	I.D.φ32 X.t80			
Q'ty	KDU50N60VE	1	2	3	3	12	1		1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1
	KDU50N125VE	1	2	3	3	12		1		1	1		1		1	1	1	1

※1. KDU50N60VE: Two types of gas pipes are attached.
2. KDU50N60VE: Two types of Insulation covers (medium) are attached.

Tools required for installation

⊕⊖ Flathead screwdriver, nipper, cutter

Precaution when installing

Install the indoor unit level or slightly tilted to the right or back (within 1°) (Figure 1)

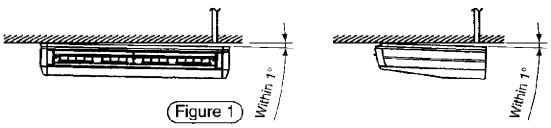


Figure 1

C: 3K012642A

1 Preparations before hanging the indoor unit

The drain up kit is installed after the air conditioner main unit is hung. Preparations are required before hanging the air conditioner.

Mounting space

Select the place for the indoor unit to be installed in consideration of the installation service space.
Note, however, that there must be at least 60 mm of service space to the right of the indoor unit main unit.
See the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the service space for the indoor unit. (Figure 2)

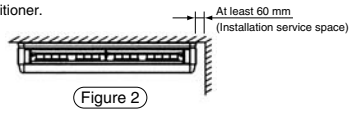
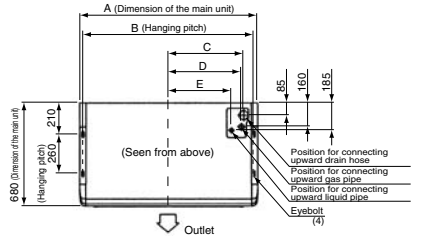


Figure 2

(1) Select the position of the pipe outtake, the drain pipe outtake, and the wiring outtake, and make holes in those positions.
The locations are displayed on the installation pattern paper attached to the indoor unit, so use the paper pattern. (Figure 3)
(2) Perform the refrigerant and drain piping work following the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
Field drain piping should be as short as possible and with a downward slope (1/25 – 1/100) to prevent air pockets. (Figure 4)
Be sure to insulate all drainpipes which run above the ceiling.
Be sure to fix the field drain pipe to the support brackets in the ceiling. (Figure 4)
(3) Connect the attached piping ⑥ and the field refrigerant piping.
For the attached pipes ⑥, select the liquid and gas pipes which match the pipe diameters of the corresponding indoor unit.
When connecting the flare nuts, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
(4) Wrap the insulation pipe cover attached to the indoor unit and fasten with the clamp material ⑤.
(For both gas and liquid pipes.) (Figure 5)
(5) Be sure to use adhesive when connecting the attached drain hose ② and the field drain piping in the ceiling. (Figure 4)
(6) Insulate the drain hose using the attached insulation pipe cover(large) ⑦. (Figure 6)



Model	A	B	C	D	E
FHQ35/50BVV1B, FXHQ32MAVE	960	920	390	375	310
FHQ60BVV1B, FXHQ63MAVE	1160	1120	490	475	410
FHQ100BVV1B, FXHQ100MAVE	1400	1360	610	595	530
FHQ125BVV1B	1590	1550	800	785	720

Figure 3

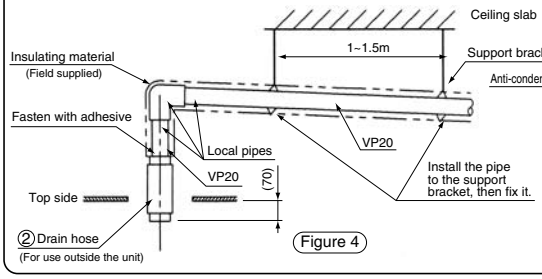


Figure 4

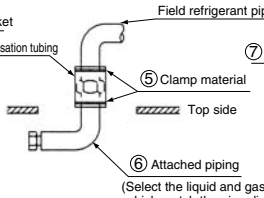


Figure 5

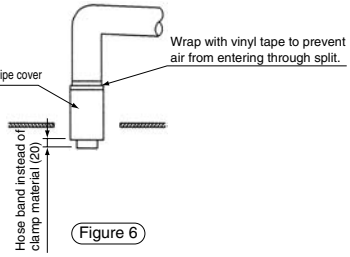


Figure 6

2 Installation Outline

Remove the lid from the top of the indoor unit, and hang the indoor unit main unit before installing the drain up kit in the following manner. (Figure 7)
1. Complete the electrical wiring following the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
(Use the wiring through-hole in the top side of the indoor unit to pull the wiring into the indoor unit main unit.)
2. Connect the refrigerant piping to the indoor unit.
(1) Connect the liquid and gas piping to the indoor unit main unit. (Figure 8)

(2) Wrap the piping connections with the attached insulation pipe cover (medium and small) ⑦ and fasten either end with the attached clamp material ⑤.
Next, put the attached insulating material ⑧-1. Wrap gas-side piping with the insulating material attached the indoor unit on top of the insulation pipe cover wrapped on the piping connections. (For the KDU50M60VE, there are two types of Insulation pipe covers (medium) for the gas pipe connection. Select the one appropriate for the piping size.)

Also, pass the lead wires of swing motor and thermistor through the clamp section of the top lid and fix it so they are as they were before removing the topside through lid.
In order to prevent dust from entering the indoor unit, block any crevices between the lid and the pipes with putty.

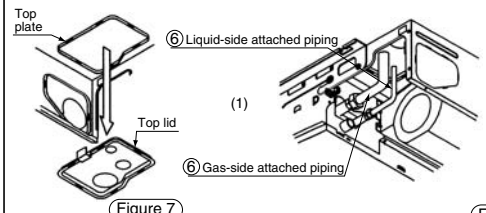


Figure 7

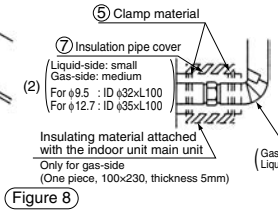


Figure 8

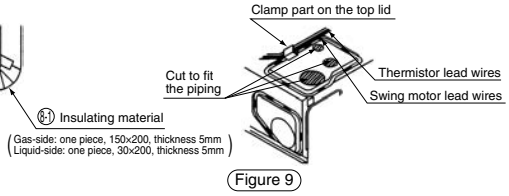


Figure 9

3. Mount the drain up kit to the indoor unit.
(1) Remove the screws from the top of the indoor unit, and insert the attached screws ④ temporarily. Next, temporarily put the screwed clamps on either end of the drain up kit, and tighten the screws. (Figure 10)
Take out the lead wires of drain pump and the float switch from the back of the drain up kit.
Wire the local wiring as shown in (Figure 11).

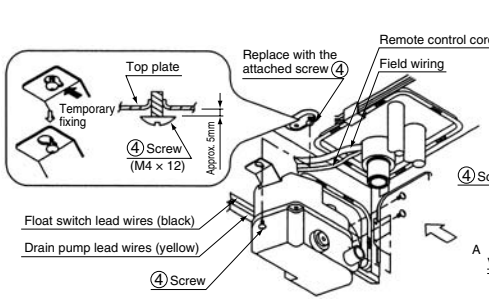


Figure 10

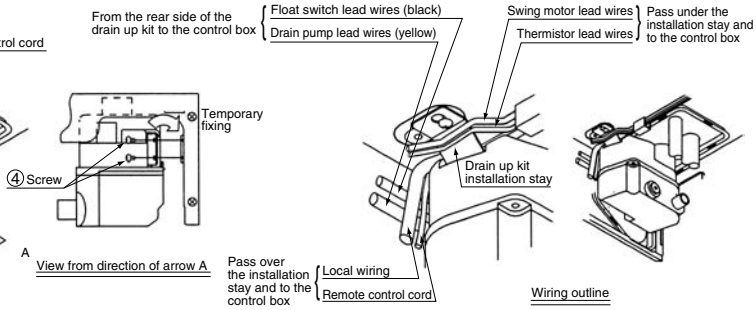


Figure 11

C: 3K012642A

(2) Insert the hose band ③ into the external drain hose, firmly insert the drain hose all the way into the drain socket in the drain up kit, and wrap it firmly with the hose band ③ within the area designated by the black tape on the hose end. (Figure 12)
(3) Put the attached insulating material ⑧-3 to the external drain hose connector, as shown in (Figure 13).
(4) Connect the indoor unit drain socket and the drain up kit drain socket with the attached drain hose ② inserting it all the way in, and wrap it firmly with the hose band ③ within the area designated by the black tape on the hose end. Make sure the hose band connector comes to the top, as in (Figure 15). (Figure 14)
(5) Insulate the drain hose ② fixed by the procedure (4) using the attached insulating material ⑧-2. Wrap the entire surface over the hose band on the drain hose. (Figure 16)

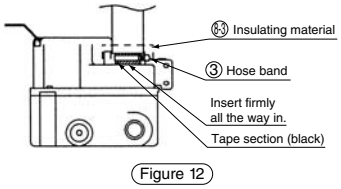


Figure 12

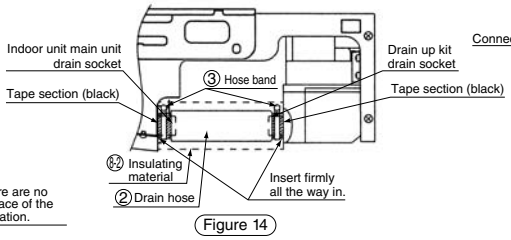


Figure 14

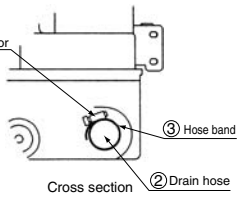


Figure 15

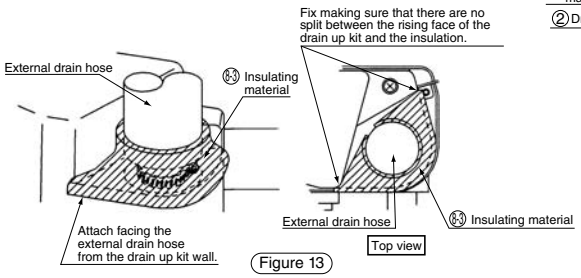


Figure 13

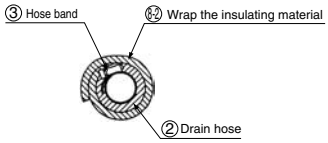


Figure 16

❸ Electrical wiring

· Wire the float switch lead wires (black), coming out of the drain up kit, and the drain pump lead wires (yellow) in the manner described below. (Removing the control box makes wiring work easier.) When doing wiring work, be sure to shut off the power. (Figure 17)
· Refer also to the "Electric Wiring Diagram Plate" when performing wiring work. (It can be found on the control box lid.)
(1) Remove the control box from the indoor unit.
(2) Connect the drain pump lead wires (yellow) to X25A (the white connector) on the indoor unit PC board assembly.
(3) The connector on the PC board assembly to which the float switch lead wires (black) must be connected differs depending on the indoor unit series (Sky Air or VRV Air Conditioner).
(Sky Air) : Remove the short circuit connector connected to X15A (a green connector), and connect the float switch lead wires.
(VRV Air Conditioner) : Remove the short circuit connector connected to X8A (a green connector), and connect the float switch lead wires.
(4) After all the wires are connected, arrange them, pass the float switch lead wire (black) through the clamping material, and secure it together with the drain pump lead wire (yellow) from above the wiring inside the indoor unit using the included clamping material ⑤.
(5) Store and secure any extra lead wire with the included clamping material ⑤, so that the lid is not pushed up.
Attach the control box securely.

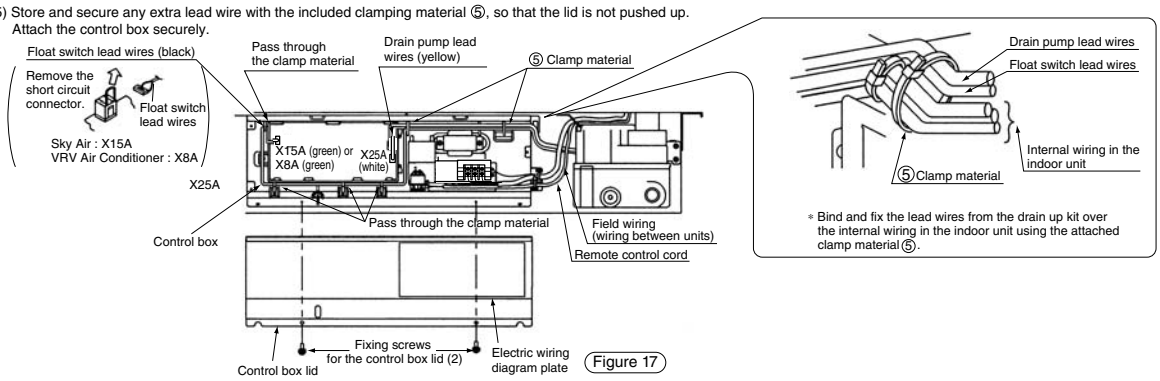


Figure 17

❹ Installing the decorative panels and suction grill

· Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and mount the decorative panels and suction grill firmly following the procedure in the opposite way of removing.

C: 3K012643

5 Test Run Procedure

In order to determine the condition of the drainage, slowly pour approximately 1500 ml of water into the unit from the air outlet. Follow the procedure below to check the drainage. (Figure 18)
The test run procedure differs depending on the indoor unit series (Sky Air or VRV Air Conditioner), so follow the appropriate procedure below.

(Sky Air)

If the wiring work is complete

- Check the drainage while operating in cooling mode.

If the wiring work is not complete

- Remove the control box lid, connect a single-phase power supply (50/60Hz 220-240V) to No. 1 and No. 2 (in the power supply terminal block), and then for safety's sake, close the lid before turning the power on. (Figure 19)
- Only the drain pump will run automatically for 10 minutes, so during this time make sure water is draining out.
- Once the drain check is complete, remove the power wires and replace the control box lid as it was.

⚠

- Do not connect anything to No. 3 in the power supply terminal block (the drain pump will not operate.)
- Do not touch the electrical part, emergency switch. The drain check described above can be performed without moving the emergency switch.

(VRV Air Conditioner)

If the wiring work is complete

- Check the drainage while operating in cooling mode.

If the wiring work is not complete

- Remove the control box lid and connect the remote control and the single-phase power source (50/60Hz 220-240V/220V) to the remote control terminal block (P_1, P_2) and the power supply terminal block (L, N).
- Next, switch the unit to test run mode from the remote control, press the mode switch button to select "fan", and then press the start/stop button to start the indoor fan and the drain pump. Check the drainage.
- Take precaution, because the fan will operate as well.

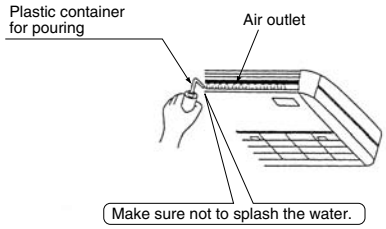


Figure 18

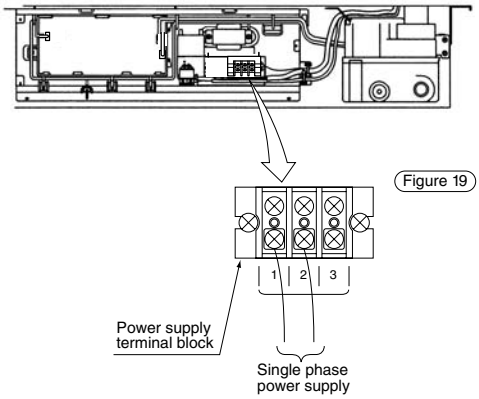
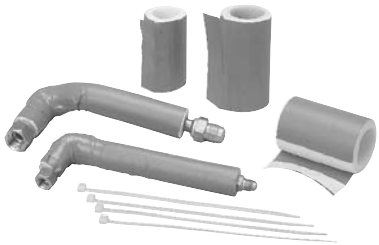


Figure 19

C: 3K012643

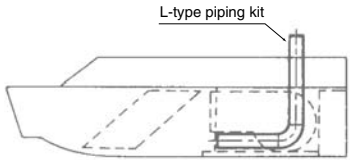
3.3 KHFP5MA35 / 63 / 160 — L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)

KHFP5MA35



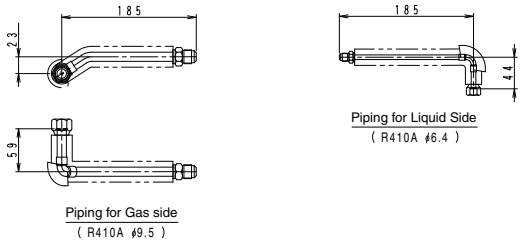
When you install the refrigerant piping in the ceiling, the piping is required to be bent L-type in the unit as shown on the right. This L-type piping kit is developed to facilitate such installation.

Installation

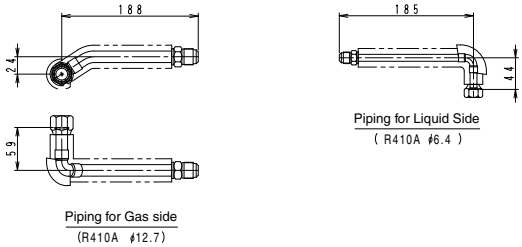


Dimensions Unit (mm)

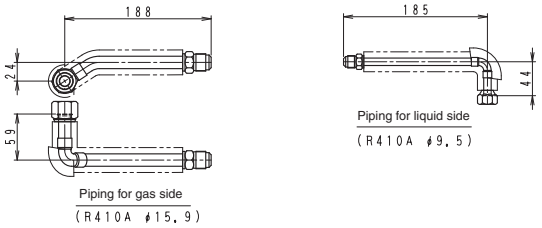
KHFP5MA35



KHFP5MA63



KHFP5MA160



J: D3K03612B

Item \ Model	KHFP5MA35	KHFP5MA63	KHFP5MA160
Accessories	Installation for fitting : 1 set Clamp material : 4 pieces		

4. FAQ — Wall Mounted Type

4.1 K-KDU572EVE (Supplying goods to order) — Drain Pump Kit

Operating sound as small as 25dB



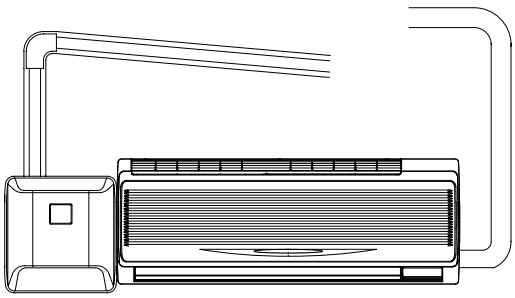
Features

1. Silent operation with no sign of pump operation
2. Design matching with wall mounted type air conditioner
3. Can be interlocked with air conditioner.

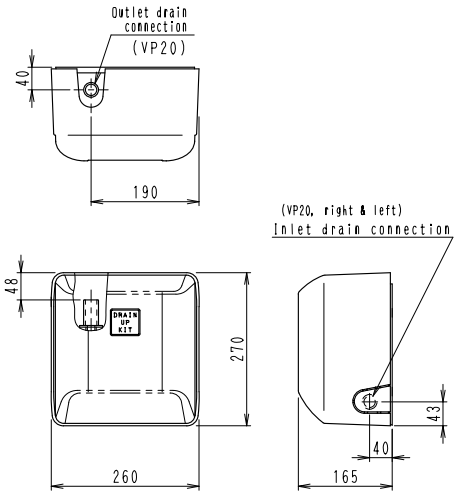
Usage

- **Home, office, and store**
- **Optimum for redesign**

Caution :
- Drain pump kit is only for the air conditioner. Please use it for the drain treatment of the air conditioner.
- Be sure to lay the piping inclined down after drain-up, which is different from drain pump.
- Please do not use it in the place where soot such as kitchens is shrouded and the place where an organic solvent drifts.



Dimensions Unit (mm)



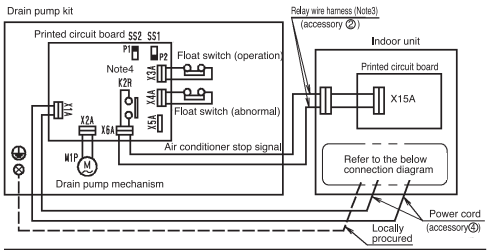
JC: D3K06160
JC: D3K06161

Specification

		K-KDU572EVE
Drain pump head (Note 1)	mm	1,000
Power supply		Single phase 220-240/220V, 50/60Hz
Power consumption	W	14.1/12.9
Operating current	A	0.18/0.16
Insulation		Class E
Drain inlet connection pipe diameter		VP20 (Note 2)
Drain exit connection pipe diameter		VP20
Safety device		Float switch
Operating sound	dB	25
Machine weight (Mass)	kg	3.2
Drain exhaust flow rate	mℓ/min	400

Note: 1. Height from bottom of drain pump kit up to the drain pipe.
2. Connect to the VP13 using the soft reducing socket.

Wiring Diagram



Application model	FAY71LVE FAYP71LV1	FXAQ20-63MAVE FXAQ20-63PVE FXA20-32LVE(C) FXA40-63LVE	FAQ71BUV1B FAQ71BVV1B
Connection diagram	X2M Tes2 ⏚ 1 2 3	X2M ⏚ L N	X2M ⏚ 1 2 3

The earth wire (copper) should be at least 2.0mm² or ϕ1.6mm.
When the relay wire harness is connected, remove the X15A short-circuit connector.

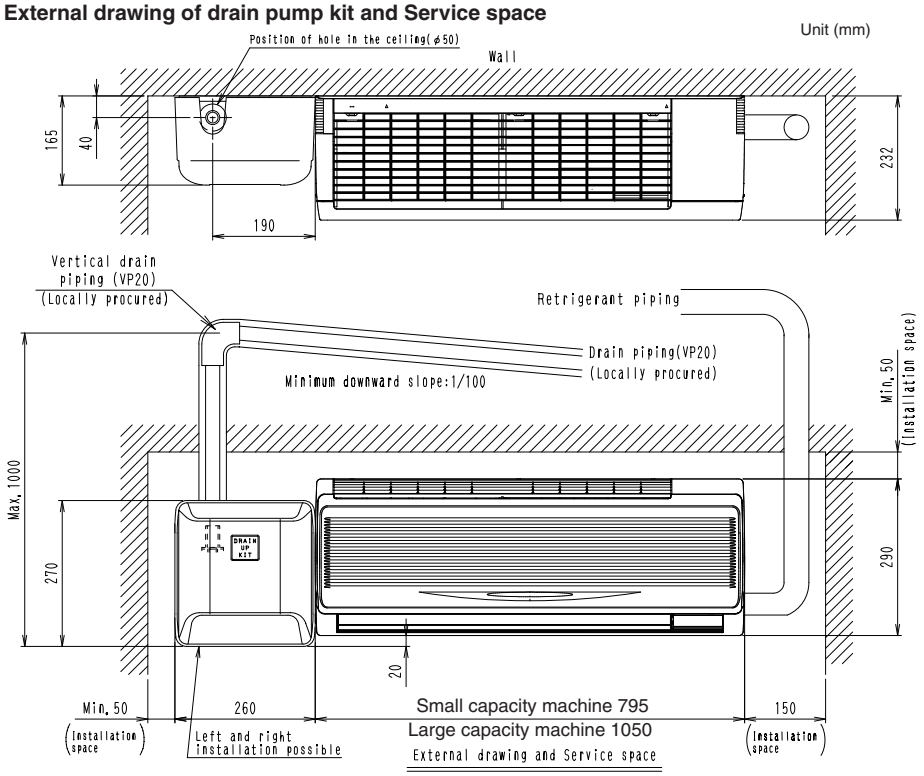
Note: 1. Don't forget to turn on the power. If it is not turned on, the air conditioner will perform an error stop and operation will not be possible.
2. Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board assembly is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.
3. The relay wire harness cannot be extended.
4. Turning on the power will close the K2R connector, making is a non-volt B connector.

Component Parts

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Drain Pump Kit	①	1	Insulation	⑦ 50X300Xt10	1	Rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (Note3)	⑬ VP13, 365	1
Relay wire harness	② (Green) (Red)	1	Clamp	⑧	2	Soft drain pipe	⑭ VP20, 200	1
Connecting harness	③ (White)	1	Clamp	⑨	1	Screw Washer	⑮ (White)	1
Power cord	④ (Blue)	1	Soft reducing socket	⑩ VP13	1	Screw	⑯ M5X35	5
Insulation pipe cover	⑤	1	Drain hose	⑪ 150	1	Clamp material	⑰	4
Insulation	⑥ 90X300Xt2	1	Rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint	⑫ VP13, 57	1	Paper pattern for Installation	⑱	1
						Installation Manual	⑲	2

Note 3: This pipe must be procured locally for the large capacity machine.

External drawing of drain pump kit and Service space

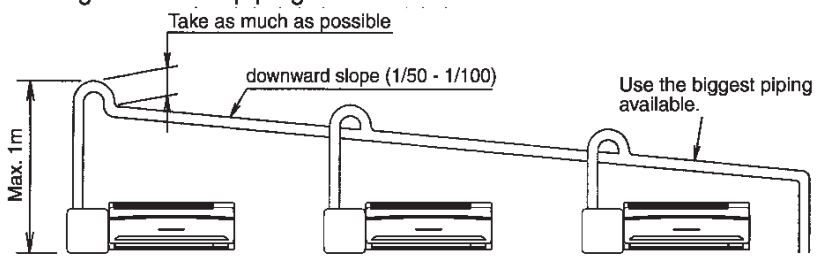


Note: 1. Drain pump kit must be fixed to the wall.
2. This drawing shows left installation , can be installed right of the air conditioner.
3. Installation space and service space must be kept on this drawing.

3K019617A

When using centralized piping

- Follow the figure below to make sure there is absolutely no back-up when using centralized piping.

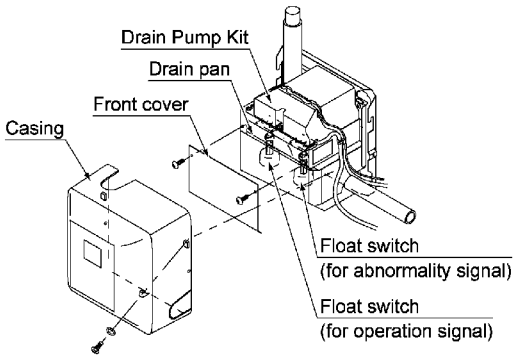


3K019618A

Maintenance and inspection

Inspect the equipment once a year before operating the air conditioner for cooling.

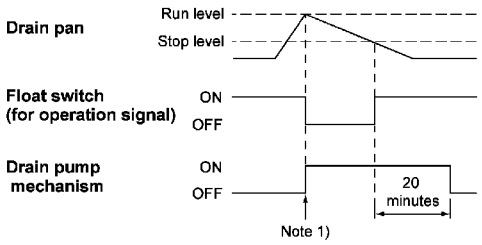
Item	Inspection
Drain pump mechanism	Check for clogging, dirtiness and drainage. (If clogged or dirty, clean.)
Drain pan	Check for dirtiness. (If dirty, clean.)
Float switch	Check float operation. (If the float is dirty, clean.)



Caution • Request your dealer to conduct maintenance and inspection.

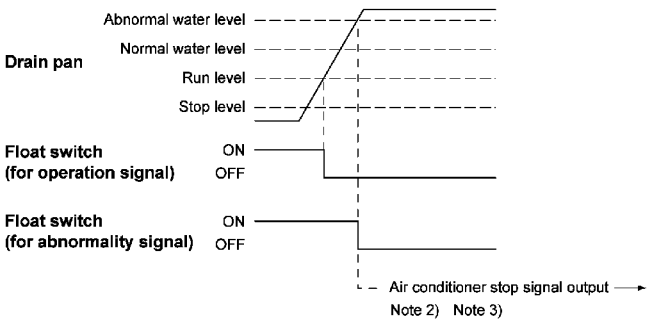
Explanation of operation

(1) Drain pump kit operates as follows when water level is normal
(Drain pump kit operates when water level is at Run level. If water level reaches Stop level, residual operation is conducted for 20 minutes.)



Note 1) If the float switch is OFF (activated) for 5 seconds or more, the drain pump mechanism starts operation.

(2) Drain pump kit operates as follows when water level is abnormal
(The drain pump kit outputs an air conditioner stop signal in the event of a water level abnormality.)



Note 2) Wait for about 5 minutes after the drain pump kit outputs the air conditioner stop signal, then check to make sure that the air conditioner has stopped operating.

Note 3) To restart the air conditioner after water level abnormality is determined, it is necessary to turn off the drain pump kit and turn it on again, and then use the remote control to operate the air conditioner.

3K023710

Installation Manual

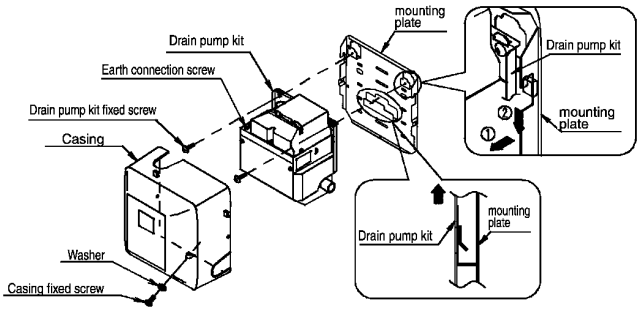
1 Pre-installation preparations

● See the indoor unit's installation manual for indoor unit work.

Drain pump kit preparations

● Remove the casing and the drain pump kit from the mounting plate.

1. Remove the casing fixed screw and pull the casing down and forward.
2. Remove 2 Screws of the drain pump kit and lift the drain pump kit out.

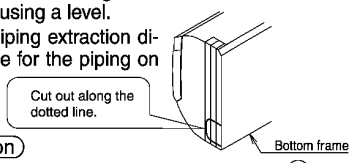


2 Indoor unit preparations

● Make sure the indoor unit is installed first.

1.Attaching of the indoor unit mounting plate
After installing the mounting plate following the directions in the indoor unit, make sure it is plainness using a level.

2.Decide the left and the right piping extraction direction and cut off the exit hole for the piping on the bottom frame by the cutter etc.



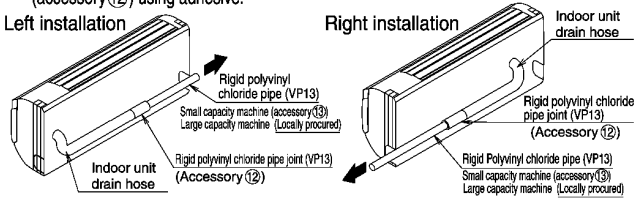
3.Connecting the drain hose

In the case of a left installation

1. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) to the indoor unit drain hose using adhesive.
2. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬ for small capacity machine. Local procurement for the large capacity) to the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) using adhesive.

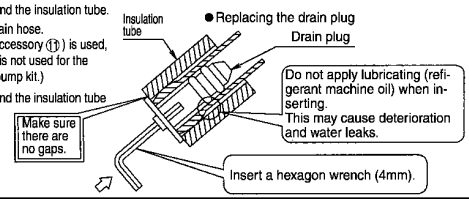
In the case of a right installation

1. Remove the drain hose connected to the indoor unit and replace with a drain plug and insulation tube.
2. The drain hose removed from the indoor unit is attached to left side.
3. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) to the indoor unit drain hose using adhesive.
4. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬ for small capacity machine. Local procurement for the large capacity) to the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) using adhesive.



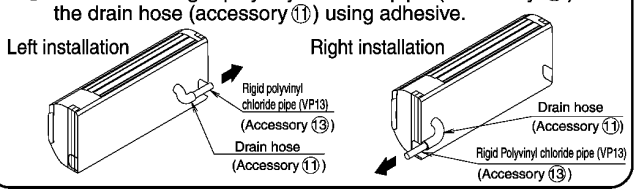
Replacing the drain plug

① Remove the drain plug and the insulation tube.
② Remove the standard drain hose.
(If only the drain hose (accessory ⑪) is used, the standard drain hose is not used for the connection of the drain pump kit.)
③ Replace the drain plug and the insulation tube onto the right side.



When using the drain hose (accessory ⑪)

① Remove the indoor unit drain hose and attach the drain hose (accessory ⑪).
② Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬) to the drain hose (accessory ⑪) using adhesive.

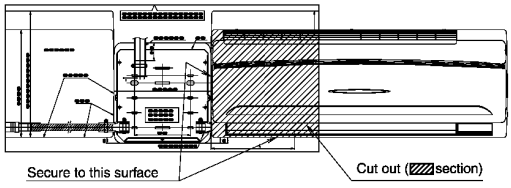


3K019617A

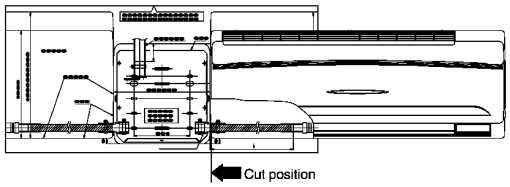
③ Installing the mounting plate

1. Install the indoor unit.

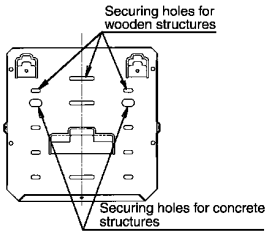
2. Cut out the indoor unit section from the paper pattern for installation (accessory ⑱) and attach to the installation position on the indoor unit.



3. Cut the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬) attached to the indoor unit to the length indicated on the paper pattern for installation.

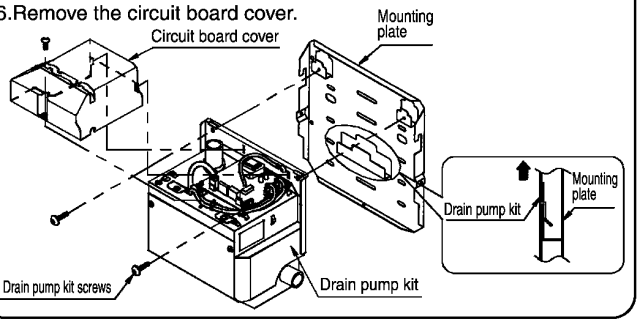


4. Determine the position to secure the mounting plate for the drain pump kit by matching to the paper pattern for installation. Remove the paper pattern for install once this is done.
   - If using screws (accessory ⑯), fix it at least 4 positions.
   - For concrete, attach it using commercially available anchors (M8) and bolts.



5. Attach the drain pump kit to the mounting plate and squeeze in the fixed screws.

6. Remove the circuit board cover.



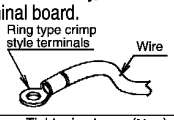
④ Attaching the relay wire harness, the connection harness, and the power cord.

⚠Caution Only connect after shutting off the power.

< Precautions when laying power and earth wiring >

Use ring type crimp style terminals for connections to the inter-unit wiring terminal block and the earth wiring. When none are available, follow the instructions below.

- Do not connect wiring of different thicknesses to the inter-unit wiring terminal block. (Looseness in the terminal may cause abnormal heat.)
- For wiring, use the designated power wire and connect firmly, then secure to prevent outside pressure being exerted on the terminal board.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver for tightening the terminal screws. A screwdriver with a small head will strip the head and make proper tightening impossible.
- Over-tightening the terminal screws may break them.
- See the table at right for tightening torque for the terminal screws.

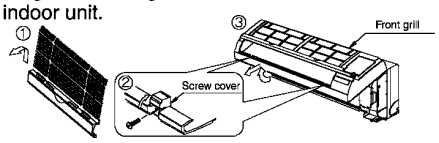


Tightening torque(N·m)	
Inter-unit wiring terminal block	1.18 ~ 1.44
earth terminal	1.44 ~ 1.94

For the FAY71LVE, FAYP71LV1, FXA20·25·32LVE(C)
FXA40·50·63LVE, FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63M(A)VE
FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63PV1
FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63PVE

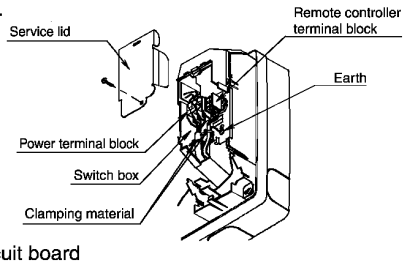
- Connect the relay wire harness (accessory ②) and the power cord (accessory ④) to the indoor unit.

1. Remove the front grill according to the instruction manual that came with the indoor unit.

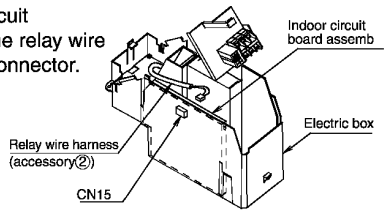


C: 3K019617A

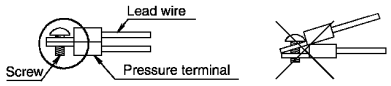
2. Remove the service lid.



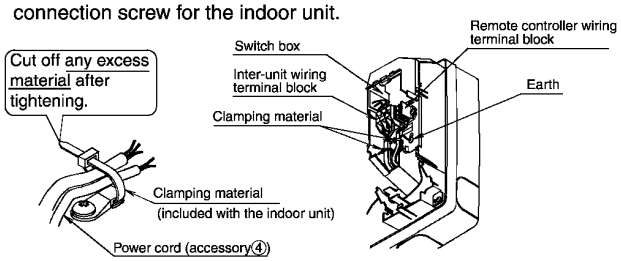
3. Remove the indoor circuit board assembly CN15 short-circuit connector and connect the relay wire harness (accessory②) connector.



4. Connect the power cord (accessory④) to the indoor unit inter-unit wiring terminal block.
   - The terminal nos. of connection terminals vary depending on models. Be sure to check the electrical wiring diagram on the back side when connecting wires.
   - When connecting the terminal to the inter-unit wiring terminal block, make sure it is attached properly, as shown below. If the pressure terminals are mistakenly attached in the same direction, the surface of the terminal that is touching will be reduced, causing heat and perhaps burn damage.



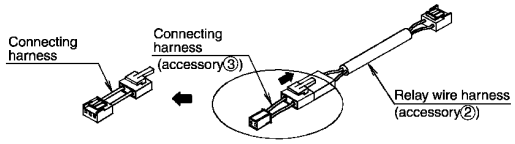
5. Connect the earth wire (locally procured-copper wire at least 2mm²) between the unit and the drain up kit with the earth connection screw for the indoor unit.



For the FAQ71BUV1B , FAQ71BVV1B , FAQ71·100CVEB

- Connect the relay wire harness (accessory②), the connecting harness (accessory③) , and the power cord (accessory④) to the indoor unit.

1. Remove the connecting harness on the relay wire harness (accessory②) and connect the included connecting harness (accessory③).



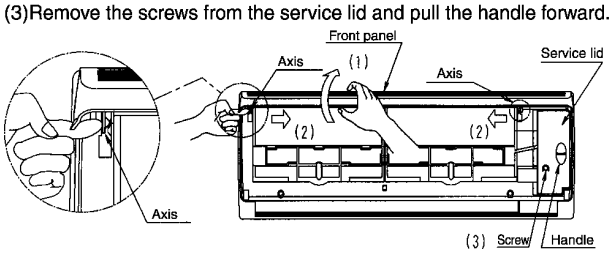
2.How to remove a front panel and the service lid according to the indoor unit installation manual.

[Removing the front panel and service lid]

(1)Open the front panel as far as it stops.

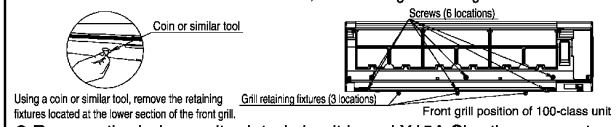
(2)Push the axes on either side of the front panel towards the center of the main unit and remove.
(You can also remove it by sliding the front panel either to the left or right and pulling it forward.)

(3)Remove the screws from the service lid and pull the handle forward.

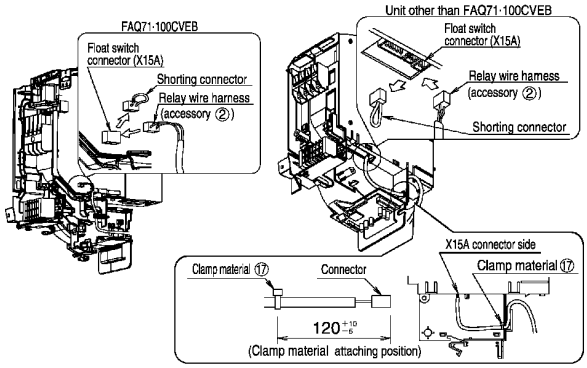


C: 3K019617A

(4) Remove the front grill by following the directions described in the installation manual for the indoor unit. In the case of FAQ100CVEB, remove the grill retaining fixtures.

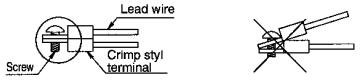


3.Remove the indoor unit printed circuit board X15A Shorting connector and connect the relay wire harness (accessory②) connector.

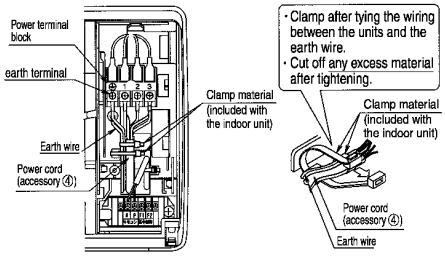


4.Connect the power cord (accessory ④) to the indoor unit inter-unit wiring terminal block.

- The terminal nos. of connection terminals vary depending on models. Be sure to check the electrical wiring diagram when connecting wires.
- When connecting the terminal to the inter-unit wiring terminal block, make sure it is attached properly, as shown below. If the crimp styl terminals are mistakenly attached in the same direction, the surface of the terminal that is touching will be reduced, causing heat and perhaps burn damage.

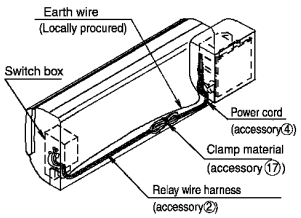


5.Connect the earth wire (locally procured - copper wire at least 2mm²) between the indoor unit and the drain pump kit with the ground connection screw for the indoor unit. Be sure to perform earthing.

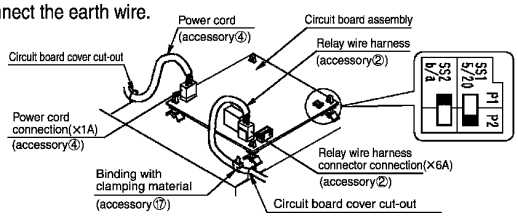


⑤ Passing the wire through

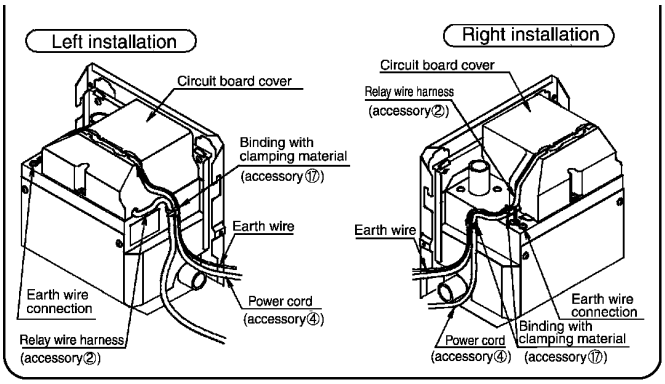
1.See the figure below for how to pass the wire through.
The relay wire harness, power cord and earth wire should be matched to the space inside the indoor unit.



2. Connect the relay wire harness (accessory ②) to the drain pump kit circuit board assembly connector (X6A).
3. Connect the power cord (accessory ④) to the drain pump kit circuit board assembly connector (X1A).
4. Secure the earth wire (locally procured-copper wire at least 2mm²) to the drain pump kit using the earth connection screw.
5. Tighten the relay wire harness (accessory ②) using the clamping material.
6. Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.
7. Attach the circuit board cover.
8. Tighten the relay wire harness (accessory ②), power cord (accessory④), and earth wire (locally procured) using the clamping material.
9. Bundle excess relay wire harness (accessory ②) using the clamping material (accessory⑰) and store away.
10. Connect the earth wire.



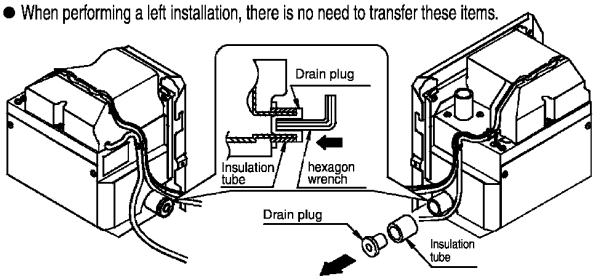
3K019618A



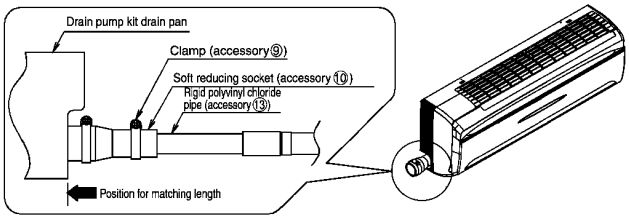
⑥ Installing the drain pump kit and drain piping.

1.When installing the drain pump kit to the right, transfer the drain plug and the insulating tubing from the left to the right.

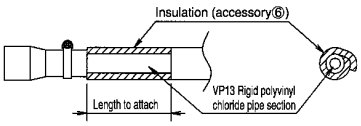
● When performing a left installation, there is no need to transfer these items.



2.Insert the clamp (accessory ⑨) and the soft reducing socket (accessory ⑩) into the indoor unit the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬), then match the position and tighten up the clamp to match the length of the drain pump kit drain pan socket.



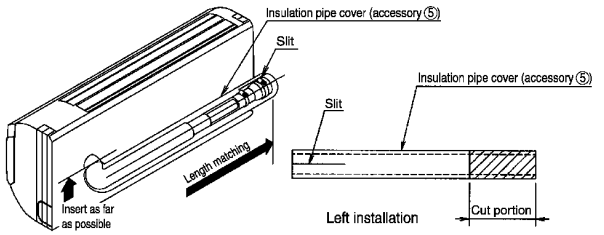
3. Matching the dimensions of the area required, cut the right length of insulation (accessory ⑥) for the drain hose rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe section and attach.



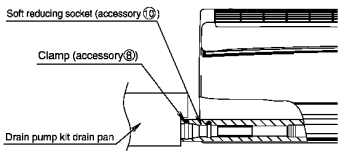
4. Insert the insulation pipe cover (accessory ⑤) as far into the drain hose as it can go.

● There is a slit in one side of the insulation pipe cover. Position the slit side to the drain pump kit.

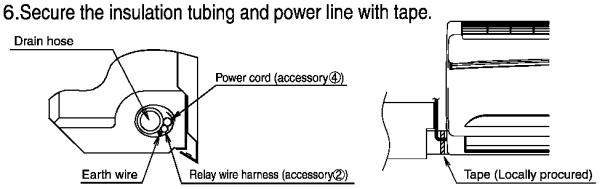
● Cut the insulation pipe cover to match the length of the drain hose.



5.Insert the clamp (accessory ⑧) and the soft reducing socket (accessory ⑩) into the drain pump kit drain socket and tighten it.



6.Secure the insulation tubing and power line with tape.

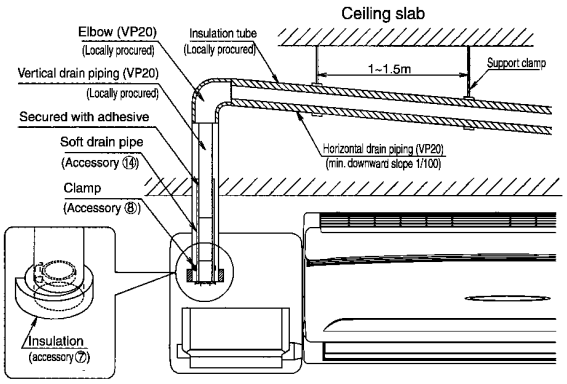


3K019618A

7.Connect the exit pipe.

- Be sure to use adhesive to connect the soft drain pipe (accessory ⑭) and the ceiling-side locally-procured the drain pipe.
- Connections on the drain pump kit should be secured with a clamp (accessory ⑧) and wrapped with insulation (accessory ⑦).

⚠Caution
- Exit piping parts must be procured locally.
- Be sure to insulate the drain piping.
- Give the horizontal sections on the drain piping a downward slope of at least 1/100 and make sure no air bubbles accumulate.
- Secure long horizontal sections with support clamps to prevent them from shaking.



⑦ Test operation

- Make sure the pump is running and water is draining.
- Make sure there are no leaks from the drain pipes when draining.

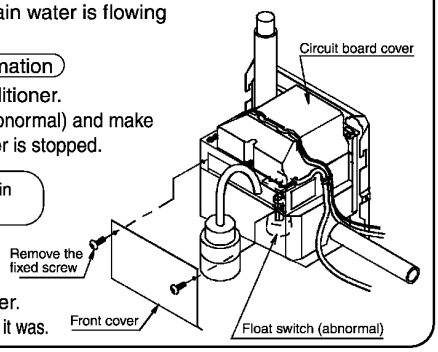
⚠Caution
- Before the work confirm the power off.
- After replacing the circuit board cover to its original location, turn on the power.

1. Remove the front cover on the drain pump kit and fill the drain pan halfway with water.
2. Turn on the power and make sure that the drain pump is working properly and the drain water is flowing smoothly.

Abnormal-stop confirmation

1. Turn on the air conditioner.
2. Lift the float switch (abnormal) and make sure the air conditioner is stopped.

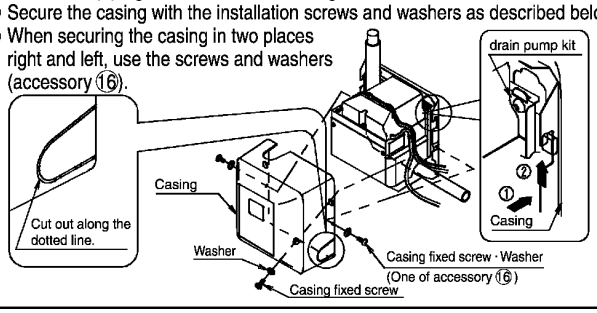
⚠Caution Do not get the drain pump mechanism



- After checking, replace the front cover.
- Rebuild the indoor unit as it was.

⑧ Attaching the casing

- Cut out the piping exit hole from the casing.
- Secure the casing with the installation screws and washers as described below.
- When securing the casing in two places right and left, use the screws and washers (accessory ⑯).



3K019618A

9 Checks after completion

You should re-check the following after completion of work.

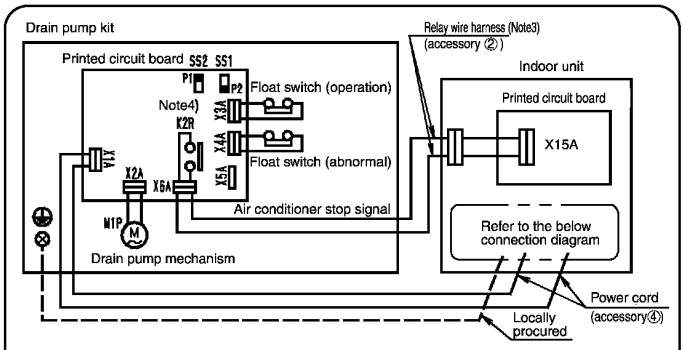
Items to be checked	Check column
Are the indoor unit and drain pomp kit level?	
Is the drain piping properly connected? Is there any possibility of developing water leaks?	
Is the drain piping run on a downhill grade?(1/50~1/100)	
Is the drain hose properly insulated?	
Is the equipment wired correctly?	

After test running the air conditioner, use the operating in cooling and check the operating sound of the drain pump kit.

10 Cautions during operation

- The pump repeats an operation stop with the float switch for operation during airconditioning operation.
- After cooling is stopped, the residual water will be drained out, so do not turn off the power immediately.
- Wait at least 5 minutes after the unit has stopped before turning off the power. When not turning off a power supply, a remains operation about 20 minutes back drain pump stops. When a safe circuit operates, operation of an air conditioner is stopped.
- During air conditioning operation, when water leaks from the inside of an are conditioner or a drain pump kit, please stop operation immediately.
- Since the drain exit is choked up or there is possibility that the safe circuit may not operate normally, please inform the store of purchase.

Electric wiring



Application model	FAY71LVE FAYP71LV1	FXA20·25·32LVE(C) FXA40·50·63LVE FXAQ20·25·32M(A)VE FXAQ40·50·63M(A)VE FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63PV1 FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63PVE	FAQ71BUV1B FAQ71BVV1B 63M(A)E	FAQ71·100CVEB
Connection diagram	X2M Tes2 ⏚ 1 2 3	X2M ⏚ L N	X2M ⏚ 1 2 3	X2M 1 2 3 ⏚

The earth wire (copper) should be at least 2.0mm² or ϕ 1.6mm.
When the relay wire harness is connected, remove the X15A short-circuit connector.

Note1: Don't forget to turn on the power. If it is not turned on, the air conditioner will perform an error stop and operation will not be possible.

Note2: Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board assembly is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.

Note3: The relay wire harness cannot be extended.

Note4: Turning on the power will close the K2R connector, making is a non-volt B connector.

C: 3K019618A

5. FBQ — Ceiling Mounted Built-in / Duct Type

5.1 KAF372AA80 / 160, KAF373AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter

KAF372AA56



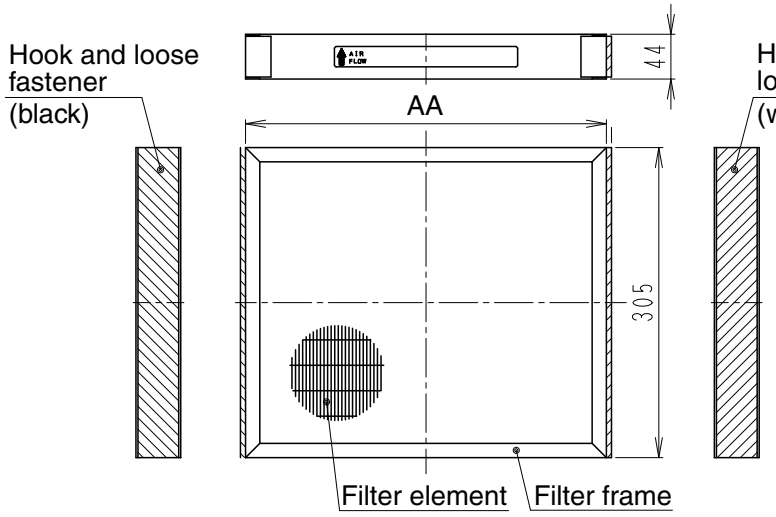
Item		Model KAF372AA36	KAF373AA36	KAF372AA56	KAF373AA56
Initial pressure loss	Pa	15 or less	21 or less	35 or less	54 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency (colorimetric method)	%	65	90	65	90
Air flow rate / 1 sheet	m^3/min	9.8			
Life *1	h	2,500	1,800	2,500	1,800
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	2	2
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

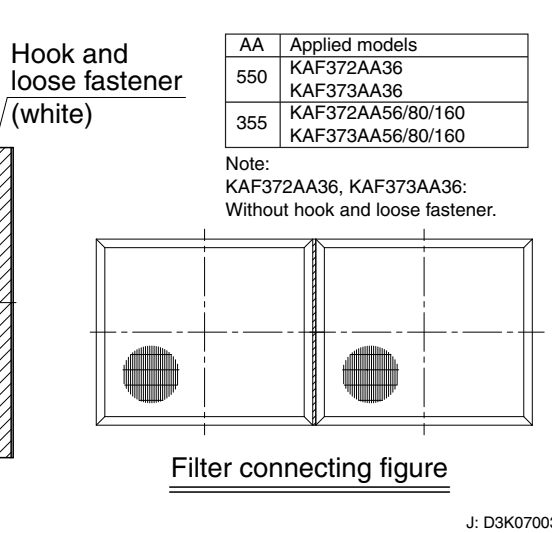
Item		Model KAF372AA80	KAF373AA80	KAF372AA160	KAF373AA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	35 or less	54 or less	38 or less	56 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency (colorimetric method)	%	65	90	65	90
Air flow rate / 1 sheet	m^3/min	9.8			
Life *1	h	2,500	1,800	2,500	1,800
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		3	3	4	4
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0

Note:
*1. Dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3

Caution
- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (for high efficiency filter) (KDDF37AA36 / KDDF37AA56 / KDDF37AA80 / KDDF37AA160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Dimensions Unit (mm)





AA	Applied models
550	KAF372AA36 KAF373AA36
355	KAF372AA56/80/160 KAF373AA56/80/160

Note:
KAF372AA36, KAF373AA36:
Without hook and loose fastener.

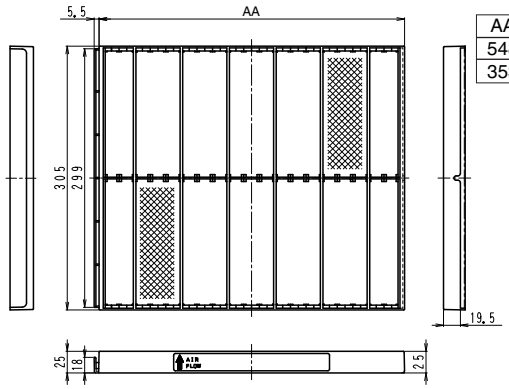
Filter connecting figure

J: D3K07003
J: D3K06645

5.2 KAF371AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter



Dimensions Unit (mm)



AA	Applied models
548	KAF371AA36
353	KAF371AA56/80/160

J: D3K07004
J: D3K06644

Caution

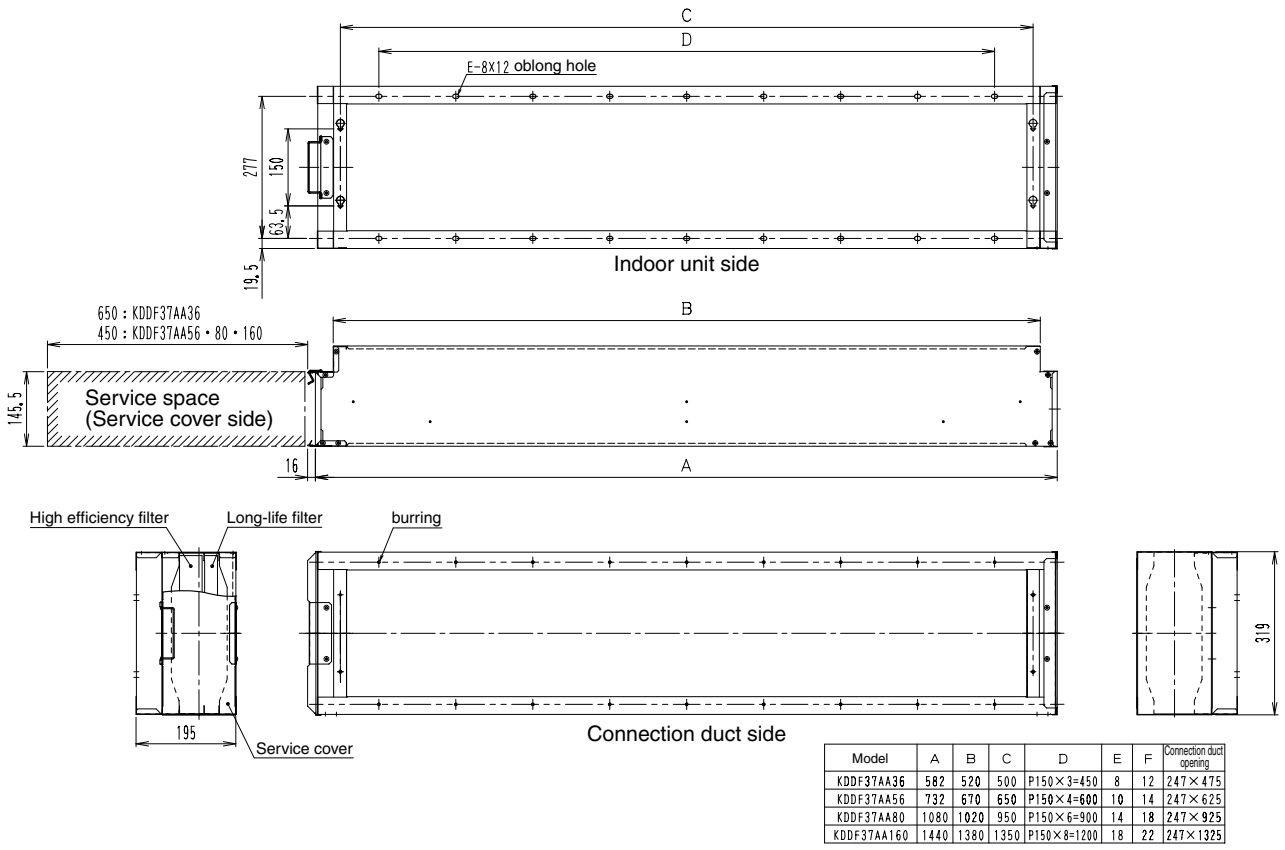
- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.
- The filter chamber (KDDF37AA36 / KDDF37AA56 / KDDF37AA80 / KDDF37AA160) is required when the long life filter will be installed.

Item / Model		KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	3 or less	7 or less		8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less			
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)			
Air flow rate / 1 sheet	m^3/min	9.8			
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net (Polypropylene)			
Filter frame		Polystyrene			
Number of sheets included		1	2	3	4

5.3 KDDF37AA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

Item			Model	KDDF37AA36	KDDF37AA56	KDDF37AA80	KDDF37AA160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)		KAF372AA36	KAF372AA56	KAF372AA80	KAF372AA160
		90% (colorimetric method)		KAF373AA36	KAF373AA56	KAF373AA80	KAF373AA160
	Long-life filter			KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Accessories				Mounting screws. Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)			kg	4.5	6	7	9

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	Connection duct opening
KDDF37AA36	582	520	500	P150×3=450	8	12	247×475
KDDF37AA56	732	670	650	P150×4=600	10	14	247×625
KDDF37AA80	1080	1020	950	P150×6=900	14	18	247×925
KDDF37AA160	1440	1380	1350	P150×8=1200	18	22	247×1325

JC: D3K06642C

Installation Manual

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Filter Chamber《Ceiling Mounted Duct Connection Type》Installation Manual

KDDF37AA36 • 56 • 80 • 160

Read this manual in advance and follow all the instructions given in the manual to conduct the installation of the product

⚠Precautions Conduct the installation of the product correctly after carefully reading the safety precautions specified below.

- Request your dealer or contractor to conduct the installation of the product. Users' unauthorized installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the installation of the product correctly by following all the instructions given in the manual. A defect in the installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Be sure to use parts specified in this manual and the accessories provided with the product for the installation of the product. Failure to use these parts may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the trial operation of the product after the installation of the product and check that there are no abnormalities.

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to air conditioners of ceiling mounted duct connection type.
- Mount the product after checking the model name of the indoor unit with the table on the right-hand side.
- Refer to the operation manual and installation manual for the indoor unit as well at the time of the installation of the product.
- In the case of using the product for a ceiling return application, (Except KAF375AA36) prepare a protection net (KPN37A56, KPN37A 80, or KPN37A 160) as an optional accessory.
- Use of long-life filters
  Long-life filters can be washed and used again. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval and removal method of the filters by using the operation manual for the indoor unit and this installation manual.
- Use of high-performance filters
  High-performance filters cannot be washed in water for reuse. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval of the filters by using the operation manual for the indoor unit.

Parts Make sure that the following parts are provided with the product.

Name		Filter chamber	Mounting screw	Installation Manual
Shape			 M5×16	
Number	KDDF37AA36	1	12	1 (This copy)
	KDDF37AA56		14	
	KDDF37AA80		18	
	KDDF37AA160		22	

Combination table The use of the chamber requires each filter as an optional accessory.

Name of model	High-performance filter (optional accessory)	Long-life filter (optional accessory)	Name of model incorporable into indoor unit	
KDDF37AA36	KAF372AA36 or KAF373AA36	KAF371AA36	VRV	FXMQ20 / 25 / 32PVE
KDDF37AA56	KAF372AA56 or KAF373AA56	KAF371AA56	VRV	FXMQ40PVE
KDDF37AA80	KAF372AA80 or KAF373AA80	KAF371AA80	SkyAir	FBQ71DV1 FBQ71DAVET
			VRV	FXMQ50/63/80PVE
KDDF37AA160	KAF372AA160 or KAF373AA160	KAF371AA160	SkyAir	FBQ100/125/140DV1 FBQ100/125/140DAVET FBQ30/36/42/48DV2S
			VRV	FXMQ100/125/140PVE

KAF372AA36, KAF372AA56, KAF372AA80, and KAF372AA160: 65% (colorimeter method)
KAF373AA36, KAF373AA56, KAF373AA80, and KAF373AA160: 90% (colorimeter method)

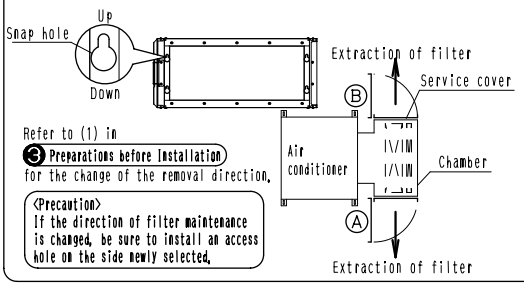
❶ Before installation 《Do not throw away the required accessories until the installation of the product is completed.》

(1)Decide the carry-in route.。
(2)Carry the product into the place of installation without unpacking the product. If it is unavoidable to unpack and carry in the product, pay the utmost attention to handle the product.

❷ Selecting Place of Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

(1) Select the place of installation with the consent of the customer, provided that the following conditions are satisfied.
- A place bearing the weight of the indoor unit and filter chamber.
- A place where the lower part of the ceiling does not lean remarkably.
- A place where an installation workspace can be secured.

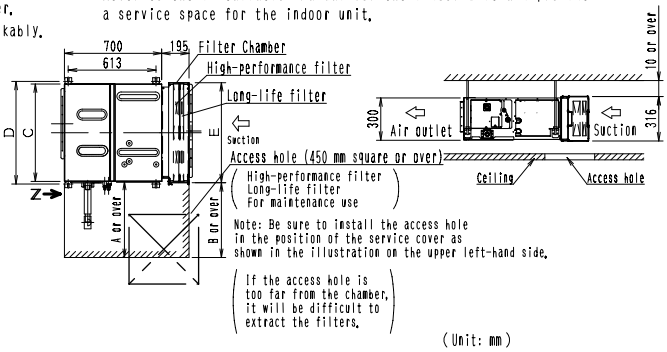
(2) Either the left- or right-hand side service cover can be used to remove the filters. Select the direction of removal according to the condition of installation. (The service cover in position Ⓐ is set for opening and closing before shipping.) At that time, confirm the up-and-down direction of the filter chamber through the snap holes located on the left- and right-hand sides of the frame on the air onditioner connection side.



Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation for the change of the removal direction.

<Precaution>
If the direction of filter maintenance is changed, be sure to install an access hole on the side newly selected.

(3) Install the access hole for the filter service space as shown below.
- Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and provide a service space for the indoor unit.



Note: Be sure to install the access hole in the position of the service cover as shown in the illustration on the upper left-hand side.

If the access hole is too far from the chamber, it will be difficult to extract the filters.

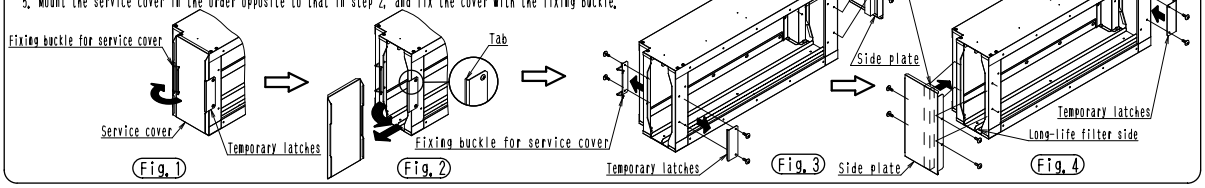
(Unit: mm)

Unit name	A	B	C	D	E
KDDF37AA36	650	650	550	588	582
KDDF37AA56	450	450	700	738	720
KDDF37AA80	450	450	1000	1038	1080
KDDF37AA160	450	450	1400	1438	1440

❸ Preparations before Installation Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.

(1) Take the following procedure in the case of changing the direction of filter extraction.
Example: When changing the opening and closing direction of the service cover from Ⓐ to Ⓑ as shown in ❷ Selecting Place of Installation -(2)
1. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover. (Fig. 1)
2. Rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches. (Fig. 2)
3. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover, temporary latches, and the screws on the side plates.
4. Mount the parts with the screws removed in step 3 to the opposite side. (Fig. 4)
   Insert the protruding seal material on the side plate into the rail side of the long-life filters.
5. Mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in step 2, and fix the cover with the fixing buckle.

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



C: 3K021007

(2) Remove the air inlet flange of the indoor unit. (Fig. 5)
(3) In the case of connecting on-site ducts to the air outlet of the indoor unit and the air inlet of the filter chamber, mount a canvas duct (locally procured) to the air inlet flange so that the vibration of the filter chamber will not be propagated to the ducts or ceiling. (Fig. 6)
- Install the connected ducts with suspension bolts (locally procured) so that the weight of the connected ducts will not be imposed on the air inlet flange.
- Moreover, apply an adsorption material (thermal insulator) to the inner wall of the on-site duct and attach vibration isolation rubber to the suspension bolts for the indoor unit.
- In the case of connecting the local duct to the air inlet side of the filter chamber, mount the dismounted air inlet flange to the air inlet side of the filter chamber with the screws removed from the indoor unit and those provided to the indoor unit.

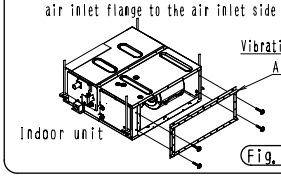


Fig. 5

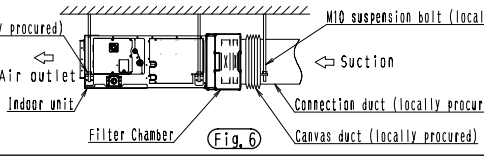


Fig. 6

<Precaution>
Check that the duct is installed securely, or otherwise air leakage may result.

4 Installation of Filter Chamber

The filter chamber mounted to the indoor unit can be hung on the suspension bolts.
(1) Temporarily tighten the mounting screws provided with the product to the 4 points of the indoor unit. (Fig. 5)
Tap threads on the screws on the indoor unit in advance to secure the filter chamber.
(2) Temporarily secure the chamber with the screws prepared in (1) through the snap holes from the inner side of the chamber.
(3) Tighten the 4 temporarily secured screws after tightening the provided mounting screws (8 screws for type 36, 10 screws for type 56, 14 screws for type 80 (fig. 8) , and 18 screws for type 160) in all the screw holes in the chamber.
(4) Use an appropriate tool, such as a spirit level, and install the indoor unit and filter chamber horizontally.

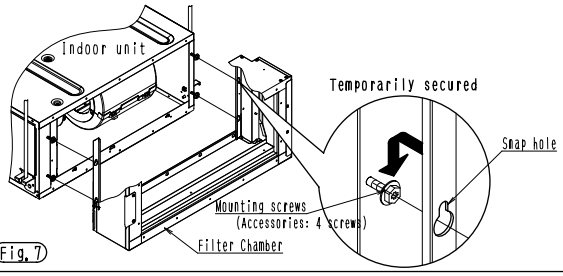


Fig. 7

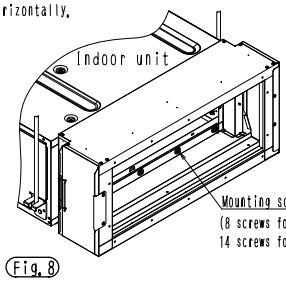


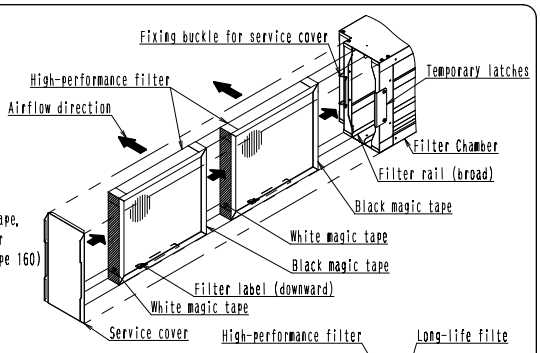
Fig. 8

5 Filter Mounting Procedure

High-performance filter

There is no difference in mounting method between the 65% type and 90% type.
(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the first sheet (provided with black magic tape) according to the wide filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the direction of the arrows.
(3) After the first filter is perfectly inserted, insert the next filter (on the white magic tape side as shown in the illustration on the right-hand side) and secure the filter with the magic tape.
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1). (Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

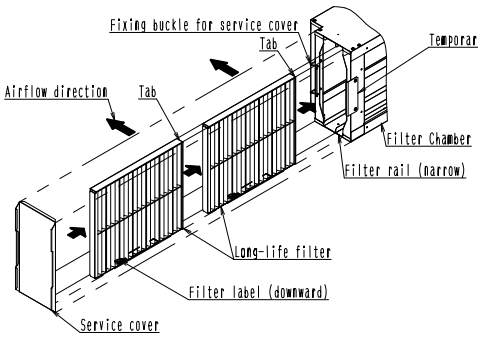
<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



Long-life filter

(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the filter according to the filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the directions of the arrows.
(3) Be sure to hook the next filter to the tab on the first filter and insert the next filter when more than half the first filter is inserted.
The filter cannot be inserted unless the direction of the filter is correct. (Except KAF375AA36) (Fig. 9)
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1)
(Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



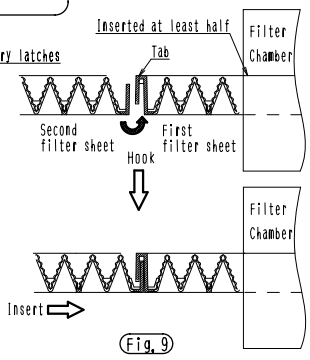
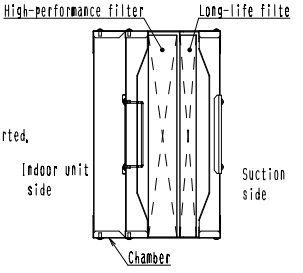
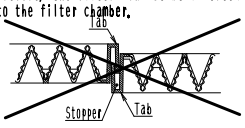


Fig. 9



Position of Each Filter in Chamber Side View
(Before mounting service cover)

<Precaution>
If the filters are different to each other in direction, the stoppers will obstruct the engagement of the filters with the tabs. Therefore, the filters cannot be inserted into the filter chamber.



3K021007

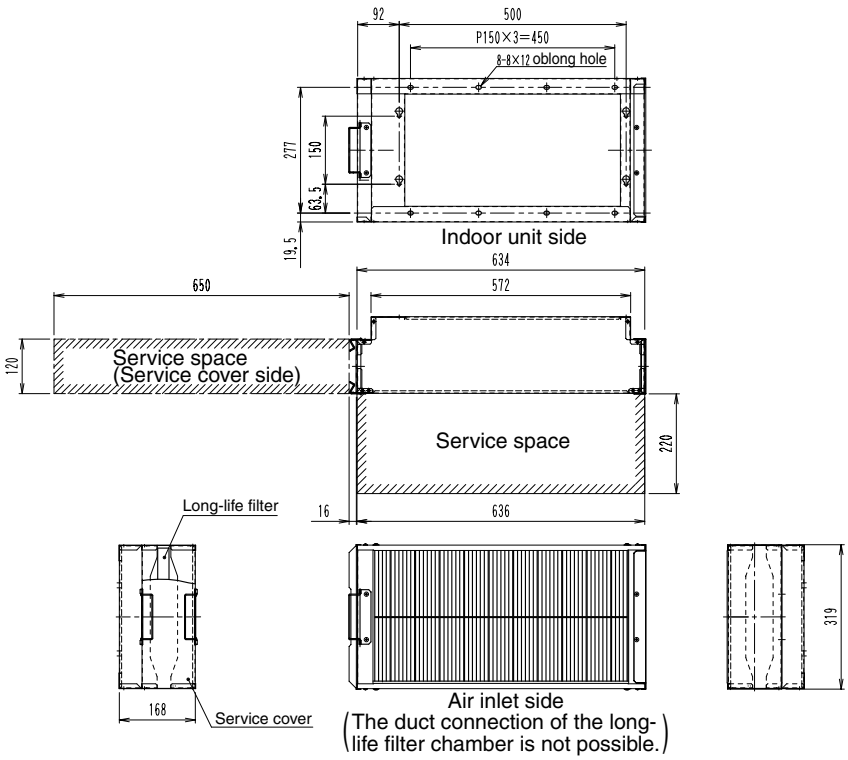
5.4 KAF375AA80 / 160 — Long-life Filter Chamber Kit

Item \ Model		KAF375AA36	KAF375AA56	KAF375AA80	KAF375AA160
Long-life filter *1		KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Accessories		Mounting screws. Installation manual.	Protection net. Mounting screws. Installation manual.		
Mass (Weight)	kg	4	4.5	5.5	7.5

Note: *1. The long-life filter is packed inside the chamber.

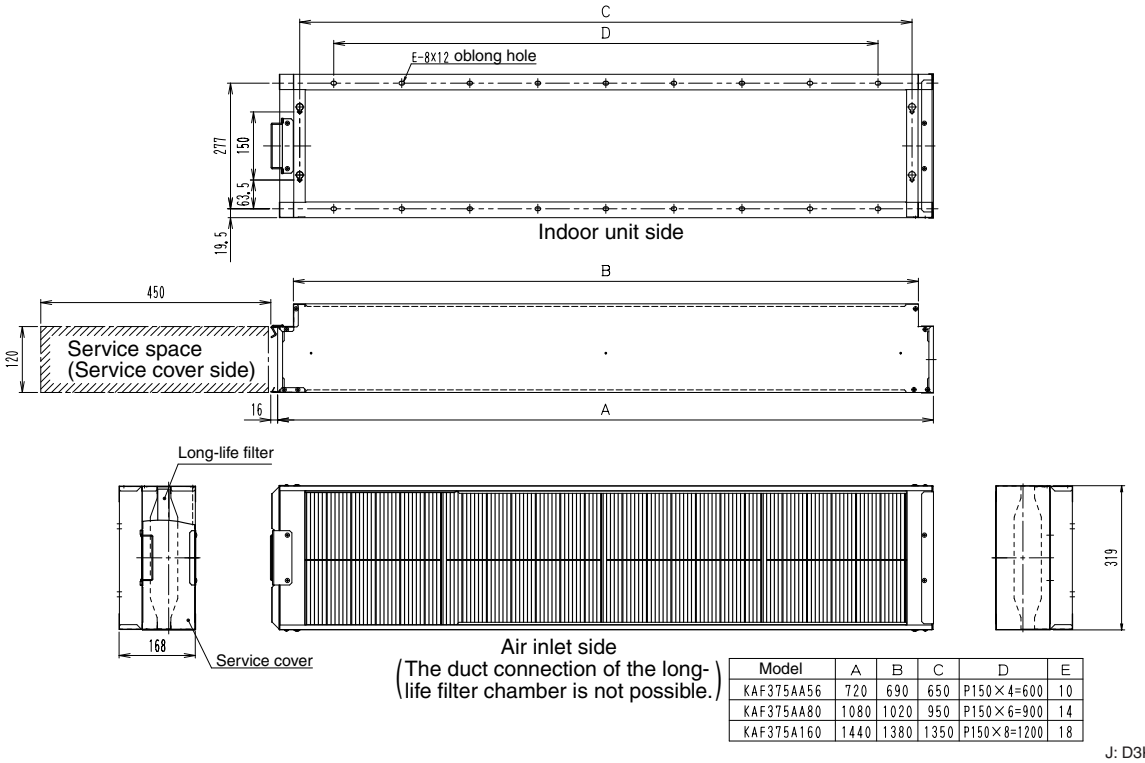
Dimensions Unit (mm)

KAF375AA36



J: D3K07519A

KAF375AA56 / KAF375AA80 / KAF375AA160



Model	A	B	C	D	E
KAF375AA56	720	690	650	P150×4=600	10
KAF375AA80	1080	1020	950	P150×6=900	14
KAF375A160	1440	1380	1350	P150×8=1200	18

J: D3K06729A

Installation Manual

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Long-life Filter Chamber Kit《Ceiling Mounted Duct Connection Type》 Installation Manual

KAF375AA36 • 56 • 80 • 160

Read this manual in advance and follow all the instructions given in the manual to conduct the installation of the product.

3

⚠Precautions Conduct the installation of the product correctly after carefully reading the safety precautions specified below.

- Request your dealer or contractor to conduct the installation of the product. Users' unauthorized installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the installation of the product correctly by following all the instructions given in the manual. A defect in the installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Be sure to use parts specified in this manual and the accessories provided with the product for the installation of the product. Failure to use these parts may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the trial operation of the product after the installation of the product and check that there are no abnormalities.

Parts Make sure that the following parts are provided with the product.

Name		Filter Chamber	Long-life filter	Protection net	Mounting screw	Mounting screw	Installation Manual
Shape					 M5X16	 M4X16	
Number	KAF375AA36	1	1	—	12	—	1 (This copy)
	KAF375AA56		2	1	14	2	
	KAF375AA80		3		18	4	
	KAF375AA160		4		22	4	

The above long-life filters are packed inside the chamber.

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to air conditioners of ceiling mounted duct connection type.
- Mount the product after checking the model name of the indoor unit with the table on the right-hand side.
- Refer to the operation manual and installation manual for the indoor unit as well at the time of the installation of the product.
- The duct connection of the long-life filter chamber is not possible.
- Long-life filter
  The long-life filter can be washed and used again. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval and removal method of the filter by using the operation manual for the indoor unit and this installation manual.

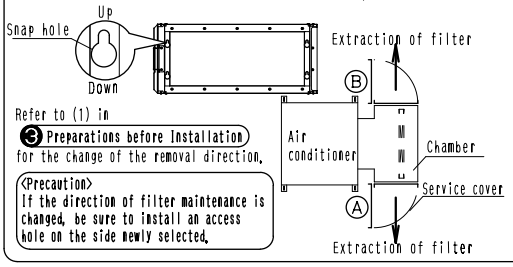
❶ Before installation Do not throw away the required accessories until the installation of the product is completed.

(1) Decide the carry-in route.
(2) Carry the product into the place of installation without unpacking the product. If it is unavoidable to unpack and carry in the product, pay the utmost attention to handle the product.

❷ Selecting Place of Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

(1) Select the place of installation with the consent of the customer, provided that the following conditions are satisfied.
- A place bearing the weight of the indoor unit and filter chamber.
- A place where the lower part of the ceiling does not lean remarkably.
- A place where an installation workspace can be secured.

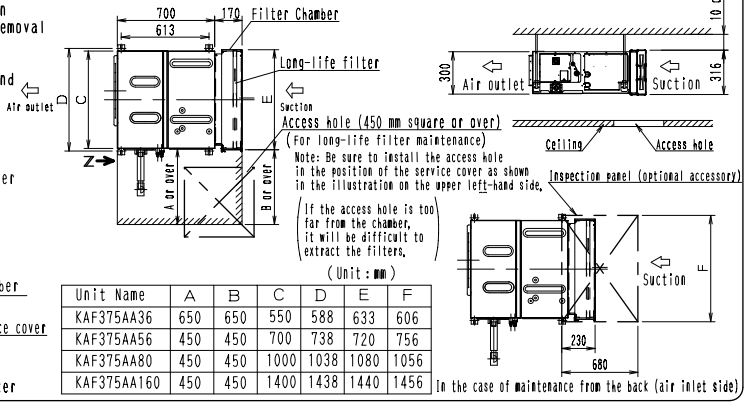
(2) Either the left- or right-hand side service cover can be used to remove the filters. Select the direction of removal according to the condition of installation. (The service cover in position Ⓐ is set for opening and closing before shipping.) At that time, confirm the up-and-down direction of the filter chamber through the snap holes located on the left- and right-hand sides of the frame on the air conditioner connection side.



Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation for the change of the removal direction.

〈Precaution〉
If the direction of filter maintenance is changed, be sure to install an access hole on the side newly selected.

(3) Install the access hole for the filter service space as shown below.
- Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and provide a service space for the indoor unit.
- In the case of performing the maintenance of the long-life filters from the back (on the suction side), install an inspection panel (optional accessory) on the air inlet side.



(Unit : mm)

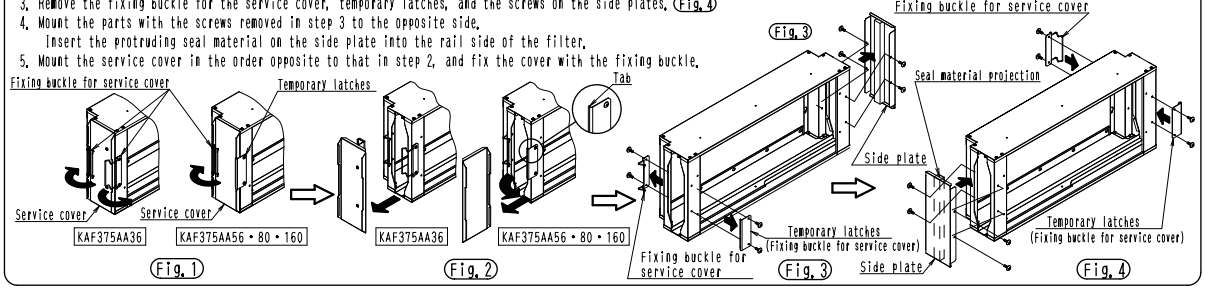
Unit Name	A	B	C	D	E	F
KAF375AA36	650	650	550	588	633	606
KAF375AA56	450	450	700	738	720	756
KAF375AA80	450	450	1000	1038	1080	1056
KAF375AA160	450	450	1400	1438	1440	1456

In the case of maintenance from the back (air inlet side)

❸ Preparations before Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

(1) Take the following procedure in the case of changing the direction of filter extraction.
Example: When changing the opening and closing direction of the service cover from Ⓐ to Ⓑ as shown in ❷ Selecting Place of Installation -(2).
1. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover. (Fig. 1)
2. Rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches. (KAF375AA56 • 80 • 160) Remove the service cover. (KAF375AA36) (Fig. 2)
3. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover, temporary latches, and the screws on the side plates. (Fig. 4)
4. Mount the parts with the screws removed in step 3 to the opposite side.
   Insert the protruding seal material on the side plate into the rail side of the filter.
5. Mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in step 2, and fix the cover with the fixing buckle.

〈Precaution〉
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



C: 3K021008

(2) Remove the long life filters from the chambers in advance.
Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover.
Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.

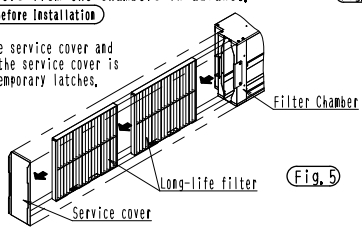


Fig. 5

(3) Remove the air inlet flange of the indoor unit. Fig. 6
No on-site duct can be connected to the air inlet side of the filter chamber.

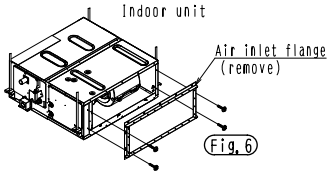


Fig. 6

❹ Attachment of Protection Net 《Except KAF375AA36》

(1) Attach the protection net to the indoor unit.
Insert the tabs of the protection net as shown in Fig. 7 into the long circular holes on the upper part of the indoor unit as shown in Fig. 8.
(2 places for type 56 and 4 places for type 80 and type 160)
(2) As shown in Fig. 9, secure the protection net attached to the indoor unit in (1) with mounting screws.
(2 places for type 56 and 4 places for type 80 and type 160)

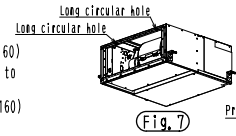


Fig. 7

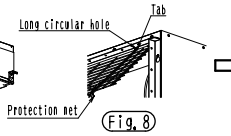


Fig. 8

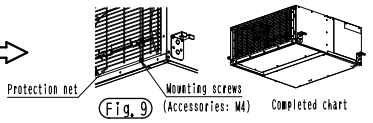


Fig. 9

❺ Installation of Filter Chamber

The filter chamber mounted to the indoor unit can be hung on the suspension bolts.
(1) Attach the mounting screws provided with the kit to the 4 points of the indoor unit. Fig. 10
(2) Temporarily secure the chamber with the screws prepared in (1) through the snap holes from the inner side of the chamber.
(3) Tighten the 4 temporarily secured screws after tightening the provided mounting screws Fig. 11
(8 screws for type 36, 10 screws for type 56, 14 screws for type 80, and 18 screws for type 160) in all the screw holes in the chamber
(4) Use an appropriate tool, such as a spirit level, and install the indoor unit and filter chamber horizontally.

<Precaution>
- Air leakage may result if the screws are not tightened securely.
- Air leakage may result or the filters may not be extracted with ease if the filter chamber is not installed horizontally

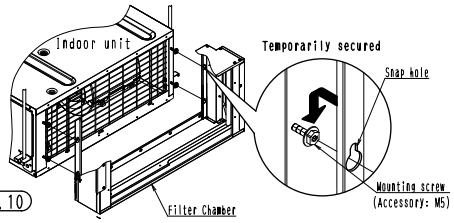


Fig. 10

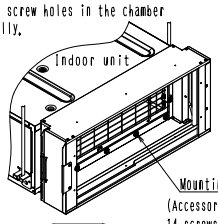


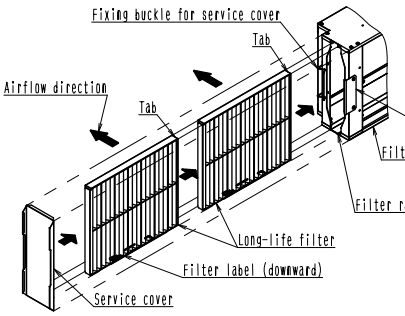
Fig. 11

❻ Mounting Procedure for Long-life Filter

Mounting of Long-life Filter

(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover.
Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the filter according to the filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the direction of the arrows.
(3) Be sure to hook the next filter to the tab on the first filter and insert the next filter when more than half the first filter is inserted.
The filter cannot be inserted unless the direction of the filter is correct. (Except KAF375AA36) Fig. 12
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1).
(Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover.
Otherwise, air leakage may result.



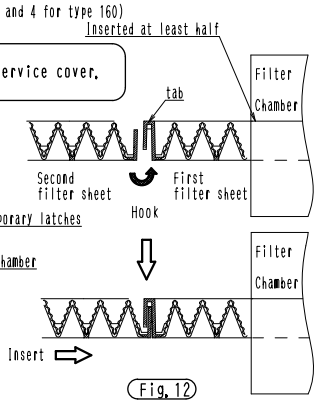
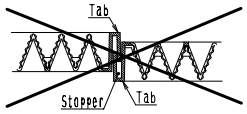
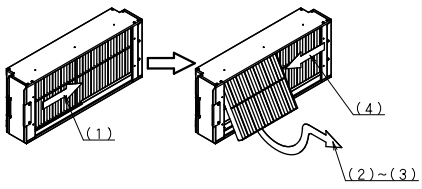


Fig. 12

<Precaution>
If the filters are different to each other in direction, the stoppers will obstruct the engagement of the filters with the tabs. Therefore, the filters cannot be inserted into the filter chamber.





Removal of long-life filter from the back

(1) Push the filter in the direction of arrows.
(2) Lift the filter on the left front side a little, and rotate and remove the lower side to the air inlet side from the rail.
(3) Extract the filter after pulling and removing the upper part of the filter in the front direction from the rail.
(4) Shift the remaining filters to the left front side in sequence, and remove the filter like the first one explained in step (3). (Except KAF375AA36)

Fig. 13

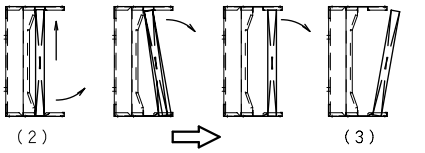


Fig. 13

3K021008

5.5 KTB25KA56 / 80 / 160W, KTBJ25K80 / 160T, KTBJ25K80 / 160F — Service Access Panel

KTBJ25K36W



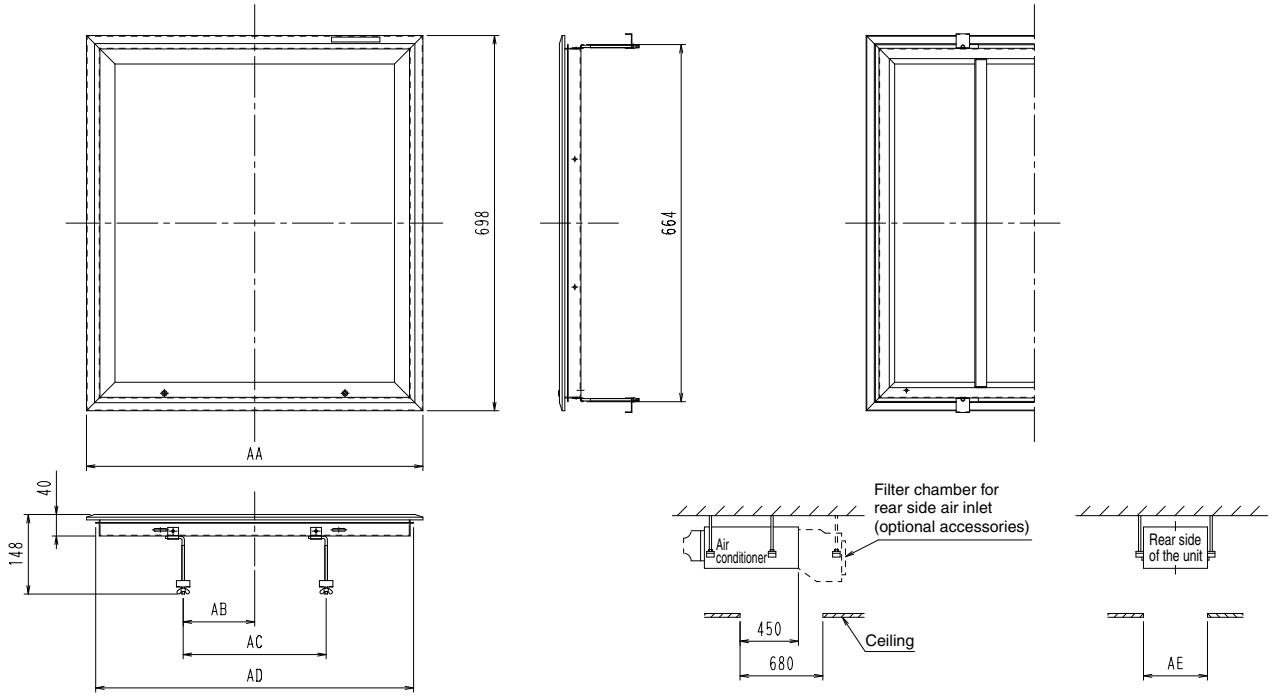
Item \ Model		KTBJ25K36W	KTB25KA56W	KTB25KA80W	KTB25KA160W
Colour		W : White			
Accessories		Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.0	6.5	9.0	10.7

Item \ Model		KTBJ25K36T KTBJ25K36F	KTBJ25K56T KTBJ25K56F	KTBJ25K80T KTBJ25K80F	KTBJ25K160T KTBJ25K160F
Colour		T : Brown, F : Fresh white			
Accessories		Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.0	6.5	9.0	10.7

Caution

- Ceiling joist and ceiling joist support required. (Locally procured.)

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	Colour	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE
KTBJ25K36W	White	626	115	266	591	606
KTBJ25K36T	Brown	626	115	266	591	606
KTBJ25K36F	Fresh white	626	115	266	591	606
KTB25KA56W	White	776	190	416	741	756
KTBJ25K56T	Brown	776	190	416	741	756
KTBJ25K56F	Fresh white	776	190	416	741	756
KTB25KA80W	White	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTBJ25K80T	Brown	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTBJ25K80F	Fresh white	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTB25KA160W	White	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456
KTBJ25K160T	Brown	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456
KTBJ25K160F	Fresh white	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456

JC: D3K1126A

- The inspection hatch can be made to look nice with the service access panel.
- Thin 10 mm design for the exposed part.

Installation Manual

DAIKIN

AIR CONDITIONER

Directions for Mounting Access Panels

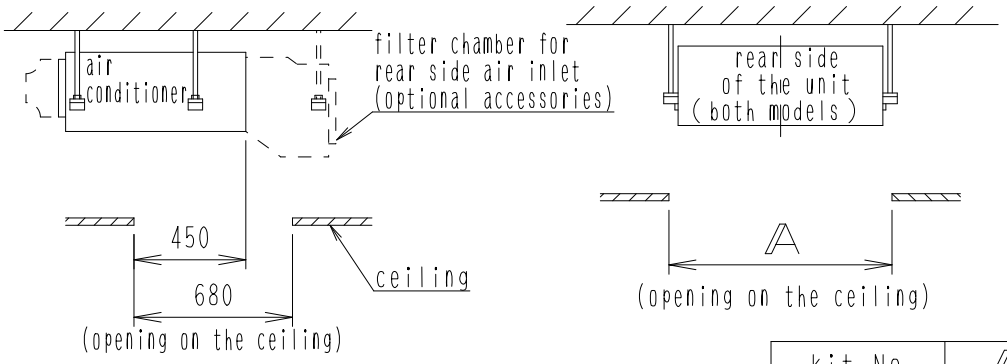
READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.

● KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

Before Mounting the Panel

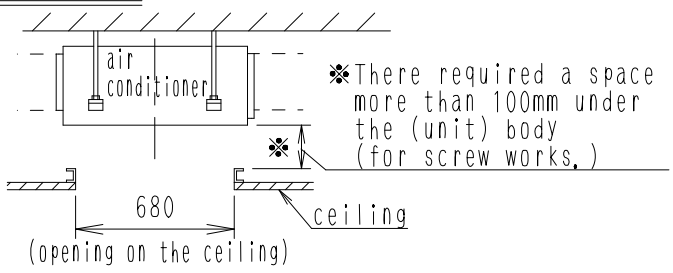
1. Prepare an opening on the ceiling.

Built-In Type

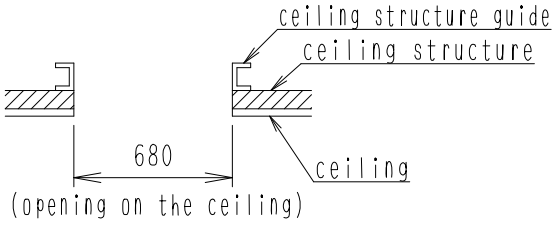


kit No.	A
KTBJ25K36	606
KTBJ25K56 KTB25KA56	756
KTBJ25K80 KTB25KA80	1056
KTBJ25K160 KTB25KA160	1456

Duct Type



2. Mount the ceiling structure guide on the edge of the ceiling structure.



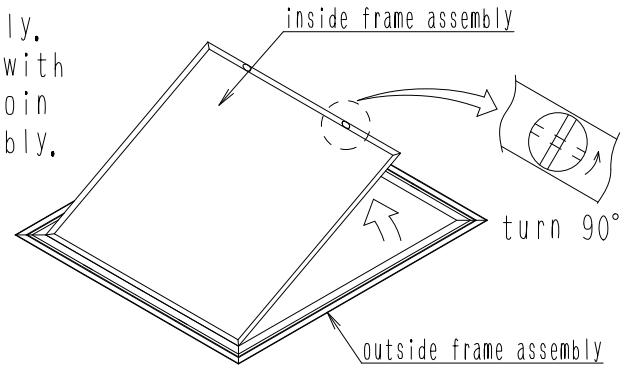
Service Works for Duct Type Models

Service works for maintenance shall be done (accessed) from the ※ space (the above).
Please prepare short-length screw drivers (100mm or less.)

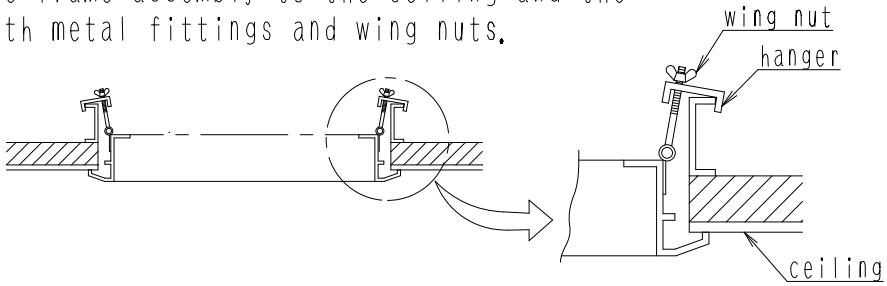
3P225173A

Mounting the Panel

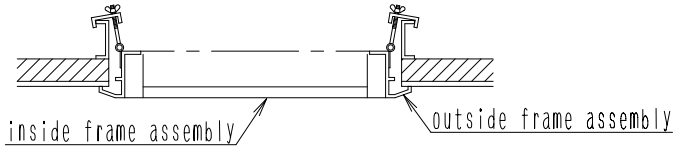
1. Remove the inside frame assembly.
   • Turn the lock 90° to the left with a flat-top screw driver or a coin to open the inside frame assembly.



2. Mount the outside frame assembly on the ceiling.
   • Fasten the frame assembly to the ceiling and the guide with metal fittings and wing nuts.



3. Mount the inside frame assembly to the fixed outside frame assembly.

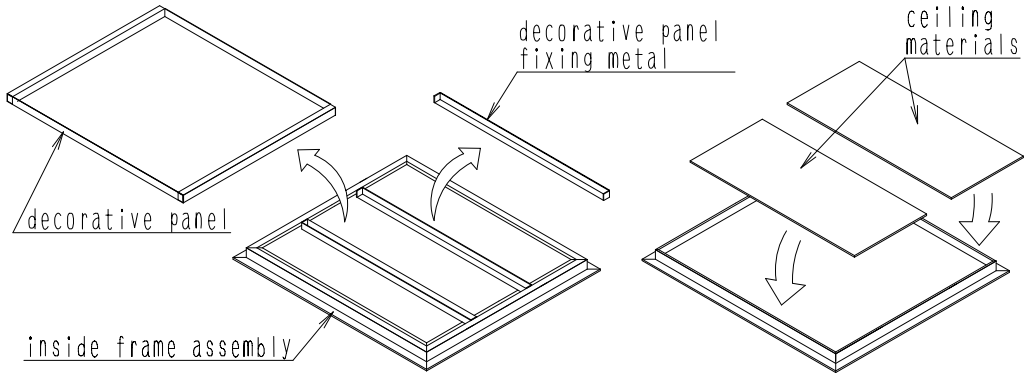


Mounting of Ceiling Materials

Ceiling materials can be optionaly mounted to the inside frame assembly.
Mounting methods are as follows:-

① Remove the decorative panel fixing metal of the inside frame assembly.
② Take out the decorative panel and mount the ceiling materials instead.
③ Put back the fixing metal (①) to hold the ceiling materials.

(Note) Decorative panel is not required when mounting ceiling materials.



3P225173A

5.6 KDAJ25K56 / 71 / 140A — Air Discharge Adaptor

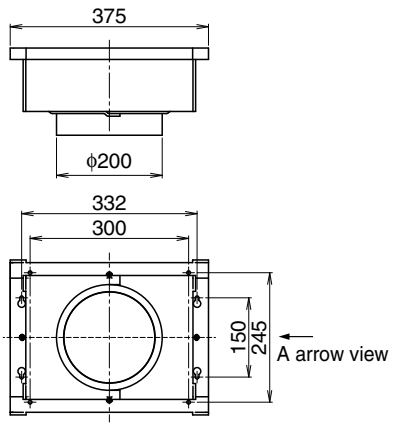
KDAJ25K56A



Item \ Model		KDAJ25K36A	KDAJ25K56A	KDAJ25K71A	KDAJ25K140A
Duct connection diameter		ϕ200×1 port	ϕ200×2 port		ϕ200×4 port
Material		Hot-dip zinc coated steel sheets. EPS. Insulation.			
Accessories		Screws. Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.0	1.5	2.5	3.5

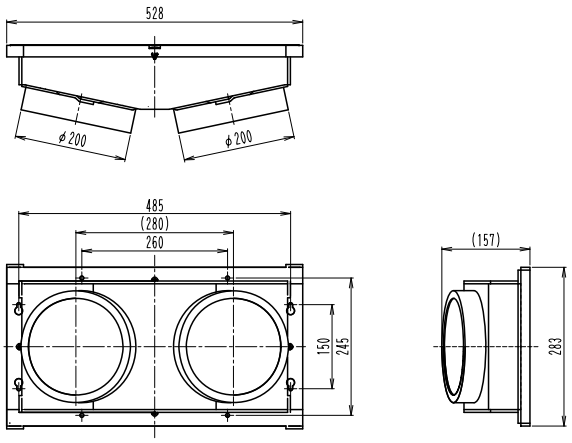
Dimensions Unit (mm)

KDAJ25K36A



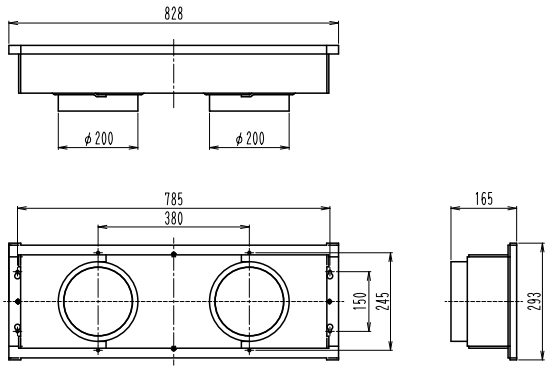
D3K06518

KDAJ25K56A



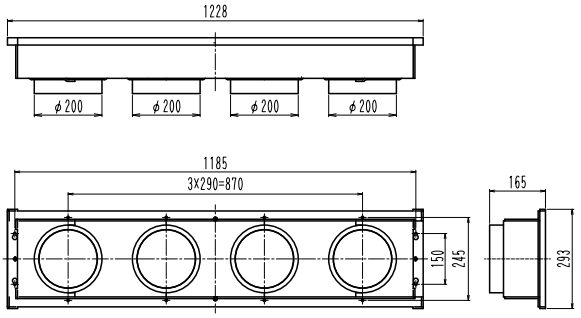
D3K06136

KDAJ25K71A



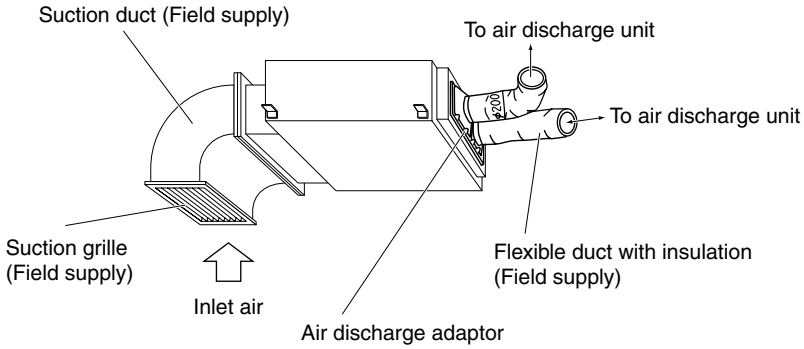
D3K06137

KDAJ25K140A

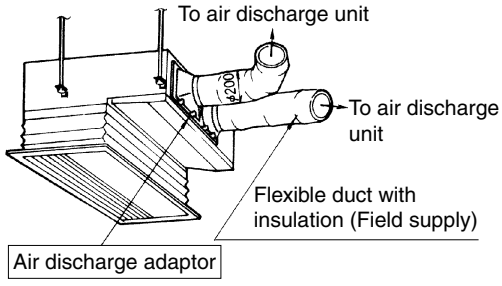


D3K06138A

Example of installation (FBQ-D(A) / FXMQ-P)



Example of installation (FBQ-B / FH(Y)B / FXS(YQ) / FXYB)

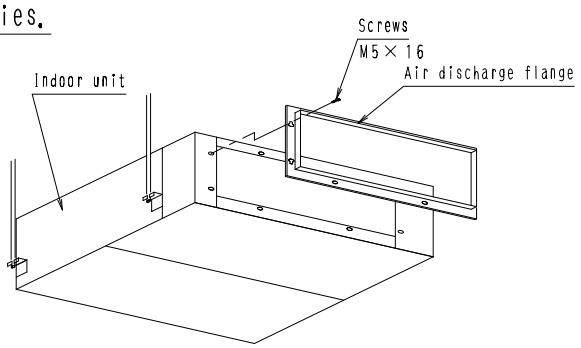


Installation Manual

Air discharge adapter installation manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KDAJ25K36A	KDAJ25K56A	KDAJ25K71A	KDAJ25K140A
	KDA25D32	KDA25D45	KDA25D63	KDA25D125
Air discharge adapter	1	1	1	1
Installation manual	1	1	1	1
Screws	8	8	8	12

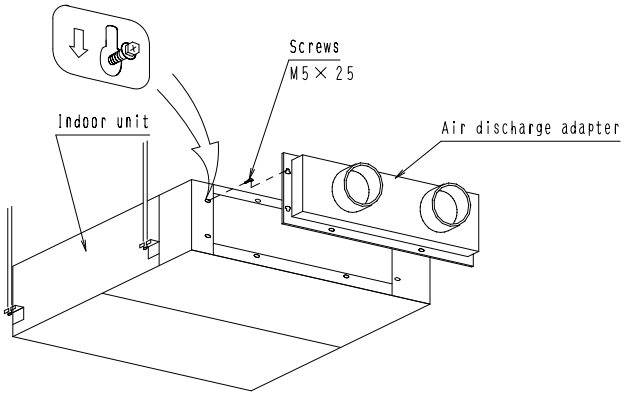


2. Required tools

Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

1. Remove the air discharge flange from indoor unit.
2. Attach the air discharge adapter to the indoor unit.
   ① Tighten two installation screws to the indoor unit. (Leave about 20mm of the thread exposed.)
   ② Hang the air discharge adapter on the screws and then tighten all screws definitively.



4. Cautions for the installation

Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the air discharge adapter.

3P012475C

6. FH(Y)C — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Multi Flow)

6.1 BYC125K-W1 / BYC125K-W2 — Decoration Panel

Installation Manual

BEFORE INSTALLATION

PRECAUTIONS

• Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

ACCESSORIES

• Installation manual.

NOTE TO INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

<<For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase optional blocking pad kit.>>

HANDLING OF DECORATION PANELS

• Never place the panel facing down nor lean it against a wall nor leave it on a projecting object.

• Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap.
(The swing flap may malfunction.)

(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.
1) Push the suction grille lever inward and lift up the lever side. (Refer to Fig. 1.)

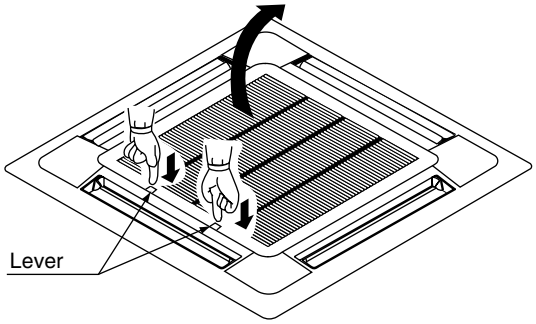


Fig. 1

2) Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees. (Refer to Fig. 2.)

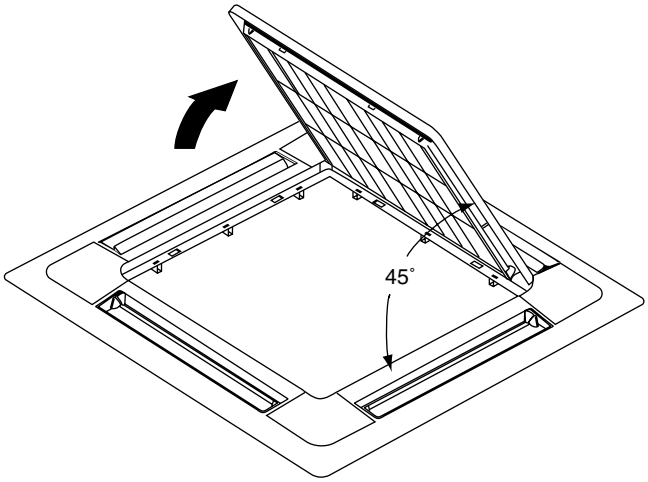


Fig. 2

(2) Remove the service cover on the corner.
Slide the service cover outward to remove. (Refer to Fig. 3.)

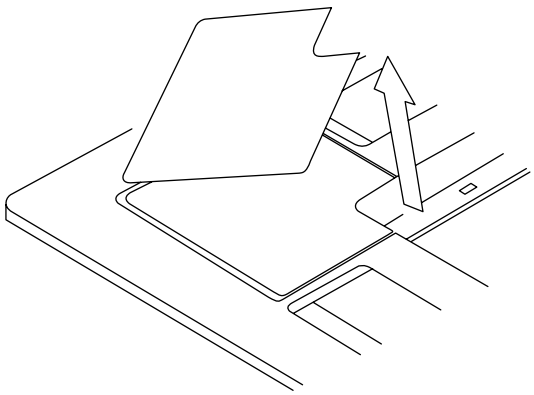


Fig. 3

3PA64319-9L

INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

<<Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit.>>

(1) Set the decoration panel to the indoor unit body by matching the position of the swing flap motor of the decoration panel to the piping position of the indoor unit as shown in Fig. 4.

(2) Install the decoration panel.
1) Temporarily install the decoration panel to the indoor unit by hanging the latch on the opposite side of the swing flap motor of the decoration panel to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 positions)
2) Temporarily hang the remaining 2 latches to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (Be careful not to let the swing motor lead wire get caught in the sealing material.)
3) Screw all 4 hexagon head screws located right beneath the latches in approximately 5 mm. (Panel will rise.)
4) Adjust the decoration panel by turning it to the arrowed direction in Fig. 4 so that the ceiling opening is completely covered.
5) Tighten the screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit body reduces to 5–8 mm.

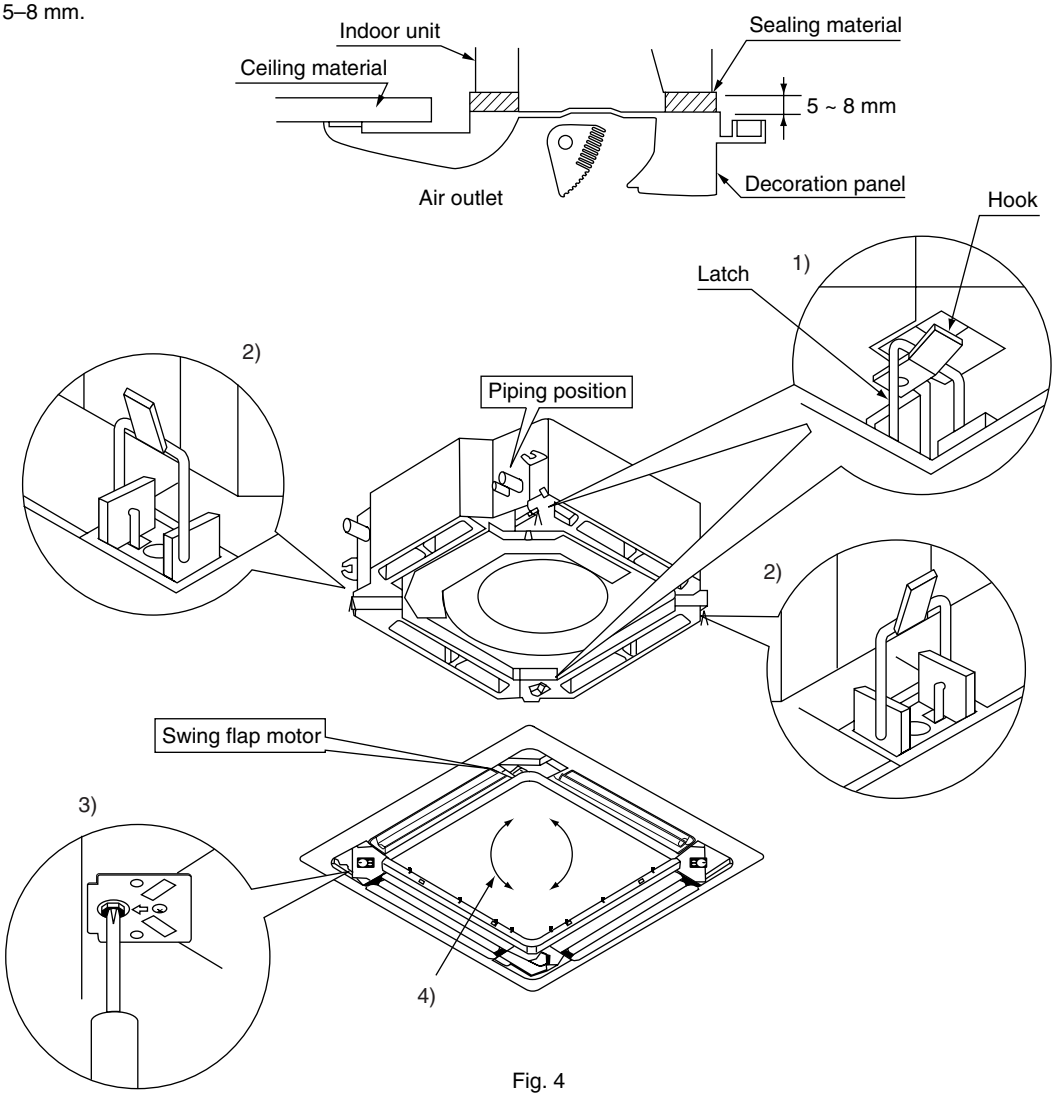


Fig. 4

PRECAUTIONS

- Improper screwing of the screws may cause the troubles shown in Fig. 5. Screw properly.

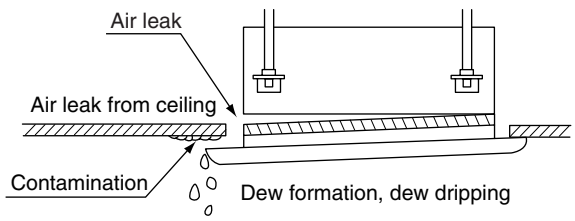
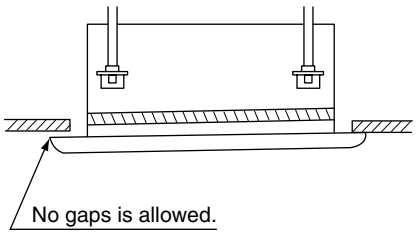


Fig. 5

3PA64319-9L

• If gap is still left between the ceiling and the decoration panel after screwing the screws, readjust the indoor unit body height. (Refer to Fig. 6.)



Adjustment of the indoor unit body height from the holes in the corner of the decoration panel is possible if the indoor unit is kept leveled and the drain piping, etc. is unaffected.

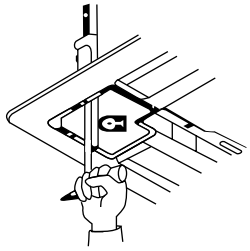


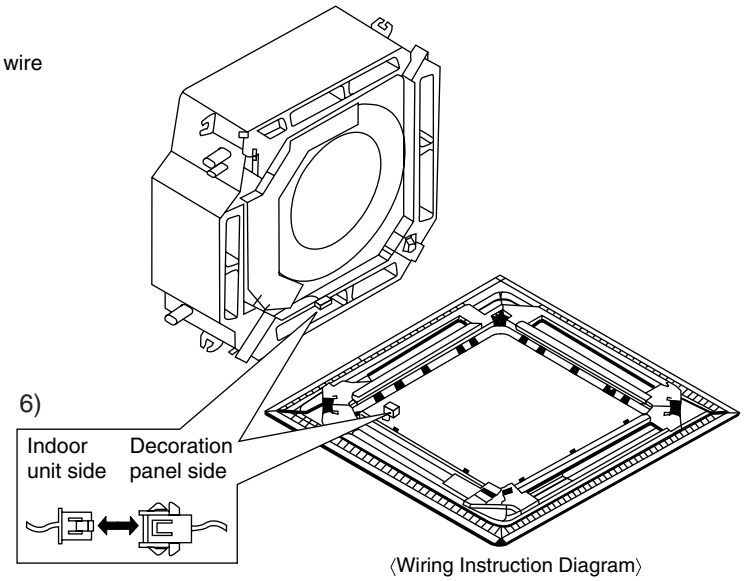
Fig. 6

(3) Wiring of the decoration panel (Refer to Fig. 7.)

6) Connect the connectors for swing flap motor lead wire installed on the decoration panel.

If connectors are not connected, the malfunction display (A7) appears on the remote controller. Connect the connectors properly.

Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel.



〈Wiring Instruction Diagram〉
(It differs from the actual state.)

Fig. 7

INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE AND SERVICE COVER

(1) Install the suction grille.

Install by reversing the procedure shown in “PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL”.
It is possible to install the suction grille in 4 directions by turning the suction grille.
Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or in meeting customers’ demands.

NOTE)
Be careful not to get swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

(2) Install the service cover on the corner.

1) Attach the string of the service cover to the pin of the decoration panel as in Fig. 8.

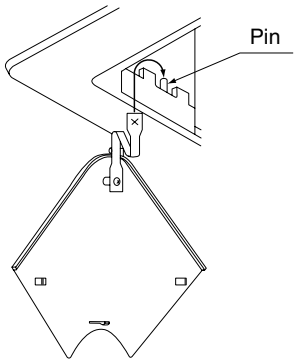
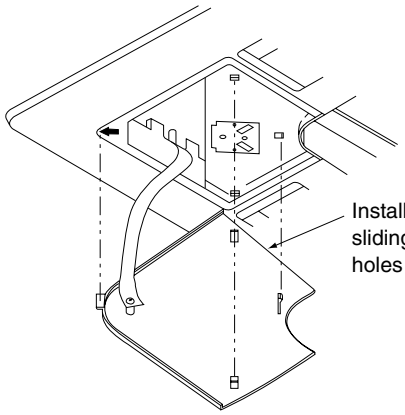


Fig. 8

2) Install the service cover over the decoration panel.



Install the service cover by sliding 4 latches to fit into the holes on the decoration panel.

3PA64319-9L

6.2 BYC125K-W1S — Decoration Panel

Installation Manual

ก่อนทำการติดตั้ง

ข้อพึงระวัง

- โปรดอ้างอิงคู่มือการติดตั้งของเครื่องภายในอาคารด้วย

อุปกรณ์ต่างๆ

- คู่มือการติดตั้ง

หมายเหตุสำหรับผู้ติดตั้ง

โปรดตรวจให้มั่นใจว่าท่านได้สอนวิธีใช้งานที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสมและแสดงคู่มือการใช้งานที่ติดมากับเครื่องให้แก่ลูกค้าด้วย

การเตรียมแผงตกแต่ง

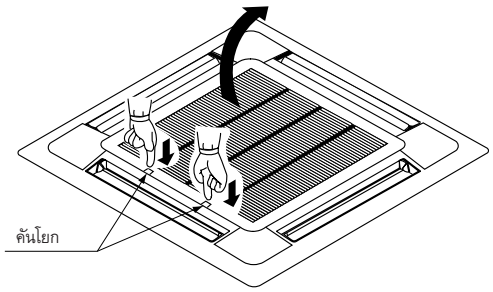
<<สำหรับเครื่องนี้ ท่านสามารถเลือกทิศทางการไหลของอากาศได้ ท่านจำเป็นต้องซื้อชุดบังคับทิศทางเพื่อระบายอากาศใน 2 หรือ 3 ทิศทาง>>

การปฏิบัติต่อแผงตกแต่ง

- อย่าวางแผงนี้คว่ำหน้าลงหรือวางพิงฝาผนังหรือวางบนวัตถุที่มีส่วนที่ยื่นออกมา
- อย่าจับหรือออกแรงกดบนแผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศ
  (อาจทำให้แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศเสียหาย)

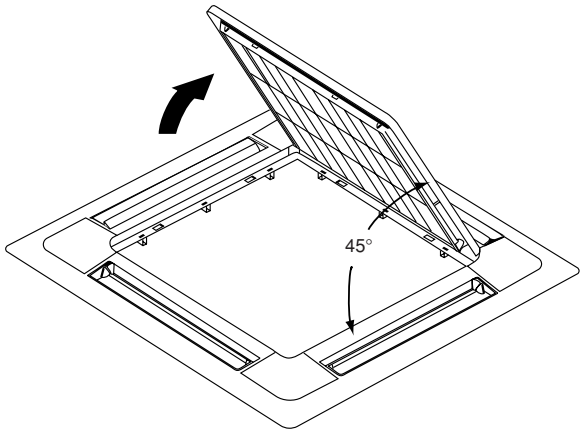
(1) ปลดตะแกรงดูดอากาศออกจากแผงตกแต่ง

1) กดคันโยกของตะแกรงดูดอากาศเข้าข้างในแล้วยกด้านคันโยกขึ้น
(ดูรูป 1 ประกอบ)



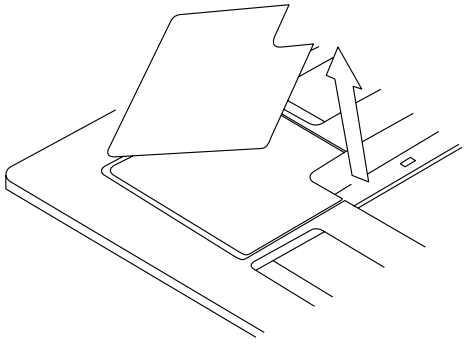
รูป 1

2) ดึงตะแกรงดูดอากาศออกจากแผงตกแต่งโดยการยกตะแกรงขึ้นประมาณ 45 องศา
(ดูรูป 2 ประกอบ)



รูป 2

(2) ปลดฝาปิดบนตัวเครื่อง
เลื่อนฝาปิดออกเพื่อปลด
(ดูรูป 3 ประกอบ)



รูป 3

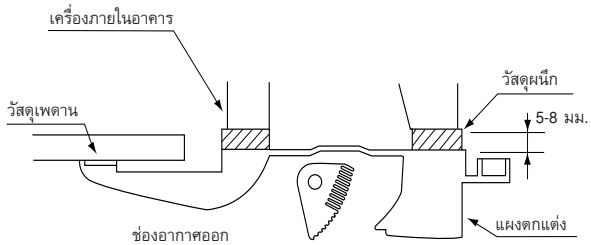
การติดตั้งแผงตกแต่งเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร

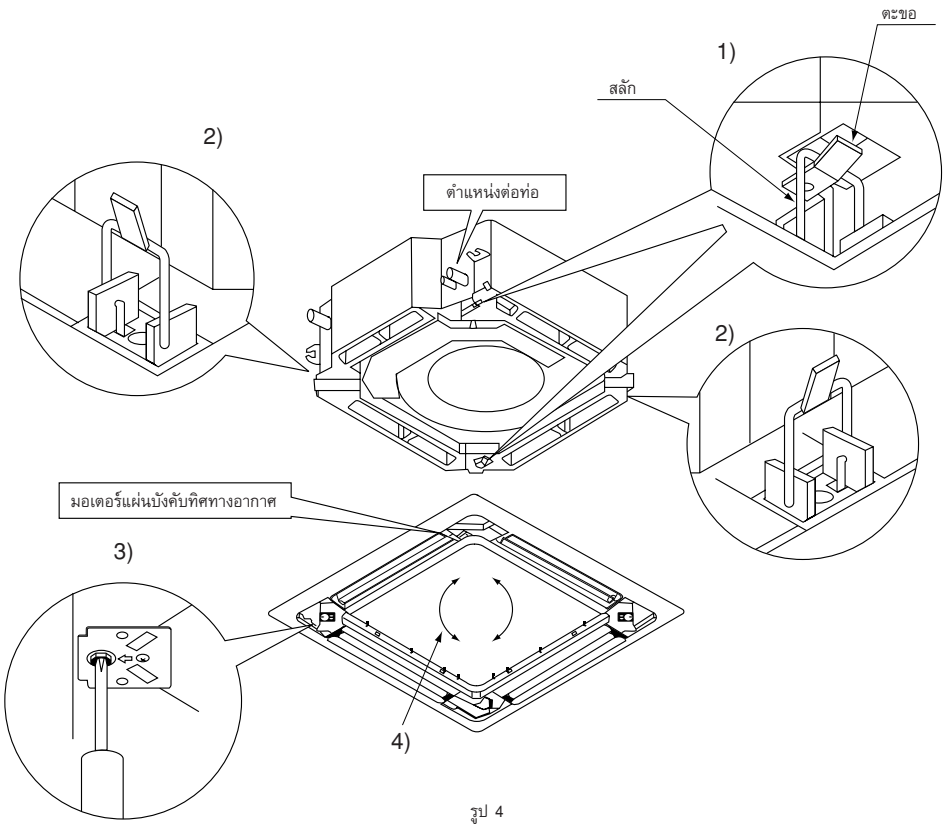
<<โปรดดูการติดตั้งตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารในคู่มือการติดตั้งที่ติดมากับเครื่องภายในอาคาร>>

(1) วางแผงตกแต่งเข้ากับตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารโดยการทาบตำแหน่งของมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศเข้ากับตำแหน่งต่อท่อของเครื่องภายในอาคารดังแสดงในรูป 4

(2) ติดตั้งแผงตกแต่ง

1) ติดตั้งแผงตกแต่งเข้ากับเครื่องภายในอาคารอย่างชั่วคราวโดยการแขวนสลักที่อยู่ด้านตรงข้ามกับมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศของแผงตกแต่งเข้ากับตะขอของตัวเครื่องภายในอาคาร (2 ตำแหน่ง)
2) แขวนสลักที่เหลืออีก 2 อันเข้ากับตะขอบนเครื่องภายในอาคารอย่างชั่วคราว
(โปรดระวังอย่าให้สายมอเตอร์บังคับทิศทางไปติดอยู่ในวัสดุเพดาน)
3) ขันสกรูหัวหกเหลี่ยมทั้ง 4 ที่อยู่ตรงด้านล่างของสลักเข้าไปประมาณ 5 มม. (แผงจะถูกยกขึ้น)
4) จัดตำแหน่งของแผงตกแต่งโดยการหมุนไปตามทิศของลูกศรในรูป 4 เพื่อให้ช่องเปิดเพดานถูกปิดจนหมด
5) ขันสกรูให้แน่นจนกระทั่งความหนาของวัสดุเพดานระหว่างแผงตกแต่งกับเครื่องภายในอาคารลดลงเหลือ 5 - 8 มม.

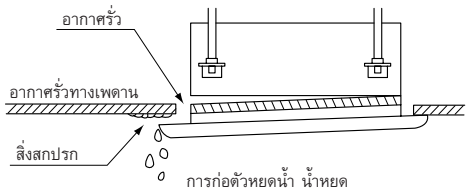




รูป 4

ข้อพึงระวัง

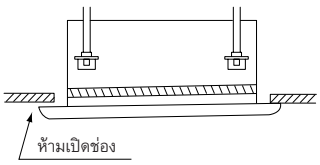
- การขันสกรูที่ไม่ถูกต้องอาจทำให้เกิดปัญหาดังแสดงในรูป 5 โปรดขันสกรูอย่างถูกต้อง



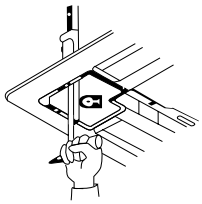
รูป 5

3PA64319-9L

- หากมีช่องระหว่างเพดานและแผงตกแต่งหลังจากที่ขันสกรูแล้ว โปรดปรับความสูงของเครื่องภายในอาคาร (ดูรูป 6 ประกอบ)



ท่านสามารถปรับความสูงของตัวเครื่องภายในอาคารผ่านช่องของแผงตกแต่งหากเครื่องภายในอาคารถูกยกอยู่และไม่เป็นการรบกวนท่อน้ำทิ้งและอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ



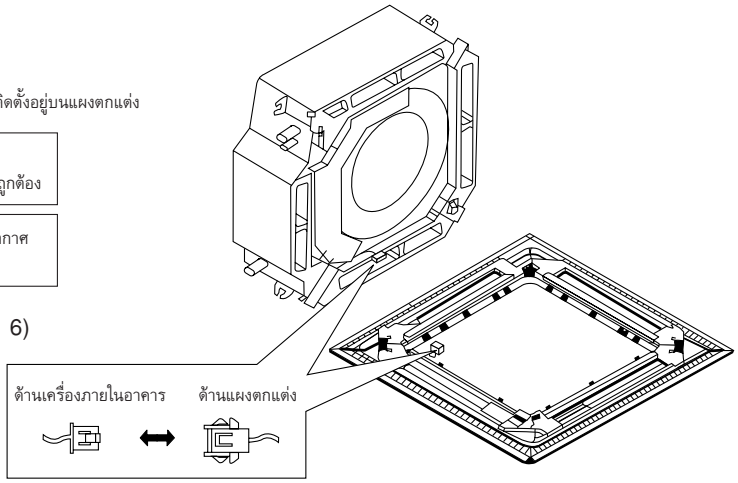
รูป 6

(3) ต่อสายของตะแกรงตกแต่ง (ดูรูป 7 ประกอบ)

6) ต่อตัวเชื่อมต่อสำหรับมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศที่ติดตั้งอยู่บนแผงตกแต่ง

หากตัวเชื่อมต่อไม่ถูกเชื่อมต่ออยู่ รีโมทคอนโทรลจะแสดงให้ทราบว่าเกิดความขัดข้อง (A7) โปรดต่อตัวเชื่อมต่อให้ถูกต้อง

ตรวจดูให้แน่ใจว่าสายไฟของมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศไม่ไปติดอยู่ระหว่างเครื่องภายในอาคารกับแผงตกแต่ง



รูป 7

<ผังแสดงการเดินสายไฟ>

(แตกต่างไปจากสถานะจริง)

การติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศและฝาปิด

(1) ติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศ

ทำการติดตั้งโดยทำย้อนกลับขั้นตอนที่กล่าวในหัวข้อ “การเตรียมแผงตกแต่ง”

ท่านสามารถติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศได้ 4 ทิศทางโดยการหมุนตะแกรงดูดอากาศ

เปลี่ยนทิศทางเมื่อทำการปรับทิศทางของตะแกรงดูดอากาศของระบบแบบหลายเครื่องหรือให้ตรงกับความต้องการของลูกค้า

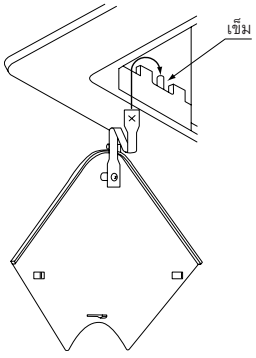
หมายเหตุ)

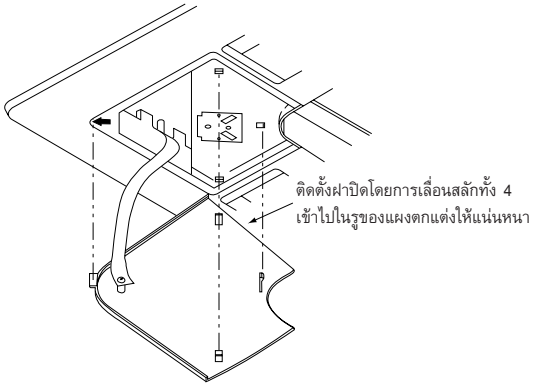
ระวังอย่าทำให้สายไฟมอเตอร์แผ่นบังคับทิศทางอากาศเข้าไปติดระหว่างทำการติดตั้งตะแกรงดูดอากาศ

(2) ติดตั้งฝาปิดบนเครื่อง

1) ติดสายของฝาปิดเข้ากับเข็มของแผงตกแต่งดังแสดงในรูป 8

2) ติดตั้งฝาปิดบนแผงตกแต่ง





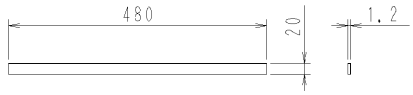
รูป 8

6.3 KDBH55D160W — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet

Dimensions

Unit (mm)

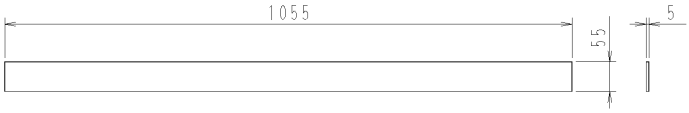
Absorbent material for horizontal blades: See right



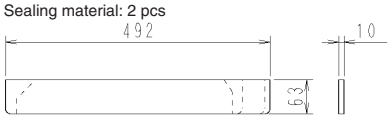
Applicable part No.	Q'ty and color
KDBH55D160W	3: white
KDBH55D160	4×3: 12 pcs Ivory, grey, beige, black

Accessory:
Installation Manual

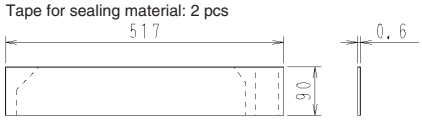
Absorbent material for bellmouse



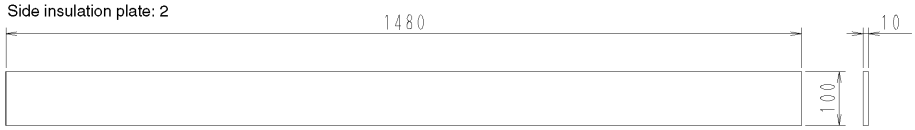
Sealing material: 2 pcs



Tape for sealing material: 2 pcs



Side insulation plate: 2



J: D3K03277

Installation Manual

Caution

- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the decoration panel.
- When you install other optional kit, it may not be possible to select the 3-way or 2-way air discharge. (followed table)
  For details, refer to the manual for the optional kit or the catalogue.

Optional kit	4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge
Branch duct chamber	○	○	○
High efficiency filter chamber	○	× Not possible to install	× Not possible to install

Contents of Kit

Prior to installation make sure you have the complete of parts.

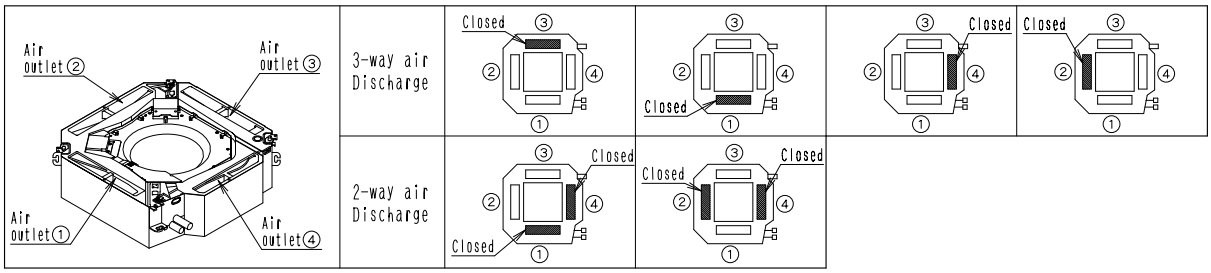
Name	Sealing Material	Tape for fixing the Sealing Material	Insulation for Side Plate	Moisture Absorber for Bell-Mouth	Moisture Absorber for Swing flap	Spacer	Spacer installation screw
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 pieces	3 pieces	1 pieces	1 pieces
Shape・marking	①	②	③ 100mm×1480mm	④ 55mm×1055mm	⑤	⑥	⑦ (M3x10)

❶ The direction of air discharge and the positioning of sealing material

(1) Selection of the air outlet

- Select the direction of air discharge from the following table according to the location of the indoor unit.
  Refer to ❷ Setting of indoor unit) Setting of indoor unit for setting position number.
  Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for selection of installation location.

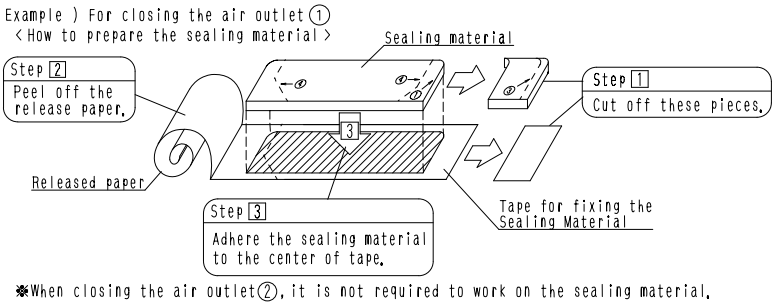
Caution Never select the direction of air discharge other than the following pattern. (You may have a condensation problem.)



(2) Prepare the sealing material and the tape for fixing the sealing material according to the air outlet No. to be closed.

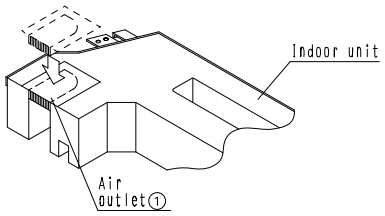
- Cut off the sealing material and the tape along the perforated lines (marked – – –).
- Adhere the sealing material to tape. (Make sure that the sealing material is placed at the center of the tape.)

Example) For closing the air outlet ①
〈How to prepare the sealing material〉



※When closing the air outlet②, it is not required to work on the sealing material.

(3) Adhere the sealing material prepared according to the procedure (2) to the indoor unit air outlet.



〈Installation for air outlet〉

Caution

The sealing material has directional characteristics.
Make sure to adhere the sealing material fixing tape in the direction which the parts from ① to ④ can be seen as shown above.

1P088448A

❷ Setting for indoor unit

It is required to make a field setting from the remote controller according to how the indoor units are installed.
The direction of air discharge must also be set by the remote controller.

- The 3 different kinds of setting such as "Mode number", "First code number" and "Second code number" must be made by the remote controller.
- Refer to the item of "Field setting" in the operation manual of the remote controller for the setting procedure.

(1) Setting according to number of use of the air discharge.
Check the setting position number corresponding to the direction of air discharge in a right table.

(Content of setting)

(Number of use of air outlets)	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
3-way air discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way air discharge			03

Note) Refer to the table for height of the ceiling for each direction of air outlet. (The setting of the ceiling height is also required.)

(2) Setting according to height of ceiling.
As for the ceiling height, see the left table below which shows the standard of ceiling height and number of air outlets to be used.
Then, taking this standard into account, make a field setting of ceiling height from the remote controller according to the right table below.

(Standards of ceiling height and number of air outlets)

Indoor unit applicable model		Number of use of air outlets					
SkyAir		FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-71KVE, FHC18-26NUV1, FHC18NUV2S, FHC21KV2S			FHYC100-140KVE, FHC30-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC24/48NUV2S, FHC71DV2S		
VRV		FXF25-80LVE			FXF100/125LVE		
		4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge	4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge
Ceiling height (m)	Standard	~2.7	~3.0	~3.5	~3.2	~3.6	~4.2
	Semi-high	2.7~3.0	3.0~3.3	3.5~3.8	3.2~3.6	3.6~4.0	~4.2
	High	3.0~3.5	3.3~3.5	——	3.6~4.2	4.0~4.2	——

(Content of setting)

Ceiling height(m)	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
Standard	13(23)	1	01
Semi-high			02
High			03

(Ceiling height is reference value)

❸ Installation of the insulation

Please turn off the power supply for safety absolutely, before you do installation of the decoration panel and affixation of insulation and connected work of swing conector.

(1) Adhere the insulations for side plate ③ in position, referring Fig. 1.
(2) Adhere the moisture absorber for bell-mouth ④ on the inner surface of the bell-mouth. See Fig. 1 Fig. 2.
(3) Adhere the moisture absorber for swing flap aligning with the upper edge of the swing flap on the air outlet. See Fig. 3.

Fig. 1

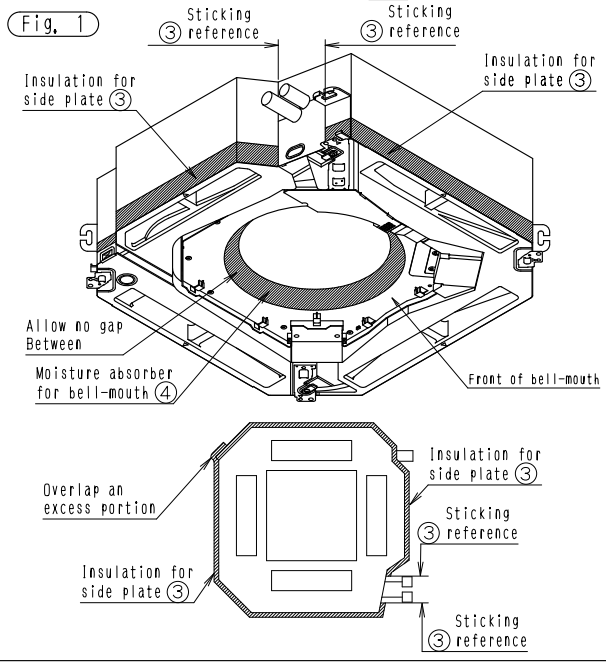
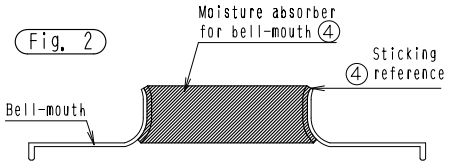
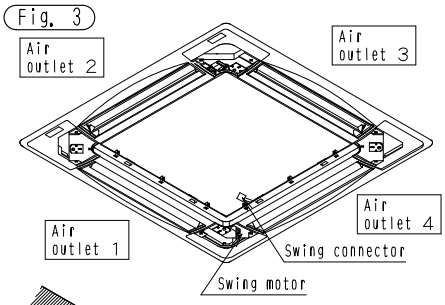


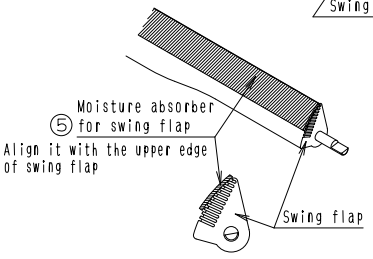
Fig. 2



Section of the bell-mouth

Fig. 3

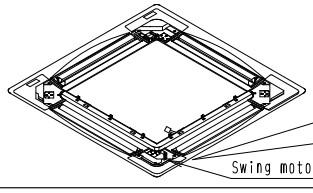


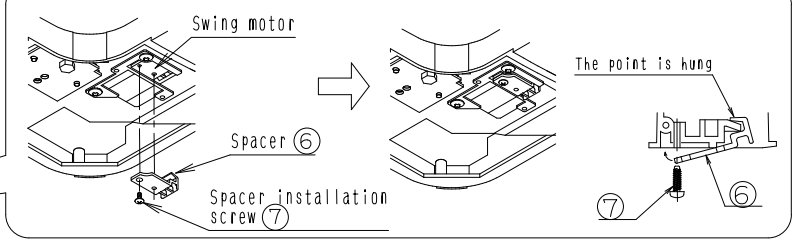


※All air outlets which are not closed.

❹ Installation of the spacer

Please install spacer ⑥ on the swing motor with the spacer installation screw ⑦.





C: 1P088448A

6.4 KDD55DA160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)

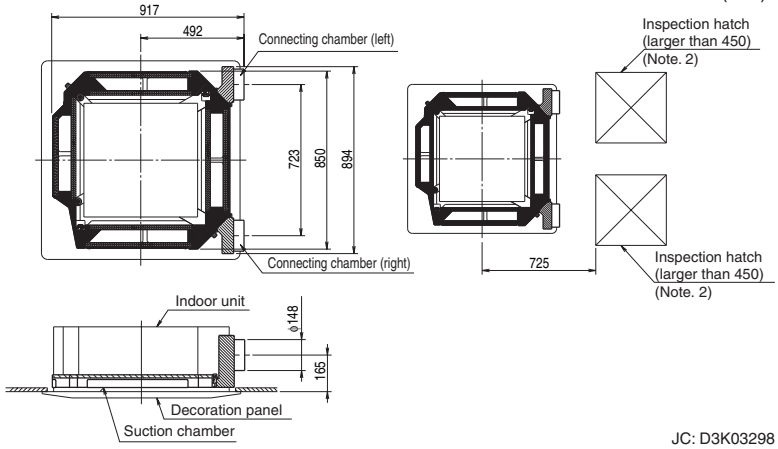
KDD55DA160 (without T-shape, without Fan)



Caution

1. An inspection batch is required when inserting this kit (Required for maintenance of the kit.)
2. Mount one or the other of the inspection hatch.
3. This should be assembled locally.
4. If there is any obstacle to make air intake from both sides hard, air intake from one side will be enabled.
5. If the light receiver unit for the remote controller is mounted to the main unit, air should be taken in from the right side.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K03298

Item	Model	KDD55DA160
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan.
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Accessories		T pipe joint: 1. Flexible duct: 2. Plate bands: 4. Mounting screws (M4×12) : 4. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.5

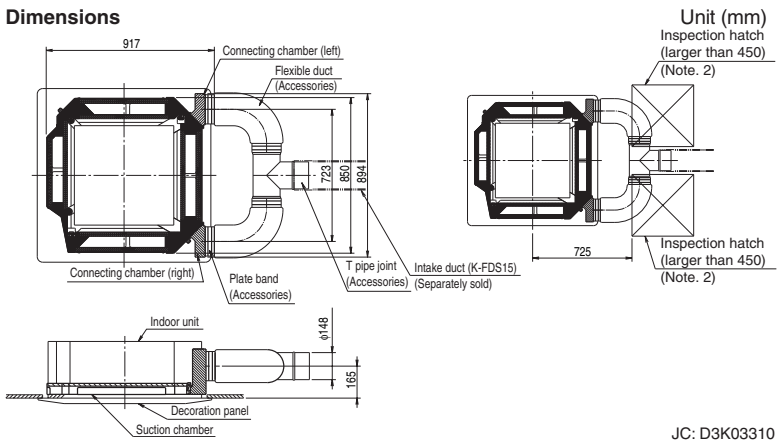
KDD55DA160K (with T-shape, without Fan)



Caution

1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 m.
2. An inspection hatch is required when inserting this kit. (Required for maintenance of the kit.)
3. Mount one or the other of the inspection hatch.
4. This should be assembled locally.
5. This kit is designed for intake from both sides. If one side is blocked requiring intake from only one side, use KDD55DA160.
6. This kit cannot be used when the receiver for the wireless remote control is attached as it blocks intake from one side.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K03310

Item	Model	KDD55DA160K
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan.
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Accessories		T pipe joint: 1. Flexible duct: 2. Plate bands: 4. Mounting screws (M4×12) : 4. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.5

Installation Manual

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

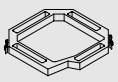
- Make sure to use the attached or spcified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnomality during the trial operation.

REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit number.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

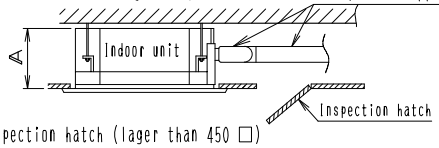
Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KDD55DA160 KDD55DA160K	SkyAir	FHC18-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC18/24/48NUV2S, FHC21KV2S, FHC71DV2S, FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-140KVE
	VRV	FXF25-125LVE

Components Check if the following parts are included with your kit.
Shaded part ▭ is separately packed.

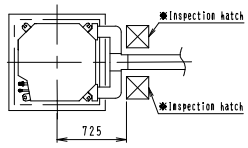
Name		①Suction Chamber	②Connecting Chamber (Right)	③Connecting Chamber (Left)	④Screw	⑤Closing Material	⑥T Joint	⑦Flexible Duct	⑧Clamp	⑨Installation Manual
Shape					 M4×12					
Q'ty	KDD55DA160	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	4 PCS.	1 PC.	——	——	——	1 PC.
	KDD55DA160K	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	4 PCS.	——	1 PC.	2 PCS.	4 PCS.	1 PC.

❶ Selection of Location and Access Door

1. Referto the following table.



2. Inspection hatch (lager than 450 □)



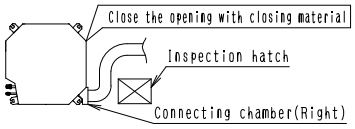
Indoor unit		A
SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-71KVE, FHC18-26NUV1, FHC18NUV2S, FHC21KV2S	290
VRV	FXF25-80LVE	306
SkyAir	FHYC100-140KVE, FHC30-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC24/48NUV2S, FHC71DV2S	348
VRV	FXF100/125LVE	

※ Install either one of hatches

In case of KDD55DA160

- When the intake from both sides can not be obtained due to an obstacle, one side intake is acceptable. In this case, make sure to close the opening with the closing material ⑤.
- In case of one side intake, the noise will be larger than intake from both sides.

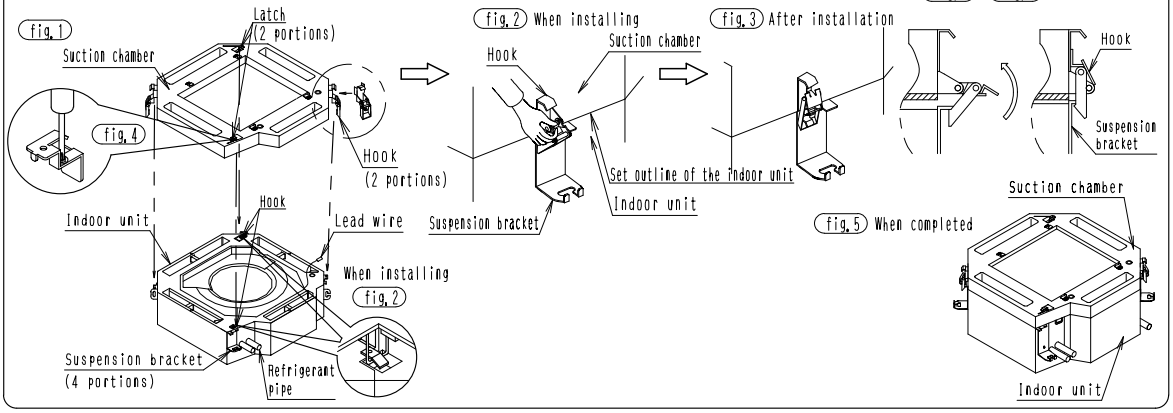
(Example of one side intake)



※When installing the wireless receiver kit on the indoor unit, the duct must be led from right side as shwn. In this case, use KDDP55D160 or KDD55DA160.

❷ Installation of the Suction chamber

1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed. (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the detais.)
2. Temporarily install the suction chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the suction chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the suction chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 1) ~ (fig. 3)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 2)
3. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material of chamber reduces to 5~8mm. (fig. 4) (fig. 5)

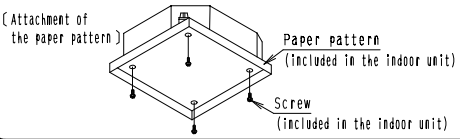


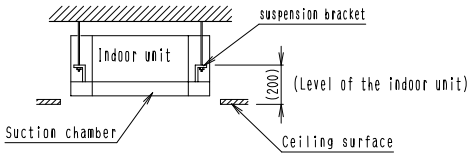
C: 3K011144A

3

❸ Installation of the Indoor Unit and the Suction Chamber

- Install the indoor unit and the suction chamber.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.





❹ Installation of Connecting duct

1. Install the Connecting chamber(right & left)in accordance with the procedure shown in fig.5 .

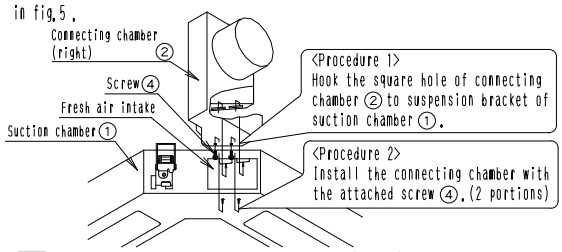
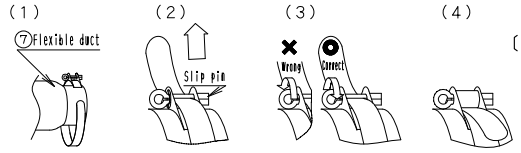


fig.5 Installation of the connecting chamber(right)
(Same as the left side)

<How to tighten the clamp>



(1)Wrap the clamp around the duct.
(2)Install the edge of clamp between the sit of pin. Tighten the clamp by hand.
(3)Make sure the tightening direction and tighten the clamp with standard tools (ex. Screwdriver or pliers) as shown.
(4)Completed.

Caution
Do not turn the slit pin reversely.
If turned reversely, ratchet part many break down.

In case of KDDP55D160K

2. Connect the T Joint and Connecting chamber. fig.6

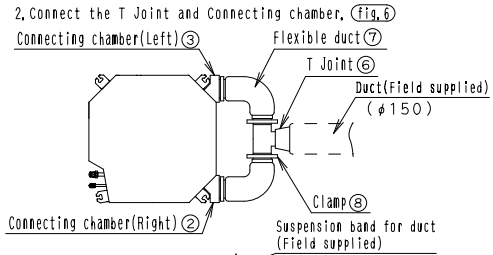


fig.6

Hang the T Joint with suspension band for duct to reduce the weight of the duct to the chamber.

[Installation of closing material in case of one side intake] (for KDDP55D160 or KDD55DA160)

- Install the closing material in accordance with the following procedures. fig.7
  Closing material can be used either right or left side opening.

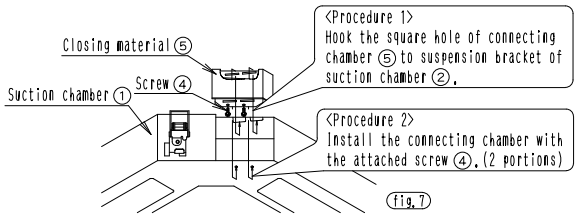
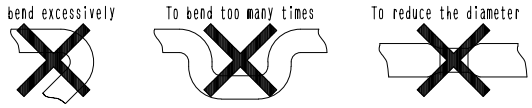


fig.7

❺ Duct connection 《Duct:diameter φ150》

1) Attach the duct to the outside of the Branch duct chamber.
- Wrap the duct tape(Field supplied)around the connection to prenent air leak.
- Insulate the duct to prevent condensate.

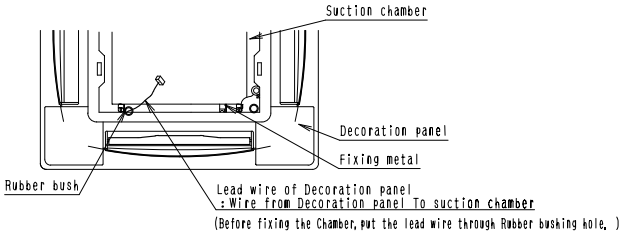
2) Do not perform the following duct work.



Caution
- follow the local code or regulation to install the duct.
- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden wall, make sure the duct and the wall are electrically insulated.
- Install the outdoor unit duct inclined downwardly so that the rain will not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- Where it contact the outside air, make sure to install screen to avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct.
- Where it contact the outside air, make sure to install air filter to protect heat exchanger for indoor unit.

❻ Installation of Decoration panel

- Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

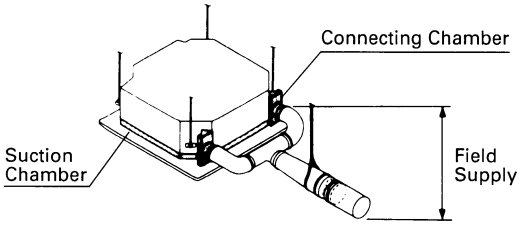


In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller

- Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

3K011144A

KDD55DA160 (Without T Joint, without Duct Fan)

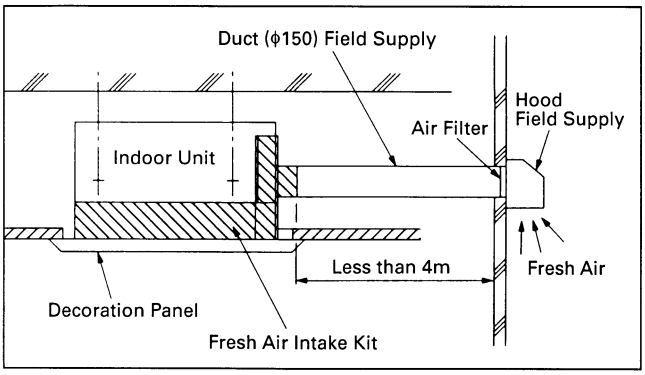


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. In wireless remote controller use, Flexible Duct in the right can not connect.

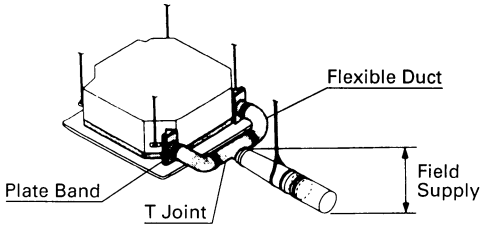
- **Specifications**

Item \ Model	KDD55DA160
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150

- **Example of Installation**

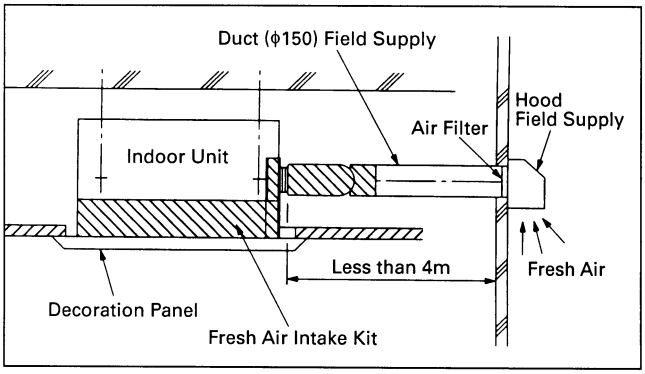


KDDP55DA160K (With T Joint, without Duct Fan)



Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. It isn't possible to do simultaneous use with wireless remote controller.

- **Example of Installation**



- **Specifications**

Item \ Model	KDD55DA160K
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150

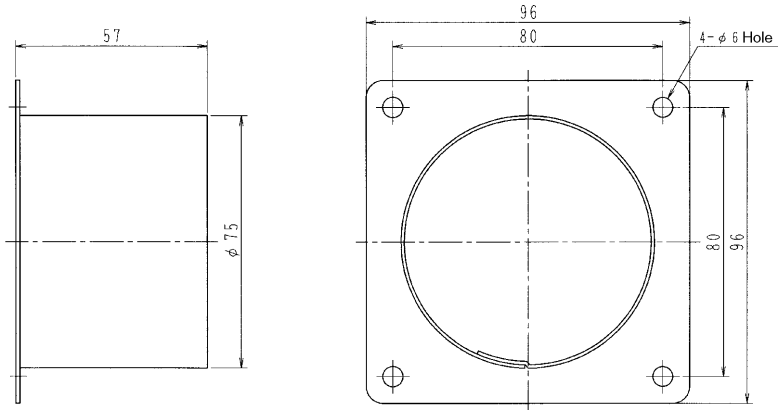
6.5 KDDJ55XA160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

KDDJ55XA160



Item \ Model	KDDJ55XA160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Diameter of connection duct	ϕ75
Accessories	Insulation material : 1 set Mounting screws : 4 Installation manual.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K2175

Installation Manual

Remarks:

1. This kit can be installed to the Ceiling mounted cassette type (Multi-flow).
2. When installing this kit, duct(Nominal dia. : ϕ75)is required on site.

- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden walls, make sure the duct and the wall electrically insulated.
- Install the duct inclined downwardly to outdoor so that the rain may not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- To avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct, make sure to install net where it contacts the outside air.

Contents

Prior to installation, make sure you have the complete kit of parts.

Name	①Duct Flange	② Screws	③Insulation for Duct Flange	④Insulation for Opening of Unit	⑤ Installation Manual
Q'ty	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12			

Necessary tools

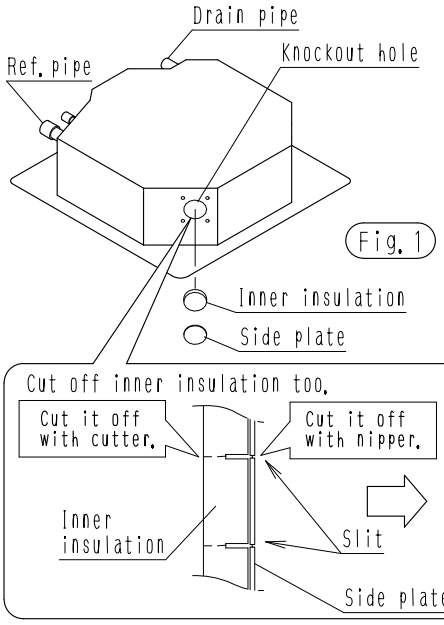
Philips head screw driver, nipper, cutter etc.

1 Installation procedures of Duct flange

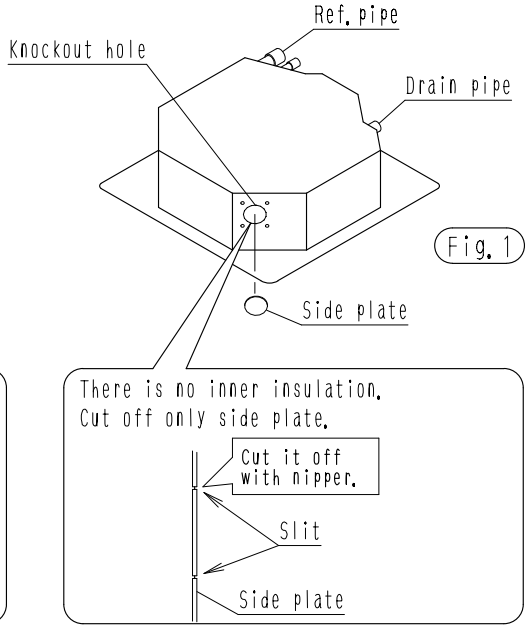
The method of installation varies with indoor unit type.
The unit type can be distinguished by the position of knockout hole.

1. Cut off the knockout hole on the side plate. (Fig. 1)

Unit type 1
The knockout hole is opposite to drain pipe.

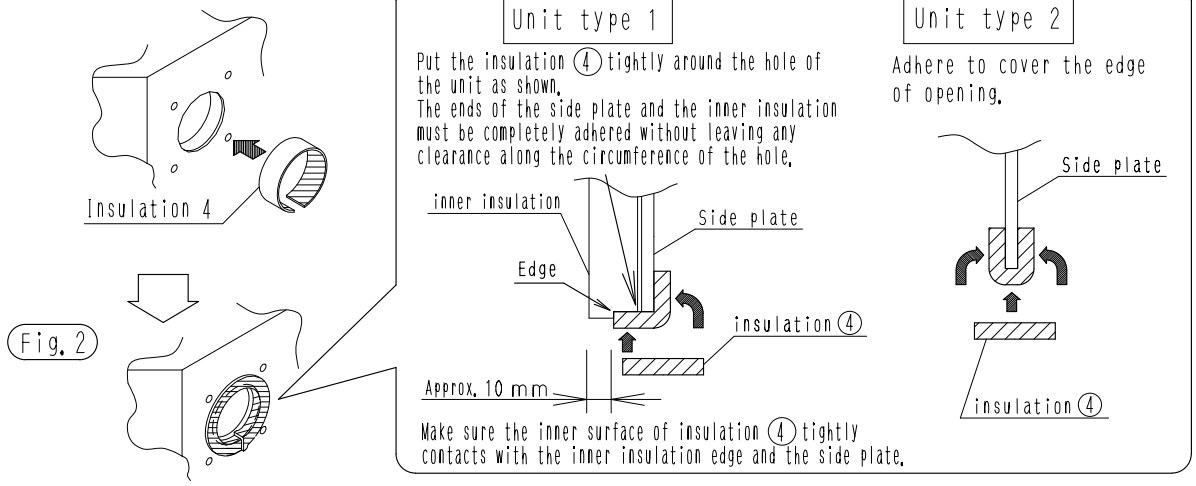


Unit type 2
The knockout hole is opposite to ref. pipe.

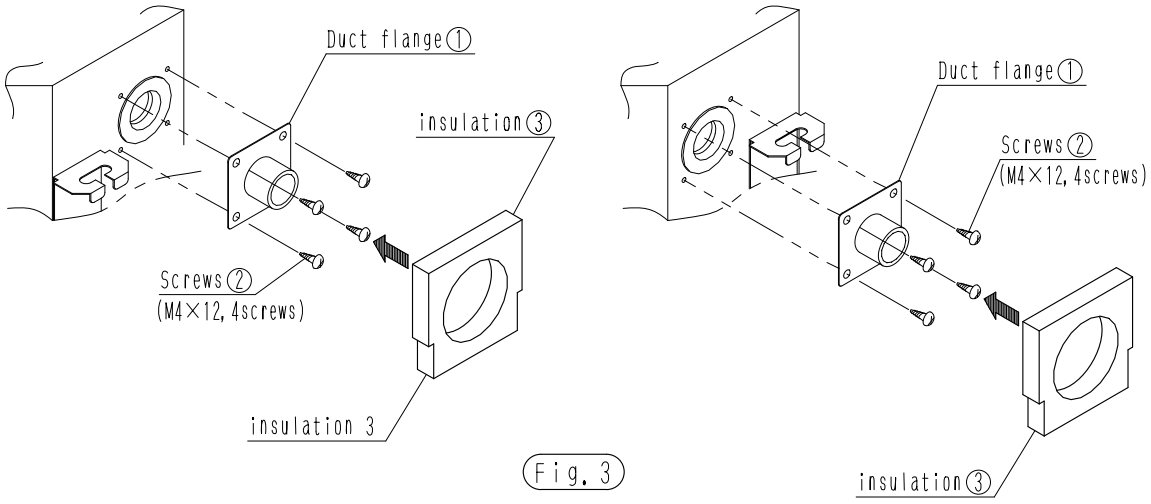


2P066796C

2. Adhere the insulation④ for opening of unit to the opening. (Fig. 2)

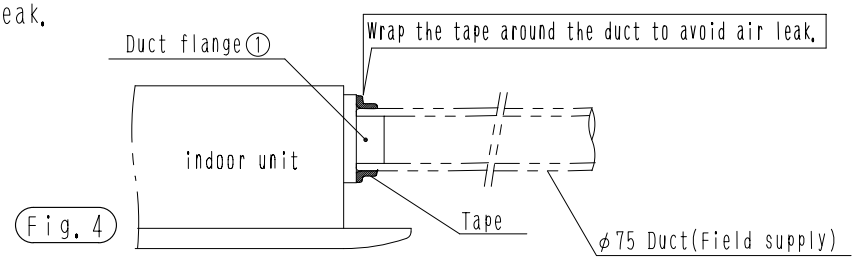


3. Install the duct flange① with screws② (M4×12, 4 screws) to the opening and adhere the insulation③ (Fig. 3)

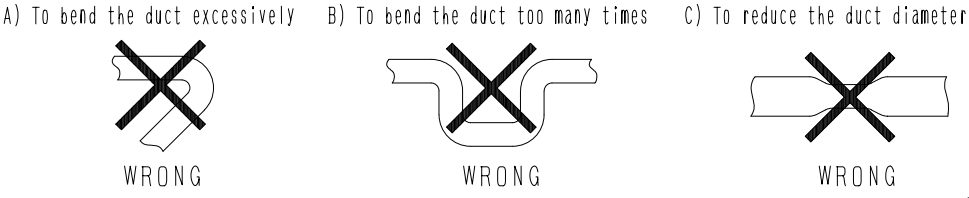


② Installation procedures of Duct <Nominal diameter of duct: φ75>

1. Connect the duct to the duct flange. (Flange fits inside the duct.) (Fig. 4)
2. After connection, wrap vinyl tape (field supply) around the duct connection to prevent air leak.



Precaution
- ALL ducts must be completely insulated.
- Do not do the followings when installing duct.



2P066796C

6.6 KAF556DA80 / 160, KAF557DA80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)

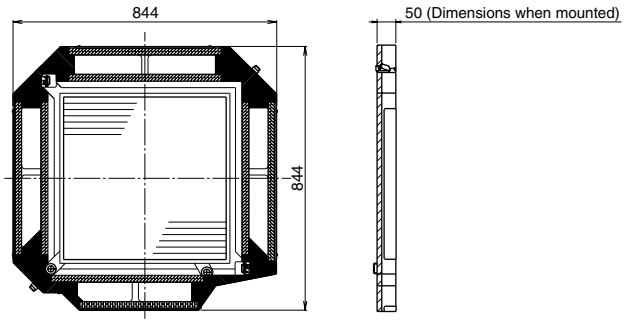
KAFP556DA80



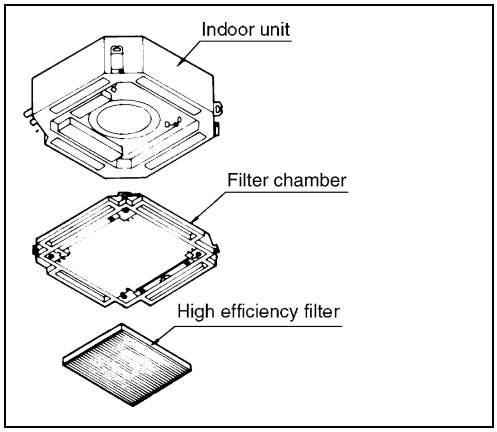
Caution

· Field setting by remote controller is necessary when the high efficiency filter is installed.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K03295



Item	Model	KAF556DA80	KAF556DA160	KAF557DA80	KAF557DA160
Material		Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	19	35	19	35
	l/sec	317	583	317	583
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Accessories		Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.6	4.2	3.6	4.2

Replacement filter (optional accessories)	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160

Installation Manual

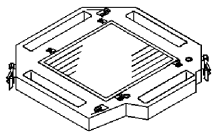
⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following, safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or specified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnormality during the trial operation.

REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	High Effciency Filter Unit	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

Combination table

Kit name		Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible
KAFP556D80 KAF556DA80 or KAFP557D80	SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-71KVE FHC18-26NUV1 FHC18NUV2S FHC21KV2S
KAF557DA80	VRV	FXF25-80LVE
KAFP556D160 KAF556DA160 or KAFP557D160	SkyAir	FHYC100-140KVE FHC30-48NUV1 FHC30/36/42PUV2S FHC24/48NUV2S
KAF557DA160	VRV	FXF100/125LVE

① Preparation of indoor unit

- When you instell the High Effciency filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.	Remarks
13 or 23	0	02	Only 80
	1	02	Both 80 and 160

C: 3K011145B

❷ Installation of the High Effciency filetr unit

1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed. (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. REmove the High Effciency filter. (fig. 1)
3. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 2) ~ (fig. 4)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 3)
4. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 5) (fig. 6) of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.

fig. 1

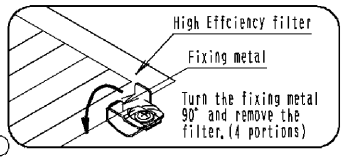


fig. 2

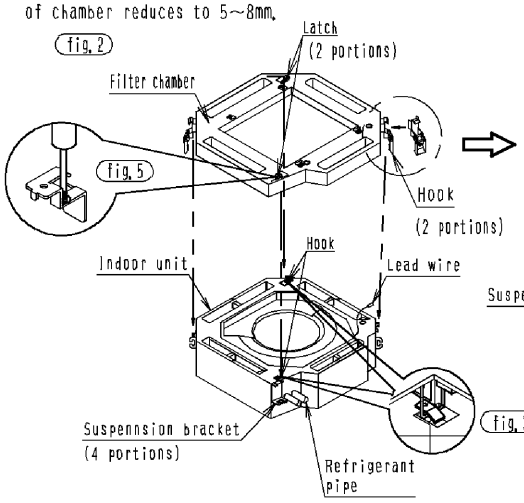


fig. 3 When installing

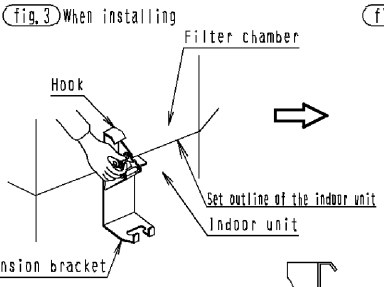


fig. 4 After installation

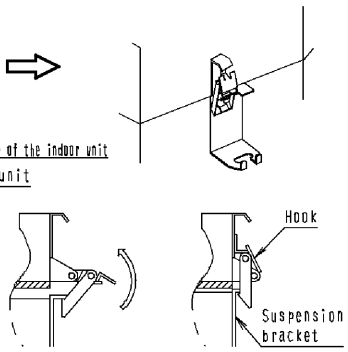
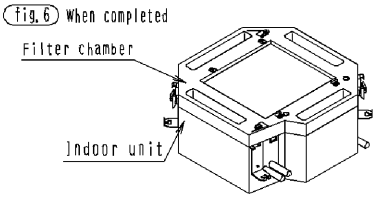
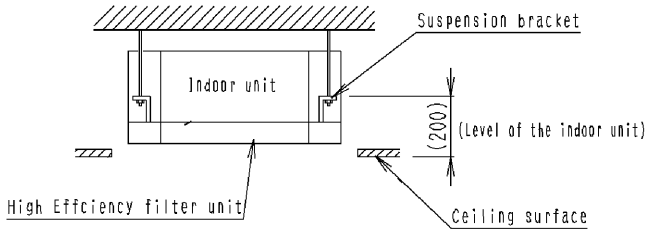


fig. 6 When completed

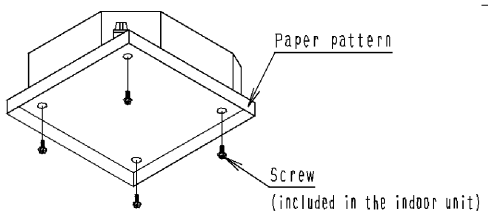


❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the High Effciency filter unit

- Install the indoor unit and the High Effciency filter unit. Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit. (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below] (When the indoor unit is newly installed) (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit. For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.



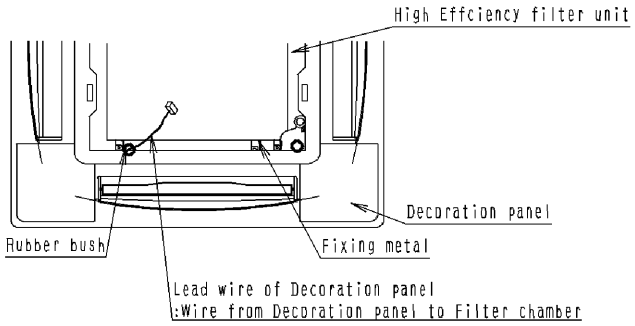
〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



3K011145B

❹ Installation of the Decoration panel and the High Effciency filter

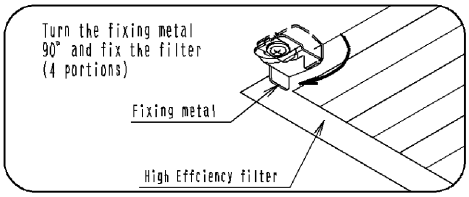
• Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



(Before fixing the Chamber, put the lead wire through Rubber bushing hole.)

• Installation of the High Effciency filter
After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig.7)

(fig.7)



(In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller)

• Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
• Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

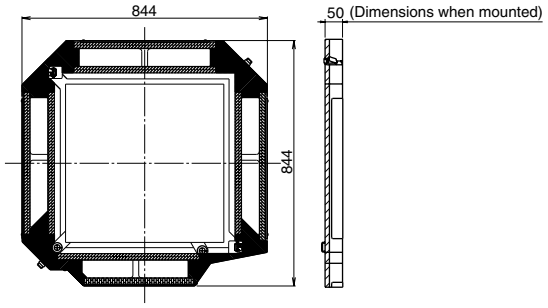
3K011145B

6.7 KDDF55DA160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

KDDF55DA160



Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K03293

Item			Model KDDF55DA160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFP552B80 KAFP552B160
		90% (colorimetric method)	KAFP553B80 KAFP553B160
	Ultra long-life filter		KAF55KA160H
Material			Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.
Accessories			Installation manual Sealing pad: 2
Mass (Weight)		kg	3.0

Installation Manual

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following, safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or spcified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnomality during the trial operation.

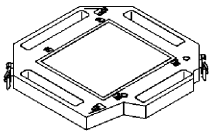
REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Notes (In case of useing the Ultra-long life filter)

Ultra-long life filter can be reused by cleaning. After installtion, instruct filter cleaning periad and removeing to customers.

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Filter chamber	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

Combination table

Kit name	High Effciency filter	Ultra-long life filter	Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible	
KDDF 55DA160	KAFP552B80 KAFP553B80	KAF55KA160H	SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-71KVE, FHC18-26NUV1, FHC18NUV2S, FHC21KV2S
			VRV	FXF25-80LVE
	KAFP552B160 KAFP553B160		SkyAir	FHYC100-140KVE, FHC30-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC24/48NUV2S
			VRV	FXF100/125LVE

❶ Preparation of indoor unit

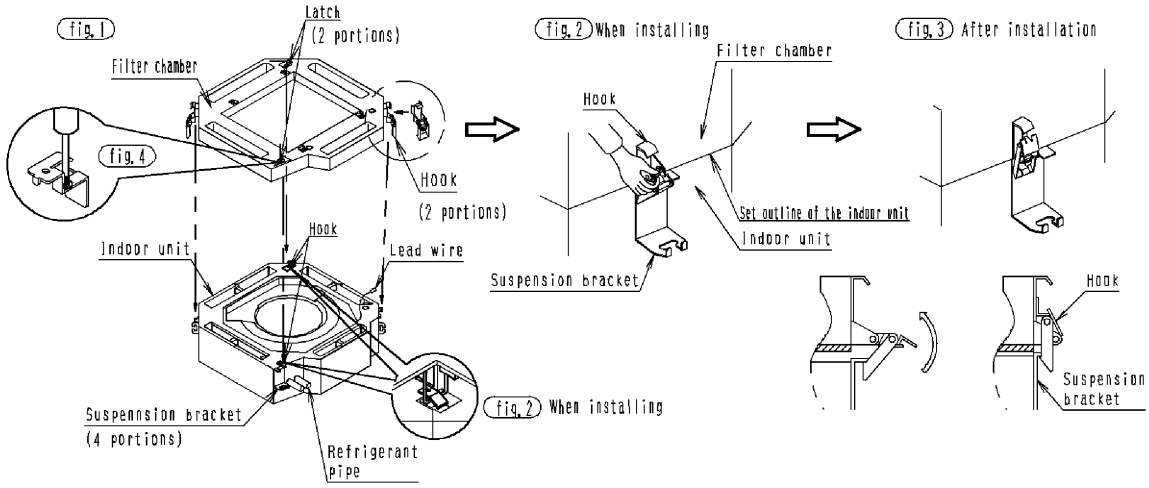
- When you instell the Ultra-long life filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

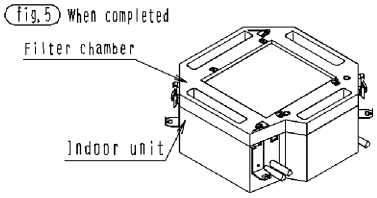
Filter name		Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.		Contents of setting
High Effciency filter	Only 80	13 or 23	0	02		———
	Both 80 and 160		1	02		
Ultra-long life filter		10 or 20	0	Less dusty place	01	Filter cleaning period :Every 10,000 hrs
				Dusty place	02	Filter cleaning period :Every 5,000 hrs
			1	02		Filter sign display:Ultra-long life filter

C: 3K011148B

❷ Installation of Filter chamber

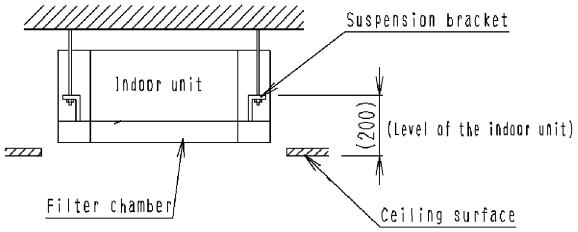
1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed.
     (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 1) ~ (fig. 3)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspension bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 2)
3. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 4) (fig. 5)
   of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.



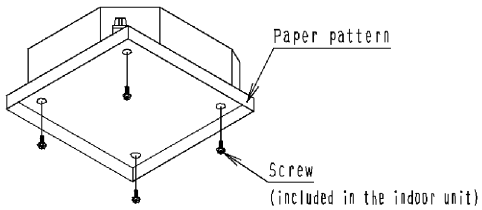


❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the Filter chamber

- Install the indoor unit and the filter chamber.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.



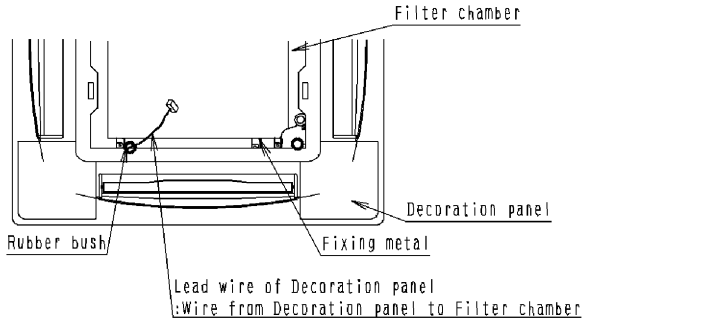
〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



3K011148B

❹ Installation of Decoration panel and the Filter

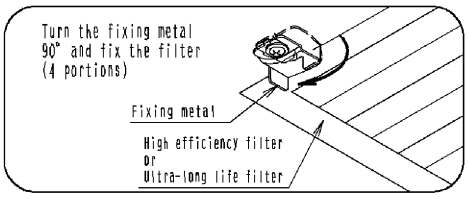
• Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



(Before fixing the Chamber, put the lead wire through Rubber bushing hole.)

• Installation of Filter
After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig. 6)

(fig. 6)



(In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller)

• Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
• Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

3K011148B

6.8 KAF551KA160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

KAF551KA160



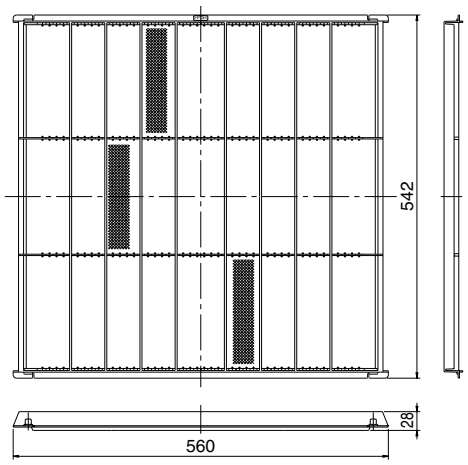
Item	Model	KAF551CA160	KAF551KA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	4.9 or less	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less	
Average efficiency	%	65 (gravity method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	18	17.5
	l/sec	300	292
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net	
Number of sheets included		1	
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.4	0.3

Caution

- Has the same specifications as the standard equipment.
- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

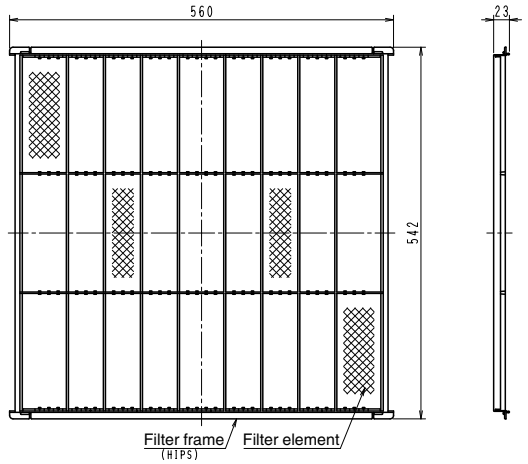
Dimensions Unit (mm)

KAF551CA160



D3K3092

KAF551KA160

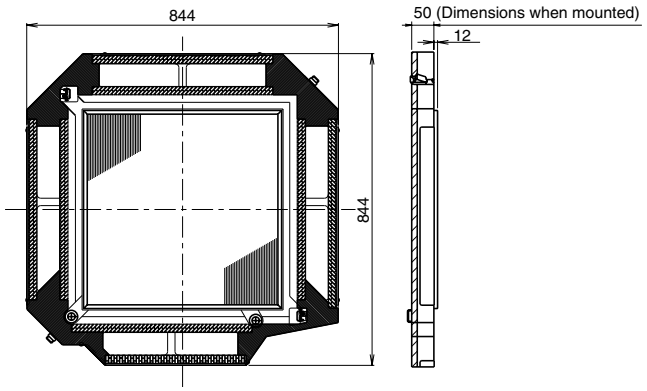


J: D3K2170C

6.9 KAF55DA160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)



Dimensions Unit (mm)

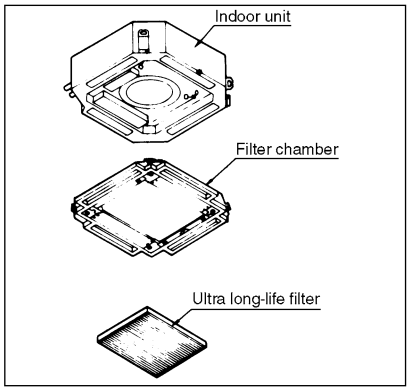


JC: D3K03294

Caution

- In order to mount a ultra long-life filter unit, setting of the main unit of indoor unit should be made.
- Individual filter (KAF55KA160H) is available as an optional accessory.

Mounting locations	Filter cleaning period
Locations with much dust	Approximately every 5,000 hours
Locations with little dust (e.g. offices)	Approximately every 10,000 hours



Item \ Model		KAF55DA160
Material		Galvanized steel iron. Foam polystyrene.
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	1/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Polypropylene honeycomb (with mould-proof)
Number of sheets included		1
Accessories		Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.7

Installation Manual

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following, safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or specified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnormality during the trial operation.

REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

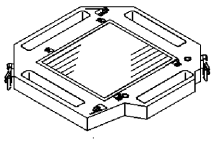
Notes

Ultra-long life filter can be reused by cleaning.
After installtion, instruct filter cleaning periad and removeing to customers.

Combination table

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KAF55DA160	SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-140KVE, FHC18-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC18/24/48NUV2S, FHC21KV2S, FHC71DV2S
	VRV	FXF25-125LVE

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Ultra-long Life Filter Unit	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

❶ Preparation of indoor unit

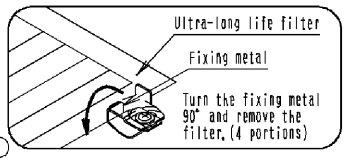
- When you instell the Ultra-long life filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.		Contents of setting
10 or 20	0	Less dusty place	01	Filter cleaning period :Every 10,000 hrs
		Dusty place	02	Filter cleaning period :Every 5,000 hrs
	1	02		Filter sign display:Ultra-long life filter

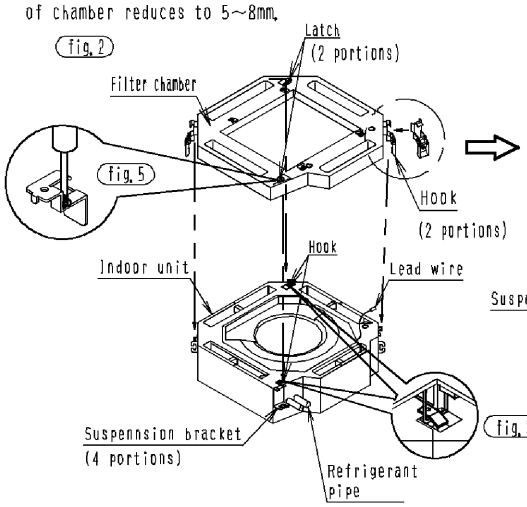
❷ Installation of Ultra-long life filter Unit

1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed. (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. REmove the Ultra-long life filter. (fig. 1)
3. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 2) ~ (fig. 4)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 3)
4. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 5) (fig. 6) of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.

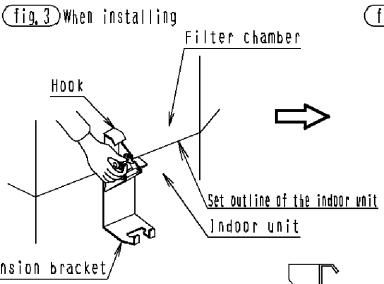
(fig. 1)



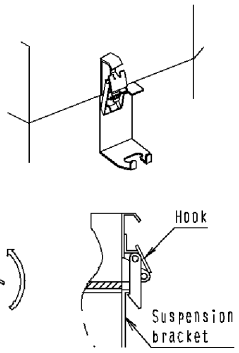
(fig. 2)



(fig. 3) When installing

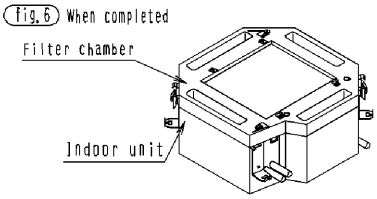


(fig. 4) After installation



(fig. 3) When installing

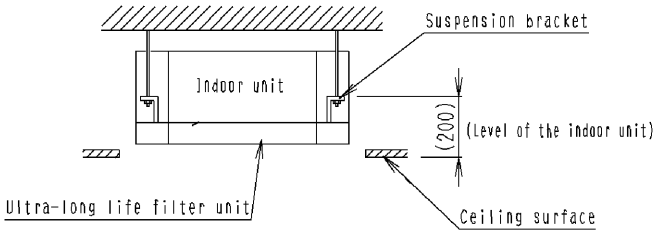
(fig. 6) When completed



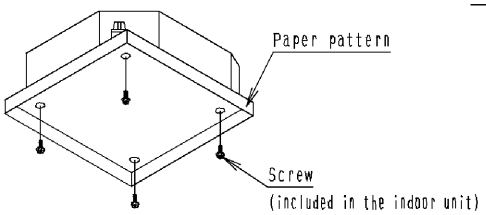
C: 3K011147B

❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the Ultra-long life filter unit

- Install the indoor unit and the Ultra-long life filter unit.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.

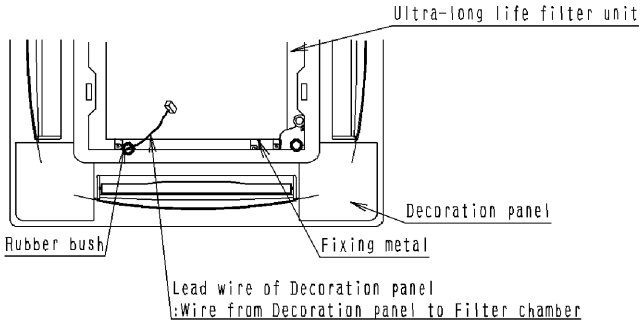


〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



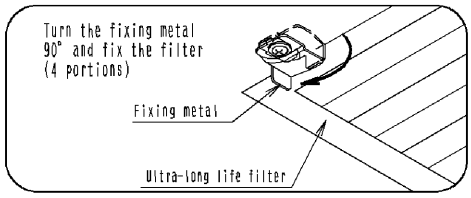
❹ Installation of the Decoration panel and the Ultra-long life filter

- Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



- Installation of the Ultra-long life filter
  After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig. 7)

(fig. 7)



In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller

- Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

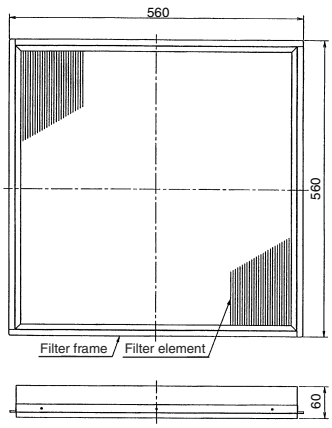
3K011147B

6.10 KAF55KA160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter

KAF55KA160H



Dimensions Unit (mm)



JC: D3K2174A

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

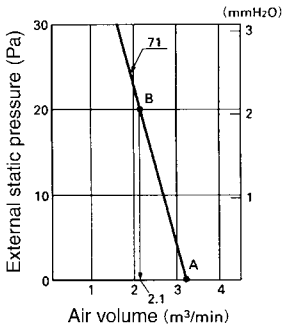
Item	Model	KAF55KA160H
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.7

6.11 KDJ55K80 / KDJ55K160— Branch Duct Chamber

Installation

Caution

- This kit can be installed Ceiling Mounted cassette type air conditioner < Multi flow>.
  Confirm the model number before installing the branch duct chamber.



A : Shows the chamber's out-let air flow when installing the branch duct chamber.
It's value is 3.2 m³/min.
B : When installing either circular duct or discharge grille on the top of the branch duct chamber, the air flow from the discharge grille moves to point A to point B and becomes to be 2.1 m³/min if the loss resistance is 19.6 Pa.

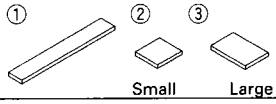
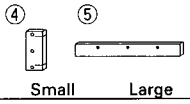
Combination Table

Model Name	Indoor unit to be installed	
KDJ55K80	SkyAir	FHC35-60KVE, FHYC35-71KVE, FHC18-26NUV1, FHC18NUV2S, FHC21KV2S
	VRV	FXF25-80LVE
KDJ55K160	SkyAir	FHYC100-140KVE, FHC30-48NUV1, FHC30/36/42PUV2S, FHC24/48NUV2S, FHC71DV2S
	VRV	FXF100/125LVE

- Refer to the Installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.
- Use the following duct kit. If not, use the equivalent duct as the followings.

Branch duct chamber	Connecting duct kit name
KDJ55K80	K–FDS151D (1 m) or K–FDS152D (2 m) (Flexible duct nominal diameter ϕ150)
KDJ55K160	K–FDS201D (1 m) or K–FDS202D (2 m) (Flexible duct nominal diameter ϕ200)

Components

Name	Branch duct chamber	Screw	Installation manual	Blind plate A	Blind plate B	Insulation for indoor unit	Sealing material for indoor unit opening	Moisture absorber for horizontal blade
Qty	1	11	1	1	1	3	2 (each 2 sheets)	5
Shape		 M4×16				 ① ② ③ Small Large	 ④ ⑤ Small Large	

① Field setting of indoor unit

When installing the branch duct chamber, indoor unit setting is required.
Set the setting position number as shown in the table using the field setting mode of remote controller.
As for the field setting mode, refer to the " Field setting procedures" attached to the remote controller.

	Mode No.	Setting switch No.	Setting position No.
Setting of discharge direction	13 or 23	1	02

② Installation of Branch duct chamber

When installing the indoor unit after the branch duct chamber is mounted (new installation), do not apply the load to the chamber. Otherwise, it may deform.

(1) Take off the decoration panel in accordance with the reverse procedures of installation. For the detail, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel. (When the indoor unit is newly installed, it is not required.)
(2) Select the Installation location for the branch duct chamber. (Fig.1)
(Choose either A or B side of the indoor unit.)
(3) Install the branch duct chamber in accordance with the following procedures.
(Fig.2 shows the case of A side.)
1) Cut the side panel of indoor unit where the branch duct chamber will be installed along the slit. Cut off the inner side insulation along the groove.
(Slit : cut with nipper, Groove: cut with cutter knife.) (Fig.2)
2) Adhere the sealing material to cover up the clearance between the side plate and the inner side insulation. (Fig.3)
Adhere the sealing material for opening (Small ④) and (Large ⑤) as shown in the Fig.3.
When adhering, fold the sealing material to cover up the clearance between the insulation and the side plate.
3) Install the branch duct chamber. (Fig.4)
Insert the inner side insulation to the opening of the indoor unit (inner side insulation).

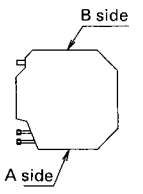


Fig.1

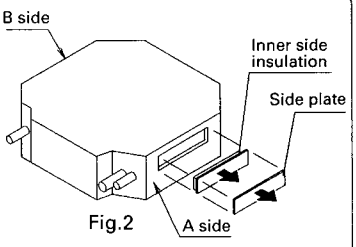


Fig.2

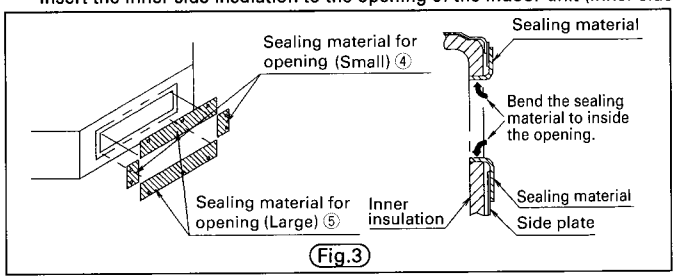


Fig.3

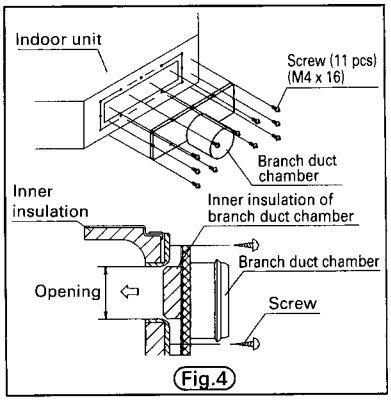


Fig.4

JC: 1P012634B

(4) Adhere the insulation to the indoor unit. (Illustration shows the A side example.) (Fig.5)

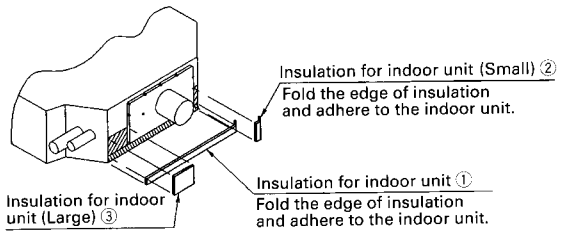


Fig.5

③ Duct connection 〈Duct : KDJ55K80 ... Nominal diameter ϕ 150 KDJ55K160 ... Nominal diameter ϕ 200〉

1) Connect the duct to the outside of the branch duct chamber. (Fig.6)
- Wrap the vinyl tape (Field supply) around the connection to prevent air leak.
- **All ducts must be insulated.**

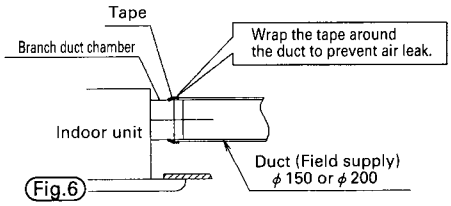


Fig.6

2) Following duct work is prohibited.

To bend excessively



To bend many times



To reduce diameter



3) Follow the local code and regulation when installing the duct.
4) In case that the metal duct is penetrated through wooden walls, make sure the duct and the wall electrically insulated.

④ Installation of closing material for the indoor unit

(1) Installation location closing material for air outlet
Close the branch duct chamber side air outlet.

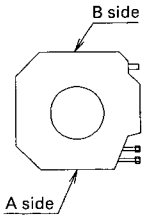
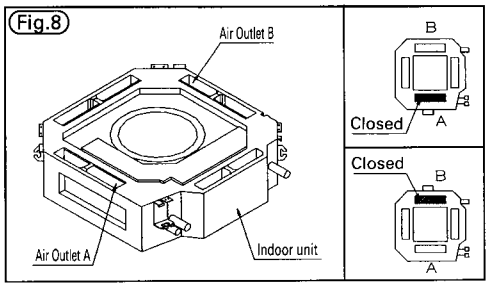


Fig.7 Installation location of Branch Duct Chamber

(2) Adhesion of closing material
Make sure each symbol of sealing materials corresponds to that of air outlet in (Fig.8).

Fig.8



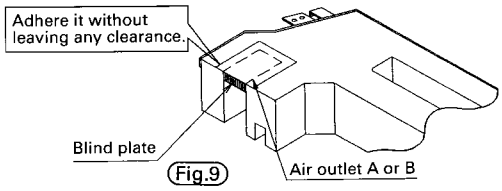
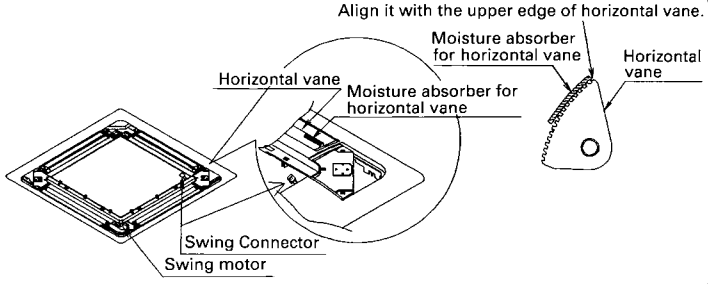


Fig.9

⑤ Installation of Decoration Panel

Refer to the Installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
After the installation, make sure that there is no clearance between the decoration panel and the indoor unit.
Adhere the moisture absorber for horizontal vane to the edge of the horizontal vane of air outlet as shown on the right.
(Choose the same color as panel.)



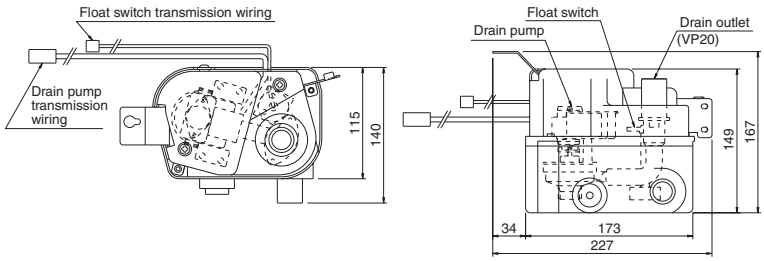
JC: 1P012634B

7. FH(Y) — Ceiling Suspended Type

7.1 KDU50B50 / 71 / 125VE — Drain Pump Kit



Dimensions Unit (mm)



C: D3K3138A

Specifications

Items		Model	KDU50B50VE	KDU50B71VE	KDU50B125VE
Drain-up Lift		mm	600		
Drain Con. diameter			VP20 (Ex. dia. ϕ26, Int. dia. ϕ20)		
Pump	Power supply		Single phase 220-240V/220V 50/60Hz (from Indoor Unit PC Board)		
	Power consumption	W	13.5/12 (50/60Hz)		

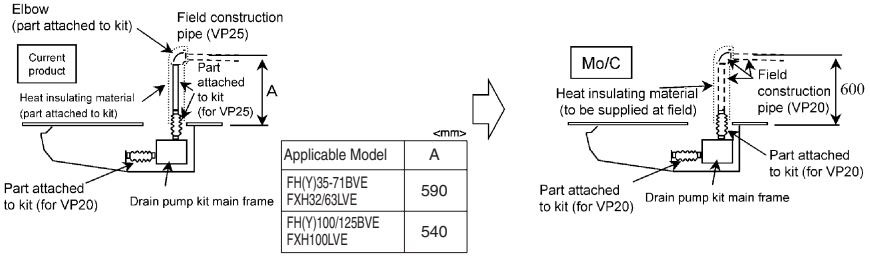
Precaution at use

1. Don't turn off the power within 5 minutes after cooling operation stops.
2. The liquid crystal display blinks to inform us that safety device actuated.
3. When cooling operation's season is over, extract drain water.

Installation guide of the drain pump kit

<Changes in drain pump kit>

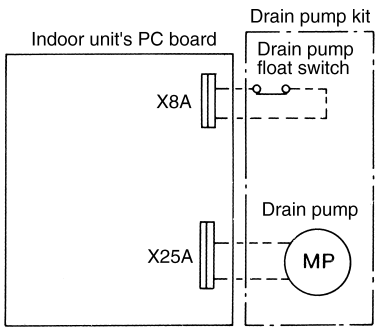
- Exit drain pipe has been changed from VP25 to VP20 (to meet the drain diameter of main frame).
- Attached drain pipe (450 mm chloride vinyl straight pipe bellow, elbow) -> only bellow hose for VP20
- All units of drain up height was unified to 600mm (From the bottom of the ceiling)



<mm>

Applicable Model	A
FH(Y)35-71BVE FXH32/63LVE	590
FH(Y)100/125BVE FXH100LVE	540

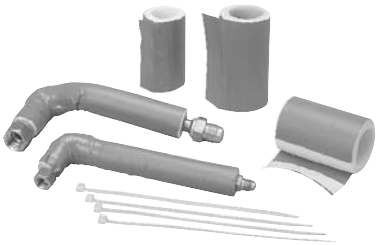
Wiring diagram



Remove the X8A short circuit connector when the float switch will be connected.

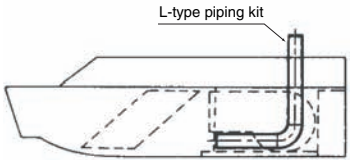
7.2 KHFJ5F50 / 60 / 80 / 160 — L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)

KHFJ5F50



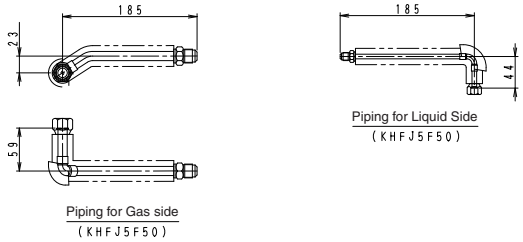
When you install the refrigerant piping in the ceiling, the piping is required to be bent L-type in the unit as shown on the right. This L-type piping kit is developed to facilitate such installation.

Installation

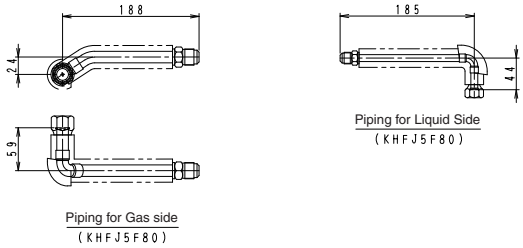


Dimensions Unit (mm)

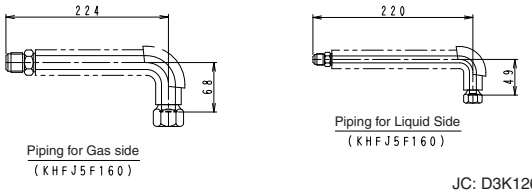
KHFJ5F50



KHFJ5F80



KHFJ5F160



JC: D3K1267

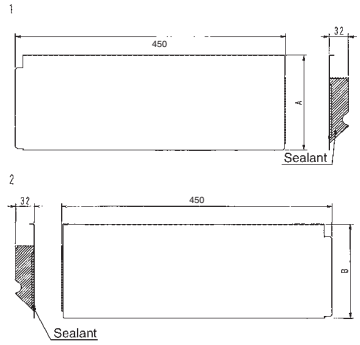
8. FUY — Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type

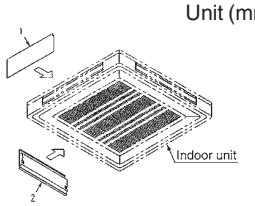
8.1 KDBT49FA80 / 140 — Decoration Panel for Air Discharge

KDBT49FA80



Dimensions Unit (mm)





Model	A	B
KDBT49FA80	100	100
KDBT49FA140	155	155

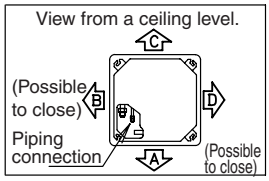
JC: D3K2099D

Item \ Model	KDBT49FA80	KDBT49FA140
Material	Galvanized sheet iron (with flocking)	
Accessories	Installation manual	

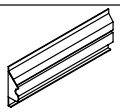
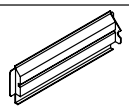
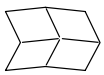
Installation Manual

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.
- This kit can be attached to the air outlet A and B. (Refer to the figure on the right concerning the outlet's name)



Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name	Air outlet sealing decoration plate		Installation manual
	For the air outlet A	For the air outlet B	
Shape			
Quantity	1 set	1 set	1 sheet

1 Attachment onto the indoor unit

Be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed, before the installation of the main unit.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet A and B on the main unit. Fig.1-1
- Attach the sealing decoration plate. Fig. 1-2

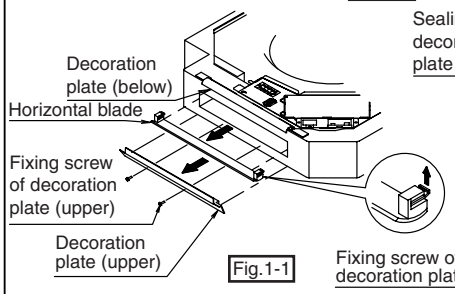
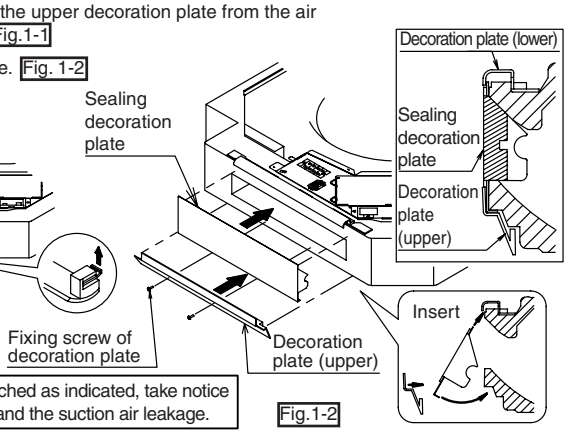


Fig.1-1



Unless the sealing materials are attached as indicated, take notice that it may cause the dew formation and the suction air leakage.

Fig.1-2

2 Field setting by the remote controller

- The field setting is required for the two-way or three way discharge, when this kit is attached. Refer to " Gist of Field Setting" attached in the remote controller for the setting procedure and the operation, and then switch over the second code No. as follows.

Settings	Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.
3-way discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way discharge			03

The second code No. was set to "01" for 4-way discharge at the delivery.

J: 3P003070A

8.2 KDBH49FA80 / 140 — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet

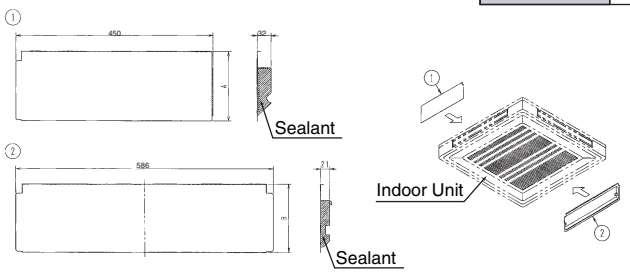
KDBH49FA80



Dimensions

Unit (mm)

Model	A	B
KDBH49FA80	100	100
KDBH49FA140	155	155

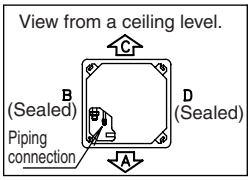


Item \ Model	KDBH49FA80	KDBH49FA140
Material	Garvanized steel iron (with flocking)	
Accessories	Connecting plate: 1 Mounting clasp: 1 Mounting screw: 1 Installation Manual	

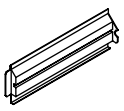
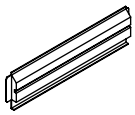
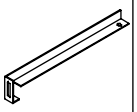
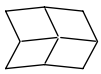
Installation Manual

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.
- This kit is for sealing the air outlets of B and D. Do not attach it to the outlet of A and C. (The figure on the right shows the pattern of air outlet after the kits have been attached.)



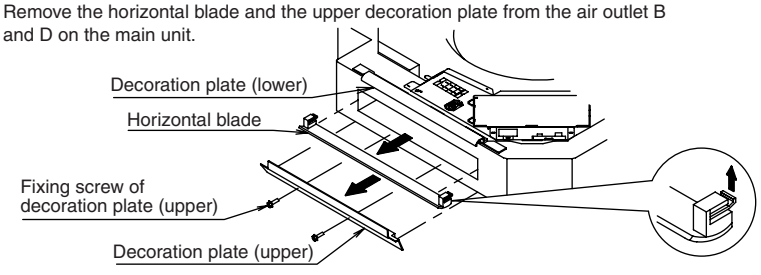
Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name	Sealing decoration plate		Connecting plate	Fixing metal	Screw	Installation manual
Shape	 For the air outlet B (Short)	 For the air outlet D (Long)			 M4 × 8	
Quantity	1 set	1 set	1 piece	1 set	1 set	1 sheet

1 Preparation for installation

Before the installation of the main unit,
be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet B and D on the main unit.



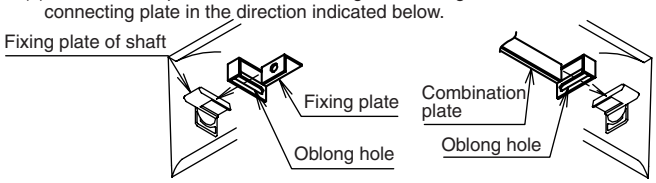
JC: 3P003049C

2 Attachment onto the indoor unit

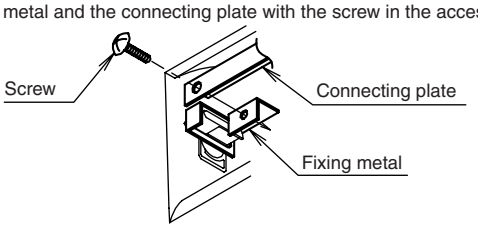
● Attach the connecting plate to the air outlet D.

Take notice for the fact that the auto-swing of the horizontal blade on the A will not work when this kit is attached to the air outlet B.

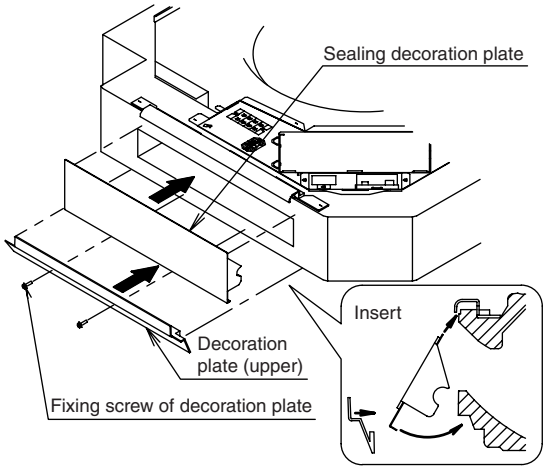
(1)Pass the fixed plate of the shaft through the oblong holes on the fixed metal and the connecting plate in the direction indicated below.

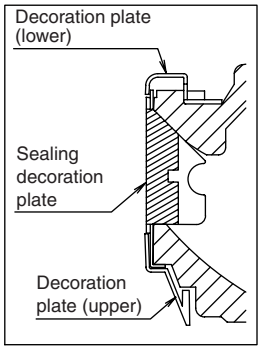


(2)Fix the fixing metal and the connecting plate with the screw in the accessories.



● Attach the sealing decoration plate to the air outlet B and D, and then attach the decoration plate (upper)





Unless the sealing materials are attached as indicated, take notice that it may cause the dew formation and the suction air leakage.

3 Field setting by the remote controller

● The field setting is required for the two-way discharge when this kit is attached. Refer to " Gist of Field Setting" attached in the remote controller for the setting procedure and the operation, and then switch over the second code No. as follows.

Attaching KDBH49FA80

Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.
13(23)	1	03
	5	03

Attaching KDBH49FA140

Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.
13(23)	1	03

The second code No. was set to "01" for 4-way discharge at the delivery.

Make sure the auto-swing action if it moves smoothly after the field setting.

JC: 3P003049C

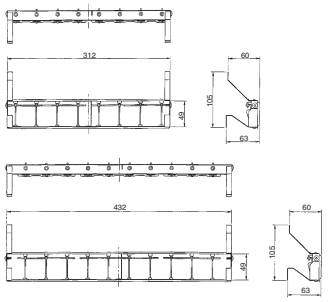
8.3 KDGJ49FA80 / 140 — Vertical Flap Kit

KDGJ49FA80

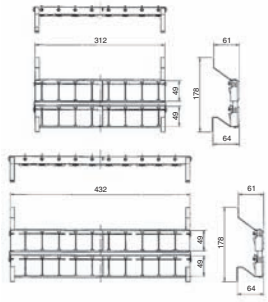


Dimensions Unit (mm)

KDGJ49FA80



KDGJ49FA140



J: D3K2097B
J: D3K2098B

Item \ Model	KDGJ49FA80	KDGJ49FA140
Material	Blade fixing plate: Galvanized steel iron Blade: polypropylene	
Number in box	4(2×2 each)	
Accessories	Installation manual	

Installation Manual

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.

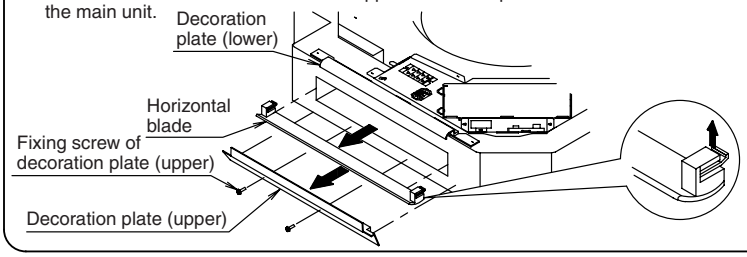
Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name		Vertical blade assembly (Long)		Vertical blade assembly (Short)		Installation manual
Shape		One stage	Two stage	One stage	Two stage	
Quantity	KDGJ 49FA80	2 sets	———	2 sets	———	1 sheet
	KDGJ 49FA140	———	2 sets	———	2 sets	1 sheet

1 Preparation for installation

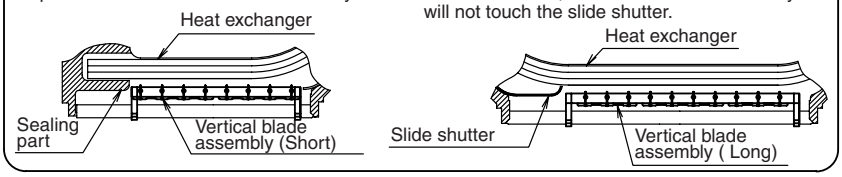
Before the installation of the main unit, be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed, before the installation of the main unit.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet A and B on the main unit.



2 Attachment onto the indoor unit

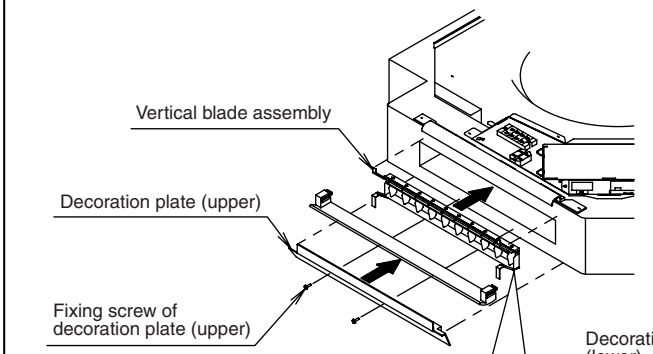
- Caution for the position to attach.
  - Short air outlet
    Attach the kit so as not to touch the sealing part of the air outlet with the kit's body.
  - Long air outlet
    In case of using it in a condition that the slide shutter is closed, attach it so that the kit body will not touch the slide shutter.

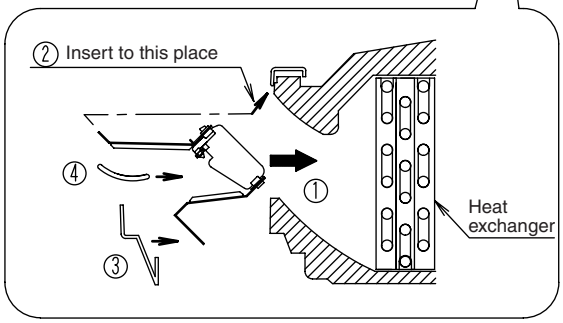


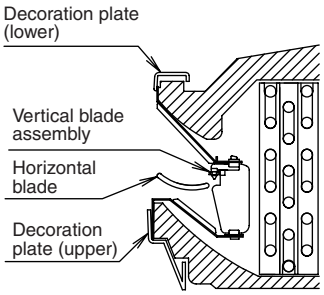
J: 3P003071A

● Attach the vertical blade

① Insert the vertical blade to the depth of the air outlet.
② Insert the hook on the lower part of the vertical blade to in between the decoration plate (lower).
③ Attach the decoration plate (upper).
④ Attach the horizontal blade.



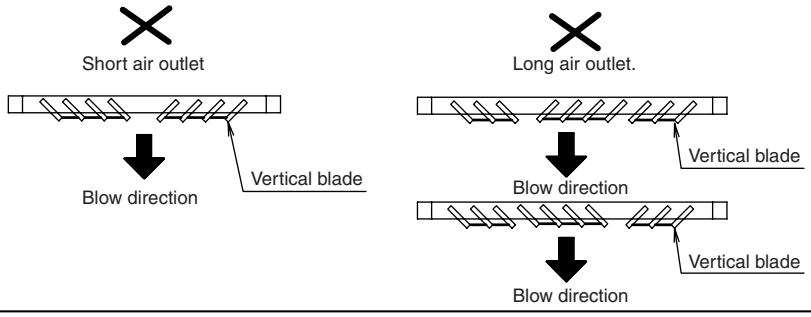




③ After the attachment work

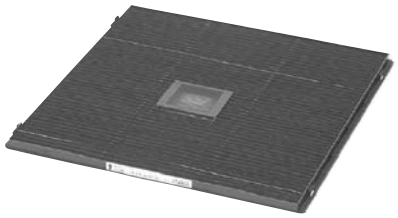
《 Give your customer the following instruction. 》

Do not use the vertical blade in the direction mentioned below.
Otherwise it will be in danger of generating dew on the air outlet of the indoor unit's body.



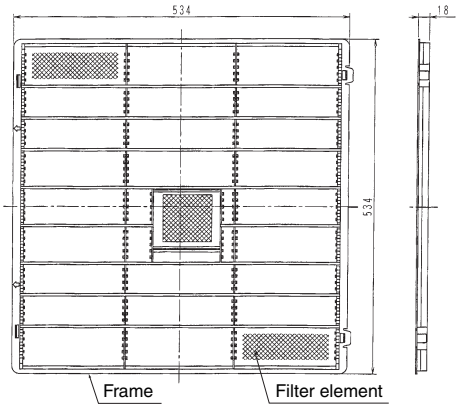
J: 3P003071A

8.4 KAF495FA140 — Replacement Long-life Filter



• Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions Unit (mm)

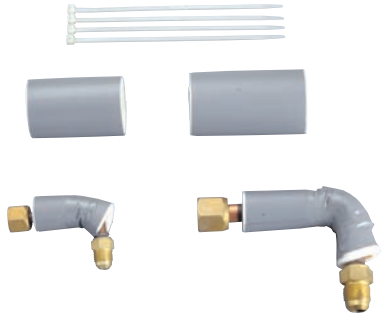


J: D3K2101C

Item \ Model		KAF495FA140
Conditions for use		Atmospheric temperature (0-60°C) Relative humidity (40-95%)
Initial pressure loss	Pa	7 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (Gravity method)
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	18.5
	l/sec	308
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net
Required number of sheets		1
Mass	kg	0.4

8.5 KHFJ49F80 / 140 — L Connection Piping Kit

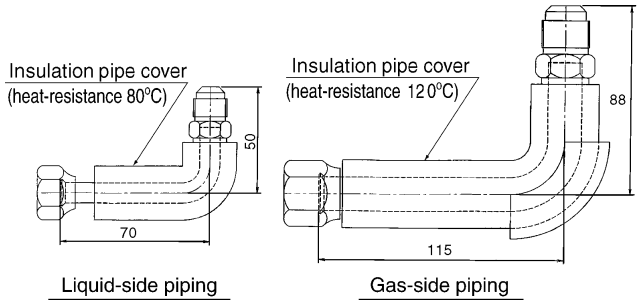
KHFJ49F80



Item	Model	KHFJ49F80	KHFJ49F140	KHFP49MA140
Connection piping diameter	Liquid side	ϕ9.5	ϕ9.5	ϕ9.5
	Gas side	ϕ15.9	ϕ19.1	ϕ15.9
Accessories		Insulation. Binding band.		

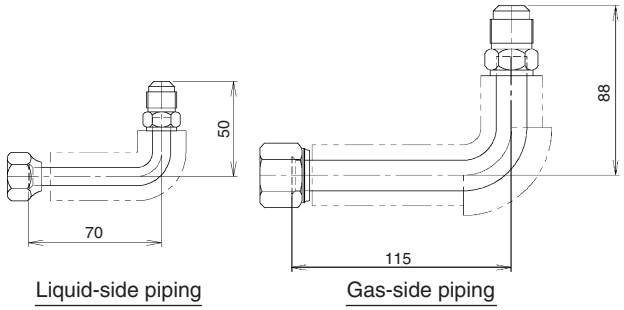
Dimensions Unit (mm)

KHFJ49F80 / 140



J: D3K02103
J: D3K02104

KHFP49MA140



JC: D3K03614A

9. FH(Y)K — Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type

9.1 BYK45 / 71FJW1 — Decoration Panel

Installation Manual

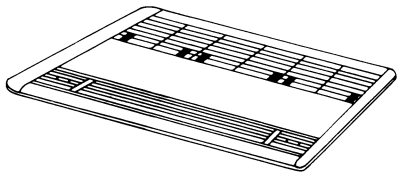
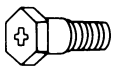
BEFORE INSTALLATION

PRECAUTIONS

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

ACCESSORIES

- The box contains this manual and the parts listed below.

Item	Description	Quantity	
		BYK45FJ	BYK71FJ
Decoration panel		1 set	1 set
Panel fixing screw	 M5 X 35	5 pcs.	5 pcs.
Washer		5 pcs.	5 pcs.

NOTE TO INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

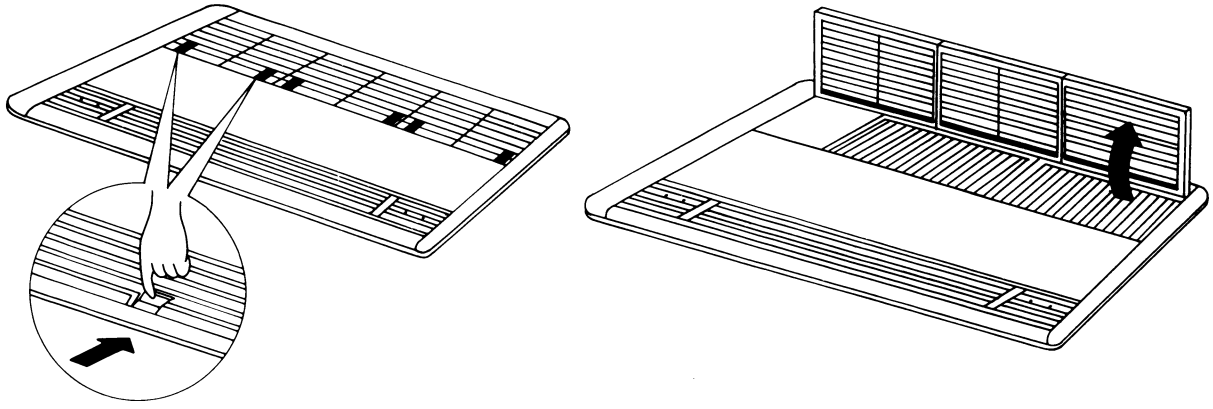
PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

〈 **Never lean the panel against a wall, etc. nor leave it on a projecting object. (For prevention of dents and damages to the panel surface)**
Never grab the discharge grille during the installation work. (For prevention of damage to the discharge grille) 〉

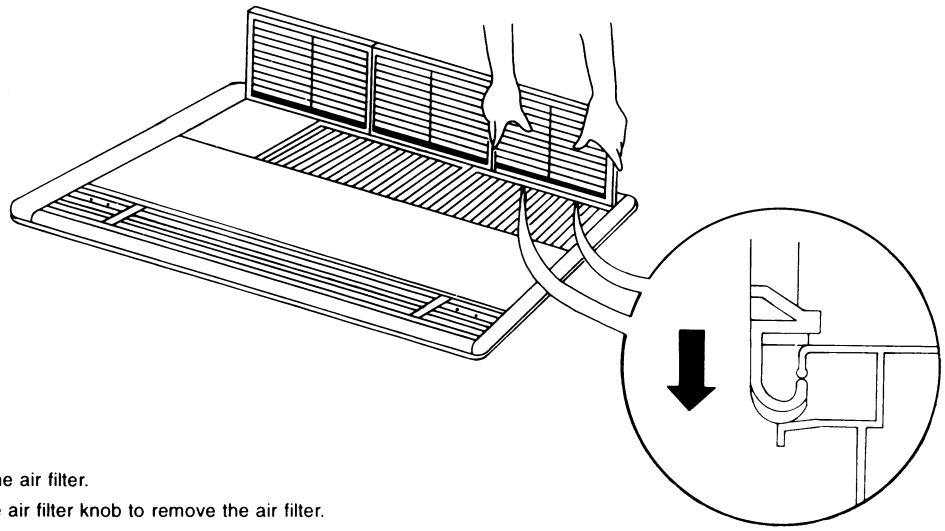
(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel. (See figure below.)

① Slide the suction grille lever and lift it up to one side.

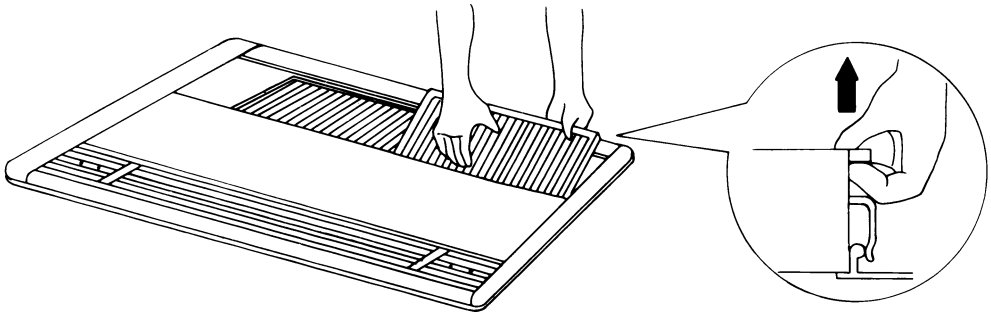


3PA59586-3B

② Unhook the suction grille off from the decoration panel.



(2) Remove the air filter.
Pull up the air filter knob to remove the air filter.

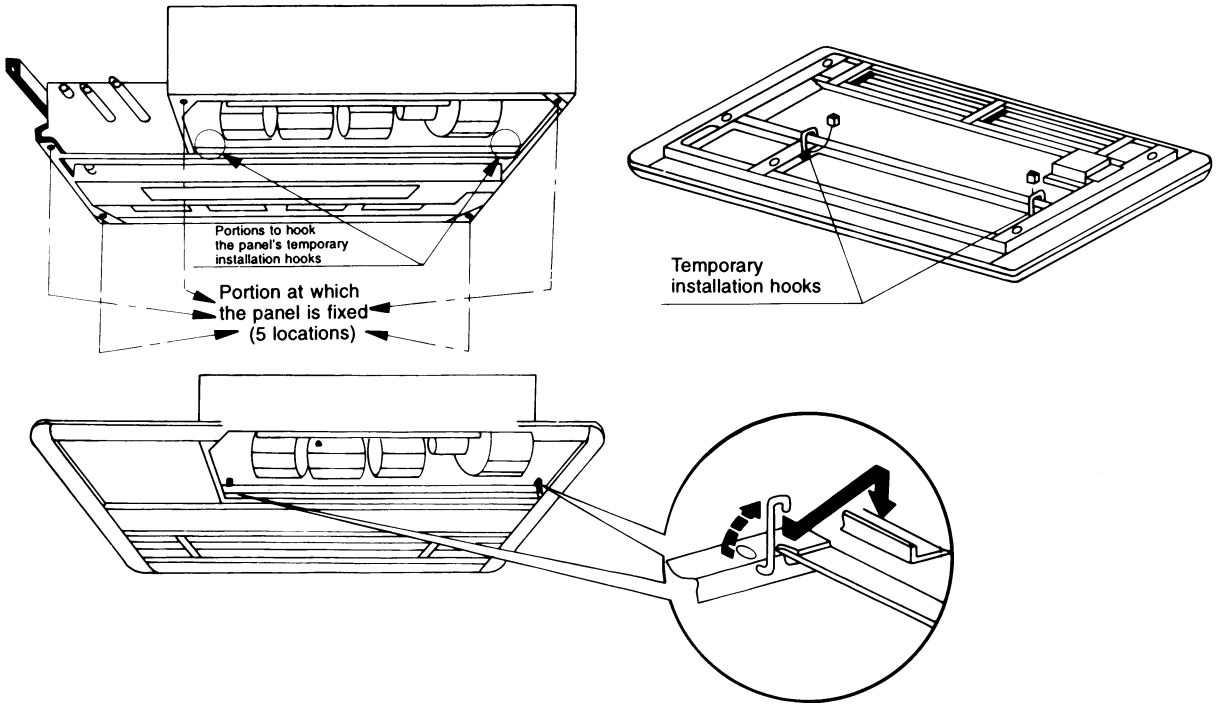


INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

⟨⟨ Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit. ⟩⟩

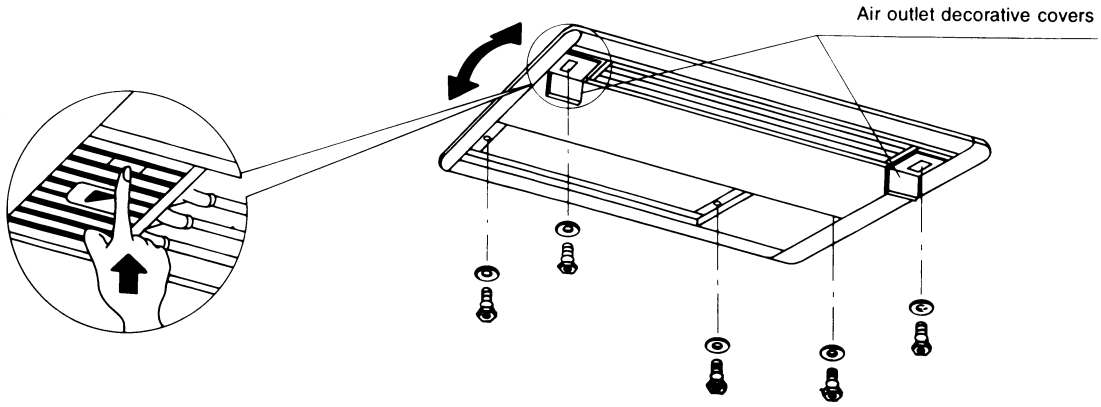
1. Installing the panel

(1) Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit body temporarily.



3PA59586-3B

(2) Tighten the panel fixing screws temporarily.
① Open the air outlet decorative covers.

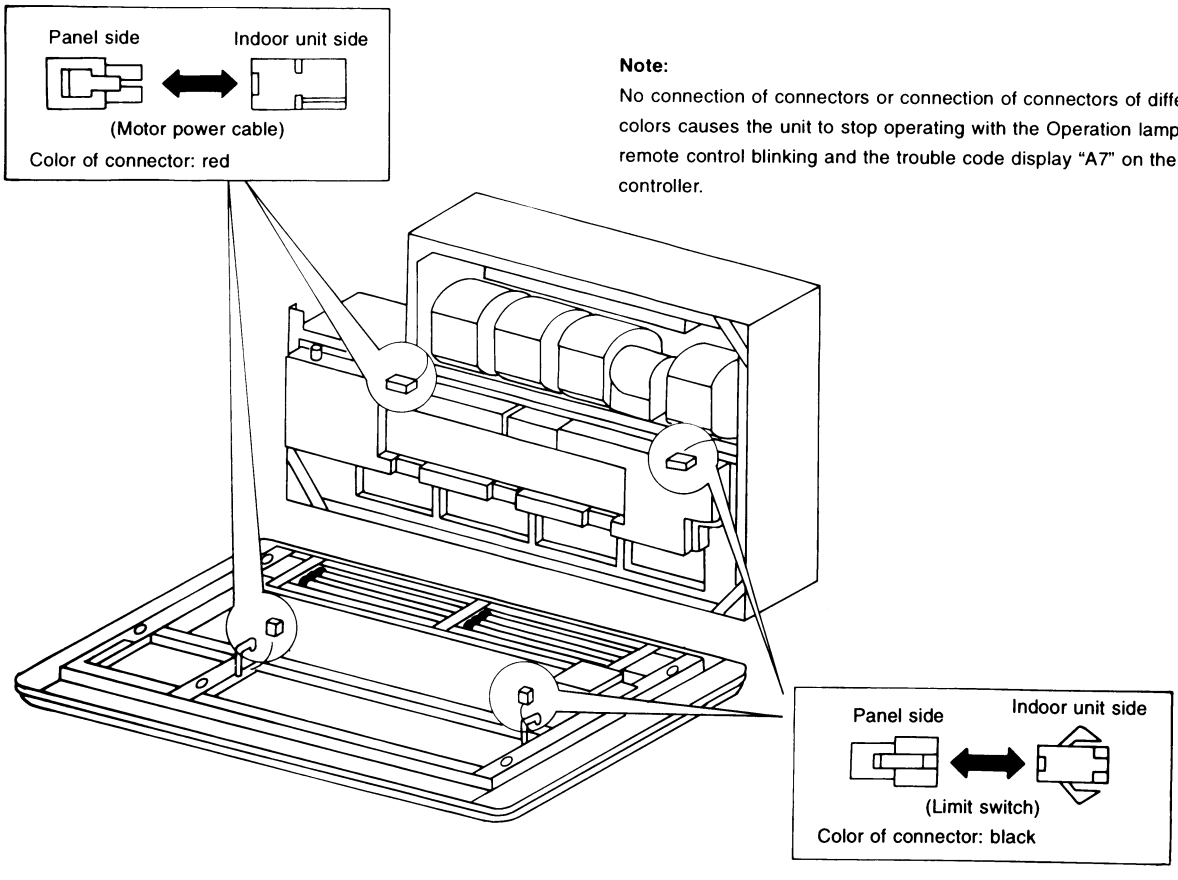


② Put the panel fixing screws (5 pcs.) through the washers and tighten the screws temporarily.
③ Move the panel as indicated by the arrow in the above figure for adjustment so as to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling.

2. Wiring between the indoor unit and the panel

- With the decoration panel temporarily installed to the indoor unit, wire between the indoor unit and the decoration panel. (See figure below.)

(1) Connect the connectors for swing motor and the limit switch on the decoration panel to those on the indoor unit body respectively.
(2) Check that the connectors are of the same color.

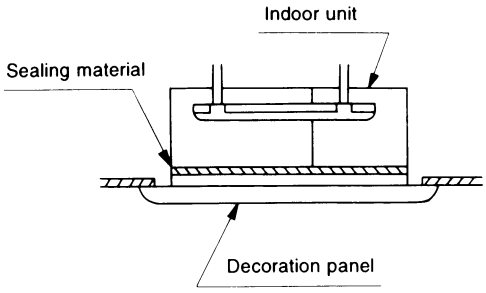


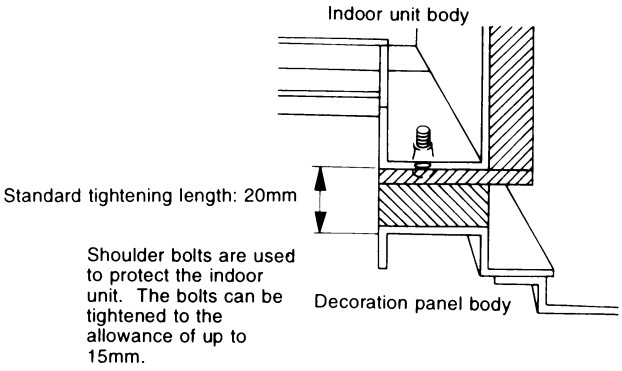
Note:
No connection of connectors or connection of connectors of different colors causes the unit to stop operating with the Operation lamp on the remote control blinking and the trouble code display "A7" on the remote controller.

3PA59586-3B

3. Fixing the decoration panel

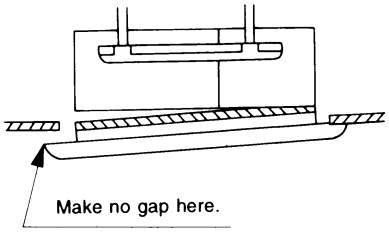
(1) In order to prevent air leakage, a sealing material is provided at the spot where the indoor unit body is joined with the decoration panel. Fix the decoration panel in the following method. (Shoulder bolts are used as the fixing screws. Tighten the bolts until their shoulders.)



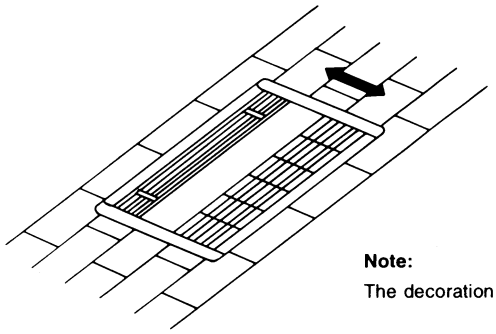


(2) When tightening the bolts, be sure to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling and set the panel in parallel to the ceiling and the ceiling joint.

〈 Improper installation of the panel to the cassette body causes air leakage. 〉



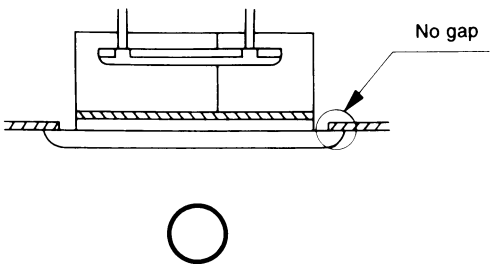
Note:
In case there remains a gap between the panel and the ceiling when the fixing bolts have been tightened fully to their shoulders, adjust the height of the indoor unit.

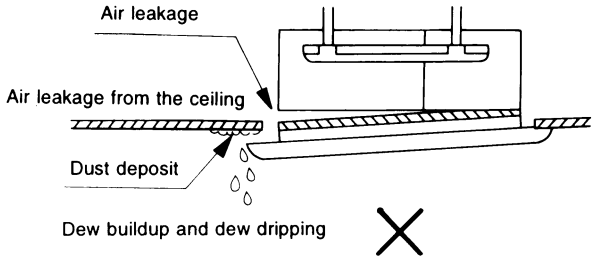


Note:
The decoration panel can be adjusted back and forth to 10 mm, respectively.

(3) Finally, make sure that the decoration panel is securely fixed to the indoor unit.

〈 Improper installation (tightening) causes the troubles as shown below; be sure to double-check the completion of the installation work. 〉





C: 3PA59586-3B

9.2 KPBJ52F56 / 80W — Panel Spacer

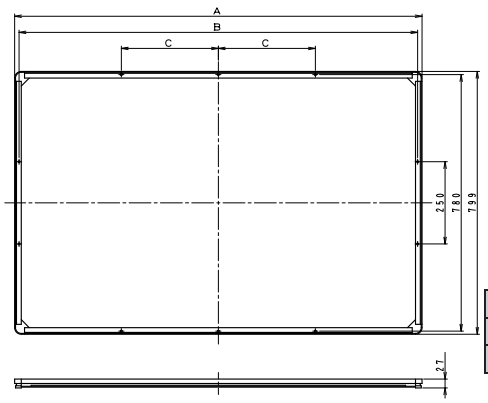
If the space above the ceiling is not available for more than 220mm, use the panel spacer, which enables to install the unit in 200mm space.

KPBJ52F56W



This photo is a part of the product.

Dimensions Unit (mm)

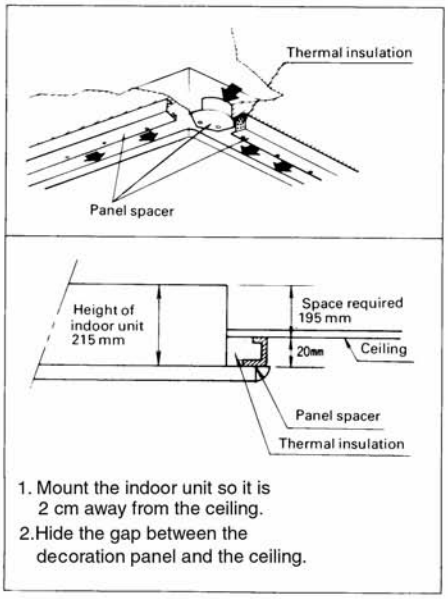


Model	A	B	C
KPBJ52F56W	1239	1212	295
KPBJ52F80W	1439	1412	345

C: D3K1412A

Item \ Model		KPBJ52F56W	KPBJ52F80W
Color		White	
Material		Aluminum extrusion (resin used on corner part only)	
Component		Panel spacer. insulation. screws. installation manual.	
Weight	kg	1.6	1.8
Applicable decoration panel		BYK45FJW1	BYK71FJW1

Example of usage



Installation Manual

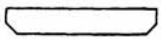
① Combination with the decoration panel

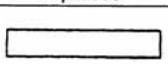
Be sure to check the model number in the table below before installation.

Space required in the ceiling	Kit name	Color	Applied decoration panel
20 cm	KPBJ52F56W	White	BYK45FJW1
	KPBJ52F80W	White	BYK71FJW1

② Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

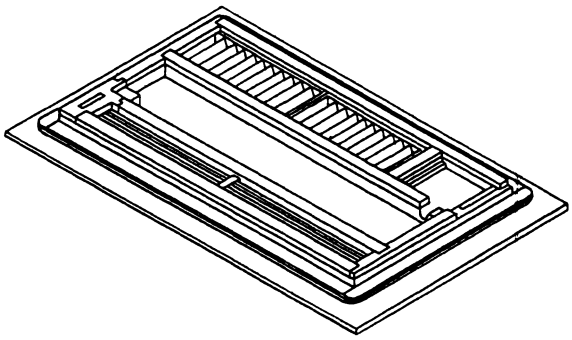
Name	Panel spacer (1)	Panel spacer (2)	Panel spacer (3)	Thermal insulation (1)
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	4 pieces	2 pieces
Shape				

Name	Thermal insulation (2)	Screws	Installation manual
Quantity	2 pieces	18 pieces	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12	

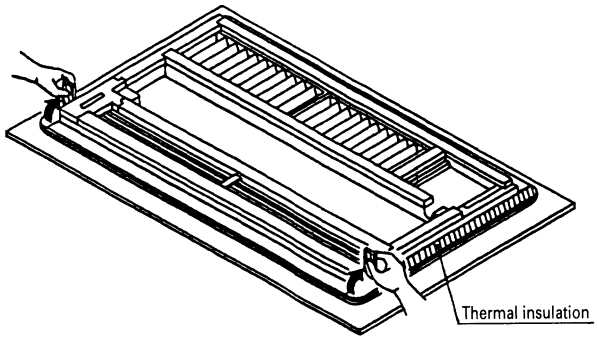
JC: 3K07220A

③ Preparation of the decoration panel

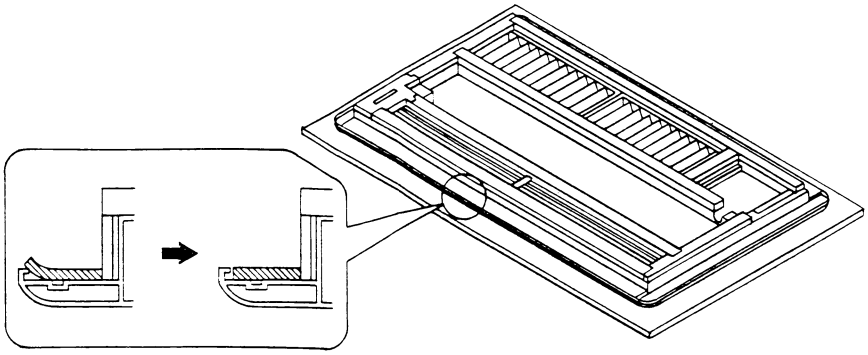
● Handle the decoration panel with care.
Never lean against the wall or leave it on a projecting object to prevent the damage on the surface of the panel. Never hold the air discharge outlet when installing to prevent the air discharge outlet from damage.
(1) Place the decoration panel face down on the corrugated cardboard or the vinyl sheet to prevent the damage on the surface.



(2) Remove the thermal insulation. (2 locations)



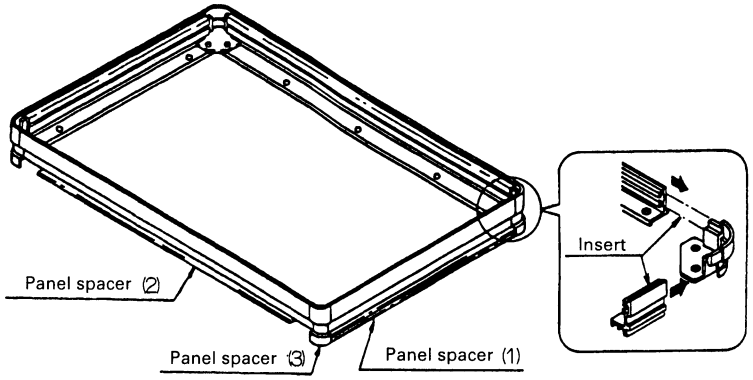
(3) Remove the glue on the thermal insulation where the panel spacer is installed. Remove also the stick-out glue on the panel frame by cutting knife etc.



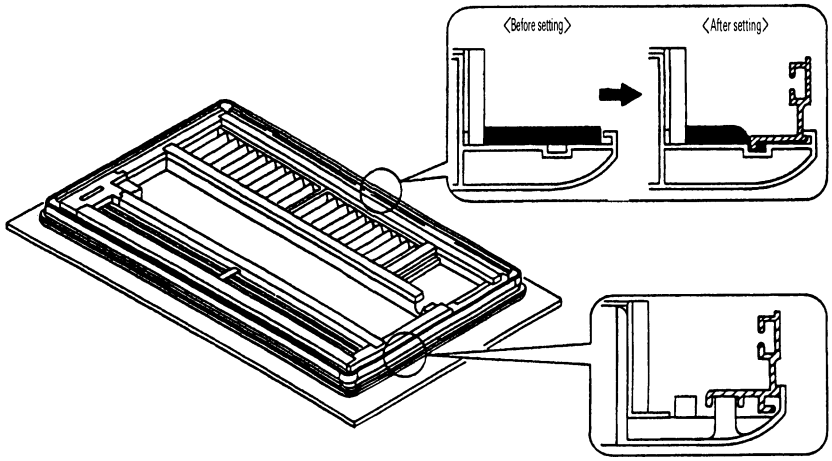
JC: 3K07220A

④ Installation of the panel spacer

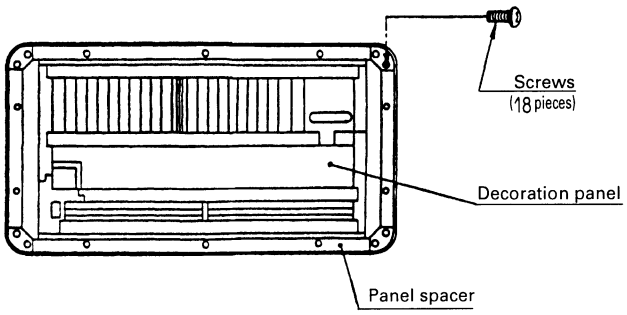
(1) Assemble the panel spacer (1) , (2) and (3) temporarily.



(2) Set the temporarily assembled panel spacer to the decoration panel.

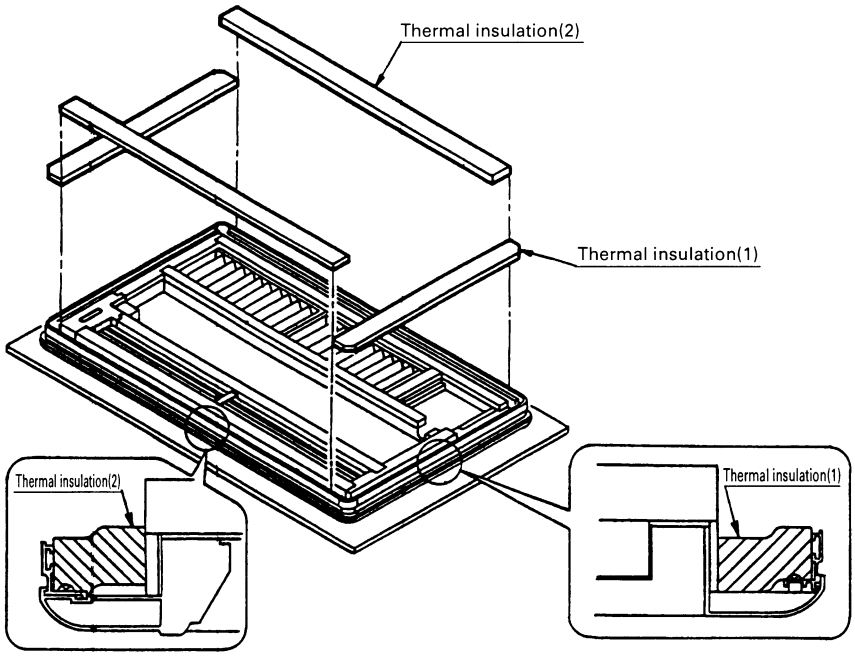


(3) Fix the panel spacer to the decoration panel with screws (18 pieces).



JC: 3K07220A

(4) Attach the thermal insulation (1) and (2).



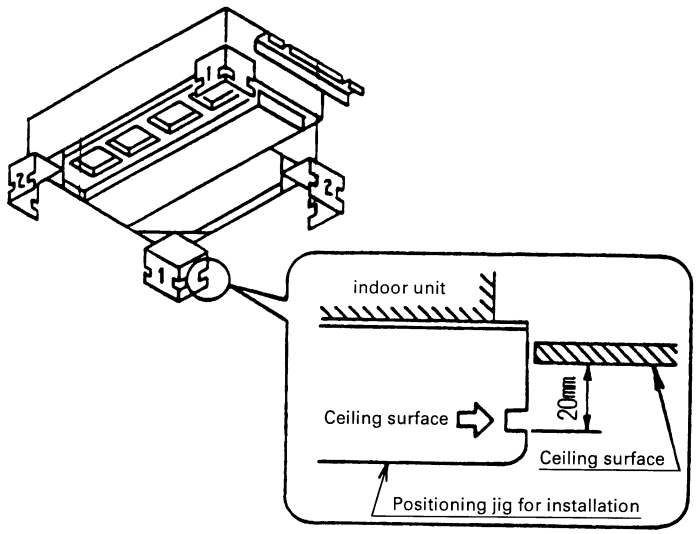
⑤ Selection of the location for installation

It is required the space of 20cm above the ceiling for the installation.
Refer to the item of "Selecting installation site" of the installation manual of the indoor unit for other details.

JC: 3K07220A

⑥ Installation of the indoor unit

When you install the panel spacer, lower the indoor unit by 20cm from the standard height.



Refer to the item of "Indoor unit installation" of the installation manual of the indoor unit for other details.

⑦ Attachment of the decoration panel

After the completion of installation of the panel spacer, attach the decoration panel to the indoor unit.

JC: 3K07220A

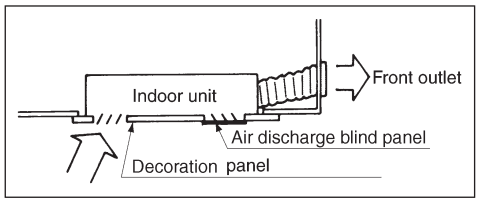
9.3 KDBJ52F56 / 80W — Air Discharge Blind Panel

This optional kit is to blind the bottom discharge outlet, when the unit is used with front air discharge.

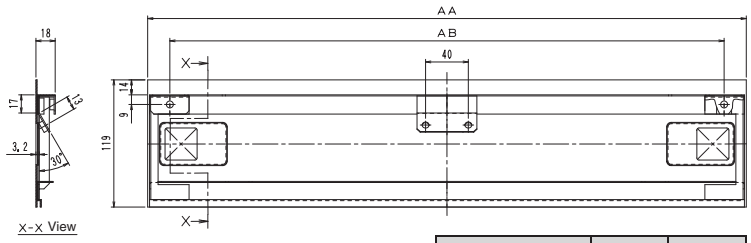
KDBJ52F56W



Example of usage



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	AA	AB
KDBJ52F56W	1125.5	1084
KDBJ52F80W	1325.5	1284

C: D3K1162A

Item \ Model		KDBJ52F56W	KDBJ52F80W
Color		White	
Material		Steel plate	
Mass	kg	1.8	2.2
Component parts		Blind panel assembly. Name plate. Supporting bracket. Screws. Installation manual. Set of caution stickers.	

Additional required accessories

- Discharge grille
- Flexible duct with shutter
- This optional kit is to blind the bottom discharge outlet, when the unit is used with front air discharge.

Installation Manual

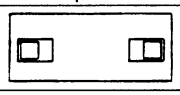
① Combination with decoration panel

This kit is used to cover the air discharge outlet of the decoration panel when the unit is installed with the front air discharge.

Name	Color	Applicable decoration
KDBJ52F56W	White	BYK45FJW1
KDBJ52F80W	White	BYK71FJW1

② Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

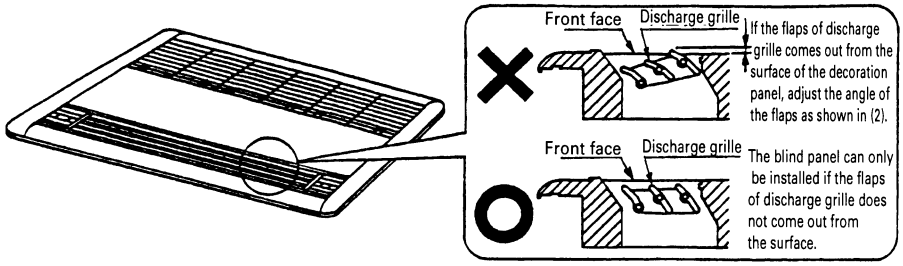
Name	Blind panel assembly	Supporting bracket	Name plate (1)	Name plate (2)
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape				

Name	Screws(M5×8)	Screws(M5×40)	Installation manual	Set of caution stickers
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece
Shape	 M5×8	 M5×40		

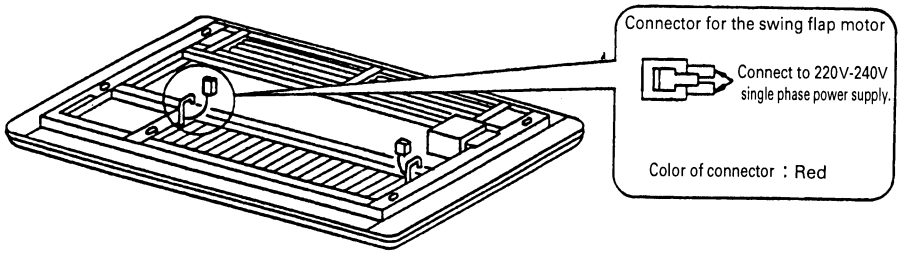
1P016132

③ Examination of the decoration panel before removing

(1) Check the angle of the flaps of discharge grille.

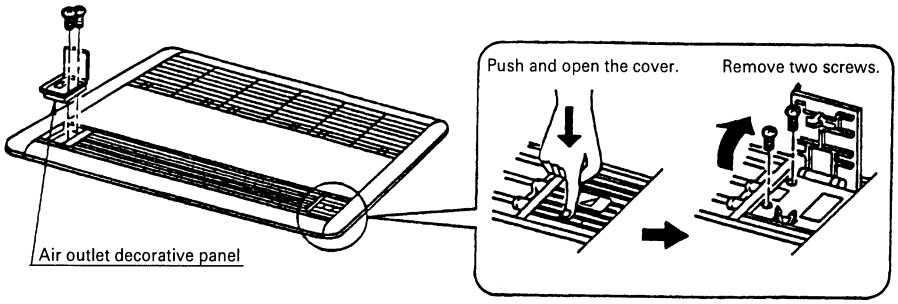


(2) If it is required to adjust the angle of the flaps, supply the electrical power(220V-240V single phase) to the air swing motor connector and adjust the position of the flaps.

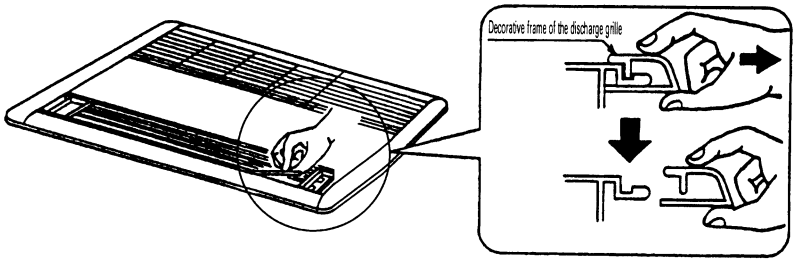


④ Removing the parts

(1) Remove the air outlet decorative covers.



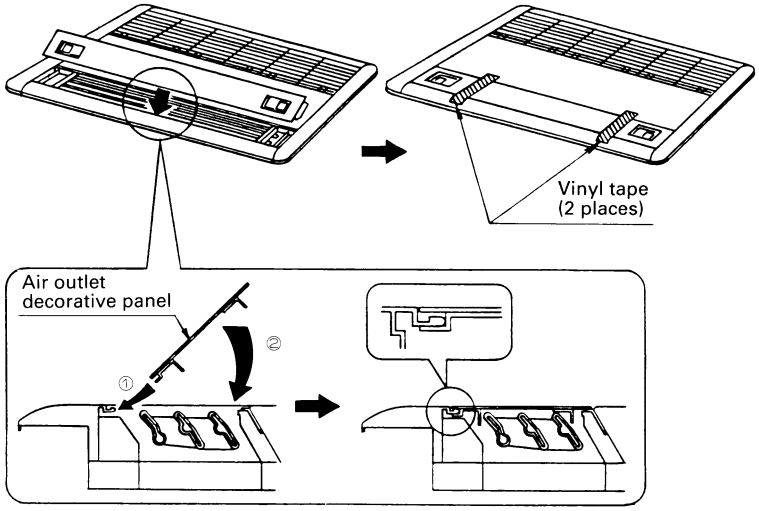
(2) Remove the decorative frame of the air discharge grille.



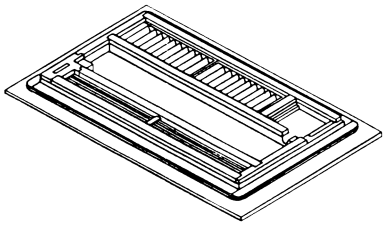
1P016132

⑤ Installation of the air discharge blind panel

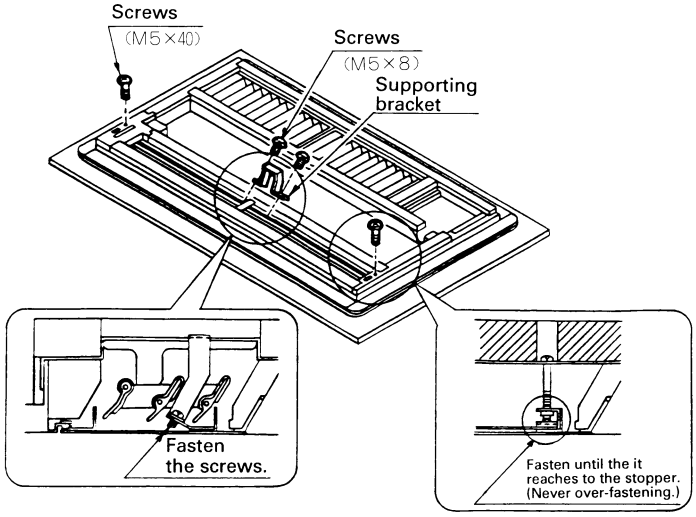
(1) Attach the air discharge blind panel and put the vinyl tape to hold panel temporarily.



(2) Place the decorative panel face down on the corrugated cardboard or vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the decoration panel.



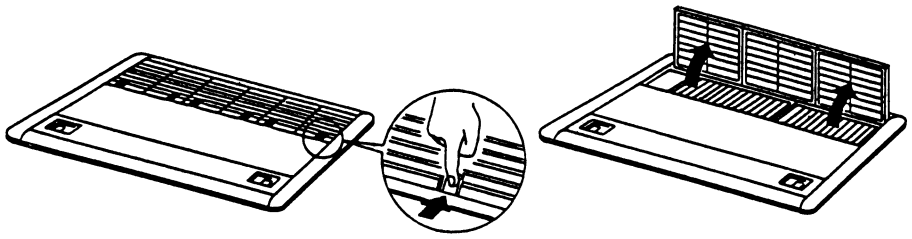
(3) Set the air discharge blind panel with the supporting bracket and fasten the screws.



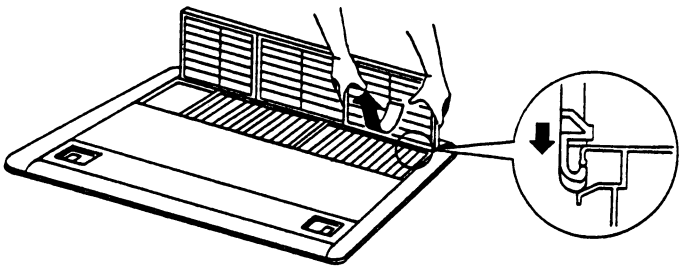
1P016132

⑥ Preparation of the decoration panel

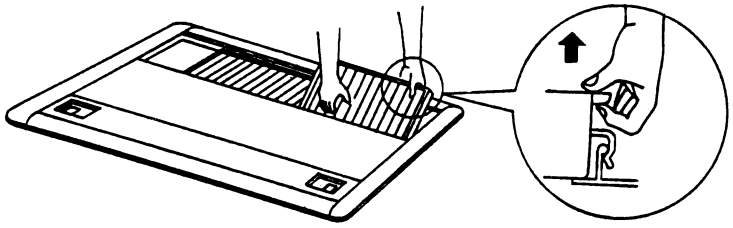
(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.
(1)-1 Slide the lever of the suction grille and lift it up to one side.



(1)-2 Unhook the suction grille off from the decoration panel.



(1)-3 Remove the air filter.
Pull up the air filter knob and remove the air filter.



C: 1P016132

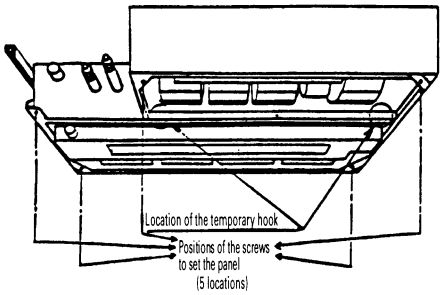
⑦ Installing the decoration panel to the indoor unit

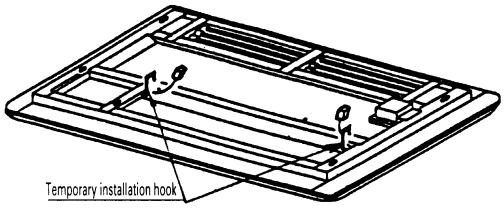
Install the decoration panel after the completion of the installation of the front discharge panel.

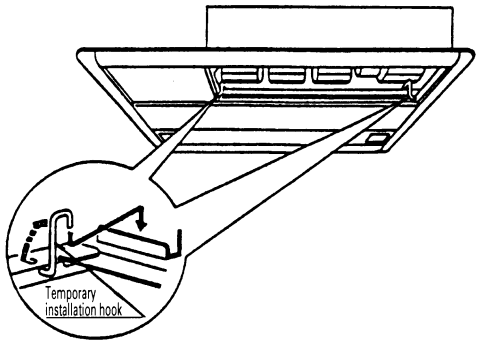
① Installation of the decoration panel

Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for its installation.

(1) Hook the decoration panel to the indoor unit temporarily.



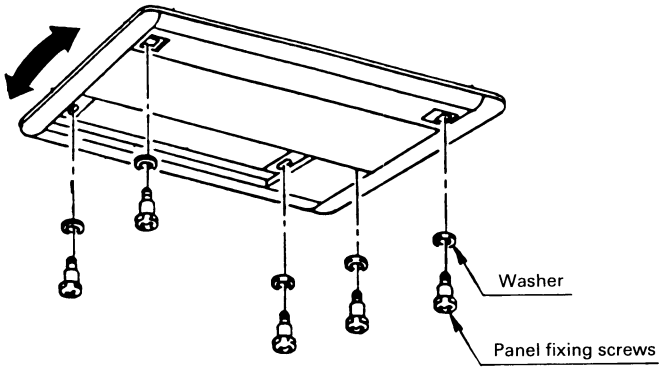




(2) Fasten the panel fixing screws temporarily.

(2)-1 Set the washer to the screws and fasten temporarily.

(2)-2 Adjust the panel as shown below to fit with the opening of the ceiling properly.



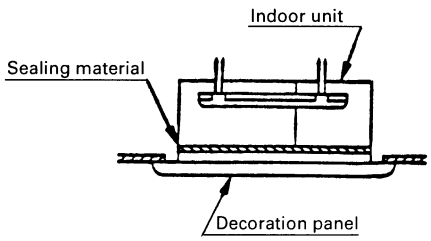
C: 1P016133

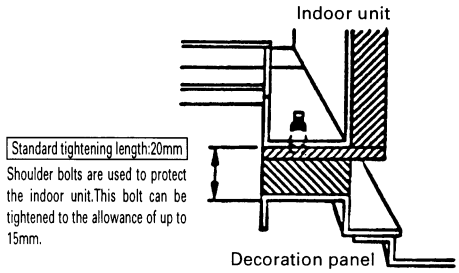
② Electrical wiring between indoor unit and the decoration panel

Never connect the connector of the swing motor and the limit switch.

③ Fixing of the decoration panel

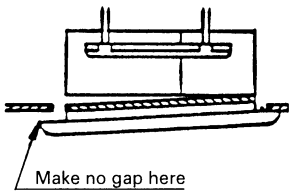
(1) The sealing material is attached between indoor unit and the panel to seal the air leakage from the connecting part. Fasten the screws tightly according to the following drawing. (The shoulder bolts are used as fixing screw. Tighten the bolts until their shoulders.)





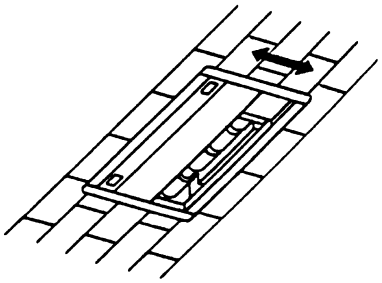
(2) When tightening the bolts, be sure to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling, and set the panel in parallel to the ceiling and the ceiling joint.

Improper installation of the panel to the indoor unit causes air leakage.



Caution

If there will be a gap between the panel and the indoor unit after tightening the bolts up to the shoulder, adjust the height of the indoor unit.

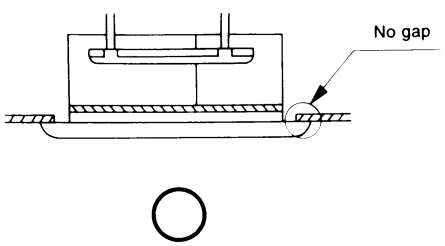


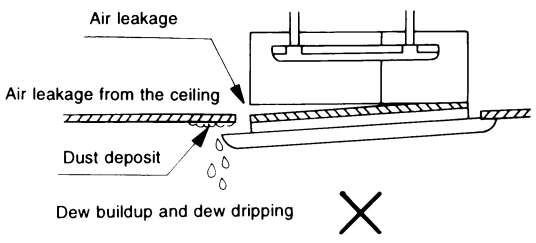
Caution

The decoration panel can be adjusted back and forth to 10mm respectively.

(3) Make sure whether the decoration panel is securely fixed to the indoor unit.

Improper installation (loose tightening) causes the trouble as shown below. Be sure whether the installation is completed properly again.

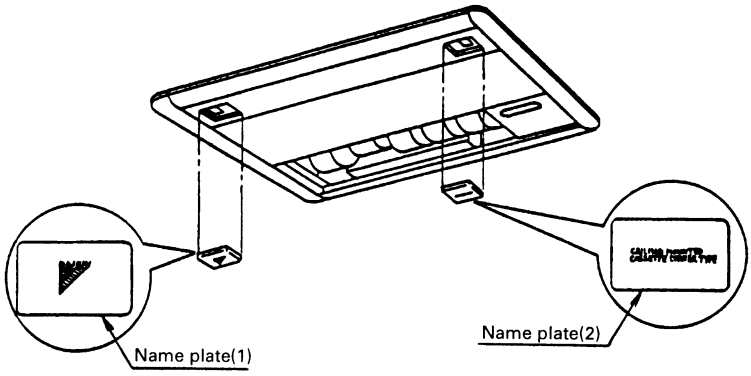




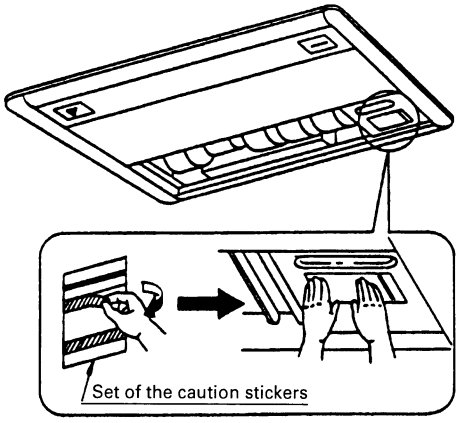
C: 1P016133

⑧ Attaching the set of name plate

(1) Attach the name plates as follows.



(2) Attach the set of caution stickers.



⑨ Installation of the suction grille and air filter

Refer to the item ⑥ "Preparation of decoration panel" of this manual, and install it in the reverse step.

C: 1P016133

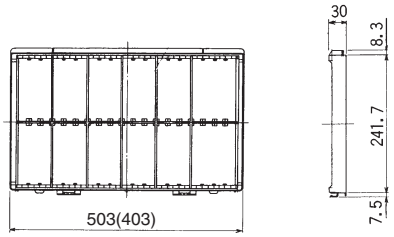
9.4 KAFJ521F56 / 80 — Replacement Long-life Filter

KAFJ521F80



・Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Dimensions listed in parentheses show KAFJ521F56.

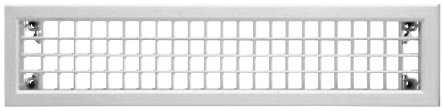
C: D3K1145A

Item \ Model		KAFJ521F56	KAFJ521F80
Average efficiency	%	45 (Gravity method)	
Initial pressure loss	Pa	10 or less	
Final pressure loss	Pa	49	
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	6	8.5
	l/sec	100	142
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net	
Number of sheets included		2	
Mass	kg	0.4	0.6

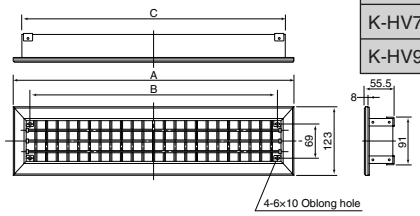
9.5 K-HV7 / 9AW — Discharge Grille

This optional kit is used when the unit is installed with front air discharge. The direction of air can be adjusted flexibly.
This discharge grille should be installed with the following flexible duct.

K-HV7AW



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	Dimensions (mm)			Mass (kg)
	A	B	C	
K-HV7AW	523	466	488	1.3
K-HV9AW	723	666	688	1.7

■Specification
●Movable vane
●Material : Steel plate construction, surrounding cedar flame (nylon flocking)

C: D3K1972C

Item \ Model		K-HV7AW	K-HV9AW
Material		Steel plate construction. Surrounding cedar flame (nylon flocking).	
Accessories		Wing adjustors. Attachment clamp.	
Available volume flow rate		5.0~12.0	7.0~17.0
Mass	kg	1.3	1.7

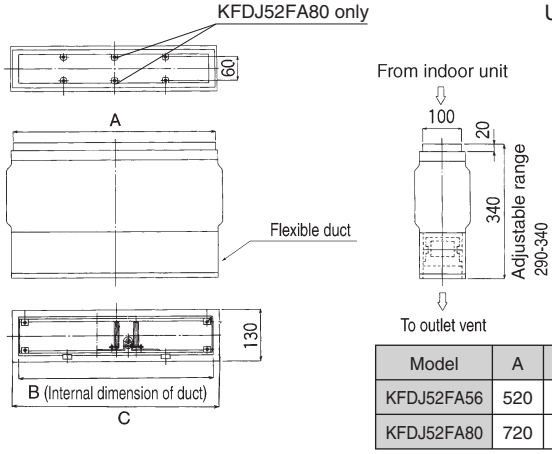
9.6 KFDJ52FA56 / 80 — Flexible Duct with Shutter

KFDJ52FA56



- Internal shutter
  → Using the shutter allows adjustment of fan strength for front and bottom directions.
- Location of attachment can be varied within 20 mm up or down. Connection to indoor unit also easy to do.

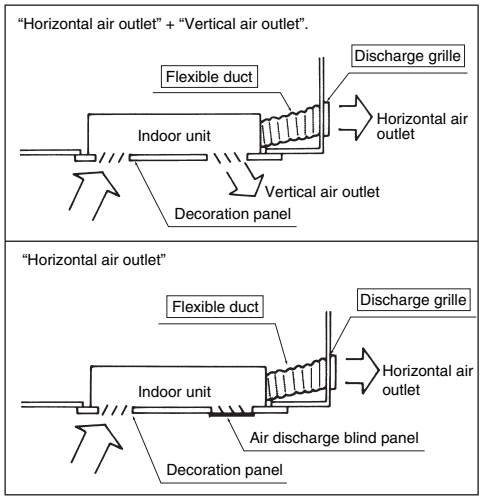
Dimensions



Model	A	B	C
KFDJ52FA56	520	498	530
KFDJ52FA80	720	698	730

C: D3K04935

Installation



Item	Model	KFDJ52FA56	KFDJ52FA80
Thermal insulation		Material: glass wool (t=25 mm, specific gravity=24 kg/m³)	
Mass	kg	4.5	5.0
Component parts		Flexible duct. Shutter. Setting plate for duct. Sealing pad. Shutter adjuster. Screws. Thermal insulation. Installation manual.	

1 Combination with discharge grille

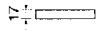
The "Discharge grille" is also required, when you install the flexible duct.
When you install the unit with "Horizontal air outlet", the air discharge blind panel of optional kit can be installed on the decoration panel, if necessary.

Flexible duct	Discharge grille	Color	Applied model
KFDJ52FA56	K-HV7AW	White	FHYK35/45FJV1 FXKQ25/32/40MAVE FXK25/32/40LVE
KFDJ52FA80	K-HV9AW	White	FHK60FV1, FHYK60/71FJV1 FXKQ63MAVE FXK63LVE

Note:Be sure to use the original optional discharge grille. If you use the discharge grille in the market, you may have a problem with the distribution of the room temperature or the condensation on the grille.

2 Contents of kit

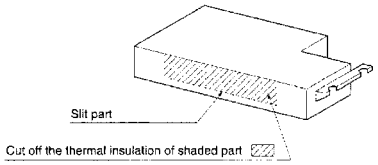
Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

Name		Flexible duct	Shutter	Thermal insulation (1)	Thermal insulation (2)	Setting plate for duct	Flap adjuster
Shape							
Quantity	KFDJ52FA56	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece
	KFDJ52FA80	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	6 pieces	1 piece

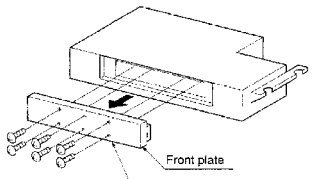
Name		Sealing pad				Installation manual	Screws		
Shape		Ⓐ 	Ⓑ 	Ⓒ 	Ⓓ 		 Ⓐ M4×12	 Ⓑ M5×15	 Ⓒ M5×20
Quantity	KFDJ52FA56	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	4 pieces	4 pieces	4 pieces
	KFDJ52FA80		4 pieces		2 pieces	1 piece	6 pieces	6 pieces	4 pieces

3 Preparation of indoor unit

(1) Cut off the thermal insulation on the front fase of the indoor unit along with the slit furnished.



(2) Remove the front plate by unfastening all the screw.

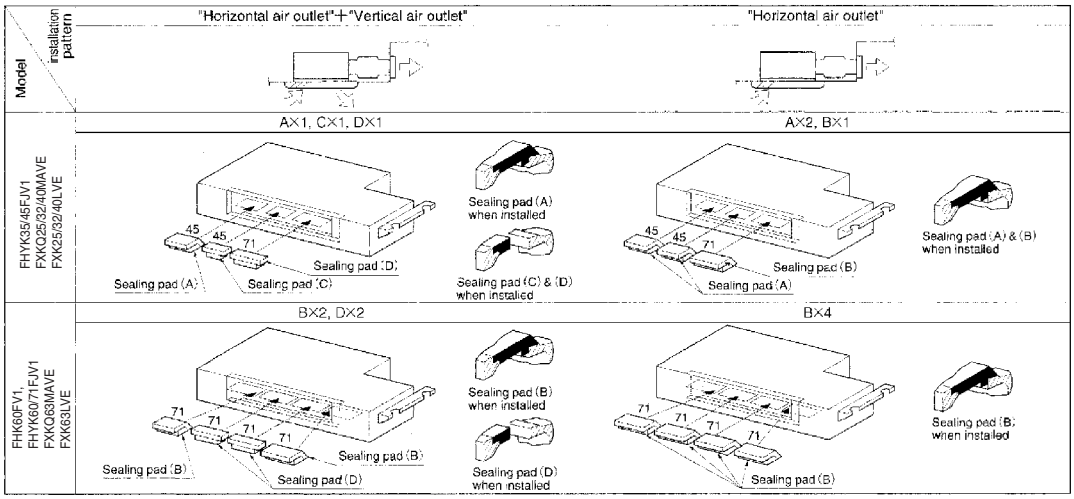


Model	Screw
FHYK35/45FJV1 FXKQ25/32/40MAVE FXK25/32/40LVE	4 pieces
FHK60FV1, FHYK60/71FJV1 FXKQ63MAVE FXK63LVE	6 pieces

C: 1P167773

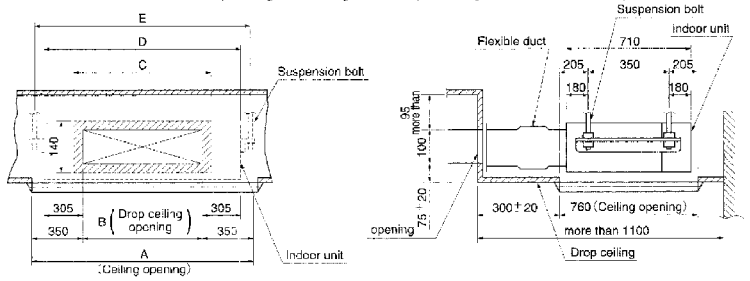
4 Attaching the sealing pad to the air dischange outlet

Cover the air discharge outlets with the sealing pads as needed by the installation site as shown in the table below.
Peel off the paper mating from the backside of one of the sealing pad and attach the pad to the drain pan opening.



5 Preparation prior to the installation

(1) Dimension and location of the opening of ceiling and drop ceiling, and also the suspension bolts. (Unit [mm])

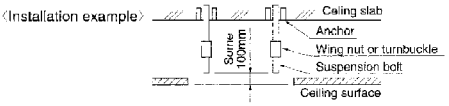


Flexible duct	A	B	C	D	E
KFDJ52FA56	1200	500	540	1110	1150
KFDJ52FA80	1400	700	740	1310	1350

(2) Make a opening in the ceilling for installation (If it is a existing ceiling.)
- Use the paper pattern (included the indoor unit) for installation, which has been made to the dimension of the opening in the ceiling.
- Make a opening in the ceiling, and run the refrigerant piping, drain piping, wire for remote controller and transmission wiring between indoor unit and outdoor unit up to the inlet port for the piping and wiring of the indoor unit. (Refer to the related items of the installation manual of the indoor unit for its installation of the piping and wiring.)
- After making a opening in the ceiling, reinforcement of the ceiling frame and etc.may be required to maintain the level of the ceiling or to prevent the vibration of the ceiling. For details, consult with building contractor or interior contractor.

(3) Make a opening in the drop ceiling for the installation of discharge grille. (If it is a existing ceiling.)
- Never install the ceiling joint in the shaped part ▨, which disturb the installation of the flexible duct. (Install only a ceiling material.)

(4) Install the suspension bolts. (Use M8 size of the suspension bolts.)
- Use the hole-in anchors for the existing building and use the embedded inserts, embedded anchors for newly built ceiling so that weight of the unit is supported. Also adjust the length of the bolts to the ceiling before installing the unit.



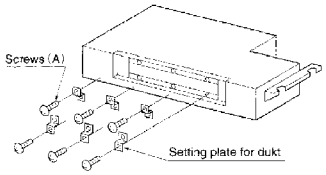
Note :All the parts shown above should be arranged locally.

C: 1P167773

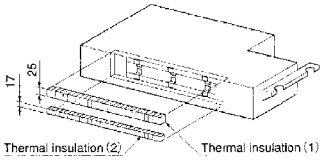
⑥ Installation of indoor unit

(1) Prepare for the installation of the flexible duct.

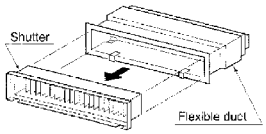
①Attach the setting plate for duct to the indoor unit with screws (A) (M4×12)



②Attach the thermal insulation (1) and (2) along the edge of opening.



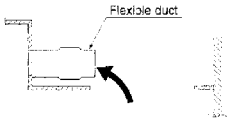
(2) Remove the shutter from the flexible duct.



(3) Install the indoor unit and the flexible duct.

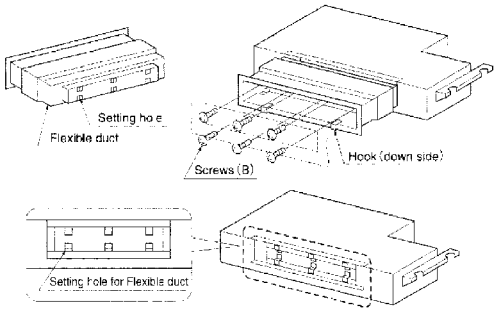
In case of the existing ceiling

①Install the flexible duct temporarily in the ceiling.



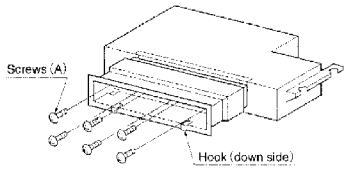
②Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and install the indoor unit.

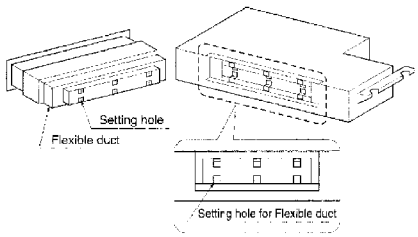
③Install the flexible duct to the setting plate for duct with screws (B) (M5×15), facing the hook of flexible duct to down side.



In case of the new ceiling

①Install the flexible duct to the indoor unit with screws (B) (M5×15), facing the hook of flexible duct to down side.





②Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and install the indoor unit (complete with flexible duct).

1P167773

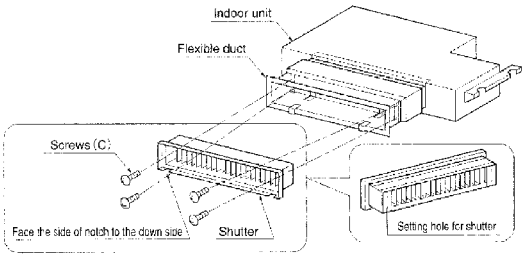
7 Initial setting of the indoor unit

Depending on the pattern of installation, connect the terminal board (A2P) of the indoor unit as follows.
However, in case of SKY AIR series, set by the remote controller at the field set mode. For details, refer to the "How to set in the field" of the operation manual of the remote controller.

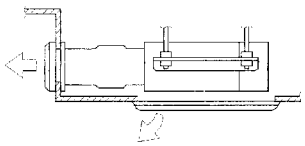
Model / installation pattern	"Horizontal air outlet"+"Vertical air outlet"	"Horizontal air outlet"
Less than 3m	SKY AIR series Setting number of field setting MODE No. 13 (Group setting No.), 23 (Individual setting No.), 6 (FIRST CODE No.) Less than 3m: 01 (SECOND CODE No.) 3m-3.8m: 02 (SECOND CODE No.) VRV unit Terminal board (A2P) Printed circuit board assembly YC, YA1 HIGH NORMAL M1F [factory set]	SKY AIR series No field setting required by the remote controller. VRV unit No setting required. YC, YA1 HIGH NORMAL M1F [factory set]
3m-3.8m		Not possible

8 Installation of the shutter and its adjustment

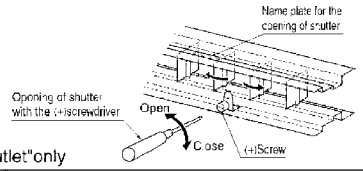
(1) Install the shutter in the inside of the flexible duct with screws (C) (M5×20).



(2) When the unit is installed with the pattern of the "Horizontal air outlet"+"Vertical air outlet", by referring to the following table, adjust the opening of shutter with the tool according to the height of the ceiling as directed in the name plate for the opening of shutter.



Opening of shutter	Proportion of the air volume "Horizontal air outlet"	Proportion of the air volume "Vertical air outlet"	Ceiling height
Full close	Never operate the unit with the shutter at "full close"		
25%	4	6	3m-3.8m
50%	5	5	Less than 3m
75%	5.5	4.5	
Full open	6	4	

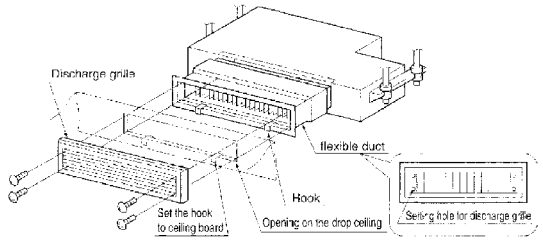


Caution: Be sure to set the shutter at "full open"when the unit is operated with"Horizontal air outlet"only

1P167774

⑨ Installation of the discharge grille

(1) Before installing the discharge grille, set the hook for duct to the lower side of the opening.
(2) Install the discharge grille to the flexible duct with screws (M5×50) (included in the discharge grille kit) over the drop ceiling board



⑩ Installation of the decoration panel to the indoor unit

●Install the decoration panel according to the pattern of the installation.

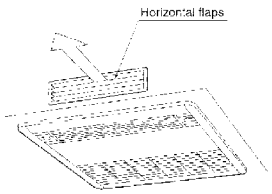
"Horizontal air outlet" and "Vertical air outlet"	"Horizontal air outlet"	
	When the air discharge blind panel is not installed.	When the air discharge blind panel is installed.
Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel, install the decoration panel to the indoor unit.		Refer to the installation manual of the air discharge blind plate, install the decoration panel to the indoor unit.

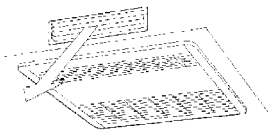
1P167774

Adjusting the direction of air discharge

How to adjust the blow direction depending on the unit set-up.

In case of"Horizontal air outlet"...When the air discharge unit is used.



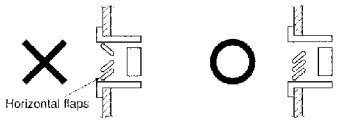


●Up/Down adjustment when cooling

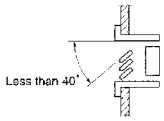
Keep the horizontal flaps of discharge grille at horizontal position.

Caution

1.When you set the flaps downward, keep all the horizontal flaps same direction as shown below. Never set the flaps with sharp bend to disturb the air flow, which may cause the condensation on the discharge grille.

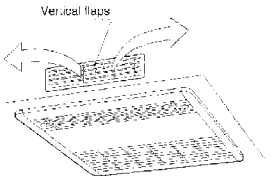


2.Keep the horizontal flap to a 40° angle or less. If the flaps are set to a 40° angle or more, it may cause the condensation on the gril e.



●Up/Down adjustment when heating

Set the horizontal flaps of the discharge grille downward.

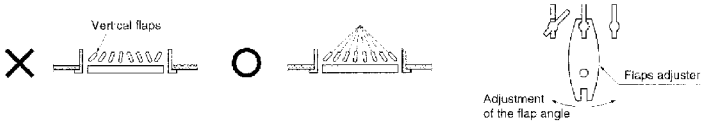


●Right/Left adjustment

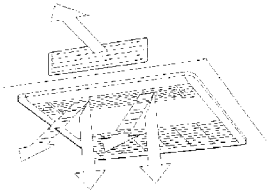
Adjust the vertical flaps of the discharge grille to the right and left by the flap adjuster (included in the kit) in order to have a appropriate distribution of the room temperature.

Caution

When you adjust the vertical flaps to the right and left side, adjust the flaps as shown below. If you set the flaps with a sharp bend and it disturbs the air flow, it may cause the condensation of the discharge grille.



In case of "Horizontal air outlet" ...When the air discharge unit is used.

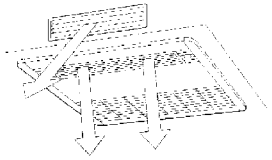


●Up/Down adjustment for cooling operation

For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Up/Down of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" refer to the operation manual of the indoor unit for "Adjustment of air direction by remote control".

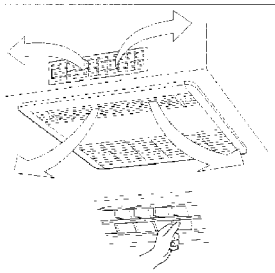
Caution

When the unit is operated for a long period of time in high humid place, it may cause the condensation on the panel. In this case , set the flaps of the discharge grille downward or swing the flaps.



●Up/Down adjustment for heating operation

For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Up/Down of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" refer to the operation manual of the indoor unit for "Adjustment of the direction of the air flow by remote controller".



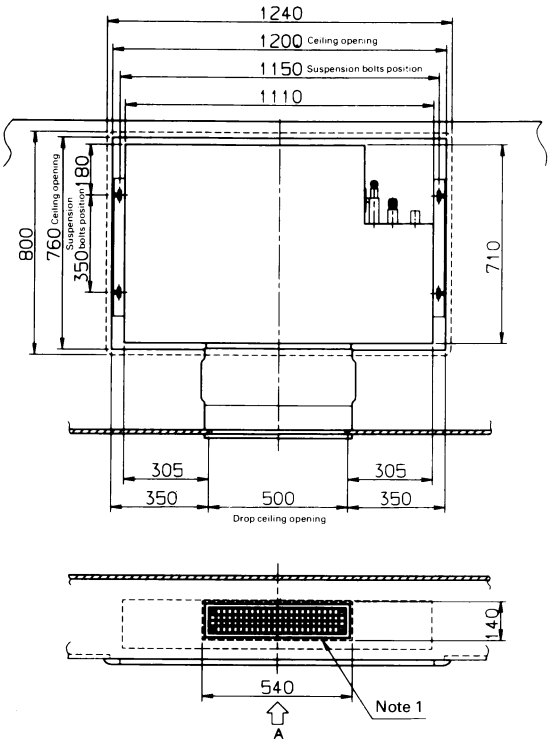
●Right/Left adjustment for heating operation

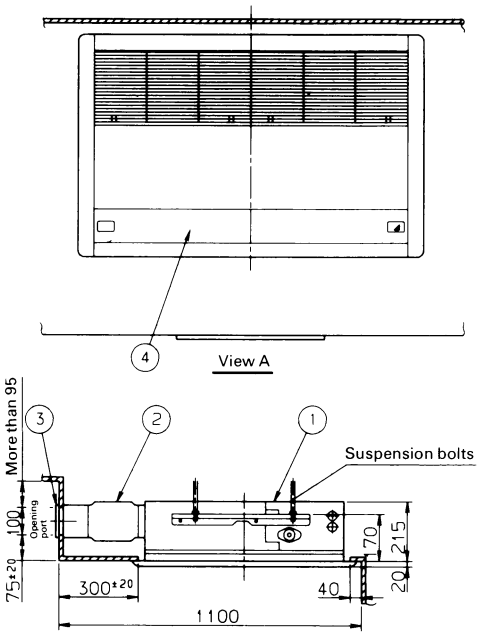
For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Right/Left of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" adjust the vertical flaps of the discharge grille to Right/Left to obtain a appropriate distribution of the room temperature.

1P167774

Air Discharge Blind Panel (KDBJ52F56W) + Discharge Grille (KDGJ52F56W) + Flexible Duct (KFDJ52FA56) + Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type (for FHYK35/45FJV1, FXKQ25/32/40MAVE, FXK25/32/40LVE)

Unit (mm)



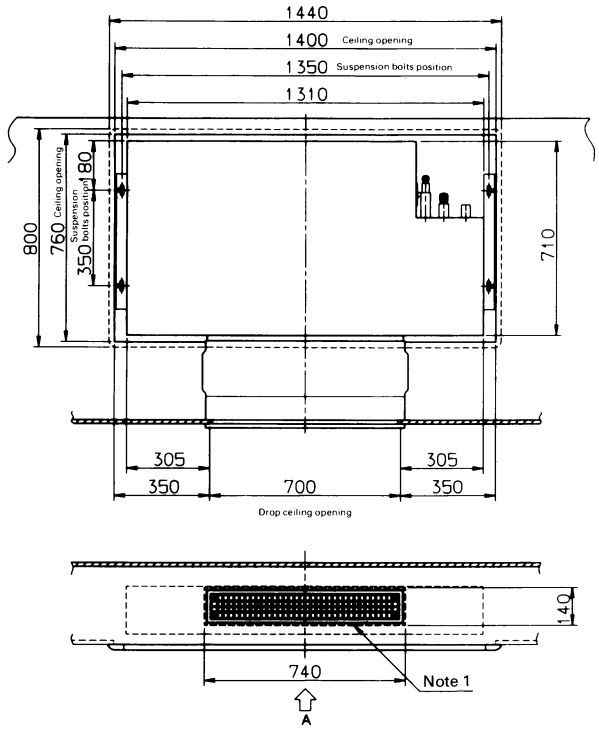


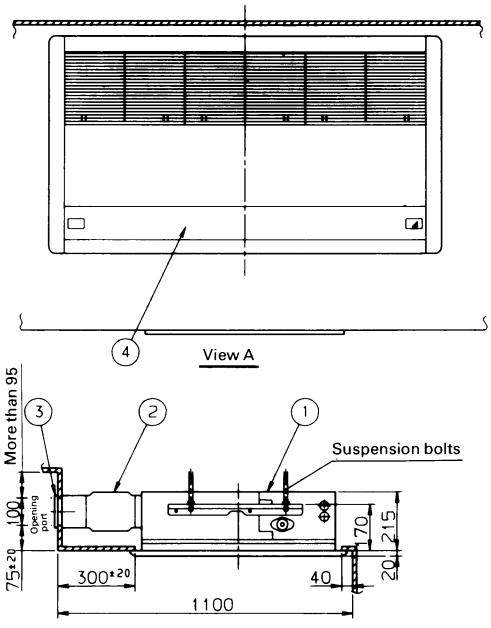
Note: 1. Do not obstruct around the drop ceiling opening.

Number	Name	Description
4	Air discharge blind panel	
3	Discharge grille	
2	Flexible duct	
1	Indoor unit	

Air Discharge Blind Panel (KDBJ52F80W) + Air Discharge Grille (KDGJ52F80W) + Flexible Duct (KFDJ52FA80) + Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type (for FHK60FV1, FHYK60/71FJV1, FXKQ63MAVE, FXK63LVE)

Unit (mm)



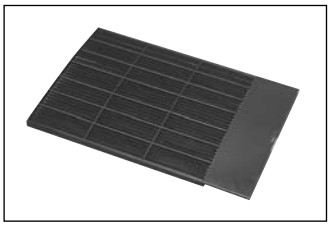


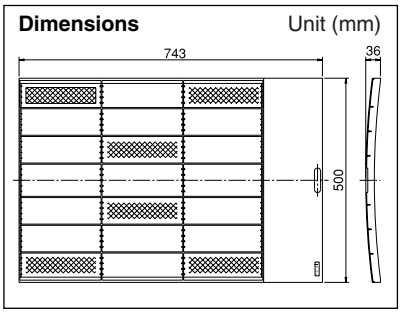
Note: 1. Do not obstruct around the drop ceiling opening.

Number	Name	Description
4	Air discharge blind panel	
3	Discharge grille	
2	Flexible duct	
1	Indoor unit	

10. FV(Y) — Floor Standing Type

10.1 KAFJ95L160 — Replacement Long-life Filter





Item	Model	KAFJ95L160
Average Efficiency	%	60 (Gravity Method)
Initial Pressure Loss	Pa	8 or less
Final Pressure Loss	Pa	49 or less
Life	h	2,500 (Dust Concentration 0.15 mg/m3)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	17.5
	l/sec	292
Materials		Mildew Proof Resin Net
Number Required Per Model		1
Weight	kg	0.4

J: D3K2438

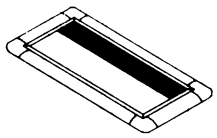
11. FH(Y)B — Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type

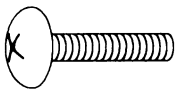
11.1 BYBS45 / 71 / 125DJW1 — Decoration Panel

Installation Manual

① Check of the parts

● The box contains this manual and the parts listed below.

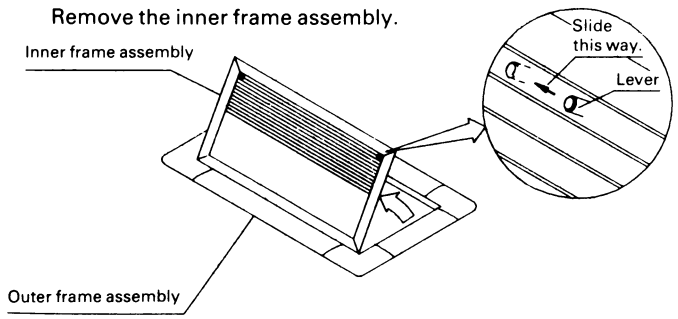
Item	Description	Quantity
Decoration panel		1 set

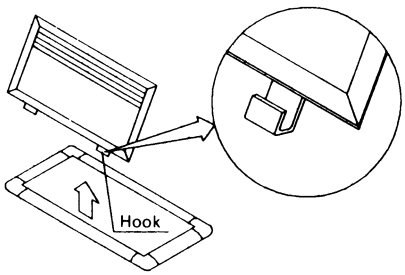
Item	Description	Quantity
Decoration panel fixing screw	 M5 × 40	4 pcs.

② Preparing the decoration panel

● Handle the suction panel with care.

<Never lean the panel against a wall, etc. nor leave it on a projecting object. (For preventions of dents or damages to the panel surface.)>





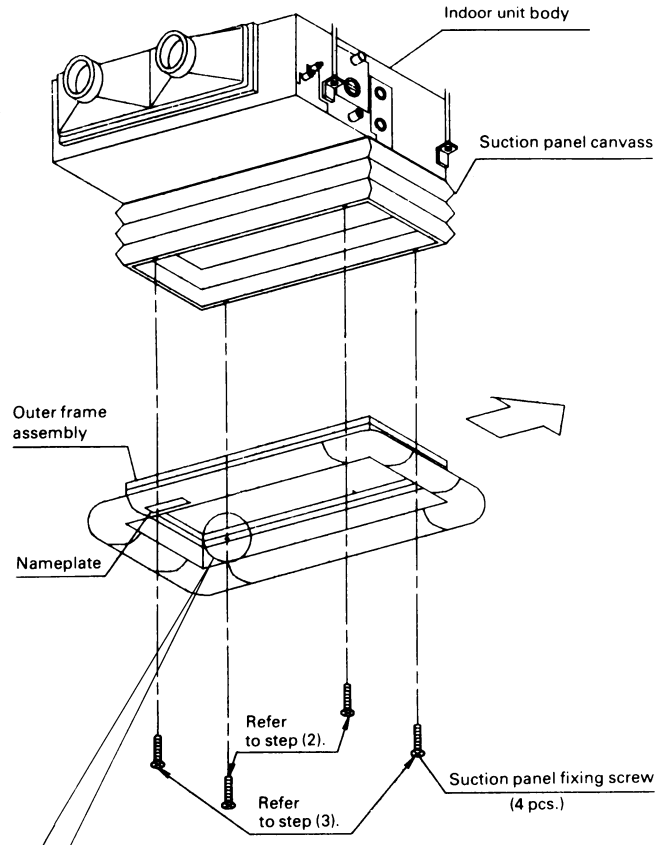
● Slide the inner frame assembly's lever and pull up the inner frame assembly.
● Unhook the inner frame assembly off the hook holes.

C: 1PA43807D

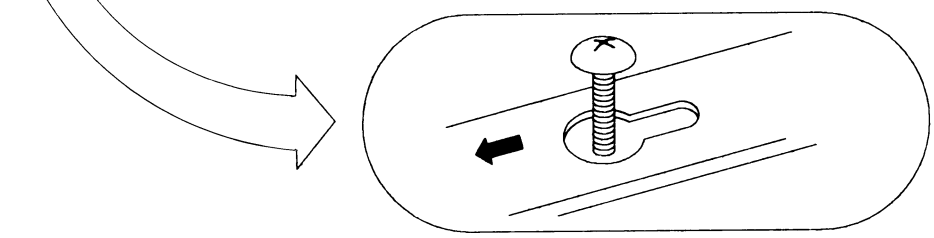
③ Installing the outer frame assembly

- This decoration panel can be installed to the air-conditioner body either directly or using a canvas for decoration panel (optional).

1. For installation using the decoration panel canvas
<Read also the instruction manual accompanying the decoration panel canvas.>

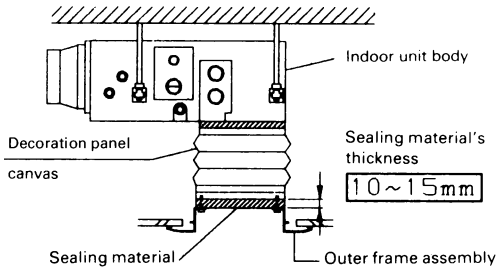


(1) Install the decoration panel canvas to the indoor unit body. (Make the tightening length of the screws about 10 mm.)
(2) Mount two suction decoration panel fixing screws to the decoration panel canvas and temporarily tighten them.
(3) Move the outer frame assembly in the direction of the arrow to rest it on the two screws temporarily.



C: 1PA43807D

(4) Mount the rest two screws to the suction panel canvass and tighten all the four screws securely until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

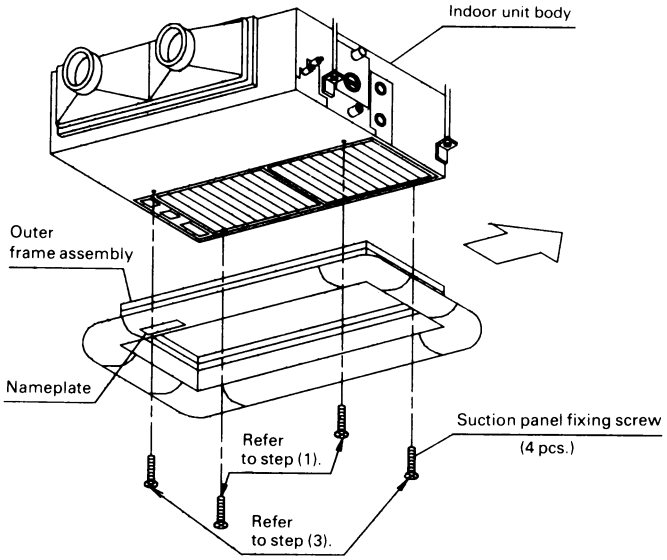


Tighten the fixing screws until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

(5) Use the chain and turnbuckle supplied for the decoration panel canvas to make no gap between the canvas and the ceiling

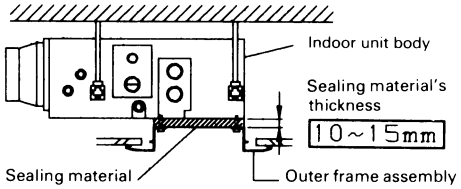
<Install the suction panel to the indoor unit body in the correct direction with the nameplate on the panel coming to the position shown in the left figure.>

2. For direct installation



(1) Mount two decoration panel fixing screws to the indoor unit body and tighten them temporarily. (Make the tightening length of the screws about 10 mm.)
(2) Move the outer frame assembly in the direction of the arrow to rest it on the two screws temporarily.
(3) Install the outer frame assembly by following the steps (3) and (4) in **"1. For installation using the decoration panel canvas"**.

Note: In case there is a gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling, adjust the height of the indoor unit. (Refer to the indoor unit installation manual.)



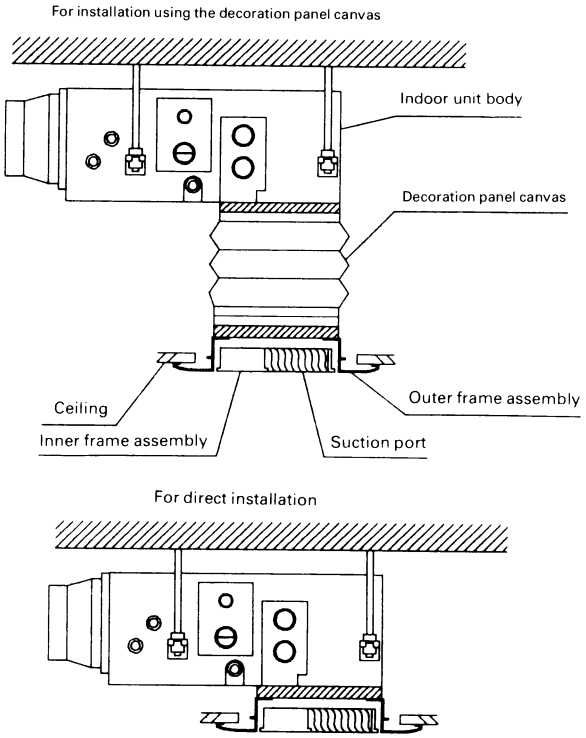
Tighten the fixing screws until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

<Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit body in the correct direction with the nameplate on the panel coming to the position shown in the left figure.>

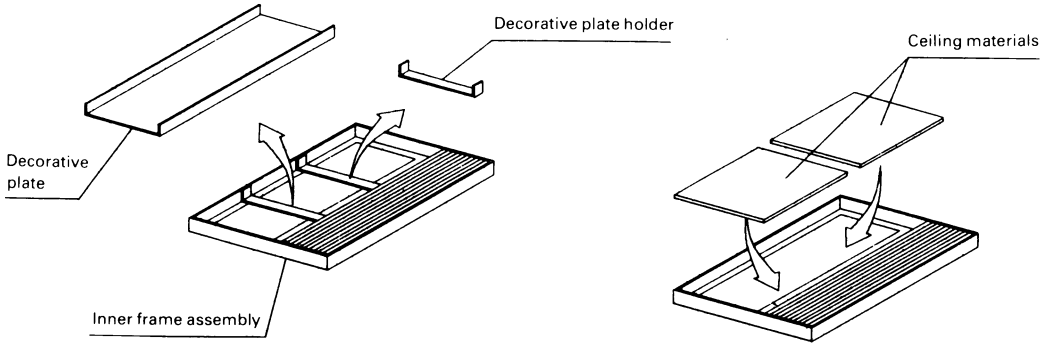
C: 1PA43807D

④ Installing the inner frame assembly

- Install the inner frame assembly to the outer frame assembly by following the reverse steps mentioned in **"2. Preparing the decoration panel"**.



<Ceiling materials can be attached to the inner frame assembly. For their installation, take the following steps.>



(1) Remove the decorative plate holder from the inner frame assembly.
(2) Remove the decorative plate and place the ceiling materials instead.
(3) Using the decorative panel holder removed in the step (1), fix the ceiling material.

Note:
Installation of the ceiling materials makes the decorative panel unnecessary. Make the ceiling materials less than 15 mm thick.

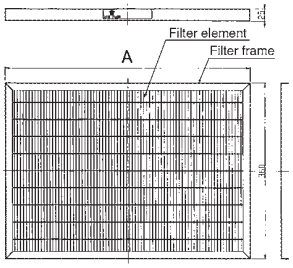
C: 1PA43807D

11.2 KAF252LA56 / 80 / 160, KAF253LA56 / 80 / 160 — High Efficiency Filter

KAF252LA56



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model		A
KAFJ252L36	KAFJ253L36	500
KAF252LA56	KAF253LA56	650
KAF252LA80	KAF253LA80	448×1 502×1
KAF252LA160	KAF253LA160	698×1 652×1

C: D3K1408B
C: D3K04917
C: D3K04916

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- Below inlet :
  The Filter Chamber (for High efficiency filter) (KAJ25L36D, KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160D) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.
- Rear inlet :
  The Filter Chamber (for High efficiency filter) (KAJ25L36B, KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160B or KDF-25A36 / 56 / 80 / 160B) is required when the high ef-ficiency Filter will be installed.

65 (colorimetric method)

Item / Model		KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
Air flow rate	(m^3/min)	9	14	19	38
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	16 or less	14 or less	14 or less	22 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	98			
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Flame-resistant type (with mildew-proof)			
Number of sheets included		1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Mass	kg	0.5	0.6	0.9	1.2

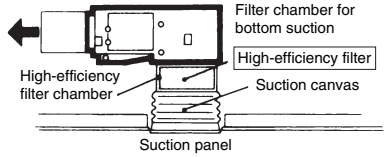
90 (colorimetric method)

Item / Model		KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Air flow rate	(m^3/min)	9	14	19	38
Average efficiency	%	90 (colorimetric method)			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	21 or less	24 or less	24 or less	34 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	98			
Life	h	1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Flame-resistant type (with mildew-proof)			
Number of sheets included		1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Mass	kg	0.5	0.6	0.9	1.2

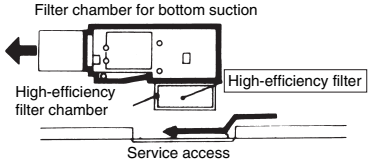
Note: The filter chamber is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Installation Manual

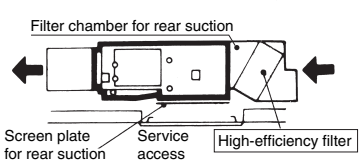
1. Cassette fan mounted / High-efficiency filter



2. Ceiling return / High efficiency filter



3. Duct fun mounted / high efficiency filter



11.3 KAFJ251K56 / 80 / 160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

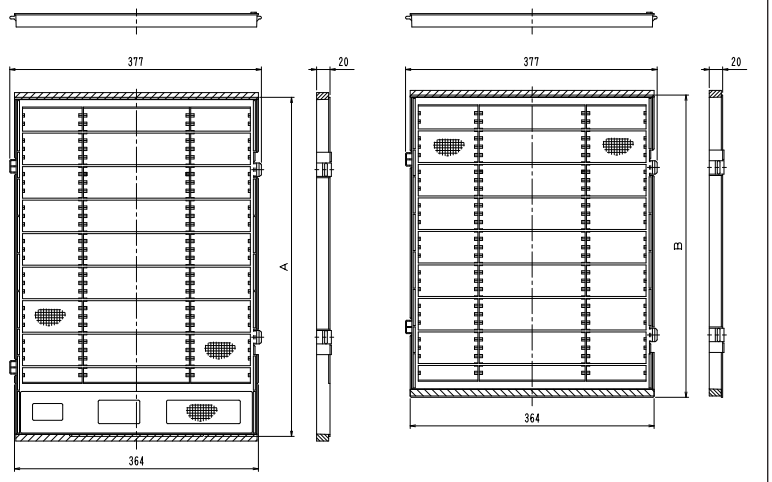
KAFJ251K80



Caution

• Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A
KAFJ251K36/80	506
KAFJ251K56/160	656

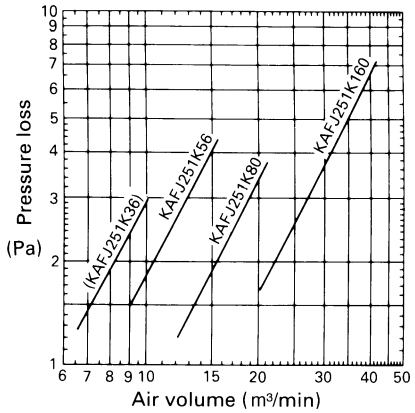
Model	B
KAFJ251K80	451
KAFJ251K160	701

JC: D3K1147B
JC: D3K1148C

Specifications

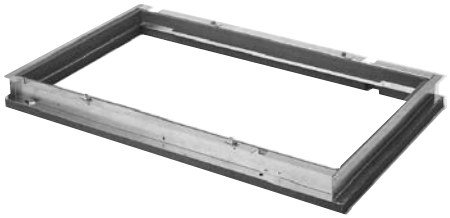
Item	Model	KAFJ251K36	KAFJ251K56	KAFJ251K80	KAFJ251K160
Average Efficiency	%	50% (Gravity method)			
Initial Pressure Loss	Pa	10			
Final Pressure Loss	Pa	49			
Materials		Mildew Proof Resin Net			
Air flow rate	m^3/min	9.5	17.5	18	38
	l/sec	158	292	300	633
Number Required per Model		1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Life Time	h	2,500 hours (dust particle concentration at 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Mass	kg	0.4	0.5	0.8	1.0

Characteristics of filter

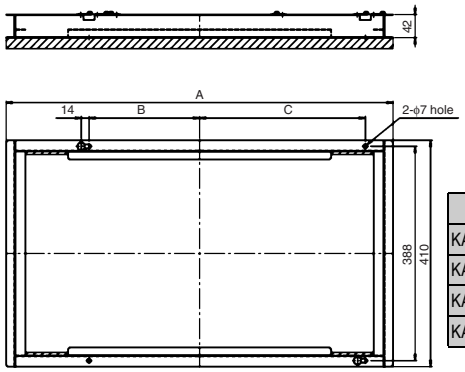


11.4 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160D — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction

KAJ25LA56D



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A	B	C	Weight
KAJ25L36D	550	125	225	2.3kg
KAJ25LA56D	700	200	300	2.8kg
KAJ25LA80D	1000	350	450	3.5kg
KAJ25LA160D	1400	550	650	4.0kg

JC: D3K1420B

- If there is not enough pitch in the drain pipe due to the attached cassette, this may be used as a spacer.
- Filter replacement is easily performed.

Item	Model	KAJ25L36D	KAJ25LA56D	KAJ25LA80D	KAJ25LA160D
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Mass kg		2.3	2.8	3.5	4.0
Component parts		Filter chamber. Panel attachment plate. Screws. Installation manual.			

Installation Manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories

Name	Quantity			
	KAJ25L36D	KAJ25L56D KAJ25LA56D	KAJ25L80D KAJ25LA80D	KAJ25L160D KAJ25LA160D
Filter chamber for bottom suction	1	1	1	1
Fixing plate for panel	4	4	4	4
Screws for fixing plate for panel	4	4	4	4
Screws	4	4	4	4
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Required tools

Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

(1) Remove the long-life filters of standard accessory from indoor unit. (Fig. 1)

(2) Installation of the bottom suction filter chamber

① Tighten two filter chamber installation screws to the indoor unit. Screw them in deep enough so that they do not fall out of place. (Leave about 30mm of thread exposed.)

② Fit the filter chamber over the screws and slide in the direction of the arrow in fig. 3, to hang the filter chamber on the indoor unit.

③ Fit the remaining two installation screws and tighten all four screws until the seal is 10~15mm thick.

(3) Attach the fixing plate for panel to the filter chamber. (Fig. 2)

(4) Fit the high efficiency filter (option) inside the filter chamber and lock in place with the filter lock. (Fig. 2)

Filter chamber for bottom suction	High efficiency filter	
	(65%)	(90%)
KAJ25L36D	KAFJ252L36	KAFJ253L36
KAJ25L56D KAJ25LA56D	KAFJ252L56 KAF252LA56	KAFJ253L56 KAF253LA56
KAJ25L80D KAJ25LA80D	KAFJ252L80 KAF252LA80	KAFJ253L80 KAF253LA80
KAJ25L160D KAJ25LA160D	KAFJ252L160 KAF252LA160	KAFJ253L160 KAF253LA160

4. Cautions for the installation

○ Install the filter chamber as explain in these instructions.

○ Install the filter chamber in the orientation shown in the right figure.

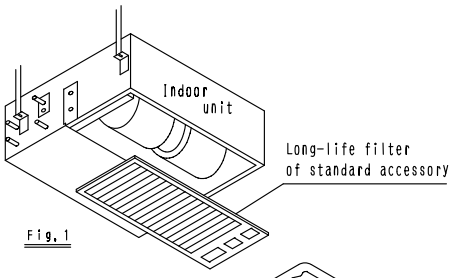


Fig. 1

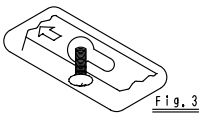


Fig. 3

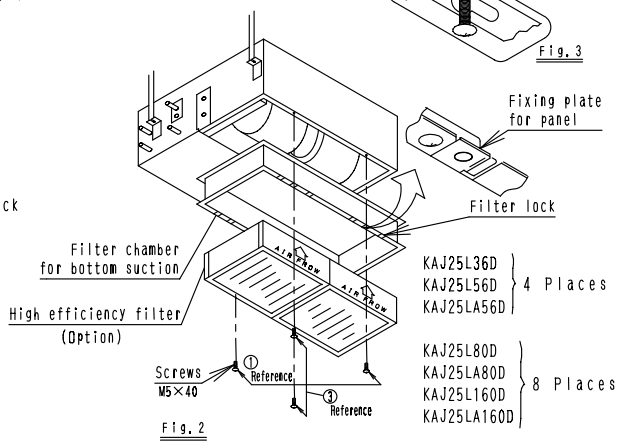


Fig. 2

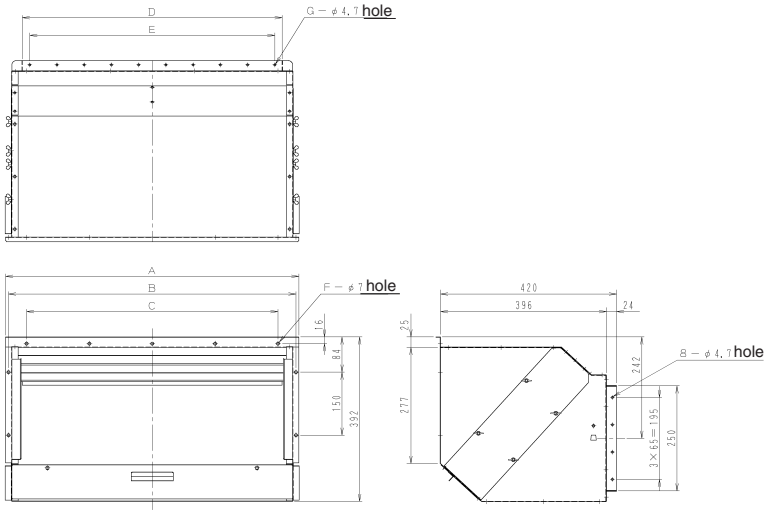
3K016915

11.5 KAJ25LA56 / 80 / 160B — Filter Chamber for Rear Suction

KAJ25LA56B



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	Weight
KAJ25L36B	550	536	3×150=450	470	6×65=390	8	14	8.0kg
KAJ25LA56B	700	686	4×150=600	620	9×65=585	9	20	10.0kg
KAJ25LA80B	1000	986	6×150=900	920	13×65=845	11	28	14.0kg
KAJ25LA160B	1400	1386	8×150=1200	1320	19×65=1235	13	40	16.0kg

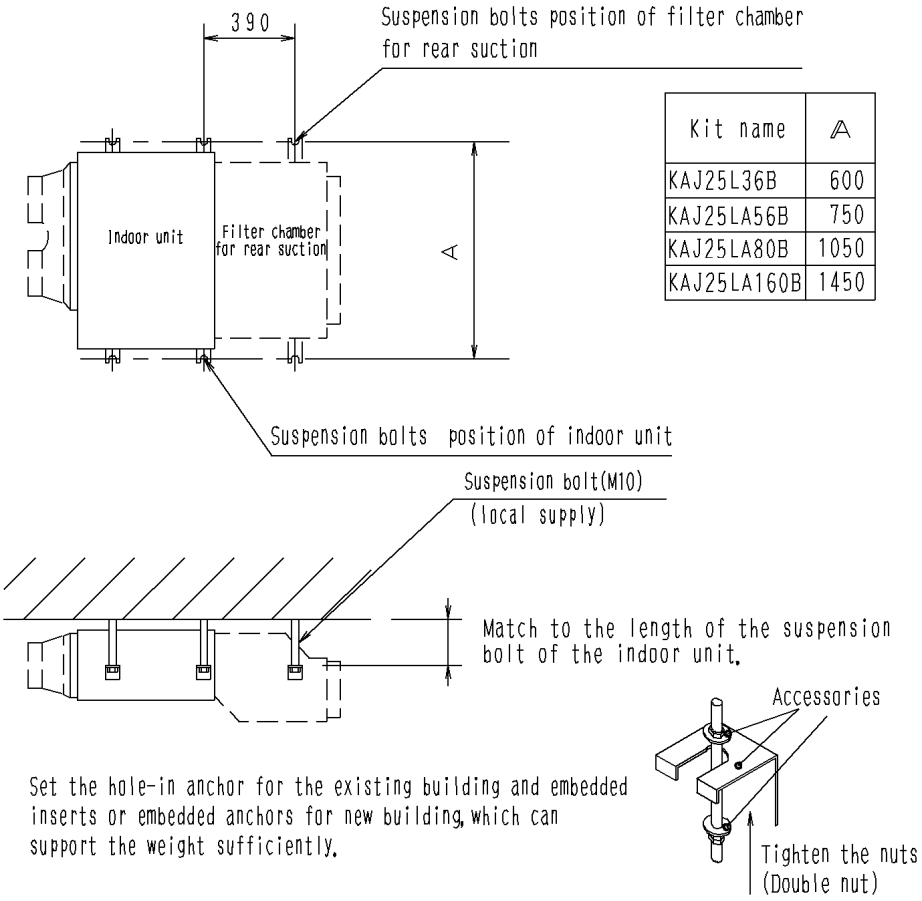
JC: D3K1419D

- May be used with either the long-life filter or high -efficiency filter.
- The suction duct can also be connected.

Item \ Model		KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
Inner dimensions of flange (mm)	Width	470	620	920	1,320
	Length	250			
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Mass	kg	8.0	10.0	14.0	16.0
Component parts		Filter chamber. Screen plate for rear suction. Washer for suspension bracket. Screws. Installation manual.			

Preparation before installation

① Set the suspension bolts in position.
(Location of the suspension bolts)



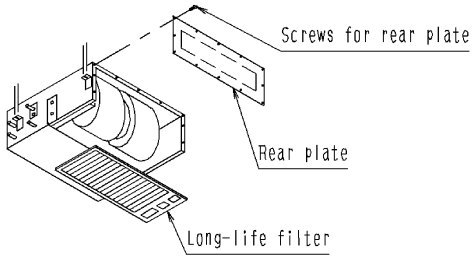
Kit name	A
KAJ25L36B	600
KAJ25LA56B	750
KAJ25LA80B	1050
KAJ25LA160B	1450

Set the hole-in anchor for the existing building and embedded inserts or embedded anchors for new building, which can support the weight sufficiently.

3K016914

Installation of filter chamber

① Remove the long-life filter and the rear plate of the indoor unit.

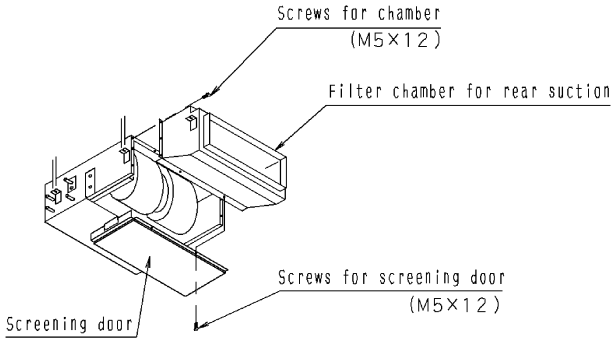


② Set the filter chamber for rear suction to the suspension bolts with nut ands the washer temporarily.

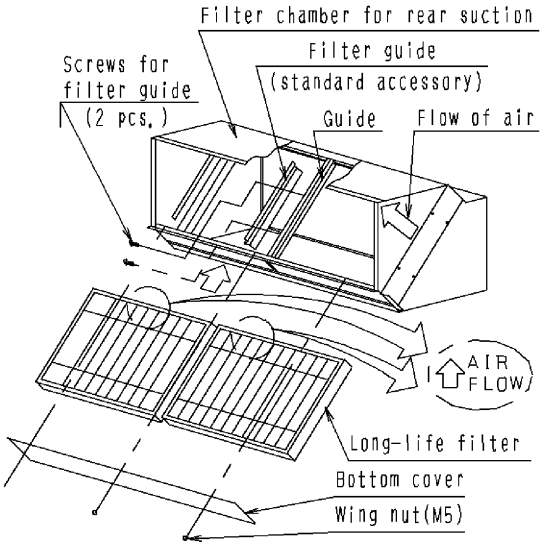
③ Fasten the filter chamber for rear suction to the indoor unit tightly.

④ Fix the filter chamber for rear suction to the suspension bolts tightly.

⑤ Install the screening door to the bottom of the indoor unit with screws.



When the long-life filter is used



(Procedure) (When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the bottom.)
(The long-life filter of standard accessory shall be used.)

(1) Remove the bottom cover.

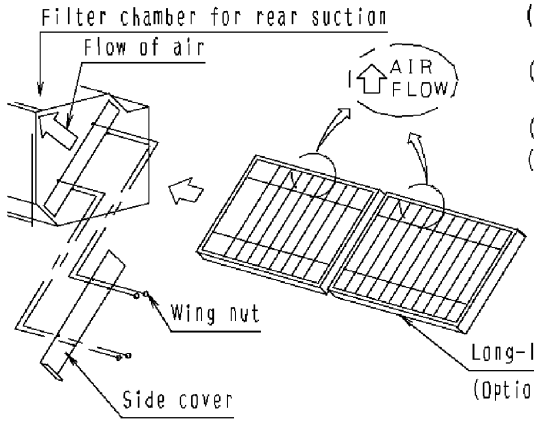
(2) Install the filter guide with 2 screws to the center of the guide of the filter chamber.
(Only for 80 and 160 model)

(3) Install the long-life filter to the rail of the leeward.

(Caution)
Match the arrow mark of the long-life filter to the flow of the air.

(4) Install the bottom cover.

3K016914

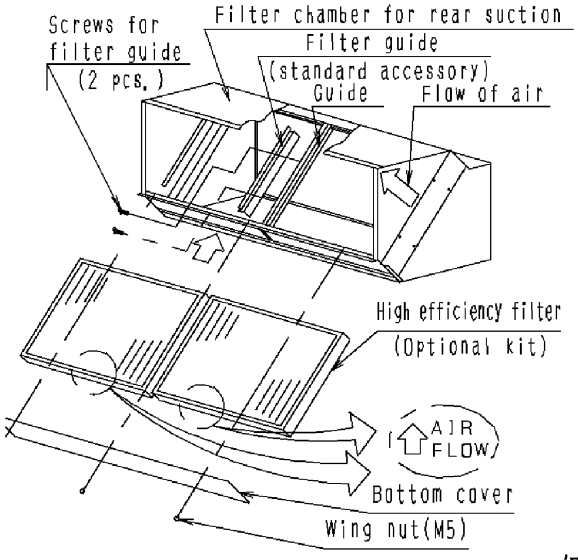


(Procedure) (When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the side.)
(Refer to the following table for the type of the long-life filter.)
(1) Remove the side cover.
(2) Install the long-life filter to the rail of the guide of the leeward.
(Caution)
Match the arrow mark of the long-life filter to the flow of the air.
(3) Install the side cover.

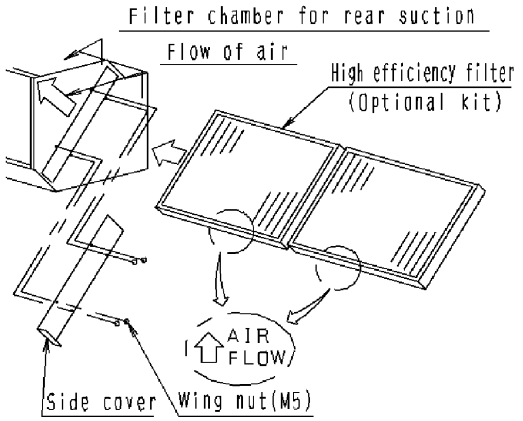
Kit name	KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
Long-life filter	Long-life filter of standard accessories shall be used.		KAFJ259L80	KAFJ259L160

When the high efficiency filter (optional kit)is used

Kit name		KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
High efficiency filter kit	65%	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90%	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160



(Procedure)
(When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the bottom.)
(1) Remove the bottom cover.
(2) Install the filter guide with 2 screws to the center of the guide of the filter chamber.
(Only for 80 snd 160 model)
(3) Install the high efficiency filter to the rail of the windward.
(Caution) Match the arrow mark of the high efficiency filter to the flow of the air.
(4) Install the bottom cover.



(Procedure)
(When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the side.)
(Refer to the following table for the type of long-life filter.)
(1) Remove the side cover.
(2) Install the high efficiency filter to the rail of the guide of the windward.
(Caution) Match the arrow mark of the high efficiency filter to the flow of the air.
(3) Install the side cover.

3K016914

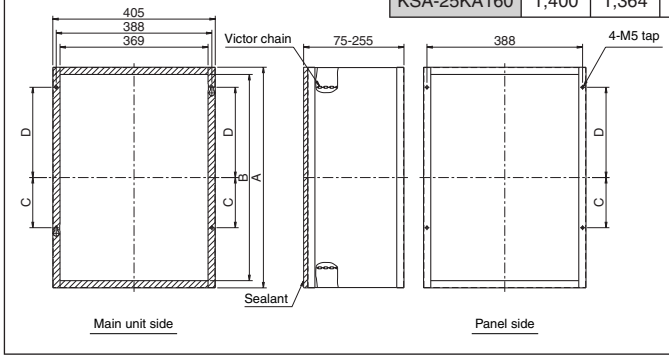
11.6 KSA-25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)

KSA-25KA80



Dimensions Unit (mm)

Model	A	B	C	D
KSA-25K36	550	514	125	225
KSA-25KA56	700	664	200	300
KSA-25KA80	1,000	964	350	450
KSA-25KA160	1,400	1,364	550	650



JC: D3K2753A

- Can be attached so that there is no gap in the ceiling using the included turn buckle.

Item \ Model	KSA-25K36	KSA-25KA56	KSA-25KA80	KSA-25KA160
Canvas duct	Flame retardant			
Mass kg	1.8	2.2	2.8	3.6
Component parts	Air suction canvas. Turn buckle. Mounting screw. Adjustment plate. Installation manual.			
Decoration panel	BYBS32DJW1	BYBS45DJW1	BYBS71DJW1	BYBS125DJW1

Installation Manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KSA-25K36	KSA-25K56 KSA-25KA56	KSA-25K80 KSA-25KA80	KSA-25K160 KSA-25KA160
Air suction canvas	1	1	1	1
Turnbuckle	4	4	4	4
Screws for air suction canvas	4	4	4	4
Adjuster plate	4	4	4	4
Screws for adjuster plate	4	4	4	4
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Require tools

Screwdriver ⊕, Nippers

3. Operation procedures

(1) Install the air suction canvas

① Tighten two screws for air suction canvas to the indoor unit. (Leave about 30mm of thread exposed.)

② Fit the air suction canvas over the screws and slide the direction of the arrow in Fig2. to hang the air suction canvas on the indoor unit.

③ Fit the remaining two screws and tighten all four screws until the seal is about 5mm thick.

(2) Adjust the air suction canvas

① Attach the suction panel. For details, see the installation manual provided with the suction panel.

[To use the turnbuckle]

• The canvas duct can be adjusted in the 115~255mm range. [See Fig. 4]

a. Attach the turnbuckles to the canvas duct and hook the turnbuckles to the chain at a point that closes the gap between the ceiling surface and the suction panel. (Fig. 4)(Before attaching the turnbuckles, lengthen the screws. Attach them with the groove facing upwards.)[Fig. 3]

b. Turn the turnbuckles clockwise until the gap between the ceiling surface and the suction panel closes tightly. Cut any extra chain with the nippers.

[To use the adjuster plate](Only for the decoration panel)

• The canvas duct can be adjusted in the 75~115mm range. [See Fig. 7]

• The adjuster plate cannot be used with electric precipitator or high efficiency filters.

a. Remove the chain and put the four screws back in the same holes. Tighten also the four screws for adjuster plate to the indoor unit. [Fig. 5]

b. Hook one adjuster plate on each of the 4 sets of screws tightened in step a. [Fig. 6](Orient the adjuster plater as shown in Fig. 7.)

c. Slightly raise the decoration panel and turn the adjuster plate until the gap between ceiling surface and the decoration panel closes. Make sure the cut-out on each of the adjuster plates locks onto the bottom screw. [Fig. 7]

d. Tighten all screws definitively.

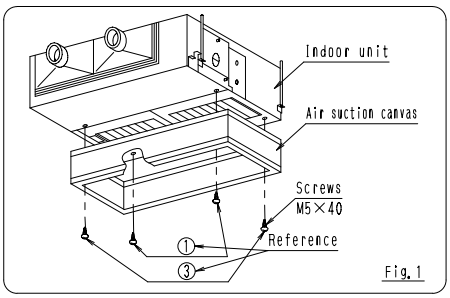
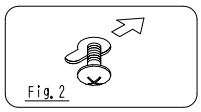
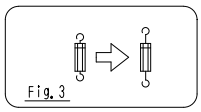


Fig. 1


Fig. 2


Fig. 3

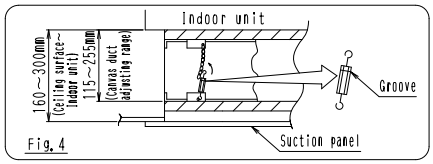


Fig. 4

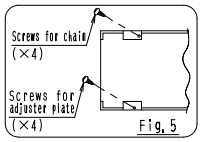


Fig. 5

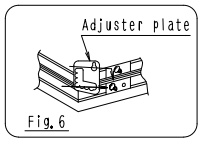


Fig. 6

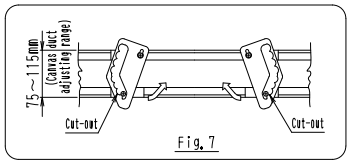


Fig. 7

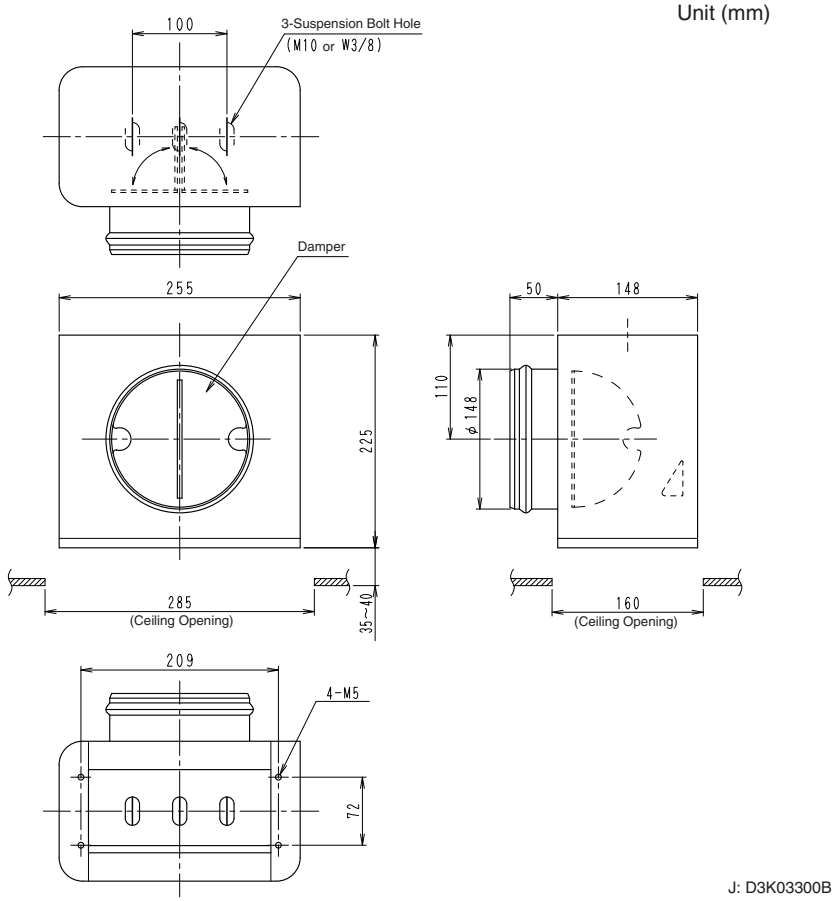
3K07978A

11.7 K-DGC4 / 5 / 7 / 9D — Discharge Chamber

Dimensions

K-DGC4D

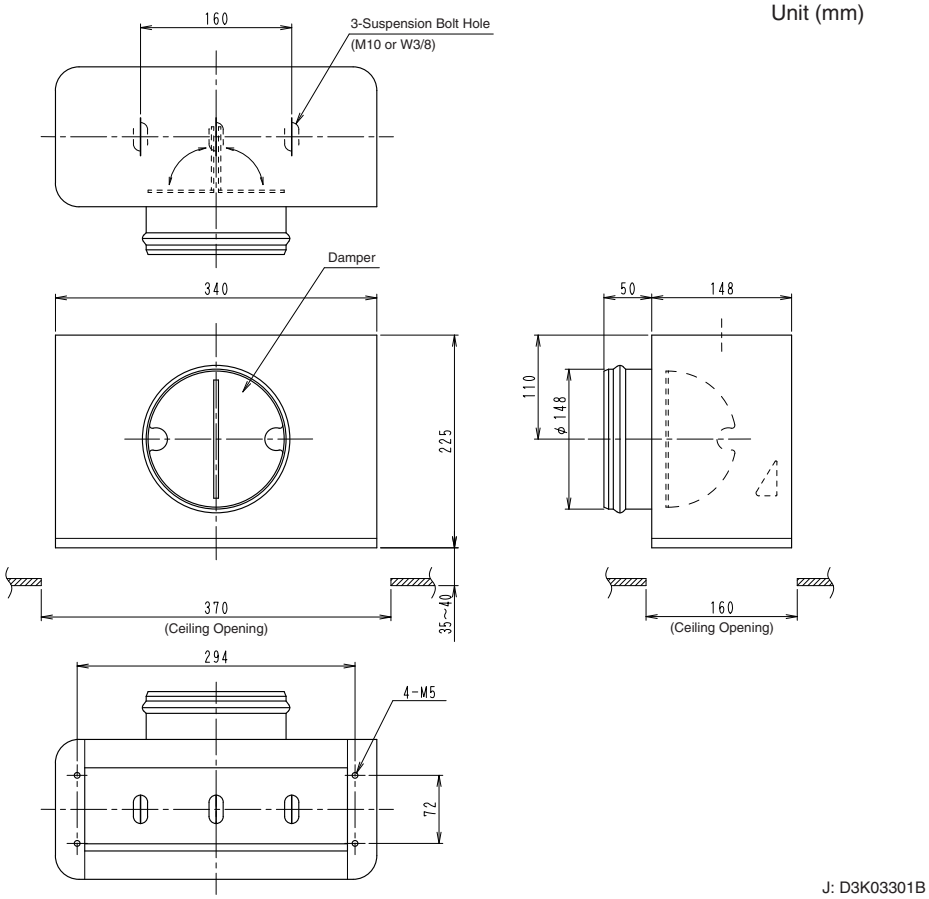
Unit (mm)



J: D3K03300B

K-DGC5D

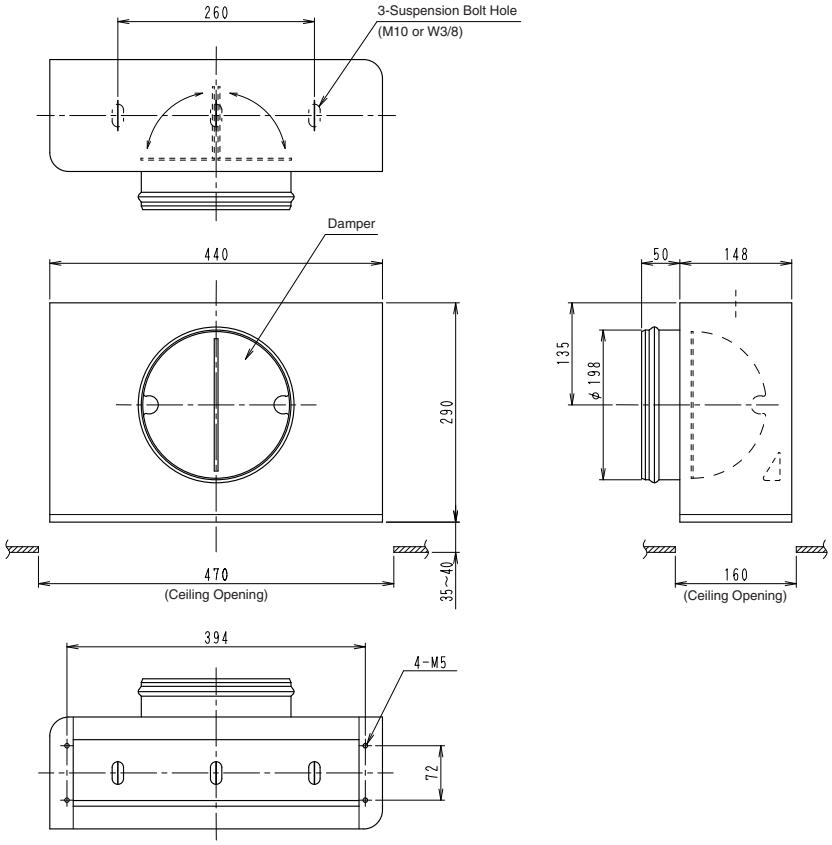
Unit (mm)



J: D3K03301B

K-DGC7D

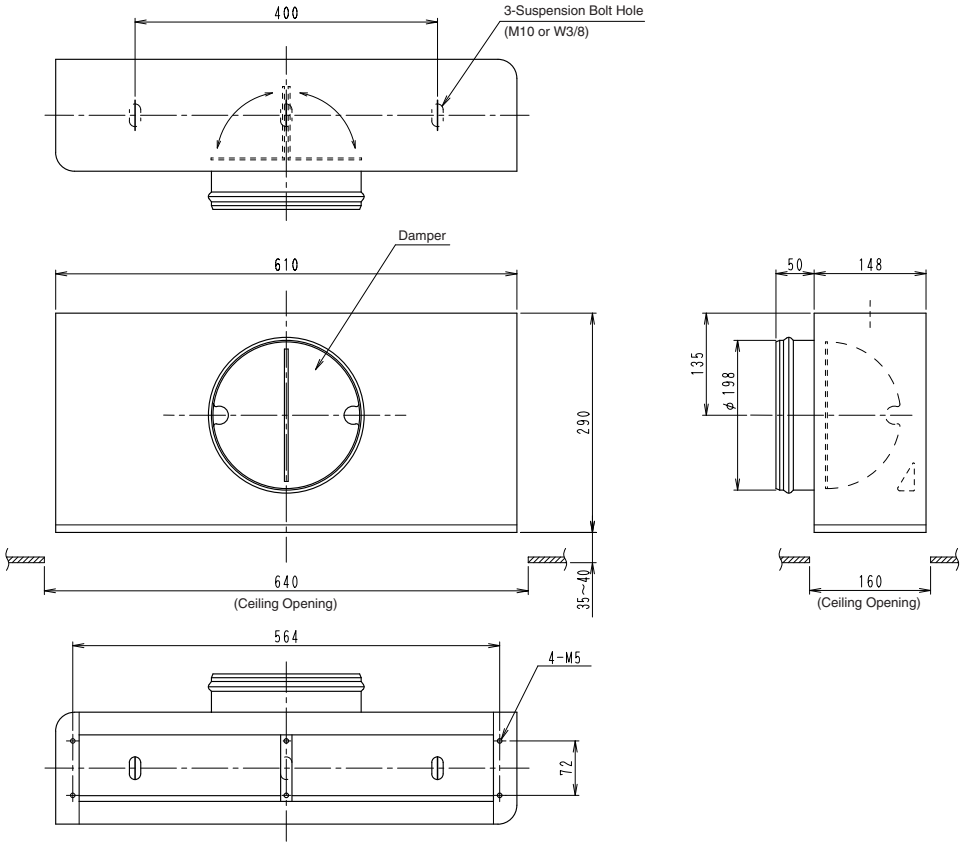
Unit (mm)



J: D3K03302B

K-DGC9D

Unit (mm)



J: D3K03303C

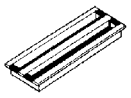
Installation Manual

⚠CAUTION Read the followings before installation.

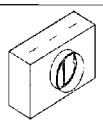
- When installing, place the unit where it withstands its weight. If the strength is not enough, the unit may fall and cause an accident.
- Install the grille properly. Otherwise, it may fall off and cause an accident.
- Do not install near the entrance of the room. Condensate may be produced around the air outlet
- Do not install near the wall. Condensate may be produced on the wall during the cooling operation.
- Do not install the product in locations where it may be exposed to mineral oil or in locations such as kitchens where it may be exposed to oil or steam dispersal. Doing so may result in degradation of plastic parts, causing parts to fall or water leakage.

Components

Line Type Discharge Grille

Name	Line Type Discharge Grille	Installation Manual
Shape		
Quantity	1	1

Discharge Chamber

Name	Discharge Chamber	Wing Nut	Washer	Insulation Pipe Cover	Installation Manual
Shape					
Quantity	1	1	2	1	1

Fixing screw for Line Type Discharge Grille is attached to the Line Type Discharge Grille.

- Line Type Discharge Unit is composed of Discharge Chamber and Line Type Discharge Grille.

Select one from the Table 1

Discharge Unit	Discharge Chamber	Discharge Grille White
K-DGC4EW	K-DGC4D	K-DG4DW
K-DGC5EW	K-DGC5D	K-DG5DW
K-DGC7EW	K-DGC7D	K-DG7DW
K-DGC9EW	K-DGC9D	K-DG9DW

[Table 1]

- Discharge Chamber is shipped apart from Discharge Grille.

CAUTION

Tighten the fixing screw for discharge grille without leaving any space between the grille and the chamber.
Otherwise, it may cause air leak or condensation.

① Selection of Location

Get approval from the customer where to install the unit in accordance with the following conditions:

- Where the ceiling withstands weight of discharge chamber.
- Where the cool (warm) distributes uniformly into the room.

② Installation of Discharge Unit

(1) Drill through the ceiling. Mount the suspension bolt (M10 or W3 / 8) for Line type discharge chamber on the ceiling.

1. Select the suspension type either 1 bolt suspension or 2 bolts suspension. (Fig.1)
2. In case of 2 bolts suspension, use the attached washer of the discharge chamber. (Nut is field supplied.)
3. Wrap the attached insulation pipe cover around the suspension bolt. In case of 2 bolts suspension, divide the insulation pipe cover into two.

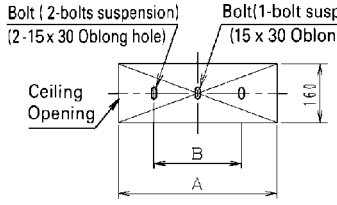


Fig.1

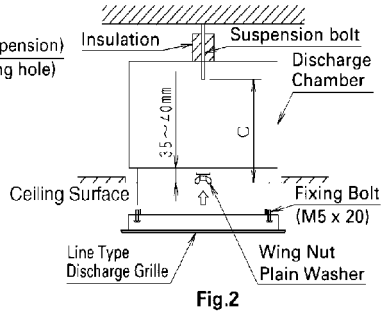


Fig.2

Discharge Unit	Discharge Chamber	A	B	C
K-DGC4EW	K-DGC4D	285	100	215
K-DGC5EW	K-DGC5D	370	160	215
K-DGC7EW	K-DGC7D	470	260	280
K-DGC9EW	K-DGC9D	640	400	280

[Table 2]

(2) Installation of Line Type Discharge Unit

1. Installation of Discharge Chamber (Fig. 2)
   Pass through the suspension bolt into the suspension hole of the discharge chamber.
   Adjust the bottom surface of the chamber to 35 - 40 mm above the ceiling surface with washer (accessories) and wing nut (accessories).
2. Installation of Line Type Discharge Grille (Fig.2)
   Install the discharge grille to discharge chamber with the attached 4 or 6 (6 screws in case of K-DGC9EW) screws (M5 x 20).
3. In case of K-DGC9EW, adjust horizontally the discharge grille with 2 center screws.

J: 3K015052E

⚠Caution When the center of the central stay is pressed for cleaning the discharge grille or other purposes, the fixed parts at both ends are likely to come off. Be careful for such parts not to come off.

(3) Control of clearance between the ceiling surface and Line Type Discharge Grille
Readjust the height of the discharge chamber, when there is any clearance between the ceiling surface and the discharge grille.

1. Take off the center stay of the discharge grille.
   Pull the both edges slightly downwards. (Fig. 3,4)
2. Put your hand inside the discharge chamber and tighten the wing nut to control the height. (Fig. 5)
3. Put the center stay back.
   Push the both edges slightly upwards to fix it. (Fig. 6)

(4) Air Volume Control

1. Take off the center stay of the discharge grille. (Fig.3,4)
   Pull the both edges. (Fig.3,4)
2. Put your hand inside the chamber, and change the angle of the control board, to control air volume. (Fig.7)
3. Put the center stay back. (Fig.6)

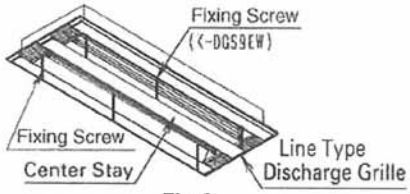
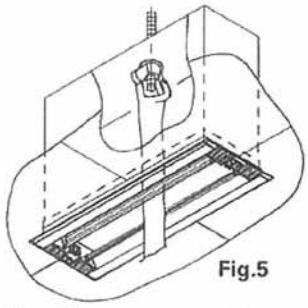


Fig.3


Fig.5

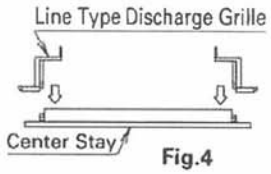


Fig.4

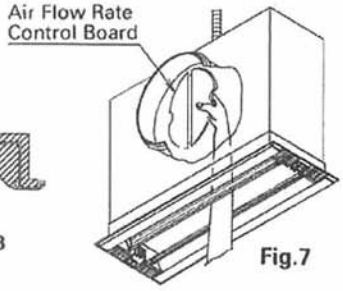
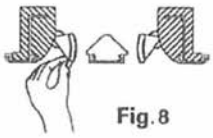


Fig.7


Fig.6


Fig.8

(5) Air Direction Control
Change the horizontal blade of the discharge grille manually to control air direction. (Fig. 8)

Installation from the ceiling opening

1. Take off the duct connection flange out of the discharge chamber. (Fig. 9)
2. Install the discharge chamber.
3. Take the duct connection flange back out of the discharge chamber inside. (Fig. 9,10)
4. Incline the discharge chamber to attach the flexible duct. (Fig. 11)

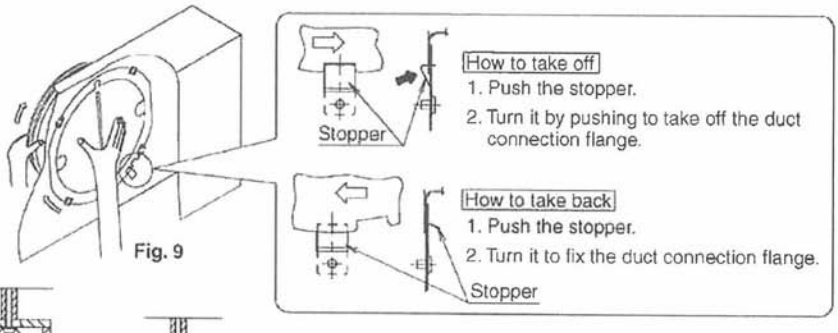
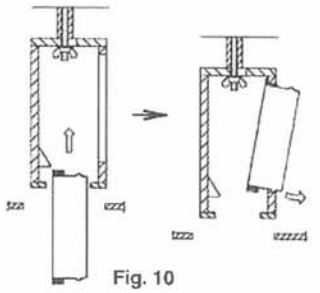


Fig. 9


Fig. 10

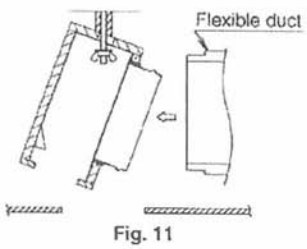
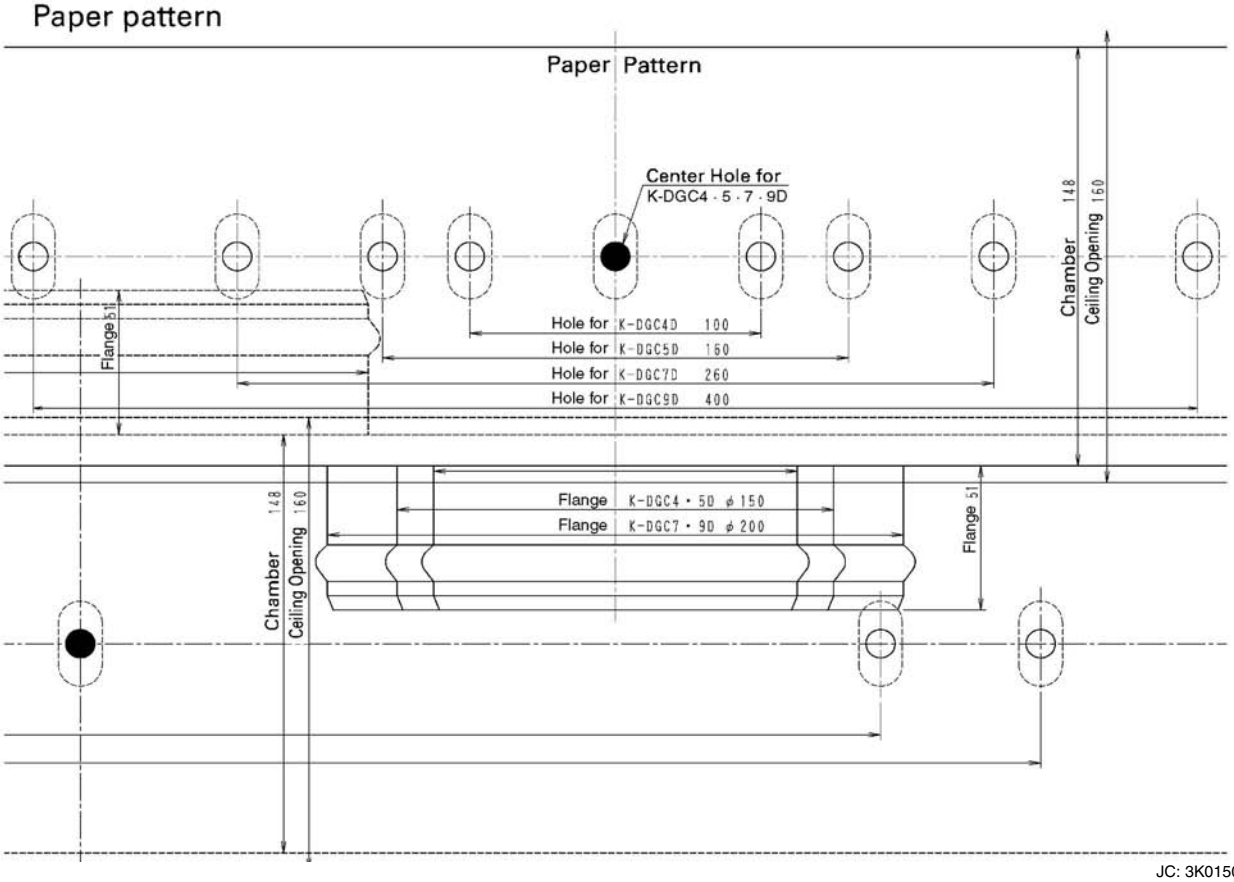


Fig. 11

JC: 3K015052E

- **Rear side of installation manual**
  Paper pattern



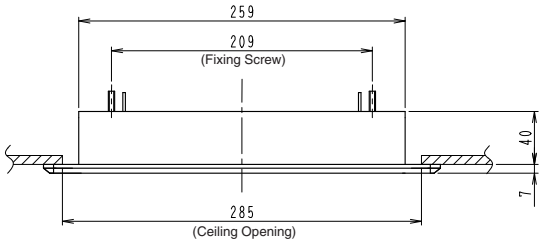
JC: 3K015053

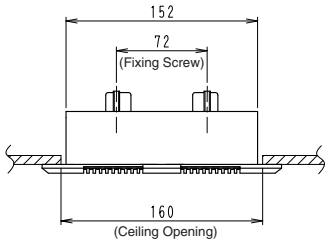
11.8 K-DG4 / 5 / 7 / 9DW — Discharge Grille

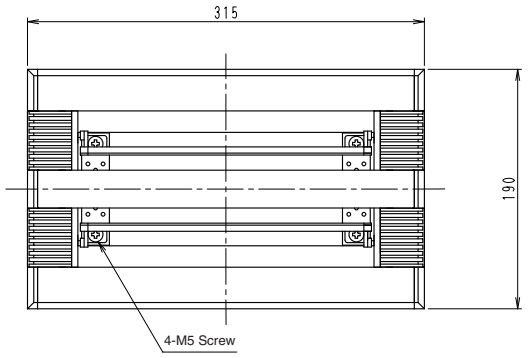
Dimensions

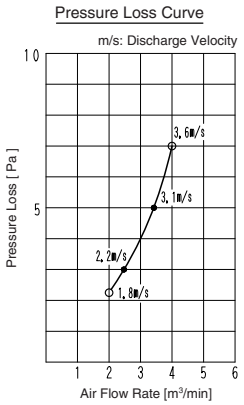
K-DG4DW

Unit (mm)





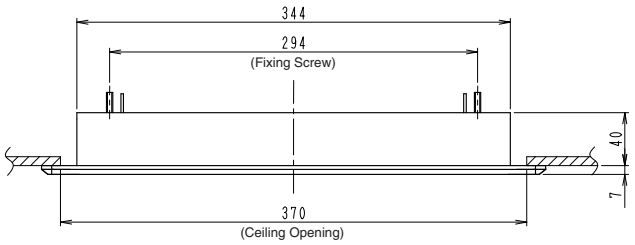


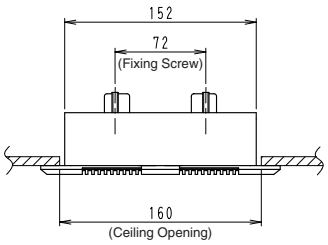


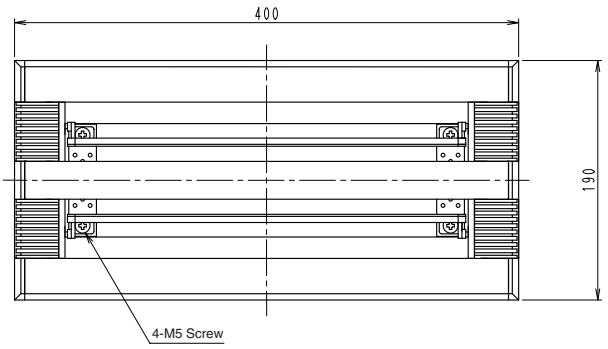
J: D3K03306A

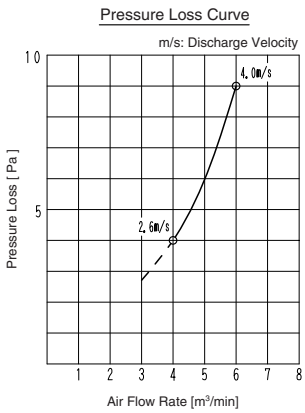
K-DG5DW

Unit (mm)





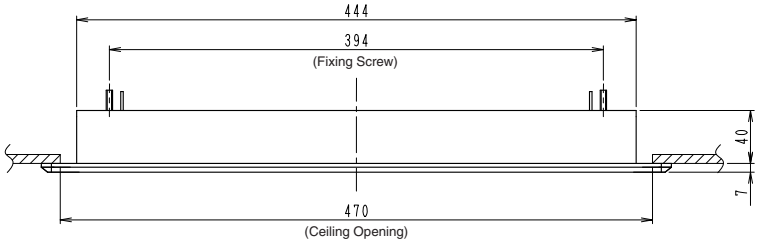


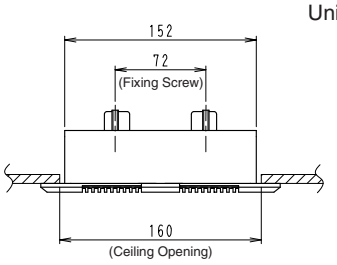


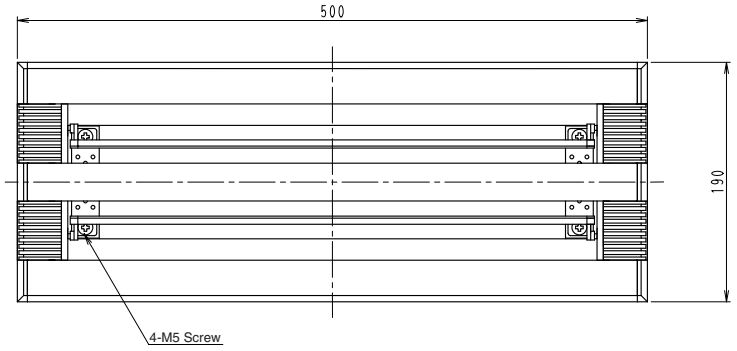
J: D3K03307A

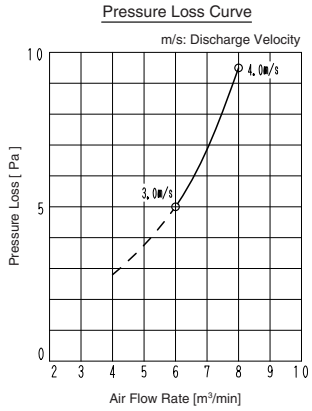
K-DG7DW

Unit (mm)





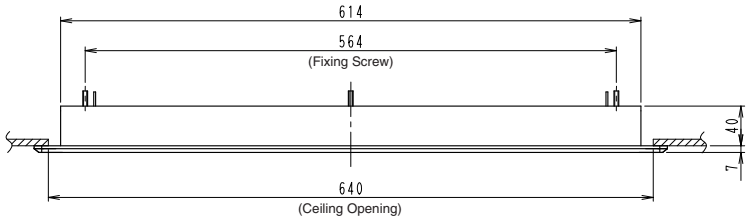


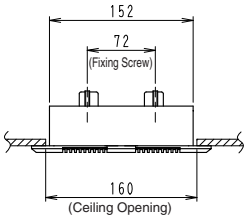


J: D3K03308A

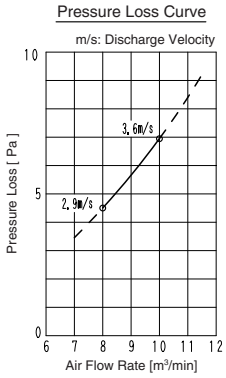
K-DG9DW

Unit (mm)









J: D3K03309B

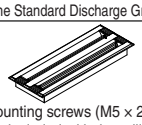
Installation Manual

● This manual should be thoroughly read before proceeding with installation.

⚠Caution Installation work should only be performed after these "Safety Precautions" have been thoroughly read.

- Installation should be carried out in a location capable of bearing the necessary weight. Attempting installation in locations with insufficient weight tolerance may result in injuries caused by objects falling or toppling.
- Be sure to mount the grill securely. Failure to do so may result in injuries caused by objects falling or toppling.
- Do not install the product above room entrances or exits. Doing so may result in condensation forming at air discharge points.
- Do not install the product near walls. Doing so may results in condensation forming on walls during cooling operation.
- Do not install the product in locations where it may be exposed to mineral oil or in locations such as kitchens where it may be exposed to oil or steam dispersal. Doing so may result in degradation of plastic parts, causing parts to fall or water leakage.

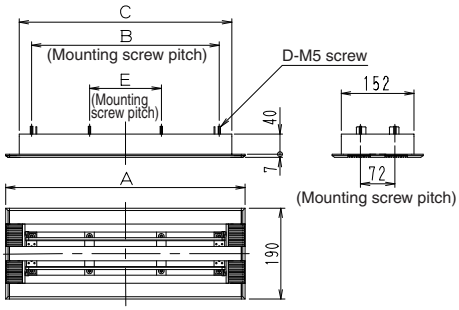
Parts Check the following parts.

Name	Line Standard Discharge Grill	Installation Manual
Shape	 Mounting screws (M5 × 20) are included with the grill.	
Quantity	1PC	1PC

Caution

Refer to the Discharge Chamber Installation Manual for details of connection of K-DGC4~9D to the Discharge Chamber.

External Dimensions



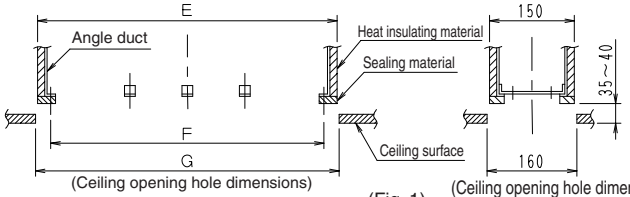
Discharge Grill	A	B	C	D	E
K-DG4DW	315	209	259	4	—
K-DG5DW	400	294	344	4	—
K-DG7DW	500	394	444	4	—
K-DG9DW	670	2X282=564	614	6	—

1 Selecting the Installation Location

An installation location that conforms to the following parameters should be selected with the approval of the customer.
- Location with the strength to tolerate the weight of the line standard discharge grill and the angle duct.
- Location from which cool (warm) air will spread throughout the entire room

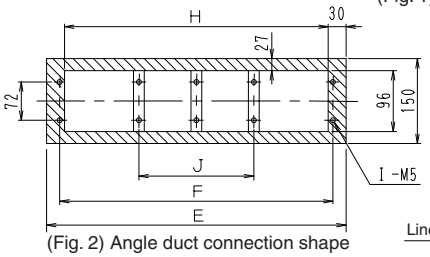
2 To mount the Discharge Grill in the Angle Duct

(1) Open the ceiling opening hole.

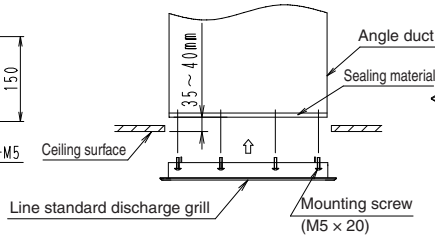


(Fig. 1)

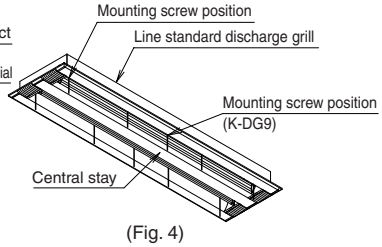
Discharge Grill	E	F	G	H	I	J
K-DG4DW	255	209	285	195	4	—
K-DG5DW	340	294	370	280	4	—
K-DG7DW	440	394	470	380	4	—
K-DG9DW	610	2X282=564	640	550	6	—



(Fig. 2) Angle duct connection shape



(Fig. 3)



(Fig. 4)

(2) Angle Duct Installation

Adjust the angle duct so that it is positioned 35 - 40 mm from the ceiling surface. (Figs. 1 & 2)

(3) Line Standard Discharge Grill Installation

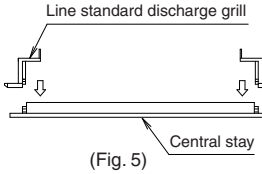
1. Mount the angle duct using the 4 or 6 screws (6 screws for K-DG9DW) provided with the line standard discharge grill. (Fig. 3)
2. Adjust discharge grill so that it is horizontal using the 2 central screws for K-DG9DW. (Fig. 4)

(4) Adjusting the Space between the Ceiling and the Line Standard Discharge Grill

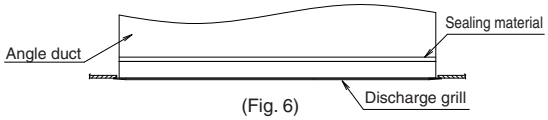
Readjust the angle duct height if there is a space between the ceiling and the line standard discharge grill.

1. Remove the central stay from the line standard discharge grill. Gently pull down both ends. (Figs. 4 & 5)
2. Insert the hand into the angle duct and check the space between the duct and the seal surface. (Fig. 6)
3. Install the central stay of the line standard discharge grill. (Fig. 7) Press the both ends upward lightly to fix the stay.

⚠Caution When the center of the central stay is pressed for cleaning the discharge grille or other purposes, the fixed parts at both ends are likely to come off. Be careful for such parts not to come off.



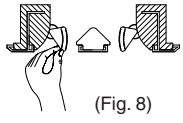
(Fig. 5)



(Fig. 6)



(Fig. 7)



(Fig. 8)

(5) Adjusting the Airflow Direction

Manually move the horizontal blades inside the line standard discharge grill to adjust the airflow direction. (Fig. 8)

⚠Caution Uneven airflow distribution in the angle duct may result in the formation of condensation. Make adjustments to ensure that the airflow is evenly distributed.

JC: 3K012645E

11.9 K-FDS151 / 152 / 153 / 154 / 155 / 156D, K-FDS201 / 202 / 203 / 204 / 205 / 206D — Flexible Duct

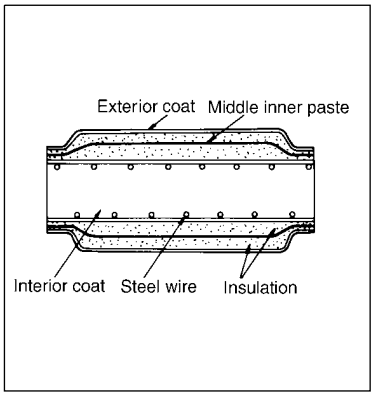


● Specification

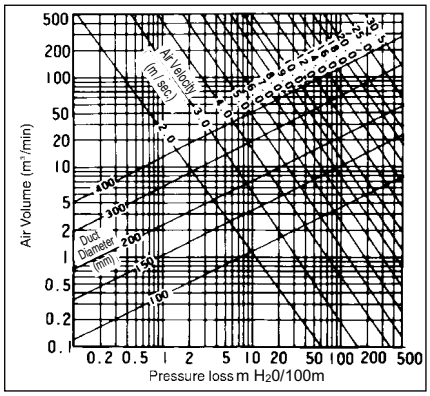
Item \ Model	K–FDS151D(1m) K–FDS152D(2m) K–FDS153D(3m) K–FDS154D(4m) K–FDS155D(5m) K–FDS156D(6m)	K–FDS201D(1m) K–FDS202D(2m) K–FDS203D(3m) K–FDS204D(4m) K–FDS205D(5m) K–FDS206D(6m)
Maximum Outer Dimension	ϕ208	ϕ258
Fitting Port Size	ϕ155 (Inner Dimension)	ϕ205 (Inner Dimension)
Operating Temperature Range	–5~+75°C	

J: D3K04304B

● Structure



● Pressure loss of Flexible Duct



Name	① Flexible Duct	② Easy Clamp	③ Insulation	④ Adhesive tape (width 50 mm × 9.14 m)
QTY	1	2	2	1

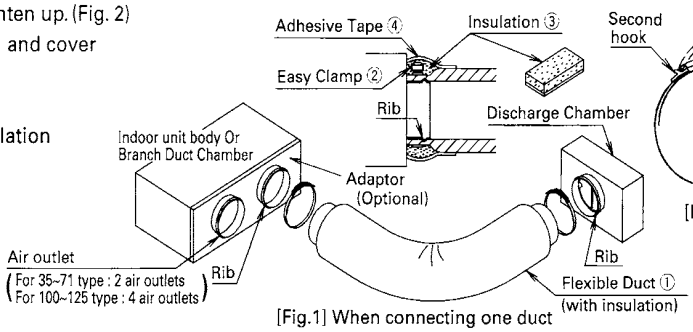
② Installation Procedures (Adaptor for discharge (Optional) is required for this kit.)

1. When connecting one Flexible Duct

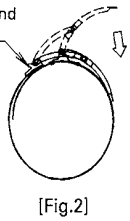
(1) Cover the connection of Indoor unit body and discharge chamber with Flexible duct ① as shown Fig. 1.
Tighten each connecting portion with Easy Clamp ② In case the adaptor is supplied at field, use it with rib) . When the clamp is loose, use second hook of clamp to tighten up. (Fig. 2)

(2) Remove the release paper of insulation and cover each clamp with insulation ③.
Adhesive surface to be inside. (Fig.1)

(3) Wrap adhesive tape ④ around the insulation so that the insulation will not come off. (Fig.1)



[Fig.1] When connecting one duct

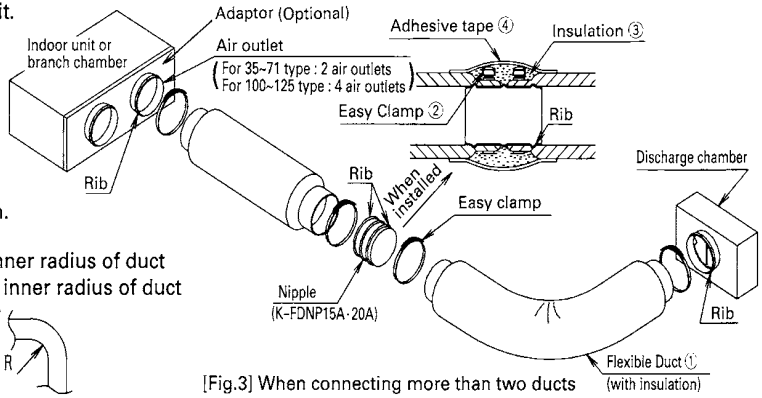


[Fig.2]

2. When connecting more than two Flexible Ducts

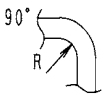
(1) For connecting to indoor unit and discharge chamber, refer to the above procedure 1.

(2) For connecting to duct, use nipple with rib and connect in accordance with the above procedure. Never cut the insulation. Two pieces of insulation are enclosed in this kit.



[Fig.3] When connecting more than two ducts

[Note] Minimum bending radius 90° of Min. bending radius to be as follows:
For K–FDS151D~156D: 1 times of inner radius of duct
For K–FDS201D~206D: 1.5 times of inner radius of duct



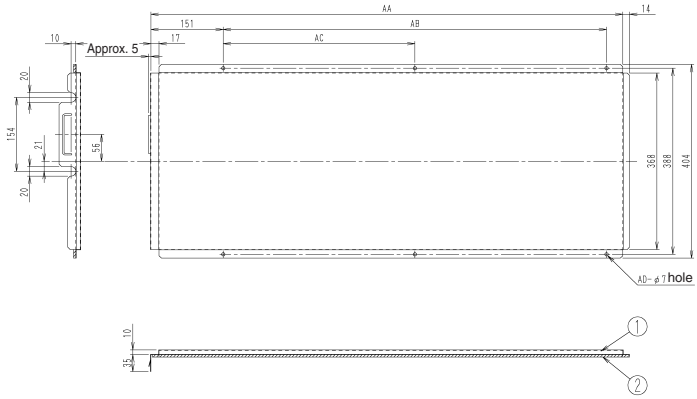
11.10 KBBJ25KA56 / 80 / 160 — Screening Door

KBBJ25K36



• Screens the bottom intake vent.

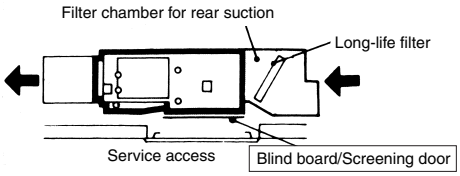
Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	AA	AB	AC	AD
KBBJ25K36	535	350	–	4
KBBJ25KA56	685	500	–	4
KBBJ25KA80	985	800	400	6
KBBJ25KA160	1385	1200	800	6

JC: D3K1156C

Example of installation



Item \ Model		KBBJ25K36	KBBJ25KA56	KBBJ25KA80	KBBJ25KA160
Appearance		Galvanized steel plate			
Mass	kg	1.8	2.2	3.2	4.4
Component parts		Blind board/Screening door. Screws. Installation manual.			

Installation Manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories

Name	Quantity			
	KBBJ25K36	KBBJ25K56	KBBJ25K80	KBBJ25K160
	KBB25B32	KBBJ25KA56	KBBJ25KA80	KBBJ25KA160
		KBB25B45	KBB25B63	KBB25B125
Screenig door	1	1	1	1
Screws	4	4	6	6
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Required tools

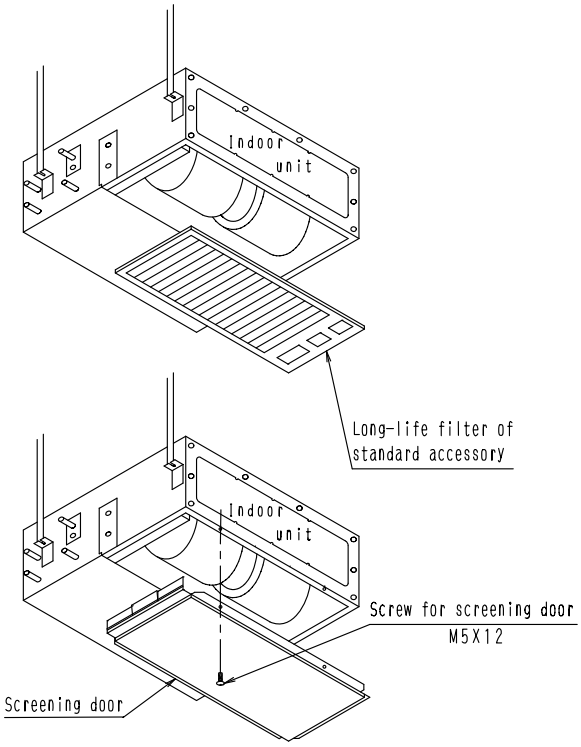
Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

1. Remove the long-life filters of standard accessory from indoor unit.
2. Attach the screening door to the indoor unit.

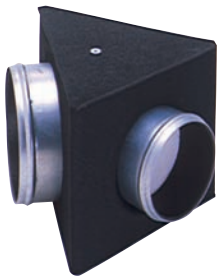
4. Cautions for the installation

- Install the screening door as explain in these instructions.
- Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the screening door.



3P011904A

11.11 K-DDV20B15 — Branch Chamber

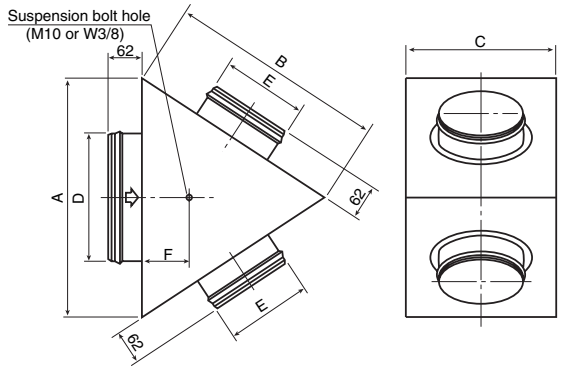


- Pre-insulated (No field insulation work required/Less man-hour), compact and light weight (space saving), and easy installation (just a single suspension bolt is needed)
- Easy to connect ducts
- Smooth branching

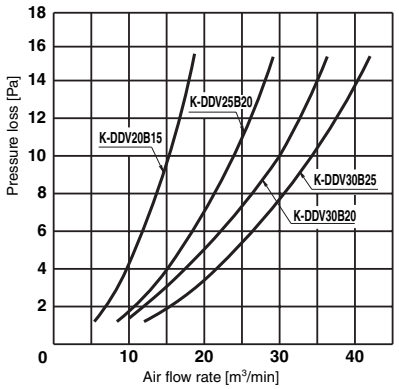
Model		K-DDV20B15	K-DDV25B20	K-DDV30B20	K-DDV30B25
Dimensions (mm)	A	370	470	570	
	B	320	420	520	
	C	250	300	350	
	D	ϕ198	ϕ248	ϕ298	
	E	ϕ148	ϕ198	ϕ198	ϕ248
	F	65	94	123	
Mass	kg	3.0	5.0	7.0	
Accessories		Plain washer. Wing nut. Insulation pipe cover. Insulation. Installation Manual.			

	K-DDV20B15	K-DDV25B20	K-DDV30B20	K-DDV30B25
Inlet connection: Bore × Q'ty	ϕ200×1	ϕ250×1	ϕ300×1	ϕ300×1
Outlet connection: Bore × Q'ty	ϕ300×1	ϕ200×2	ϕ200×2	ϕ250×2
Material	Steel sheet			
Insulation	Polyurethane foam · Foam polystyrene			

Dimensions Unit (mm)



Pressure loss curve



J: D3K04632A
J: D3K04633A
J: D3K04634A
J: D3K04635A

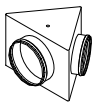
Installation Manual

● This manual must be thoroughly read before proceeding with usage.

⚠Caution Installation work should only be performed after these "Safety Precautions" have been thoroughly read.

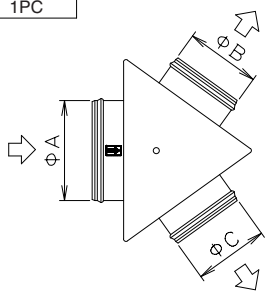
- Installation should be carried out in a location capable of bearing the necessary weight. Attempting installation in locations with insufficient weight tolerance may result in injuries caused by objects falling or toppling.
- Take necessary precautions such as wearing gloves to ensure safety during installation.

Parts Check the following parts.

Name	Branch Chamber	Butterfly nut	Plain washer	Heat Insulating Tube	Heat Insulating Material	Installation Manual
Shape						
Quantity	1PC	1PC	2PCs	1PC	1PC	1PC

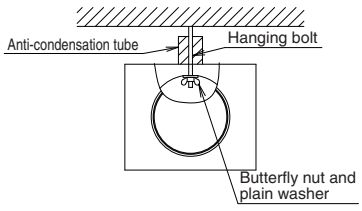
- The diameter of the duct selected for connection should be in accordance with the following.
  (An arrow is displayed on the intake connecting port.)

Item Number	Intake Connection Diameter	Outlet Connection Diameter	
	A	B	C
K-DDV20B15	198	148	148
K-DDV25B20	248	198	198
K-DDV30B20	298	198	198
K-DDV30B25	298	248	248

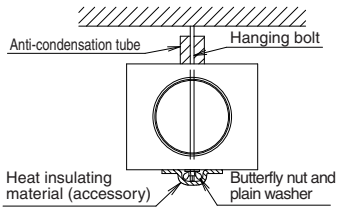


1 Branch Chamber Installation

(1) Mount the hanging bolt (M10 or W3/8).
(2) Mount the anti-condensation tube on the hanging bolt.
(3) A seal is applied at the position of the branch chamber hanging hole. Pass the hanging bolt through this hole and secure to the inner or outer surface using a washer (accessory) and butterfly nut (accessory).
(4) If secured on the outer surface, use heat insulating material (accessory) to insulate the washer and butterfly nut parts.



Secured on the inner surface



Secured on the outer surface

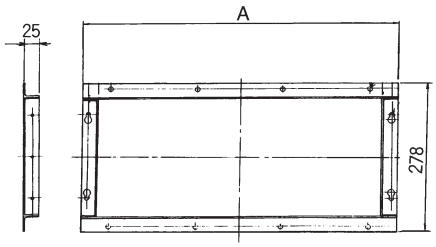
J: 3K016105A

11.12 KDJ2507K56 / 80 / 160 — Air Suction Flange

KDJ2507K80



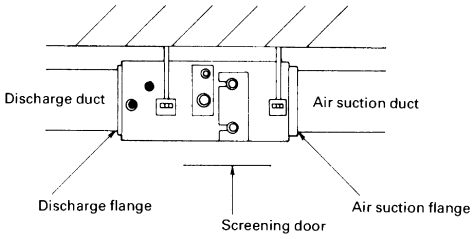
Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model	A
KDJ2507K36	527
KDJ2507K56	677
KDJ2507K80	977
KDJ2507K160	1,377

C: D3K1157

Example of installation



Item			Model KDJ2507K36	KDJ2507K56	KDJ2507K80	KDJ2507K160
Size of connecting duct	Width	mm	477	627	927	1327
	Length	mm	228			
Materials			Galvanized steel plate			
Component parts			Flange for suction. Packing. Screws. Installation Manual.			

Note: When connecting a square duct to the intake side, the screening door (KBBJ25K36, KBBJ25KA56/80/160) of optional kit is needed.

Installation Manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KDJ2507K36	KDJ2507K56	KDJ2507K80	KDJ2507K160
	KD2507B32	KD2507B45	KD2507B63	KD2507B125
Air suction flange	1	1	1	1
Screws	12	14	18	24
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

(Caution)This kit requires the screening door. (option)

2. Required tools

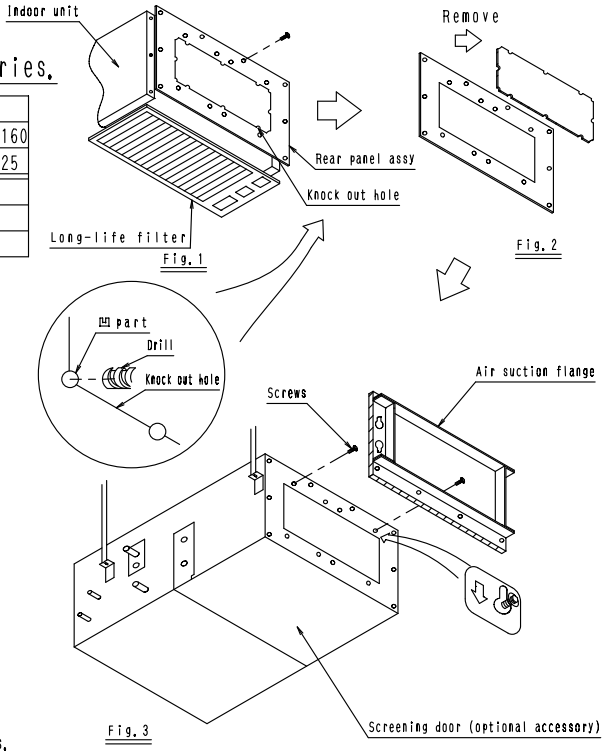
Screwdriver⊕, Nippers, Drill(φ6mm), Cutter knife

3. Operating procedures

a. Remove the long-life filter from the indoor unit. (Fig. 1)
b. Remove the rear panel assembly. (Fig. 1)
c. Drill φ6 holes in the rear panel around the knock-out hole recess and knock out hole.
d. Cut the sound-proofing to the rear panel size and shape with a cutter knife. (fig. 2)
e. Attach the rear panel to the air conditioner. (Fig. 3)
f. Attach the screening door to the indoor unit. (Fig. 3)
① Tighten two installation screws to the indoor unit. (Leave about 5mm of thread exposed.)
② Hang the air suction flange on the screws and then tighten all screws definitively.

4. Cautions for the installation

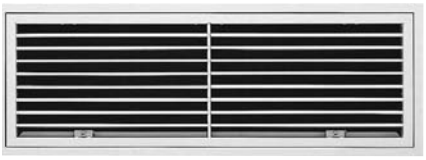
a. Install the flange for the suction as explain in these instructions.
b. Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the air suction flange(have a packing).



3P011745

12. FDBG — Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

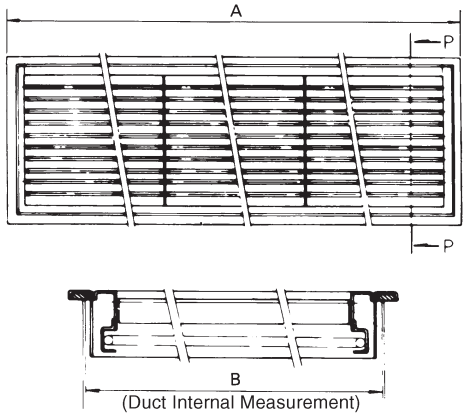
12.1 KDGF19A45 / 71 — Decoration Panel



Dimensions

Unit (mm)

Model	A	B
KDGF19A45	697	664
KDGF19A71	1097	1064



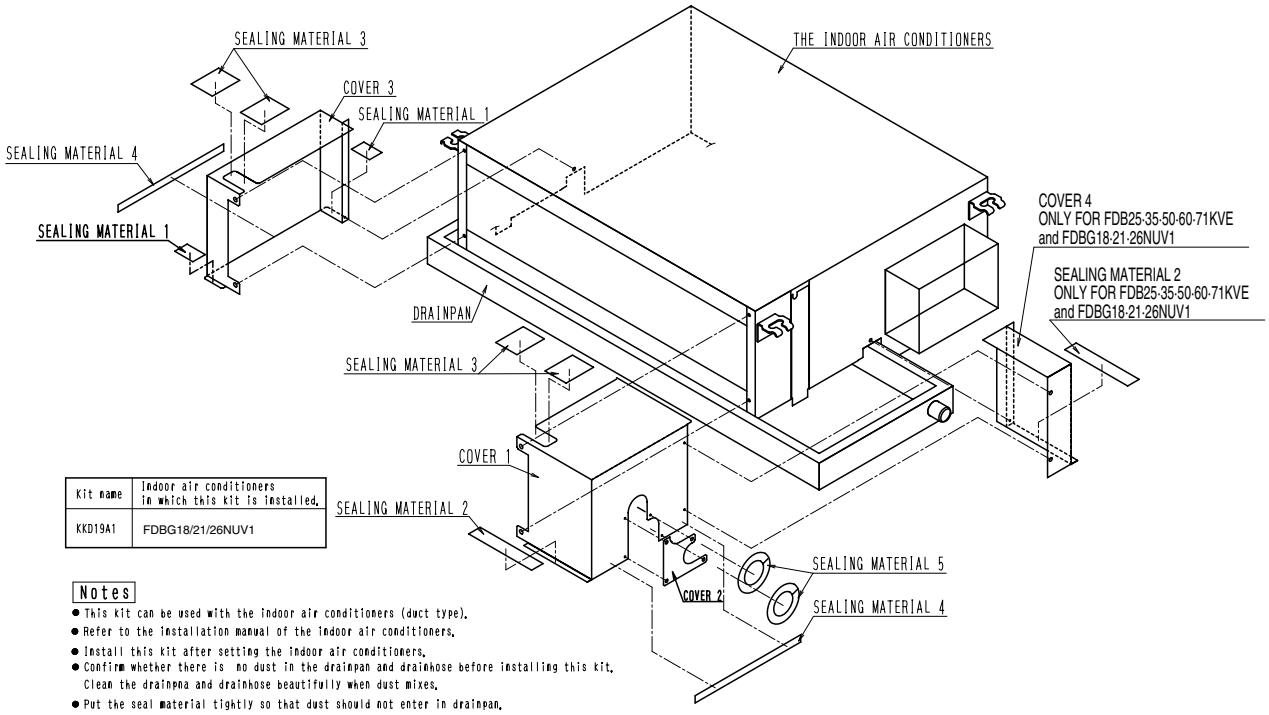
12.2 KKD19A1 — Drain Pan Cover

Installation Manual

Daikin Air Conditioners — INSTALLATION BOX FOR DRAINPAN COVER Installation manual

KKD19A1

Read these instructions carefully before performing work.
Perform work as explained herein.



Kit name	Indoor air conditioners in which this kit is installed.
KKD19A1	FDBG18/21/26NUV1

Notes

- This kit can be used with the indoor air conditioners (duct type).
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor air conditioners.
- Install this kit after setting the indoor air conditioners.
- Confirm whether there is no dust in the drainpan and drainhose before installing this kit. Clean the drainpna and drainhose beautifully when dust mixes.
- Put the seal material tightly so that dust should not enter in drainpan.

C: 1P067376A

Part 4
Outdoor Units

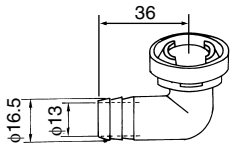
1. Drain Plug 696
1.1 KKP937A4 696
1.2 KKP945A4 697
2. Drain Cap, Drain Socket 698
2.1 KKP014A4 698
3. Air Direction Adjustment Grille 699
3.1 KPW937A4 699
3.2 KPW945A4 700
4. Demand Adaptor 701
4.1 KRP58M51 701
5. Central Drain Plug 705
5.1 KKPJ5F180 705
5.2 KKPJ5G280 706
6. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning 707
6.1 K-KYZP15C 707
7. Fixture for Preventing Overturning 709
7.1 KPT-60B160 709
7.2 KKTP5B112 710
8. Refrigerant Branch Piping 712
8.1 KHR58C21, KHD58C21A / 23A / 24A, KHD58D33, KHR58P322H, KHRJ5F224F / 280F 712
9. Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit 719
9.1 KRK5F80V1 / 140V1 / 160V1 719
10. Drain Piping Kit 721
10.1 KIS95 721
11. Over Voltage Protection 723
11.1 BRV2AK / 4AK 723

1. Drain Plug

1.1 KKP937A4



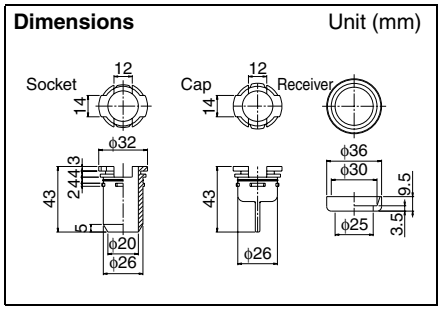
Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model / Item	KKP937A4
Connectable drain hose	ϕ16 (I.D.)
Component parts	Drain plug (5 pcs.)

1.2 KKP945A4





Model / Item	KKP937A4
Connectable drain hose	φ25(I.D.)
Component parts	Drain socket (1 pc.) Drain cap (2 pcs.) Drain receiver (3 pcs.)

4

Installation Manual

DAIKIN **Drain plug Installation manual**

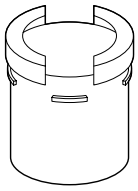
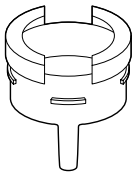
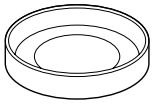
KKP945A4

Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.

- Use this socket to connect a drain hose to dispose the drain from the outdoor unit.

Before Installation

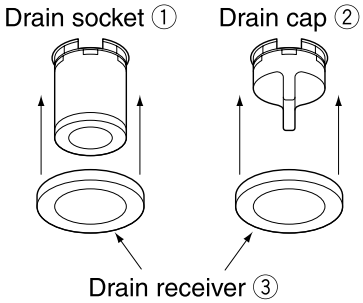
Check that this kit contains the following parts.

Name	① Drain socket	② Drain cap	③ Drain receiver
Shape			
Quantity	1 piece	2 pieces	3 pieces

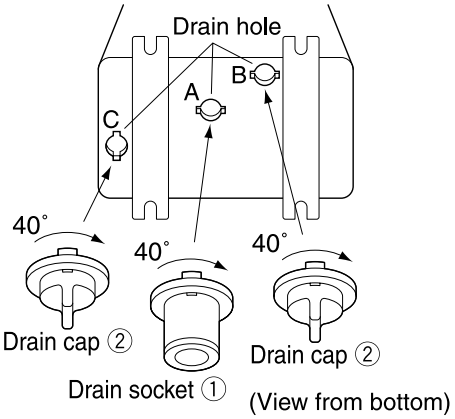
Installation Procedure

1 Check to make sure the outdoor unit drain hole is not hidden by the installation support or the floor.
Note) 1. If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are covered with the mounting bracket or the floor, raise the unit to provide the space of more than 100mm under the leg of the outdoor unit.
2. Check the installation position with the outside drawing.

2 Insert drain receiver ③ onto drain socket ① and drain cap ② beyond 4 projections around drain socket.



3 Insert drain socket ① into the drain hole A and drain caps ② into the drain hole B and C on the unit's bottom frame. After insertion, turn them about 40˚ clockwise.



4 Connect vinyl hose on the market (internal diameter of 25mm) to drain socket ① .

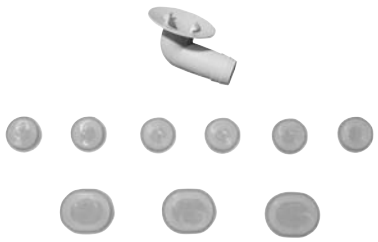
If the hose is too long and hangs down, fix it carefully to prevent the kinks.

3P089958-1B

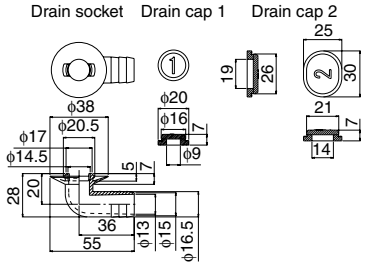
2. Drain Cap, Drain Socket

2.1 KKP014A4

KKP014A4



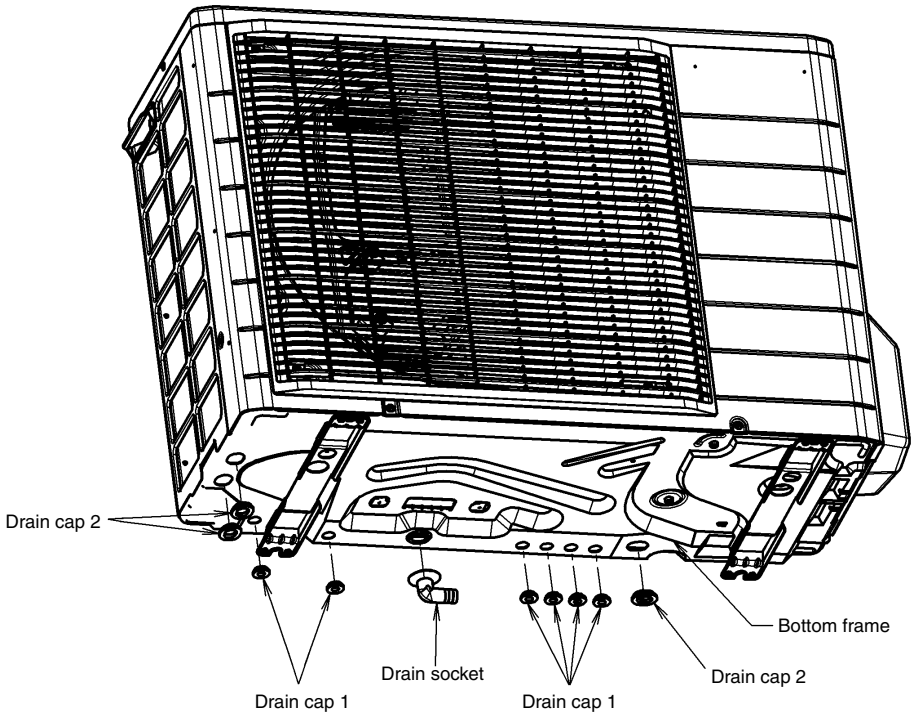
Dimensions Unit (mm)



Model / Item	KKP014A4
Connectable drain hose	ϕ16(I.D.)
Component parts	Drain socket (1 pc.) Drain cap 1 (6 pcs.) Drain cap 2 (3 pcs.)

Note: The materials of drain cap 1 and 2 are silicon rubber.

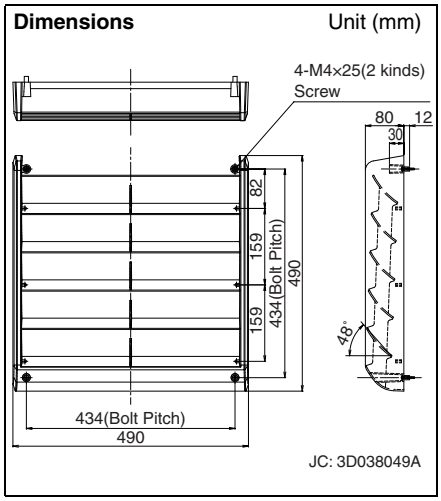
Installation Position



3. Air Direction Adjustment Grille

3.1 KPW937A4





Item \ Model		KPW937A4
Material		Resin
Air direction		Upper·Lower·Left·Right
Color		Ivory white
Accessories		Screws, Installation manual
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.1

4

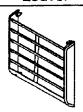
Installation Manual

Louver Installation manual

KPW937A4 KPW937AA4 Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.

■ Before Installation

Checking the parts Check the following parts

Name	Louver	Installation manual
Shape	 With 4 screws	
Quantity	1piece	1piece

■ Installation Procedure

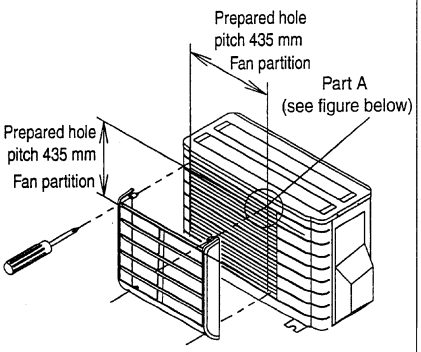
Selection of Installation Location

Use when installing in a location that meets the following conditions.

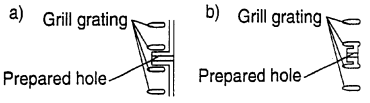
- When installing near the border to a neighbor's house
- If exhaust blows directly on passers-by because outdoor unit is installed facing a road.
- Changing the fan direction of the outdoor unit to prevent it blowing directly on shrubbery, etc.

Installation of Louver

- Installation is possible in the four directions: upward, downward, rightward, and leftward.
- The installation screws are attached to the louver.
- First temporarily attach the louver with 4 screws, then check that the angle is correct, and finally tighten the screws fully.



The prepared hole is in between the grating of the grill.
Part A (prepared hole) cross section (the shape of either a or b)



⚠ CAUTION

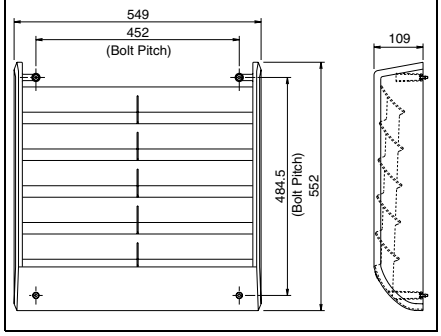
1. Install so that a short circuit is prevented.
2. For the use in snowy regions, avoid installation with the air outlet facing upward. Install so that the air outlet faces leftward, rightward, or downward.
   Snow accumulates in the air outlet of the outdoor unit, causing malfunction of the main body of the outdoor unit.
3. Be advised that if the fan direction is up, dead leaves and other foreign matter easily accumulates in the exhaust vent.

4P104499-1A

3.2 KPW945A4



Dimensions Unit (mm)



Item \ Model		KPW945A4
Material		Resin
Air direction		Upper·Lower
Color		Ivory white
Accessories		Screws, Installation manual
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.5

Installation Manual

Air direction louver Installation manual

KPW945A4 KPW945AA4

Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.

■Before installation

Check the following parts

Name	Louver	Truss tapping screw	Installation manual
Shape			
Quantity	1 piece	M4×4screws(max.7.5kW class) M5×4screws(8.0/9.0kW class)	1 piece

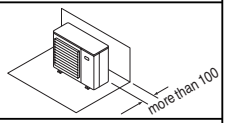
■Installation Procedure

Selection of Installation Location

Use when installing in a location that meets the following conditions.
- When installing near the border to a neighbor's house
- If exhaust blows directly on passers-by because outdoor unit is installed facing a road.
- If exhaust blows directly on vegetation

Space Needed for Installation

- **A minimum of 100㎜ is needed between the back of the outdoor unit and any obstructions (walls, etc.)**



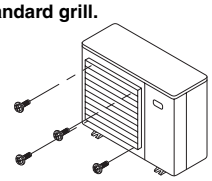
Installation of Louvers

⚠ Caution

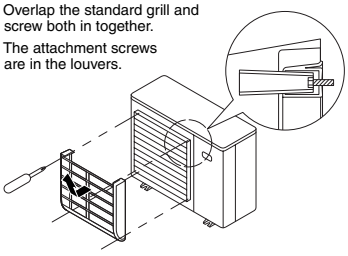
Attach the louvers overlapping the standard grill.
Installing the louvers without the grill would allow hands to enter the fan area, which is dangerous, so be sure to install the standard grill.

When pointing up

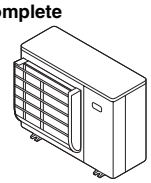
(1) Remove the 4 attachment screws from the standard grill.



(2) Install the louver pointed up.
- Overlap the standard grill and screw both in together.
- The attachment screws are in the louvers.

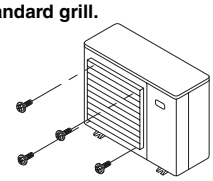


(3) Installation complete

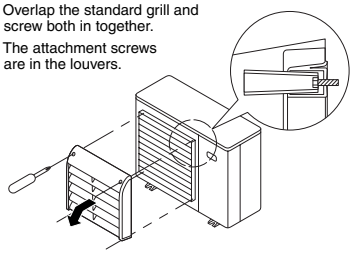


When pointing down

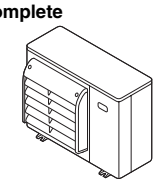
(1) Remove the 4 attachment screws from the standard grill.



(2) Install the louver pointed down.
- Overlap the standard grill and screw both in together.
- The attachment screws are in the louvers.



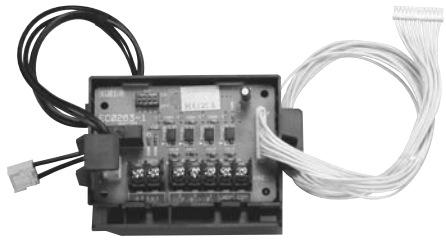
(3) Installation complete



C: 3P089958-2C

4. Demand Adaptor

4.1 KRP58M51



Installation Manual

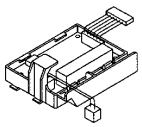
DEMAND ADAPTOR MOUNTING INSTRUCTIONS

KRP58M51

⚠ WARNING If the worning is not observed, it way cause servious casualties.

Before installing this kit,turn off power switch.
Do not turn on it untill all work is complete.
See the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the outdoor unit for installation work,too.

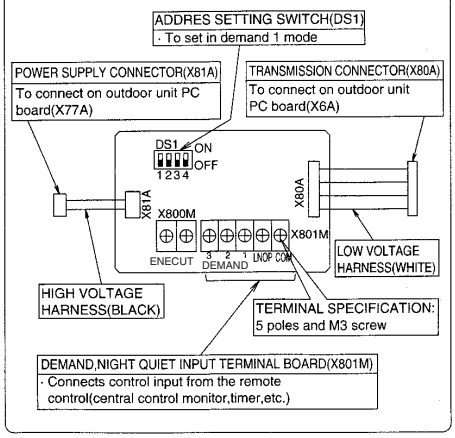
Accessories — Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

Demand adaptor printed circuit board ASSY 	1
Tie wrap	×4
Fixing screw	×1
Installation manual	×1 (Each language)

❶ SYSTEM OUTLINE

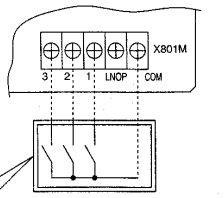
The following set up for outdoor unit can be done by this kit.
(1) Demand control
(2) Night quiet operation mode

❷ NAMES OF PARTS AND FUNCTION



❸ SETTING METHOD

(1) SETTING OF DEMAND RUNNING



[INPUT SIGNAL]
Always a contactor
Input current is 12mA per contactor.
Please use small current contactor as input contactor.
Please use the minimum load of DC 12V,1mA or less.
[FIELD WIRING SPECIFICATION]
Recommended wiring:sheathed vinyl cord or 2 wire cable 0.75 ~ 1.25mm² /AWG 18 ~ 16
Wiring length:100m or less
Keep transmission wiring away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunction.

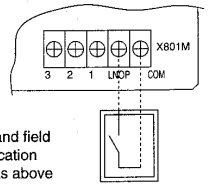
● DEMAND 1 : Short circuit COM-1 ·· guideline of power consumption between 60 ~ 100%

DS1 SET POINT 1	2		DEMAND 1 INPUT ON,POWER CONSUMPTION
OFF	OFF	ON OFF 1234	60% OF RATED POWER CONSUMPTION
ON	OFF	ON OFF 1234	70% OF RATED POWER CONSUMPTION
OFF	ON	ON OFF 1234	80% OF RATED POWER CONSUMPTION
ON	ON	ON OFF 1234	100% OF RATED POWER CONSUMPTION

● DEMAND 2 :Short circuit COM-2
··· guideline of power consumption at 40%

● DEMAND 3 : Short circuit COM-3
··· forced thermostat OFF

(2) SETTING OF NIGHT QUIET MODE



*Input signal and field wiring specification is the same as above

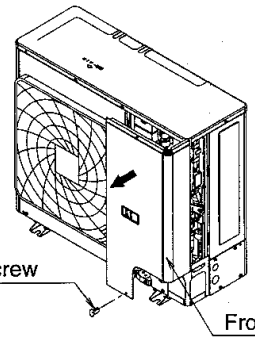
Short circuit between COM-LNOP on terminal(X801M) of demand adaptor.
Low sound runnig to be done with limited outdoor fan speed,compressor running frequency(this model should be used with low load at night,etc.).
*Setting of auto mode,refer to field setting by remote controller (technical guide).

3P134153B

RZR100 / 125 / 140LUY1, RZR30 / 36 / 42 / 48LUY2S, RZQ100 / 125 / 140HAY4A

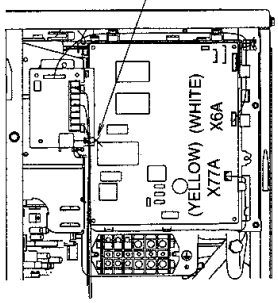
4 INSTALLATION METHOD

1



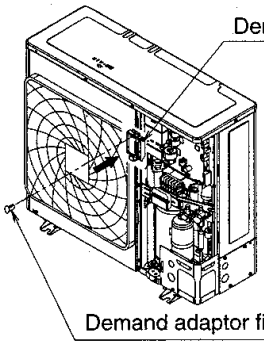
• Open the front panel.

5



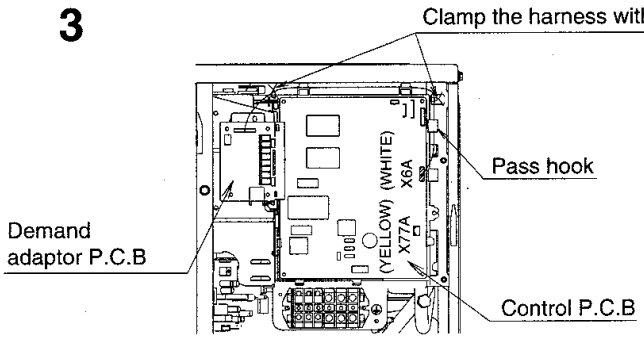
• Clamp the harness with tie wraps(accessory).

2



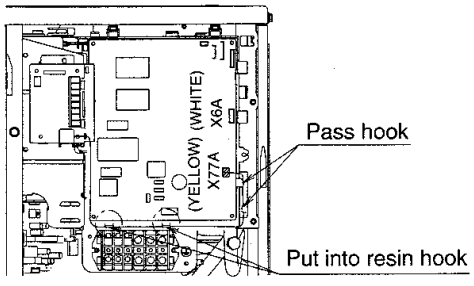
• Mount the demand adaptor printed circuit board ASSY.

3



• Transmission connector(X80A) connect to P.C.B. control connector(X6A).

4

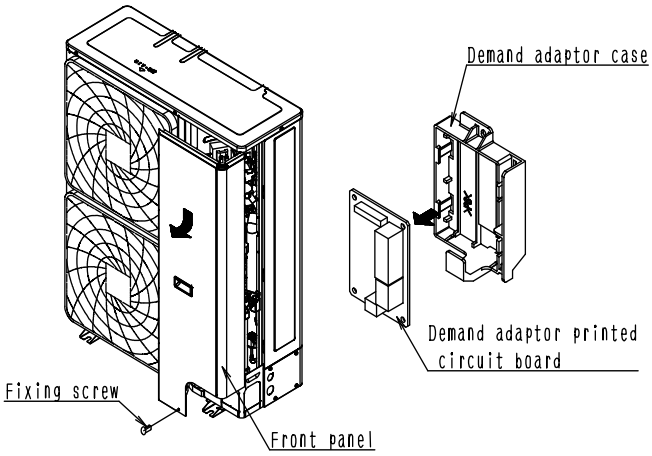


• Power supply connector(X81A) connect to P.C.B. control connector(X77A).

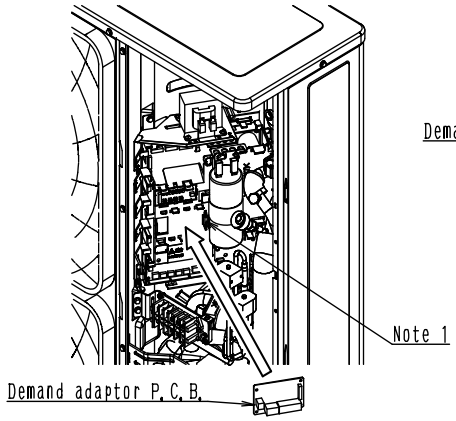
3P134153B

RZR100 / 125 / 140LUV1, RZR30 / 36 / 42 / 48LUV2S, RZR30 / 36 / 42 / 48LUVL, RZQ100 / 125 / 140KCV4A, RZQ100KCVLT, RQ100 / 125 / 140LV1A

1 Open the front panel, and take the demand adaptor printed circuit board from the demand adaptor case.

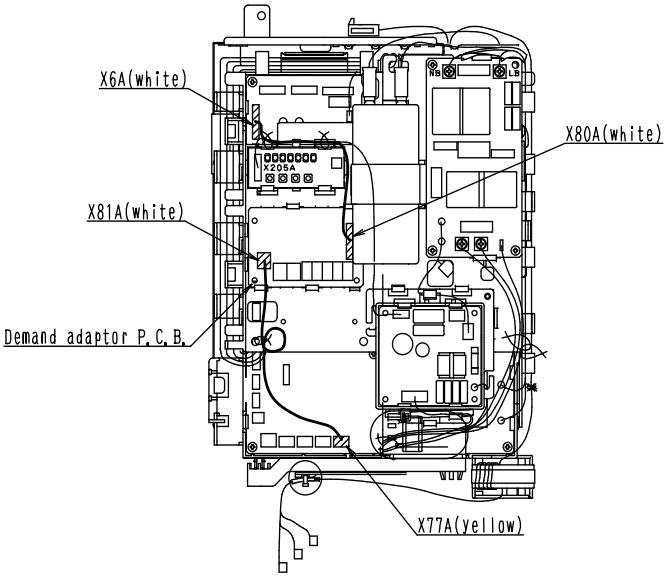


2 Mount the demand adaptor printed circuit board.

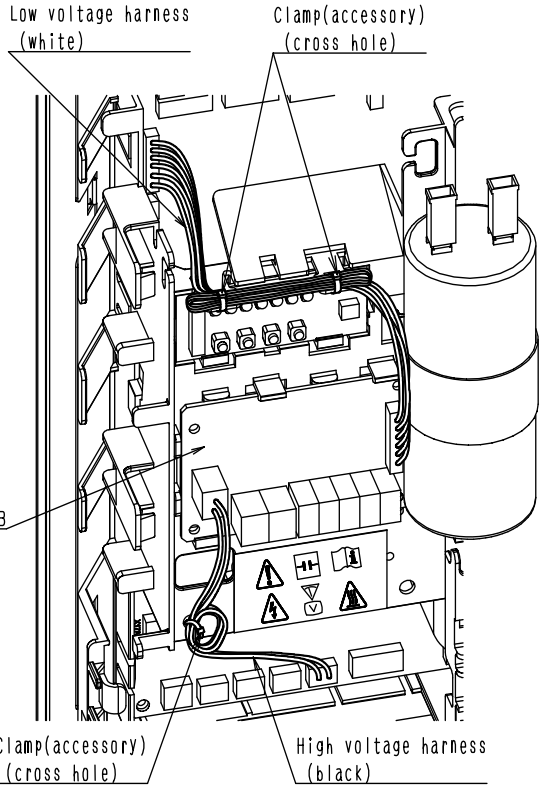


Note 1: When mounting demand adaptor P.C.B., be careful not to damage its parts that may be caused by contacting with the thermistor wirings.

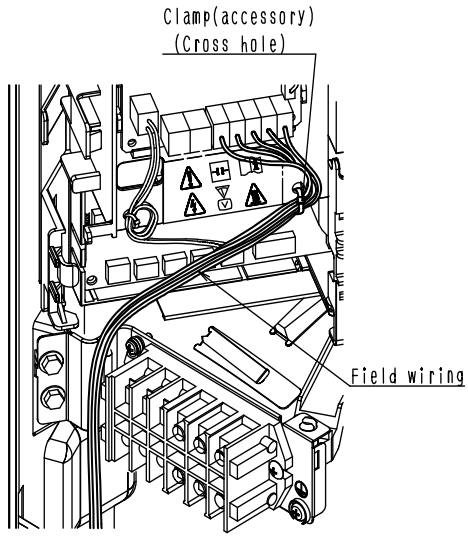
3 Transmission connector (X80A(white)) connect to P.C.B. control connector(X6A(white))
Power supply connector (X81A(white)) connect to P.C.B. control connector(X77A(yellow))



4 Fix the remaining low voltage harness (white) with clamp (accessory).
Fix the remaining high voltage harness (black) with clamp (accessory).



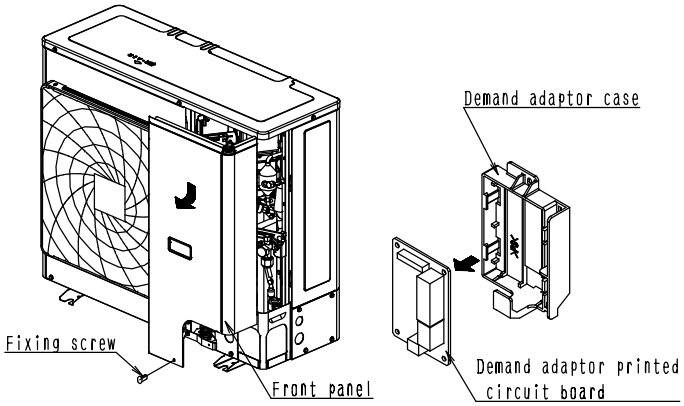
5 Fix the field wiring with clamp (accessory)



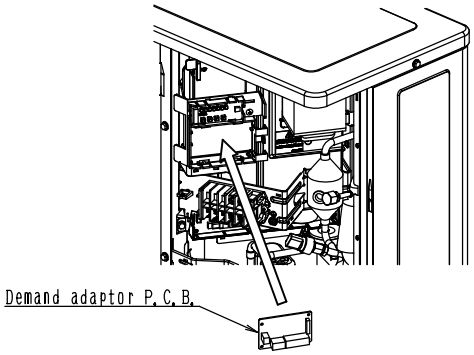
C: 3P201377B

RZQ50 / 60KBV4A, RZQ71KCV4A, RZQ71KCVLT, RQ71LV1A, RZQ125 / 140KCTLT

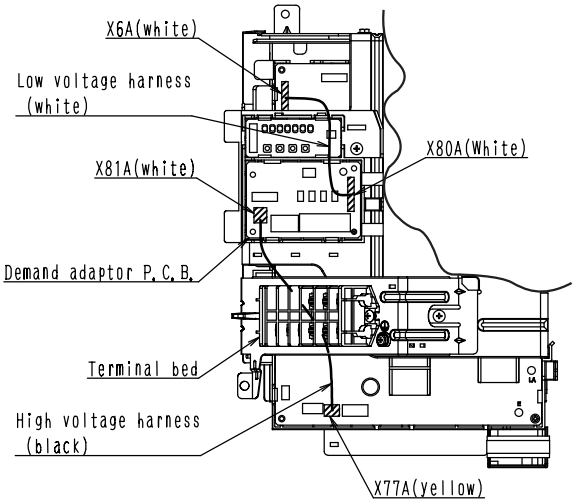
1 Open the front panel, and take the demand adaptor printed circuit board from the demand adaptor case.



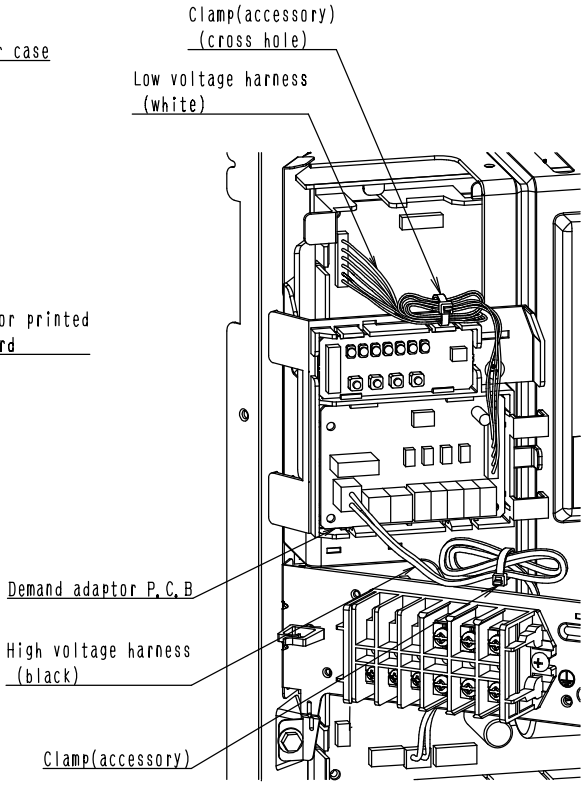
2 Mount the demand adaptor printed circuit board.



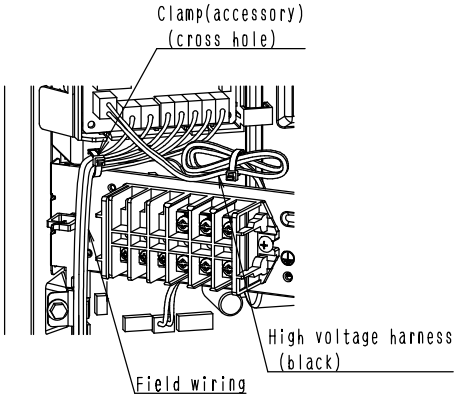
3 Transmission connector (X80A(white)) connect to P. C. B. control connector(X6A(white))
Power supply connector (X81A(white)) connect to P. C. B. control connector(X77A(yellow))
Pass the high voltage harness (black) through the back of terminal bed.



4 Fix the remaining low voltage harness (white) with clamp (accessory).
Bind the remaining high voltage harness (black) with clamp (accessory) without slack.



5 Pass the field wiring under the high voltage harness (black) and fix it with clamp (accessory).



C: 3P201377B

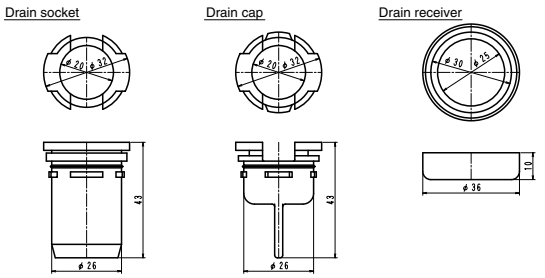
5. Central Drain Plug

5.1 KKPJ5F180

KKPJ5F180



Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K1342A

Item \ Model	KKPJ5F180
Connecting drain hose	ϕ25 (inside diameter)

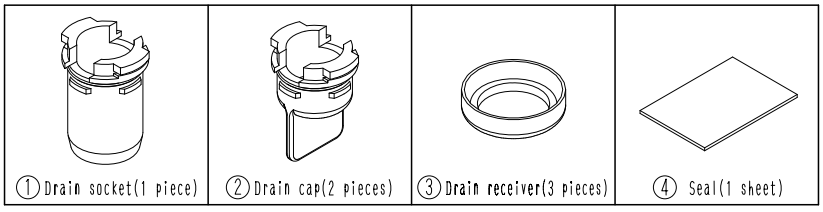
Installation Manual

DAIKIN Air Conditioners 3P066795-1B

Central Drain Plug Installation Manual <KKPJ5F180>

■ Use this plug to connect a drain hose to dispose the drain from the outdoor unit.

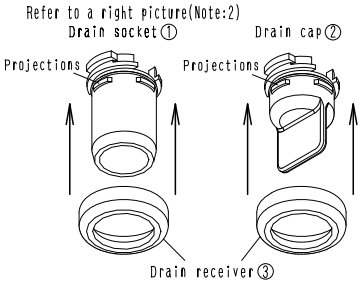
1 Before Installation Check that this Kit contains the following parts.



2 Installation Procedure

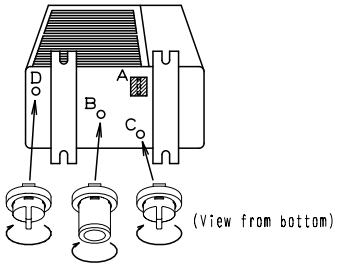
・Please refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.

1. Insert drain receiver③ onto drain socket① and drain cap② beyond 4 projections around drain socket and drain cap.
Refer to a right picture(Note:2)

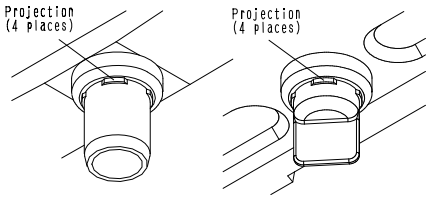


2. Insert drain socket and drain caps into their matching drain hole;Drain socket① into drain hole B and drain caps② into drain hole C and D. After insertion, turn them about 40° clockwise.

Note:1
Be sure not to insert them into wrong drain holse, or there causes water leakage.



Note:2
Please check whether drain receiver③is caught in four projections of drain socket①and drain cap②correctly. It will become the cause of the leak they are not attached correctly.



3. Connect vinyl hose on the market(intemal diameter of 25mm) to drain socket①.
(If the house is too long and hangs down, fix it carefully to prevent the kinks.)

4. Affix seals④ to part A as shown on the above drawing.
(It is unnecessary when it is the model which does not have opening in A.)

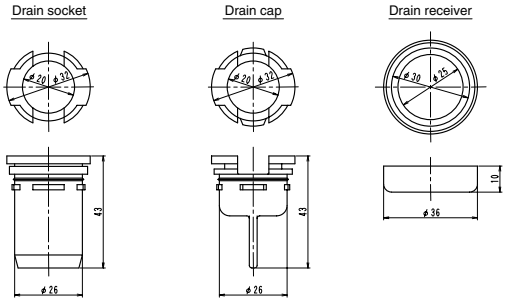
5. After join drainsocket①and draincap②, please check whether there is not any leak to A and the other parts by pouring water.

Note:3
1. If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are covered with the mounting bracket or the floor, raise the unit to provide the space of more than 100mm under the leg of the outdoor unit.
2. Do not use this option in the cold latitudes. At bottom frame, drained water is frozen up.

3P066795B

5.2 KKPJ5G280

Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K07246

Item \ Model	KKPJ5G280
Connecting drain hose	ϕ25 (inside diameter)

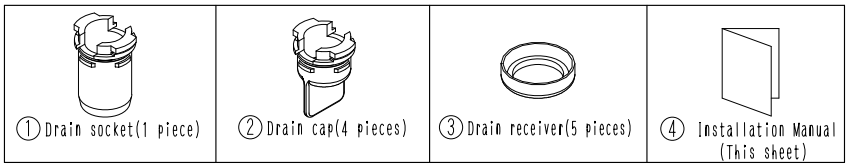
Installation Manual

DAIKIN Air Conditioners

Central Drain Plug Installation Manual <KKPJ5G280>

■ Use this plug to connect a drain hose to dispose the drain from the outdoor unit.

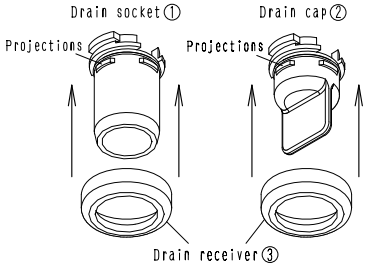
1 Before Installation Check that this Kit contains the following parts.



2 Installation Procedure

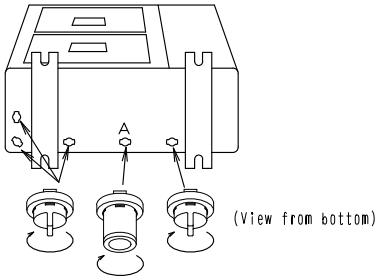
・Please refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.

1. Insert drain receiver③ onto drain socket① and drain cap② beyond 4 projections around drain socket and drain cap.
Refer to a right picture(Note:2)

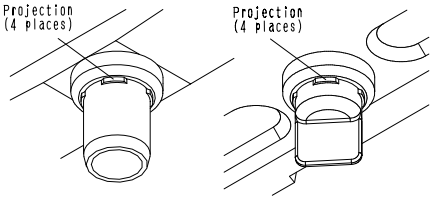


2. Insert drain socket and drain caps into their matching drain hole;Drain socket① into drain hole A and drain caps② into the other holes. After insertion, turn them about 40° clockwise.

Note:1
Be sure not to insert them into wrong drain holse, or there causes water leakage.



Note:2
Please check whether drain receiver③is caught in four projections of drain socket①and drain cap②correctly. It will become the cause of the leak they are not attached correctly.



3. Connect vinyl hose on the market(intemal diameter of 25mm) to drain socket①.
(If the house is too long and hangs down, fix it carefully to prevent the kinks.)

4. After join drainsocket①and draincap②, please check whether there is not any leak to A and the other parts by pouring water.

Note:3
1. If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are covered with the mounting bracket or the floor, raise the unit to provide the space of more than 100mm under the leg of the outdoor unit.
2. Do not use this option in the cold latitudes. At bottom frame, drained water is frozen up.

3P247371A

6. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning

6.1 K-KYZP15C

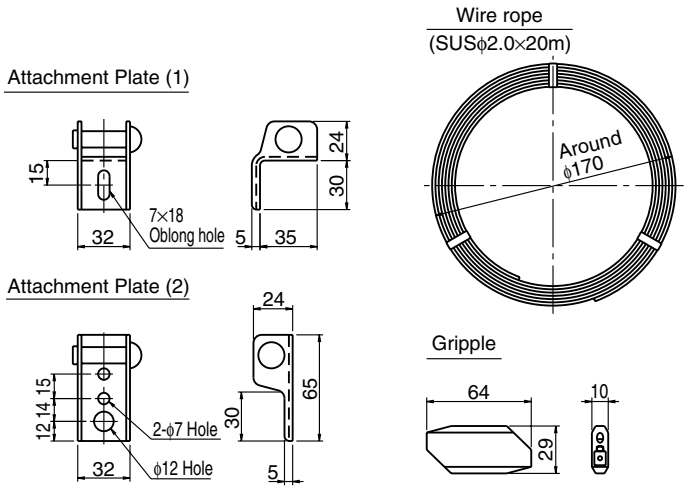
K-KYZP15C



Item \ Model		K-KYZP15C
Accessories		Adjuster pin: 1 piece Bolt, nut, plain washer: 1 set Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.0

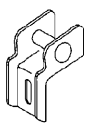
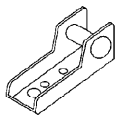
4

Dimensions Unit (mm)



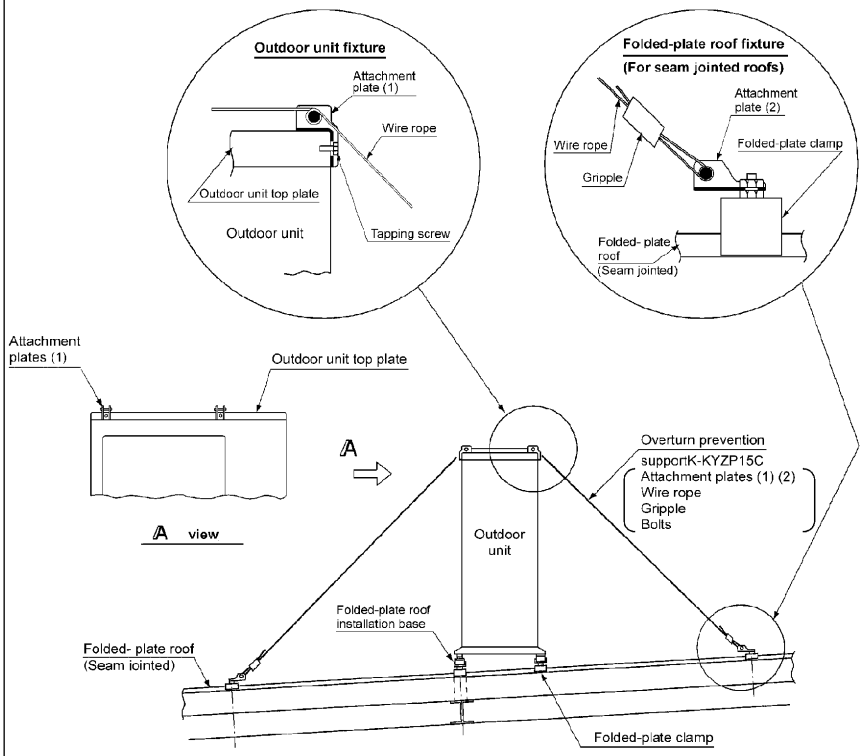
J: D3K2523

■ **Parts**

Part	Attachment plate (1)	Attachment plate (2)	Wire rope	Gripple	Adjustor pin	Hexagonal Bolt	Hexagonal Nut	Plain washer	Tapping screw
Shape						M10×25 	M8·10 W5/16·3/8 	for M8·10 	M5×12 
K-KYZP15C	4	4	1 roll	4	1	4	4 each	4 each	4

C: 3K07319A

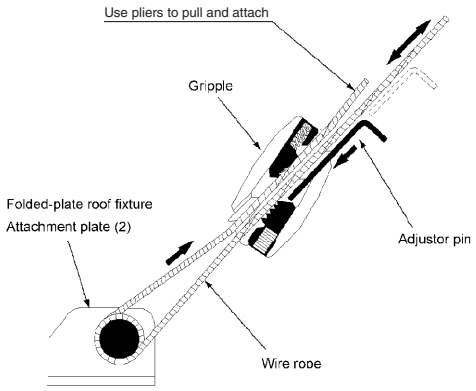
Installation Manual



Installation

1. For seam jointed roofs, attach and fix the folded-plate clamp to the roof and then attach the attachment plate (2) to the clamp as shown in the figure.
2. For layered folded-plate roofs, place attachment plate (2) onto the roof bolt nut and then follow the same procedure as in step 1 above.
3. Use the plate screws to place attachment plate (1) onto the outdoor unit as shown in the figure.
   If there are no plate screws on the front and back outdoor unit top plate, align the screw hole of attachment plate (1) and open a 3.7 mm diameter hole in the plate.
   Then use the included tapping screws to attach attachment plate (1).
4. To install the wire ropes, follow the wire rope attachment procedure on the back side of these instructions to ensure proper attachment of ropes on both sides of the outdoor unit in 4 places
5. For type 100 outdoor units and lower, a single wire rope may be attached to the centre of the unit.

Wire rope attachment procedure

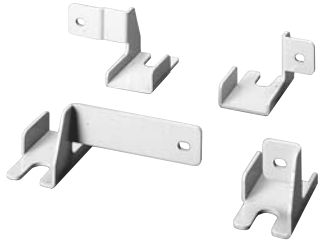


C: 3K07319A

7. Fixture for Preventing Overturning

7.1 KPT-60B160

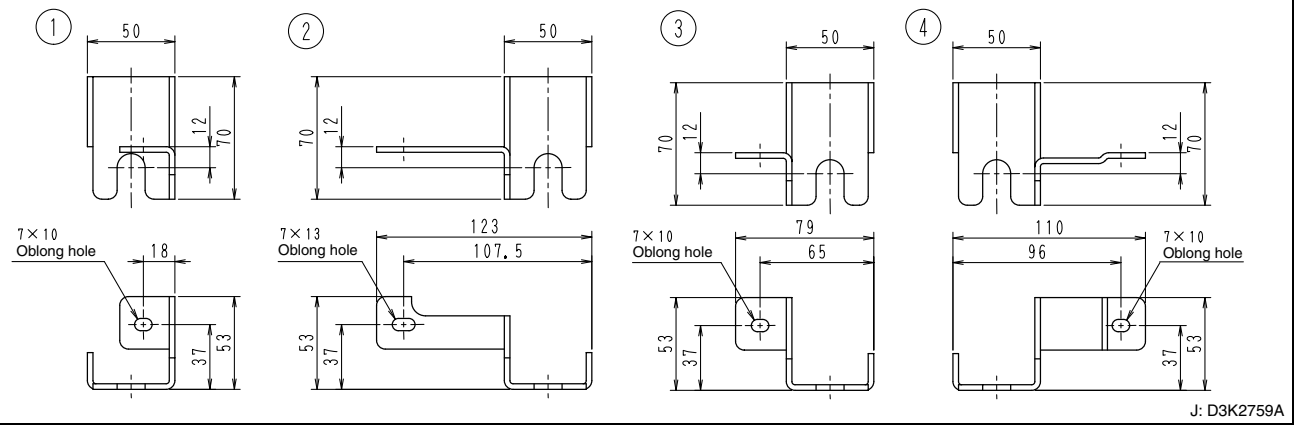
KPT-60B160



Item \ Model	KPT-60B160
Material	Steel plate (t 3.2)
Colour	Ivory white
Accessories	Screw : 4 Installation manual.

- Allows the outdoor unit to be secured to the foundation.
  → Prevents tipping of the outdoor unit due to strong gusts.
- Useful for locations where anti-tipping wires (Locally procured) cannot be installed.

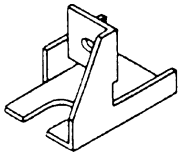
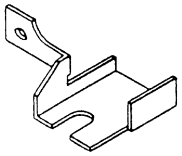
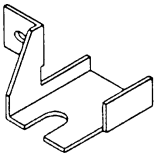
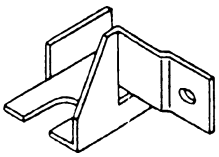
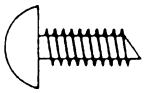
Dimensions Unit (mm)



J: D3K2759A

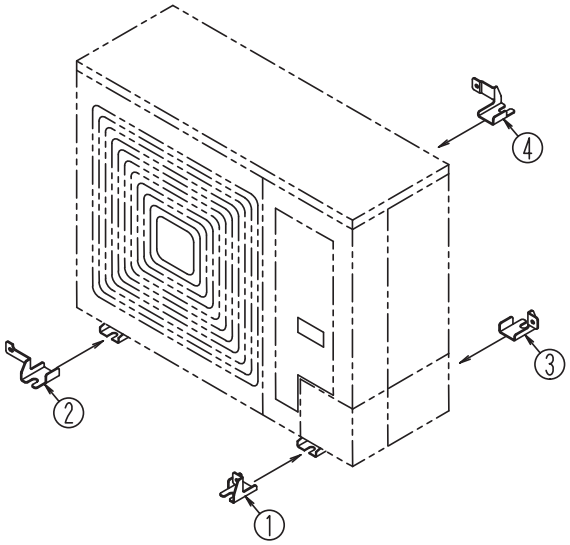
Installation Manual

(1) Check that this kit contains the following parts.

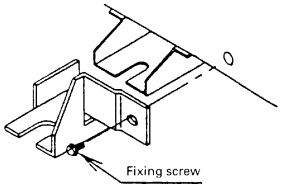
 Metal fixture ①	 Metal fixture ②	 Metal fixture ③	 Metal fixture ④	 Screws (4 pieces)

(2) Installation Procedure

1. Install the metal fixtures ① ~ ④ to the base legs as shown below.



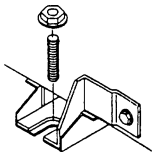
2. Remove the screw from the casing and fix the metal fixture to the casing.



Note:
When you install the metal fixtures ①, ③ and ④, fix the metal fixture through the casing by the screws M5×13 attached.

When you install the metal fixture ②, fix the metal fixture through the casing by the screw M5×13 attached. However, remove the screw on the casing, if the screw of the casing will contact with metal fixture.

3. Fix the metal fixtures firmly by the anchor bolts. (The anchor bolts, nuts and washers should be M12 type sold on the market.)



J: 3K07893

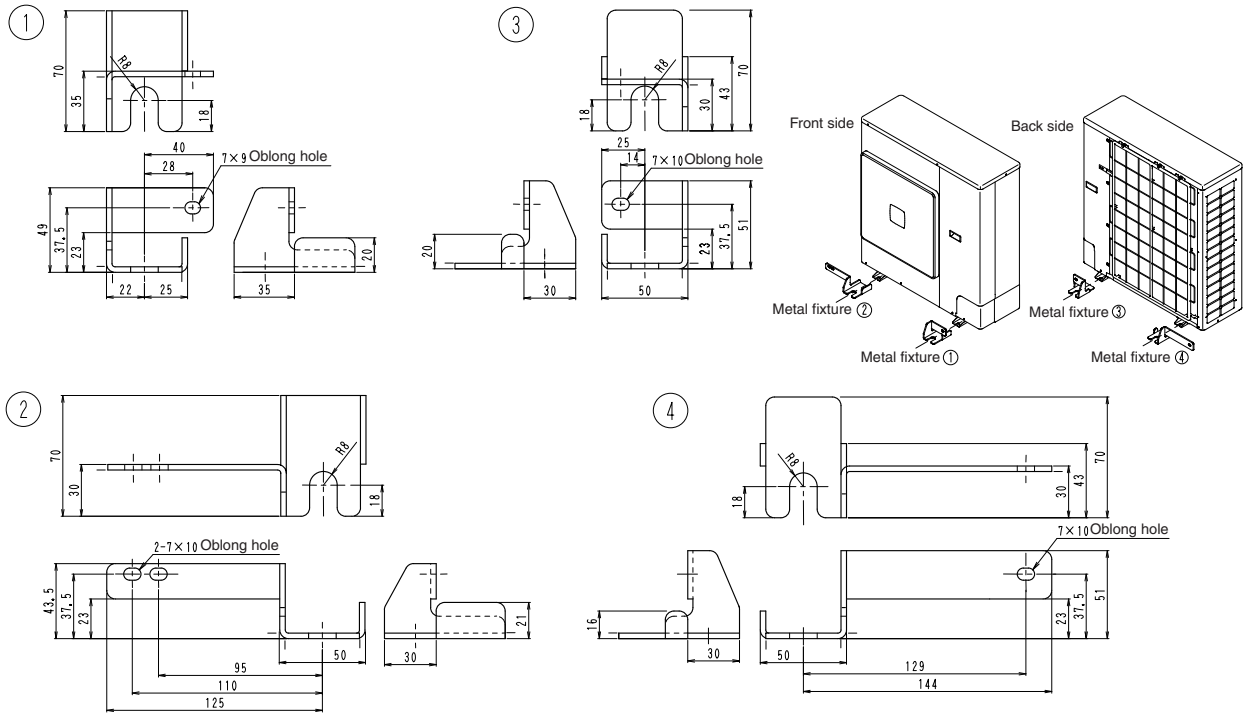
7.2 KKTP5B112

Item \ Model		KKTP5B112
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet (t 3.2)
Colour		Ivory white (5Y7.5/1)
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.7
Accessories		Installation manual

J: D3K07245

- Allows the outdoor unit to be secured to the foundation.
  → Prevents tipping of the outdoor unit due to strong gusts.
- Useful for locations where anti-tipping wires (Locally procured) cannot be installed.

Dimensions Unit (mm)

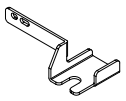
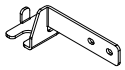


J: D3K07245

Installation Manual

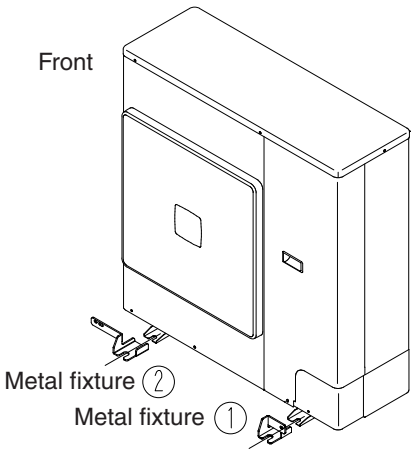
1 Before installation

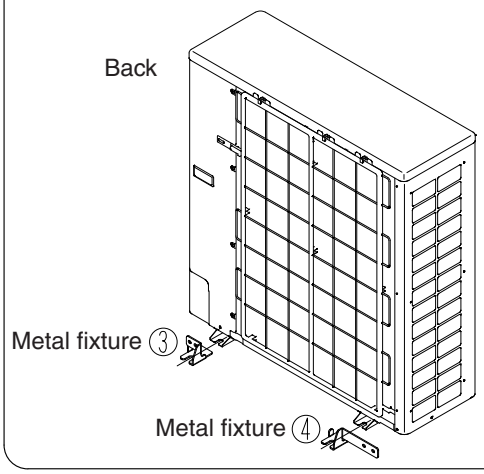
Component parts Check before installation that this kit contains the following parts.

Name	Fixture for preventing overtuning				Installation manual
	Metal fixture ①	Metal fixture ②	Metal fixture ③	Metal fixture ④	
Shape					
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 sheet (this drawing)

2 Installation location of fixture for preventing overtuning

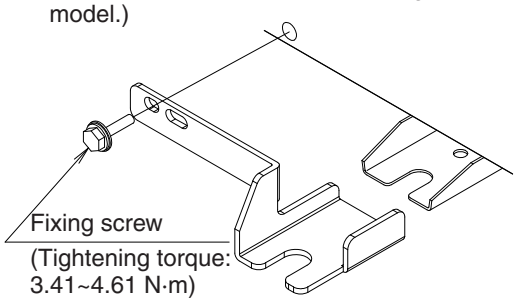
See along with the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
Install the metal fixtures ① ~ ④ to the base legs as shown below.



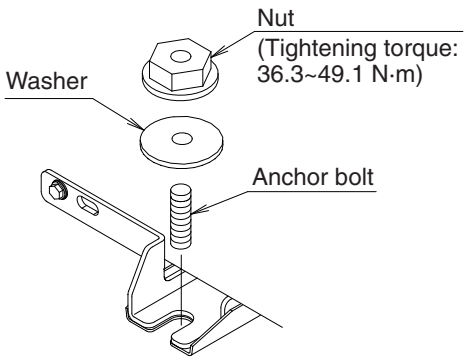


3 Installation of fixture for preventing overtuning

(1) Remove the fixing screw from the casing and fix the metal fixture to the casing.
(A hole to be used varies according to a model.)



(2) Fix the metal fixtures firmly by the anchor bolts.
(The anchor bolts, nuts and washers should be M12 type sold on the market.)



J: 3P247218A

8. Refrigerant Branch Piping

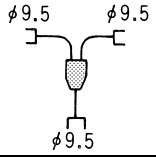
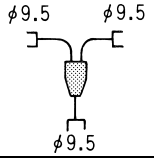
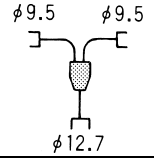
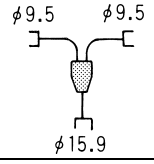
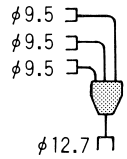
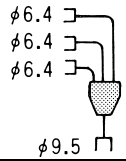
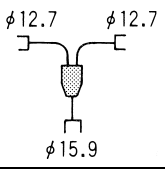
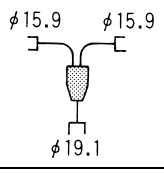
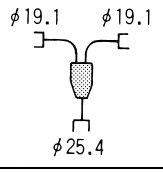
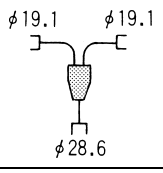
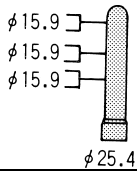
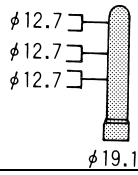
8.1 KHR58C21, KHD58C21A / 23A / 24A, KHD58D33, KHR58P322H, KHRJ5F224F / 280F

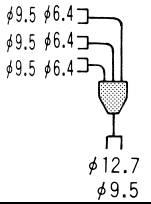
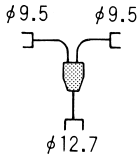
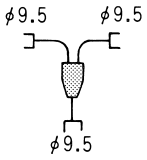
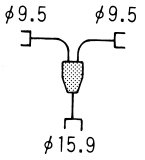
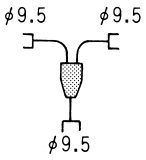
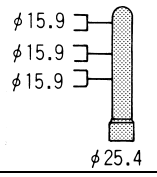
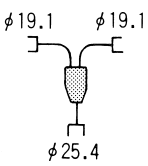
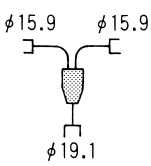
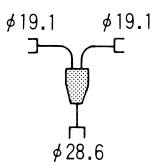
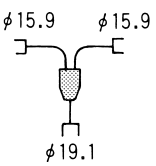
KHRJ5F224F



<Caution>
This is the branch kit for refrigerant piping to connect indoor and outdoor units of TWIN/TRIPLE/DOUBLE Twin simultaneous ON/OFF system.

• How to use
1. Uses as branch joints of refrigerant piping.
   Note) It is necessary because it is not attached to the air conditioner.
2. Pipes of the joint parts are widened.
   → Enables easy connection and Brazing.
3. Insulation materials are equipped as standard.

Item \ Type / Model			Twin Multi				Triple Multi	
			KHR58C21	KHD58C21A	KHD58C23A	KHD58C24A	KHD58D31	KHD58D33
Applicable Model		SkyAir	R71LUV1 R71LUY1 R71LUVAL	R(Y)100LUV1 R(Y)100/125/140LUY1 R100LUVAL R125LUTAL R125LUYAL R(Y)140LUTAL R(Y)140LUYAL R42LUY2S	R(Y)200KUY1 R(Y)200KUTAL R(Y)200KUYAL	R(Y)250KUY1 R(Y)250KUTAL R(Y)250KUYAL	—	R(Y)140LUY1 R(Y)140LUTAL R(Y)140LUYAL
Liquid Side Joint	Branch Pipe							
	Reducer	ϕ9.5→ ϕ6.4	2	2	—	—	1	—
		ϕ12.7→ ϕ9.5	—	—	—	—	—	—
		ϕ9.5→ ϕ12.7	—	—	2	2	—	—
		ϕ12.7→ϕ15.9	—	—	1	—	1	—
Gas Side Joint	Branch Pipe							
	Reducer	ϕ15.9→ϕ12.7	—	2	—	—	1	—
		ϕ19.1→ϕ15.9	—	—	1	—	—	—
		ϕ15.9→ϕ19.1	—	1	—	—	1	—
		ϕ28.6→ϕ31.8	—	—	—	1	—	—

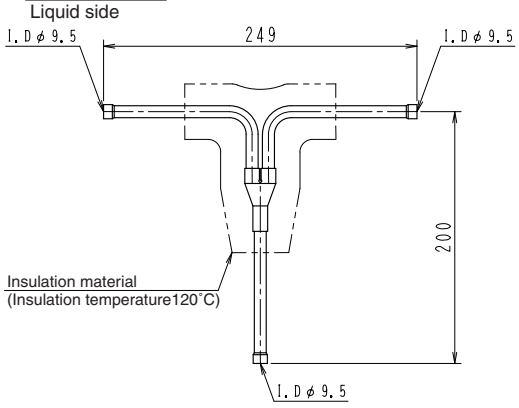
Item \ Type / Model			Triple Multi	Double Twin Multi			
			KHR58P322H	KHRJ5F224F		KHRJ5F280F	
Applicable Model		SkyAir	R(Y)200KUY1 R(Y)200KUTAL R(Y)200KUYAL	R(Y)200KUY1 R(Y)200KUTAL R(Y)200KUYAL		R(Y)250KUY1 R(Y)250KUTAL R(Y)250KUYAL	
Liquid Side Joint	Branch Pipe						
	Reducer	φ9.5→ φ6.4	—	—	—	—	—
		φ12.7→ φ9.5	—	—	—	—	—
		φ9.5→ φ12.7	—	—	—	—	—
		φ12.7→φ15.9	—	—	—	—	—
Gas Side Joint	Branch Pipe						
	Reducer	φ15.9→φ12.7	1	—	—	—	—
		φ19.1→φ15.9	—	—	—	—	—
		φ15.9→φ19.1	1	—	—	—	—
		φ28.6→φ31.8	—	—	—	—	—

4

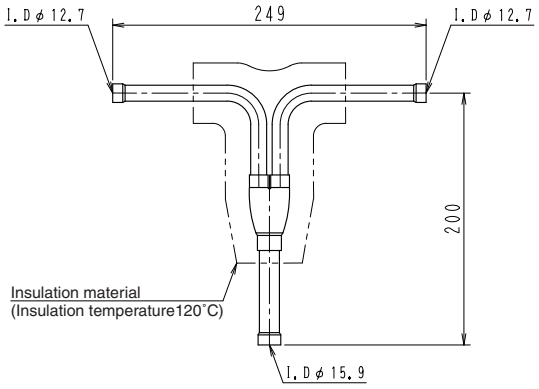
Dimensions

Unit (mm)

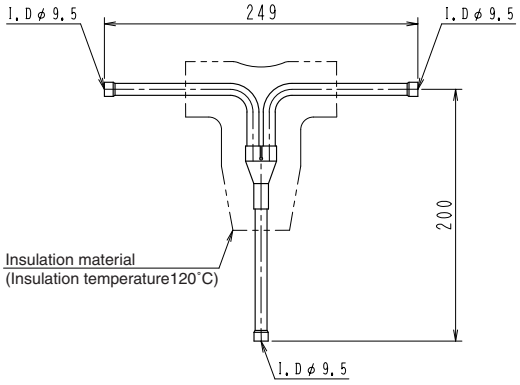
KHR58C21
Liquid side



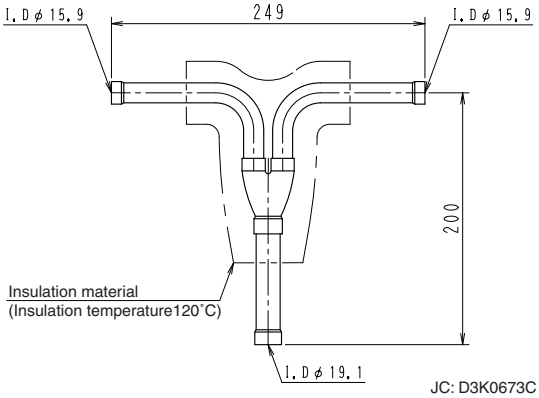
KHR58C21
Gas side



KHD58C21A
Liquid side

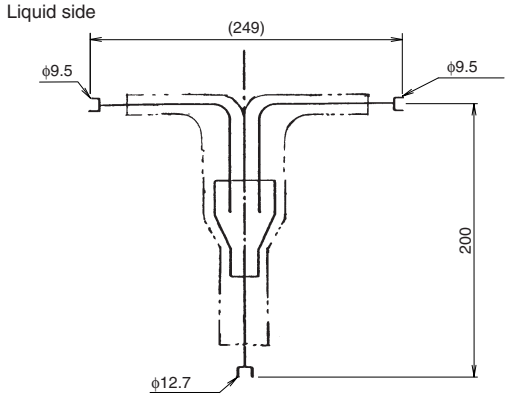


KHD58C21A
Gas side

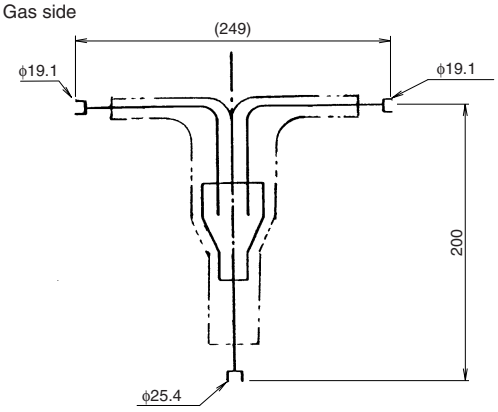


JC: D3K0673C

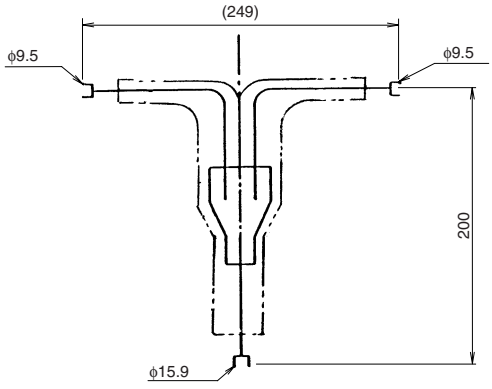
KHD58C23(A)
Liquid side



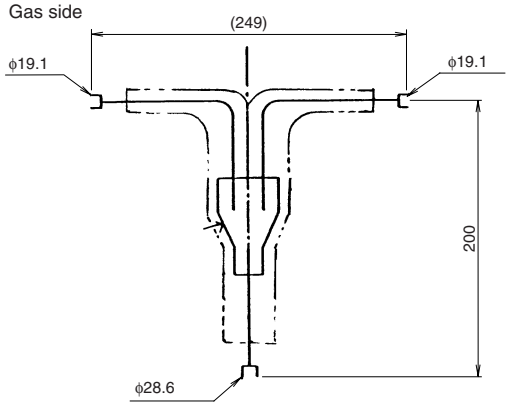
KHD58C23(A)
Gas side



KHD58C24(A)
Liquid side



KHD58C24(A)
Gas side

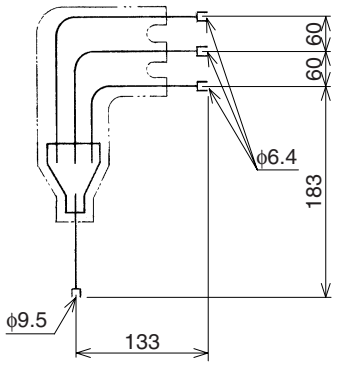


JC: D3K0675A

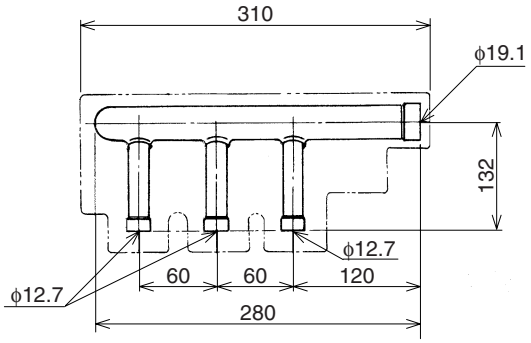
Dimensions

Unit (mm)

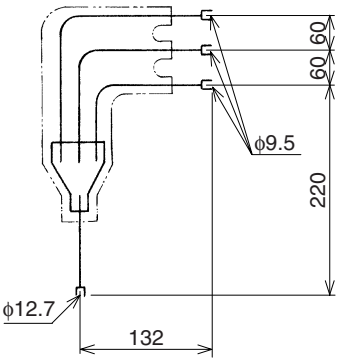
KHD58D33
Liquid side



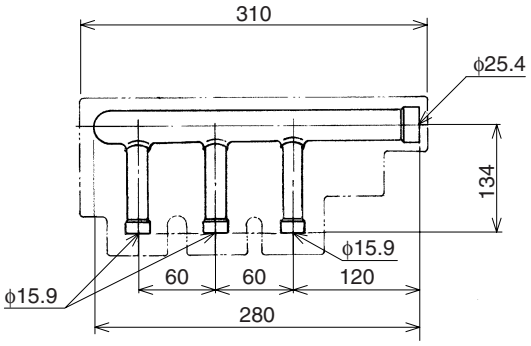
KHD58D33
Gas side



KHD58D31
Liquid side

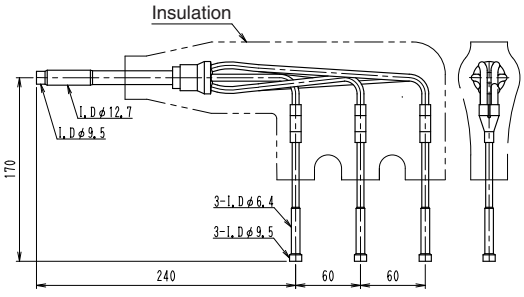


KHD58D31
Gas side

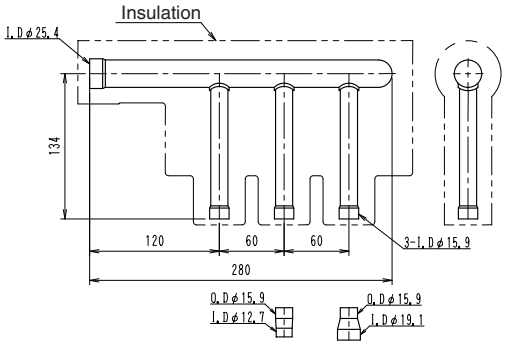


JC: D3K0841

KHR58P322H
Liquid side



KHR58P322H
Gas side



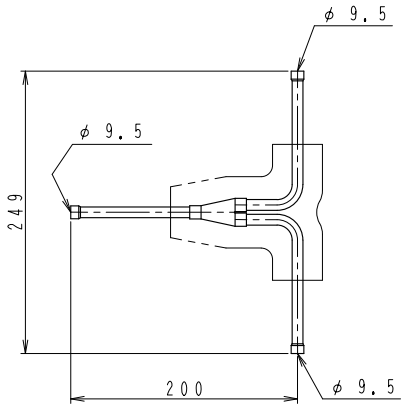
JC: D3K04122A

Dimensions

Unit (mm)

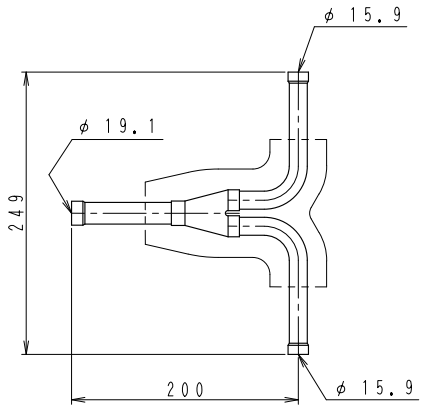
Liquid side

KHRJ5F224・280F – 2 pieces



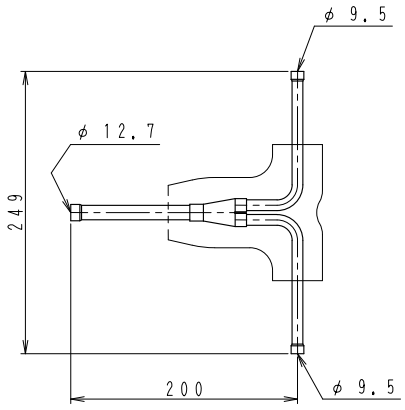
Gas side

KHRJ5F224・280F – 2 pieces



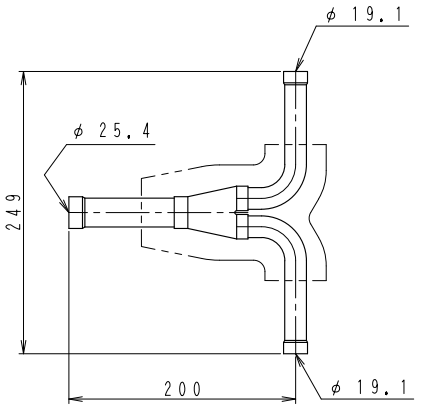
Liquid side

KHRJ5F224F – 1 piece



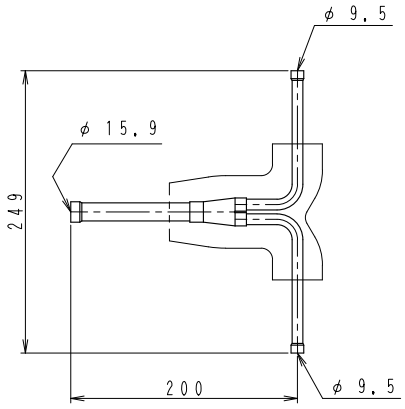
Gas side

KHRJ5F224F – 1 piece



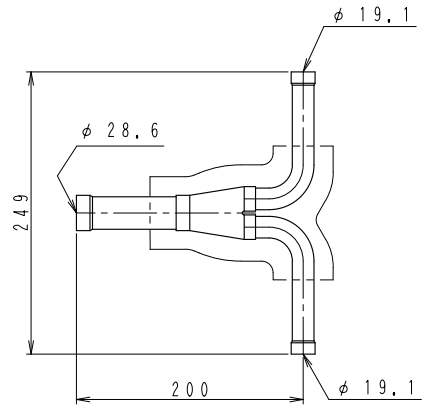
Liquid side

KHRJ5F280F – 1 piece



Gas side

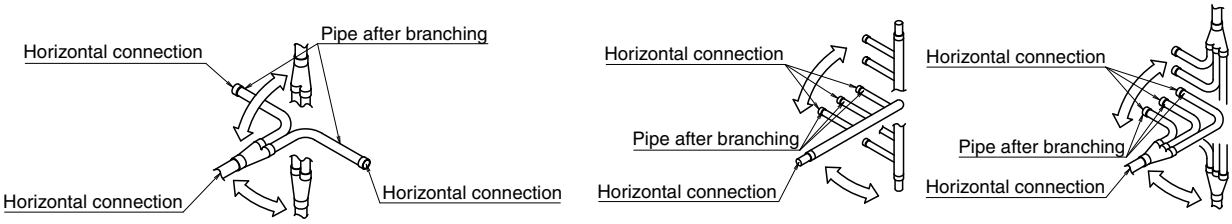
KHRJ5F280F – 1 piece



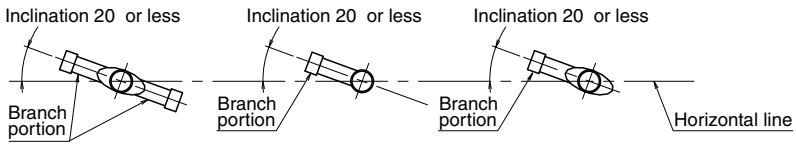
J: D3K1387

Installation Manual (KHR58C21, KHD58C21A / 23A / 24A, KHD58D33, KHRP58P322H)

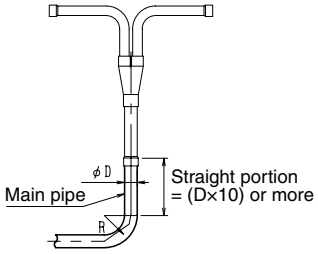
1. This kit must be so installed that piping after the branch (between the kit and the indoor units) can be laid horizontally. (Tolerance : ± 20˚)
   If not possible, install the pipe as shown below.



   • Do not incline the pipe more than 20˚. Otherwise, uniform refrigerant distribution may not be available.

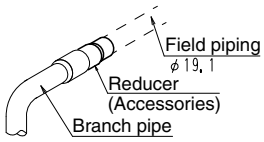


2. In case of connecting main pipe (between this kit and the outdoor unit) to this kit, do not bend the main pipe near the connection.
   If not possible, keep the length of straight portion more than 10 times of connection piping diameter as shown on the right.
   If the required length is not ensured, uniform refrigerant distribution may not be available.
   (Same as the header shape pipe)

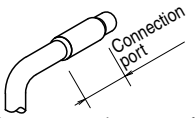


3. When connecting branch pipe with the different size indoor/outdoor pipe, use the attached reducer to joint them as shown below. (Same as the header shape pipe)

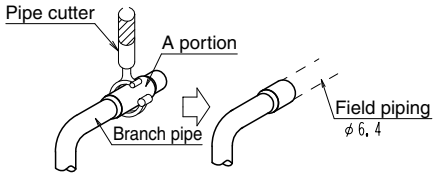
(Ex. 1) Gas outlet of KHR58P328H
In case of piping connection diameter (one side) 19.1



(Ex. 2) Liquid outlet of KHR58P322H
In case of piping connection diameter 6.4



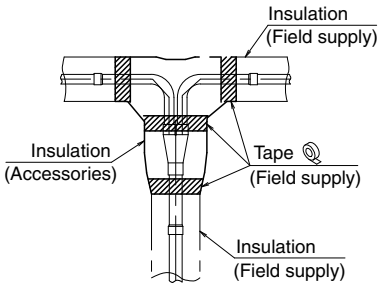
Be sure to cut the center of connection port with pipe cutter.



Cut the A portion as shown in the above figure, to connect field piping.

4. Insulate both the liquid side and the gas side piping completely. Use the attached insulation for the branch piping.
   • Wrap the vinyl tape around the insulation joint without leaving any clearance.
5. Pipng length between this kit and each indoor unit must be the same.
   (Max. length differential : 10m or less)
   Also, this piping length must be as short as possible. (Max. length differential : 20m or less)
6. For the Maximum refrigerant piping length and level difference, refer to the label on the indoor and the outdoor units and the Engineering Data Book.
7. Vertical piping is only allowed on the main piping (between the outdoor unit and this kit).
8. Refer to the Installation manuals (Refrigerant chapter) attached to the indoor and the outdoor unit.

J : 3PA38910-1G

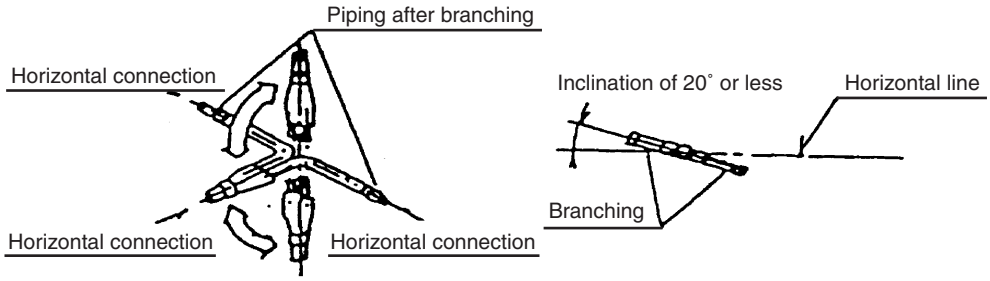


JC : 3PA38910-1G

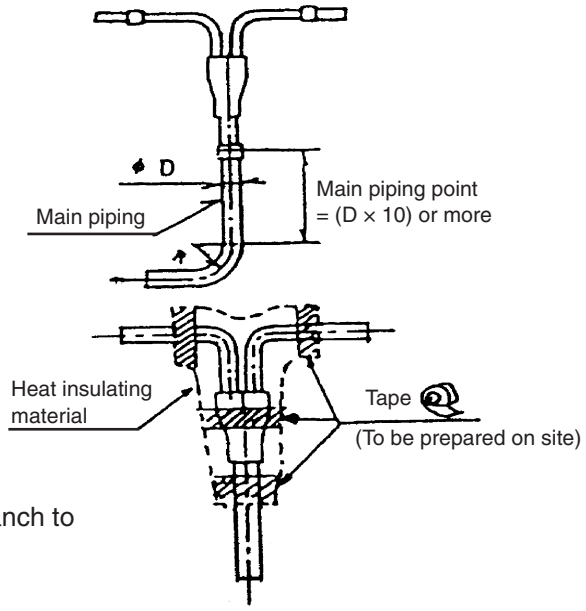
Installation Manual (KHRJ5F224F / 280F)

<Cautions regarding Usage>

1. In principle, this kit is installed to enable horizontal piping after branching (margin of ±20˚). The kit may be installed in accordance within the scope shown in the illustration below only if unavoidable.
   * Under no circumstances should the inclination angle significantly exceed 20˚ as this may cause coolant distortion flow.



2. When using this kit, do not bend the outdoor unit piping near the connection point. If bending of the outdoor unit piping is unavoidable, ensure direct piping as shown in the diagram at right.
   A short straight piping span may result in coolant distortion flow.
3. Ensure that coolant piping is totally insulated on both liquid and gas piping sides. Use the heat insulation material provided with this kit for branched piping.
   ●Wrap material such as vinyl tape from the central point of heat insulating material joints to eliminate gaps.
4. Ensure that the piping lengths from the primary branch to each indoor unit are the same.
   (Maximum difference: 10 m)



5. Ensure that both piping lengths from the primary branch to the secondary branch are the same.
   (Maximum difference: 10 m)
6. Ensure that all four piping lengths from the secondary branch to each indoor unit are the same.
   (Maximum difference: 10 m)
7. Ensure that the piping lengths from the primary branch to each indoor unit are as short as possible.
   (Maximum length: 20 m)
8. Refer to the indoor unit nameplates, Engineering Data and other materials for details of allowed coolant piping lengths and allowed elevation differences.
9. Piping elevation and de-elevation should be carried out at the main piping point (Indoor unit - Primary branch).
10. Refer to the outdoor unit Installation Manual (Section of coolant piping).

JC: 3PA58022

9. Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit

9.1 KRK5F80V1 / 140V1 / 160V1

KRK5F80V1



Item \ Model	KRK5F80V1	KRK5F140V1	KRK5F160V1
Operation range	Outdoor temperature : -15 ~ 43°C		
Power consumption	33W		
Power supply	Single-phase 220-240V 50Hz		
Component parts	Crankcase heater, Wiring diagram label, Lead wire, Clamp material, Installation manual		

4

Operation Manual

Operation manual

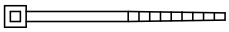
Confirm your model

Confirm the year-round cooling operation kit type and the outdoor unit model.

Type	Applicable outdoor unit
KRK5F80V1	R71LUV1, R71LUY1, R71LUVAL
KRK5F140V1	R100LUV1, R100 / 125LUY1, R100LUVAL, R125LUTAL, R125LUYAL, R42LUY2S
KRK5F160V1	R140LUY1, R140LUTAL, R140LUYAL

Confirm the accessories

Check if the following accessories are included with your kit before installation.

Accessories		Type		
Name	Shape	KRK5F80V1	KRK5F140V1	KRK5F160V1
Crankcase heater		1	1	1
Clamp		3	4	4
Wiring Diagram		2	2	2

Precautions in use

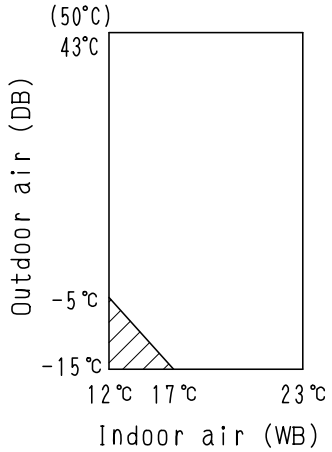
(Operation range)

In the operation range indicated by ◺ part, compressor stops frequently due to prevention of freezing of the indoor unit.

(Instllation site)

Install the outdoor unit by facing its back side towards a wall to avoid disturbance of the wind.

Where no wall is present as on a roof, be sure to install optional snow prevention hood.



C: 3PA60339B

Installation procedure

(1) Attach crankcase heater to the compressor as in Fig. 1. Lead wire cannot come in contact with the pipes so pass it through the route of other lead wires.
(2) Connect crank case heater to X25A connector above PCB assy as in Fig. 2.
(3) Bundle lead wires of crankcase heater using the attached clamp at the same point where they were bundled before conversion.
(4) Attach wiring diagram over the wiring diagram label. (Confirm the outdoor unit model)

Fig. 1

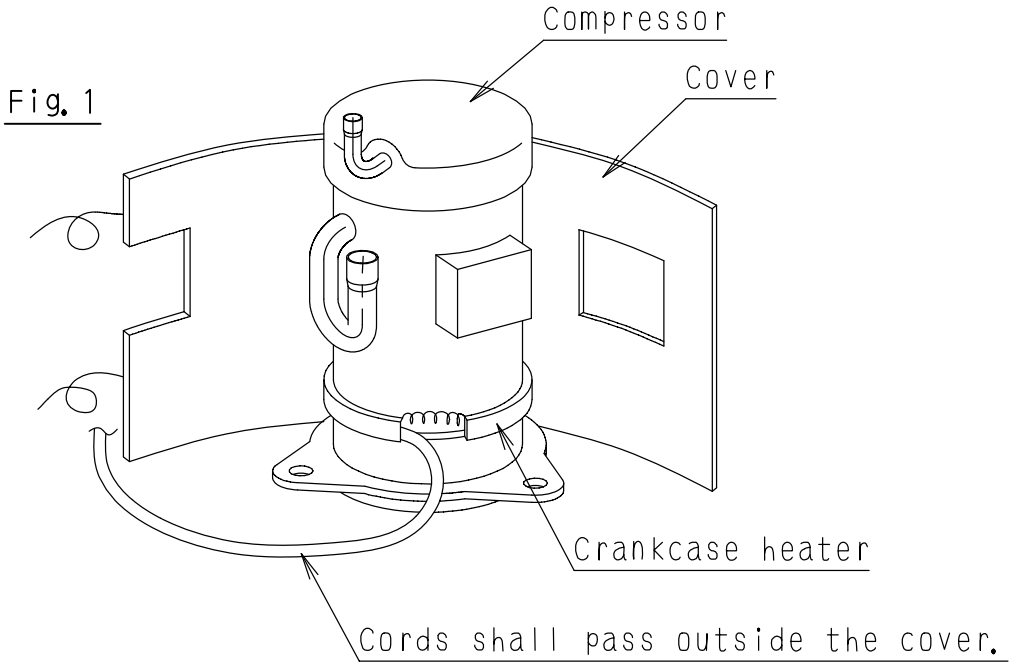
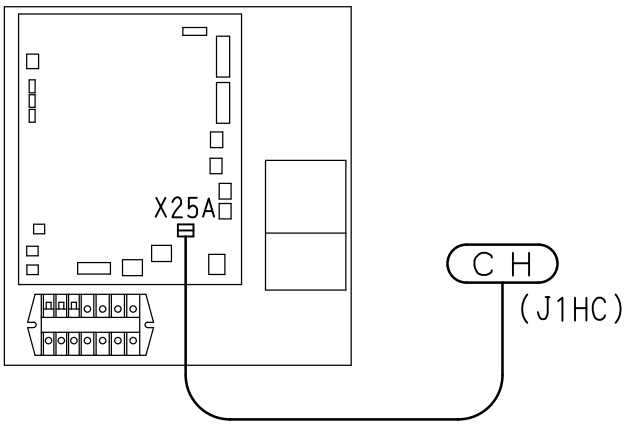


Fig. 2



3PA60339B

10. Drain Piping Kit

10.1 KIS95

Use this plug to connect a drain hose to an outdoor unit.



Model / Item	KIS95
Drain hose connection dia	ϕ16 ID
Component parts	Drain plug (with Y joint), Blind plugs (3 pcs.)

Note:

1. This is the joint for attaching a vinyl hose (field supplied).
   This is used between the drain hole which is on the bottom plate of outdoor unit and vinyl hose.
2. Drain water accumulate to the bottom of outdoor unit it depends on the situation of operation. But it is necessary to connect drain hose not to be spread the drain water over the neighbors, when it is installed on the wall.

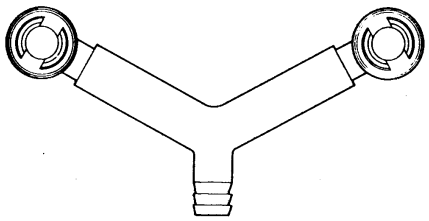
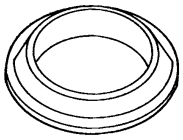
4

Installation Manual

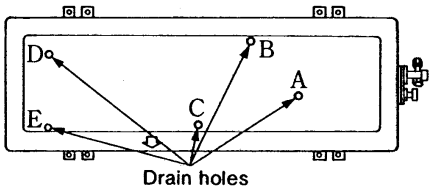
Daikin Split Type Room Air Conditioners Installation Manual for Drain Plug ⟨KIS95⟩

- Use this plug to connect a drain hose so that condensation disposal can be extracted from the outdoor unit.

[1] This kit encases the following parts. So check that these parts are contained upon receipt of the kit.

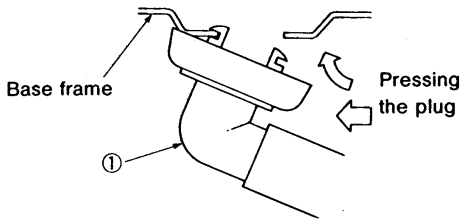
① Drain plug set 1 set	② Blind plugs 3 pieces
	

[2] Installation order



(Viewed from the top)

1) ● Attach drain plug set ① to A and B holes on the base frame.
   ● In case of the unit, the drain hole of which is one of A or B, remove one drain plug from drain plug set ① and attach it to the hole.
   * Hang one side of the plug from the base frame and press it to the directions pointed by the arrow marks to fix it.



(Do not fix it forcedly with a screw driver, or it may be broken down.)

2) Attach blind plugs ② to C, D and E holes.

3) Use a vinyl hose which is available from markets (I.D. 16mm) and a hose band to connect the hose to the drain plug.

(If the hose droops long, fix it on the way carefully so as not to bend it)

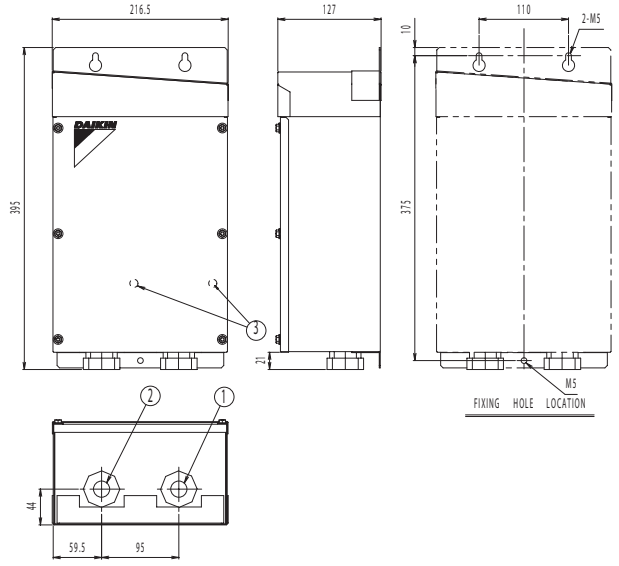
Note :
If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are concealed by the mounting base, floor face, etc., place washers, the height of which is over 30mm under the legs of the outdoor unit.

4K0370

11. Over Voltage Protection

11.1 BRV2AK / 4AK

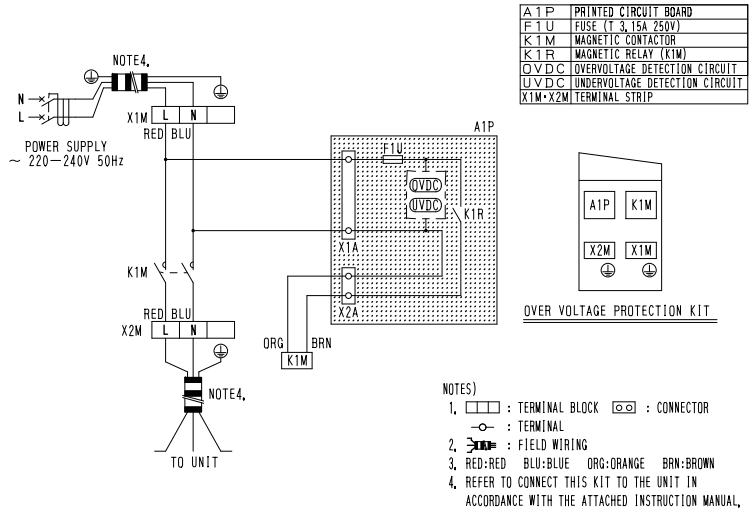
Dimensions Unit (mm)



3D060491

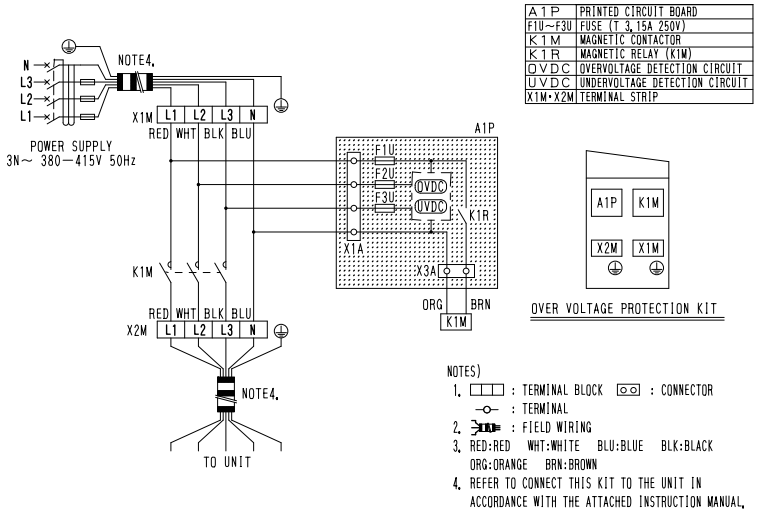
Wiring Diagram

BRV2AK



3D060411

BRV4AK



3D060400

Installation Manual

OVERVOLTAGE PROTECTION KIT INSTALLATION MANUAL

READ THE INSTRUCTIONS PROVIDED HEREIN CAREFULLY IN ADVANCE AND INSTALL THE OVERVOLTAGE PROTECTION KIT CORRECTLY.

1P223656-1

BRV2AK (SINGLE-PHASE), BRV4AK (THREE-PHASE)

PLEASE READ THESE "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLING AIR

- The following two conventions are used to indicate and classify precautions in this manual. Always heed the important safety information provided with them.

⚠ WARNING	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ CAUTION	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- Make sure that the unit operates properly after completing the installation, and explain the customer how to operate the unit and keep it maintained. Also, advise the customer that they should keep this installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.
- At the time of the installation, read the installation manual of the unit along with the electric diagram.

⚠ WARNING

Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work. Do not attempt to install the air conditioner yourself. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Install the air conditioner in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for the installation work. Failure to use the specified parts may cause the kit to fall or result in electric shocks or fire.

Install the kit on an appropriate base that is strong enough to withstand the weight of the kit. A base of insufficient strength may cause the kit to fall and result in injury.

Make certain that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to the local laws and regulations and this installation manual, using a separate circuit. Insufficient capacity of the power supply circuit or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the overvoltage protection kit. Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect grounding may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker. Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Turn off the kit before touching electrical parts. An electric shock may be received if charged parts come in contact with humans.

Be sure to use the specified wires and fix them securely so that no external force resulting from the wires will be imposed on any terminal connections. Improper connections or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.

Position the wires so that the cover will not rise when wiring the power supply. Make sure that the cover is attached securely. If the cover is attached improperly, electric shocks or fire may result.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install the overvoltage protection kit in the following locations:

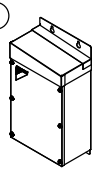
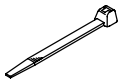
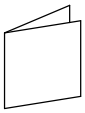
1. Where there is a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapour for example a kitchen.
2. Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced, acid or alkaline steam gathers, or the air contains a high salt content, such as places by the sea. Parts may be corroded and fall off.
3. Near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves or in places with great voltage fluctuations, such as factories.
4. Where flammable gas may leak, in places with carbon fiber or ignitable dust suspensions in the air or with volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline, or in vehicles or vessels. Fire may result if gas leakage occurs and stays around the kit.
5. Where small animals intrude, fallen leaves gather, or weeds grow. Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire.

1P223656

4

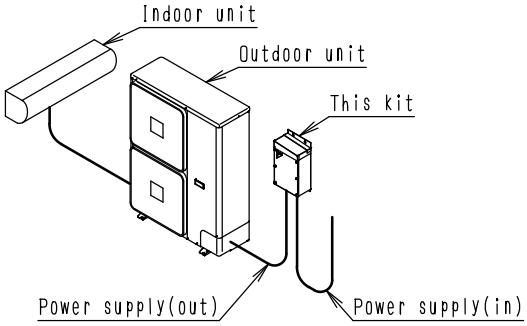
COMPONENT PARTS

●Make sure that the kit is provided with the following parts.

NAME	MAIN UNIT	MOUNTING SCREW	CLAMP	INSTALLATION MANUAL
SHAPE NO.	① 	②  M5×12	③ 	④ 
QUANTITY	1 PC.	3 PCS.	2 PCS.	1 (THIS MANUAL)

1 OVERVIEW OF FUNCTIONS

●The illustration shows an example of connections to the SkyAir unit.



●This kit protects the electrical parts of the connecting unit from damage resulting from power supply overvoltage or undervoltage on site.
●The kit is applicable to the following units.

	POWER SUPPLY RATING	APPLICABLE UNIT
BRV2AK	φ1 220−240V 50Hz	RA, SKYAIR, VRV INDOOR UNIT (SINGLE-PHASE UNIT)
BRV4AK	φ3 380−415V 50Hz	SKYAIR (THREE-PHASE UNIT)

2 PREPARATIONS BEFORE INSTALLATION

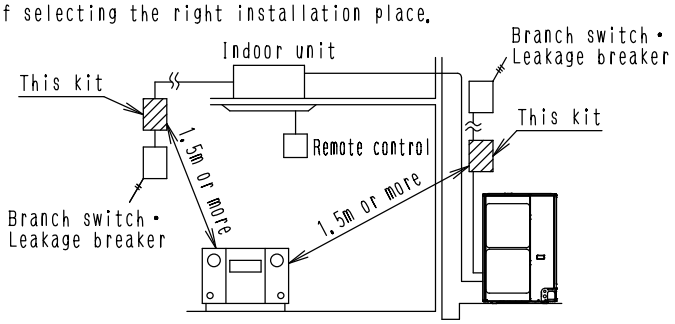
●The following items are required for installation work.
Press-fit tool, screwdriver, electric wires, and round crimp-style terminal.
●Select the right electric wire size according to the installation manual of the connecting unit.

3 SELECTION OF INSTALLATION PLACE

Install the kit in an appropriate place subject to the customer's approval while keeping the following conditions in mind.
(1) Places free of vibration and shock.
(2) Places that withstand the weight of the kit.
(3) Places out of children's reach.
(4) Places where a service space to perform maintenance inspection is secured.

CAUTION

●The inverter air conditioner may generate radio noise that may interfere with home electronics products. As shown in the illustration, keep the radio, PC, and stereo set away from the air conditioner, kit, and wiring at the time of selecting the right installation place.



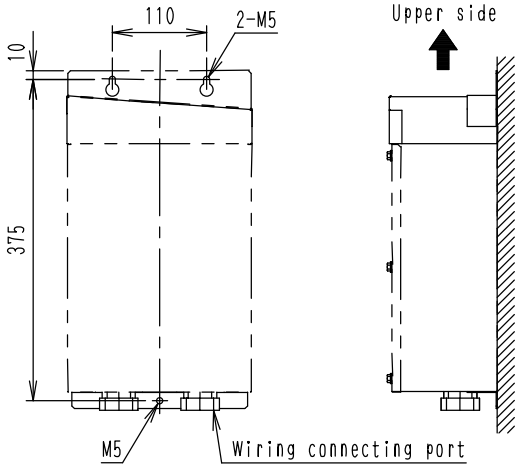
1P223656

4 INSTALLATION OF KIT

- Mount the kit on the wall close to the connecting unit.
- Be sure to mount the kit vertically with the wiring connecting port facing downward.
- Before mounting the kit to the wall, temporarily fix the two screws on the upper side. Hook the kit on the screws and tighten the two screws along with the single screw on the lower side to fix the kit securely.
- Three M5 x 12 screws as component parts ② are provided. If the screws are not suitable, prepare appropriate screws on site.

CAUTION

- Be sure to use resin washers for the mounting screws. If the paint on the kit is damaged, the kit may corrode and fall off.



5 ELECTRIC WIRING WORK (1/2)

⚠ INSTALL AN EARTH LEAKAGE BREAKER.

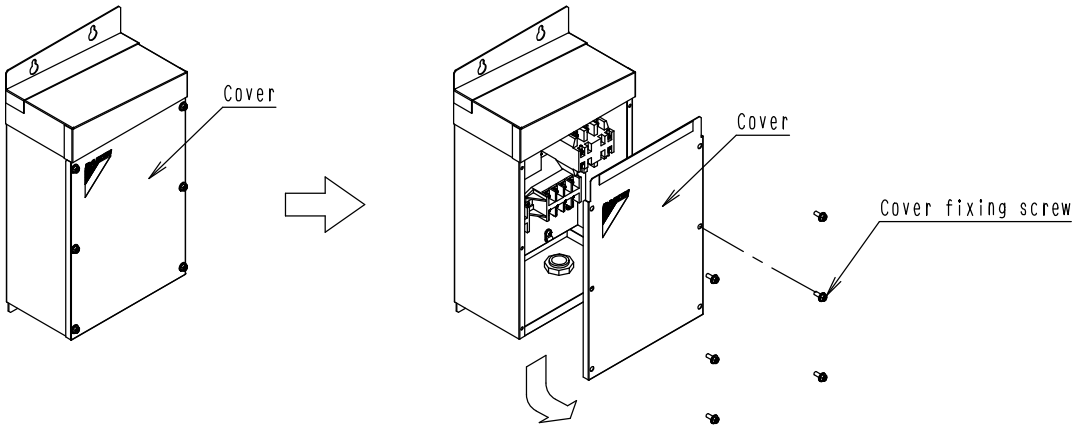
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is mandatory for the prevention of electric shocks and fire.

CAUTION

FOR ELECTRICIANS

- Electrical wiring must be carried out by qualified personnel.
- Before obtaining access to terminal devices, all supply circuits must be interrupted.
- The resistance of the grounding must not exceed 500Ω. (Keep below 250Ω in locations with high electrical danger.)
- Do not connect the earth wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth wire.
- The outer frame of the product is charged by current leakage. Be sure to earth the product.
- Be sure to use a load breaker provided with a fuse or a wiring breaker in combination with an earth leakage breaker if the earth leakage breaker is designed for the prevention of grounding faults
- When performing electrical wiring, refer also to the wiring diagram affixed to the unit.
- Be sure to use and securely connect the type of wire specified in the installation manual of the connecting unit. Fix the wire with the provided clamps so that the terminals (on-site wiring and earth terminals) will be free of external force.
- Be sure to apply positive-phase power supply.
- Never put any redundant wires into the kit.

(1) Removal of cover
Support the cover so that it will not fall off, remove the six fixing screws, slide the cover downward, and remove the cover in the front direction.

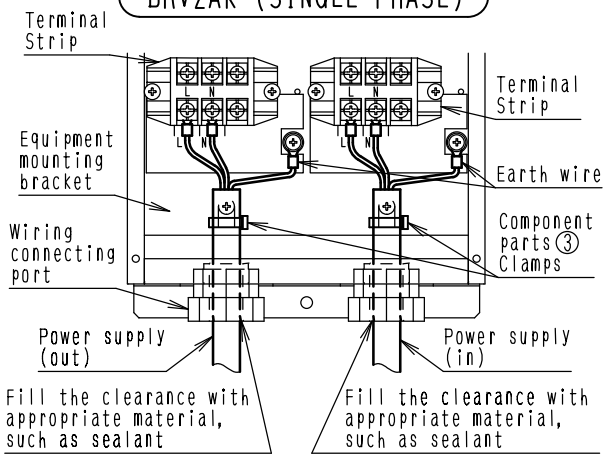


1P223656

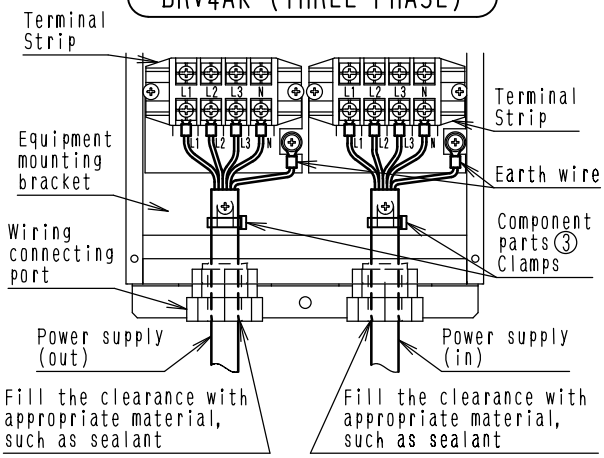
5 ELECTRIC WIRING WORK (2/2)

(2) Wiring connections

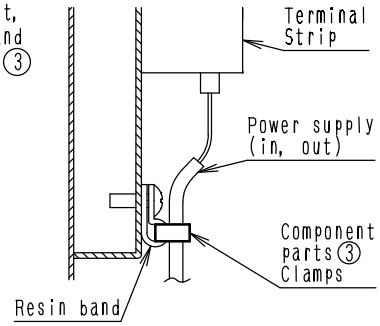
BRV2AK (SINGLE-PHASE)



BRV4AK (THREE-PHASE)



- Use the type of wire specified in the installation manual of the connecting kit, follow the electrical wiring diagram label on the rear side of the kit cover and connect the wire securely, and fix the wire with the clamps as component parts ③ so that the connection terminals will be free of external force. (See the illustration on the right-hand side.)



- Make sure that the screwdriver used to tighten the terminal screws is correct in size. A small-sized screwdriver may damage the screw heads and the screws will not be tightened properly.
- The terminal screws tightened in excess may be damaged. Refer to the table on the right-hand side for the tightening torque ranges of the power supply and earth terminal screws.

Tightening torque (N・m)	
M5 (Power supply terminal board)	2.2~2.7
M5 (Earth)	2.4~2.9

[PREVENTIVE MEASURES FOR INTRUSION OF SMALL ANIMALS]

Fill the clearance between the wiring connecting port and power supply (in and out) port with the appropriate material, such as sealant.
(The internal circuit of the kit may be short-circuited if small animals including insects intrude into the kit.)

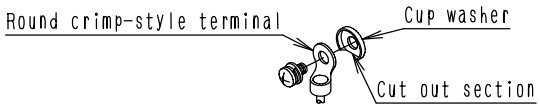
WIRING PRECAUTIONS

- Be sure to use round crimp-style terminal provided with an insulation sleeve for wiring (see the illustration on the right-hand side).



PRECAUTIONS FOR EARTH TERMINAL CONNECTIONS

- Be sure to pull out the earth wire from the cutout of the cup washer and lay out the earth wire so that no other wires will be caught by the earth wire (see the illustration below).



6 COMMISSIONING

(1) Make sure that the wiring and other connections are correct, and mount the cover in the reverse order of dismounting the cover.
(2) Perform commissioning according to the installation manual of the connecting unit.

1P223656

Part 5
Index

Model name	Description	Page
B		
BRC1C61	Remote Controller	317
BRC1D61	Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer	365
BRC1E62	Navigation Remote Controller	349
BRC1NU61	Remote Controller	326
BRC1NU61S	Remote Controller	337
BRC4C62	Remote Controller	143
BRC4C64	Remote Controller	143
BRC7C610W	Remote Controller	122
BRC7C611W	Remote Controller	122
BRC7C612W	Remote Controller	180
BRC7C613W	Remote Controller	180
BRC7C613WS	Remote Controller	203
BRC7C64W	Remote Controller	273
BRC7C69W	Remote Controller	273
BRC7CA528W	Remote Controller	246
BRC7CA529W	Remote Controller	246
BRC7E(A)63W	Remote Controller	104
BRC7E(A)66	Remote Controller	104
BRC7E530W	Remote Controller	80
BRC7E531W	Remote Controller	80
BRC7E619	Remote Controller	294
BRC7EA618	Remote Controller	294
BRC7EA619	Remote Controller	294
BRC7F632F	Remote Controller	25
BRC7F633F	Remote Controller	25
BRC7F634F	Remote Controller	25
BRC7F635F	Remote Controller	25
BRC7NU66	Remote Controller	225
BRC7NU66S	Remote Controller	241
BRV2AK	Over Voltage Protection	723
BRV4AK	Over Voltage Protection	723
BYBS125DJW1	Decoration Panel	669
BYBS45DJW1	Decoration Panel	669
BYBS71DJW1	Decoration Panel	669
BYC125K-W1	Decoration Panel	604
BYC125K-W1S	Decoration Panel	607
BYC125K-W2	Decoration Panel	604
BYCP125K-W1	Decoration Panel	521
BYCP125K-WS	Decoration Panel	525
BYFQ60B8W1	Decoration Panel	562
BYK45FJW1	Decoration Panel	642
BYK71FJW1	Decoration Panel	642
D		
DCS301BA61	Unified ON/OFF Controller	447
DCS302CA61	Central Remote Controller	414
DCS601C51	Intelligent Touch Controller	477
DST301BA61	Schedule Timer	455
DTA102A52	Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series	472
DTA112BA51	Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series	475
K		
KAF252LA160	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF252LA56	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF252LA80	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF253LA160	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF253LA56	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF253LA80	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAF371AA160	Long-life Filter	592
KAF371AA36	Long-life Filter	592
KAF371AA56	Long-life Filter	592
KAF371AA80	Long-life Filter	592
KAF372AA160	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF372AA36	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF372AA56	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF372AA80	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF373AA160	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF373AA36	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF373AA56	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF373AA80	High Efficiency Filter	591
KAF375AA160	Long-life Filter Chamber Kit	596
KAF375AA56	Long-life Filter Chamber Kit	596
KAF375AA80	Long-life Filter Chamber Kit	596
KAF495FA140	Replacement Long-life Filter	640
KAF501DA112	Replacement Long-life Filter	574
KAF501DA160	Replacement Long-life Filter	574
KAF501DA56	Replacement Long-life Filter	574
KAF501DA80	Replacement Long-life Filter	574
KAF551KA160	Replacement Long-life Filter	626
KAF556DA160	High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)	620
KAF556DA80	High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)	620
KAF557DA160	High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)	620
KAF557DA80	High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)	620
KAF55DA160	Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)	627
KAF55KA160H	Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter	630
KAFJ251K160	Replacement Long-life Filter	674
KAFJ251K36	Replacement Long-life Filter	674
KAFJ251K56	Replacement Long-life Filter	674
KAFJ251K80	Replacement Long-life Filter	674
KAFJ252L36	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAFJ253L36	High Efficiency Filter	673
KAFJ521F56	Replacement Long-life Filter	658
KAFJ521F80	Replacement Long-life Filter	658
KAFJ95L160	Replacement Long-life Filter	668
KAFP551K160	Replacement Long-life Filter	554
KAFP552B160	Replacement High Efficiency Filter	550
KAFP552B80	Replacement High Efficiency Filter	550
KAFP553B160	Replacement High Efficiency Filter	550
KAFP553B80	Replacement High Efficiency Filter	550
KAFP556B160	High Efficiency Filter Unit	547
KAFP556B80	High Efficiency Filter Unit	547
KAFP557B160	High Efficiency Filter Unit	547
KAFP557B80	High Efficiency Filter Unit	547
KAFP55B160	Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)	555
KAFP55H160H	Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter	558
KAFQ441BA60	Replacement Long-life Filter	573
KAJ25LA160B	Filter Chamber for Rear Suction	676
KAJ25LA160D	Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction	675
KAJ25LA36B	Filter Chamber for Rear Suction	676
KAJ25LA36D	Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction	675
KAJ25LA56B	Filter Chamber for Rear Suction	676
KAJ25LA56D	Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction	675
KAJ25LA80B	Filter Chamber for Rear Suction	676
KAJ25LA80D	Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction	675
KBBJ25K36	Screening Door	690
KBBJ25KA160	Screening Door	690
KBBJ25KA56	Screening Door	690
KBBJ25KA80	Screening Door	690
KDAJ25K140A	Air Discharge Adaptor	602
KDAJ25K36A	Air Discharge Adaptor	602
KDAJ25K56A	Air Discharge Adaptor	602
KDAJ25K71A	Air Discharge Adaptor	602
KDBH44BA60	Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet	565
KDBH49FA140	Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet	636
KDBH49FA80	Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet	636
KDBH55D160W	Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet	610

Model name	Description	Page
KDBH55K160F	Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet	529
KDBJ52F56W	Air Discharge Blind Panel	651
KDBJ52F80W	Air Discharge Blind Panel	651
KDBP55H160FA	Panel Spacer	533
KDBP55H160WA	Panel Spacer	533
KDBQ44BA60A	Panel Spacer	568
KDBT49FA140	Decoration Panel for Air Discharge	635
KDBT49FA80	Decoration Panel for Air Discharge	635
KDD55DA160	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)	613
KDD55DA160(K)	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)	613
KDDF37AA160	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	593
KDDF37AA36	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	593
KDDF37AA56	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	593
KDDF37AA80	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	593
KDDF55DA160	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	623
KDDFP55B160	High Efficiency Filter Chamber	551
KDDJ55XA160	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)	617
KDDP55B160	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)	536
KDDP55B160(K)	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)	536
KDDP55X160	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)	541
KDDQ44XA60	Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)	571
K-DDV20B15	Branch Chamber	691
K-DG4DW	Discharge Grille	686
K-DG5DW	Discharge Grille	686
K-DG7DW	Discharge Grille	686
K-DG9DW	Discharge Grille	686
K-DGC4D	Discharge Chamber	681
K-DGC5D	Discharge Chamber	681
K-DGC7D	Discharge Chamber	681
K-DGC9D	Discharge Chamber	681
KDGF19A45	Decoration Panel	694
KDGF19A71	Decoration Panel	694
KDGJ49FA140	Vertical Flap Kit	638
KDGJ49FA80	Vertical Flap Kit	638
KDJ2507K160	Air Suction Flange	693
KDJ2507K36	Air Suction Flange	693
KDJ2507K56	Air Suction Flange	693
KDJ2507K80	Air Suction Flange	693
KDJ55K160	Branch Duct Chamber	631
KDJ55K80	Branch Duct Chamber	631
KDJP55B160	Branch Duct Chamber	559
KDJP55B80	Branch Duct Chamber	559
KDTP55K160	Installation Kit for High Humidity	545
KDTP55K80	Installation Kit for High Humidity	545
KDU50B125VE	Drain Pump Kit	633
KDU50B50VE	Drain Pump Kit	633
KDU50B71VE	Drain Pump Kit	633
KDU50N125VE	Drain-up Kit	575
KDU50N60VE	Drain-up Kit	575
KEK26-1A	Noise Filter	516
KFDJ52FA56	Flexible Duct with Shutter	660
KFDJ52FA80	Flexible Duct with Shutter	660
K-FDS151D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS152D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS153D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS154D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS155D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS156D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS201D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS202D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS203D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS204D	Flexible Duct	689
K-FDS205D	Flexible Duct	689

Model name	Description	Page
K-FDS206D	Flexible Duct	689
KHD58C21A	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHD58C23A	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHD58C24A	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHD58D31	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHD58D33	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHFJ49F140	L Connection Piping Kit	641
KHFJ49F80	L Connection Piping Kit	641
KHFJ5F160	L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	634
KHFJ5F50	L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	634
KHFJ5F60	L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	634
KHFJ5F80	L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	634
KHFP49MA140	L Connection Piping Kit	641
KHFP5MA160	L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	580
KHFP5MA35	L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	580
KHFP5MA63	L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)	580
KHR58C21	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHR58P322H	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHRJ5F224F	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
KHRJ5F280F	Refrigerant Branch Piping	712
K-HV7AW	Discharge Grille	659
K-HV9AW	Discharge Grille	659
KIS95	Drain Piping Kit	721
KJB212AA	Electrical Box with Earth Terminal	445
KJB311AA	Electrical Box with Earth Terminal	445
KKD19A1	Drain Pan Cover	694
K-KDU572EVE	Drain Pump Kit	581
KKP014A4	Drain Cap, Drain Socket	698
KKP937A4	Drain Plug	696
KKP945A4	Drain Plug	697
KKPJ5F180	Central Drain Plug	705
KKPJ5G280	Central Drain Plug	706
KKSJ55KA160	Chamber Connection Kit	544
KKTP5B112	Fixture for Preventing Overturning	710
K-KYZP15C	Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning	707
KPBJ52F56W	Panel Spacer	646
KPBJ52F80W	Panel Spacer	646
KPT-60B160	Fixture for Preventing Overturning	709
KPW937A4	Air Direction Adjustment Grille	699
KPW945A4	Air Direction Adjustment Grille	700
KRC47-1A	Remote Controller	341
KRC47-2A	Remote Controller	343
KRC47-4A	Remote Controller	343
KRCS01-1B	Remote Sensor	390
KRCS01-4B	Remote Sensor	390
KRK5F140V1	Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit	719
KRK5F160V1	Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit	719
KRK5F80V1	Year-Round Cooling Operation Kit	719
KRP1B51	Adaptor for Wiring	372
KRP1B98	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	401
KRP1BA101	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	396
KRP1BA54	Adaptor for Wiring	372
KRP1BA57	Adaptor for Wiring	372
KRP1BA97	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	409
KRP1C63	Adaptor for Wiring	374
KRP1C64	Adaptor for Wiring	376
KRP1CA93	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	407
KRP1H98	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	392
KRP4A96	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	403

Model name	Description	Page
KRP4AA51	Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)	379
KRP4AA52	Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)	379
KRP4AA53	Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)	379
KRP4AA93	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	405
KRP4AA95	Installation Box for Adaptor Printed Circuit Board	411
KRP58M51	Demand Adaptor	701
KSA-25K36	Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)	680
KSA-25KA160	Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)	680
KSA-25KA56	Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)	680
KSA-25KA80	Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)	680
KTB25KA160W	Service Access Panel	599
KTB25KA56W	Service Access Panel	599
KTB25KA80W	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K160F	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K160T	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K36F	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K36T	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K36W	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K56F	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K56T	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K80F	Service Access Panel	599
KTBJ25K80T	Service Access Panel	599

Warning

- Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorised parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Read the User's Manual carefully before using this product. The User's Manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any enquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor and/or retailer.

Cautions on product corrosion

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided. If you need to install the outdoor unit close to the sea shore, contact your local distributor.

● Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of September 2013 but subject to change without notice.

©All rights reserved 09/13 FS